Manual for

FOMA® N902iL '07.1

Quick Search/ Contents/ Safety Precautions
Getting Started
Making/Receiving FOMA Voice Calls
Making/Receiving Videophone Calls
PushTalk
Using the Phonebook
Tone/Display/ Lighting Settings
Security Settings
Camera
i-mode/i-motion/ i-channel
Mail
i-αppli
Osaifu-Keitai/ ToruCa
Full Browser
Display/Edit/ Organization/ Music Playback
Other Useful Functions
Network Services
Data Communication
Entering Text
WLAN
Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting
Index/ Quick Manual

DoCoMo
W-CDMA system/WLAN system

Thank you very much for choosing the FOMA N902iL.

Please read this manual and users guides that came with the battery pack and other devices carefully before or during use so that you can use your FOMA terminal correctly. If you have any inquiries regarding this manual, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover. FOMA N902iL is your efficient partner. Please use it carefully and habitually.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- FOMA terminals use wireless communications and cannot be used in tunnels, underground areas, buildings, and other areas without reception; in outdoor locations with weak reception; or outside the service area. Reception may also be weak in even some unobstructed upper floors of high-rise buildings and apartments. Please be aware that calls or communications may be disconnected even under optimal conditions when reception is strong and all three antenna marks are displayed, and when in a stationary position.
- Please be careful not to disturb people around you when using your FOMA terminal in public places, crowded areas, or quiet locations.
- A third party may be able to use special equipment to listen in on your calls, as FOMA terminals use radio waves. However, W-CDMA automatically supports privacy protection with a scrambling function for all calls to make conversations incomprehensive to third parties.
- FOMA terminals convert voice into digital signals for wireless communications, and therefore if you are in an area where radio reception is weak, these signals may not be properly reconverted and this may result in distortion of the caller's voice.
- Please keep a separate record of the information you have registered in your FOMA terminal. Please be aware that DoCoMo bears no obligation or responsibility in the event that data is altered or lost.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of use of TLS/SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as for security in the use of TLS/SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of TLS/SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any damage or loss.
  Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Co., Ltd., GeoTrust Japan Co., Ltd., RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust.systems Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal is available in FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA communication for the FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only in Japan. DoCoMo will bear no responsibility for any damages or troubles caused by the use of the FOMA terminal outside Japan.

For the first-time users of the FOMA terminal

If you have never used the FOMA terminal, read this manual in the following steps. Doing so will help you understand the preparation and basic operations for using the FOMA terminal.

1. Insert and charge the battery pack (p.43)
2. Turn on the FOMA terminal, make the initial settings, and check your own number (p.48)
3. Check the functions of the phone keys (p.26)
4. Check the meanings of icons displayed on the screen (p.30)
5. Check how to use the menus (p.34)
6. Check how to make/receive a call (p.55)

The latest information about this manual can be downloaded from the DoCoMo website.

●To download "Manual for FOMA N902iL (PDF file)", access the following:
(http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html)

* The URL and the contents of the site are subject to change without notice.

How to Use This Manual

To look up a function in this manual

This manual offers you the following methods to find a page describing the function or service you want to know.



See the next page for more details.

Looking up in the Index p.528

If you know the name of the function or service or if it is displayed on the screen, refer to the Index.

Looking up in the Quick Search p.4

The Quick Search offers plain descriptions of often-used or useful functions.

Looking up in the Cover Index Cover

Use the Cover Index to flip over the page.

Looking up in the Table of Contents p.6

Refer to the Table of Contents categorizing the functions.

Looking up in the Functions p.8

Refer to the Functions to find new or useful functions.

Looking up in the Menu Function List p.478

The pages list the menu functions displayed in the menus of the FOMA terminal.

Looking up in the Quick Manual p.538

The Quick Manual offers brief descriptions of the basic functions. You can tear it out and take it with you.

- Note that “FOMA N902iL” is described as “FOMA terminal” in this “Manual for FOMA N902iL”,
- This manual describes functions that use a miniSD memory card. To use these functions, the miniSD memory card is required. miniSD Memory Card→p.362
- It is prohibited to reprint the whole or part of the contents of this manual without permission.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.

How to Use This Manual (continued from the previous page)

This page takes for example how to look up the “Display setting” function.

Looking up in the Index

If you know the name of the function or service or if it is displayed on the screen, refer to the Index.

→Find “Display setting”

control 356
delete 357
display 355
download 237
guide to the Chara-den list 356
Memory info 357
Rec. Chara-den 358
Set image disp. 357
Charge sound 141
charging 45
Chat group 297
Chat mail 294
Phonebook 135
Sent/rec'd DataList 136
Data Transfer Software 499
DC adapter 45
Deactivate i-αppli standby screen 315
Decoration 100
Deco-mail 261
Delete
Bookmark 231, 232
Chara-den 357
Delete data 129
desktop icon 159
Display home 224
Display information 469
Connection status 469
MAC address 469
Display setting 99, 146
Display software info 500
Displaying
Call time 157
channel list 251
clock 157
Display setting 146
image (My picture) 335

Looking up in the Quick Search

The Quick Search offers plain descriptions of often-used or useful functions.

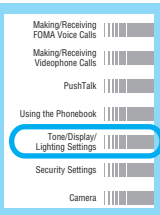
→Find “Change standby screen”

Change/Indicate display

- Know the meaning of symbol (icon) on the screen p.30 View display
- Change font size in phonebook, etc. pp.126, 128, 404 Big font, Standard font
- Change standby screen (wallpaper) p.146 Display setting
- Display calendar on standby screen p.148 Calendar
- Change font type or thickness p.157 Font
- Change font size in i-mode or mail pp.240, 289 Font size
- Change font size while entering p.439 CHG input size

Looking up in the Cover Index

Find the page describing the function in the order “Cover” → “Chapter page (first page of the chapter)” → “Description page”. The chapter page describes the detailed table of contents.



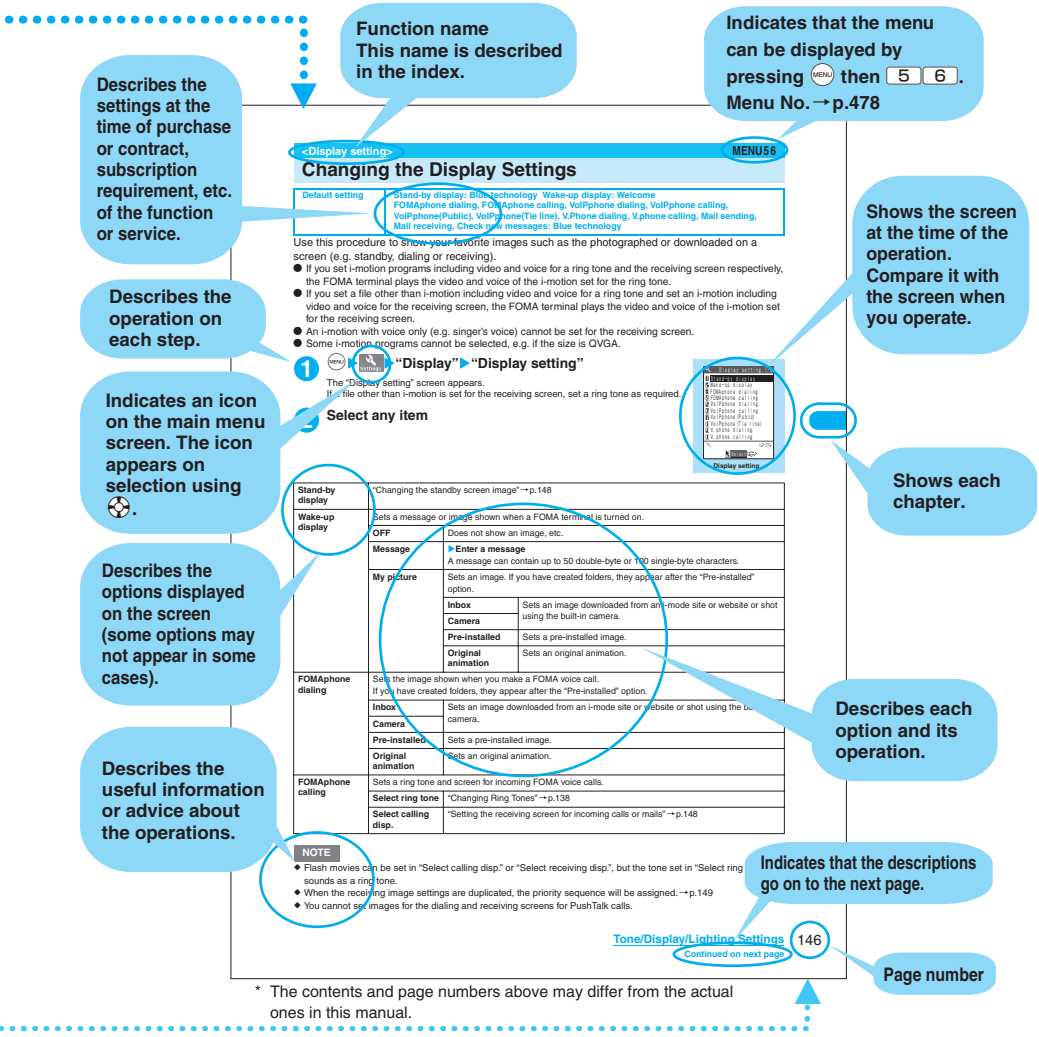
Enabling Tones to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker ....Earphone 143
Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone....Manner mode 143
Customizing Manner Mode....Manner mode set 144
Display/Lighting settings
Changing the Display Settings....Display setting 146
Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls....Disp. phonebook image 149
Setting the Indicator Display Mode....Indicator display 150

Key description

Key operations are illustrated in this manual. The illustrations are simplified as follows:

Actual key	Described in this manual
1	1

This manual uses illustrations or marks to explain how to operate the function so that you can use the FOMA terminal correctly.



* The contents and page numbers above may differ from the actual ones in this manual.

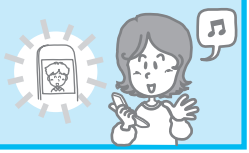
- The screens shown as examples in this manual are displayed when "English" is set for "バイリンガル" (Select language). Set "English" for "バイリンガル" (Select language) beforehand.
- In this manual, "OFF" is set to the "Stand-by display" in order to make the screens clear. Also, the parts of the operating instruction screens that need an explanation are shown close up.
- This manual mainly explains the operations with the default settings. If you change the settings, the contents displayed on your FOMA terminal may differ from those on this manual.
- The screens inserted in this manual are only the images, which may look different from the actual screens.
- This manual describes "Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli supporting IC Card function" as "Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli".

Quick Search

● Go to the page when you want to know the function from keywords.

Useful functions for talking

- Do/Do not show your caller ID p.53 Caller ID Notification
- Hold the current call p.58 Holding
- Change FOMA voice call to videophone call p.58 Switch videophone
- Adjust the volume of the other party's voice p.76 Volume



When you cannot answer incoming call

- Hold incoming call without answering p.78 Answer hold
- Ask your party to refrain from calling p.79 Public mode (Driving mode) / p.80 Public mode (power off)
- Record voice or videophone message p.82 Record message



Change melody or illumination

- Change the ring volume p.77 Ring volume
- Set ring tone to each party p.132 Discern connect/Discern group
- Change ring tone p.138 Select ring tone
- Notice incoming call with vibration alert p.140 Vibrator
- Mute keypad tone p.141 Keypad sound
- Set silent mode p.143 Manner mode
- Change color or lighting pattern of incoming call lamp p.156 Illumination



Change/Indicate display

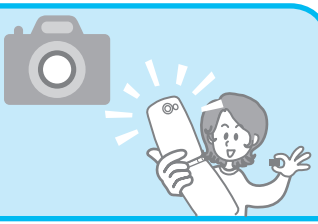
- Know the meaning of symbol (icon) on the screen p.30 View display
- Change font size in phonebook, etc. pp.126, 128, 404 Big font, Standard font
- Change standby screen (wallpaper) p.146 Display setting
- Display calendar on standby screen p.148 Calendar
- Change font type or thickness p.157 Font
- Change font size in i-mode or mail pp.240, 289 Font size
- Change font size while entering p.439 CHG input size

Master mail



- Send Deco-mail p.261 Deco-mail
- Send image or melody p.265 Attach melody/image/movie/i-motion/ToruCa
- Automatically sort mail p.282 Auto-sort

Master camera



- Change the size to shoot p.199 Select size
- Save to miniSD memory card p.201 Select to save
- Shoot with light p.211 Light
- Display the shot p.335 My picture

Use your phone without worries



- Lock your FOMA terminal that is not in your hand p.171 Omakase Lock
- Prevent others from viewing the phonebook data p.173 Secret mode/Secret data only mode
- Reject unidentified call p.187 Call setting w/o ID
- Reject call if the party is not stored in phonebook p.189 Reject unknown
- Save data such as phonebook in case of loss of the data p.190 Data Security Service*

*: Data Security Service is a pay service you need to subscribe to.
(To subscribe to this service, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand.)

Miscellaneous



- Easily access the functions you often use p.38 Original menu
- Save battery life p.150 Backlight (Power saver mode)
- Read QR code or bar code p.212 Bar code reader
- Use miniSD memory card p.362 miniSD memory card
- Communicate with PC or another FOMA terminal p.374 Infrared data exchange/OBEX
- Listen to music p.387 Music player
- Use as alarm clock p.397 Alarm clock
- Use as calculator p.409 Calculator
- Update software p.514 Software Update
- Update security p.519 Scanning function

For more information about other operation guides, see “How to Use This Manual”. →p.1
Also, “Quick Manual” instructs you how to operate often-used functions. →p.538

Contents

How to use this manual 1
Quick search 4
Contents 6
Features of the FOMA N902iL 8
Mastering the FOMA N902iL! 10
Safety Precautions 12
Handling with Care 19
Intellectual Property Right 22
Main Components and Optional Equipment 24

Getting Started 25
- Component names and functions
- Icons on the display and indicator display
- Main menu · Using menus
- Launcher mode on the main menu
- Inserting/Removing the battery pack
- Charging the battery
- Turning the power on/off
- Initial setting · Set time
- Communication mode
- Caller ID Notification, etc.

Making/Receiving FOMA Voice Calls 55
- Making/Receiving FOMA voice calls
- Changing a call from voice to videophone
- WORLD CALL · Chaku-moji · Redial
- Pause dial · Hands-free · In-car hands-free
- Received calls · Volume · Answer hold
- Public mode(Driving mode)/Public mode(power off)
- Record message, etc.

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls 87
- Making/Receiving videophone calls
- Using Chara-den · Remote monitoring, etc.

PushTalk 105
- What is PushTalk?
- Making/Receiving PushTalk calls
- PushTalk phonebook · PushTalk setting

Using the Phonebook 117
- Adding phonebook entries · Group setting
- Search phonebook · Copy a phonebook entry
- Discern connect, etc.

Tone/Display/Lighting Settings 137
- Select ring tone · Vibrator · Keypad sound
- Charge sound · Receive ringing time
- Manner mode · Display setting · Backlight
- Menu display set · Neuropointer
- Illumination/Illumination in talk
- Desktop icon · 3D display setting
- Style mode, etc.

Security Settings 167
- Security code · PIN code · Dial lock
- Omakase Lock · Secret mode · Secret folder
- Original lock · Keypad lock · Mail security
- Restrictions · Reject unknown
- Data Security Service, etc.

Camera 193
- Photo mode · Continuous mode
- Framed photography · Movie mode
- Bar code reader · Access reader, etc.

i-mode/i-motion/i-channel 221
- What is i-mode? · i-mode menu
- Viewing sites · My Menu · i-mode password
- Internet connection · Bookmark
- Phone To/Mail To/Web To/SIP To/ IM To functions
- Message services · What is i-motion?
- Downloading i-motion from a site
- Using i-channel, etc.

Mail 253
· What is i-mode?
· Composing and sending i-mode message
· Deco-mail · Emotion-expressing mail
· Receive option · Check new messages
· i-motion mail · Chat mail
· SMS (Short Message), etc.

i-αppli 303
· What is i-αppli? · Downloading i-αppli
· i-αppli standby screen
· Upgrading an i-αppli, etc.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa 317
· What is Osaifu-Keitai?
· Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli
· What is ToruCa? · Acquiring ToruCa
· Viewing ToruCa · IC card lock
· Face authentication, etc.

Full Browser 325
· Displaying website designed for PC
· Full Browser screen
· Full Browser settings, etc.

Display/Edit/Organization/ Music Playback 333
· Displaying images · Playing movies/i-motion
· Edit images · Edit movie · Rec. Chara-den
· Playing melody · miniSD memory card
· Infrared data exchange function
· Displaying PDF data · Printing images
· How to play music, etc.

Other Useful Functions 391
· Multi Access · Multitask · Alarm setting
· Alarm clock · Schedule · To Do list
· Own number · Call data · Calculator
· Text memo · Auto dial setting · Reset settings
· Initialize, etc.

Network Services 419
· Voice Mail service · Call waiting
· Call Forwarding service
· Nuisance Call Blocking service
· Caller ID Request Service
· Dual Network service · Multi Number, etc.

Data Communication 431

Entering Text 437
· Switching character input method
· Enter kanji/hiragana/katakana/alphabetic/ numeric characters
· Copying/Pasting text · Kuten code
· Enter text in 2-touch input mode
· Enter text in T9 input mode
· Common phrases · Own dictionary
· Download dictionary, etc.

WLAN 451
· Making/Receiving VoIP calls
· WLAN Browser · Presence · Messenger
· WLAN setting, etc.

Appendix/External Devices/ Troubleshooting..... 477
· Menu function list
· Data stored at the time of purchase
· Symbols and special characters · Pictographs
· Face mark · Options and accessories
· Data transfer software, Movie playing software
· Troubleshooting · Error message
· Software update · Scan · Specifications
· Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of mobile phones
· What is Wi-Fi?, etc.

Index/Quick Manual 527
· Index
· Quick manual
· Quick manual (WLAN)

Features of the FOMA N902iL

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

i-mode

i-mode is an online service that allows you to use i-mode menu site (program) or i-mode compatible site or to send and receive mail by using the i-mode terminal display.

• i-mode →p.222 • i-motion mail →p.274 • i-mode mail →p.254
• i-αppli →p.304 • i-channel →p.250 • i-motion →p.248

*: i-mode is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

p.221

Deco-mail

You can compose and send expressive mail by changing the font color, size, or the background color for the message, or by inserting a Deco-mail picture or a photo shot with the built-in camera.
The FOMA terminal supports templates, which means that you can compose Deco-mail easily by using the format of the received Deco-mail or the downloaded format.

p.261

Large-sized i-αppli, i-αppli DX

Download i-αppli from the site, and you can enjoy the game or automatically update the stock price or weather report. i-αppli DX can be linked to the information such as the phonebook or mail stored in i-mode terminal.

p.303

Security settings →p.167

Omakase Lock

If you lost your FOMA terminal, you can lock it or release the lock condition on your request. For inquiries, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover.

* Omakase Lock is a service where the FOMA terminal is locked at the subscriber's request. Even if the user is not the subscriber, it may be locked at the subscriber's request.

Data Security Service

This is a data backup service that you store your data such as the phonebook, images and messages on the Data Security Center and if your FOMA terminal happens to be lost, the Center will help you retrieve the stored data to a mobile phone. Moreover you can edit or manage those stored data using PC and reflect the edited data to your mobile phone.
For notes and details of the Data Security Service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]". For inquiries, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover of this manual.

* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

Wide variety of network services

- Voice Mail service
- Call Waiting
- Call Forwarding service
- Nuisance Call Blocking
- Caller ID Request service
- Dual Network service
- English Guidance
- Multi Number

p.419

Business moperaIP Centrex

This is a DoCoMo's mobile centrex service which offers an internal phone system using WLAN, external IP phone system and additional PBX functions without having to install equipment such as IP-PBX in an office. Extension calls between offices where "business moperaIP Centrex" has been implemented and outside calls between contracted companies are available free of charge. For notes and more information about using this service, contact the number listed in "For inquiries" on the back cover of this manual.
* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

WLAN full browser supported

Websites for PC can be displayed in WLAN full browser, enabling you to get a lot more information.

p.458

IEEE802.11b/g supported

IEEE802.11b (11Mbps max.) and IEEE802.11g (54Mbps max.) wireless LAN standards are supported so that large-capacity and high-speed communication can be possible.

Camera

Using the rear camera having 1.25 million effective pixels (film valid pixels: 1.23 million) enables you to shoot a large image of 1,280 × 960 dots.
Still images or movies you shot appear clearly on the large, high-quality LCD screen. The still images or movies can be attached to i-mode mail.

p.193

2.5 inch screen

260,000-color "Mobile Shine View EX LCD" allows you to enjoy beautiful colors. The 2.5-inch large screen allows you to view larger fonts or images, and makes i-αppli more enjoyable.

PDF Viewer

Enables you to view a PDF data. You can check a PDF containing a map, catalog, time table, etc. on i-mode terminal as if you carried a piece of paper.

p.379

Bar code reader

You can read the bar code or QR code using the camera function and use the information to store it into the phonebook and compose i-mode mail, etc. You can also read the QR code of images and melodies.

p.212

Infrared data exchange/Infrared remote control

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals using Infrared data exchange. You can also use your FOMA terminal as a remote control.

pp.374, 379

Multi access

Multi access function allows you to use a voice call, packet communication and SMS at the same time, which means that you can talk on the phone during i-mode communication or send/receive mail during the talk.

p.392

miniSD memory card available

miniSD memory card enables you to exchange data such as phonebook, bookmark, mail or image with PC or another FOMA terminal. Save a movie or music data created on an external device to the miniSD memory card, and you can play it on the FOMA terminal (data may not be played under some condition).

pp.362, 387

Wide variety of lock functions

A wide variety of lock functions such as keypad lock and original lock are supported.

p.167

Ring tone

The ring tone supports 67-harmony ADPCM based on FM + WaveTable and sound effects such as voice.

p.138

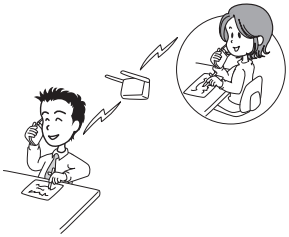
Mastering the FOMA N902iL!

Use as an extension phone in an office
“VoIP call”

● **VoIP call→p.452**

Use your FOMA terminal as an extension phone to call via a main unit (SIP server) installed in the WLAN network. Useful services (extension functions) such as call forwarding, park holding and step call are also available.

* VoIP: Voice over Internet Protocol



Connect to the Internet via WLAN
“WLAN Browser” “Full browser”

● **WLAN Browser→p.458**

● **Full browser→p.325**

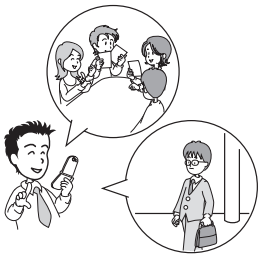
Access an Intranet or Internet site via the WLAN network. Using the full browser also enables you to view websites designed for a PC.



Check a member’s presence
“Presence”

● **Presence function→p.460**

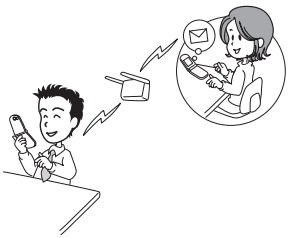
Check the presence information on a member registered in the WLAN network on the FOMA display.



Exchange instant messages via extension
“Messenger”

● **Messenger→p.463**

Exchange simple messages (instant messages) between members registered in the WLAN network.



Enjoy a talk with your fellows

“PushTalk”

● **PushTalk→p.105**

Press the PushTalk key ([P]) to open the PushTalk phonebook. You can talk with one party or more (up to five people including yourself) simply by selecting the parties and then pressing the PushTalk key ([P]).

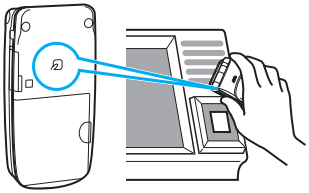


Compatible with i-mode FeliCa

“Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa”

● **Osaifu-Keitai→p.318**

Transmit electronic cash into the IC card in your FOMA terminal from the Osaifu-Keitai site or check the account balance or transaction history. Register it as your company ID card depending on your situation or use it for making payments such as an airline ticket or as a point card. It is convenient even for corporate clients.



● **ToruCa→p.319**

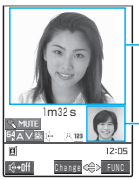
ToruCa are electronic cards that can be captured using an “Osaifu-Keitai”. ToruCa makes it possible to download bits of useful information onto your mobile phone such as restaurant flyers, and promotional coupons - just like the paper-based cards distributed at restaurants, etc.

Talk over faces

“Videophone”

● **Making/Receiving videophone calls→p.87**

Videophone system brings you a real-time video transmission while chatting and it makes your videophone life more enjoyable. You can transfer scenery around you using the rear camera, or the remote monitoring function supports security confirmation of your indoor pet calling from outside.



The other party's image

Your image

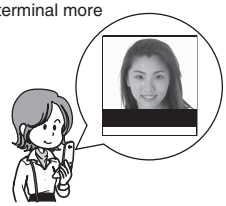
Security functions more safely

“Keypad lock/Face authentication”

● **Keypad lock→p.182**

● **Face authentication→p.183**

Set Keypad lock to lock key operations automatically when folding your FOMA terminal and Face authentication to release the lock. Simply combining those functions allows you to use your terminal more safely.



Safety Precautions ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS

■ To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read “Safety Precautions” carefully before use. Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.

■ The safety precautions must be observed at all times since they contain information intended to prevent bodily injuries or damage to the property.

■ The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injuries and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly.

⚠ DANGER	Indicates that improper use may directly and immediately result in death or serious bodily injury.
⚠ WARNING	Indicates that improper use may result in death or serious bodily injury.
⚠ CAUTION	Indicates that improper use may result in bodily injury and/or damage to the property.

■ The following symbols indicate specific directions:

 Don't	Indicates that it is prohibited.
 No disassembly	Indicates that it must not be disassembled.
 No wet hands	Indicates that you must not touch it with wet hands.
 No liquids	Indicates that it must not be used near water, which means that you must not get it wet.
 Do	Indicates that you must do it following the instructions.
 Unplug	Indicates that you must unplug the power cord from the outlet.

■ “Safety Precautions” are categorized into the following:

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common) 13
2. Handling the FOMA terminal 14
3. Handling the Battery Pack 16
4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger) 16
5. Handling the FOMA card (UIM) 18
6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment 18

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (UIM) (Common)

⚠DANGER



Use the battery pack and adapter (including the charger) specified by NTT DoCoMo for the FOMA terminal.

Using the devices other than those specified by NTT DoCoMo may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other devices to leak, overheat, explode, ignite or malfunction.

Battery Pack N11
Desktop Holder N07
FOMA AC Adapter 01
FOMA DC Adapter 01
Data Communications Adapter N01
FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01
FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

* For information on other compatible products, contact the DoCoMo service counter.



Do not get the devices wet.

Exposure of the FOMA terminal and other devices to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc. Be careful where and how you use the devices.



Do not attempt to disassemble or remodel the FOMA terminal or other devices, and do not solder them.

Doing so may cause fire, injury or electric shock.
Also, doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.



Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal or other devices in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near fire, near a heater, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the devices to be deformed or malfunction, lower the performance or shorten the life. Also, doing so may cause part of the case to become hot and possibly cause burns.

⚠WARNING



Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, charger or adapters or FOMA card (UIM) in a cooking appliance such as a microwave oven or in a pressure cooker.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger) to overheat, smoke or ignite, or damage the IC.



Do not subject the FOMA terminal or other devices to strong impacts or throw them.

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.



Do not use the FOMA terminal or other devices in a place (gas (petrol) station, etc.) where there is a risk of ignition or explosion.

Using the FOMA terminal in a dusty environment or near flammable gas such as propane or gasoline may cause explosion or fire.



Keep conductive foreign objects (metal, pencil lead, etc.) away from the charge terminal or external connector. Do not insert such objects inside.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in short-circuits causing the FOMA terminal to ignite or malfunction.



If you notice something unusual about the FOMA terminal or other devices, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during use, charging or storage, immediately:

1. Unplug the power cord from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use the devices may cause overheat, explosion or ignition, or cause the battery pack to leak.

⚠CAUTION



If your child uses the FOMA terminal, instruct him/her how to use it. Make sure that he/she always uses the FOMA terminal correctly as you instruct.

Improper usage may cause injury.

Continued on next page

Don't

Do not keep the devices in a humid, dusty or hot place.

Doing so may cause malfunction.

Do

Using repeatedly or for a long time by charging, shooting/playing a movie, talking on a videophone call or using i-mode/i-αppli may increase the temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (including the charger).

Exposure of your skin directly to the high-temperature part for a long time may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema.

Take great care especially when using the FOMA terminal connected to the adapter (including the charger) continuously for a long time.

Don't

Do not leave the devices on a slope or unstable surface.

The devices may fall to cause injury or malfunction.

Do

Keep the devices out of young children's reach.

A young child may mistakenly swallow a device or suffer from the injury.

Do

When you attach the earphone/microphone to the FOMA terminal to play games or music, do not make the volume too loud.

Excessive high volume may damage your hearing. Also it may prevent you from hearing the ambient sounds and cause an accident.

2. Handling the FOMA terminal

⚠WARNING

Don't

Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.

Since November 1st, 2004, using a mobile phone while driving is a legal offense. Even if you are using a hands-free kit, pull off the road and park in a safe place before using your phone. While driving, set Public mode (Driving mode) or use the Voice Mail service.

Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in a place where you are not allowed to use a mobile phone, such as in an airplane or in a hospital.

Using the FOMA terminal in such a place may affect electronic or medical equipment.

If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set the function to OFF before turning off the FOMA terminal.

Follow the instructions of individual hospitals or health care facilities that prohibit carrying or using mobile phones.

If you use a phone in an airplane, which is prohibited, you may be punished by law.

Do

If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration/speaker volume settings.

Your heart may be adversely affected.

Don't

Do not aim or direct the Infrared data port towards your or another person's eyes when using Infrared data exchange.

Doing so may cause eye injury. Do not aim or direct the Infrared data port towards another infrared device as doing so may cause the device to malfunction.

Do

Keep the FOMA terminal turned off near electronic equipment using high-precision control or weak signals.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

* Take great care on the following electronic devices:

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturers or distributors for information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.

Don't

If you are wearing a medical electronic device, do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast pocket or inner pocket.

Using the FOMA terminal near medical electronic devices may cause them to malfunction.

Do

Hold the FOMA terminal away from your ear and keep it at a reasonable distance when you talk in hands-free mode with the speaker.

Failure to do so may adversely affect your hearing.

Do

If you hear thunder while using your FOMA terminal outdoors, turn it off and move to a safe place immediately.

Doing so may expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.

Don't

Do not shine the light at anyone driving a car or other vehicle.

Doing so may prevent a driver from driving safely and cause a traffic accident.

Don't

Keep the display light away from a person's eyes.

The light may affect eyesight. Also, this may dazzle or surprise him/her and cause an injury.

Don't

Do not put the FOMA terminal on the dashboard, etc. as doing so may cause problems in the event of air bag inflation.

Air bag inflation may cause the FOMA terminal to hit you or another person, which may lead to injury, malfunction, breakage, etc.

⚠CAUTION

Do

In some types of vehicle, using the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.

Do not use the FOMA terminal if the terminal may impair safe driving.

Don't

Do not swing the FOMA terminal by the hand strap or another part.

Doing so may cause bodily injury and malfunction or breakage.

Don't

Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the miniSD memory card slot.

Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Do

Take care when attaching or removing the miniSD memory card.

This may injure your hands or fingers.

Don't

Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the FOMA card slot on the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Don't

Do not place magnetic cards near the FOMA terminal or clamp them in the fold of the FOMA terminal.

Magnetic data on cash cards (ATM cards, bank cards), credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.

Do

If the display or camera lens is broken, be careful of the broken glass.

The surface of the display or camera lens is covered by a plastic panel so as to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken display or camera lens may cause injury.

Don't

Do not leave the built-in camera lens exposed to direct sunlight for a long time.

The condensing action of the lens may cause fire or malfunction.

Don't

Do not turn the light on when the FOMA terminal is close to a person's eyes. Take care not to bring the light close to a person's eyes or look directly into the light while it is lit.

Doing so may cause impaired vision or otherwise adversely affect his/her eyes. Also, doing so may dazzle or surprise him/her and cause an injury.

Don't

Do not use the light for use other than shooting with the built-in cameras.

The light will be turned off if you do not operate at all for approximately 30 seconds. If you use it for purposes other than shooting with the built-in camera (e.g. using it as an electronic torch), the light is suddenly turned off, which may cause an accident.

Do

Using the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and see a doctor.

The metal is used in the following locations:

Location	Material	Surface treatment
Multifunction keys	Aluminum alloy	Alumite treatment
Neuropointer Key		
Rear side	Vacuum evaporated tin	In-mold foil, UM coating

Do

Take care not to pinch your finger or the strap when opening or folding the FOMA terminal.

Doing so may cause injury or damage.

Continued on next page

Don't

If the display is broken and the liquid crystal then leaks, do not lick or inhale the liquid or get the liquid on your skin.

If the liquid comes into contact with your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse your eyes or mouth with clean water and see a doctor.

If the liquid comes into contact with your skin or clothes, immediately wipe it off with alcohol, and wash with water and soap.

The liquid may cause loss of eyesight or skin problems.

3. Handling the Battery Pack

■ **Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack.**

Label description	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion

⚠DANGER

Don't

Do not throw the battery pack into fire.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

Don't

Do not let wire or other metals come close to the terminal. Also, do not carry or store the battery with metallic items such as a necklace.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

Don't

If you are having difficulty in fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not apply excessive force. Check the battery's orientation before inserting it.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

Do

If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse them immediately with clean water and consult a doctor as soon as possible.

Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.

Don't

Do not puncture the battery pack, hammer it or step on it.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

⚠WARNING

Do

If charging the battery is not completed within the appropriate charging time, stop charging.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

Do

If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, rinse immediately with clean water.

Failure to do so may cause skin problems.

Do

If the battery is leaking or smells strange, immediately move it away from any heat sources.

Leaking fluid may ignite and cause fire or explosion.

⚠CAUTION

Don't

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.

Doing so may cause fire or environmental destruction. Tape over the charger terminals and take the battery to a DoCoMo Shop or follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.

4. Handling the Adapters (including the Charger)

⚠WARNING

Do

Use the specified socket and voltage.

Using a charging device with a non-specified socket or voltage may cause fire or malfunction. If you use the FOMA terminal overseas, take the FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01 with you.

AC Adapter: AC100V

FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use:
AC100V to 240V (Plug only into home AC outlet)

DC Adapter:
DC12/24 V (only for cars with negative ground)



The DC Adapter is only for cars with negative ground. Do not use it in cars with positive ground.

Failure to do so may cause fire.



Use only the specified fuse to replace the fuse of the DC Adapter.

Using it with non-specified fuses may cause fire or malfunction.

Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.



If the power cord becomes damaged, stop using it.

Continuing to use it may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.



Do not touch a charging device, power cord, or AC socket with wet hands.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock.



Do not short-circuit the charging terminals or connector terminals while a charging device is connected to an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket. Also, do not touch the charger or connector terminals with any part of your body.

Doing so may cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or bodily injury.



Do not use the AC Adapter or Desktop Holder in a very humid place.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock.



Wipe any dust off the plug.

Failure to do so may cause fire.



If you hear thunder, do not touch the FOMA terminal and adapter (including charger).

Failure to do so may expose you to lightning or electric shock.



Always unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet if it will be left unused for a long period.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



If fluids such as water seep into the device, immediately unplug it from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Do not apply excessive force when the cord cannot be unplugged.

Doing so may damage the cord and cause electric shock or malfunction.



Do not plug too many devices at the same time as doing so may cause the limit of the outlet or wire socket to be exceeded.

Tangling electric cords may cause overheating or fire.



Do not place a charging device in an unstable place while charging. Do not cover or wrap the charging device with cloth or a futon.

Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal to fall off, overheat, catch fire or malfunction.



When plugging the AC Adapter into an electric socket, do not allow it to touch metal, and be sure to plug the charger securely.

Failure to observe this precaution may cause electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

⚠CAUTION



Before cleaning the device, always unplug it from the electric socket or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so may cause electric shock.



Do not place heavy objects on the power cord.

Doing so may cause electric shock or fire.



When unplugging a charger from an electric socket or cigarette lighter socket, do not pull the power cord itself but grasp the plug.

Pulling the cord itself may damage the cord and cause fire or electric shock.

5. Handling the FOMA card (UIM)

⚠CAUTION



Be careful when dismounting the FOMA card (IC part).

This may injure your hands or fingers.



Do not throw the FOMA card into fire.

Doing so may cause melting, overheating, smoke emission, data loss or malfunction.

6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

■ **According to the Guidelines on the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment such as Cellular Telephones - Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment established by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan.**

⚠WARNING



When using a mobile phone, keep it more than 22cm away from your implanted pacemaker or ICD.

Radio waves emitted by mobile phones may adversely affect implanted pacemakers and ICDs when used in close proximity.



Turn off your mobile phone in crowded places such as peak-hour trains if implanted electronic medical devices may be in use near you.

Radio waves emitted by mobile phones may adversely affect implanted pacemakers and ICDs when used in close proximity.



Observe the following inside hospitals and health care facilities.

- Do not take your mobile phone into an operating room, intensive care unit (ICU), or coronary care unit (CCU).
- Keep the FOMA terminal turned off in hospital wards.
- Turn off your mobile phone even in hospital lobbies, waiting rooms, and corridors if electronic medical devices may be in use near you.
- For use inside medical institutions, please follow the instructions given at individual locations.
- If your FOMA terminal is equipped with the Auto power function, make sure to set the function to OFF before turning off the FOMA terminal.



Electronic medical devices other than implanted pacemakers and ICDs may also be used outside hospitals. Users of electronic medical devices are advised to ask the manufacturer whether these instruments can be affected by radio waves.

Radio waves may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

Handling with Care

General Notes

- **Do not allow the devices to become wet.**
  The FOMA terminal, battery, adapters (including the charger) and the FOMA card (UIM) are not water-proof. Do not use them in very humid places or in the rain. When carrying the FOMA terminal in your shirt pocket, moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Failure caused by the equipment becoming wet is not covered by the warranty and the equipment may not be repairable. These cases are not covered by the warranty, and any repairs that may be possible will be carried out at the subscriber's expense.
- **Wipe with a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses).**
  - The special coating may be applied on the FOMA display in order to clear the color LCD. Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and wipe it using a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses). Leaving the surface exposed to moisture or soil for a long period may peel off or stain the LCD coating.
  - Wiping with alcohol, thinner, benzene or liquid soap may cause decals to fade or other discoloration.
- **Clean connectors with a dry cloth or cotton swab occasionally.**
  Dirty connectors may cause poor contact and the FOMA terminal may switch off. Also, as dirty connectors may prevent proper charging, clean the connectors with a dry cloth or cotton swab when they are soiled.
- **Do not place the FOMA terminal near the airflow of an air-conditioner.**
  Sudden temperature changes may cause condensation and corrode internal parts.
- **Do not keep the FOMA terminal in a place where extreme force may be applied to it.**
  Placing the FOMA terminal in a bag with many other items, or sitting down with the handset in your pocket may damage the display or internal circuit boards and cause malfunction. Such damage is not covered by the warranty.
- **Please read the relevant instruction manual thoroughly before using any DoCoMo mobile phone, battery, adapter (including battery charger), or other accessory.**

Handling the FOMA Terminal

- **Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.**
  The operating temperature range is from 5 to 35°C and the humidity range is from 45 to 85%.
- **The FOMA terminal may become warm while being used or charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **If you use the FOMA terminal near a landline, TV or radio, the FOMA terminal may affect the operation of these devices. Use the FOMA terminal as far as possible from these devices.**
- **It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal.**
  Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- **Do not sit down with the FOMA terminal in your back pocket. Also, do not put the FOMA terminal at the bottom of a bag where it may be subject to excessive pressure or weight.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not fold the FOMA terminal with an object such as the hand strap inserted between the keypad and display.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction or breakage.
- **Usually keep the headset connector cover, external connector covers and miniSD memory card slot cover closed.**
  Failure to do so may cause dust or water to seep in and cause malfunction.
- **Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight.**
  Doing so may discolor or burn the element.
- **Do not put a sticker, etc. on the display or keypads.**
  Doing so may cause you to wrongly press a key when the FOMA terminal is folded, or may damage the FOMA terminal.
- **Slip your hand through the strap to hold the FOMA terminal.**
  Failure to do so may cause you to drop the FOMA terminal and cause malfunction.
- **Do not rub or scratch the display with metal, etc.**
  Doing so may damage the display.

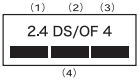
WLAN

- **Keep the FOMA terminal away from the magnetized items or magnetic waves such as electric appliances, audio, video and office automation equipment.**
  - Magnetic influence or the electric noise may cause a noise increase or communication failure. (Especially use of the microwave may affect the FOMA terminal.)
  - Putting the FOMA terminal close to the TV or radio may cause the reception failure or distortion of the TV picture.
  - If there exists several WLAN access points around and uses the same channel, the valid search may not be performed.

Continued on next page

Frequency band

- **The frequency band that the devices with WLAN incorporated use is described on the FOMA terminal side of the insertion unit of the battery pack. The following description guides to the label code.**



(1) 2.4: Shows the wireless facility using the 2,400MHz band.

(2) DS/OF: Shows that the modulation scheme is DS-SS and OFDM.

(3) 4: Shows that assumed interference distance is 40m or less.

(4) ▬▬▬: Means that all bandwidths of 2,400MHz to 2,483.5Mhz range are used and avoidance is available for the bandwidth of the mobile identification device.

Notes on use of the 2.4GHz device

The frequency band of the WLAN-incorporated devices is used to operate the in-house radio station (license required), specified low power radio station (license not required) for the mobile identification used in the factory manufacturing line and amateur radio station (license not required) as well as the industry, science and medical equipment such as an microwave oven.

- **Check that the in-house radio station, specified low power radio station and amateur ratio station are not operated around before using this type of devices.**
- **In the event that this type of devices causes the case of hazardous radio interferometry against the in-house radio station for the mobile identification, change the used frequency band as soon as possible, or halt the radio wave transmission to contact the number described below about treatment for avoiding the interference such as partitioning.**
- **In addition, ask the contact below if you have any problems such as the case of radio interferometry against the specified low power radio station for the mobile identification or amateur radio station caused by this type of devices.**

Contact at:

(In English)

0120-005-250 (toll free)

*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 151 (toll free)

*Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

Handling the Battery Pack

- **The battery pack is a consumable item.**
  The operating time of the fully charged battery pack depends on the conditions under which you use it, but if it decreases significantly, it is time to exchange it. Exchange it for a new battery pack with the same specifications.
- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**
- **Make sure to charge the battery the first time you use the FOMA terminal or if you have not used it for a long period.**
- **The operating time of the battery pack depends on the conditions under which you use it and the deterioration level of the battery pack.**
- **Depending on the conditions under which it is used, the battery pack may swell as the life comes close to the end, but this causes no problem.**
- **Leaving the metallic part (connector) soiled may cause poor contact and the FOMA terminal may switch off. Wipe off the dirt with a dry cloth or cotton swab before use.**
- **Do not store or leave the battery pack with no battery left.**
  Failure to observe this instruction may lower the performance or shorten the life of the battery pack.
  If you leave it for a long period, remove it from the FOMA terminal, and store it in a cool, dry place. Also, charge the battery at least once in half a year.
- **Keep the battery pack in a cool and dry place away from direct sunlight.**
  If you do not use the battery pack for a long period, use up the battery, remove the pack from the FOMA terminal, and keep it in a plastic bag.

Handling the Adapters and Charger

- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**
- **Do not charge the battery:**
  - In a humid, dusty or shaky place
  - Near your landline, TV or radio
- **The adapter or charger may become warm while the FOMA terminal is charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **Do not use the DC Adapter while the engine is not running.**
  Doing so may drain the car battery.

- **If you use an outlet that provides pull-out prevention, follow the instructions of the outlet manual.**
- **Do not subject the adapter or charger to strong impacts. Do not deform the charging terminal or terminal guide.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.

Handling the FOMA card (UIM)

- **When inserting the FOMA card into the FOMA terminal, do not apply unnecessary force.**
- **The FOMA card may become warm while being used or while the FOMA terminal is charged. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.**
- **The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card into some other type of IC Card reader/writer. It is your responsibility.**
- **Always keep the IC part clean.**
- **Wipe with a soft dry cloth (of the type used for eyeglasses).**
- **It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on the FOMA card.**
  Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- **To preserve the environment, take the used FOMA card to a DoCoMo shop.**
- **Do not use the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.**
  The operating temperature range is from 5 to 35°C and the humidity range is from 45 to 85%.
- **Do not scratch, touch or short-circuit the IC carelessly.**
  Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.
- **Do not drop the FOMA card or subject it to strong impacts.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **Do not bend the FOMA card or put something heavy on it.**
  Doing so may cause malfunction.
- **When removing the FOMA card, do not apply unnecessary force.**

Handling the miniSD Memory Card

Do not remove the miniSD memory card or turn off the FOMA terminal while using the miniSD memory card.
Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.

Handling the In-Car Holder

Be sure to attach the in-car holder to the arm rest, etc. Firmly place the FOMA terminal into the in-car holder.

Handling the Camera

If you break the law while using the FOMA terminal, you may be liable to prosecution under applicable laws and regulations (such as the Public Nuisance Laws).

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Half Mirror

Since this FOMA terminal is covered by a half mirror panel, the indicator display may not be visible in a bright place such as outdoors or under fluorescent light. This is normal, and you can continue to use it.

Intellectual Property Right

Copyright and Portrait Right

It is prohibited to duplicate, modify or publicly transmit contents such as text, images, music or software that were photographed using the FOMA terminal or downloaded from an Internet website, which are under third-party copyright, without the permission of the copyright holder, although it is permitted under copyright law to duplicate or quote the contents for personal use.
It may be prohibited to shoot or record a stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.
Shooting a photo of someone with the FOMA terminal without his or her permission, or displaying a photo of someone shot with the FOMA terminal on a web page without his or her permission may be a breach of portrait right.

Trademarks and registered trademarks

All company names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

- "FOMA", "mova", "i-mode", "i-Channel", "i-αppli", "i-αppli DX", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "Public mode", "i-melody", "i-area", "i-motion", "mopera", "mopera U", "Business mopera", "i-motion mail", "Chaku-motion", "Deco-mail", "Chara-den", "i-shot", "sigmarion", "musea", "DoPa", "Pake-Houdai", "Short Mail", "Dual Network", "FirstPass", "V-live", "visualnet", "Security Scan", "ToruCa", "PushTalk", "PushTalkPlus", "My DoCoMo", "iD", "DCMX", "FOMA" logos, "i-mode" logo, "i-αppli" logo and "ToruCa" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- miniSD™ is a trademark of SD Association.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- LCフォント/LC FONT®, エルシーフォント® and LC logo are registered trademark of Sharp Corporation.
- T9® and T9 logo are registered trademarks of Tegic Communications, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- T9 Text Input is patented or under patent application worldwide.
- Dialog Clarity, WOW, SRS and the symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- Dialog Clarity and WOW technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.
- キャッチホン (Call Waiting) is registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- QRコード is registered trademark of Denso Wave, Inc.
- Handset 3D, Game 3D and their logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sonaptic LTD. in the UK.
- This product is equipped with Flash® Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. Flash, Flash Lite and Macromedia are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- NetFront and IrFront are registered trademarks or trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
  Copyright© 1996-2007 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- This product is equipped with NetFront for the Internet by ACCESS CO., LTD. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.
  Copyright© 1996-2007 ACCESS CO., LTD.
- Gガイド, G-GUIDE, Gガイドモバイル, G-GUIDE MOBILE and Gガイド related logo are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. in the United States and its affiliates in Japan.
- McAfee® and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries. All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners. ©2006 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
- Apple, Apple logo and QuickTime are registered trademarks of Apple Computer Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- QuickTime logo is a trademark of Apple Computer Inc.
- "vMaicovicon" is a registered trademark of Matsushita Electric Industrial Co., Ltd.
- The service name and logo mark for FreeDial is a trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- Wi-Fi®, Wi-Fi Alliance®, Wi-Fi logo and Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.
- Wi-Fi CERTIFIED™, WMM™, WPA™ and WPA2™ are trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.

- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and all JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and/or other countries. Powered by JBlend™ Technology. JBlend and JBlend logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation.
- “カメラでケンサク！ERサーチ” and its logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of BANDAI NETWORKS CO., LTD.
- The other company names and product names described in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Others

- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and it is permitted to use for personal purpose and for nonprofit purpose only when you:
  - Record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
  - Play MPEG-4 Video recorded by consumers engaged in personal and nonprofit activities
  - Play MPEG-4 Video provided by a provider licensed by MPEG-LA

  When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.
- This product is equipped with Adobe Reader by Adobe Systems Incorporated.
  Copyright 2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Patents pending.
  Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
  Adobe and Adobe Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
  4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773
  5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073
  5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196
  5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754
  5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
  5,710,784 5,778,338
- This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product is equipped with IrFront® for OBEX and Infrared data exchange.
  IrFront® is a product of ACCESS CO., LTD.
- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, see “readme.txt” in the “GPL・LGPL等について” folder on the bundled CD-ROM. (“readme.txt” is only available in Japanese.)
- This product is antibacterial.
  The SIAA logo indicates that this product conforms to the JIS Z 2801 standard and that the quality control and information disclosure for this product follows the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles (SIAA).

  Antibacterial: Phone body (excluding the display, keys/buttons and terminals)
- Facestamps use the Virtual Accessory engine of N-Vision (Neven Vision, Inc.).
- ©2007 ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. All Rights Reserved.
- ©Disney
- ©2007 ARMOR PROJECT／BIRD STUDIO／SQUARE ENIX All Rights Reserved.

Description of Windows

- Windows® 2000 Professional stands for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- Windows® XP stands for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
- This manual describes Windows® 2000 Professional as Windows 2000.
- This manual describes Windows® XP Professional and Windows® XP Home Edition as Windows XP.

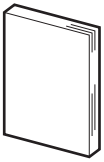
Main Components and Optional Equipment

<Main Components>

FOMA N902iL
(Including the warranty and Back Cover N19)



Manual for FOMA N902iL
(This manual)



* The Quick Manual starts on p.538.

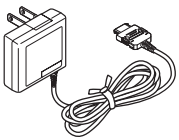
FOMA N902iL CD-ROM



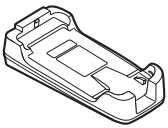
* This CD-ROM contains “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF) and “Kuten Code List” (PDF).

<Optional Equipment>

FOMA AC Adapter 01
(Including warranty and manual)



Desktop Holder N07
(Including manual)



Battery Pack N11
(Including manual)



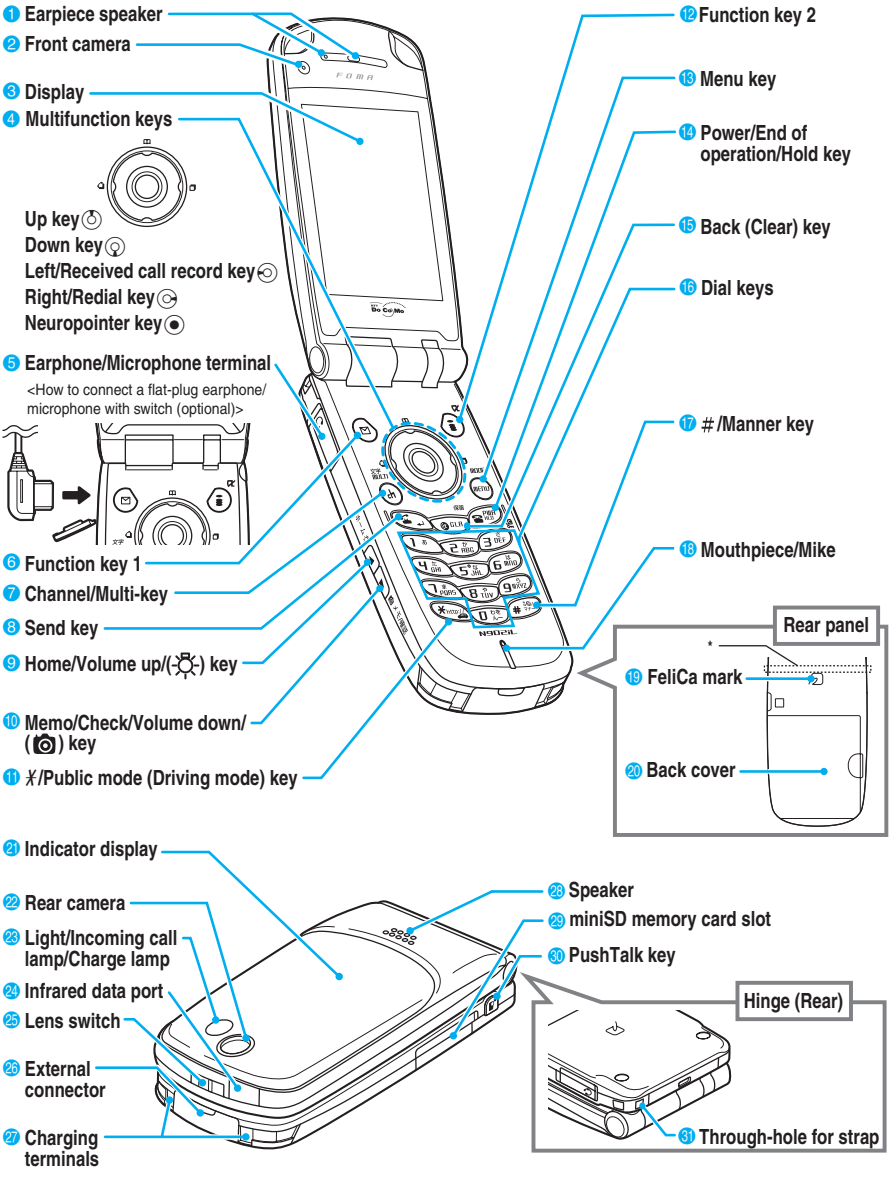
Other options and accessories →p.498

Getting Started

Component Names and Functions 26
Icons on the Display and Indicator Display 30
Guide to Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display) 33
Main Menu 34
Using Menus 35
Using the FOMA Card (UIM) 40
Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack 43
Charging the Battery 45
Checking the Battery Level 47
Turning the Power on/off 48
Switching Language Mode ..... Select language 49
Performing Initial Settings ..... Initial setting 49
Setting Date and Time ..... Set time 50
Setting the World Clock ..... World watch 50
Communication Mode 51
Showing Your Phone Number to the Other Party ..... Caller ID Notification 53
Checking Your Phone Number ..... Own number 53

Component Names and Functions

The following are the names and functions of the keys on the N902iL FOMA terminal:



*: This model is equipped with an internal antenna. Do not cover the antenna with your hand while using the terminal for better radio-wave reception.

■ Functions

1. Earpiece speaker
   - Allows you to hear the other party's voice.
2. Front camera
   - Shoots pictures (still images) or movies or sends your image to the other party during videophone calls.
3. Display
4. Multifunction keys

   Up key
   - Moves the cursor or highlight upward.
   - Scrolls up a screen. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
   - Opens the phonebook list screen.
   - Converts the entered characters into kanji, katakana and numbers.

   Down key
   - Moves the cursor or highlight downward.
   - Scrolls down a screen. Hold the key down to continue scrolling.
   - Opens the search phonebook screen.
   - Moves the cursor into the operation guidance area when the predictive candidates of the entered characters are listed.

   Left/Received call record key
   - Moves the cursor to the left.
   - Scrolls back to the previous screens by page.
   - Shows the Received calls record. →p.74

   Right/Redial key
   - Moves the cursor to the right.
   - Scrolls to the next screens by page.
   - Shows the Redial record. →p.64

   Neuropointer key
   - Neuropointer →p.29
5. Earphone/Microphone terminal
   - You can use your FOMA terminal in hands-free mode when plugging in a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). A conventional earphone/microphone with switch is also available by using the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 (optional).
6. Function key 1
   - Performs the operation indicated on the software key at the bottom-left of a screen. →p.28
7. Channel/Multi-key
   - Shows the channel list on the standby screen. →p.251
   - Opens the task change screen. →p.394
   - Switches the input mode on the text entry screen. →p.439
8. Send key
   - Makes voice calls. →pp.56, 453
   - Answers voice calls. →pp.71, 456
   - Answers videophone calls. →p.94
   - Switches the entered characters into upper or lower case. →p.443
9. Home/Volume up/(☼) key
   - Checks for missed calls or new mails with a FOMA terminal folded. →p.33
   - Connects to the site set in "Home URL" (p.240) or website easily.
   - Lights the display light of the indicator display when pressed with a FOMA terminal folded.
   - Turns up the earpiece volume during a call. →p.76
   - Returns to the previous character assigned to the same key during text entry. →p.438
   - Turns the light on when using the camera.
   - Hides the i-channel ticker on the indicator display.
   - Scrolls back to the previous screens by page.
10. Memo/Check/Volume down/(📷) key
    - Activates "Record message" when pressed while a FOMA terminal is ringing. →p.84
    - Plays recorded messages. →p.85
    - Turns down the earpiece volume during a call. →p.76
    - Checks for missed calls, new mails, etc. with a FOMA terminal folded. →p.81
    - Hides the i-channel ticker on the indicator display.
    - Scrolls to the next screens by page. (▲ and ▼ are collectively called sidekeys in this manual.)
11. ✱/Public mode (Driving mode) key
    - Enters "✱", "http://" or other character strings. →p.488
    - Sets or releases Public mode (Driving mode).
12. Function key 2
    - Performs the operation indicated on the software key at the bottom-right of a screen. →p.28
13. Menu key
    - Opens the main menu or Sliding Menu (Launcher). →p.35
14. Power/End of operation/Hold key
    - Turns on the power when pressed for 1 second or longer. →p.48
    - Turns off the power when pressed for 2 seconds or longer. →p.48
    - Ends a call. →p.56
    - Puts an incoming call on hold. →p.78
15. Back (Clear) key
    - Goes back to one step before.
    - Puts a call on hold. →pp.58, 455
    - Deletes the entered phone numbers or characters. →pp.57, 445
    - Runs the software set for the i-αppli standby screen. →p.314
16. Dial keys 0 to 9
    - Enters phone numbers. →p.56
    - Enters characters and numerals. →p.442
17. #/Manner key
    - Enters "#" or symbols. →p.488
    - Sets "Manner mode" and activates "Record message" when pressed while a FOMA terminal is ringing. →p.84
18. Mouthpiece/Mike
    - Conveys your voice from here. Do not cover the mouthpiece while you are talking. Doing so may prevent the other party from hearing your voice.
    - Works as the microphone when you shoot movies using the camera or record voice using "Picture voice".
19. FeliCa mark
    - The IC card is built-in. Pass the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit to use the IC card function. This IC card cannot be removed.
20. Back cover
21. Indicator display
    - Shows the FOMA terminal condition using messages, icons and animations.
22. Rear camera
    - Shoots pictures (still images) or movies or sends images such as a landscape to the other party during videophone calls.
23. Light/Incoming call lamp/Charge lamp
    - Provides light when pictures are taken with the camera.
    - Flashes when you receive a voice call, videophone call, mail, MessageR, MessageF or instant message. Lights in red while charging.
24. Infrared data port
    - Window used for sending or receiving infrared rays. →p.374
25. Lens switch
    - Switches the rear camera lens to (macro lens) when you scan information with Access reader or Bar code reader. →p.195
26. External connector
    - Used to connect an optional external device to a FOMA terminal.
27. Charging terminals
28. Speaker
    - Emits sounds such as a ring tone or voice of the other party in hands-free mode.
29. miniSD memory card slot
    - Slot for inserting a miniSD memory card. →p.362
30. PushTalk key
    - Used for a PushTalk call. →p.107
    - Shows the PushTalk phonebook on the standby screen.
31. Through-hole for strap

Operations performed by a long press of a key

The operations performed by pressing a key for 1 second or longer are as follows:

Key	Function	Refer to	Key	Function	Refer to
○	Opens the received address list.	p.288	✳	Sets the sidekeys. (while on the main menu)	p.183
○	Opens the sent address list.	p.288		Sets Public mode (Driving mode). (while on the standby screen)	p.79
☎	Opens the SIP address or Prefix entry screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.454		Enters a pause (p). (while editing pause dial data)	p.67
3	Sets IC card lock. (when "SimpleLock" is enabled and on the standby screen)	p.323	○	Adjusts the earpiece volume. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.76
5	Turns the display light on/off.	p.150	▼ (Memo/ Check)	Records voice memos. (during a call)	p.405
0	Enters "+". (while on the standby screen or phone number entry screen)	p.60		Opens the Photo mode screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.201
#	Sets Manner mode. (while on the standby screen or during a call)	p.143	▲ (Home)	Mutes the microphone. (during a videophone call)	p.88
ch (MULTI)	Opens the switching task screen. (while tasks are activated)	p.394	✉	Checks new messages. (while on the standby screen)	pp.243, 271
MENU	Opens the Setting connect mode screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.52	●	Opens the i-αppli software list screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.306
	Opens the standby screen. (during Multitask)	p.394		Opens the ESSD select screen. (while on the standby screen)	p.52
				Switches the main screen display. (during a videophone call)	pp.88, 90

Software key

On a screen, operational icons (software keys) corresponding to the function keys (✉, ●, ●) and directional icons corresponding to the multifunction keys (○) appear.

■ **To run a command corresponding to the software key 1**

Press ✉ to run the command indicated on the software key 1.

1 includes (Edit), (Store), (Finish), (Play), (ON), etc.

■ **To run a command corresponding to the software key 2**

Press ● to run the command indicated on the software key 2.

2 includes (Select), (Set), (Play), (Change), etc.

■ **To run a command corresponding to the software key 3**

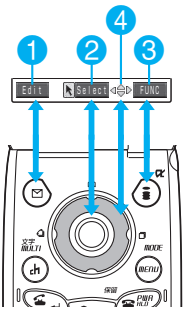
Press ● to run the command indicated on the software key 3.

3 includes (FUNC), (Exit), etc. Press ● while (FUNC) appears to open the function menu. →p.38

■ **To move/scroll in the directions shown in 4**

Use ○ to move or scroll in the directions shown in 4.

The icons show in which directions you can move or scroll.



Neuropointer

Sliding the Neuropointer to move the pointer enables you to quickly select icons or items. When a list or function menu consists of multiple pages, you can switch the pages with the Neuropointer.

- When appears at the bottom of the standby or another screen, slide the Neuropointer to show the pointer ( ).
- The design of the pointer can be changed.→p.155

Using the Neuropointer to switch pages

1 Slide ● to show ▶Move the pointer to the bottom of its operating range

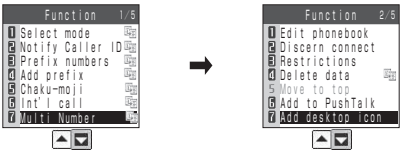
The pointer changes to .

■ When moving the pointer to the top

The pointer changes to .

2 Press ●

The next page appears.



■ To show the previous page

▶Slide ● leftward to change to ▶Press ●

Using the Neuropointer to scroll

You can scroll using the Neuropointer on the PDF data screen or site screen in i-mode or full browser. When Scroll mode is set on a site screen in i-mode or full browser, changes to and an icon such as appears, which allow you to scroll.

Scrolling in i-mode→p.226
Scrolling in full browser→pp.328, 330
Scrolling on the PDF data screen→p.382

NOTE

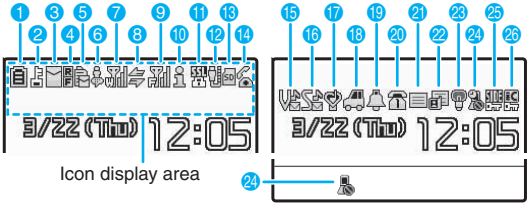
◆ Neuropointer may be unavailable for selecting the menu screens of some Flash movies.

Icons on the Display and Indicator Display

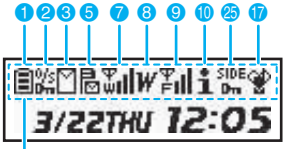
The symbols (, , , etc.) shown on the display and indicator display are referred to as icons.

● A calendar, etc. can be set on the display.→p.148

■ Display



■ Indicator display



Icon display area

● The following table shows the icon images for the display. Some icons on the indicator display may differ from them.

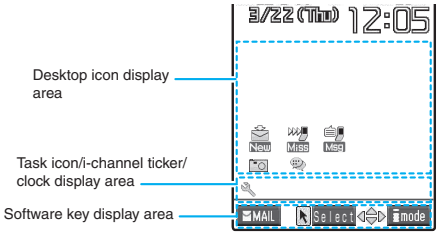
	Icon	Description
❶		Battery level→p.47
❷		Dial lock set→p.171
		Secret mode or Secret data only mode set →p.173
		Original lock set→p.178
		"Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." original lock temporarily released→p.178
		Original lock and Secret mode or Secret data only mode set→pp.173, 177
		"Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." original lock temporarily released and Secret mode or Secret data only mode activated →pp.173, 178
❸	(white)	Unread mail→p.268
	(red)	Inbox is full→p.269
		FOMA card (UIM) memory for SMS is full →p.302
	(white)	Unread mail/FOMA card (UIM) memory for SMS is full→p.302
	(red)	Inbox is full/FOMA card (UIM) memory for SMS is full→pp.269, 302
❹	(white)	Unread MessageR→p.242
	(red)	Memory for MessageR is full→p.242
	(white)	Unread MessageF→p.242
	(red)	Memory for MessageF is full→p.242
	(R, F: white)	Unread MessageR/Unread MessageF →p.242
	(R, F: red)	Memory for MessageR is full/Memory for MessageF is full→p.242
	(R: red, F: white)	Memory for MessageR is full/Unread MessageF→p.242
	(R: white, F: red)	Unread MessageR/Memory for MessageF is full→p.242

	Icon	Description
❺	(white)	Mail kept at the i-mode center→p.271
	(red)	Memory for mail at the i-mode center is full →p.271
		Mail kept at the i-mode center when "Receive option setting" is set to "ON"→p.271
	(white)	MessageR kept at the i-mode center→p.242
	(red)	Memory for your MessageR kept at the i-mode center is full→p.242
	(white)	MessageF kept at the i-mode center→p.242
	(red)	Memory for your MessageF at the i-mode center is full→p.242
❻		Presence report→p.462
		Unread instant message→p.464
		Presence report/Unread instant message →pp.462, 464
❼		WLAN signal strength (DUAL mode (Prefer WLAN))→pp.48, 51
		WLAN signal strength (DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA) or Single mode (WLAN))→pp.48, 51
		Out of WLAN coverage (DUAL mode (Prefer WLAN))→pp.48, 51
		Out of WLAN coverage (DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA) or Single mode (WLAN))→pp.48, 51
	self	Self mode set→p.189
❽		WLAN communication in progress→p.458
		Connected to WLAN→p.458
	SIP	SIP communication available→p.48
❾		FOMA signal strength (DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA))→pp.48, 51
		FOMA signal strength (DUAL mode (Prefer WLAN) or Single mode (FOMA))→pp.48, 51
		Out of the FOMA service area (DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA))→pp.48, 51

Icon	Description
	Out of the FOMA service area (DUAL mode (Prefer WLAN) or Single mode (FOMA)) →pp.48, 51
⑩	i-mode in progress →p.222
	i-mode communication in progress →p.222
	Packet communication in progress →p.432
	Packet communication in progress (outgoing) →p.432
	Packet communication in progress (incoming) →p.432
	Packet communication in progress (sending data) →p.432
	Packet communication in progress (receiving data) →p.432
	PushTalk call in progress →p.107
⑪	SSL-compatible page shown →p.225
⑫	Communication mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.371
	Communication mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.371
	Communication mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device connected →pp.70, 371
	Communication mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device connected →pp.70, 371
	miniSD mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.371
	miniSD mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.371
	miniSD mode set, USB cable connected and hands-free compatible device connected →pp.70, 371
	miniSD mode set, USB cable unconnected and hands-free compatible device connected →pp.70, 371
	Print mode set, printer unrecognized and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.371

Icon	Description
	Print mode set, printer recognized and hands-free compatible device unconnected →p.371
	Print mode set, printer recognized and hands-free compatible device connected →pp.70, 371
	Print mode set, printer unrecognized and hands-free compatible device connected →pp.70, 371
⑬	miniSD memory card inserted →p.363
	Disabled miniSD memory card inserted →p.363
	miniSD reader/writer operated →p.370
⑭	During a voice call →p.56
	64K data communication in progress →p.432
	Communication speed during a videophone call →p.89
	Switching between voice call and videophone call →pp.72, 93
	Infrared data exchange in progress →p.374
	Infrared remote control operated →p.379
⑮	Vibrator set →p.140
⑯	Ring volume set to “Silent” →p.77 Mail/Msg. ring time set to “OFF” →p.142
⑰	Manner mode set →p.143
	Remote monitoring set →p.102
⑱	Public mode (Driving mode) set →p.79
⑲	Alarm set →p.395
⑳	to Voice Mail message →p.421
㉑	to Record message set →p.82
㉒	to Record message (Record VP message) set →p.83
㉓	Backlight set to “OFF” →p.150
㉔	Keypad lock set/waiting →p.182
	Keypad lock set →p.182
㉕	Sidekeys guard set to “ON” →p.183
㉖	IC card lock set →p.323

Continued on next page



Desktop icon display area

Icon	Description
etc.	Desktop icons that give notice→p.159
etc.	Added desktop icons→p.158

Task icon/i-channel ticker/clock display area

Icon	Description
etc.	Task icons→p.394
i-channel ticker	Ticker running on the standby screen→p.252
Clock	Date and time shown on the standby screen→p.157 (Time appears on other screens regardless of the Clock display setting)

NOTE

- The FOMA terminal's display adopts state-of-the-art technology; due to its characteristics, some dots (points) may not light up while others may always light up. Note that this phenomenon is not a failure.
- Press MENU 3 6 to check the name of the icon shown on the screen.

Guide to Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display)

The indicator display indicates an incoming call/mail or alarm in various forms such as messages, images and animations so that you can immediately check the information without opening a FOMA terminal.

- “Setting the Indicator Display Mode”→p.150
- You can view the i-channel information on the indicator display if “i-Channel setting” (p.252) is set.

Sample images



Clock display (Clock1)


Alarm clock ringing



Chaku-moji



Receiving call


Notice designate calls



i-channel ticker (twice)

Checking a caller or sender

Press (Home) to check a caller or sender.

- While performing the tool group operation (p.34), you cannot check missed calls on the indicator display.

■ Missed call

You can only check the latest missed call.



(Home)


(Home)


The clock reappears.

■ New mail

When receiving several mails at the same time, you can only check the latest one.



(Home)


When “Mail” is set to “ON” in “Indicator display”, the sender, sent date and time and subject appear.
(Home)

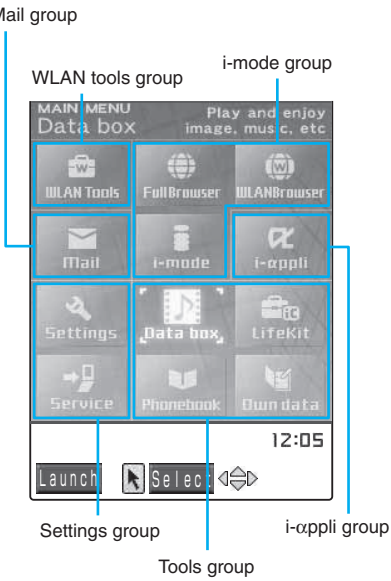

The clock reappears.

NOTE

- Press (Home) when the FOMA terminal is folded to light up the display light. It is useful e.g. to check the time in a dark place.
- When nothing appears on the indicator display, press (Home) to display for about 15 seconds.

Main Menu

To set or check various functions with a FOMA terminal, access each function from the main menu. Press (MENU) to open the main menu. The main menu consists of the following groups:



<WLAN tools group>

●WLAN Tools
Use WLAN tools such as Messenger, Presence, etc.

<i-mode group>

●i-mode
Use i-mode service to access website, etc.

●Full Browser
Display Internet website designed PC.

●WLAN Browser
Use the browser with WLAN, which can be utilized for the Internet, etc.

<Mail group>

●Mail
Read sent/received mails, compose and send new mail.

<i-αppli group>

●i-αppli
Find useful applications.

<Settings group>

●Settings
Change the settings to customize your FOMA terminal.

●Service
Specify and confirm the settings of network services.

<Tools group>

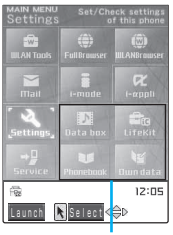
●Data box
Enjoy picture, music, etc.

●LifeKit
Find useful functions such as camera, alarm and data exchange.

●Phonebook
Add data to phonebook, search data in phonebook, or change the settings.

●Own data
Manage and check your personal data and history.

"Multitask" →p.394
The FOMA terminal supports Multitask that enables you to use up to four functions from each main menu group at the same time. While in a Multitask operation, the active menu groups are enclosed with a box.



In-use groups are enclosed with a box.

Using Menus

Open a screen from the main menu or original menu to set or check functions.

- You have two ways of accessing functions after pressing (MENU): accessing a function from the main menu and accessing a function by entering the menu number (p.478). This “Manual for FOMA N902iL” describes focusing on the procedures to access functions from the main menu.
- To cancel a menu operation, press [☎]. It will cancel the operation in the middle of the setting to return to the standby screen or previous screen. However, a message asking whether to discard the entered or selected items may appear depending on the menu. In this case, press [CLR] to go back to the operation screen shown before the message appears.
- The frequently used menu such as Mail (p.256) or i-mode (p.222) can be accessed easily from the standby screen. On the standby screen, press (✉) (MAIL) to access the Mail menu or (i) (i-mode) to access the i-mode menu.

Selecting functions from the main menu

<Example: To set the flashing color for “Illumination in talk”>

1 (MENU)▶Use ◉ to select Settings (Settings), and press ●▶Use ◉ to highlight “Talk”, and press ●

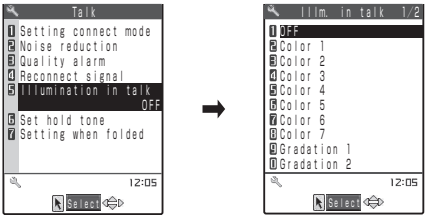


■ **To scroll continuously**
▶Keep holding ◉

■ **To use the Neuropointer**
“To use the Neuropointer”→p.29

■ **If you do not press any keys for 15 seconds while the main menu appears**
The main menu is closed and the previous screen reappears.

2 Use ◉ to highlight “Illumination in talk”, and press ●



NOTE

◆ The menu you selected the last time is highlighted when the main menu or Sliding Menu (Launcher) is opened (Last one function). This function is only available when “Memory focus” under “Menu display set” is set to “ON”.

If items span multiple pages

1 Use ◉ to select an item you want to set

Press ◉ (or ▲ (Home)) to scroll to the previous page or ◉ (or ▼ (Memo/Check)) to the next page.



2 Press ●

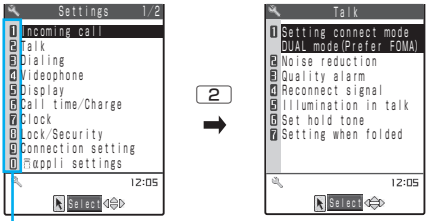
The selected item is set.

3 Press ☎ after the operation

The menu operation ends and the standby screen reappears. While Multitask is being performed, another active screen appears.

Using the dial keys to select items

1 Press 0 to 9 corresponding to the item number



Selecting "YES/NO" or "ON/OFF"

1 Use ◉ to select "YES" (or "ON") or "NO" (or "OFF"), and press ●

The selected item is set.



Entering the security code

Some functions may open the security code entry screen before the detail screen appears. To open the detail screen, enter your security code. →p.168

1 Enter your 4- to 8-digit security code and press ●

The entered security code appears as "_".
The detail screen of a function appears after the correct security code is entered.



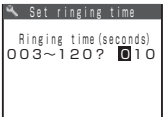
■ **If the entered security code is incorrect**

A message appears notifying that the security code is incorrect. Reenter the security code.

Entering numbers

1 Press 0 to 9 to enter numbers

To enter a 1-digit number or 2-digit number on a 3-digit number entry screen, press 0 twice or once before entering the number.



■ **To enter “3”**

▶0, 0, 3

■ **To enter “12”**

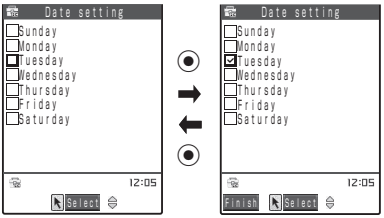
▶0, 1, 2

Marking checkboxes (selecting multiple items)

1 Use ◎ to highlight a checkbox (☐), and press ●

The checkbox changes from ☐ to ☑. This indicates that the checkbox is selected. Press ● to toggle ☐ and ☑. If “Finish” appears as a software key, press ✉ (Finish) to set the selected item.

If “FUNC” appears as a software key, you can press ⓘ (FUNC) to use functions such as “Select all” or “Release all”.

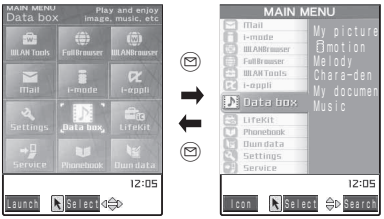


Launcher mode on the main menu

If the main menu is displayed in launcher mode, you can see the sub-menu under the selected menu.

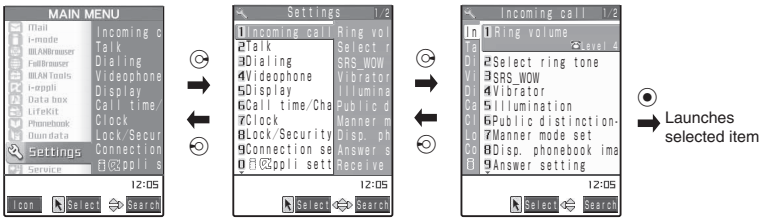
1 MENU ▶ ✉ (Launch)

Press ✉ (Icon) to return to the main menu.



2 Select a menu item

Use ◎ to select an item and press ●. The sub-menu under the selected menu is shown in the right pane.



Layer 1 Layer 2 Layer 3

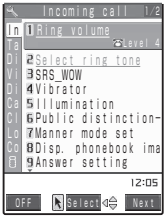
● Searching for menu items

1 (MENU)▶(✉) **(Launch)**▶(i) **(Search)**▶ **Enter a keyword** ▶(●)

The search result appears with the searched item selected. Press (✉) (OFF) to end searching.

■ If multiple search results come out

Press (i) (Next) to show the next search result.



Searched "RING"

NOTE

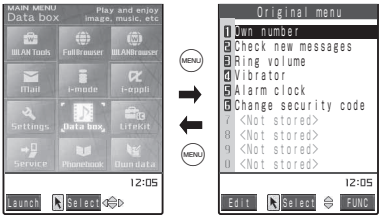
◆ If you used Sliding Menu (Launcher) to select a menu item last time, pressing (MENU) opens Sliding Menu (Launcher). However, if "Memory focus" in "Menu display set" is set to "OFF", pressing (MENU) always opens the main menu.

Selecting a function from your original menu

● Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (✉) (Edit) to edit the original menu.
● The original menu appears in "List".
● Adding items to the original menu →p.154

1 (MENU)▶(MENU)

Press (MENU) to switch between the main menu and original menu.

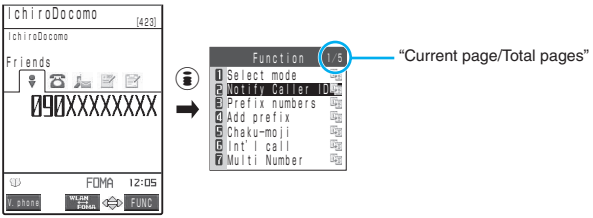


NOTE

◆ When you return to the standby screen or access a function from the original menu and press (MENU), the main menu appears.
◆ If no function is stored in the original menu, a message appears asking whether to add functions to the original menu.

Function menu

When you are using a function that enables you to store, edit or delete data, "FUNC" appears as a software key. Press (i) (FUNC) to open the function menu. Use (○) to highlight an item to perform, and press (●) to select it.



● When items span multiple pages, "Current page/Total pages" appears in the upper right corner of the function menu screen. When the top item is highlighted, press (○) to show the previous page. When the bottom item is highlighted, press (○) to show the next page. Press (○) (or (Home)) to scroll to the previous page or (○) (or (Memo/Check)) to the next page.
● "▶" appears on the right of an option if there are further menus under the option.
● The shown function menu differs depending on the active operation or setting.
● You may not be able to select some items in a function menu due to settings or other conditions. Unavailable items in a function menu are grayed out.

Notation for menu operations

In this manual, procedures for menu operations are described as shown below.
The procedure (extract) for selecting “Remote monitoring” from “Videophone” under “Settings” is taken as an example.

Notation for this manual:

1 MENU▶Settings▶“Videophone”▶“Remote monitoring”▶Enter your security code▶“Other ID”

2 Select “<Not recorded>”

•
•

Actual operations:

1 Press MENU on the standby screen

2 Use ◉ on the main menu to highlight Settings and press ●

3 Use ◉ on the “Settings” menu to highlight “Videophone”, and press ●

4 Use ◉ on the “Videophone” menu to highlight “Remote monitoring”, and press ●

5 Enter your security code and press ●

6 Highlight “Other ID” on the “Remote monitoring” menu and press ●

❶Operation

7 Use ◉ on the “Other ID” menu to highlight “<Not recorded>”, and press ●

❷Operation

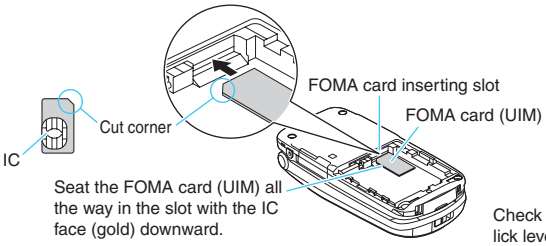
•
•

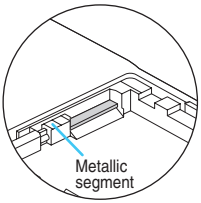
Using the FOMA Card (UIM)

The FOMA card (UIM) is an IC card that contains your private information such as the phone number. Before inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM), turn off the FOMA terminal and remove the battery. Hold the FOMA terminal in your hand with the terminal folded while inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM).

- You can use your FOMA terminal even without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted. However, you can use only the WLAN services and not the FOMA services if it is not inserted.

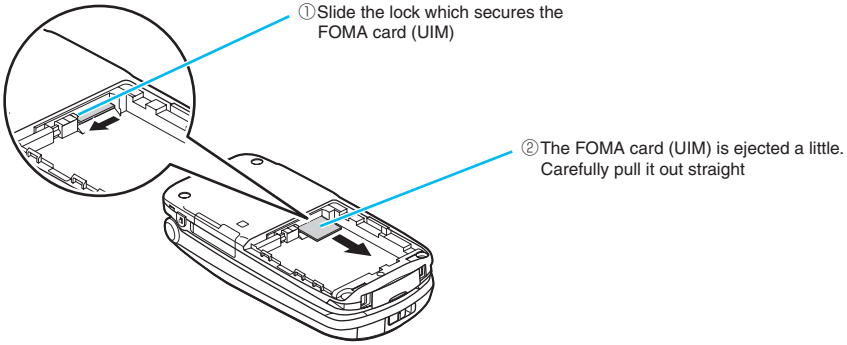
Inserting the FOMA card (UIM)





Check that the metallic segment on the lick lever is located and fixed at the left edge when the FOMA card (UIM) is locked.

Removing the FOMA card (UIM)



NOTE

- Using excessive force to insert or remove the FOMA card (UIM) may damage the card.
- When you slide the lock lever, keep your finger away from the FOMA card (UIM). Otherwise, the FOMA card (UIM) could not fully come out and you may not pull it out with ease. In this case, seat your FOMA card (UIM) all the way in the slot and try again.
- Take care not to lose the FOMA card (UIM) after removing it from a FOMA terminal.
- Take care not to touch or scratch on the IC part of the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you insert the FOMA card (UIM) incorrectly or the card has a problem, an error message (p.505) appears.

PIN codes for the FOMA card (UIM)

You can set two PIN (Personal Identification Number) codes for the FOMA card (UIM).→p.169
PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit code to be entered every time a FOMA terminal is turned on to prevent any unauthorized use by third parties.
PIN2 code is a 4-to-8-digit number that is required as personal authentication for access to online services such as Internet connection and site access or for resetting total call charges.

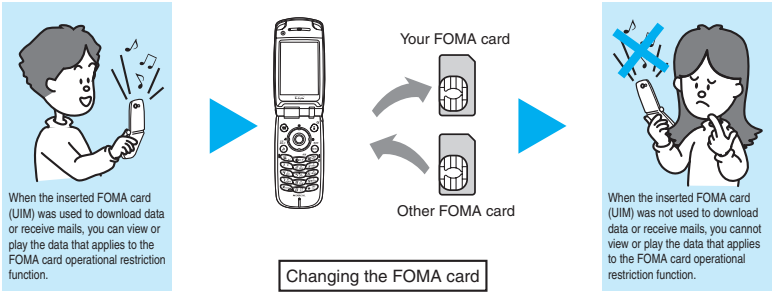
- The default setting for the PIN1 and PIN2 codes is “0000”.
- You can change the PIN1 and PIN2 codes.→p.170
- When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you have used into the terminal, you can still use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have used for the FOMA card (UIM).

FOMA card operational restriction function

Your FOMA terminal incorporates the FOMA card operational restriction function to protect your data and files.

- When you download files or data from sites or receive files attached to i-mode mails, the FOMA card operational restriction function is automatically set for the files or data.
- Data and files with this function set are accessible only when the FOMA card (UIM) used for downloading such data or file is inserted.
- The data and files subject to the FOMA card operational restriction function are as follows:
  - i-αppli programs, melodies, images, Chara-den characters, PDF data, DL dictionaries and templates containing images which are downloaded from i-mode sites or websites
  - Melodies, images, Chara-den characters, PDF data and templates containing images which are downloaded using WLAN browser with the FOMA card inserted
  - Movies downloaded using WLAN browser with the FOMA card inserted
  - i-motion programs downloaded from i-mode sites or websites
  - Screen memos containing melodies, images, i-motion programs, Chara-den characters, DL dictionaries, templates or simple WLAN profile setting files
  - Images that were downloaded from the Data Security Center
  - Files (melodies or images) attached to or melodies pasted into i-mode messages in Inbox
  - Files* (melodies, images or i-motion programs, except for the images and i-motion programs shot using a FOMA terminal) attached to i-mode messages in Outbox/Draft
    *: Only files downloaded via networks
  - MessageR/MessageF with files (melodies or images) attached
  - Images inserted into Deco-mail messages
  - Record VP messages
  - Images for ToruCa (detail)

The FOMA card (UIM) that was inserted when you downloaded or received data or files is referred to as “your FOMA card (UIM)” and other FOMA cards as “another FOMA card (UIM)” hereinafter.



Changing the FOMA card

NOTE

- If you replace your FOMA card (UIM) with another one, “ ” is attached to data and files for which this function is set. You can no longer set them in “Display setting” or “Select ring tone”.
- If data or a file with this function set is selected for “Display setting” or “Select ring tone” and your FOMA card (UIM) is removed or replaced with another one, these settings are reset to default. To restore the settings performed by you, insert your FOMA card (UIM) again.
- You can move or delete data or files with this function set even when another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.
- Replacing your FOMA card (UIM) with another one deletes the contents such as a news received through the i-channel service.
- Data stored via the Infrared data exchange function, data transmission (OBEX) function, a miniSD memory card or Bar code reader, edited images and pictures (still images)/movies shot with the built-in camera are not subject to this function.
- Data and files downloaded using WLAN browser with no FOMA card inserted are not subject to this function.
- Pre-installed i-αppli programs are subject to this function if they were upgraded or re-downloaded from sites after had been deleted.
- If the FOMA card operational restriction function is set, you cannot select items such as highlighted text on the i-mode mail detail screen to launch an i-αppli program.
- If you insert your FOMA card (UIM) to another i-channel-compatible terminal, ticker does not appear on the terminal. In addition, the contents may not be automatically updated. To receive the latest information, press ch to display the channel list. Ticker will automatically appear in this case.

When exchanging the FOMA cards (UIM)

When the FOMA card (UIM) inserted into a FOMA terminal is replaced with another one, the following settings are changed:

Setting	When another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted
“Select language” (p.49)	The settings stored on the newly inserted FOMA card (UIM) are applied.
“SMS center selection” (p.302)	
“SMS validity period” (p.290)	
“PIN setting” (p.169)	
“Host selection” for “Connection setting” (p.241)	
“Caller ID setting” for PushTalk (p.115)	“OFF” is set regardless of the previous settings.
“Telop display setting” for i-channel (p.252)	“ON” is set regardless of the previous settings.
“Access setting” for Full Browser (p.331)	“OFF” is set regardless of the previous settings.
“Cookie settings” for Full Browser (p.331)	“Invalid” is set regardless of the previous settings (Cookie information remains undeleted).

FOMA card (UIM) functional differences

There are 2 types of the FOMA card (UIM). There are the following functional differences between those FOMA cards (UIM) when they are used on this FOMA terminal.

Function	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green/white)
Max number of digits for a phone number to be stored in the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook	20 digits max.	26 digits max.
User certificate operation to use FirstPass	Unavailable	Available
WORLD WING	Unavailable	Available
Service Numbers	Unavailable	Available

WORLD WING

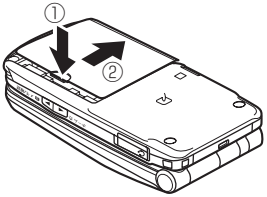
WORLD WING is the FOMA international roaming service that allows you to use the same mobile phone number in overseas countries to make and receive calls by inserting the FOMA card (green/white) into a compatible FOMA terminal or overseas mobile phone (W-CDMA or GSM).

- If you started to use FOMA services on or after September 1, 2005, you do not need to apply for WORLD WING. However, if you did not wish to use WORLD WING at the time of subscription to FOMA services or if you subscribed to WORLD WING but later unsubscribed from it, you need to make an application again.
- If you started to use FOMA services on or before August 31, 2005 and have not applied for “WORLD WING” yet, you need to apply for the services separately.
- This service cannot be used with some billing plans.
- In case your FOMA card (green/white) is lost or stolen overseas, promptly contact DoCoMo to take procedures to stop the use of it. For contact information, see “For inquiries” on the back cover of this manual. Note that communication fee that have been made after the terminal is lost or stolen will be charged on you.

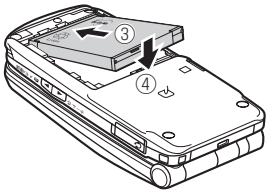
Inserting/Removing the Battery Pack

● Turn a FOMA terminal off before inserting or removing the battery pack. Hold the FOMA terminal in your hand with the terminal folded while inserting or removing the FOMA card (UIM).

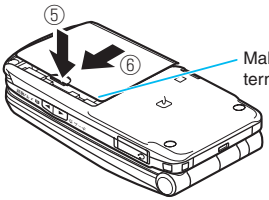
● Inserting



Press the catch on the back cover in direction ① and slide the back cover in direction ② to remove it.



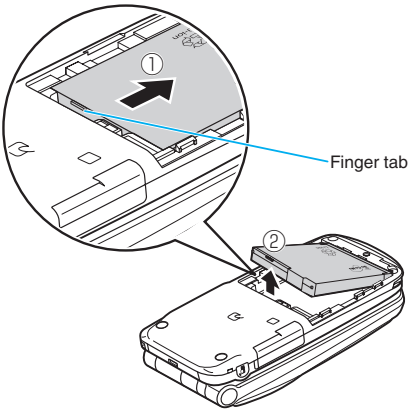
With the product name on the battery pack facing upwards, attach the battery pack in direction ③. Make sure that the metallic contacts on the battery pack and the FOMA terminal (Phone) touch, and then press the battery down in direction ④.



Make sure the back cover and the FOMA terminal (Phone) are securely attached.

Lift the back cover about 3 mm and align it to the groove in the FOMA terminal (Phone). Press the catch on the back cover in direction ⑤ and slide the back cover in direction ⑥. Then press the cover until the catch clicks shut.

● Removing



Remove the back cover.
Press the tab of the battery pack in direction ① and then lift upwards in direction ②.

NOTE

◆ Using excessive force to insert the battery pack may damage the charging terminals on a FOMA terminal that connect to the battery pack.
◆ For details, refer to the Battery Pack N11 instructions.

Getting the best out of your battery pack

Use the approved Battery Pack N11 for a FOMA terminal.

■ Battery pack life

- The battery pack has a limited life. The amount of usable time in a single charge decreases every time the battery is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as when it was purchased, it indicates there is very little battery life left. It is recommended to replace it with a new one as soon as possible. Depending on the conditions under which it is used, the battery pack may swell as it approaches the end of its life, but this causes no problem.
- In general, the service life of a battery pack is about one year. However, It may be shortened if you repeat a short-time charging and discharging, charge in a hot place or continue charging for a long time.

Li-ion

To protect the environment, take used battery packs to NTT DoCoMo, the agency, the recycle shop, etc.

■ Charging

- For details, refer to the manuals for FOMA AC Adapter 01 (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01 (optional).
- Insert the battery pack to a FOMA terminal to charge the battery.
- You can receive calls while charging if a FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during calls and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time will also increase if “Charging” in “Backlight” is set to “All time ON”.
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply excessive force.
- When you make a call or perform packet communication in a high-temperature environment, the FOMA terminal’s temperature may rise and the charging may be stopped. In this case, stop a running function and wait for the temperature to fall before you retry charging.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with a FOMA terminal turned on

- If you charge the battery pack for a long period of time with a FOMA terminal turned on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short period of time and the low voltage alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect a FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter and then attach it again for recharging.

■ Battery duration (The battery duration varies depending on the charging time or deterioration of the battery)

	Continuous talk time
FOMA communication	FOMA voice call: Approx. 160 min. Videophone: Approx. 100 min.
WLAN communication	VoIP call: Approx. 250 min.

	Continuous standby time
Single mode (FOMA)	Stationary: Approx. 500 hrs. In transit: Approx. 380 hrs.
Single mode (WLAN)	Approx. 400 hrs.
DUAL mode	Approx. 270 hrs.

- Continuous talk time is an estimate of the talk time at maximum power when radio reception is normal.
- Continuous standby time is an estimate of the standby time when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal. In certain circumstances, talk (or communications) and standby times may drop to as low as half the times shown due to the battery charge, function settings, temperature, or radio reception in the area (weak or no reception). Talk (or communications) and standby times will be less when you use i-mode. These times will also be less when you compose an i-mode message, run downloaded i-αppli, launch the i-αppli display or play music even without making calls or using i-mode.
- Continuous standby time for stationary is an average estimate of the standby time when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal.
- Continuous standby time in transit is an average estimate of the standby time in “Stationary”, “In transit” and “Out of range” states when the FOMA terminal is folded and remains within an area where radio reception is normal.
- Talk (or communications) and standby times will also be less when you insert a miniSD memory card, run data communications or multi access, or use the camera or light.

• In Single mode (WLAN) or Dual mode, continuous standby time and talk (or communications) time vary depending on the condition of WLAN radio waves, the settings of the access point and FOMA terminal or the status of the main device (SIP server).

NOTE

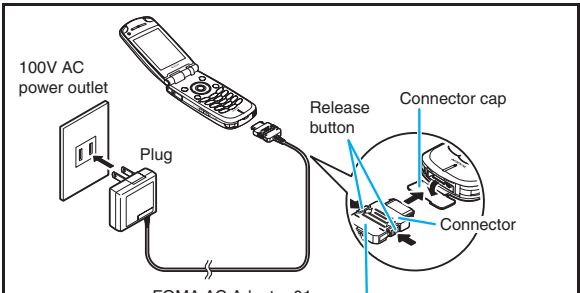
◆ If the battery has run out or the pack is removed, you cannot save images or movies.

Charging the Battery

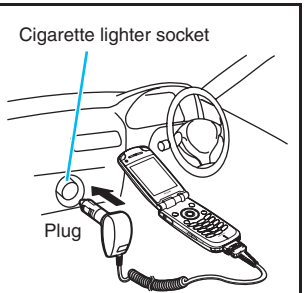
● You can charge the battery using the AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional). You can also charge the battery by connecting the AC adapter and desktop holder (optional). For more information on charging, refer to the user's manual provided with the AC adapter or DC adapter.

Charging with the AC adapter or DC adapter

■ AC adapter



■ DC adapter



1 Open the external connector cap on a FOMA terminal

2 Plug the AC or DC adapter connector horizontally into the external connector on the FOMA terminal

3 Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet
Plug the DC adapter into a cigarette lighter socket in a car

Charging starts.

Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

4 After charging is completed, remove the AC or DC adapter connector horizontally from the FOMA terminal while pressing the release button

5 Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet
Unplug the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in a car

6 Close the external connector cap on the FOMA terminal

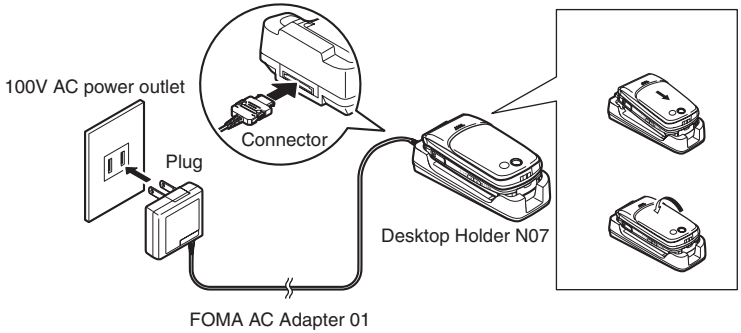
NOTE

◆ When the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal (Phone) is turned off, "" disappears from the screen and the message "Charge unusual Stop charge" appears, remove the AC adapter or DC adapter and battery pack from the FOMA terminal then set them again to recharge. If the same error occurs again, there may be a problem or fault on the AC adapter or DC adapter. Contact a NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter.

Continued on next page

◆ Keep pressing the release button of the AC adapter connector when pulling it out of the external connector on a FOMA terminal. Using excessive force to pull the cord may cause malfunction.

Charging with the desktop holder



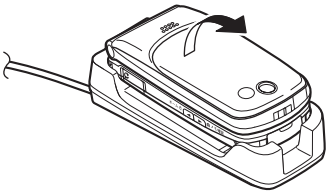
1 Plug the AC adapter connector horizontally into the terminal on the rear of the desktop holder

2 Plug the AC adapter into a power outlet

3 Place a FOMA terminal securely in the desktop holder as shown above

Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

4 After charging is completed, hold down the desktop holder and lift the FOMA terminal up in the direction of the arrow



NOTE

◆ Set a FOMA terminal securely in the desktop holder. Take care not to trap the strap.
◆ The charge lamp lights red during charging. When the charge lamp turns off, the FOMA terminal is fully charged. If the FOMA terminal is turned on, "" flashes during charging and "" lights when charging ends.
◆ If the FOMA terminal is turned on, the terminal emits the "Charge sound" when charging starts or ends. However, while "Manner mode" or "Public mode (Driving mode)" is set or when "Charge sound" is set to "OFF", the "Charge sound" does not sound.
◆ The AC adapter 01 is only suitable for use with 100V AC power supplies.
◆ The battery pack cannot be charged separately. Always charge the battery pack while it is inserted in a FOMA terminal.
◆ If the battery runs out or the FOMA terminal is turned off with full data in the phonebook, etc., the battery charge lamp may not light right away, but charging has already started.
◆ The DC adapter must be used only for vehicles with a negative ground DC 12V or 24V. Never use it in positive-grounded vehicles.
◆ The DC adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows and you need to replace it, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items and replacement fuses can be purchased at your local car accessory shop, etc.

Checking the Battery Level

The indicated battery level is for reference only.

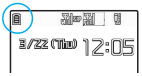
Checking with a battery level icon

When a FOMA terminal is turned on, an icon indicating the battery level automatically appears.

(white): Full charge

(white): Partial charge

(red): Almost empty. Recharge battery.



Checking with sound and animation

MENU 71

The current battery level is informed by sound and animation.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Battery level”

The check screen appears and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level animation disappears in about three seconds.

“3 short beeps”: Full charge

“2 short beeps”: Partial charge

“1 short beep”: Almost empty. Recharge battery.

NOTE

◆ The beeps do not sound when “Keypad sound” is set to “OFF” or in Manner mode.

When the battery runs out

The screen as shown on the right flashes and the low voltage alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about one minute. To stop the alarm, press any key other than ▲ (Home), ▼ (Memo/Check) or ▼.



NOTE

◆ During a call, the Recharge battery screen above appears and 3 short beeps sound. The call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power will turn off in about one minute.

◆ While “Manner mode” is set and “Manner mode” or “Super silent” is selected for the performance in Manner mode, while “Public mode (Driving mode)” is set or while “LVA tone” is set to “OFF” in “Original”, the low voltage alarm does not sound.

Turning the Power on/off

- Before using a FOMA terminal for the first time (or if it has been left unused for a long period of time), charge the battery. Be sure to use the approved AC adapter (optional) or DC adapter (optional) for charging.

Turning the power on

- Before turning the power on, make sure that the FOMA card is inserted correctly.
- When you turn on the power for the first time after purchase, "UIM" appears on the upper right of a screen.

1 (1 second or longer)

The standby screen or initial settings screen appears. If you have just inserted the battery pack or turn a FOMA terminal back on immediately after turning it off, the "Wait a minute" message may appear for a short period of time.

■ When "FOMA" or "WLAN" appears

You are out of the service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move until the signal strength indicator e.g. "FOMA" or "WLAN" appears. The signal strength appears as follows:

FOMA signal strength



Good ⟷ Poor

WLAN signal strength



Good ⟷ Poor

If Host setting in WLAN setting is set to "Any scan", the WLAN signal strength indicator is not shown by just turning a FOMA terminal on. Select an access point manually to display it. →p.52



Standby

■ When "SIP" does not appear

WLAN is not correctly set, and you cannot use VoIP phone, Presence and Messenger services. Contact the network administrator.
You can use WLAN browser even when "SIP" is not shown.

■ When PIN1 code entry set is set to "ON"

The PIN1 code entry screen appears. →p.170

■ When All reset total cost is set to "ON"

The PIN2 code entry screen appears.

■ If the initial settings screen appears

Perform the initial settings. →p.49

NOTE

- When the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced, enter your 4- to 8-digit security code after turning the power on. The standby screen appears after the correct security code is entered. If an incorrect security code is entered five times in a row, the power will be turned off. (However, it can still be turned on again.)

Turning the power off

1 (2 seconds or longer)

The shutdown screen appears and the power is turned off.

NOTE

- Signal strength is not stable when you talk on your FOMA terminal while moving. Due to the nature of digital transmissions, calls may end suddenly. Wherever possible, you should always ensure that "FOMA" or "WLAN" is shown when using the FOMA terminal.
- After turning the power off, wait a few minutes before turning the power back on.

<Select language> MENU15

Switching Language Mode

Default setting
Japanese

You can switch language mode between Japanese and English that is used for showing function names or messages on the display or image display.

1 (MENU)▶“各種設定”▶“ディスプレイ”▶“バイリンガル”▶“English”

■ **To change from Japanese to English**
▶“English”



Japanese

■ **To change from English to Japanese**
▶“日本語”



English

NOTE

- When the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, the Select language setting saved in the FOMA card (UIM) is applied.
- Selecting “English” for “Select language” gives you two options “ON” and “OFF” for “Display” under “Clock display” and for “Info notice setting”.

For some guidance messages played for callers, you can switch the language mode between Japanese and English.→p.425

<Initial setting>

Performing Initial Settings

After turning the power on, set “Set time”, “Change security code”, “Keypad sound”, “Neuropointer” (“Simple” only) and “PushTalk Caller ID” as initial settings.

- If you have set any of the functions, the function’s setting screen does not appear.
- After Steps 1 to 6 are performed, the initial setting screen no longer appears. Even if you perform “Reset settings” after those initial settings are completed, the initial setting screens do not appear.
- When “PIN1 code entry set” is set to “ON”, the PIN1 code entry screen appears after you turn a FOMA terminal on. Enter the correct PIN1 code to show the initial setting screens.→p.170



Initial setting

1 Initial setting screen▶“YES”

2 Set time

Date and time are not set by default. “Setting Date and Time”→p.50

3 Change the security code

The default setting is “0000”. “Changing Your Security Code”→p.169

4 Set the keypad sound

Keypad sound→p.141

5 Set the Neuropointer speed

Only the “Simple” settings under “Neuropointer” can be performed. Neuropointer→p.155

6 Set whether to show your PushTalk caller ID

PushTalk Caller ID→p.115

7 Update software

A message appears asking whether to update software. Software Update→p.514

NOTE

- Even if the operation of initial settings is interrupted because a call arrives or you press ☎ or CLR, the functions for which settings have been completed remain valid.
- You can also perform initial settings separately for each function.
- The confirmation screen to prompt software update appears even when initial settings are canceled.
- If you set PushTalk Caller ID to “ON” and then make a PushTalk call, all participants’ phone numbers are shown to all participants. Since phone numbers are important information, be careful when showing them.

<Set time> MENU31

Setting Date and Time

Set the date and time on your FOMA terminal. The date and time can be set to be automatically corrected (to Japan Standard Time).

- The set date and time appear on the standby screen or indicator display, which allows you to use functions managing the date and time (e.g. Alarm clock and Schedule).
- To set the date and time in "Initial setting" (p.49), start with step 2.
- You can set the date and time between 00:00 on January 1, 2004 and 23:59 on December 31, 2037. The date and time will not be updated after 23:59 on December 31, 2037.

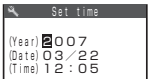
1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Clock" ▶ "Set time"**

2 **Select any item**

Auto time set ON (default)	Sets the date and time automatically. Selecting "Auto time set ON" receives the time information and sets the date and time automatically.
Auto time set OFF	Sets the date and time manually. Selecting this option allows you to set time different from the actual time.

■ **When "Auto time set OFF" is selected**

Enter the year, month, date and time (24-hour format).
<Example: To set March 22, 2007, 12:05>
Use ● to move the highlight, and press dial keys to enter numbers.
In this example, press 2, 0, 0, 7, 0, 3, 2, 2, 1, 2, 0 and 5.



NOTE

- Enter the date and time in the correct format when you manually set them.
- The built-in backup battery retains the date and time you set, which means that they are not reset even when the battery pack is exchanged. However, they may be erased if the battery pack is removed for about two weeks or longer. If you want to set "Auto time set OFF" with the battery pack which has been removed for a long period of time, charge it first and then set the date and time again. Charging the battery pack also charges the backup battery.

<Auto time set>

- Although the time may not be automatically corrected depending on the radio reception, it is corrected based on the time information received from the network when
  - The FOMA terminal is turned on
  - Charging starts when the standby screen appears and another function is not running
  - "Auto time set ON" is set
- The time is not corrected if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted or when "" appears.
- If "i-αppli display" is set, the time may not be corrected depending on the set i-αppli.
- A several-second difference may occur.

<World watch>

Setting the World Clock

Default setting	Time zone: GMT+00 (City: London) Summer time: OFF

You can show the time of a city in the world in addition to the Japan date and time set in "Set time". You can also set summer time, if necessary.

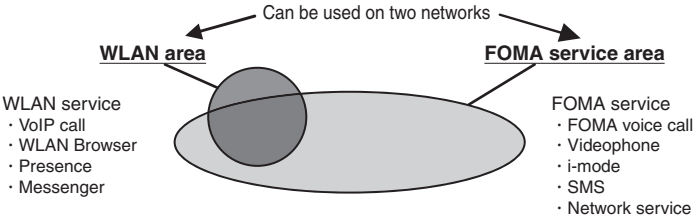
- Setting the world clock on the standby screen→p.157

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **"Clock" ▶ "World watch" ▶ Select any item**

Time zone	**▶Select a time zone** Press ✉ (Change) to change the city shown in the time zone. (You cannot change the city name in some time zones.)
Summer time	**▶"ON" or "OFF"** If "ON" is set, the time which is one hour ahead of "World watch" time appears.

Communication Mode

FOMA N902iL supports both FOMA and WLAN networks, and you can use both FOMA and WLAN services to connect voice calls, the Internet, etc.



- WLAN stands for Wireless Local Area Network and is generally called wireless LAN.
- VoIP (Voice over Internet Protocol) calls are voice calls that are connected through the IP network.
- When the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted, you can use only the WLAN services and not the FOMA services.

Setting the communication mode <Setting connect mode>

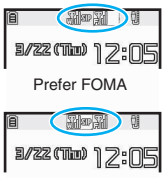
Default setting: DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA)

You can choose either FOMA or WLAN to be used preferentially over the other depending on what you intend to do with a FOMA terminal or the signal strength of the connected network. You can also choose to use only FOMA or WLAN (Single mode).

■ DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA or Prefer WLAN)

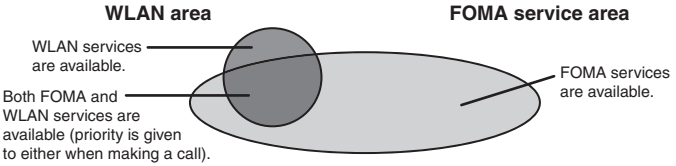
You can use both FOMA and WLAN services. A FOMA terminal is on standby to receive both FOMA voice calls and VoIP calls.

- When making a voice call, a FOMA terminal uses FOMA radio waves preferentially if you select “DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA)” or WLAN radio waves preferentially if you select “DUAL mode (Prefer WLAN)”.
- You can use both FOMA i-mode mail and i-αppli communications and WLAN messenger and Presence communications.



Prefer FOMA

Prefer WLAN

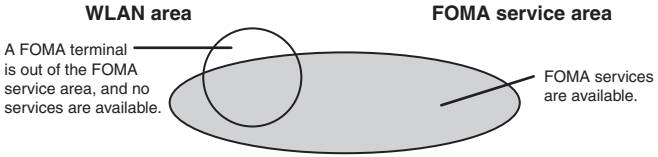


■ Single mode (FOMA)

You can use only FOMA services. A FOMA terminal is on standby to receive only FOMA voice calls.

- When making a voice call, a FOMA terminal uses only FOMA radio waves. →p.56
- You can use FOMA i-mode mail and i-αppli communications but not WLAN messenger and Presence communications.



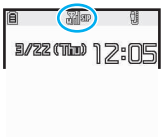


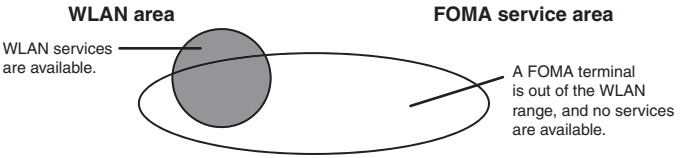
Continued on next page

■ **Single mode (WLAN)**

You can use only WLAN services. A FOMA terminal is on standby to receive only VoIP calls.

- When making a voice call, a FOMA terminal uses only WLAN radio waves. →p.453
- You can use WLAN messenger and Presence communications but not FOMA i-mode mail and i-αppli communications.





● Changing the communication mode

- You cannot change the communication mode while in Dial lock or Self mode.
- You cannot change the communication mode while another task is running.

1 On the standby screen, press (MENU) (1 second or longer) ▶Select a communication mode



Setting connect mode

NOTE

- You can also display the Setting connect mode screen by pressing (MENU) ▶ Settings ▶"Talk"▶"Setting connect mode".
- When a FOMA terminal is turned on, it starts with the communication mode selected when the FOMA terminal was turned off the last time.
- In DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA or Prefer WLAN), you can also select FOMA (FOMA voice call) or WLAN (VoIP call) while entering a phone number. →pp.56, 453

Scanning WLAN access points

If Host setting in WLAN setting is set to "Any scan", manually scan and select an access point to connect to WLAN. If Host setting in WLAN setting is set to "Select scan", a FOMA terminal is reconnected to the access point selected in "Set prior host".

- You cannot scan access points while another task is running.

<If Host setting is set to "Any scan">

1 On the standby screen, press ● (1 second or longer)

■ **If "Host setting" is set to "Select scan"**

A FOMA terminal is reconnected to the access point selected in "Set prior host".

■ **To cancel scanning of access points**

▶CLR or ☎

2 Select an access point to connect



ESSID select

<Caller ID Notification> MENU17

Showing Your Phone Number to the Other Party

Default setting: OFF	Subscription: Unnecessary	Monthly charge: Free

You can show your phone number to the other party when making a call. Since your phone number is important information, be careful when showing it to others.

- You cannot perform the Caller ID Notification setting when "ア" appears.
- You cannot perform the Caller ID Notification setting in Single mode (WLAN).
- This function is only available when the other party's phone is capable of displaying caller IDs.
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, hang up the phone. Then set this function to "ON" and make a call again.

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ **"Caller ID Notification"▶Select any item**

Activate/Deactivate	Network security code→p.168	
	ON	**▶Enter your network security code**
	OFF	**▶Enter your network security code**
Check setting	**▶Check the Caller ID Notification setting and press ●**	

NOTE

- You can also set whether to show your caller ID when dialing a phone number or selecting a phone number from "Phonebook", "Redial" or "Received calls".→p.57
- To make a PushTalk call, this function is not available. "Caller ID setting" under PushTalk setting will apply.→p.115

<Own number> MENU0

Checking Your Phone Number

You can check your phone number (own number) in the FOMA card (UIM).

1 MENU ▶ Own data ▶ **"Own number"**



NOTE

- Your personal information (name, home phone number, home address, mail address, etc.) can also be stored. Storing and showing your personal data→p.404
- You can check your i-mode mail address by the following operation: i-mode menu▶"Menu"▶English iMenu▶"Options"▶"Mail Settings"▶"Confirm Mail Address"

Making/Receiving FOMA Voice Calls

Making FOMA voice calls

Making a FOMA Voice Call 56
Changing a Call from FOMA Voice to Videophone 58
Making International Calls ..... WORLD CALL 59
Using Chaku-moji ..... Chaku-moji 62
Dialing a Previously Dialed Number ..... Redial/Dialed calls 64
Showing/Hiding Your Caller ID for Individual Calls 186/184 67
Sending Push Signals Quickly ..... Pause dial 67
Setting Prefix Numbers ..... Prefix setting 68
Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls ... Sub-address setting 69
Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection ..... Reconnect signal 69
Blocking Out Ambient Noise ..... Noise reduction 70
Switching to Hands-free Operation ..... Hands-free 70
Making Hands-free Calls in a Car ..... In-car hands-free 70

Receiving FOMA voice calls

Receiving a FOMA Voice Call 71
Changing a Call from FOMA Voice to Videophone (the Other Party) 72
Using a Dial Key to Receive Calls ..... Answer setting 72
Folding a FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls ... Setting when folded 73
Using the Received Calls Record ..... Received calls 74
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume ..... Volume 76
Adjusting the Ring Volume ..... Ring volume 77

Settings for when you cannot take calls

Putting a Call on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately ..... Answer hold 78
Setting the Hold Tone ..... Set hold tone 78
Using Public Mode (Driving Mode) ..... Public mode (Driving mode) 79
Using Public Mode (Power off) ..... Public mode (power off) 80
Checking Missed Calls ..... Info notice setting 81
Having a Caller Leave a Message and Video ..... Record message 82
Recording the Caller's Message and Video Instead of Answering an Incoming Call ..... Quick message 84
Playing/Erasing Record Messages and Voice Memos 85
Playing/Erasing Videophone Messages ..... VP message 86

Making a FOMA Voice Call

- You cannot make FOMA voice calls in WLAN single mode.
- In DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA/Prefer WLAN), you can select a call type, FOMA voice call or VoIP call* while entering a phone number.

  *: VoIP (Voice over Internet Protocol) calls are voice calls that are connected through the IP network. →p.452

1 Dial the other party's number, starting with the area code

The "Phone number entry" screen appears.
Always start with the area code, even for calls within the same area.

Area code − Local code − Phone number

A number of up to 80 digits can be entered for making a call although the numbers disappear from the display one by one from the beginning after the number exceeds 26 digits.
If "WLAN" appears, press ● to display "FOMA".



Phone number entry

Function menu➡p.57

■ To call a mobile phone

090−××××−××××
or
080−××××−××××

■ To call a PHS phone

070−××××−××××

2 [Call]

The phone number disappears briefly and then reappears from the right as it is dialed.
The "" icon flashes during dialing and remains lit during a call.
The "FOMA voice in-call" screen appears.



FOMA voice in-call

Function menu➡p.57

■ To make a VoIP call

▶Check that "WLAN" appears and press [Call]
If "FOMA" appears, press ● to display "WLAN" and press [Call].

■ To switch to a videophone call during a voice call

"Changing a Call from FOMA Voice to Videophone" →p.58

■ If you hear a busy tone

The line is busy. Press [End], and call again after a while.

■ If you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached

The other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is turned off or out of range. Press [End], and call again after a while.

■ If you hear the message requesting your caller ID

The other party has set the Caller ID Request service to "Activate". Call again with your caller ID shown.

3 To end the call, press [End]

NOTE

- You can make calls while in i-mode or sending or receiving mails or instant messages.
- A Chaku-moji message up to 10 characters (including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters) can be attached to a call to be made. The Chaku-moji message appears on the screen of the other party's phone when it rings. →p.62
- You cannot make calls during 64K data communication, videophone calls or PushTalk calls. However, if the other party's FOMA terminal can change the call mode, you can change a call from videophone to voice by selecting "Change to voice" from the function menu. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.) →p.93
- You can also send photographs taken with the built-in camera to the other party during a call (Speed photo mail). →p.260
- While you are dialing to a person of which name and phone number are stored in the phonebook, the name and icon selected for the phonebook entry appear. However, an image does not appear even if it is stored in a phonebook entry.
- You can talk in hands-free mode during a call. →p.70
- You can make calls using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). →p.412

Function menu (Phone number entry screen)

Sending mode	Selects “FOMA” or “WLAN” for the dialing mode.
Inp. SIP address	Displays the SIP address entry screen.
Notify Caller ID	Selects “OFF” or “ON” for whether to show the other party your caller ID. ■**To cancel “OFF” or “ON” under “Notify Caller ID”** ▶**“Cancel prefix”** When “Cancel prefix” is set, the “Caller ID Notification” (p.53) setting applies.
Prefix numbers	▶**Select a prefix name to add** “Setting Prefix Numbers”→p.68
Prefix	Enters a prefix for VoIP.→p.454
Chaku-moji	“Making a call with a Chaku-moji message”→p.63
Int’l call	■**When “+” is added (country code added)*** ▶**Select the IDD prefix code** “+” is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■**When “+” is not added (country code not added)** ▶**Select a country code**▶**Select the IDD prefix code** The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If an area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls→p.60
Multi Number	“Multi Number”→p.427
Add to phonebook	“Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook”→p.119 “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook”→p.121
Compose message	“Creating and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.257
Connection speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from “64K” or “32K”.
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call.→p.97 Selecting “Release settings” cancels the setting of “Me” or “Chara-den”.

*: “Int’l call” is unavailable when “+81” is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

Function menu (FOMA voice in-call screen)

Speed photo mail	“Sending a still image shot in talking”→p.260
Disp photo mail	Shows a received speed photo mail.
Check new messages	Checks for new i-mode messages.→pp.243, 271

If you entered a wrong number

■ To insert a number

Press ⊙ to move the cursor to the number on the left of the insert position and enter a number.

■ To delete a number

Press ⊙ to move the cursor to the number to delete and press CLR.
Pressing CLR for 1 second or longer deletes the highlighted number and all numbers on the left side of the highlighted number.

■ To reenter a number

Move the cursor to the beginning or end of the number and press CLR for 1 second or longer to return to the standby screen.

Putting an ongoing call on hold <Holding>

1 During a call▶CLR

The other party hears the on-hold tone.



■ **To end the held call**

▶☎

■ **If the held party hangs up**

The call ends.

2 Press CLR, ☎ or ● to resume the call

NOTE

- Call charges still apply while a call is on hold.
- Use “Set hold tone” to select the tone that sounds while a call is on hold.
- The hold tone also sounds on your FOMA terminal while a call is on hold. However, the tone does not sound when “FOMAphone” in “Ring volume” is set to “Silent” or Manner mode is set. (The tone sounds if you have selected “Original” in “Manner mode set” in which the “Phone vol.” setting is not “Silent”.)

Changing a Call from FOMA Voice to Videophone

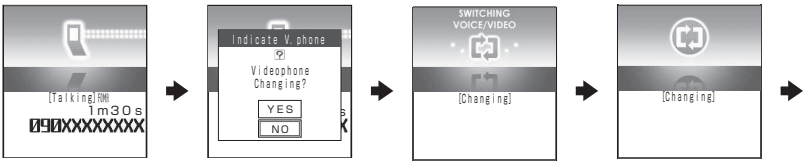
You can change the call mode during a FOMA voice call you dialed.

- If the other party uses a FOMA terminal that can change the call mode, “V.phone” appears during a FOMA voice call and you can change the call mode between FOMA voice and videophone. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)
- You can only change the call mode when you are the caller. When you are a callee, you cannot change the call mode.
- To change calls, the other party must set Indicate V.phone beforehand.→p.100
- You cannot change the call mode from VoIP call to videophone.

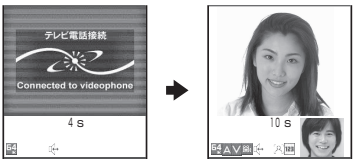
1 FOMA voice in-call screen (p.56)▶● (V.phone)▶“YES”

While the call mode is being changed from voice to videophone, a screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and voice guidance is given.

Select “NO” on the Indicate V.phone message screen to return to the FOMA voice in-call screen.



The digital communication fee is charged after the appearance of this screen.



NOTE

- You can repeatedly change the call mode between voice and videophone.
- You can also change a call from videophone to voice.→p.93
- It takes about 5 seconds to change the call mode. Signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- You cannot change the call mode between videophone and voice while on a call in the following cases:
  - “Call Waiting” is running.
  - The other party is holding a call.
  - The other party has activated Record message.
- The call time shown is reset to 0 seconds each time the call mode is changed. However, if a videophone call ends after the call mode is changed, the call time shown indicates the total of the voice call and videophone call.

◆ If you try to change the call mode, a message appears on the other party's videophone screen asking to select an image to send, camera image or substitute image.→p.72
◆ If the call mode is changed, the first dialed number is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls record. The first received number is registered to the Received calls record.
◆ If a caller is using packet communication (including i-mode), the packet communication is canceled to change to a videophone call.
◆ If the other party is using packet communication (including i-mode), you receive the message "No switch" meaning you cannot change the call mode. The voice call continues.
◆ Depending on the other party's communication conditions such as manipulation or the signal quality, you may not be able to change the call mode and the call may be canceled.
◆ You are not charged while "SWITCHING VOICE/VIDEO" appears.
◆ If you have changed the call mode, the call charge shown in "Call data" may differ from the one you will pay.
◆ The "Hands-free switch" setting affects the hands-free status after the call mode is changed, regardless of the status before the change.→p.99

<WORLD CALL>

Making International Calls

Subscription: Not required
Monthly charge: Free

WORLD CALL is an international dialing service available for DoCoMo mobile phones.
FOMA service subscribers are also subscribed to "WORLD CALL" (excluding those who indicated that they did not require the service).
* This service is unavailable with some billing plans.
● WORLD CALL is available for calls to around 240 countries and regions worldwide.
● The WORLD CALL is included in the bill for your monthly call charges.
● In addition to dialing a phone number, you can make an international call by adding "+" or selecting "Int'l call" or "Prefix numbers" from the function menu on the phone number entry, Redial/Dialed calls, Received calls or phonebook detail screen.
● WORLD CALL is unavailable for VoIP calls.

Changes to the international dialing procedure

Because communication from mobile devices such as mobile phones is not covered by the "MYLINE" service, this service cannot be used to access WORLD CALL. However, with the introduction of the "MYLINE" service, the procedure for making international calls from a mobile phone has changed. Note that the conventional dialing procedure (the one described below with "010" removed) can no longer be used.

For additional information regarding WORLD CALL, refer to the contact information provided on the back cover of this manual.

"International videophone calls" can be made to users of some specific overseas 3G mobile terminals by pressing ✉ (V. phone) to make a call after following the dialing procedure below.
● See the DoCoMo website for information about accessible countries and carriers.
● Depending on the type of the phone used by the other party, the other party's image shown on your FOMA terminal may be distorted during an international videophone call or the connection may fail.

Dialing to make an international call

1 Dial a number in the following order: 009130→010→(country code)→(area code)→(the other party's phone number)

If an area code begins with a zero (0), omit the zero. To make a call to Italy, etc., "0" may be required.

2 ☎

An international call is made.

3 To end the call, press ☎

Using “+” to make an international call

Using the “+” prefix allows you to make international calls without having to dial an IDD prefix code (e.g. 009130-010).

- “Auto assist setting” in “Int’l dial settings” is set to “Auto” at the time of purchase so that the FOMA terminal automatically dials the IDD prefix code.

1 On the standby screen, dial the following: + (0 (1 second or longer))→(country code)→(area code)→(other party’s phone number)

Dial the other party’s phone number excluding “0” at the beginning of the area code (long distance code). To make a call to Italy, etc., “0” may be required.

2 ▶“Dial”

An international call is made.

■ **To make a call without converting “+” into the IDD prefix code**

▶“Original phone No.”

* This function is unavailable for your FOMA terminal.

■ **To cancel a call**

▶“Cancel”

Making an international call with an easy operation <Int’l dial settings>

Default setting	Auto assist setting: Auto IDD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL (009130010) Country Code setting: アメリカ (Country Code: 1)

Change the settings for dialing international calls or store new country codes. You can set the following:

Setting	Description
Auto assist setting	When you make an international call from Japan, the entered “+” is automatically replaced with the IDD prefix code set in this function.
IDD Prefix setting	Stores international access names and IDD prefix codes used when you make international calls.
Country Code setting	Stores country names and country codes used when you make international calls.

● Adding “+” automatically

Set this function to add “+” automatically when making international calls.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶“Dialing”▶“Int’l dial settings”

2 “Auto assist setting”▶“Auto”

■ **To not add “+”**

▶“OFF”

3 Select a country name

4 Select an international access name

● Storing an IDD prefix code

You can store up to 3 IDD prefix codes, each of 10 digits max.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Int’l dial settings”

2 **“IDD Prefix setting”**

The “IDD Prefix setting” screen appears.

3 **Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press ✉ (Edit)**

■ **To edit a stored item**

▶Highlight an item to edit and press ✉ (Edit)

4 **Enter an international access name**

5 **Enter the IDD prefix code**



IDD Prefix setting

Function menu➡p.61

Function menu (IDD Prefix setting screen)

Edit	Edits an IDD prefix code.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted IDD prefix code.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code** ▶**“YES”** Deletes all the stored IDD prefix codes.

NOTE

◆ You cannot delete the IDD prefix code selected in “Auto assist setting”. When “Auto” is set in “Auto assist setting”, you cannot perform “Delete all”.

● Storing a country code

You can store up to 3 country codes, each of 5 digits max.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Dialing” ▶ “Int’l dial settings”

2 **“Country Code setting”**

The “Country Code setting” screen appears.

3 **Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press ✉ (Edit)**

■ **To edit a stored item**

▶Highlight an item to edit and press ✉ (Edit)

4 **Enter a country name**

5 **Enter the country code**

See the DoCoMo website for more information about country codes.



Country Code setting

Function menu➡p.61

Function menu (Country Code setting screen)

Edit	Edits a country code.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted country code setting.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code** ▶**“YES”** Deletes all the stored country code settings.

NOTE

◆ You cannot delete the country code set in “Auto assist setting”. When “Auto” is set in “Auto assist setting”, you cannot perform “Delete all”.

<Chaku-moji>

Using Chaku-moji

Default setting	MSG display settings: Calls with Caller ID 3D message display: ON

When making a FOMA voice or videophone call, you can send a message (Chaku-moji) that will be shown on the other party's phone while it is ringing, enabling you to show the other party the summary of the call, etc. beforehand.

*Compliant models: 902iS series, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, SH902iSL, 903i series, 702iS series (except N702iS, M702iS, M702iG), 703i series, 601i series (except L601i), D800iDS

- A Chaku-moji message can contain up to 10 characters including pictographs, face symbols, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters.
- Charges apply to sending of Chaku-moji messages. They are not applied to the receiver.
- The Chaku-moji function is incompatible with PushTalk calls.
- The Chaku-moji function is unavailable for VoIP calls.

Editing or setting Chaku-moji messages

1 (MENU) ▶ (Service) ▶ "Chaku-moji" ▶ Select any item

Create message	"Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently" →p.62	
MSG display settings	Sets the type of Chaku-moji message to be displayed.	
	Display all messages	Displays all Chaku-moji messages.
	Only number in PH-book	Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders stored in the phonebook.
	Calls with Caller ID	Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders showing the caller ID.
	Hide all messages	Hides all Chaku-moji messages.
3D message display	Sets whether to use 3D animations to show Chaku-moji messages.	

NOTE

- The "MSG display settings" setting affects displays on the indicator display. However, setting "OFF" for "Phone number" in "Indicator display" does not show Chaku-moji messages on the indicator display.
- 3D animations are not used for the indicator display even if "3D message display" is set to "ON".

Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently

Adding Chaku-moji messages to use frequently enables you to easily attach them to calls to make.

- 5 messages are pre-installed and you can edit them.
- Up to 30 messages (including 5 pre-installed) can be added.

1 (MENU) ▶ (Service) ▶ "Chaku-moji" ▶ "Create message"

The "Create message" screen appears.

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press (Edit)

■ To edit a stored Chaku-moji message

▶Highlight an item to edit and press (Edit)

3 Enter a Chaku-moji message



Create message

Function menu➡p.63

NOTE

- Highlighting "<Not recorded>" on the "Create message" screen and pressing ● also enables you to add a Chaku-moji message.

Function menu (Create message screen)

Edit	Edits a Chaku-moji message.	
Delete	**Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted Chaku-moji message.
	Delete selected	**▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple Chaku-moji messages.
	Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all Chaku-moji messages.

NOTE

- If ● (Set) is pressed without any changes on the screen for editing a pre-installed message, the pre-installed one will remain.
- You cannot delete pre-installed Chaku-moji messages. If a pre-installed message is edited and the edited message is deleted, the pre-installed one will be restored.

Making a call with a Chaku-moji message

Chaku-moji messages can be added to FOMA voice calls or videophone calls that will be made by dialing or using Phonebook entries, "Received calls", "Dialed calls" or "Redial" record.

<Example: To add a Chaku-moji message on the phone number entry screen to make a FOMA voice call>

1 Phone number entry screen (p.56)▶ (FUNC)▶"Chaku-moji"▶ Select any item

Create message	Enters a Chaku-moji message. A message can contain up to 10 characters including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters.
Select message	Selects a stored Chaku-moji message. To edit the message, press ✉ (Edit) on the Select message screen.
Sent messages	Selects a sent Chaku-moji message. To edit the message, press ✉ (Edit) on the Sent messages screen.

2

When the other party's terminal receives a Chaku-moji message, "Transmission completed" appears on your terminal, resulting in charges to the sending.



■ **To make a videophone call with a Chaku-moji message**
▶✉ (V. phone)

■ **To delete the entered Chaku-moji message (to make a call without the message)**
▶ (FUNC)▶"Chaku-moji"▶"Create message"▶Delete all the entered Chaku-moji characters and press ●

NOTE

- Up to 30 sent messages can be stored in the Sent messages record. If the same message has been sent twice or more, the latest one is stored. When the number of sent messages exceeds the maximum, they are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- If the callee's phone is under conditions such as following, Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent, the sending result message "Transmission failed" appears and no charges apply to the sending.
  - The phone does not support Chaku-moji.
  - "MSG display settings" that hides received Chaku-moji messages is set on the phone.

Continued on next page

◆ If the callee's phone is under conditions such as following, Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent, no sending result appears and no charges apply to the sending. (The messages cannot be logged in the Received calls record on the callee's phone.)
  • Public mode (Driving mode) is set.
  • 0 seconds is set as the ring time for Record message.
  • The phone is out of the service area or turned off.
◆ Depending on the signal status, no sending result appears even if a Chaku-moji message reaches the callee's phone. If this is the case, charges apply to the sending.
◆ If "Auto redial as voice" (p.97) is set to "ON" and you cannot make a videophone call with a Chaku-moji message, the phone automatically redials the call with the message after switching the call mode to voice.
◆ If you edit a Chaku-moji message by using "Select message", the edited message is available only once. The message is not listed on the "Create message" screen.
◆ Chaku-moji messages cannot be sent to phones overseas.

● If a voice or videophone call with a Chaku-moji message arrives

The ringing screen shows the Chaku-moji message. When you answer the call, the message disappears.
● 3D animations are used to display Chaku-moji messages.
● Chaku-moji messages are shown on the indicator display when the FOMA terminal is folded.



Example: Voice call

NOTE
◆ 3D animations may not be used for some pictographs.
◆ Even if a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives, the message may not appear depending on the status of the caller's or callee's phone. When this happens, the message is not logged in the Received calls record.
◆ Even if you received a call whose ring time is shorter than the time set in "FOMAphone" in "Set mute seconds" under "Ring time(sec.)", the Chaku-moji message attached to the call appears. The message logged in the Received calls record and the charges apply to the caller.

● Displaying Chaku-moji messages in the Received calls record

Chaku-moji messages are stored in the Received calls record.

1 Received calls screen (list) (p.74)▶Select an entry with "✎"
The "Received calls (detail)" screen appears, allowing you to check the Chaku-moji message.

NOTE
◆ If you use the Received calls record to make a call, the Chaku-moji message stored in the record is not sent.

<Redial/Dialed calls>

Dialing a Previously Dialed Number

Information such as phone number, SIP address, date and time you called is recorded as the Redial/Dialed calls record.
● The Redial record can store up to 30 entries of phone numbers for voice call, videophone call and PushTalk call and SIP addresses. The Dialed calls record can hold up to 30 voice call, videophone call and PushTalk call entries and up to 30 packet communication and 64K data communication entries.
● If you have dialed to the same phone number or SIP address twice or more, only the latest call is logged in the Redial record while all the calls are logged in the Dialed calls record.
● When the number of Redial/Dialed calls record entries exceeds the maximum, existing entries are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
● You cannot view the Redial/Dialed calls record during a videophone call.
● Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of PushTalk calls→p.108

1 On the standby screen▶

The “Redial (list)” screen appears.

■ To view the Dialed calls record

▶On the standby screen▶(MENU)▶[Data box]▶“Dialed calls”

The “Dialed calls (list)” screen appears.



Example: Redial (list)

Function menu➡p.65

2 Select a Redial or Dialed calls record entry to check

The “Redial (detail)” or “Dialed calls (detail)” screen appears.
In the top right corner of the screen, the “Current/Total entries” is shown. The lower the number, the more recently the phone number or SIP address was called.

■ To check the earlier or later Redial/Dialed call record entries

Use ● to move to the previous (more recent) number or ● to move to the next (older) number.

■ For a phone number or SIP address stored in the phonebook

The name stored in the phonebook also appears.



Example: Redial (detail)

Function menu➡p.65

3 [☎]

■ To make a videophone call

▶(✉)([V.phone])

■ To make a PushTalk call

▶[PushTalk]

4 To end the call, press [☎]

NOTE

- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not delete the Redial or Dialed calls record. To prevent others from seeing the phone numbers and SIP addresses you have called, delete the respective entries of the Redial or Dialed calls record, lock “Dialed calls” in “Original lock” or set “Redial/Dialed calls” in “Record display set” to “OFF”.
- Press [☎] and ● on the standby screen to make a voice call to the most recent Redial record entry.
- If you have selected “Multi Number” from the function menu to make a call, the items selected when making the call (“Basic Number” or the registered name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) are shown on the Redial (detail) or Dialed calls (detail) screen.
- Setting “Restrict dialing” deletes all the Redial or Dialed calls record entries. The calls made subsequently are logged in the Redial or Dialed calls record.
- The phone numbers and SIP addresses you have called are also logged in the “Dialed calls” record. Even when two or more calls are made to the same number, the calls are recorded separately in the “Dialed calls” record.
- The Redial record of PushTalk calls (group) is updated only if you select the same members from the Redial/Dialed calls record to make a call. If at least one member is different, the call is logged as another record entry.

Function menu (Redial/Dialed calls screen)

● The function menus of Redial/Dialed calls screen are the same between the list and the detail.

Select mode	Selects “FOMA” or “WLAN” for the dialing mode.
Notify Caller ID[*1]	Selects “OFF” or “ON” for whether to show the other party your caller ID. **■ To cancel “OFF” or “ON” under “Notify Caller ID”** **▶“Cancel prefix”** When “Cancel prefix” is set, the “Caller ID Notification” (p.53) setting applies.
Prefix numbers[*1*2]	**▶Select a prefix name to add** “Setting Prefix Numbers”→p.68
Prefix[*1*2]	Enters a prefix for VoIP.→p.454
Chaku-moji[*1*2]	“Making a call with a Chaku-moji message”→p.63

Continued on next page

Int'l call[*1][*2]	■**When "+" is added (country code added)**[*3] ▶**Select the IDD prefix code** "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■**When "+" is not added (country code not added)** ▶**Select a country code**▶**Select the IDD prefix code** The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If an area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls→p.60	
Multi Number[*1][*2]	"Multi Number"→p.427	
Select PushTalk[*4]	Selects members from the Redial/Dialed calls record of PushTalk (group) calls to make a PushTalk call.→p.108	
Disp. sending mode[*5]	Shows a dialing mode icon in the Redial/Dialed calls record.	
Add to phonebook	"Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records"→p.122	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.158	
Compose message[*2]	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.257	
Compose SMS[*2]	"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)"→p.299	
Sent address	Shows the Sent address list.	
Delete	Deletes the Redial or Dialed calls record entries.	
	Delete this	Deletes the highlighted Redial or Dialed Calls record entry.
	Delete selected	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)**▶**ⓜ (Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes the multiple Redial or Dialed calls record entries.
	Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the Redial and Dialed calls records entries.
Connection speed[*1][*2]	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".	
Select image[*2]	Sets an image to send during a videophone call.→p.97 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of My side or Chara-den.	

*1: Only available for the detail screen
*2: Unavailable for the PushTalk (group) record screen
*3: "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).
*4: Only available for the PushTalk (group) record screen
*5: Only available for the list screen

NOTE

- Selecting "Compose message" enables you to compose a mail with a mail address if it is stored in a phonebook entry with a phone number. When multiple mail addresses are stored in the phonebook entry, the first address is specified as the address.
- Performing "Delete all" on the Redial or Dialed calls screen deletes all the entries logged in the both Redial and Dialed calls records. Note that performing "Delete this" or "Delete selected" for Redial record entries does not any entry of the Dialed calls record, or vice versa. Use the function menu on the Dialed calls record screen to delete the Dialed calls record, or the function menu on the Redial screen to delete the Redial record.

■ Redial/Dialed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Voice call		International videophone call
	International call		Packet communication call
	Videophone call		64K data communication call
	PushTalk (one-to-one) call		PushTalk (group) call

■ Dialing mode icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Dialing with FOMA		Dialing with VoIP
	VoIP call that could not be dialed		

<186/184>

Showing/Hiding Your Caller ID for Individual Calls

If the other party's phone supports caller ID display, you can show your phone number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) when making a FOMA voice or videophone call. Since your caller ID is important information, be careful when disclosing it.

- "PushTalk setting" is available for setting whether to show your caller ID when making PushTalk calls. →p.115

Function	Description	Refer to
Caller ID Notification	Sets whether to show your caller ID when making a FOMA voice or videophone call.	p.53
184/186	Uses the 184 and 186 prefixes to specify whether to show your caller ID every time you make a FOMA voice or videophone call.	p.67
Notify Caller ID	Uses the function menu to specify whether to show your caller ID every time you make a FOMA voice or videophone call.	p.57

Adding the 186/184 prefix to the other party's phone number

To show your caller ID each time you make a FOMA voice or videophone call, add the 186 prefix to the phone number to dial. To hide your caller ID, use the 184 prefix.

- Dialing with the "186" or "184" prefix is disabled for international calls. To make them, select "Notify Caller ID" from the function menu. →p.57
- This function is unavailable for VoIP calls.

■ To show your phone number

FOMA Voice call: 186 - (the other party's phone number) - [Call]
Videophone call: 186 - (the other party's phone number) - [Mail] ([V.phone])

■ To hide your phone number

FOMA Voice call: 184 - (the other party's phone number) - [Call]
Videophone call: 184 - (the other party's phone number) - [Mail] ([V.phone])

NOTE

- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, redial the number with the "186" prefix added.
- If you make a FOMA voice or videophone call with 186 or 184, the phone number including this prefix will be logged in the Redial or Dialed calls record.

<Pause dial> MENU84

Sending Push Signals Quickly

Sending push signals from your FOMA terminal enables you to send messages to a pager or to use services such as ticket ordering and bank balance requests.

Storing dialing data in Pause dial

You can store dialing data to send as push signals beforehand into Pause dial. Inserting a pause (p) into the dialing data allows you to send data with a separation where the pause lies.

- You can store one dialing data entry that consists of up to 128 characters.
- Dialing data can contain numbers from 0 to 9, #, * and pause (p).
- You cannot enter pauses (p) in succession or at the beginning of dialing data.

1 [MENU]▶[Settings]▶"Dialing"▶"Pause dial"

The "Pause dial" screen appears.

■ If there is dialing data already stored

The stored dialing data appears.

2 [Mail] (Edit)▶Enter the dialing data

Press [0] to [9], [#] or [*] to enter dialing data.

■ To enter a pause (p)

▶[*] (1 second or longer)



Pause dial

Function menu➡p.68

Function menu (Pause dial screen)

Edit	▶**Edit the dialing data**
Send pause dial	▶**Enter the destination phone number**▶ or ● Each time you press or ●, the dialing data up to a pause (p) is transmitted.
Delete	Deletes the stored dialing data.

Transmitting dialing data as Pause dial

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**“Dialing”▶“Pause dial”**

2 ●▶**Dial the destination phone number or SIP address**

■ **To search the phonebook from a part of a phone number**

▶Dial a part of a phone number▶Press ↕ to search the phonebook

Search a phone number.

You cannot search the phonebook from a part of a SIP address.

■ **To search after selecting a search mode of the phonebook**

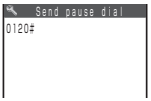
▶↕▶Select a search mode on the search phonebook screen

■ **To enter a number or address by searching the Received calls/Redial record**

▶○▶Search a number or address from the Received calls record or press ○ to search from the Redial record

3

The FOMA terminal calls the entered phone number or SIP address and shows the dialing data up to the first pause (p) while the dialed phone is ringing. The pause (p) is not shown.



4 or ●

Each time you press or ●, the dialing data up to a pause (p) is transmitted. Once the FOMA terminal has finished sending the last number, the in-call screen reappears.

■ **To transmit all the dialing data at once**

▶○ (1 second or longer)▶**“Send at one time”**

It may not be possible to send all data at once to some recipients.

NOTE

- Some phones may be unable to receive push signals.
- Open the Pause dial screen during a voice call to transmit dialing data to the other party.
- You cannot send push signals during a videophone call.
- “p” included in a SIP address is not recognized as a pause.

<Prefix setting>

Setting Prefix Numbers

Default setting	WORLD CALL (009130010), 184 (184), 186 (186)

Set prefixes to use frequently in advance. You can add the preset prefix to the beginning of a phone number or SIP address to make a call by using “Dial”, “Phonebook”, “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” or “Redial”.

- You can store up to 7 prefix numbers.
- Preset prefixes can include numbers from 0 to 9, #, ✱ and +.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**“Dialing”▶“Prefix setting”**

The “Prefix setting” screen appears.

2 **Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press ✉ (Edit)**

■ **To edit a stored prefix**

▶Highlight an item to edit and press ✉ (Edit)

■ **To check a stored prefix**

▶Select an item to check

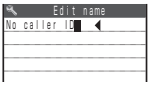


Prefix setting

Function menu➡p.69

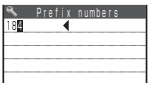
3 Enter a name

A name can consist of up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters.



4 Enter a number (prefix)

A number can consist of up to 10 digits.



Function menu (Prefix setting screen)

Edit	Edits a prefix.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted prefix.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all prefixes.

<Sub-address setting>

Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls

Default setting: ON

This function enables you to set "✗" contained in a phone number as a separator so that numbers following "✗" are recognized as a sub-address. Sub-addresses are available in ISDN to identify calls to make to specific communication devices or to select contents in "V-live".

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**"Dialing"▶"Sub-address setting"▶"ON"**

■ **To cancel the sub-address setting**

▶"OFF"

NOTE

◆ In the following cases, "✗" does not function as a sub-address separator. A number including "✗" is recognized as an ordinary phone number.
- "✗" is at the beginning of a phone number.
- "186/184" is followed by "✗" at the beginning of a phone number.
- "✗" follows the number entered in "Prefix numbers".
- "✗590#/✗591#/✗592#" is included in a phone number.
- The number is dialed as a VoIP call.

<Reconnect signal> MENU77

Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection

Default setting: High tone

When the signal quality deteriorates during a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to the extent that the call drops out, a FOMA terminal will automatically reconnect the call if the signal quality quickly improves. This function allows you to set the type of alarm given when a call is being reconnected.

● The time needed for reconnection varies depending on communication conditions such as manipulation or signal quality. It may roughly take about 10 seconds.

● VoIP calls will not be reconnected even if they drop out.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**"Talk"▶"Reconnect signal"▶"No tone", "High tone" or "Low tone"**

NOTE

◆ A call may drop out without the warning tone if signal quality worsens very quickly.

◆ Call charges apply in the interval (up to roughly 10 seconds) prior to reconnection.

◆ The other party hears no sound while the signal is lost.

<Noise reduction> MENU76

Blocking Out Ambient Noise

Default setting: ON

Noise reduction is a function that suppresses ambient noise. This makes it easier for the other party in a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to hear you when you are in a noisy location.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Noise reduction” ▶ “ON”

■ **To not use the noise reduction**

▶“OFF”

<Hands-free>

Switching to Hands-free Operation

Switching to the hands-free operation during a call

Switching to the hands-free operation during a call enables you to hear the other party’s voice through the speaker.

<Example: During a FOMA voice call>

1 **FOMA voice in-call screen (p.56)** ▶ ✉ (ON)

When a voice or PushTalk call arrives, pressing ✉ (ON) while the FOMA terminal is ringing also allows you to switch to hands-free.

“ (blue)” appears and you can hear other party’s voice through the speaker during a hands-free call.



Example: Voice call

■ **To cancel the hands-free operation**

▶Press ✉ (OFF) during a hands-free call

The hands-free operation ends, and “ (blue)” disappears during a voice or PushTalk call or “ (blue)” changes to “ (pale blue)” during a videophone call.

● Notes on using the hands-free operation

It is recommended to keep a distance of about 30 cm from a FOMA terminal during a hands-free call. If the distance is longer or shorter than 30 cm, the other party may find it difficult to listen to you or voices may sound differently.

NOTE

- The other party’s voice may be heard by those around you during a hands-free call. Move to an area where your call will not disturb other people before switching to a hands-free call.
- Ending a call cancels the hands-free setting.

<In-car hands-free>

Making Hands-free Calls in a Car

By connecting your FOMA terminal to a hands-free device such as “In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01” (optional) or a car navigation system, you can make or receive voice calls, etc. with the hands-free device.

For information about how to use a hands-free device, refer to the instructions provided with the device. Note that FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) must be used with In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

● VoIP calls are unavailable with a hands-free device.

NOTE

- To operate from a hands-free device, set USB mode setting to “Communication mode”. →p.371
- The display and ring tones for incoming calls and mails work according to the FOMA terminal settings.
- If a FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that sound is emitted from the hands-free device, a ring tone still sounds through the hands-free device for incoming mails or voice, videophone and PushTalk calls even when Manner mode is set or the ring volume is set to “Silent”.
- When Public mode (Driving mode) is set, a FOMA terminal works for incoming calls and mails as specified in the “Public mode” settings.

- When Record message is set, a FOMA terminal works for incoming calls as specified in the “Record message” settings.
- If you make a videophone call from a hands-free device using the phonebook or Redial record, the connection speed set in the hands-free device is applied. If no connection speed is set, “64K” is used.
- While a FOMA terminal is connected to a hands-free device and set up so that sound is emitted from the FOMA terminal, “Setting when folded” is applied to the operation performed when the FOMA terminal is folded. If the hands-free device is set to emit sound and the FOMA terminal is folded, call condition does not change regardless of “Setting when folded”.

Receiving a FOMA Voice Call

1 When a call arrives, press [☎] or [●]

When a call arrives, a FOMA terminal rings, the incoming call lamp flashes and the “Ringing” screen appears.
Unless “FOMAphone” under “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal also vibrates to notify you of the call.
The indicator display also notifies you of the call by displaying the caller’s name.→p.33

■ If a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives

A Chaku-moji animation appears on the Ringing screen. You may know the contents beforehand.→p.62



Ringing



Ringing (with Chaku-moji)

Function menu➡p.71

2 To end the call, press [☎]

Function menu (Ringing screen)

Call Rejection	Ends the call without answering it.
Call Forwarding	Forwards the call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the “Call Forwarding” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”. “Call Forwarding Service”→p.423
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the Voice Mail service center. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the “Voice Mail” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”. “Voice Mail Service”→p.420
Change Display	Changes the display from Additional Number 1 or 2 to the number from which the call is forwarded. This setting is available when Multi Number (Additional Number 1 or 2) and Call Forwarding are activated for receiving calls. “Multi Number”→p.427

NOTE

- Besides [☎] and [●], you can set up your FOMA terminal to enable you to answer calls also by pressing any of [0] to [9], [*], [CLR], [◆], [✉] or [▲] (Home) (Any key answer). However, pressing [▲] (Home) when the FOMA terminal is folded puts a call on hold. A hold tone sounds when “Setting when folded” is set to “Tone on” and does not sound when it is set to “No tone” or “End the call”. You can also set the FOMA terminal to stop only the ring tone when a key is pressed (Quick silent).
- Pressing [#] or [▼] (Memo/Check) while the FOMA terminal is ringing activates “Record message” to record the other party’s message. (Pressing [#] also sets Manner mode.)→p.84
- When a call with the caller ID shown arrives from a caller stored in the phonebook, a FOMA terminal shows the caller’s phone number and name. If there is an image stored in the phonebook entry, the image also appears. However, if the caller’s entry is stored as secret data, the name and image are hidden and only the phone number is shown. If a caller does not show the caller ID, the reason for hiding the ID is displayed (caller ID hidden).
- If multiple phonebook entries with different names contain the same phone number and you receive a call from the number, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings appears.→p.125
- Up to 30 received calls can be logged in the “Received calls” record. For a caller that has shown the caller ID, the caller’s phone number appears. If a caller who has shown the caller ID is stored in the phonebook, the caller’s name and phone number appear.

Continued on next page

◆ Enabling “Set in-call arrival” and setting “In-call arrival act” to “Answer” allow the FOMA terminal to make a short double-beep (“bibip”) when an incoming call arrives while you are on another call. When this happens, you can then do one of the following:
  • If you have subscribed to the “Voice Mail” service, you can forward the new call to the Voice Mail service center.
  • If you have subscribed to the “Call Forwarding” service, you can forward the new call to the call forwarding number.
  Furthermore, if you subscribe to the “Call Waiting”, set “In-call arrival act” to “Answer” and then activate “Call Waiting”, you can put the current call on hold and answer a new call. For more information, see p.422.
◆ When “PushTalk arrival act” (p.115) is set to “Answer”, you can receive calls while talking on a PushTalk call.
◆ A FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when “Public mode (Driving mode)” is set. Received calls are logged in the Received calls record as missed calls.
◆ You can reject calls from numbers not stored in your phonebook.→p.189
◆ You can specify the mute time until your FOMA terminal starts ringing for calls from numbers not stored in the phonebook.→p.188
◆ You cannot receive calls from phone numbers for which “Call rejection” is set in the phonebook. When setting “Call acceptation” for a phone number in the phonebook, you can only receive calls from the number.→p.185
◆ You can talk in hands-free mode during a call.→p.70

Changing a Call from FOMA Voice to Videophone (the Other Party)

A FOMA voice call you received is changed to a videophone call if the call mode is changed on the other party’s phone.

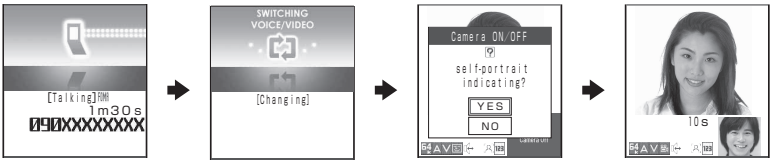
● You can only change the call mode when you are the caller. When you have received a call, you cannot change the call mode. (This function is available between terminals that support change between voice call and videophone call.)
● For the caller to change the call mode, “Indicate V.phone” must be set to “Indication ON” on the callee’s phone beforehand.→p.100

1 FOMA voice in-call screen (p.56)▶The other party changes the call mode▶“YES”

While the call mode is being changed from voice to videophone, a screen showing that the call mode is being changed appears and voice guidance is given.
The call mode is changed to videophone and a camera image is sent to the other party.

■ To send a substitute image to the other party

▶“NO”
The specified substitute image is sent to the other party.



NOTE

◆ The “Hands-free switch” setting affects the hands-free status after the call mode is changed, regardless of the status before the change.→p.99

<Answer setting> MENU58

Using a Dial Key to Receive Calls

Default setting: Any key answer

This setting enables you to quickly turn off a ring tone or answer the call when you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call. This is useful when you receive a call in a place where a ring tone may disturb people around you.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶“Incoming call”▶“Answer setting”▶Select any item

Any key answer	Besides ☎ or ●, pressing 0 to 9, ＊, CLR, ●, ✉ or ▮ (Home) allows you to answer an incoming voice call quickly. Press ▮ (Home) with the FOMA terminal folded to put the call on hold.* This is not applied to videophone calls. Besides ▯, ☎ or ●, pressing 0 to 9, ＊, CLR, ✉ or ▮ (Home) allows you to answer an incoming PushTalk call quickly.

Quick silent	When a voice or videophone call arrives, press 0 to 9, ＊, CLR, ◆ or ▲ (Home) or open the FOMA terminal to stop the ring tone or vibration. When you stop the ring tone in this way, the caller continues to hear the ring tone. Pressing ✉ when a voice call arrives also stops the ring tone or vibration. To answer the voice call, press ☎ or ●. When answering the videophone call, press ✉ (V. phone) or ☎ to send a camera image or ● to send a substitute image. When a PushTalk call arrives, press 0 to 9, ＊, CLR, ◆, ✉ or ▲ (Home) or open the FOMA terminal to stop the ring tone or vibration. When you stop the ring tone in this way, the caller continues to hear the ring tone. To answer the PushTalk call, press ▼, ☎ or ●.
OFF	Only pressing ☎ or ● allows you to answer an incoming voice call. When a videophone call arrives, only pressing ✉ (V. phone), ☎ or ● allows you to answer the call. (Pressing ● answers the call using a substitute image.) When a PushTalk call arrives, only pressing ▼, ☎ or ● allows you to answer the call.

*: A hold tone sounds when “Setting when folded” is set to “Tone on” and does not sound when it is set to “No tone” or “End the call”.

NOTE

- Even when “Quick silent” is set, it works as “Any key answer” while in “Manner mode”.
- Even when “Any key answer” or “Quick silent” is set, pressing 5 for 1 second or longer turns on or off the display light and “Any key answer” or “Quick silent” does not work.
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to a FOMA terminal, you can answer voice calls, videophone calls (with a camera image) or PushTalk calls by pressing the switch on the earphone/microphone with switch regardless of the “Answer setting” setting.
- When “Sidekeys guard” is set to “ON” or the FOMA terminal is folded, pressing ▲ (Home) does not work “Any key answer” or “Quick silent”.
- Pressing ▼ (Memo/Check) or # while the FOMA terminal is ringing activates Record message to record the caller’s message. →p.84

<Setting when folded> MENU18

Folding a FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls

Default setting: End the call

You can set how your FOMA terminal works when it is folded during a voice or videophone call.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Setting when folded” ▶ Select any item

No tone	Mutes sound for voice calls. For videophone calls, sound is muted and a “substitute image” is sent to the other party. No hold tone is given. When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.*	
Tone on	Puts a call on hold (Holding). You can also select whether to play the hold tone through the speaker on your FOMA terminal. If the FOMA terminal is folded during a voice call, the other party hears the hold tone selected in “Set hold tone”. While in a videophone call, the other party hears the hold tone selected in “Set hold tone” and sees a hold image. →pp.78, 97 When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.*	
	Speaker ON	The hold tone is heard by the other party and played through the speaker.
	Speaker OFF	The hold tone is only heard by the other party.
End the call	Ends a call. It is the same operation as pressing ☎.	

*: If you fold a FOMA terminal holding a voice call and re-open the terminal, the call resumes. If the held call is a videophone call, it remains on hold.

NOTE

- While Manner mode is set, no sound is played through the speaker even if “Speaker ON” is set.
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and folding the FOMA terminal does not change call condition. However, during a videophone call using a camera image, folding the FOMA terminal switches the image to a substitute.
- Even if “Tone on” is set, folding the FOMA terminal leads to the “No tone” operation while “Call Waiting” is activated.
- This setting is disabled for PushTalk calls. The “Setting when folded” under “PushTalk setting” will be applied. →p.115
- If you press CLR to put an ongoing VoIP call on hold and fold the FOMA terminal, the setting of “No tone” or “Tone on” will be canceled so that the call will remain held. If “End the call” has been set, the call will end.

Using the Received Calls Record

Information about received calls, including callers' phone numbers, SIP addresses, the dates and times are logged in the Received calls record.

- The Received calls record stores up to 30 voice call, videophone call and PushTalk call entries and up to 30 packet communication and 64K data communication call entries.
- If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- You cannot view the Received calls record during a videophone call.
- If you have changed the call mode between voice and videophone, the first received number is logged in the Received calls record.
- Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of PushTalk calls→p.108

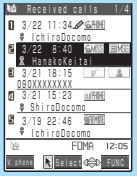
1 MENU ▶ Ouen data ▶ "Received calls" ▶ Select any item

All calls (number)	Shows all the Received calls record entries.
Missed calls (number)	Shows only the missed calls record entries.

Unknown calls: Shows the number of missed calls that you have not checked.

2 Check the Received calls record list

The "Received calls (list)" screen appears.



Received calls (list)

Function menu➡p.75

3 Select a Received calls record entry to check

The "Received calls (detail)" screen appears.
In the top right corner of the screen, "Current/Total entries" is shown. The lower the number, the more recently the phone number or SIP address was received.



Received calls (detail)

Function menu➡p.75

■ **To check the earlier or later Received calls record entries**
Use ◯ to move to the previous (more recent) entry or ◯ to move to the next (older) entry.

■ **For a phone number or SIP address stored in the phonebook**
The name stored in the phonebook also appears.

4 ☎

■ **To make a videophone call**
▶✉ (V. phone)

■ **To make a PushTalk call**
▶

5 To end the call, press ☎

NOTE

- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not delete the Received calls record. To prevent others from seeing the phone numbers and SIP addresses you have received, delete the Received calls record entries, lock "Received calls" in "Original lock" or set "Received calls" in "Record display set" to "OFF".
- When you have set "Missed calls display" in the "Ring time(sec.)" to "Not display" and receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the one set in "Set mute seconds", the call does not appear in the Received calls record.→p.188
- Pressing ◯ on the standby screen also accesses the Received calls record.
- Press ☎ and ◯ on the standby screen to make a voice call to the most recent Received calls record entry.
- Receiving a call with Multi Number (Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) will display the registered name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2 on the Received calls record (detail) screen.
- If a caller uses "Dial-in", a number other than the "Dial-in" may be displayed.

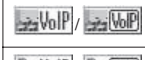
◆ If a phone number or SIP address shown by a caller is stored in the phonebook, the caller's name and phone number or SIP address are logged in the Received calls record. If a phone number or SIP address has been hidden, the reason for hiding it (p.187) is shown in the Received calls record. Even if a number or address shown by a caller is stored in the phonebook, while "Restrict dialing" is set, the number or address and the name appear only when the number or address is specified in "Restrict dialing". When the number or address is not specified in "Restrict dialing", only the number or address appears.

◆ If multiple phonebook entries with different names contain the same phone number or SIP address and you receive a call from the number or address, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of readings appears in the Received calls record.→p.125

■ Received calls/Missed calls icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed voice calls		Received remote monitoring calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed international voice calls		Received/missed/unconfirmed missed international videophone calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed videophone calls		Received/missed/unconfirmed missed packet communication calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed PushTalk (one-to-one) calls		Received/missed/unconfirmed missed 64K data communication calls
	Received/missed/unconfirmed missed PushTalk (group) calls		Packet communication or 64K data communication calls that have been received without an external unit connected
	Voice message recorded/ videophone message recorded		Calls with Chaku-moji messages

■ Receiving mode icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
	Receiving with FOMA		VoIP call that could not be received*
	Receiving with VoIP*		VoIP call (Internal) that could not be received*
	Receiving with VoIP (Internal)*		VoIP call (Public) that could not be received*
	Receiving with VoIP (Public)*		VoIP call (Tie line) that could not be received
	Receiving with VoIP (Tie line)		

*: The shown icons vary depending on the main unit (SIP server).

Function menu (Received calls screen)

● The function menus of Received calls screen are the same between the list and the detail.

Select mode	Selects "FOMA" or "WLAN" for the Select mode.
Notify Caller ID[*1]	Selects "OFF" or "ON" for whether to show the other party your caller ID. **■To cancel "OFF" or "ON" under "Notify Caller ID"** **▶"Cancel prefix"** When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.53) setting applies.
Prefix numbers[*1*2]	**▶Select a prefix name to add** "Setting Prefix Numbers"→p.68
Prefix[*1*2]	Enters a prefix for VoIP.→p.454
Chaku-moji[*1*2]	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message"→p.63

Continued on next page

Int'l call[*1][*2]	■**When "+" is added (country code added)**[*3] ▶**Select the IDD prefix code** "+" is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■**When "+" is not added (country code not added)** ▶**Select a country code**▶**Select the IDD prefix code** The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If an area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls→p.60	
Multi Number[*1][*2]	"Multi Number"→p.427	
Select PushTalk[*4]	Selects members from the PushTalk (group) calls record to make a PushTalk call.→p.108	
Ring time[*5]	Shows the Missed calls record entries with the ring times.	
Disp. receiv. mode[*5]	Shows the receiving mode icons in the Received calls record.	
Add to phonebook	"Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records"→p.122	
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.158	
Compose message[*2]	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.257	
Compose SMS[*2]	"Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)"→p.299	
Received address	Shows the Received address list.	
Delete	Deletes the Received calls record entries.	
	Delete this	Deletes the highlighted Received calls record entry.
	Delete selected	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)**▶**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes the multiple Received calls record entries.
	Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the Received calls record entries.
Connection speed[*1][*2]	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from "64K" or "32K".	
Select image[*2]	Sets an image to send during a videophone call.→p.97 Selecting "Release settings" cancels the setting of My side or Chara-den.	

*1: Only available for the detail screen
*2: Unavailable for the PushTalk (group) record screen
*3: "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).
*4: Only available for the PushTalk (group) record screen
*5: Only available for the list screen

NOTE

◆ Received calls through packet or 64K data communication cannot be added to the phonebook or used to compose a new mail.

<Volume>

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

Default setting
Level 4

Use this procedure to adjust the earpiece volume to between "Level 1" (quietest) and "Level 6" (loudest) during a call.

● If you adjust the volume during a call or while a FOMA terminal is in standby, the adjusted setting will be retained after you end the call.

Adjusting the earpiece volume during a call

<Example: During a voice call>

1 During a call▶Use ▲ (Home) or ▼ (Memo/Check) to adjust the volume



You can also adjust the volume by pressing ⊖ or ⊕ for 1 second or longer. To adjust the volume in succession, press ▲ (Home) or ▼ (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer during the earpiece volume adjustment.
If no operation is performed for 2 seconds or longer on the earpiece adjustment screen, the screen ends to return to the in-call screen.

NOTE

◆ You can also adjust the earpiece volume when talking on a videophone, PushTalk or hands-free call.
◆ Press ⊖ or ⊕ to adjust the volume during a videophone call. However, you cannot adjust the volume in succession even if pressing ▲ (Home) or ▼ (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer during the earpiece volume adjustment.

◆ While on a PushTalk call, press (Home) or (Memo/Check) to adjust the volume. You cannot adjust the volume even if pressing or .

Adjusting the earpiece volume in standby mode

1 On the standby screen▶ or (1 second or longer)▶Use or to adjust the volume

Press or for 1 second or longer to adjust the volume in succession.
If no operation is performed for 2 seconds or longer on the earpiece adjustment screen, the screen ends to return to the standby screen.

<Ring volume> MENU50

Adjusting the Ring Volume

Default setting
Level 4

Adjust the volume of a ring tone given when you receive a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call, mail, chat mail, MessageR, MessageF, instant message or presence report. Six volume levels are available for each type of call and mail. You can also set a silent ring tone or set it to gradually get louder (step).

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶“Incoming call”▶“Ring volume”▶Select any item

FOMAphone	Adjusts the ring tone volume for FOMA voice calls and 64K data communication.
VoIPphone	Adjusts the ring tone volume for VoIP calls (Internal).
VoIPphone(Public)	Adjusts the ring tone volume for VoIP calls (Public).
VoIPphone(Tie line)	Adjusts the ring tone volume for VoIP calls (Tie line).
Videophone	Adjusts the ring tone volume for videophone calls.
PushTalk	Adjusts the ring tone volume for PushTalk calls.
Mail	Adjusts the ring tone volume for i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication.
Chat mail	Adjusts the ring tone volume for chat mails.
MessageR	Adjusts the ring tone volume for MessageR.
MessageF	Adjusts the ring tone volume for MessageF.
Messenger	Adjusts the ring tone volume for instant messages.
Presence	Adjusts the ring tone volume for presence reports.

2 or ▶●

■ **To set step tones (getting a ring tone louder gradually)**

▶In “Level 6”, press ▶●

When you receive a call with “Step” set, there is no ring tone for 3 seconds, then the ring tone becomes gradually louder, starting at “Level 1” and increasing to “Level 6”.

■ **To set a silent ring tone**

▶In “Level 1”, press ▶●

When the silent ring tone is set, the FOMA terminal emits no ring tone.
See icons on the standby screen to check for which the “Silent” ring tone is set.

: Appears when “Silent” is set for one or more of “FOMAphone”, “Videophone”, “PushTalk”, “VoIPphone”, “VoIPphone(Public)” and “VoIPphone(Tie line)”.

: Appears when “Silent” is set for one or more of “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR”, “MessageF”, “Messenger” and “Presence”.

: Appears when both “” and “” are set.

NOTE

◆ The ring volume set in “FOMAphone” in this function is also applied to the alarm tones for “Schedule” and “To Do list”.

<Answer hold>

Putting a Call on Hold When You Cannot Answer Immediately

When a FOMA terminal rings for a voice or videophone call and you cannot answer it right away, use this procedure to put the call on hold and have the caller wait briefly.

1 When a call arrives▶[☎]



The FOMA terminal makes three rapid beeps and puts the call on hold.
The caller hears a message saying that you cannot answer at the moment and holds the call without hanging up.
You can set the message played while a call is held in “Set hold tone”.

■ **To hang up while a call is on hold**
▶[☎]

■ **If a caller hangs up while on hold**
The call ends.

2 Press [☎] or ● to resume the call

When “Answer setting” is set to “Any key answer”, you can also answer the call by pressing [0] to [9], [*], [CLR], ⊛, ✉, ▮ (Home). Furthermore, pressing ▼ (Memo/Check), [#] or ⓘ also enables you to answer the call.
For videophone calls→p.94

NOTE

- Call charges apply to a caller while he or she is waiting for you to answer.
- If “FOMAphone” or “Videophone” in “Ring volume” is set to “Silent” or Manner mode is set, the FOMA terminal does not make the three short beeps when you activate answer hold. However, the beeps do sound when “Manner mode set” is set to “Original” in which “Phone vol.” is not “Silent”.
- If you have subscribed to the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service, selecting “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” from the function menu when a call arrives either forwards the call to the Voice Mail service center or forwarding number.
- If you fold a FOMA terminal while a call is on answer hold, the indicator display shows the call is held.

<Set hold tone>

Setting the Hold Tone

Default setting	On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Melody 1

Set the message given to the other party when you put a voice or videophone call on answer hold or put an ongoing call on hold.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶“Talk”▶“Set hold tone”▶Select any item

On hold tone	Sets the message given when an incoming call is put on hold.	
	Tone 1	The following message is given in Japanese: “I can’t answer the phone just now. Please wait for a few minutes or call again later.”
	Tone 2	The following message is given in Japanese: “I can’t answer the phone just now. Please call again later.”
	Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using “Voice announce”. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones”→p.406
	Voice announce 2*	
Holding tone	Sets the hold tone given during a call.	
	Melody 1	“Fur Elise” is played.
	Melody 2	“Mary Had A Little Lamb” is played.
	Melody 3	“Symphony No.25 in G minor” is played.
	Voice announce 1*	Plays the message recorded using “Voice announce”. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones”→p.406
	Voice announce 2*	

*: Not displayed if no Voice Announce message has been recorded.

NOTE

- Pressing (Play) on the message selection screen allows you to check the selected message.
- Even if you set “English” in “Select language”, the messages of “Tone 1” and “Tone 2” are given in Japanese.
- This function is unavailable for setting the hold tone given when a VoIP call is held by pressing CLR.

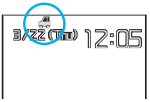
<Public mode (Driving mode)>

Using Public Mode (Driving Mode)

Public mode is an automatic answering service that allows you to keep good manners in a public place. When a FOMA terminal is set to Public mode, it sends callers a message saying that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place (train, bus, theater, etc.) where you should refrain from talking on a phone, and then ends the call.

- Public mode can only be set or canceled from the standby screen. (It can also be set or canceled when “ ” or “ ” appears.)
- You can still make calls when Public mode is set.
- This function is unavailable during data communication.
- While Caller ID Request is set to “Activate”, receiving a call from an unidentified number gives the caller the Caller ID Request announcement (instead of the Public mode announcement).

1 On the standby screen▶ (1 second or longer)



Public mode is set and “ ” appears.
When a call arrives, a message (in Japanese) saying “I can’t answer the call because I’m driving or in a place where I should refrain from using a mobile phone. Please call back later.” is sent to the caller.

■ To cancel Public mode (Driving mode)

While Public mode is set, press for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.
Public mode is canceled and “ ” disappears from the screen.

NOTE

- Even if “Record message” is set to “ON”, Public mode (Driving mode) takes priority and the “Record message” setting is ignored.
- When Manner mode is set, received calls are handled according to the Public mode setting.
- If you make a FOMA voice call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) while Public mode is set, the Public mode is canceled.
- The following tones do not sound in Public mode:
  - Ring tone for voice/videophone/PushTalk calls
  - Ring tone for MessageR/F
  - Ring tone for instant messages
  - Alarm clock tone
  - To Do list alarm tone
  - Low-voltage alarm tone
  - Sound of i-αppli programs
  - Mail ring tone
  - Chat mail ring tone
  - Ring tone for presence reports
  - Schedule alarm tone
  - Alarm tone for Notice designate calls
  - Charge sound
  - Packet communication/64K data communication ring tone

● If Public mode (Driving mode) is set

In Public mode (Driving mode), your FOMA terminal does not ring when a voice, videophone or PushTalk call arrives. Calls are logged in the Received calls record as “Missed calls” and the “Missed calls” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

- A FOMA voice caller hears the announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place where you should refrain from using a mobile phone, and the call then ends.
- A videophone caller sees the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.
- When a PushTalk call arrives, no answer is given and “Connection failed” appears on the screen. If the number of call members is 3 or more, a message showing you are driving appears on the members’ phones.
- A VoIP caller hear the busy tone and the call is rejected.

NOTE

- Even while Public mode is set, when the power is turned off or when “ ” appears on the screen, the announcement to be played is not the one for Public mode but for “ ”. To PushTalk call members, a response informing them that you cannot join will be made.
- When a mail arrives, the “New mail” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- When an instant message arrives, the “New Instant Message” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- When a presence report arrives, the “Status report” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (Driving mode) are set

When Public mode is set while network services are activated, FOMA voice and videophone calls you receive are handled as shown below.

Service	When a FOMA voice call arrives	When a videophone call arrives
Voice Mail service	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode announcement.*1	Connects the caller to the service center without playing the Public mode movie announcement.
Call Forwarding	• Forwards the call after playing the Public mode announcement.*2 • Whether to play the Public mode announcement for callers depends on the Call Forwarding setting.	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode movie announcement.*3
Call Waiting	Ends the call after playing the Public mode announcement.	Ends the call after playing the Public mode movie announcement.
Nuisance Call Blocking	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller hears the announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode announcement and the call then ends.	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller sees the movie announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller sees the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.
Caller ID Request	• If the caller hides the caller ID, the caller hears the announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode announcement and the call then ends.	• If the caller hides the caller ID, the caller sees the movie announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller sees the Public mode movie announcement and the call then ends.

*1: If the ring time for Voice Mail is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode announcement is given. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears.
*2: If the ring time for Call Forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode announcement is given. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears.
*3: Videophone calls will not be connected unless the forwarding phone complies with 3G-324M.

<Public mode (power off)>

Using Public Mode (Power off)

Public mode (power off) is an automatic answering service that allows you to keep good manners in a public place. If you set Public mode (power off) and then receive a call with the terminal turned off, the caller hears an announcement that you are in a place where the power needs to be turned off (hospital, airplane, near a priority seat, etc.) and cannot answer the call, and then the call ends.

1 On the standby screen▶[✱][2][5][2][5][1]▶[☎]

Public mode (power off) is set (no change is made on the standby screen).
If Public mode (power off) is set, the power is turned off and a call arrives, the caller hears an announcement that “I am now in a place where I need to turn off my phone, and cannot answer your call. Please call again later on.”.

■ **To cancel Public mode (power off)**

▶On the standby screen▶[✱][2][5][2][5][0]▶[☎]

Public mode (power off) is canceled.

■ **To check the Public mode (power off) setting**

▶On the standby screen▶[✱][2][5][2][5][9]▶[☎]

You can check the Public mode (power off) setting.

● If Public mode (power off) is set

The setting will remain unchanged until you dial “✱25250” to cancel Public mode (power off). Turning a FOMA terminal on does not cancel the setting.
The caller will hear the Public mode (power off) announcement when you are out of the service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach.

- A voice caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are in a place where you need to turn off the power, and the call then ends.
- A videophone caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.
- When a PushTalk call arrives, no answer is given and “Connection failed” appears on the screen. If the number of call members is 3 or more, a message showing you are absent appears on the members’ phones.

● Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (power off) are set

If Public mode (power off) is set while network services are activated, voice and videophone calls you receive are handled as shown below.

Service	When a voice call arrives	When a videophone call arrives
Voice Mail	Connects the caller to the service center after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement.*1	Connects the caller to the service center without playing the Public mode (power off) movie announcement.
Call Forwarding	• Forwards the call after playing the Public mode (power off) announcement.*2 • Whether to play the Public mode (power off) announcement for callers depends on the Call Forwarding setting.	Forwards the videophone call without playing the Public mode (power off) movie announcement.*3
Nuisance Call Blocking	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller hears an announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement and the call then ends.	• If the call is from a barred phone number, the caller sees a movie announcement saying that the call could not be connected and the call then ends. • If the call is from another phone number, the caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.
Caller ID Request	• If the caller hides the caller ID, the caller hears an announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller hears the Public mode (power off) announcement and the call then ends.	• If the caller hides the caller ID, the caller sees a movie announcement requesting the caller ID and the call then ends. • If the caller shows the caller ID, the caller sees the Public mode (power off) movie announcement and the call then ends.

*1: If the ring time for Voice Mail is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode announcement is given. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears.
*2: If the ring time for Call Forwarding is set to 0 seconds, no Public mode announcement is given. Furthermore, the call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed call” desktop icon appears.
*3: Videophone calls will not be connected unless the forwarding phone complies with 3G-324M.

<Info notice setting> MENU65

Checking Missed Calls

Default setting: ON

Pressing ▼ (Memo/Check) with a FOMA terminal folded enables you to check missed calls, new mails, new chat mails, new instant messages, Record messages or Voice Mail messages with tones, vibration or the incoming call lamp.

● This function informs you of those calls, mails or messages when the “Missed calls”, “New mail”, “Chat mail”, “New Instant Message”, “Record message” or “Voice Mail” desktop icon appears. →p.159

Setting the notification method for the Info notice function

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Info notice setting” ▶ Select any item

ON	Uses “Bibip, bibip” electronic tone for notification.
OFF	Makes no notification.

NOTE

◆ If setting “ボイス” (voice) under “確認機能設定” (Info notice setting) in Japanese mode, you can have a FOMA terminal inform you of a missed call, etc. with voice by pressing ▼ (Memo/Check). Furthermore, setting “ON” under “ボイス” (voice) has the FOMA terminal read out the caller’s or sender’s name.
◆ If the reading of a caller or sender’s name is not stored in the phonebook or a name stored in the phonebook is not displayed, the FOMA terminal does not read out the name even if “ON” is set under “ボイス” (voice).

Checking for missed calls, new mails, new chat mails or new instant messages

Checking operates as shown below.

Info notice setting	When you have missed calls, new mails, new chat mails or new instant messages		When you have no missed call, new mail, new chat mail or new instant message	
	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color	Sound and vibration	Incoming call lamp color
ON	"Bibip, bibip" tone and about 1-second vibration*1	Lights for about 8 seconds in the respective colors set in "FOMAphone", "Mail", "Chat mail" and "Messenger" in "Illumination". When you have a missed call, new mail, new chat mail or new instant message, the lamp lights for 1 second in the respective color.*2	"Bibibip" tone and about 0.2-second vibration*1	The incoming call lamp flashes for about 8 seconds in "Color 12".

*1: A FOMA terminal vibrates when "FOMAphone" in "Vibrator" is set to other than "OFF".
*2: If the flashing color is set to "Gradation" in "Illumination", the incoming call lamp flashes in "Color 5" for missed calls, "Color 1" for new mails, "Color 3" for new chat mails and "Color 7" for new instant messages.

NOTE

- When "Sidekeys guard" is set to "ON", you cannot check missed calls or new mails with the FOMA terminal folded even by pressing (Memo/Check).
- This function is unavailable to check missed calls or mails while the music player is running.
- The "電子音" (electronic tone) or "ボイス" (voice) volume is determined in the "FOMAphone" under "Ring volume". When "Silent" or "Step" is set, "Level 2" is applied.
- In Manner mode, a FOMA terminal uses vibration instead of tones to notify you of calls, mails or messages. However, the FOMA terminal does emit tones if you have selected "Original" in "Manner mode set" in which "Phone vol." is not set to "Silent". If "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", the FOMA terminal does not vibrate.
- This function is unavailable to check new mails kept at the i-mode center.
- Opening a FOMA terminal during notification stops the notification.

Having a FOMA terminal read out the current time <Voice clock>

- When "確認機能設定" (Info notice setting) is set to "ボイス" (voice) and (Memo/Check) is pressed with the FOMA terminal folded, the FOMA terminal reads out the current time in Japanese.

<Record message> MENU55

Having a Caller Leave a Message and Video

Default setting	Record message: OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ring time: 8 sec.

When you cannot answer a voice or videophone call, this function allows you to record a message from the caller on your FOMA terminal. For videophone messages, the camera image from the other party's phone is also recorded.

- You can record up to 5 voice messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.
- You can record up to 2 videophone messages lasting roughly 20 seconds each.
- The differences between Record message and Voice Mail are as follows:

Item	Record message	Voice Mail service
Recording time and No. of messages	• Voice call: up to 20 seconds each, 5 messages • Videophone call: up to 20 seconds each, 2 messages	• Voice call: up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages • Videophone call: up to 3 minutes each, 20 messages
Retention period	No limit	Up to 72 hours
Where to store	FOMA terminal	Voice Mail service center
Condition for playback	Anywhere	Only inside the FOMA service area
Condition for recording	• Messages can be recorded if the receiving phone is turned on inside the service area. • Setting "Record message" to "ON"	• Messages can be recorded even if the receiving phone is turned off inside/outside the service area. • Activating the Voice Mail service (p.421)

Setting Record message

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Record message” ▶ Select any item

ON	Selects the type of answer message.	
	Japanese 1	“I can’t answer the phone just now. Please leave your message within 20 seconds after the beep.” is played in Japanese.
	Japanese 2	“Thank you for your call, but I can’t take your call right now. Leave me a message after the beep.” is played in Japanese.
	English	“I can’t take your call now. Please leave the message. Thank you.” is played.
	Voice announce 1*	Plays a message recorded using “Voice announce”. “Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones”→p.406
	Voice announce 2*	
OFF	Cancels the “Record message” setting.	

*: Not displayed if no Voice Announce message has been recorded.

2 Enter a number between 000 and 120 seconds as the ring time

Entering a 3-digit time automatically sets Record message and “ ” and “ ” appear on the standby screen.

■ To set the displayed time

▶Press ● without entering a time

NOTE

- If the numbers of recorded voice messages and videophone messages have already reached the maximum respectively, you cannot set Record message to “ON”.
- Pressing ✉ (Play) on the answer message selection screen allows you to check the selected answer message.
- If “Voice announce 1” or “Voice announce 2” is set for the answer message of Record message and the corresponding Voice announce is deleted in “Voice announce” setting, “Japanese 1” is set for the answer message.
- To give priority to “Record message” when “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is set at the same time, set a shorter ring time than the one set for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.
- If the mute time set in “Ring time(sec.)” is longer than the ring time set for Record message, the FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing. To have the ring tone sound before Record message starts, set a longer ring time for Record message than the mute time.
- You can set an answer message in each phone number or SIP address under “Discern connect” or in each group under “Discern group”.→p.132

When a call arrives when “Record message” is set to “ON”

Reaching the specified time activates Record message.

- When a voice call arrives, an answer message is given and recording starts.
- When a videophone call arrives, the “Preparing” image is sent, an answer message is given, “Recording” image is sent and recording starts.

■ When message recording begins

- The recording screen appears. The caller’s voice can be heard through the FOMA terminal earpiece during message recording.
- Regardless of the duration, a started recording is counted in the number of recordings.



Example: Voice Call

■ To answer a voice call during recording

▶ or ●

■ To answer a videophone call during recording

▶Press or ✉ (V. phone) to answer with a camera image or ● to answer with a substitute image

Continued on next page

■ When message recording ends

- The original screen reappears and the “Missed calls” and “Record message” desktop icons appear on the standby screen. Select the icons to check the details.→p.159
- When one voice message is recorded, “ ” changes to “ ”. “ ” appears for two messages, “ ” for three messages, and corresponding icons for the subsequent numbers of messages. When one videophone message is recorded, “ ” changes to “ ”. “ ” appears for two video messages.



NOTE

- When “ ” appears, Record message for FOMA voice calls is unavailable.
- When “ ” appears or “ ” does not appear, Record message for VoIP calls is unavailable.
- Once the number of recorded messages has reached the maximum, you cannot use Record message to record the next message.
- If Manner mode is set, you cannot hear the caller’s voice during recording.
- You cannot receive other calls while a message is being recorded. If the call waiting (p.456) notifies you of another VoIP call during a VoIP call, a ring tone breaks in during Record message recording.

■ Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of recorded messages.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<Quick message>

Recording the Caller’s Message and Video Instead of Answering an Incoming Call

Even if “Record message” is not set to “ON”, this function allows you to begin message recording simply by pressing one key when a voice or videophone call arrives.

1 A call arrives▶▼ (Memo/Check)

Record message recording starts.
Pressing # instead of ▼ (Memo/Check) sets Manner mode simultaneously with the activation of Record message.

NOTE

- You can only record a message of the caller for which you started recording. You cannot set “Record message” to “ON” using this function.
- This function is also enabled when “Manner mode set” is set to “Original” in which “Record message” is set to “OFF”.
- If a voice or videophone call arrives when there are already 5 voice messages (2 messages for videophone message) recorded, Record message is not activated and the FOMA terminal keeps ringing. (Pressing # allows the FOMA terminal to keep ringing under the condition set in “Manner mode set”.

Playing/Erasing Record Messages and Voice Memos

● If a voice record message is recorded, an icon corresponding to the call type appears on the “Play/Erase msg.” screen. “★” appears if a voice memo is recorded.

1 (MENU) ▶ LifeKit ▶ “Play/Erase msg.”

The “Play/Erase msg.” screen appears.



Play/Erase msg.

Function menu➡p.85

2 Select an item to play

The Message playback screen appears. The FOMA terminal beeps and playback begins. When the playback ends, the FOMA terminal gives 2 short beeps and the playback display disappears.



Message playback

Function menu➡p.85

■ To play the next message

▶ (Memo/Check)

Each time you press (Memo/Check), the next most recent message is played. Voice memos are played last.

■ To stop playback

▶ ● or CLR

■ To make a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to the phone number or SIP address displayed during playback

▶ , or

Pressing makes a voice call, makes a videophone call or makes a PushTalk call. Available PushTalk call type is one-to-one.

NOTE

◆ For a record message is from a caller who showed the caller ID or SIP address, the caller’s phone number or SIP address appears during the message playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name also appears.

◆ Pressing (Memo/Check) on the standby screen also plays memos.

■ Record message icons

Icon	Description	Icon	Description
PHONE	Record message from a FOMA voice call	VoIP / VoIP	Record message from a VoIP call (Public)*
VoIP	Record message from a VoIP call*	VoIP	Record message from a VoIP call (Tie line)
VoIP / VoIP	Record message from a VoIP call (Internal)*		

*: The shown icons vary depending on the main device (SIP server).

Function menu (Play/Erase msg. screen)

Play	Plays the highlighted message.
Delete this	Erases the highlighted message.
Delete rec. msg.	Erases all the Record messages.
Delete all	Erases all the Record messages and voice memos.

Function menu (Message playback screen)

Select mode	Selects “FOMA” or “WLAN” for the Select mode.
Prefix	Enters a prefix for VoIP. →p.454
Erase	Erases the message being played.

Continued on next page

Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of the voice messages and voice memos.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<VP message>

Playing/Erasing Videophone Messages

- "★" appears on the "Play/Erase VP msg." screen if a videophone message is recorded.

1 MENU ▶ LifeKit ▶ "Play/Erase VP msg."

The "Play/Erase VP msg." screen appears.



Play/Erase VP msg.

Function menu➡p.86

2 Select an item to play

The "VP message playback" screen appears.



VP message playback

Function menu➡p.86

■ To play the previous or next message

▶ ◁ or ▷

Each time you press ◁ or ▷, the previous or next message is played.

■ To stop playback

▶ ●

■ To make a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to the phone number displayed during playback

▶ 📞, ✉ or 1

Pressing 📞 makes a voice call, ✉ makes a videophone call or 1 makes a PushTalk call.

Available PushTalk call type is one-to-one.

NOTE

- When a videophone message is from a caller who showed the caller ID, the caller's phone number appears during the message playback. If the caller is stored in the phonebook, his or her name also appears.
- Press ⏱ (4 (Home)) or ○ (7 (Memo/Check)) to adjust the volume during playback.

Function menu (Play/Erase VP msg. screen)

Play	Plays the highlighted videophone message.
Delete this	Erases the highlighted videophone message.
Delete all	Erases all the videophone messages.

Function menu (VP message playback screen)

Select mode	Selects "FOMA" or "WLAN" for the Select mode.
Prefix	Enters a prefix for VoIP. →p.454
Erase	Erases the VP message being played.
Speaker ON, Speaker OFF	Turns on/off the speaker.

Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of videophone messages.
- Faults, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal could erase any recorded messages or memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

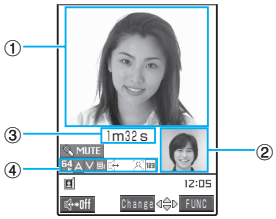
What is Videophone?..... 88
Making a Videophone Call..... 89
Changing Videophone Call to FOMA Voice Call..... 93
Receiving a Videophone Call..... 94
Using Chara-den..... 96
Setting an Image to Send to the Other Party..... 97
Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls ..... Hands-free switch 99
Setting an Image to be Displayed During a Videophone Call 99
Setting for Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone Call ..... Indicate V.phone 100
Setting How to Handle Videophone Calls Received During i-mode ..... V-phone while packet 101
Connecting to an External Device to Make/Receive Videophone Calls..... 102
Viewing Distant Locations..... Remote monitoring 102

What is Videophone?

You can use the videophone function between DoCoMo's Videophone compatible terminals.

- DoCoMo's Videophone is compliant with the 3G-324M[*2] international standard established by the 3GPP[*1]. Connections with videophones using different standards cannot be made.
  - *1: 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
    An organization that produces globally applicable technical specifications for a 3rd generation mobile system (IMT-2000).
  - *2: 3G-324M
    An international standard for a 3rd generation videophone system.
- Videophone calls are made at connection speeds of 64K or 32K.
  - 64K: Data is communicated at a rate of 64kbps.
  - 32K: Data is communicated at a rate of 32kbps.
- Videophone is not available in Single mode (WLAN).

Videophone screen



① Main screen. The other party's camera image appears by default.
② Sub-screen. Your camera image appears by default.
③ Shows the call duration.
④ Shows the videophone function settings.

- : 64K videophone call in progress
- : 32K videophone call in progress
- : Audio transmission in progress
- : Audio transmission failed
- : Video transmission in progress
- : Video transmission failed
- : Sending camera image
- : Sending an alternative image selected in "Select image"
- (pale blue): Hands-free OFF
- (blue): Hands-free ON
- MUTE: Microphone being muted (silenced)
- : Photo mode (Portrait)
- : Photo mode (Scenery)
- : Photo mode (Close-up)
- : Key operation/DTMF mode→p.91
- : Key operation/Whole action mode[*1]
- : Key operation/Parts action mode[*1]
- : Sending Chara-den

*1: Action mode→p.96

- : Facial movements can be synchronized[*2]
- : Facial movements cannot be synchronized[*2]

*2: Face stamp→p.100

- : Visual check in progress

Control key	Videophone operation
●	Switches between the front and rear cameras
● (1 second or longer)	Switches the main screen→p.90
○ (▲ (Home)), ○ (▼ (Memo/Check))	Adjusts the volume
○	Adjusts the zoom
✉	Activates or deactivates the hands-free mode
○	Displays the function menu
▼ (Memo/Check) (1 second or longer)	Records the other party's voice during a call
CLR	Puts a call on hold
▲ (Home) (1 second or longer)	Mutes (silences) the microphone

Making a Videophone Call

1 Dial the other party's number including the area code

The "Videophone number entry" screen appears.
Always include the area code even if the call is made within the same area.

Area code − City code − Phone number

■ To mobile phones

090－××××－××××
or
080－××××－××××

■ To PHS phones

070－××××－××××



Videophone number entry

Function menu➡p.90

2 ✉ (V. phone)

The "Videophone in-call" screen appears.
The other party's voice comes through the speaker, and now you can talk.
"Switching to Hands-free Operation"→p.70



You are charged for the digital communication from this screen.



Videophone in-call

Function menu➡p.90

■ To change a videophone call to a voice call

"Changing Videophone Call to FOMA Voice Call"→p.93

■ To switch between the camera and alternative images during a videophone call

▶Select "Substitute image" or "My side" from the function menu.

■ To send the rear camera image during a videophone call

▶●

During a videophone call, you can switch between the front and rear cameras (CHG camera-mode) by pressing ●.

■ To put an ongoing videophone call on hold

▶CLR

The hold tone sounds and the "保留 Holding" image appears on the other party's videophone screen. Press ✉ (V. phone) or ☎ to answer a videophone call on hold with a camera image, or ● to answer the call with an alternative image. Press CLR to answer the call in the state before holding.

■ To mute voice transmission during a videophone call (microphone mute)

▶ (Home) (1 second or longer)

"MUTE" appears while in mute mode. The video remains unchanged.
To cancel the mute, press (Home) again for 1 second or longer.

■ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached

You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

■ If a videophone call is not connected→p.92

3 To end the call, press ☎

NOTE

- Even if " WLAN " appears on the "Videophone number entry" screen, pressing ✉ (V. phone) makes a videophone call with FOMA (in case of DUAL mode).
- " " flashes during dialing and remains lit during a videophone call. If a call is dialed at the speed of "32K", " " flashes and remains lit during a call.
- A communications speed of "32K" allows you to use videophone with other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at "64K" due to network conditions. If you make a videophone call at "64K" but the other party is in a "32K" area or similar area, the call will be automatically redialed at "32K". However, the same digital communication charges apply to both "32K" and "64K" videophone calls.
- An up to 10 character Chaku-moji message (including pictographs, symbols, double-byte and single-byte characters) can be attached to a videophone call to be made. The Chaku-moji animation appears on the other party's ringing screen.→p.62
- With DoCoMo international dialing service "WORLD CALL", you can make an international videophone call.→p.59
- Your own image is transmitted unless a Chara-den image is set in "Select image" under the function menu of the videophone number entry screen.→p.90

Continued on next page

◆ It may take a few seconds to change a camera image to an alternative image (Chara-den) depending on the Chara-den image.
◆ When the battery is being charged and you are using the rear camera during a videophone call, a message may appear indicating that the camera will be turned off, and the camera may be automatically turned off, depending on the terminal's temperature.

Function menu (Videophone number entry screen)

Sending mode	Selects "FOMA" or "WLAN" for the mode.
Inp. SIP address	Displays the SIP address entry screen.
Notify Caller ID	Selects "OFF" or "ON" for whether to notify the other party of your caller ID. ■**To cancel "OFF" or "ON" under "Notify Caller ID"** ▶**"Cancel prefix"** When "Cancel prefix" is set, the "Caller ID Notification" (p.53) setting applies.
Prefix numbers	▶**Select a prefix name to add** "Setting Prefix Numbers"→p.68
Prefix	Enters a prefix for VoIP.→p.454
Chaku-moji	"Making a call with a Chaku-moji message"→p.63
Int'l call	■**When "+" is added (country code added)*** ▶**Select an IDD access code** "+" is replaced with the selected IDD access code. ■**When "+" is not added (country code not added)** ▶**Select a country code**▶**Select an IDD access code** The selected country code and IDD access code are added. If the area code begins with zero, the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls→p.60
Multi Number	"Multi Number"→p.427
Add to phonebook	"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook"→p.119 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook"→p.121
Compose message	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.257
Connection speed	Selects "64K" or "32K" for the connection speed.
Select image	Sets an image to transmit during a videophone call.→p.97 Select "Release settings" to release the settings for "Me" and "Chara-den".

*: "Int'l call" is unavailable when "+81" is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).

NOTE

◆ The "Connection speed" setting only applies to one call. The speed is not logged in the Redial record or Dialed calls record. The setting does not apply to a voice call made after the "Connection speed" setting is set.

Function menu (Videophone in-call screen)

Petit message	"Sending a message during a videophone call (with a camera image displayed)"→p.100
Decoration	"Decorating the videophone screen"→p.100
Off decoration	Deletes the displayed message or stamp.
Substitute image, My side	Switches between the camera and alternative images.
Rear camera, Front camera	Switches between the front and rear cameras. This setting is only retained during a call.
Change main disp.	Changes the image displayed on the main screen. The screen changes in the order of "The other party's camera image on the main screen" - "Your own camera image on the main screen" - "Only the other party's camera image" - "Only your own camera image".
Visual check, Visual check off	"Checking your appearance during a videophone call"→p.98

V.phone settings	Sets the Videophone screen.		
	Visual prefer.	Sets the quality of images to be transmitted. This setting is only retained during a call.	
		Normal (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
		Prefer img qual	Displays fine video images. Best for motionless subjects.
		Prefer motion spd	Displays smooth video images. Best for fast-moving subjects.
	Brightness	▶**Use ◎ to adjust the brightness**▶● Chooses the brightness among 5 levels from -2 to ±0 to +2.	
	White balance	Sets image color tones. The setting is linked to the equivalent function of the camera.→p.208	
		Auto (default)	Adjusts the color tone automatically.
		Fine	Select this option when outdoors on a sunny day.
		Cloudy	Select this option when in the shade or outdoors on a cloudy day.
		Light bulb	Select this option under incandescent light.
		Fluorescent lamp	Select this option under fluorescent light.
	Color mode set	Sets image effects. This setting is only retained during a call.	
		Normal (default)	Sets a typical color image.
		Sepia	Sets a sepia-tone image.
		Monochrome	Sets a black-and-white (monochrome) image.
	Photo mode	Sets a mode suitable for the subject. This setting cannot be set when the front camera is used.	
		Portrait (default)	Suitable for shooting people.
		Scenery	Suitable for shooting scenery.
		Close-up	Suitable for shooting close-up.
Chara-den set.	Sets Chara-den. Chara-den→p.96 This setting cannot be set when a camera image is transmitted.		
	Switch Chara-den	▶**Select a character** Select a character to display.	
	Action List	▶**Check the actions and keys** Shows the available actions and corresponding keys. Pressing ✳ shows the action list.	
	Change Action	Changes the action mode.	
	Switch image	Displays your original image on the other party's display.→p.97	
Display light	Sets the display light.		
	All time ON (default)	Turns on the display light all the time.	
	15 seconds ON	Turns on the display light for 15 seconds only.	
FrontCamera Rev.	Sets the type of camera image to display on your FOMA terminal during a call.		
	ON (default)	Displays a mirror image.	
	OFF	Displays a normal image.	
Call time disp. (default: ON)	Sets whether to display the call time during a call.		
Own number	Displays your phone number during a videophone call.		
Send DTMF tone, DTMF tone OFF	Sets or releases the push signal transmission mode while using Chara-den. Videophone calls are always in push signal transmission mode if Chara-den is not used.		
Change to voice	"Changing Videophone Call to FOMA Voice Call"→p.93		

● If a videophone call is not connected

If a videophone call is not connected, a message appears indicating why the connection fails. However, in some circumstances, the message may not be displayed. The displayed reason may not accurately reflect the other party's status depending on the other party's phone model and network service subscription.

Message	Reason
Check number then redial	The dialed phone number is currently not used
Busy*	The line is busy
Busy with packet transmission	The other party is using packet communications
Out of service area/power off	The other party is out of range or the phone is turned off
Set caller ID to ON	The call is connected without the caller ID (when dialing visualnet)
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded (into a videophone call if the forwarding party has a videophone set to comply with 3G-324M)
Redial using voice call	The forwarding phone is not compatible with Videophone
Please activate caller ID before dialing again	The other party activates the Caller ID Request service
At the user's request, your call can not be connected	The other party activates the Nuisance Call Blocking service
Connection failed	Set "Caller ID Notification" to "ON" and then try again. • This message may also be displayed in other situations.

*: The message may also appear during packet communications depending on the other party's terminal.

NOTE

- A video emergency call (110, 119, 118) made from the FOMA terminal automatically changes to a voice call.
- A call cannot be connected if the other party does not use a Videophone-compatible phone or if the phone is out of range or turned off. A videophone call will be automatically cut off then redialed as a voice call if the other party does not use a Videophone-compatible phone and "Auto redial as voice" (p.97) is set to "ON". However, this operation may not be executed if you dial a wrong number or if you call an ISDN-synchronous-64K or PIAFS access point or an ISDN videophone that is not compliant with the 3G-324M standard (as of January, 2007). Call charges may apply in some cases.
- A communications speed of "32K" allows you to use videophone with other devices (PHS mobiles, etc.) that cannot communicate at "64K" due to network conditions. If you make a videophone call at "64K" but the other party is in a "32K" area or similar area, the call will be automatically redialed at "32K". However, the same digital communication charges apply to both "32K" and "64K" videophone calls.
- If "Auto redial as voice" (p.97) is set to "ON" and a videophone call is not connected, the call will automatically change to a voice call. The following are the "Auto redial as voice" operations:

	Connection speed is "64K"	Connection speed is "32K"
"Auto redial as voice" set to "ON"	Automatically changes the connection speed to "32K". If a videophone call still cannot be connected, a FOMA voice call will be made.	Makes a FOMA voice call.
"Auto redial as voice" set to "OFF"	Automatically changes the connection speed to "32K". If a videophone call still cannot be connected, the call will end.	Ends the videophone call.

- You cannot receive i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF during a videophone call. The incoming message is stored at the i-mode center. Retrieve it through "Check new messages" after the videophone call ends.
- You can receive an SMS, instant message or presence report during a videophone call.
- If the "Recharge battery" low voltage alarm appears during a videophone call, the other party sees the "カメラオフ Camera Off" message and the call is disconnected in about 20 seconds. If you start charging the battery before the videophone call is disconnected, the call continues with the image that had been displayed before the low voltage alarm was given.
- Digital communications charges apply while an alternative image is displayed during a videophone call.

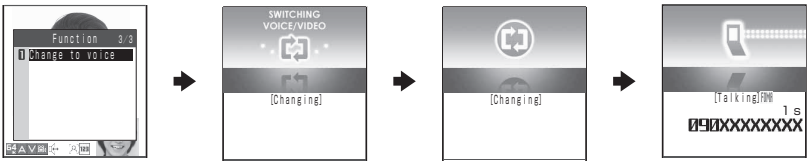
Changing Videophone Call to FOMA Voice Call

The caller can change a videophone call (communication speed 64K) to a FOMA voice call.

- If the other party uses a FOMA terminal compatible with the call change, “Change to voice” can be selected from the function menu during a videophone call, and you can change the videophone call to a FOMA voice call. (This function is available between terminals compatible with the call change between voice and videophone.)
- You can change calls only when you are the caller. You cannot change calls when you are the callee.
- To change calls, the other party must set Indicate V.phone beforehand.→p.100
- You cannot change a videophone call to a VoIP call.

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.89)▶ (FUNC)▶“Change to voice”

While the videophone call is being changed to a voice call, a screen appears indicating that the calls are being changed, and the voice guidance is given.



NOTE

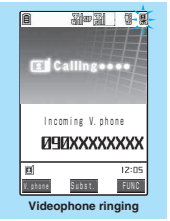
- You can change calls between voice and videophone repeatedly.
- You can also change calls from voice to videophone.→p.58
- It takes about 5 seconds to change calls. It may take longer depending on the signal quality, etc.
- You cannot change calls when:
  - The other party is holding
  - The other party has activated Record message
- The call time shown is reset to 0 seconds each time the call mode is changed. However, if a videophone call ends after the call mode is changed, the call time shown indicates the total of the voice call and videophone call.
- Depending on the other party’s usage conditions or the signal quality, you may not be able to change calls and the call may be disconnected.
- If the call mode is changed, the first dialed number is registered to the Redial and Dialed calls records. The first received number is registered to the Received calls record.
- Charges do not apply while “SWITCHING VOICE/VIDEO” is displayed.
- If you have changed the call mode, call charges shown under “Call data” may differ from the actual charges.
- When you change to a voice call, the hands-free mode is canceled.

Receiving a Videophone Call

Answer an incoming videophone call. If you cannot answer the call with your camera image, you can use an alternative image instead of your camera image.

1 When a videophone call arrives, press (V. phone) or

The "Videophone in-call" screen (p.89) appears.
The other party's voice comes through the speaker, and now you can talk.
"Switching to Hands-free Operation"→p.70



Videophone ringing



Videophone ringing (with Chaku-moji)

Function menu➡p.95

■ If the incoming call contains Chaku-moji

A Chaku-moji animation appears on the videophone ringing screen. You can check the contents beforehand.→p.62

■ To answer with an alternative image

▶●

The alternative image appears on the caller's screen.
After sending the alternative image, it can be changed to your camera image by selecting "My side" from the function menu.

■ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached

▶Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone

You can answer with your own image. If "Automatic answer" is set to "ON", the alternative image automatically appears after the specified ring time has elapsed.
You can hear the other party's voice through the earphone.

■ To put an incoming videophone call on answer hold

▶

The "応答保留中 On Hold" image appears on the caller's videophone display and the message is given. Press (V. phone) or to answer a videophone call on answer hold with a camera image, or ● to answer the call with an alternative image.

■ To switch between the camera and alternative images during a videophone call

▶Select "Substitute image" or "My side" from the function menu.

■ To send the rear camera image during a videophone call

▶●

During a videophone call, you can switch between the front and rear cameras (CHG camera-mode) by pressing ●.

■ To put an ongoing videophone call on hold

▶CLR

The hold tone sounds and the "保留 Holding" image appears on the other party's videophone screen. Press (V. phone) or to answer a videophone call on hold with a camera image, or ● to answer the call with an alternative image. Press CLR to answer the call in the state before holding.

■ To mute voice transmission during a videophone call (microphone mute)

▶ (Home) (1 second or longer)

"MUTE" appears while in mute mode. The video remains unchanged.
To cancel the mute, press (Home) again for 1 second or longer.

2 To end the call, press

Function menu (Videophone ringing screen)

Call Rejection	Ends the call without answering it.
Call Forwarding	Forwards the call. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the “Call Forwarding” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”. “Call Forwarding Service”→p.423
Voice Mail	Connects the call to the Voice Mail service center. The call is connected to the service center regardless of whether the “Voice Mail” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”. “Voice Mail Service”→p.420
Change Display	Changes the display from Additional Number1 or 2 to the number from which the call is forwarded. This setting is available when the incoming call is forwarded to Multi Number (Additional Number1 or 2). “Multi Number”→p.427

NOTE

- Digital communications charges apply to the caller while an alternative image is displayed during a videophone call.
- Even if “Call Forwarding” is set to “Activate”, a received videophone call cannot be forwarded to a phone that is not compliant with the 3G-324M (p.88). Check the forwarding phone before setting the call forwarding.
- If you receive a videophone call from a caller barred by the “Nuisance Call Blocking” service, the caller sees the movie announcement showing that the call has been rejected and then the call ends.
- If you press # or ▼ (Memo/Check) while the phone is ringing, “Record message” is activated and you can record the other party’s message. (Pressing # sets the manner mode.)→p.84
- The “V-phone while packet” setting applies to videophone calls received during i-mode communications.→p.101
- You cannot receive i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF during a videophone call. The incoming message is stored at the i-mode center. Retrieve it through “Check new messages” after the videophone call ends.
- You can receive SMS during a videophone call.
- When you have subscribed to the “Call Waiting”, “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service and a videophone call arrives while you are talking on another videophone call, end the ongoing call to answer the new call.
- If the “Recharge battery” low voltage alarm appears during a videophone call, the other party sees the “カメラオフ Camera Off” message and the call is disconnected in about 20 seconds. If you start charging the battery before the videophone call is disconnected, the call continues with the image that had been displayed before the low voltage alarm was given.
- The incoming ring tone does not sound and the incoming call lamp does not flash in “Public mode (Driving mode)”. Received calls are logged as missed calls in the Received calls record.
- Depending on the other party’s settings, the alternative image may appear instead of the camera image.

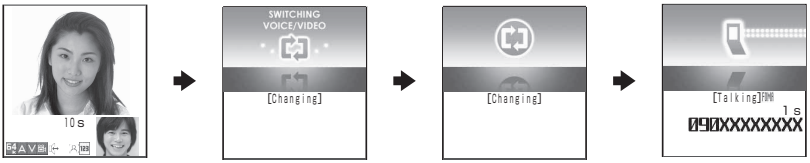
The other party changing a videophone call to a FOMA voice call

The other party making a videophone call can change the ongoing videophone call to a FOMA voice call.

- You can change calls only when you are the caller. You cannot change calls when you are the callee.
- For the caller to change the call mode, “Indicate V.phone” must be set to “Indication ON” on the callee’s phone beforehand.→p.100

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.89)▶The other party changes the call mode

While the videophone call is being changed to a voice call, a screen appears indicating that the calls are being changed, and the voice guidance is given.



NOTE

- When you change to a voice call, the hands-free mode is canceled.

Using Chara-den

You can send a cartoon character instead of your camera image during a videophone call.

- You can check actions that can be controlled on Chara-den, or shoot and enjoy Chara-den as an image or video.→p.355
- To enjoy Chara-den, set the following functions. You can also use Chara-den by specifying Chara-den for the phonebook or Discern connect function.
  - Setting “Chara-den” in “Substitute image” under “Select image”→p.97

<Example: When you receive a videophone call from a caller not stored in the phonebook>

1 When a videophone call arrives, press ●

2 Control your character by pressing dial keys

Pressing a dial key makes the character perform the action assigned to that key.



Chara-den

■ To change the action mode

You can switch between “Whole” and “Parts” using “Chara-den set.” from the function menu.→p.91

“Whole” action mode allows you to move the whole body of a Chara-den character to express feelings. Press 1 to 9 or # 1 to # 9.

“Parts” action mode allows you to move the parts (face, hands, feet, etc.) of a Chara-den character. Press 1 1 to 9 9.

■ To check an action

Pressing * shows the action list.

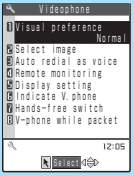
Use ● to select an action to perform.



Setting an Image to Send to the Other Party

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**“Videophone”**

The “Videophone settings” screen appears.



Videophone settings

2 Select any item

Visual preference	Sets the image quality of videophone calls.	
	Normal (default)	Standard setting for both quality and movement.
	Prefer img qual	Displays fine video images. Best for motionless subjects.
	Prefer motion spd	Displays smooth video images. Best for fast-moving subjects.
Select image	“Setting an image to send during a videophone call”→p.97	
Auto redial as voice	Sets the operation to be performed when a videophone call cannot be connected.	
	ON	Makes a voice call automatically if a videophone call cannot be connected.
	OFF (default)	Displays a message that the videophone call could not be connected, and the standby screen reappears.
Remote monitoring	“Viewing Distant Locations”→p.102	
Display setting	“Setting an Image to be Displayed During a Videophone Call”→p.99	
Indicate V.phone	“Setting for Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone Call”→p.100	
Hands-free switch	“Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls”→p.99	
V-phone while packet	“Setting How to Handle Videophone Calls Received During i-mode”→p.101	

● Setting an image to send during a videophone call

Default setting	**On hold, Holding: Pre-installed Substitute image: Chara-den (Dimo) Record message, Preparing, Voice memo: Pre-installed**

You can select an image to send instead of your camera image.

- This function allows you to set a JPEG or GIF image of 640 dots wide × 640 dots high or smaller, whose file size is 100K bytes or smaller.
- The setting of this function is retained after a videophone call ends.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.97)▶“Select image”▶Select any item

On hold	Sets an image to send when a call is on answer hold.
Holding	Sets an image to send when a call is on hold.
Substitute image	Sets an image to send as an alternative.
Record message	Sets an image to send while a videophone message is recorded.
Preparing	Sets an image to send while a videophone message is prepared.
Voice memo	Sets an image to send while a voice memo is recorded.

Continued on next page

2 Select an image to send

Pre-installed	Sends a message only.
Original	Sends an image and message. **■To change the setting** **▶(FUNC)▶"Change setting"▶Select a folder▶Select an image**
Chara-den	Appears only when "Substitute image" is selected. Sends a Chara-den character set under "Substitute image". "Function menu (Chara-den list screen)"→p.357 Priority sequence for Chara-den setup→p.121 **■To change the setting** **▶(FUNC)▶"Change setting"▶Select an image**

■ Messages to be sent

The following are messages to be sent:

For answer hold:	"応答保留中 On Hold"
For holding:	"保留 Holding"
For sending an alternative image:	"カメラオフ Camera Off"
For recording a videophone message:	"伝言メモ録画中 Recording"
For preparing a videophone message:	"伝言メモ準備中 Preparing"
For recording a voice memo:	"音声メモ録音中 Recording Voice only"

NOTE

<Visual preference>

- The setting can be made from the function menu during a videophone call. However, it reverts to the original when the videophone call ends.
- If the signal quality deteriorates during a videophone call, the image may be obscured regardless of the "Visual preference" setting.

<Select image>

- File restricted images cannot be set for "Original".→p.337
- Some GIF images may not be set for "Original".
- You can switch between your camera and alternative images during a videophone call.
- To check an image, select an item to check, and press (Play).
- Even if the setting is changed from "Original" to "Pre-installed" or "Chara-den", the stored image is not deleted.
- The set image is displayed both on your FOMA terminal and on the other party's terminal. However, the answer message for a recorded message is only sent to the other party's terminal.
- You cannot delete the "Original" setting. Selecting "Set as display" (p.338) from My picture also allows you to change the "Original" setting. If the original pasted image is deleted, the "Pre-installed" image is displayed on (sent to) the other party's terminal.
- If the "Chara-den" alternative image cannot be displayed e.g. when a Chara-den character set as an alternative is deleted, the "Dimo" stored at the time of purchase is sent. If you have already deleted "Dimo", a "Pre-installed" image is sent as an alternative.

<Auto redial as voice>

- When a videophone call is switched and redialed as a voice call, not digital communications charges but voice calls charges apply.
- When a call is redialed, only the voice call is logged in the "Redial" or "Dialed calls" record.
- Even if "Auto redial as voice" is set to "ON", it may not be possible to redial due to the circumstances of the network or the other party e.g. the other party is busy.

Checking your appearance during a videophone call <Visual check>

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.89)▶(FUNC)▶"Visual check"

You can use the front camera to check your appearance.

"" appears during visual check.

The alternative image is sent to the other party.

2 (FUNC)▶"Visual check off"

The visual check ends. The screen returns to the one displayed before the visual check.

Zooming in an image to send

You can zoom in your camera image to send to the other party during a videophone call.

- The zoom can be adjusted up to 9 times with 16 steps for the rear camera, and up to twice with 2 steps for the front camera.
- If you switch between the front and rear cameras during a videophone call, the respective zoom settings are retained. When the call ends, the zoom returns to its default.
- You cannot zoom in an alternative image.

1 During a videophone call▶○▶Zoom in or out



<Hands-free switch>

Setting Hands-free for Videophone Calls

Default setting: ON

You can set the hands-free mode to be automatically activated when a videophone call starts.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.97)▶"Hands-free switch"▶"ON" or "OFF"

NOTE

- Even if Hands-free switch is set to "ON", you can press ✉ (Off) during a call to cancel the hands-free mode.
- Even if Hands-free switch is set to "ON", the hands-free mode will not be automatically activated when:
  - The manner mode is activated
  - A flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected (However, the microphone operation follows the "Select microphone" setting.)
  - The Answer hold or Record message function is activated when a call arrives

Setting an Image to be Displayed During a Videophone Call

Setting an image to be displayed on the main screen and how to display a camera image <Display setting>

Default setting: Main display: Other side Front camera Reverse: ON

1 Videophone settings screen (p.97)▶"Display setting"▶Select any item

Main display	Sets the main image for videophone calls.	
	Other side	Displays the other party's camera image on your main screen.
	My side	Displays your own camera image on your main screen.
Front camera Reverse	Sets the type of camera image to display on your FOMA terminal during a call.	
	ON	Displays a mirror image.
	OFF	Displays a normal image.

Decorating the videophone screen <Decoration>

You can decorate the videophone screen (your own camera image) with stamps or frames. You can also paste stamps that synchronize facial movements.

- Stamps that synchronize facial movements are preinstalled at the time of purchase, and you can also download additional stamps from the "みんなNらんど" site. "みんなNらんど"→p.224

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.89)▶ (FUNC)▶"Decoration"▶Select any item

Frame	**▶Select a frame** Places a frame around the videophone screen.
Stamp	**▶Select a stamp▶Use to determine the position▶** Places a stamp on the videophone screen.
Facestamp	**▶Select a face stamp** Places a stamp that synchronizes facial movements on the videophone screen. If a stamp can synchronize the facial movements, " " appears. If not, " " appears.

■ To remove a frame or stamp

"Off decoration" under the "Videophone in-call function menu"→p.90

NOTE

- Press (Play) on each selection screen to check the selected frame, stamp or face stamp.
- When "FrontCamera Rev." (p.91) is set to "OFF", your camera image is displayed in normal image, and you can read stamps such as characters correctly.

Sending a message during a videophone call (with a camera image displayed) <Petit message>

1 Videophone in-call screen (p.89)▶ (FUNC)▶"Petit message"▶Enter a message

A message can contain up to 16 double-byte characters.

■ To cancel message entry

▶Erase the entire message▶CLR

2

The message appears. The message automatically disappears after 15 seconds.

■ To erase a message manually

▶CLR (1 second or longer)

You can also erase a message by selecting "Off decoration" from the function menu.

NOTE

- When "FrontCamera Rev." (p.91) is set to "OFF", your camera image is displayed normally, and you can read characters correctly.

<Indicate V.phone>

Setting for Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone Call

Default setting: Indication ON

You can notify the other party that your FOMA terminal can change the call mode between voice and videophone.

- When you receive a call with this function set to "Indication ON", the other party will be notified that the change mode function is available on your FOMA terminal, and the other party can change the call mode.
- You cannot set this function during a call, in Single mode (WLAN) or while " " appears.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.97)▶"Indicate V.phone"▶Select any item

Indication ON	Notifies the other party that your FOMA terminal can change the call mode between voice and videophone.
Indication OFF	Does not notify the other party that your FOMA terminal can change the call mode between voice and videophone.
Check Indication	Displays the "Indicate V.phone" setting.

<V-phone while packet>

Setting How to Handle Videophone Calls Received During i-mode

Default setting	V-phone priority

● The multi access function is unavailable for videophone. Incoming videophone calls are handled according to the “V-phone while packet” setting during i-mode communications or mail transmission. →p.494

1 Videophone settings screen (p.97)▶“V-phone while packet”▶Select any item

V-phone priority	Displays the videophone ringing screen. i-mode communication is disconnected when the call is answered.
Packet downld priority	Rejects incoming videophone calls.
V-phone answerphone	Connects an incoming videophone call to the Voice Mail service center if you have subscribed to the service. The call is connected to the service center regardless of whether the “Voice Mail” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.
Call forwarding	Forwards an incoming videophone call to the forwarding number set for the Call Forwarding service if you have subscribed to the service. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the “Call Forwarding” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.

NOTE

◆ Even if “V-phone priority” is set, you cannot answer an incoming videophone call while in the multi access mode, e.g. while using i-mode during a voice call.
◆ If you have set “Packet downld priority”, “V-phone answerphone” or “Call forwarding”, incoming videophone calls are logged as “Missed calls” in the “Received calls” record.
◆ Even if you have set “V-phone answerphone” or “Call forwarding”, “Packet downld priority” applies if you have not subscribed to the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service or the forwarding number is not set.
◆ Even if you have set “V-phone priority” or “Packet downld priority”, the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is activated if the ring time for “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is set to 0 (zero) seconds.

Receiving a videophone call during i-mode communication

If “V-phone while packet” is set to “V-phone priority”, you can receive a videophone call during i-mode communications or mail transmission.

1 When a videophone call arrives during i-mode communication, press (V. phone) or

■ To answer with an alternative image

▶●

i-mode communication is disconnected and the Connected videophone screen appears.

2 To end the call, press

■ To continue i-mode communication

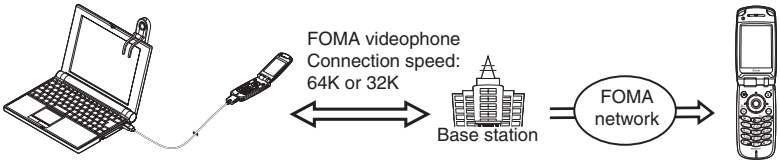
Even when “V-phone while packet” is set to “V-phone priority”, you can continue i-mode communication by selecting “Call Rejection”, “Call Forwarding” or “Voice Mail” from the function menu of the videophone ringing screen.
Videophone ringing function menu →p.95

Connecting to an External Device to Make/Receive Videophone Calls

You can make and receive videophone calls by connecting an external device such as a PC to your FOMA terminal via the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
To use this function, you need a dedicated external device or to install a videophone application on a computer and connect a commercially available device such as an earphone/microphone and USB-compatible web camera to the computer.

- Set USB mode setting to “Communication mode”. No setting is required for connecting to an external device.
- For information about the operating environment, setting and operation of a videophone application, see the instructions that came with an external device.
- “ドコモテレビ電話ソフト 2005” (DoCoMo Videophone Software 2005) is available as an application for this function. Download the software from the following site: (For details on the computer environment, etc., check the support page on the website.)

http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/ (Only in Japanese)



NOTE

- You cannot make a videophone call using an external device during a voice call.
- If you have subscribed to the Call Waiting service and a videophone call arrives from an external device during a voice call, end the voice call to answer the videophone call. This is also available when you receive a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication call from an external device during a videophone call.

<Remote monitoring>

Viewing Distant Locations

Default setting	Other ID: Not recorded Ringing time: 5 sec. Set: OFF

Remote monitoring is only available between FOMA terminals or between the FOMA terminal and a videophone that complies with the 3G-324M. Your FOMA terminal can make or receive a call for remote monitoring.

- Remote monitoring can only be performed if the phone number of the monitoring side is registered to the monitored side and Remote monitoring is set to “ON”.

Preparing the monitored side

On the monitored side (receiving a call), set the phone number (Other ID) of the monitoring side and the delay (Ringing time) until the remote monitoring starts.

- Up to 5 IDs can be registered.

1 Videophone settings screen (p.97)▶“Remote monitoring”▶Enter your security code▶“Other ID”

The “Other ID” screen appears.

2 Select “<Not recorded>”

■ **To change a recorded ID**

▶Select an ID to change

3 Enter the phone number of the other party▶●▶CLR

The Remote monitoring screen reappears.

4 “Ringing time”▶Enter the ring time (003-120 seconds)

Enter a 3-digit number as the time. The ring time is set.

■ **To set the displayed time**

▶Press ● without entering the time

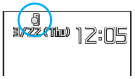


Other ID

Function menu➡p.103

5 “Set”▶“ON”

Remote monitoring is set and “ ” appears on the standby screen.



■ **To turn remote monitoring off**

▶“OFF”

6 Place the FOMA terminal

The front camera image is sent to the monitoring side.
Keep the monitored FOMA terminal turned on and opened.
If the FOMA terminal is folded, the audio and alternative image overlapped with “カメラオフ Camera off” is sent instead of the camera image.



NOTE

- The remote monitoring ring time must differ from that of “Record message” or “Automatic answer”.
- If the “Call Forwarding” ring time on the monitored side is shorter than that of remote monitoring, “Call Forwarding” takes priority. To give priority to remote monitoring, set the ring time shorter than the “Call Forwarding” setting.

Function menu (Other ID screen)

Look-up address	Sets the number of the other party.	
	Phonebook	Registers a number stored in the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125
	Dialed calls	Registers a number stored in the Dialed calls record. “Dialing a Previously Dialed Number”→p.64
	Received calls	Registers a number stored in the Received calls record. “Using the Received Calls Record”→p.74
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted ID.	
Delete all	Deletes all IDs. If all the IDs are deleted, “Set” is set to “OFF”.	

Monitoring remotely

- To monitor remotely, make a videophone call with the caller ID displayed from the FOMA terminal registered as the other ID on the monitored side.
- If your FOMA terminal is used as the monitored side, the video and audio are sent from the monitoring side.

1 Make a videophone call to the monitored side

After the ring time set on the monitored side has elapsed, the remote monitoring starts. On the monitoring side, the monitored side’s video is played and the audio is heard through the speaker. If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, you can hear the audio from the monitored side through the earphone.



Monitoring side

■ **To reject the remote monitoring and answer a videophone call (with a camera image) on the monitored side**

▶Press (V.phone) or before the ring time elapses

Press ● to answer with an alternative image.

NOTE

- You can receive a remote monitoring call from the phone number registered under Remote monitoring even if “Dial lock” or “Omakase Lock” is activated.
- A call without the caller ID displayed is received as a normal videophone call, not as a remote monitoring call.
- Remote monitoring cannot be performed if any of the following functions are activated at the same time:
  - Public mode (Driving mode)
  - Manner mode
  - Call rejection/acceptation*
  - Reject unknown*

  *: If “Call acceptation” is set for a phone number other than the Other ID, if “Call rejection” is set for the Other ID phone number, if the Other ID is not stored in the phonebook and “Reject unknown” is set
- If Remote monitoring, Record message and Automatic answer are activated at the same time, Remote monitoring takes priority when a call is received from a phone number set for Remote monitoring even if the Record message and Automatic answer ring times are shorter than that of Remote monitoring.
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, the audio is heard through the earphone and speaker regardless of the “Earphone” setting.
- The ring tone is only used for remote monitoring and cannot be changed.

Continued on next page

- The ring tone sounds at the volume set in “Videophone” under “Ring volume”. However, if the volume is set to “Silent”, “Level 1” or “Step”, the ring tone sounds at “Level 2”.
- When a remote monitoring call arrives, the incoming call lamp flashes in the “Gradation” color and “Standard” pattern, regardless of the “Illumination” setting.
- An incoming remote monitoring call cannot be put on hold. Press ☎ to end the call.
- If Remote monitoring is set to “ON” on the monitored side, a videophone call received from a phone number registered as the Other ID is logged as a remote monitoring call in the Received calls record. If the remote monitoring was not performed, it is logged as a missed videophone call in the Received calls record.
- The monitored side cannot receive voice or videophone calls during remote monitoring. Voice or videophone calls made during remote monitoring are logged as missed calls in the Received calls record, and the “Missed calls” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- When the FOMA terminal is folded during remote monitoring, the “Setting when folded” setting applies. However, if a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, the “Setting when folded” setting is disabled and an alternative image is sent to the other party when the FOMA terminal is folded.
- The cameras cannot be switched on the monitored during remote monitoring.

Ending remote monitoring

1 ☎

The call duration appears and the remote monitoring ends.
The remote monitoring also ends if the monitored side presses ☎.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones. Actions to severely disturb others using the FOMA terminal may be punished by law or ordinance (such as Public Nuisance Ordinance).

PushTalk

What is PushTalk? 106
Making a PushTalk Call ..... Make PushTalk 107
Receiving a PushTalk Call ..... Receive PushTalk 108
Ending a PushTalk Call..... End PushTalk 110
Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook ... Add to PushTalk 110
Using the PushTalk Phonebook to Make a PushTalk Call ... 112
Deleting an Entry from the PushTalk Phonebook..... Delete PushTalk 114
Making the PushTalk Settings..... PushTalk setting 115

What is PushTalk?

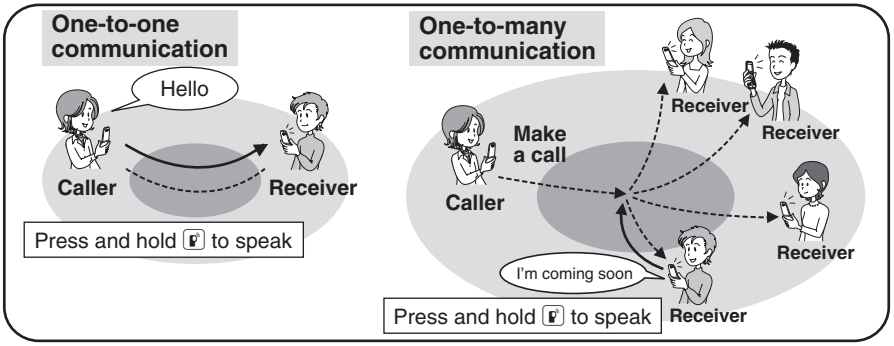
Press the PushTalk key ( ) to open the PushTalk phonebook. You can talk with one or more parties (up to five people including yourself) simply by selecting the parties and then pressing . The PushTalk charge will apply each time you press to speak.
The speaker can keep speaking while pressing and holding , and other members only listen while he/she is speaking. The screen displays the status of the members, e.g. who is speaking now. You can enjoy PushTalk to communicate within your group or give a brief message at a time.

* Compatible models: 902i series, 902iS series, SO902iWP+, SH902iSL, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, 903i series, 702i series (except SH702iD, N702iD, F702iD, D702i, SA702i and SO702i), 702iS series (except N702iS, D702iF, M702iS and M702iG), 703i series (except N703iD, F703i, D703i, P703iμ and N703iμ)

The following models* enable you to add members during communication or call the nonparticipant members again.

*: 903i series, 703i series (except N703iD, F703i, D703i, P703iμ and N703iμ)

● PushTalk is not available with the Single mode (WLAN).

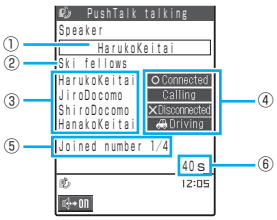


● PushTalkPlus

PushTalkPlus allows a call among up to 20 people including yourself, using the pre-registered network phonebook. This service makes the PushTalk more useful, e.g. you can check the status of members. The PushTalkPlus requires a separate subscription.

● For more details about how to use the PushTalkPlus, etc., see the guide you receive at the time of subscription.

● Guide to the PushTalk talking screen



①Current speaker's name*1
(“Myself” appears when you are speaking, or “?” when the speaker is unknown.)
②Group name specified at the time of dialing
(It is left blank if a group is not specified.)
③Participants' names (excluding yourself)*1
④Status of members*2
Calling: Calling the party.
Connected: The party is participating.
Disconnected: There is no response from the party, or the party hung up. Otherwise, the party's terminal is out of FOMA range or turned off.
Driving: The party's terminal is in Public mode (Driving mode).
⑤Number of participants (excluding yourself)
⑥Time elapsed after starting the PushTalk call

*1: If the caller sets “Caller ID setting” (p.115) or “Set Caller ID” (p.113) to “ON”, the name stored in the phonebook appears. If the participant is not stored in the phonebook, the phone number appears. If the caller sets “Caller ID setting” or “Set Caller ID” to “OFF”, “User unset” appears on the receivers.

*2: “Calling”, “Driving” and “Disconnected” appear only if three or more people are talking.

NOTE

◆ If the caller sets “Caller ID setting” (p.115) or “Set Caller ID” (p.113) to “ON” and then makes a PushTalk call, the participants’ phone numbers are notified to all the other participants. Since phone numbers are important information, be careful when disclosing them.

<Make PushTalk>

Making a PushTalk Call

● Dialing makes a one-to-one call between you and the other party. To make a group call, use the PushTalk phonebook and dial.→p.112

1 Enter the other party’s phone number

2 [P]

When the other party answers the call, the participation tone sounds and the “PushTalk talking” screen appears.





PushTalk talking

■ **To switch to hands-free**

▶Press [Mail] ([Hands-free ON]) while making or during a PushTalk call

Hands-free→p.70

3 To end the call, press [End]

Ending a PushTalk call→p.110

NOTE

◆ You cannot make a PushTalk call during a voice call, videophone call or data communication.
◆ Making a PushTalk call during i-mode disconnects the i-mode communication. Making a PushTalk call while running an i-αppli causes the i-αppli to be exited.
◆ When a voice call is received during a PushTalk call, the operation follows the “PushTalk arrival act” settings.→p.115
◆ When receiving a videophone call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication during a PushTalk call, the missed record will be registered and the current PushTalk call will continue.
◆ The PushTalk call is unavailable for an emergency call (110, 118, 119).

● Speaking during a PushTalk call

1 During a PushTalk call▶Keep holding [P]

The start tone sounds indicating that you have the right to speak now.
An error tone sounds if you cannot get the right to speak, e.g. while another member is speaking.

2 Keep holding [P] to speak

Keep holding [P] after you start holding [P] in Step 1 until you finish speaking.
Releasing [P] ends your speech, which allows another participant to start speaking.

NOTE

◆ The other participants hear your voice only while you press and hold [P] to have the right to speak. Releasing [P] releases the right to speak, and the release tone sounds.
◆ The speaker’s name appears on the screen during the speech.
◆ The time is limited for speaking each time you have the right. When the time has elapsed, a confirmation tone sounds and then the right expires.
◆ If nobody gets the right to speak for a given time, the PushTalk call ends.
◆ You can adjust the volume (6 levels) by pressing [▲] (Home) or [▼] (Memo/Check) during a PushTalk call.
◆ Even if a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, press and hold [P] to speak.
◆ When a participant presses [P] and the start tone sounds, the speaker is charged for the PushTalk call (each time he/she gets the right to speak).

● Other ways to make a call

The followings are also available for making a PushTalk call:

Use the PushTalk phonebook	If members are registered to the PushTalk phonebook, you can select and dial up to four members. →p.112
Select a group	Selecting a group stored in the PushTalk phonebook allows you to make a call to all the members of the group. →p.112
Use the phonebook*	Select a phone number stored in the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (Phone) or of the UIM. **▶Phonebook list screen (p.124)/Phonebook detail screen (p.124)▶Select a phone number then press** [●]
Use Redial/Dialed calls/ Received calls	"Using the records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls"→p.108
Use the Phone To function*	"Using Phone To, Mail To, Web To, SIP To and IM To Functions"→p.238

*: Only one-to-one calls can be made to other parties.

Using the records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls

- The PushTalk records of Redial, Dialed calls and Received calls are registered separately for one-to-one calls and for group calls.
- A group call is stored as one record to the Redial, Dialed calls or Received calls.
- The following are the functions that can be used from each record: (○: Available, ×: Unavailable)

Item	One-to-one call record (, MISS, etc.)	Group call record (, MISS, etc.)
Make a one-to-one PushTalk call	○	○*3
Make a group PushTalk call*1*2	×	○
Make a voice call/videophone call	○	×
Add to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	○	○

*1: You can make a call to the same members, or select members in the group.
*2: Even if you make a "Disconnected" response to an incoming call, you can use the Received calls to join the call if other members keep talking. →p.109
*3: Selecting "Select PushTalk" from the Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls function menu and then selecting only one member will result in a one-to-one call.

<Receive PushTalk>

Receiving a PushTalk Call

Answer and join an incoming PushTalk call.

- Receiving a PushTalk call rings a tone, flashes the incoming call lamp and displays the "PushTalk call" screen.
- The "PushTalk call" screen displays the names of the caller and other members (in case of group call), etc.

1 A PushTalk call incoming▶[●]



[☎] and [●] are also available to answer the call.
Answering the call sounds the participation tone.
Speaking during a PushTalk call→p.107

■ To reject the call (To make a "Disconnected" response)

▶Press [☎] while receiving a call

Even if you make a "Disconnected" response to an incoming call, you can join the call later on if other members keep talking. →p.109

■ To switch to hands-free

▶Press [✉] (ON) during a PushTalk call

Hands-free→p.70

2 To end the call, press [☎]

Ending a PushTalk call→p.110

NOTE

- While “Any key answer” is set, [Talk], [0] to [9], [*], [CLR], [Mail], [●] and [▲] (Home) are also available to answer the call.
- Pressing [▼] (Memo/Check) or [#] disconnects an incoming call (“quick message” is unavailable. Pressing [#] sets the manner mode). Doing so causes a “Disconnected” response.
- A “Disconnected” response can also be made by displaying the function menu while receiving a PushTalk call and then selecting “Call rejection”.
- The FOMA terminal does not ring and the incoming call lamp does not flash when the Public mode (Driving mode) is set. If the call is one-to-many, “Driving” appears on the other members’ screens indicating that you are driving.
- When the FOMA terminal is folded, you can press [▼] or [▲] (Home) to answer an incoming call in hands-free mode.
- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, pressing the switch also allows you to answer a call.
- When receiving a PushTalk call, pressing [Power] does not allow “On hold”. Doing so causes a “Disconnected” response.
- A “Disconnected” response will be made to a call from a phone number specified in “Call rejection” or “Reject unknown”.
- You cannot answer a PushTalk call incoming during a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call or data communication. If the current call is a voice call or PushTalk call, the missed call record is stored.
- If a PushTalk call is received during i-mode communication, the operation follows the “Set i-mode arrival act” settings.→p.115

● Automatically answering an incoming PushTalk call <Auto answer setting>

Default setting: OFF

You can set to automatically answer an incoming PushTalk call in hands-free mode.

● Setting the Auto answer setting to “ON” sets hands-free on when answering automatically no matter whether the FOMA terminal is folded, causing the voices to come out of the speaker.

1 PushTalk phonebook screen (p.112)▶[i] (FUNC)▶“PushTalk setting”▶“Auto answer setting”

Select “ON” or “OFF”.

NOTE

- The “ON” setting is unavailable in manner mode.
- While the Public mode (Driving mode) is set, you cannot answer an incoming call regardless of the “Auto answer setting”, but the participants will know that you are driving.
- The “Auto answer setting” set to “ON” has priority over the settings of “Automatic answer” or “Ring time setting” (p.115) under the PushTalk setting.

● Joining a PushTalk call in progress

Follow the step below to join a PushTalk call in progress later on if you make a “Disconnected” response while receiving the PushTalk call or if you miss the call while the Public mode (Driving mode) is set:

1 Received calls screen (p.74)▶Use [Navi] to select a PushTalk call, then press [▼]

The “PushTalk talking” screen (p.106) appears.

NOTE

- If other members continue a PushTalk call after you leave the call, follow the step above to join (rejoin) the call in progress.
- You cannot join a call in progress if it is one-to-one or if it is already finished. In this case, you make a PushTalk call (p.107) to parties selected in the step above.

<End PushTalk>

Ending a PushTalk Call

1 During a PushTalk call▶☎

■ **If you made a call**

Pressing ☎ ends the PushTalk call and disconnects all the participants.

■ **If you received a call**

If it is a group call, pressing ☎ does not end the call and the call continues, but the participants will know that you left the call.

If other members continue a PushTalk call after you leave the call, you can join (rejoin) the call in progress. →p.109

When the caller presses ☎, the PushTalk call ends and all the participants are disconnected.

NOTE

- A confirmation tone sounds when one of the participants leaves the call.
- When all the participants other than the caller leave the call, the PushTalk call ends.
- If "Setting when folded" (p.115) is set to "End the call", a PushTalk call ends when the FOMA terminal is folded. When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, however, the communication continues.
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, holding down the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone for 1 second or longer ends the PushTalk call.

<Add to PushTalk>

Adding an Entry to the PushTalk Phonebook

- Copy members (phone numbers, etc.) stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook.
- Add phone numbers to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook beforehand. →p.119
- Up to 700 members can be added.

1 On the standby screen▶📖

The "PushTalk phonebook" screen (p.112) appears.

2 ✉ (New)▶Search for an entry to add

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.125

3 Display the Phonebook detail screen▶Use ◎ to select a phone number to add

A screen appears asking whether to add to the PushTalk phonebook.



Member list

■ **To add from the phonebook list screen**

▶Highlight a phone number and press ✉ (Finish)

If two or more phone numbers are stored in the phonebook entry, the first phone number is added to the PushTalk phonebook.

4 "YES"

A new member is added to the member list.

■ **If a phone number is already stored in the selected memory number**

A message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing one. Select "YES" to overwrite, otherwise "NO".

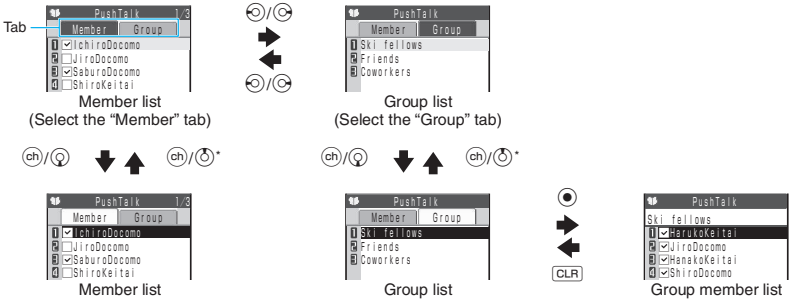
NOTE

- Members in the member list appear as follows:
  - When a member is registered to the member list or added to the group, the registered/added member appears on the top.
  - When you display the PushTalk phonebook screen, the members appear in last-used order.
- You can also add a member by selecting "Add to PushTalk" from the "Phonebook detail" function menu. →p.127

Adding a member to a group

A “group” created with members in the PushTalk phonebook is useful when you want to make a group call.

● You can change the PushTalk phonebook display as follows:



*: The display mode is available only when you select the first item on the first page of the tab.

NOTE

◆ The Neuropointer is also available to select or change tabs.

◆ Use ⟲ to change pages on the same tab. Use ▲ (Home) and ▼ (Memo/Check) to select a tab.

● Creating a group

● Up to 10 groups can be created. A group name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters.

1 PushTalk phonebook screen (p.112)▶ (FUNC)▶“Group setting”▶“Compose group”

2 Enter a group name and press ●

A new group name is added to the group list.

● Adding a member to the group

● Add a member to the member list beforehand. →p.110

● A group can contain up to 19 members, but a call can be made to only up to four members of the group.

<Example: To add from the group list>

1 On the group list▶Use to highlight a group, then press (FUNC)▶“Group setting”▶“Add member”

The “select group member” screen appears.

2 Use to select a member▶ (Finish)

The selected member is added to the group.

NOTE

◆ Group members appear as follows:

- When a member is added to the group, the added member appears on the top.
- When you display the PushTalk phonebook screen then the group member list, the members appear in last-used order.

◆ A member cannot be added to the group if the phone number is the same as that of an existing member.

◆ A member can be added separately to different groups.

Using the PushTalk Phonebook to Make a PushTalk Call

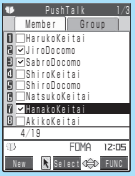
Select members from the PushTalk phonebook and make a PushTalk call.

● You can make a call to a maximum of four members.

1 On the standby screen▶

The “PushTalk phonebook” screen appears.

You can also display the screen by selecting MENU▶ (Phonebook)▶“PushTalk”.



PushTalk phonebook

Function menu➡p.113

2 Use ○ to select a checkbox (□)▶

1 to 8 are available to select the corresponding checkboxes. A PushTalk call will be made to the members selected.

When the other party answers the call, the participation tone sounds and the “PushTalk talking” screen appears. You can check the status of the members on this screen. →p.106

Speaking during a PushTalk call→p.107





PushTalk talking

■ To check the selected members

▶Before pressing to make a call, press (FUNC)▶“View member”

■ To switch to hands-free

▶Press ( ) while making a PushTalk call or during a PushTalk call

Hands-free→p.70

NOTE

- If no checkboxes are selected, a call will be made to the highlighted member.
- When you select two or more parties to make a call, those parties will be saved as one record to the Redial/Dialed calls. You can use the record to make another PushTalk call.→p.108
- If all the other members receiving the call are “Disconnected”, the PushTalk call will end.

Making a PushTalk call from a PushTalk group

1 On the group list▶Use ○ to highlight a group, then press

A call is made to all the members of the highlighted group.

■ To select members from the group

▶Select a group▶Use ○ to deselect members you do not want to dial from the group member list▶

NOTE

- If five or more members are registered to the selected group, a call cannot be made. In this case, select up to four members in the group, so that you can make a call.
- If a group is selected, a call is not made to the members stored as secret data. To make a call also to the members stored as secret data, set “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”. If “Secret data only mode” is set, a call is made to only the members stored as secret data.
- In Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the names of members stored as secret data in the phonebook do not appear on the dialing screen.

Function menu (PushTalk phonebook screen)

● The options available depend on the member list, group list, group member list or selected tab.

New	Copies a phone number from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook.
Set Caller ID	Select “ON” or “OFF” for whether to notify calling members of your and other members’ phone numbers. ■**To release “ON” or “OFF” of “Set Caller ID”** ▶**“Cancel prefix”** If “Cancel prefix” is selected, the “Caller ID setting” under “PushTalk setting” applies.
View member	Displays a list of members.
PushTalk setting	Makes the PushTalk settings.→p.115
Network connection	Connects to the network to use the PushTalkPlus.→p.106 Only a PushTalkPlus subscriber can use this function.
Sort	Sorts the lists by specified criteria.*1
Group setting	Creates a new group, adds a member to the group, or edits a group name.→p.111
Release all	Deselects all members in the member list/group member list.
No. of PushTalk	Checks the number of members, the number of groups and the number of members stored in each group.*2
Delete	Deletes an entry from the PushTalk phonebook.→p.114

*1: Sorting in Reading order is unavailable in the group list.

*2: To change displays, use ⊛, ▲ (Home) and ▼ (Memo/Check).

NOTE

<No. of PushTalk>

◆ In “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”, the number of secret members also can be checked.

<Delete PushTalk>

Deleting an Entry from the PushTalk Phonebook

Delete an entry from the PushTalk phonebook.

- A member deleted from the PushTalk phonebook is not deleted from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.

1 On the member list▶ (FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted member.
Delete selected	▶**Use to select a checkbox (□)**▶ **(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes multiple members.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the members.

NOTE

◆ If a member to be deleted is registered to some groups, the member will be deleted from all the groups.

Deleting a PushTalk group

1 On the group list▶ (FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted group.
Delete selected	▶**Use to select a checkbox (□)**▶ **(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes multiple groups.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the groups.

NOTE

◆ All the members stored in the group are also deleted. The members are not deleted from the member list.

Deleting a group member

1 On the group member list▶ (FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted group member.
Delete selected	▶**Use to select a checkbox (□)**▶ **(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes multiple members.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the group members in the group.

NOTE

◆ The members are deleted only from the current group. They are not deleted from another group or the member list.

<PushTalk setting>

Making the PushTalk Settings

Make the PushTalk settings.

● After making the settings, press CLR to return to the “PushTalk phonebook” screen.

1 PushTalk phonebook screen (p.112)▶i (FUNC)▶“PushTalk setting”▶Select any item

Auto answer setting (default: OFF)	Sets whether to automatically answer an incoming PushTalk call in hands-free mode. →p.109	
Ring time setting (default: 30 seconds)	▶**Enter the ring time (01-60 seconds)** The ring tone keeps ringing for the specified time. When the specified time has elapsed, a “Disconnected” response is automatically made and the ring tone stops. Enter a 2-digit number as the time. To set the currently displayed time, press ●.	
Setting when folded	Selects an operation to be performed when the FOMA terminal is folded during a PushTalk call.	
	Speaker talk (default)	Continues a call in hands-free mode. When the FOMA terminal is opened, the status reverts to before it was folded.
	End the call	Ends a call. It is the same operation as pressing ☎. Ending a PushTalk call →p.110
Caller ID setting (default: OFF)	Sets whether to notify calling members of all members’ phone numbers each time you make a PushTalk call.	
Set i-mode arrival act (default: PushTalk preferred)	Sets whether to answer an incoming PushTalk call during i-mode communication. Select “PushTalk preferred” or “i-mode preferred”.	
PushTalk arrival act	Sets how to deal with an incoming voice call while making or receiving a PushTalk call or during a PushTalk call.	
	Answer	Displays the incoming voice call screen. The incoming voice call screen does not appear while making/receiving a PushTalk call. “Receiving a voice call during a PushTalk call” →p.116
	Call Rejection (default)	Rejects an incoming voice call.
	Voice Mail	Connects an incoming voice call to the Voice Mail service if you have subscribed to the service. The caller is connected to the service center regardless of whether the “Voice Mail” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.
	Call Forwarding	Forwards an incoming voice call to the designated forwarding number if you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding service. The call is forwarded regardless of whether the “Call Forwarding” setting is “Activate” or “Deactivate”.

NOTE

<Ring time setting>

◆ If “Set mute seconds” under “Ring time(sec.)” is set to “ON”, the ring tone sounds for the ring time specified in “Ring time setting” after the specified mute time has elapsed.

◆ When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, priority is given to the shorter time setting, “Ring time setting” or “Automatic answer”.

<Setting when folded>

◆ This setting is available only for PushTalk and does not follow “Setting when folded” (p.73).

◆ If “Speaker talk” is set, folding the FOMA terminal sets hands-free on regardless of the manner mode setting.

◆ If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled and even folding the FOMA terminal does not change the call status.

<Caller ID setting>

◆ This setting is available only for making a PushTalk call and does not follow “Caller ID Notification” (p.53) or “186/184” setting (p.67) of the Network services.

◆ If “Notify Caller ID” (p.57) or “Set Caller ID” (p.113) is selected from the function menu when making a PushTalk call or if Notify/Not notify appears on the Redial/Dialed calls detail screen, each setting will apply.

<Set i-mode arrival act>

◆ Setting “i-mode preferred” does not save incoming PushTalk calls to the Received calls.

◆ If “PushTalk preferred” is set, answering a PushTalk call disconnects i-mode communication.

Continued on next page

<PushTalk arrival act>

◆ If “Answer” is set, receiving a voice call during a PushTalk call interrupts your talk. Answering the incoming voice call ends the PushTalk call.

Receiving a voice call during a PushTalk call

Setting “PushTalk arrival act” to “Answer” beforehand allows you to receive a voice call during a PushTalk call. However, when you receive a voice call while you are speaking, your right to speak is released.

1 When receiving a voice call during a PushTalk call, press [ ] or ●

The PushTalk call ends, and the “Voice in-call” screen appears.

2 To end the call, press [☎]

■ To continue a PushTalk call

Even when “PushTalk arrival act” is set to “Answer”, you can continue a PushTalk call by selecting “Call Rejection”, “Call Forwarding” or “Voice Mail” from the function menu of the ringing screen.

Ringing function menu→p.71

NOTE

◆ Pressing [☎] on the voice call ringing screen (the PushTalk call ends) and then pressing [ ] or ● also switches the screen to the voice in-call.

Using the Phonebook

Phonebooks Available with a FOMA Terminal 118
Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook..... Add to phonebook 119
Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook ..... Add to UIM phonebook 121
Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records 122
Renaming Groups..... Group setting 123
Making a Call from the Phonebook..... Search phonebook 124
Editing a Phonebook Entry ..... Edit phonebook 128
Deleting a Phonebook Entry..... Delete data 129
Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card ..... UIM operation 129
Checking the Phonebook Storage Status..... 131
Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address.... Discern connect/Discern group 132
Using Dialing Shortcuts ..... Two-touch dialing 134
Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites..... Automatic display 134
Saving Phonebook Entries to the Data Security Center ..... Data Security Service 135

Phonebooks Available with a FOMA Terminal

Your FOMA terminal contains two phonebooks. One is the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (Phone) itself, for which you can set a range of functions, and the other is the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, which can also be used in other FOMA terminals. The two phonebooks can each be used differently, as needed.

● Besides phonebooks described above, you can create the “PushTalk” phonebook available for PushTalk calls. Use the entries of FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to create the PushTalk phonebook.→p.110

Differences between the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook

■ Stored data

The table below shows the different data storage capabilities of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and UIM phonebook.

Stored data	FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook	UIM phonebook
Number of entries	Holds up to 700 entries.	Holds up to 50 entries.
Groups*1	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 19.	Data can be sorted into groups 00 to 10.
Phone number storage*2	The phonebook will hold up to 2,800 phone numbers in total with up to 4 numbers per entry. This allows information such as the contact’s mobile phone number and work number to be included in the same entry. One number selected from an entry can also be stored in the PushTalk phonebook.	Only one phone number can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 25 icons such as “ ”, “ ”, etc. for stored entries, allowing quick identification of the contact’s mobile phone number or office phone number.	You cannot choose icons. The “ ” icon is automatically assigned.
SIP address storage	The phonebook will hold up to 2,100 SIP addresses in total with up to 3 addresses per entry.	—
	You can choose from 6 icons such as “ ”, “ ”, etc. for stored entries, allowing quick identification of the contact’s SIP address.	
E-mail address storage	The phonebook will hold up to 2,100 e-mail addresses in total with up to 3 addresses per entry. This allows the information such as the contact’s home and work addresses to be included in one entry.	Only one address can be stored per entry.
	You can choose from 5 icons such as “ ”, “ ”, etc. for stored entries, allowing quick identification of the contact’s home or office e-mail address.	You cannot choose icons. The “ ” icon is automatically assigned.
URL (i-mode) storage	The phonebook will hold up to 2,800 URLs for the total of i-mode and WLAN Browser, with up to 2 URLs per entry.	—
URL (WLAN Browser) storage	The phonebook will hold up to 2,800 URLs for the total of i-mode and WLAN Browser, with up to 2 URLs per entry.	—
Image storage	One still image and one Chara-den character can be stored per entry. The phonebook will hold up to 100 of each.	—
Other data storage	Each phonebook entry can include one contact’s name, reading, zip code, street address, birthday and memo. This information, together with the contact’s phone numbers and e-mail addresses are stored as a single phonebook entry.	The contact’s name and reading can be stored.

*1: You can rename “Group 01” to “Group 19” (“Group 01” to “Group 10” in the UIM phonebook). Renaming them as you prefer beforehand enables you to categorize entries more efficiently.→p.123

*2: You can enter 0-9, #, ✱, p (pause) and + for a phone number. To use a sub-address (p.69), enter ✱.

■ **Features of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook**

The following useful functions can be used with entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook:

- Specifying memory numbers (001 to 009) enables you to use two-touch dialing to make phone calls by pressing just 2 keys. →p.134
- You can use the “Discern connect” and “Discern group” functions to specify the settings of dialing and receiving calls for each group, phone number, SIP address or e-mail address. →p.132
- You can use “Restrictions” to place restrictions on incoming and outgoing calls for each phone number or SIP address. →p.185
- You can use “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode” to store phonebook entries that you want to keep private as secret data. →p.173
- “Setting your secret code in the phonebook” →p.128

■ **Features of the UIM phonebook**

Since the UIM phonebook data is stored on the UIM, you can use your phonebook with other FOMA terminals by inserting the same UIM. It is convenient when you use more than one FOMA terminal.

Displaying names

■ **Voice and videophone calls**



When you receive a call from a caller who notifies the phone number or SIP address stored in the phonebook, the caller’s name and phone number or SIP address appear.



If there is a still image stored in the phonebook entry and “Disp. phonebook image” is set to “ON”, the FOMA terminal also displays the image. However, it may take time to display the image depending on the data size.
The caller’s name is also displayed in the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” and “Redial” records.

■ **i-mode mail, SMS and instant message**

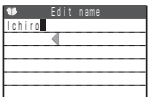
When you receive an i-mode mail from someone whose e-mail address is stored in the phonebook or receive an SMS from someone whose phone number is stored in the phonebook, a FOMA terminal displays the sender’s name on the Received mail list and detail screens. When you send an i-mode mail or SMS to that person, his or her name is shown on the Sent mail list and detail screens.
The person’s name also appears on the “Sent address” or “Received address” list.
When you send or receive an instant message to or from someone whose SIP address is stored in the phonebook, the sender’s or receiver’s name appear on the sent or received instant message list and detail screens. The person’s name also appears on the “Received IM address” or “Sent IM address” list.

<Add to phonebook>

Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook

● Always enter a name in the “Name” field. An entry without a name cannot be stored in the phonebook.

1 On the standby screen▶○▶≡ (FUNC)▶“Add to phonebook”▶“Phone”▶Enter a name



A name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, symbols and pictographs.
A name can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters.

Continued on next page

2 Check the reading

■ If a reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.
A reading can contain up to 32 single-byte characters.
“Search reading” in “Search phonebook” uses the reading stored here.

3 Set the respective parameters▶✉ (Finish)

Group	**▶Select a group** Selects a group number between “00” and “19”. If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to “group 00”.
Phone number	**▶Enter a phone number▶Select an icon** Enters a phone number and selects an icon. A phone number can contain up to 26 digits. Once you have stored the first phone number, the “ <Not stored>” option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number. When storing a number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
SIP address	**▶Enter a SIP address▶Select an icon** Enters a SIP address and selects an icon. A SIP address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first SIP address, the “ <Not stored>” option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional SIP address.
Mail address	**▶Enter an e-mail address▶Select an icon** Enters an e-mail address and selects an icon. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the “ <Not stored>” option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.
URL (i-mode)	**▶Enter the URL of an i-mode site** Enters the URL of an i-mode site. A URL can contain up to 256 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first URL, the “ <Not stored>” option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional URL.
URL (WLAN Browser)	**▶Enter the URL of a WLAN Browser website** Enters the URL of a WLAN Browser website. A URL can contain up to 256 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once you have stored the first URL, the “ <Not stored>” option appears on the phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional URL.
Address	**▶Enter a ZIP code▶Enter a street address** Enters a ZIP code and street address. A ZIP code consists of 7 single-byte digits. A street address can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.
Birthday	**▶Enter a birthday** Enters a birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
Memorandums	**▶Enter a memo** Enters a memo (short note). A memo can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.
Image	Selects an image displayed when you receive a call from the contact. Selecting “Photo mode” activates the “Photo mode” screen on which you can shoot a still image. →p.201
Chara-den	Selects a Chara-den character sent as a substitute image during a videophone call.
Memory No.	**▶Enter a memory number** A memory number is automatically* assigned when an entry is stored in the phonebook, but can be changed to any number between 000 and 699, as desired. Press ⊙, ✱ or # to automatically* assign an available number.

*: The least of available numbers between 010 and 699 is assigned. If there are no numbers available between 010 and 699, the available one between 000 and 009 is assigned.

NOTE

- If you enter “わ , ワ ” (double-byte, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as “ワ” (single-byte, upper case). Only when you press keypads in Alphabetic input mode or Numeric input mode to enter a symbol in a name, the symbol appears in the reading. Pictographs do not appear in readings.
- Phonebook entries stored using symbols or pictographs may not be displayed correctly such as when data is transferred.
- Include the correct domain name when storing an e-mail address. Domain name is the part of address that follows the “@” symbol.
  (E.g.) docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
- To store an e-mail address in the “phonenumber@docomo.ne.jp” format, enter only the phone number as the e-mail address.
- When “HOST Effective set” is set to “ON”, include the correct domain name in a SIP address.
- If you modify or delete the original data of an image or Chara-den that is stored in the phonebook, the data stored in the phonebook is also modified or deleted.
- To have a stored image displayed when you receive a call, set “Disp. phonebook image” to “ON”.→p.149
- When you receive a call from the phone number for which an image is stored in the phonebook and the image size is larger than the display area set in “FOMAphone calling” in “Display setting”, the width and length of the image are reduced at the same ratio. When an image is smaller than the set display area, it is centered on the screen.
- When you select “Move to top” from the function menu while viewing multiple phone numbers, mail addresses, SIP addresses or URLs stored in a phonebook entry, the highlighted phone number, mail address, SIP address or URL is stored as the first.

<Priority order for Chara-den setting>

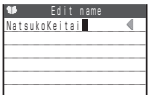
- The priority order for Chara-den settings is as follows:
  ①Chara-den setup in Discern connect→p.132　②Chara-den setup in Discern group→p.132
  ③Chara-den stored in the phonebook entry　④“Substitute image” in “Select image”→p.97

<Add to UIM phonebook>

Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook

● Always enter a name in the “Name” field. An entry without a name cannot be stored in the phonebook.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶● (FUNC)▶“Add to phonebook”▶“UIM”▶Enter a name



A name can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.
A name consisting of up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters (including some single-byte symbols) can be stored.

2 Check the reading

■ If a reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using double-byte katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers or symbols.
Up to 12 double-byte or 25 single-byte characters (including some single-byte symbols) can be used.
“Search reading” in “Search phonebook” uses the reading stored here.

3 Set the respective parameters▶● (Finish)

Group	**▶Select a group** Selects a group number between “00” and “10”. If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to group 00.
Phone number	**▶Enter a phone number** Enters a phone number. A phone number consisting of up to 20 digits can be stored on a blue FOMA card (UIM) or up to 26 digits on a green or white FOMA card (UIM). When storing a number for an ordinary phone, always begin by entering the area code, even when the contact is in the same area.
Mail address	**▶Enter an e-mail address** Enters an e-mail address. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols.

NOTE

- If you enter “わ , ワ ” (double-byte, lower case) in a name, the reading will be displayed as “ワ” (double-byte, upper case). However, “ワ ” (double-byte, lower case) can be entered in a reading. Only when you press keypads in Alphabetic input mode or Numeric input mode to enter a symbol in a name, the symbol appears in the reading.

Continued on next page

◆ Include the correct domain name when storing an e-mail address. Domain name is the part of address that follows the “@” symbol.
(E.g.) docomo.taro.△△@docomo.ne.jp
◆ To store an e-mail address in the “phone number@docomo.ne.jp” format, enter only the phone number as the e-mail address.

When phonebook editing is interrupted

1 On the standby screen▶○▶☰ (FUNC)▶“Add to phonebook”▶“Phone” or “UIM”▶“Recall”



If a low voltage alarm sounds during editing or you started up a new Tools group task using multi task, the interrupted phonebook editing can be restarted.
If you cancel the re-editing without storing the edited data, the data is deleted.

■ **To store a new phonebook entry**
▶“New”

NOTE

◆ Only the latest edited data can be saved temporarily.
◆ If you receive a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call while editing the phonebook, you can leave the edited phonebook data to answer the call.
During a voice call or PushTalk call, you can return to the phonebook edit screen by pressing ch (MULTI) to display the task change screen (p.394) and selecting “Add to phonebook”. After a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call ends, the original edit screen reappears.

■ Important

- It is recommended to back up the information stored in the phonebook onto a miniSD memory card or note the information down separately.
- Stored information can also be lost as a result of faults, repairs, modification or other handling of the FOMA terminal. If you wish to copy the data for each phonebook entry onto a new model at an authorized NTT DoCoMo facility such as a DoCoMo shop, it may not be possible to copy the data stored on the FOMA terminal depending on the specifications of the new model.
Note that NTT DoCoMo accepts no liability whatsoever for the loss of data such as stored phonebook entries.
It is recommended to use the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.435) or Data Link Software (p.499) to back up phonebook data onto a PC.

Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records

You can add information to the phonebook from the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address”, “Sent address”, “Access reader” or the site screen. You can also add a dialed phone number or SIP address to the phonebook.

<Example: To add information from the “Received calls” record to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook>

1 Received calls screen (p.74)▶☰ (FUNC)▶“Add to phonebook”

■ **To use the Redial/Dialed/Received calls records of PushTalk calls (group calls)**
▶“Add to phonebook”▶Use ○ to select a party (phone number)

2 “Phone”

■ **To add to the UIM phonebook**
▶“UIM”

3 “Add”▶“Phone Number” or “SIP Address”▶Search for an entry to add the information to

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125

■ **To store a new phonebook entry**
▶“New”▶“Phone Number” or “SIP Address”

■ **To add information to the UIM phonebook**
▶“New” or “Overwrite”

■ **To add from the phone number entry screen**
▶“New” or “Add”▶“Phone Number” or “SIP Address”

4 Display the Phonebook detail screen▶● (Select)

The phone number or SIP address is automatically entered and the phonebook edit screen appears.
Editing the phonebook→p.128

5 Press ✉ (Finish) when you finish editing

■ **If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data**
▶"YES"

NOTE

- The "Notify Caller ID" setting (ON or OFF) displayed in the "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records is not stored in the phonebook.
- You cannot add received addresses to which replies cannot be sent to the phonebook.
- The predetermined number of characters are stored on a phonebook entry and remains are deleted. Characters that cannot be stored may be replaced by spaces.
- You may not be able to store the VoIP calls record in the UIM phonebook.

<Group setting> MENU26

Renaming Groups

Default setting	FOMA terminal (Phone): Groups 01-19 UIM: Groups 01-10

You can assign the stored phonebook entries to groups according to the contact's role ("Work", "Friends", etc.) or by hobby ("Baseball", "Football", etc.). This allows you to use the phonebook as if it were divided into different volumes according to purpose.
The table below shows the groups that can be renamed and the number of characters that can be stored.

	Renamable groups	Max. no. of characters
FOMA terminal (Phone)	Groups 01-19	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte
FOMA card (UIM)	Groups 01-10	10 double-byte or 21 single-byte

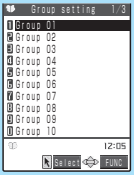
● Group 00 cannot be renamed.

1 On the standby screen▶○▶≡ (FUNC)▶"Group setting"

The "Group setting" screen appears.

2 Select a group▶Enter a group name

The " " icon indicates UIM group.
If the same name is assigned for groups on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), they appear as separate groups.



Group setting
Function menu➡p.123

Function menu (Group setting screen)

Edit group name	Edits a group name.
Discern group	"Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address"→p.132
Reset group name	Resets the changed group name to the default.

NOTE

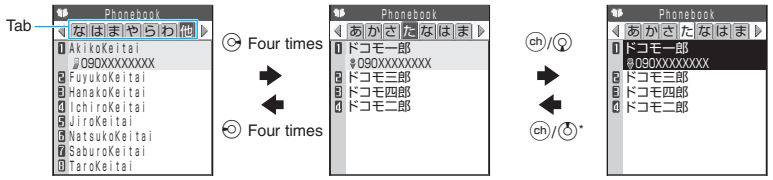
- Resetting a group name does not cancel the "Discern group" settings specified for the group.
- If there are no characters entered in the group name to be changed, it returns to the default group name.

<Search phonebook>

Making a Call from the Phonebook

You can make a call quickly by selecting the other party's entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook.

- When tabs appear on Phonebook list screen, you can switch the display as follows.
  <Example: To switch tabs from "他 (Others)" to "Ta-column" in Alphabet tab display>



*: The display mode is available only when you select the first phonebook entry on the first page of the tab.

NOTE

- The Neuropointer is also available to select or change tabs.
- Use ⟲ to change pages on the same tab. Use 4 (Home) and 9 (Memo/Check) to select a tab.
- When a tab is selected in alphabet tab display, you can press the corresponding key to a column to switch to that tab. For keys corresponding to columns, see "Search column" (p.126) in the search method list.
- When a tab is selected in the Memory No. display, you can key in the Memory No. directly to display the phonebook entry.
- When a tab is selected in the Group tab display, you can key in the Group No. directly to select the Group tab (to specify a group registered in the FOMA card (UIM), add "＊" before the Group No.).

Opening the other party's entry to make a call

1 On the standby screen▶●

The "Phonebook list" screen appears.



Phonebook list

Function menu➡p.126

■ To make a call on the list screen

▶Highlight an entry you want to make a call and press ☎ or ✉ (V.phone)

Press ☎ to make a voice call and ✉ (V.phone) to make a videophone call.

If the selected phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first number.

■ To switch tabs

▶● (FUNC)▶"Change Display"

You can select either of "Alphabet", "Memory No." or "Group".

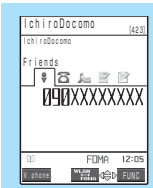


2 Select a desired phonebook entry

The "Phonebook detail" screen appears.

3 ☎ or ✉ (V.phone)

Press ☎ to make a voice call and ✉ (V.phone) to make a videophone call to the currently displayed number.



Phonebook detail

Function menu➡p.127

■ If multiple phone numbers are stored in the same entry

Use ⟲ to display other stored phone numbers.

NOTE

- You can switch the first phone number of a phonebook entry that contains multiple phone numbers.→p.127
- Press ● during a call to display the Search group screen, and ⟲ to display the Search column screen.

◆ You can view the URL site or website by pressing ● with a URL displayed on the Phonebook detail screen. The i-mode browser launches for a URL (i-mode) and the WLAN Browser for a URL (WLAN Browser) regardless of the "Setting connect mode" settings.

Specifying a method to search for an entry

To search for a desired entry, you can select one of 10 search criteria: reading, name, phone number, e-mail address, memory number, group, column in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.), SIP address, URL and all.

■ Viewing the search results

Except for memory number search, search results are displayed in the sequence shown below based on the readings entered when entries were stored. If Search all is performed with no search criterion, "A-column" is shown in Alphabet tab display.

Japanese syllabary [reading beginning with a space, ア, ァ, イ, ィ, ……ン]
↓
Alphabetic letters [A, a, B, b...Z, z]
↓
Numbers [0 to 9]
↓
Symbols
↓
Entries without reading

1 On the standby screen▶○▶Select the search method



You can also perform "Search all" by pressing ⏲ on the standby screen.
You can also perform "Search phone No." by displaying the phone number entry screen (p.56)▶Enter a part of the phone number▶⏲ or ○.

■ To display your preferred search

▶Highlight a search method you want to display preferentially▶✉ (Prefer)▶●

A star "★" appears next to the preferred search method.
Next time you search the phonebook, pressing ○ on the standby screen will display your preferred search method screen.

■ To cancel your preferred search method setting

▶On the standby screen▶○▶CLR▶Highlight a search method with a star (★)▶✉ (OFF)

2 Search the phonebook

When a search ends, the "Phonebook" screen that meets the search criterion appears. "UIM" appears for the UIM phonebook entries on the search result list screen.
If no phonebook entry that meets the search criterion is stored, a message indicating that there is no data appears.

Search method	Procedure and description
Search reading	**▶Enter part of a reading▶⏲ or ○** Enter a reading from the beginning. You do not need to enter the entire reading.
Search name	**▶Enter part of a name▶i (Exit)▶⏲ or ○** Enter a name from the beginning. You do not need to enter the entire name.
Search phone No.	**▶Enter part of a phone number▶⏲ or ○** You can search by entering either the first digits or any part of a phone number.
Search e-mail	**▶Enter part of an e-mail address▶⏲ or ○**
Search memory No.	**▶Enter a 3-digit memory number** You cannot search the UIM phonebook by memory number.
Search group	**▶Select a desired group** The UIM phonebook uses different groups from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.

Continued on next page

Search method	Procedure and description
Search column	**▶Press the key for the "column" you want to search** 1 : "a" column tab 2 : "ka" column tab 3 : "sa" column tab 4 : "ta" column tab 5 : "na" column tab 6 : "ha" column tab 7 : "ma" column tab 8 : "ya" column tab 9 : "ra" column tab 0 : "wa" column tab * : "others" tab
Search SIP address	**▶Enter part of a SIP address▶ or** You cannot search the UIM phonebook by SIP address.
Search URL	**▶Enter part of a URL▶ or** You cannot search the UIM phonebook by URL.
Search all	Displays the alphabet of all the entries stored in the phonebook.

NOTE

◆ If you have not set a preferred search method, pressing displays the Search phonebook screen with the last selected search method highlighted.

Function menu (Phonebook list screen)

● Available functions vary depending on search method or how the search is activated (e.g. activated on the standby screen), or the selection condition of tabs.

Select mode	Selects "FOMA" or "WLAN" for the Select mode.	
Add to phonebook	"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook"→p.119, "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook"→p.121	
Connect to DSC	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶ (Finish)** Keeps the phonebook data at the DoCoMo Data Security Center. Data Security Service→pp.135, 190	
Delete data	Deletes phonebook entries.	
	Delete this*1	Deletes the highlighted phonebook entry.
	Delete selected	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶"YES"** You can delete multiple phonebook entries.
	Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶"YES"** Deletes all the phonebook entries.
Sort*2	Sorts phonebook entries according to the specified criterion.	
Change Display	Switches tabs. You can select either of "Alphabet", "Memory No." or "Group".	
Discern connect	"Checking the Discern connect settings"→p.133	
Restrictions	"Checking the restriction settings"→p.187	
Group setting	"Renaming Groups"→p.123	
Copy to miniSD	Copies the phonebook data to the miniSD memory card.	
	Copy this*1	Copies the highlighted phonebook entry.
	Copy selected	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶"YES"** You can copy multiple phonebook entries.
	Copy all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all the phonebook entries.
Send Ir data*1	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.377	
Send all Ir data	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.378	
No. of phonebook	Displays the phonebook storage status.→p.131	
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size displayed in Phonebook list screen and Phonebook detail screen.	

*1: Not available when tabs are displayed or selected.
*2: Not available when tabs are displayed.

NOTE

- If you delete a phonebook entry that is also stored in the PushTalk phonebook, the entry is deleted from the member list or group member list in the PushTalk phonebook.
- If “Delete all” is performed, the UIM phonebook and PushTalk phonebook entries are also deleted.
- Selecting “Copy all” or “Copy selected” in “Copy to miniSD” also copies the storage information of PushTalk phonebook.

Function menu (Phonebook detail screen)

● Available functions vary depending on what you have selected.

Select mode	Selects “FOMA” or “WLAN” for the Select mode.
Notify Caller ID	Selects “Don’t notify” or “Notify caller” for whether to show the other party your caller ID when you make a FOMA voice or videophone call. ■**To cancel “Don’t notify” or “Notify caller” under “Notify Caller ID”** ▶**“Cancel prefix”** When “Cancel prefix” is set, the “Caller ID Notification” (p.53) setting applies.
Prefix numbers	▶**Select the prefix name to add** “Setting Prefix Numbers”→p.68
Add prefix	Enters a prefix for VoIP.→p.454
Chaku-moji	“Making a call with a Chaku-moji message”→p.63
Int’l call	■**When “+” is added (country code added)**[*1] ▶**Select an IDD prefix code** “+” is replaced with the selected IDD prefix code. ■**When “+” is not added (country code not added)** ▶**Select a country code**▶**Select an IDD prefix code** The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If an area code begins with a zero (0), the zero is automatically deleted. Changing settings and registered items used for making international calls→p.60
Multi Number	“Multi Number”→p.427
Edit phonebook	“Editing a Phonebook Entry”→p.128
Discern connect	“Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address”→p.132
Restrictions	“Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers”→p.185
Delete data	“Deleting a Phonebook Entry”→p.129
Move to top	Stores the selected phone number, SIP address, e-mail address or URL as the first phone number, SIP address, e-mail address or URL, when multiple phone numbers, SIP addresses, e-mail addresses or URLs are stored in an entry.
Add to PushTalk[*2]	Adds the entry to the PushTalk phonebook.→p.110
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Compose message	“Creating and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.257
Compose SMS	“Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)”→p.299
Compose IM	“Composing and Sending an Instant Message”→p.463
Send Ir data	“Transferring One Data at a Time”→p.377
Send all Ir data	“Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time”→p.378
Automatic display	“Specifying phone number to display automatically”→p.134
Copy to miniSD	Copies the selected phonebook entry to the miniSD memory card.
Copy name	Copies a name stored in the phonebook. The copied name can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text”→p.448
Copy phone number[*3]	Copies a phone number stored in the phonebook. The copied phone number can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text”→p.448

Continued on next page

Secret code	▶**Enter your security code**▶**Select any item** “Setting your secret code in the phonebook”→p.128	
	Set code	▶**Enter a 4-digit number**▶**“YES”** Sets your secret code.
	Check code	Displays the set secret code.
	Release settings	Cancels the set secret code.
Set secret[*4]	“Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule”→p.173	
Copy to UIM[*5]	Copies phonebook data. “Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card”→p.129	
Connection speed	Selects the connection speed used for videophone calls from “64K” or “32K”.	
Select image	Sets an image to send during a videophone call.→p.97 Selecting “Release settings” cancels the setting of My side or Chara-den.	
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size displayed in Phonebook list screen and Phonebook detail screen.	

*1: “Int’l call” is unavailable when “+81” is prefixed (the country code is 日本 (Japan)).
*2: Unavailable for entries stored in the UIM phonebook.
*3: Depending on what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a SIP address, “Copy SIP address” appears.
- If you have selected a mail address, “Copy mail add.” appears.
- If you have selected a URL, “Copy URL” appears.
- If you have selected an address, “Copy address” appears.
- If you have selected a birthday, “Copy birthday” appears.
- If you have selected a memo, “Copy memorandums” appears.

*4: If you have selected a secret phonebook entry, “Release secret” appears.
*5: If you have selected a UIM phonebook entry, “Copy from UIM” appears.

NOTE

<Add to PushTalk>
◆ When an entry is added to the PushTalk phonebook, “ p' ” appears on the Phonebook detail screen and “★” appears on the function menu.

<Big font, Standard font>
◆ When “Big font” is selected, only the name appears large on the Phonebook detail screen.

● Setting your secret code in the phonebook

For an e-mail address which is “phone number@docomo.ne.jp” with a secret code registered by the owner, you need to specify “phone number + secret code@docomo.ne.jp” as the e-mail address. If you set the secret code when adding the phonebook entry, the secret code will be added automatically when you search the phonebook and compose an i-mode mail.

NOTE

◆ You can only set a secret code to e-mail address “phone number@docomo.ne.jp” or a phone number.
◆ You cannot set secret codes to UIM phonebook entries.
◆ Always set the correct secret code set by the owner.
◆ Do not set a secret code using this function if you already registered “phone number+secret code” or “phone number+secret code@docomo.ne.jp” as the e-mail address in a phonebook entry.

<Edit phonebook>

Editing a Phonebook Entry

● Readings cannot be corrected automatically when you edit the names.

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.124)▶ (FUNC)▶“Edit phonebook”▶ Edit each item

Edit the desired items using the same procedure as “Add to phonebook”.
Adding information to the phonebook→p.119

■ To assign a new memory number

▶“No”▶Enter a memory number (000 to 699) that has not been stored
The original phonebook entry is left unchanged and the edited entry is stored as a new entry with a different memory number.

2 Press (Finish) when you finish editing▶"YES"

■ **To add information to the FOMA card (UIM)**

▶(Finish)▶"Overwrite" or "Add"

Selecting "Overwrite" stores the edited information.
Selecting "Add" leaves the original phonebook entry unchanged and stores the edited entry as a new one.

NOTE

- If you edit a phonebook entry that is also stored in the PushTalk phonebook, the entry is automatically edited in the PushTalk phonebook.
- If you edit the memory number of an entry which is stored in the member list or group list in the PushTalk phonebook, the edited entry does not take over the storage information for the PushTalk phonebook.

<Delete data>

Deleting a Phonebook Entry

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.124)▶(FUNC)▶"Delete data"▶Select any item

Delete phone No.*	Deletes the selected phone number, SIP address, e-mail address, URL, street address, birthday, memo, image or Chara-den character.
Delete this	Deletes the phonebook entry displayed in detail.

*: Depending on what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.

- If you have selected a SIP address, "Delete SIP add." appears.
- If you have selected a mail address, "Delete mail add." appears.
- If you have selected a URL, "Delete URL" appears.
- If you have selected an address, "Delete address" appears.
- If you have selected a birthday, "Delete birthday" appears.
- If you have selected a memo, "Delete memorandums" appears.
- If you have selected an image, "Delete image" appears.
- If you have selected a Chara-den character, "Delete Chara-den" appears.

NOTE

- You can delete a phonebook entry on the Phonebook list screen. However, you cannot delete respective items stored in an entry.
- If multiple phone numbers, SIP addresses, mail addresses or URLs are stored in a phonebook entry and the first phone number, SIP address, mail address or URL is deleted, the next phone number, SIP address, mail address or URL appears.
- If you select "Delete phone No." or "Delete this" for a phone number or entry that is stored in the PushTalk phonebook, the phone number or entry is also deleted from the member list or group member list in the PushTalk phonebook.

<UIM operation>

Copying a Phonebook Entry to the FOMA Card

You can transfer phonebook and SMS data back and forth between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM). You can also delete the SMS and phonebook data stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or FOMA card (UIM).

- You cannot make/receive voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls, or send/receive mails or instant messages while copying or deleting data. In addition, you cannot activate other functions.
- You cannot copy items that cannot be stored in the UIM phonebook.
  Items and number of entries that can be copied→p.118

Copying data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM)

Use this procedure to copy phonebook entries and SMS data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM).

1 (MENU)▶(LifeKit)▶"UIM operation"▶Enter your security code

Once you enter your security code, "" or ""appears and you can no longer perform communication (e.g. receiving calls). If you receive a call or similar communication before entering your security code, the UIM operation ends.

Continued on next page

2 “Copy”▶“Phone→UIM” or “UIM→Phone”

3 Select any item

Phonebook	▶**Search the phonebook** Displays the Phonebook list screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125	
SMS	Selects SMS data.	
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

4 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶“YES”

If you select “Phonebook” in step 3 and tabs are displayed on the Phonebook list screen, you can switch tabs and select a checkbox.



UIM operation (copy)
Example: Phonebook (Search All)

Function menu➡p.130

NOTE

- You cannot exchange data with a failed FOMA card (UIM).
- Copying a phonebook entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to FOMA card (UIM) converts “katakana” included in name and reading to double-byte. Up to 10 double-byte or up to 21 single-byte characters are copied for name and up to 12 double-byte or up to 25 single-byte characters for reading. The remaining characters are not copied.
- Because the number of phone numbers and e-mail addresses that can be stored in a single phonebook entry is different between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), the second and subsequent phone numbers/e-mail addresses stored in a FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook entry cannot be copied to the FOMA card (UIM).
- Because the types of available characters are different between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), some characters may be converted to spaces or other characters.
- Phonebook entries cannot be copied by group.
- Phonebook entries stored as secret data cannot be copied using this function even when a FOMA terminal is set to “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- If the same group names are set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), the phonebook group settings are retained. If no same group name is set on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM), the copied entries are stored in group 00.
- You cannot copy the SMS report only. However, if you receive an SMS report for a sent SMS, copying the sent SMS will also copy the SMS report saved for the sent SMS.
- You cannot copy SMS data by box or folder.
- You cannot protect SMS copied to a FOMA card (UIM). If you copy protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM). “Replied to” or “Transferred” icons are also changed to “Read”.
- If you copy SMS in added folders, i-αppli mail folders, “Chat” folder or “Trash box” folder from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to FOMA card (UIM), you can view those SMS in the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.
- Entries copied from a FOMA card (UIM) to FOMA terminal (Phone) are placed in the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.

Function menu (UIM operation (copy) screen)

● Available functions vary depending on the selection condition of tabs.

Start copy	Starts copy operation.
Select this	Selects the highlighted data.
Select all	Selects all data.
Release this	Deselects the highlighted data.
Release all	Deselects all data.
Detail	Displays the highlighted data details.

Deleting phonebook entries or SMS data

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶“UIM operation”▶Enter your security code

2 “Delete”▶“Phone” or “UIM”

3 Select any item

Phonebook	▶**Search the phonebook** Displays the Phonebook list screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125	
SMS	Selects SMS data.	
	Inbox	Shows the Inbox list screen.
	Outbox	Shows the Outbox list screen.

4 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶“YES”

If you select “Phonebook” in step 3 and tabs are displayed on the Phonebook list screen, you can switch tabs and select a checkbox.



UIM operation (delete)
Example: Phonebook (Search All)

Function menu➡p.131

Function menu (UIM operation (delete) screen)

● Available functions vary depending on the selection condition of tabs.

Start deletion	Starts deletion operation.
Select this	Selects the highlighted data.
Select all	Selects all data.
Release this	Deselects the highlighted data.
Release all	Deselects all data.
Detail	Displays the highlighted data details.

MENU22

Checking the Phonebook Storage Status

1 Phonebook list screen (p.124)▶(FUNC)▶“No. of phonebook”

Phone (phonebook stored on a FOMA terminal)

Phonebook: Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/700 (storage limit)

Secret: Shows the number of entries stored as secret data. This can only be displayed in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.

Image: Shows the number of images stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/100 (storage limit)

Chara-den: Shows the number of Chara-den characters stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/100 (storage limit)

UIM (phonebook stored on a FOMA card (UIM))

Phonebook: Shows the number of entries stored in the phonebook.
No. of stored entries/50 (storage limit)

<Discern connect/Discern group>

Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address

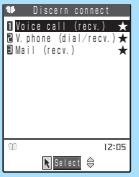
Default setting: All OFF

The functions enable you to specify settings such as which answer message is used in the Record message function and which ring tones are used for each group, phone number, SIP address or e-mail address in the phonebook. This function is useful when you want to identify the caller or sender just by hearing the ring tone.

- These functions cannot be set to “Group 00” on the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook and entries and groups on the UIM phonebook.
- These functions cannot be set to the phonebook entries stored as secret data.
- The “Discern connect” and “Discern group” functions will only work if a caller provides the caller ID (phone number). It is recommended to use the “Caller ID Request” service.→p.424

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.124)▶ (FUNC)▶“Discern connect”

The “Discern connect” screen appears.
A star “★” appears next to the selected function.
Available functions vary depending on the item selected on the Phonebook detail screen.



Discern connect

■ **Setting this function for each group**

▶Group setting screen (p.123)▶ (FUNC)▶“Discern group”

2 Select any item

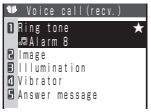
Voice call (recv.)	Sets how to notify you of voice calls from the specified phone number, SIP address or group.
V.phone (dial/recv.)	Sets how to notify you of videophone calls from the specified phone number, SIP address or group.
Mail (recv.)	Sets how to notify you of SMS from the specified phone number or group, or i-mode mail from the specified e-mail address or group.

3 Select any item

A star “★” appears next to the selected function.

■ **To deselect a selected function**

▶Highlight a function with “★” and press (Reset)
The function is deselected and the star “★” disappears.



Example : Voice call (recv.)

Ring tone[*1]	Sets ring tones to distinguish callers or senders. “Changing Ring Tones”→p.138
Image[*1*2]	Sets images to distinguish callers. “Changing the Display Settings”→p.146
Chara-den setup[*3]	Sets a Chara-den character (available for videophone calls) for each phone number. “Chara-den set.”→p.91
Illumination[*1]	Sets illumination patterns to distinguish callers or senders. “Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails”→p.156
Vibrator[*1]	Sets vibration patterns to distinguish callers or senders. “Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives”→p.140
Answer message[*2]	Sets an answer message played when Record message[*4] or Quick record message starts for each caller. “Having a Caller Leave a Message and Video”→p.82
Connection speed[*3]	Sets the connection speed used for videophone calls for each phone number. Select “64K” or “32K”.

*1: Also available for 64K data communication calls.
*2: Displayed when “Voice call (recv.)” or “V.phone (dial/recv.)” is selected.
*3: Displayed when “V.phone (dial/recv.)” is selected.
*4: To use this function, set “Record message” to “ON” beforehand.

■ **When you set “Discern connect”**

The following icons appear on the Phonebook detail screen indicating the selected functions have been set:

: “Ring tone” for voice/videophone calls
: “Ring tone” for mails
: “Illumination” for voice/videophone calls
: “Illumination” for mails
: “Vibrator” for voice/videophone calls
: “Vibrator” for mails
: “Image” for voice/videophone calls
: “Answer message” for voice/videophone calls
: “Chara-den setup” for videophone calls
64k: “64K” set in “Connection speed” for videophone calls
32k: “32K” set in “Connection speed” for videophone calls



Example: V.phone (dial/recv.)

NOTE

- The “Ring tone”, “Illumination” or “Vibrator” in “Mail (recv.)” that is set for a phone number takes effect when you receive an SMS from the phone number or mail from the e-mail address in “phone number@docomo.ne.jp” format. When you receive a mail from other address, the FOMA terminal operates according to the setting for the mail address in phonebook.
- These functions can also be set for groups that contain only phonebook entries stored as secret data and for groups that contain both entries stored as secret data and ordinary data. However, these settings are disabled for mails or calls received from contacts stored as secret data.
- When Discern connect or Discern group settings duplicate the settings for other functions, or mail and MessageR/MessageF with different settings are received at the same time, a FOMA terminal acts differently.
- When multiple e-mails or MessageR/MessageF are received simultaneously, the ring tone and illumination operate as shown below.

	Ring tone, Illumination
Mail only	Follows the settings set to the last received mail. If chat mail is included, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set to the chat mail.
MessageR/F	Follows the settings set to the MessageR.
Mail, MessageR/F	Follows the settings set to the last received mail. If chat mail is included, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set to the chat mail.

<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>
- Priority sequence for incoming call lamp when incoming settings are duplicated→p.156

<Vibrator priority sequence>
- Priority sequence for vibrator when incoming settings are duplicated→p.141

<Ring tone priority sequence>
- Priority sequence for ring tone when incoming settings are duplicated→p.140
- Priority sequence for ring tone when incoming mail settings are duplicated→pp.269, 301

<Priority sequence for the image displayed when a call or mail is received>
- Priority sequence for image displayed when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated→p.149

<Connection speed priority sequence>
- Priority is assigned as follows when connection speed settings are duplicated:
  ①Connection speed→pp.90, 128
  ②Connection speed for Discern connect
  ③Connection speed for Discern group

Checking the Discern connect settings

MENU 62

You can check the phonebook entries or groups set in “Discern connect” by function or item.

1 Phonebook list screen (p.124)▶ (FUNC)▶“Discern connect”

The “Discern connect” screen appears.
A star “★” appears next to the item for which the function is set.

Continued on next page

2 Select a function or item for which "★" appears on the "Discern connect" screen▶Highlight the function or item with "★"* and press (FUNC)▶Select any item

*: The number of times this step is repeated varies depending on the function or item specified.

Check settings	Shows phonebook entries and groups with the selected function or item set.
Release settings	Releases the settings of the selected function or item.

<Two-touch dialing>

Using Dialing Shortcuts

By assigning memory numbers "000" to "009" to phone numbers, you can quickly call those phone numbers simply by pressing one of the number keys 0 to 9 and then pressing .

1 0 to 9 ▶

■ To make a videophone call

▶ (V. phone)

■ To make a PushTalk call

▶

This operation is available only for one-to-one call.

NOTE

- If a phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers or SIP addresses, a FOMA call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry, and a VoIP call to the first SIP address.
- When the FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, you can use two-touch dialing to make a call to a phonebook entry stored as secret data with one of "000" to "009" assigned.
- When "Restrict dialing" is set, and the first phone number or SIP address in a phonebook entry with a memory number between 000 and 009 is not specified in the "Restrict dialing", two-touch dialing cannot be used.

<Automatic display> MENU47

Using One-touch Dialing to Call Favorites

Default setting: OFF

This function enables you to automatically display a preset phone number by opening the FOMA terminal that was folded on the standby screen. You can make a voice, videophone or PushTalk call to that number simply by pressing , (V. phone) or .

- You can only set automatic display for one phone number. You cannot set this function for mail address or SIP address.
- You cannot set automatic display for entries in the UIM phonebook or PushTalk phonebook.

Enabling the automatic display function

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶"Display"▶"Automatic display"▶"ON"

■ To deactivate the automatic display function

▶"OFF"

Specifying phone number to display automatically

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.124)▶(FUNC)▶"Automatic display"

A star "★" appears next to "Automatic display" on the Phonebook detail function menu.

■ If multiple phone numbers are stored in the same entry

▶Use to highlight the phone number to display automatically

■ To cancel the automatic display setting

▶Repeat Step 1

The setting is cancelled and a star "★" disappears.

NOTE

- Press , , CLR or (Home) while the automatic display phone number is shown to return to the standby screen.

◆ The setting for this function is disabled in the following situations:
- Secret data only mode is set
- You fold the FOMA terminal during character entry or operation and reopen the terminal
- Restrict dialing is not set for the phone number with automatic display set, but set for another phone number

◆ Only one-to-one call is available when you make a PushTalk call while the phone number set in automatic display appears.

<Data Security Service>

Saving Phonebook Entries to the Data Security Center

This service enables you to keep the data stored in your FOMA terminal (e.g. phonebook entries, images, mails) at the DoCoMo Data Security Center.

- To use this service, you need to subscribe to "Data Security Service".
- If you have not subscribed to Data Security Service, a message indicating that you have not subscribed to the service appears. You can access the Data Security Service site from the message screen to subscribe to the service.
  Data Security Service→p.190
- When "ｦ" appears, you cannot use Data Security Service.
- You cannot use Data Security Service in Single mode (WLAN).
- The packet communication charges apply to data update performed during Data Security Service operations. The charges vary depending on the size of updated data.
- If a videophone or PushTalk call arrives during a Data Security Service operation, the operation is interrupted. After the call ends, the data backup resumes from where it was interrupted.
- If the memory allotted to your FOMA terminal becomes full at the Data Security Center, data backup is interrupted. If this is the case, the data already backed up are saved.

Data types supported by Data Security Service

Data		Item to be saved	Refer to
Phonebook	FOMA terminal phonebook	Name, Reading, Phone number, SIP address, Mail address, URL (i-mode), URL (WLAN Browser), Memo, Street address, Birthday, Image, Secret store, Group number, Group name, PushTalk phone number, PushTalk group name	p.135
Mail	i-mode mails, chat mails and SMS in Outbox/Inbox/Draft	Unread/Read, Message type, Sender, Receiver, Title, Receive/Send date, Message, Attach	p.286
Image	Images in Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture and user-created folders	Files in JPEG format (including progressive JPEG) or GIF format, title	p.339

* Phonebook entries or SMS that are stored in the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be saved to the Data Security Center. Also, the Data Security Center cannot keep the data stored in Secret folders or the miniSD memory card.

Saving phonebook entries to the Data Security Center

You can save entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook to the Data Security Center.

- If you already saved your phonebook in the Data Security Center and perform this procedure, it will be updated to the current FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook contents.

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶"Data Sec. Service"▶"Connect to DSC"

■ **To specify whether to send images stored in phonebook entries**

▶"PH-book img. Sending"▶"ON" or "OFF"

The default setting is "OFF". Select "ON" to save images stored in phonebook entries to the Data Security Center.

2 **Enter your security code▶"YES"**

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start updating phonebook data.

3 ✉ **(Finish)**

NOTE

◆ Note that a phonebook entry with an image whose size is more than 100K bytes cannot be saved or updated.

Continued on next page

■ Restoring/Updating phonebook data

The phonebook data kept at the Data Security Center can be restored to a FOMA terminal via i-mode. Furthermore, you can edit the phonebook data kept at the center from a PC and automatically update the edited data to the FOMA terminal.
For details on how to use this function, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

NOTE

- Phonebook data may not be updated if another function is activated during the update operation. In this case, “UPDATE” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- When the phonebook data kept at the Data Security Center are restored to a FOMA terminal, icons registered for a phone number or mail may change to “☎” or “✉” depending on their types.

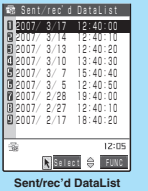
● Checking logs of communication with the Data Security Center

- Up to 30 communication logs can be recorded. If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- On the communication log detail screen, transmission results, dates, transmission details, data sizes, results of sending to the Data Security Center, reception results of the mobile phone and number of data files left in the Data Security Center appear.

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶**“Data Sec. Service”▶“Sent/rec’d DataList”**

The “Sent/rec’d DataList” screen appears.

2 **Select a log item**



Sent/rec’d DataList

Function menu➡p.136

NOTE

- The data size shown on the Sent/rec’d DataList detail screen is only intended as an approximate guide.

Function menu (Sent/rec’d DataList screen)

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted communication log.
Delete selected	**▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶● (Finish)▶“YES”** Deletes multiple communication logs.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all communication logs.

Tone/Display/Lighting Settings

Tone settings

Changing Ring Tones ..... Select ring tone 138
Adding Sound Effects to i-motion Playback Sound ..... SRS_WOW 140
Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives ..... Vibrator 140
Setting the Keypad Tone ..... Keypad sound 141
Setting the Confirmation Tone for Charging ..... Charge sound 141
Having a FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out ..... Quality alarm 142
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails or Messages ..... Receive ringing time 142
Enabling Tones to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker ..... Earphone 143
Muting the FOMA Terminal's Tone ..... Manner mode 143
Customizing Manner Mode ..... Manner mode set 144

Display/Lighting settings

Changing the Display Settings ..... Display setting 146
Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls ..... Disp. phonebook image 149
Setting the Indicator Display Mode ..... Indicator display 150
Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting ..... Backlight 150
Changing the Display Color ..... Display design 151
Changing the Menu Display 152
Setting the Neuropointer ..... Neuropointer 155
Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails ..... Illumination 156
Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes During a Call ..... Illumination in talk 156
Displaying the Call Time During a Call ..... Call time display 157
Changing the Font ..... Font 157
Setting the Clock Display ..... Clock display 157
Using Desktop Icons ..... Desktop icon 158
Using 3D Animation for the New Mail Desktop Icon Message ..... 3D display setting 161
Selecting Icons to Show on the Standby Screen ..... Icons setting 162
Setting Style Mode ..... Style mode 164

Changing Ring Tones

Default setting	FOMAphone: Pattern1 VoIPphone: Pattern3 VoIPphone(Public), VoIPphone(Tie line): Pattern1 Videophone: Pattern4 PushTalk: Pattern1 Mail, Chat mail: Pattern2 MessageR, MessageF: Pattern3 Messenger, Presence: Pattern2

Ring tones can be set for voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls, mails, chat mails, MessageR/MessageF, instant messages and presence reports respectively. You can also set ring tones for particular phone numbers, SIP addresses, mail addresses and phonebook groups respectively.
→p.132

- In addition to the preinstalled ring tones and melodies, i-motion programs and melodies downloaded from i-mode sites or websites can be selected as ring tones.
- If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the ring tone.
- If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be selected, e.g. if the size is QVGA.
- Melody list→p.360

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Incoming call" ▶ "Select ring tone" ▶ Select any item

FOMAphone	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming FOMA voice calls and 64K data communication. ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.146)
VoIPphone	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming VoIP calls (Internal). ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.146)
VoIPphone(Public)	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming VoIP calls (Public). ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.146)
VoIPphone(Tie line)	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming VoIP calls (Tie line). ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.146)
Videophone	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls. ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.146)
PushTalk	Sets a ring tone for incoming PushTalk calls.
Mail	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication. ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.146)
Chat mail	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming chat mails. ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.146)
MessageR	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming MessageR. ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.146)
MessageF	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming MessageF. ("Changing the Display Settings"→p.146)
Messenger	Sets a ring tone for incoming instant messages.
Presence	Sets a ring tone for incoming presence reports.

2 "Select ring tone" ▶ Select any item

Melody	Selects a pre-installed ring tone or melody from the "Pre-installed" folder, or a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website from "Inbox" or a folder you have created.
i-motion	Selects an i-motion downloaded from a site or a movie (i-motion) shot using the built-in camera from "Inbox", "Camera" or a folder you have created. Selects a pre-installed i-motion from the "Pre-installed" folder. Some i-motion programs have a FOMA terminal play video and voice when a call or mail arrives (Chaku-motion).
Voice announce	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2".
Random melody	Selects a folder containing melodies. When a call or mail arrives, the FOMA terminal selects one of the melodies stored in the folder at random and plays it as a ring tone.
OFF	Plays no ring tone.

3 Select a ring tone or i-motion

The FOMA terminal plays the selected melody. Press [☎], [*], [#], [✉], [●] or [0] to stop playing the melody.
After setting a ring tone, set a receiving screen if necessary.

■ **To check settings**

▶[✉] (Play)

Pre-installed ring tones and melodies

Display
Pattern1 - 4
Melody 1
Melody 2
Melody 3
Melody 4
Melody 5
Melody 6
Melody 7
Melody 8
Alarm 1
Alarm 2
Alarm 3
Alarm 4
Alarm 5
Alarm 6
Alarm 7
Alarm 8
Alarm 9
Alarm 10

Recording patent No.: T-0600057 

Pre-installed Chaku-motion

“Nature” is stored in the “Pre-installed” folder in “i-motion”.

NOTE

- An i-motion with video only or with ticker cannot be set as a ring tone.
- A voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer’s voice) can be set as ring tones for PushTalk calls, instant messages and presence reports.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be set.
- If you copy a melody available for a ring tone to the miniSD memory card, the copied melody can no longer be set as a ring tone (except as copied it back to a FOMA terminal).
- Movies or i-motion programs available for Chaku-motion or a receiving image cannot be set if:
  - They are transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal via Infrared data exchange, DoCoMo keitai datalink or Data Link Software and then returned to your FOMA terminal.
  - They are copied from the miniSD memory card to a FOMA terminal (including round operation: a FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card first, then getting back to the terminal).
- The volume level applied to playback during ring tone selection is the one set in “Ring volume”. If “Silent” is set to “Ring volume”, the tone is not played.
- A melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played when it is set as a ring tone, etc.→p.360
- The “Ring tone” settings in “Melody” under Data box affect the settings of this function.→p.360
- The “Select ring tone” settings in “i-motion” under Data box affect the settings of this function.→p.348
- Depending on the precedence or combination of a ring tone and receiving screen, either the ring tone or the receiving screen may revert to the one set at the time of purchase.
- The ring tone for voice calls with the caller ID or SIP address hidden can be set in the “Call setting w/o ID”. The ring tone for videophone calls with the caller ID hidden is set according to the “Videophone” setting in this function.
- When an i-motion is set as the mail ring tone, the packet communication ring tone is set to “Pattern2”. The special receiving screen appears during packet communication regardless of the receiving screen settings.

Continued on next page

<Ring tone priority sequence>

◆ Priority is assigned as follows for the ring tone operation when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated:

①Ring tone for Multi Number (Additional Number 1 and 2)→p.427
②Ring tone for Discern connect→p.132 ③Ring tone for Discern group→p.132
④Ring tone for Select ring tone/Style mode (videophone call)→pp.138, 164
⑤Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID→p.187
⑥Ring tone for Select ring tone/Style mode (except for videophone call)→pp.138, 164

Discern connect or Discern group priority sequence is as follows:

①i-motion for Ring tone ②i-motion for Image
③i-motion (without video, such as singer's voice) or melody for Ring tone

Priority sequence for ring tone when mail settings are duplicated→pp.269, 301

<SRS_WOW> MENU64

Adding Sound Effects to i-motion Playback Sound

Default setting: OFF

When you play an i-motion with sound effects, the effects simultaneously enhance the sound played through the speaker and earphones. Sound played through the speaker is enhanced by effects that provide clearly defined voice and music audio, and stereo sound played through earphones is enhanced by effects that provide a natural-sounding 3D sound field and rich low tones as well as clearly defined voice and music audio.

● i-motion programs with sound effects can be identified by icons shown on the movie list screen.→p.336

1 MENU▶Settings▶"Incoming call"▶"SRS_WOW"▶"ON"

■ **To cancel settings**

▶"OFF"

<Vibrator> MENU54

Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives

Default setting: All OFF

Vibration patterns can be set for voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls, mails, chat mails, MessageR/MessageF, instant messages and presence reports respectively.

1 MENU▶Settings▶"Incoming call"▶"Vibrator"▶Select any item

FOMAphone	Sets vibration for FOMA voice calls or 64K data communication.
VoIPphone	Sets vibration for VoIP calls (Internal).
VoIPphone(Public)	Sets vibration for VoIP calls (Public).
VoIPphone(Tie line)	Sets vibration for VoIP calls (Tie line).
Videophone	Sets vibration for videophone calls.
PushTalk	Sets vibration for PushTalk calls.
Mail	Sets vibration for i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication.
Chat mail	Sets vibration for chat mails.
MessageR	Sets vibration for MessageR.
MessageF	Sets vibration for MessageF.
Messenger	Sets vibration for instant messages.
Presence	Sets vibration for presence reports.

2 Select a vibration pattern

Pattern 1	Vibrates in Pattern 1.
Pattern 2	Vibrates in Pattern 2.
Pattern 3	Vibrates in Pattern 3.
Melody linkage	Vibrates in the pattern specified for the melody set as a ring tone. However, if no vibration pattern is specified for the melody or an i-motion is set as a ring tone, Pattern 2 is used.
OFF	Does not vibrate.

A FOMA terminal vibrates in the highlighted pattern.
The following icons shown on the standby screen indicate for which function the FOMA terminal vibrates:

: Shows that vibration starts when a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call arrives.

: Shows that vibration starts when a mail, chat mail, MessageR, MessageF, instant message or presence report arrives.

: Shows that both "" and "" are set.

NOTE

- To enable "Mail", "Chat mail", "MessageR", "MessageF", "Messenger" and "Presence" in "Vibrator", set the respective items in "Receive ringing time" to "ON".
- When "Vibrator" is set to other than "OFF", take care not to let the vibrating FOMA terminal get close to fire (e.g. space heater) or fall off a table, etc.
- When "Ring volume" is set to other than "Silent" and the vibrator is set, the FOMA terminal uses a ring tone and vibration to notify you of incoming calls or mails. When "Ring volume" is set to "Silent", the FOMA terminal uses vibration only.
- The vibration level is always fixed regardless of the ring volume setting.
- When "Melody linkage" is set, the vibration pattern may not match the main theme.

<Vibrator priority sequence>

- Priority is assigned as follows for the vibrator when the incoming settings are duplicated:
  ①Vibrator for Discern connect→p.132 ②Vibrator for Discern group→p.132
  ③Vibrator setting

Setting the Keypad Tone

Default setting: ON

- Setting this function to "OFF" also disables the following tones:
  - Warning tones
  - Tone emitted when you start adjusting the earpiece volume
  - Battery low warning tone
  - Alarm clock snooze release tone
- The keypad tone sounds at the level set in "Volume" during a call, and fixed at the same level while not on a call.
- The confirmation tone sounds regardless of this setting when:
  - You press (Memo/Check) with the FOMA terminal folded
  - You shoot a picture (shutter sound)
  - You start/finish memo playback (the tone emanates from the receiver)
  - You start/finish standby voice memo and voice announce recording (the tone emanates from the receiver)
- When setting the keypad tone in "Initial setting" (p.49), select "ON" or "OFF".

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Keypad sound" ▶ "ON"

■ **To mute the keypad sound**
▶"OFF"

Setting the Confirmation Tone for Charging

Default setting: ON

This function allows you to set a FOMA terminal to emit a short double-beep ("bibip") when charging starts and ends so that you do not leave the FOMA terminal charging indefinitely.

- The confirmation tone does not sound regardless of this setting when:
  - You are dialing
  - You are on a voice or PushTalk call
  - Public mode (Driving mode) is set
  - Voice announce is being recorded
  - Setting connect mode is being changed
  - The screen is not standby
  - A call arrives
  - Manner mode is set
  - Standby voice memo is being recorded
  - Data is being sent or received
  - The FOMA terminal is turned off

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Charge sound" ▶ "ON"

■ **To mute the charge sound**
▶"OFF"

<Quality alarm> MENU75

Having a FOMA Terminal Warn You Before a Call Drops Out

Default setting	FOMA Quality alarm, VoIP Quality alarm: High tone VoIP Level Down: No tone

An alarm tone sounds during a voice or videophone call to warn you that the signal quality is deteriorating and the call is likely to drop out.

● A call may drop out without an alarm if signal quality worsens very quickly.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Talk” ▶ “Quality alarm” ▶ Select any item

FOMA Quality alarm	Gives an alarm if the signal quality deteriorates during a FOMA voice call or videophone call.
VoIP Quality alarm	Gives an alarm if the signal quality deteriorates during a VoIP call.
VoIP Level Down	Gives an alarm if the signal quality deteriorates during a VoIP call and an access point is changed.

2 Select an alarm type

No tone	Does not give an alarm.
High tone	Gives a high tone alarm.
Low tone	Gives a low tone alarm.

<Receive ringing time> MENU68

Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mails or Messages

Default setting
All ON (ring time: 5 seconds)

Specify whether to have a FOMA terminal sound a ring tone when you receive a mail, chat mail, MessageR/MessageF, instant message or presence report. And if so, set the duration of the ring tone.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Receive ringing time” ▶ Select any item

Mail	Sets the ring time for i-mode mails and SMS.
Chat mail	Sets the ring time for chat mails.
MessageR	Sets the ring time for MessageR.
MessageF	Sets the ring time for MessageF.
Messenger	Sets the ring time for instant messages.
Presence	Sets the ring time for presence reports.

2 Specify whether to ring the tone

ON	**▶Enter a ring time (01-30 seconds)** A FOMA terminal rings for the specified time. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To set the currently displayed time, press ●.
OFF	A FOMA terminal does not ring.

NOTE

◆ When “OFF” is selected for “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR”, “MessageF”, “Messenger” or “Presence”, “” appears on the standby screen.

<Earphone> MENU51

Enabling Tones to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker

Default setting: Earphone(only)

Use this procedure to give a ring tone or alarm through the earphone and speaker when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “External connection” ▶ “Earphone” ▶ “Earphone+Speaker”, “Earp.(Speaker in 20s)” or “Earphone(only)”

NOTE

- Even if “Earp.(Speaker in 20s)” or “Earphone(only)” is set for this function, tones still sound through the FOMA terminal’s speaker when no earphone/microphone is connected. Even when a earphone/microphone is connected, the shutter tone of the camera sounds through the speaker.
- When “Earp.(Speaker in 20s)” is set, you can hear sound through both the earphone and speaker in about 20 seconds after a ring tone or alarm is emitted. However, when the music player is running, the ring tone does not sound through the speaker even in 20 seconds and only sounds through the earphone.
- Do not wrap the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around a FOMA terminal. Doing so may lower the signal strength. Furthermore, bringing the code of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch close to a FOMA terminal may generate noise.

<Manner mode>

Muting the FOMA Terminal’s Tone

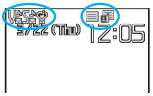
When you want to avoid disturbing people around you, set this function with a single touch to stop your FOMA terminal emitting ring tones and keypad tones through the speaker.

- When Manner mode is set, the following tones are replaced by vibration:
  - Ring tone*1
  - Alarm clock, Schedule, To Do list and Notice designate calls alarm tones*2
  - Missed call/new mail/new instant message confirmation tones when the FOMA terminal is folded

  *1: The FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in “Vibrator”. If “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal vibrates in “Pattern 2”.

  *2: The FOMA terminal vibrates in the pattern set in “FOMAphone” in “Vibrator”. If “FOMAphone” in “Vibrator” is set to “OFF”, the FOMA terminal vibrates in “Pattern 2”.
- For the FOMA terminal operation mode when Manner mode is set, select “Manner mode”, “Super silent” or “Original” in “Manner mode set”. →p.144

1 **On the standby screen or you are talking ▶ # (1 second or longer)**



Manner mode is set and “ ” appears.

During a call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep (“bibip”) and a message notifying you that Manner mode is now set appears.

While in Manner mode, an icon indicating the specified “Manner mode set” setting appears together with “ ”.

: “Vibrator” works when a call arrives, etc.

, , : “Ring volume” is set to “Silent”.

to : “Record message” is set to record messages. The number indicates how many messages are recorded.

to : “Record VP message” is set to record videophone messages. The number indicates how many videophone messages are recorded.

■ To cancel Manner mode

Press # for 1 second or longer on the standby screen or while you are talking.

Manner mode is canceled and “ ” disappears from the screen.

During a call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep (“bibip”) and a message notifying you that Manner mode is canceled appears.

NOTE

- Even while in Manner mode, a FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound when you take a picture with the built-in camera.

Customizing Manner Mode

Default setting
Manner mode

This feature allows you to select FOMA terminal operations performed in Manner mode.

● The default settings of “Original” manner mode are:

- Record msg.: OFF
- Mail vol.: Silent
- VM tone: ON
- LVA tone: OFF
- Vibrator: ON
- Alarm vol.: Silent
- Keypad sound: OFF
- Phone vol.: Silent
- i-αppli vol.: Silent
- Mic sensitiv.: Up

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Manner mode set”

The “Manner mode set” screen appears.



Manner mode set

2 Select any item

Manner mode	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc. However, the confirmation tone emitted through the earpiece speaker (tone emitted when ▼ (Memo/Check) is pressed to play/erase a memo or voice memo) is not muted.
Super silent	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker and confirmation tones emitted through the earpiece speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc.
Original	Customizes the Manner mode settings. You can specify in advance which volume is set for alarm clock tones or how a FOMA terminal deals with incoming calls when Manner mode is set. “Original manner” →p.144

Original manner

1 Manner mode set screen (p.144) ▶ “Original” ▶ Select any item

Record msg.	Sets Record message. “Having a Caller Leave a Message and Video” →p.82
Vibrator	Sets the vibrator. “Vibrating a FOMA Terminal When a Call or Mail Arrives” →p.140
Phone vol.	**▶Use ◎ to adjust the volume** Sets the ring tone volume for voice/videophone calls, PushTalk calls and 64K data communication. “Adjusting the Ring Volume” →p.77
Mail vol.	**▶Use ◎ to adjust the volume** Sets the ring tone volume for mails, chat mails, packet communication, MessageR/MessageF, instant messages and presence reports. “Adjusting the Ring Volume” →p.77
Alarm vol.	**▶Use ◎ to adjust the volume** Sets the alarm tone volume for Alarm clock. “Setting the alarm clock” →p.397
i-αppli vol.	**▶Use ◎ to adjust the volume** Sets the i-αppli volume. “Step” is not available.
VM tone	Sets confirmation tones for “Record message” and “Voice memo”.
Keypad sound	Sets the keypad tone. “Setting the Keypad Tone” →p.141
Mic sensitiv.	Selects “Normal” or “Up” for the microphone sensitivity during a call.
LVA tone	Sets the low-voltage alarm. “When the battery runs out” →p.47

2 To end the setting, press ✉ (Finish)

■ When Manner mode is set

The table below lists the settings for each type of Manner mode:

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (the Original manner mode settings are shown)
Record Message activation	OFF		"Record msg." setting
Vibrator	ON		"Vibrator" setting
Ring tone volume for voice/ videophone calls, PushTalk calls and 64K data communication	Silent		"Phone vol." setting
Ring tone volume for mails, chat mails, packet communication, MessageR/ MessageF, instant messages and presence reports	Silent		"Mail vol." setting
Alarm volume for Alarm clock (including the snooze function)	Silent		"Alarm vol." setting
i-αppli volume	Silent		"i-αppli vol." setting
Alarm volume for Schedule/To Do list/ Notice designate calls	Silent		"Phone vol." setting
Confirmation, activation and completion tones for Record message, Voice memos, etc.	ON	OFF	"VM tone" setting
Keypad sound	OFF		"Keypad sound" setting
Microphone sensitivity during a call*1	Up		"Mic sensitiv." setting
Holding tone	Silent		"Phone vol." setting Off when "Silent" is set. Sounds at "Level 1" when an option other than "Silent" is set.
On hold tone	Silent		"Phone vol." setting*2
Low-voltage alarm	OFF		"LVA tone" setting Even when "ON" is set, the low-voltage alarm sounds at "Level 1" if "Phone vol." is set to "Silent" for this function.
Reading out received mails	"FOMAphone" setting under "Ring volume" (p.77)*3		
Missed call/new mail/new instant message confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded	Silent		"Phone vol." setting*2
ToruCa acquisition tone	Silent		"Phone vol." setting*4

*1: If the microphone sensitivity during a call is set to "Up", the volume of voice heard by the other party is increased even when you speak quietly during a call. However, the "Normal" microphone sensitivity is used for shooting movies in "Camera" mode.
*2: Sounds at the "Level 2" volume when "Step" is set.
*3: Reads out at the "Level 2" volume when "Silent" or "Step" is set. Select "Read out message" from the function menu on the received mail detail screen to perform reading of mails.
*4: Sounds at the "Level 4" volume when "Step" is set.

■ When an earphone is connected

The table below lists the settings applied when an earphone is connected.

Item	Manner mode	Super silent	Original (the Original manner mode settings are shown)
Reading out received mails and contents of To Do list/Schedule	"FOMAphone" setting under "Ring volume" (p.77)*		
Voice clock (during standby or snooze) and missed call/new mail/new instant message confirmation tones when a FOMA terminal is folded	"FOMAphone" setting under "Ring volume" (p.77)*		"Phone vol." setting Sounds at the "Level 2" volume when "Step" is set.
Volume of the music player	Music player (p.387) volume setting		

*: Reads out at the "Level 2" volume when "Silent" or "Step" is set.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Regardless of the “Record message” (p.82) setting, Record message is activated when “Record msg.” in “Original” is set to “ON” and Manner mode is set.
- If the Record message set in “Original” starts while in Manner mode, message recording starts after the ring time set in “ON” in “Record message” (p.82) elapses. (When “OFF” is set, recording starts in 8 seconds.)
- If a FOMA terminal is set to vibrate to notify you of calls or alarms when Manner mode is set, take care not to let the vibrating FOMA terminal get close to fire (e.g. space heater) or fall off a table, etc.

<Display setting> MENU56

Changing the Display Settings

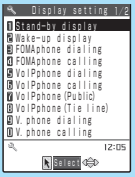
Default setting	Stand-by display: Blue technology Wake-up display: Welcome FOMAphone dialing, FOMAphone calling, VoIPphone dialing, VoIPphone calling, VoIPphone(Public), VoIPphone(Tie line), V.Phone dialing, V.phone calling, Mail sending, Mail receiving, Check new messages: Blue technology

Use this procedure to show your favorite images such as the photographed or downloaded on a screen (e.g. standby, dialing or receiving).

- If you set i-motion programs including video and voice for a ring tone and the receiving screen respectively, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the ring tone.
- If you set a file other than i-motion including video and voice for a ring tone and set an i-motion including video and voice for the receiving screen, the FOMA terminal plays the video and voice of the i-motion set for the receiving screen.
- An i-motion with voice only (e.g. singer’s voice) cannot be set for the receiving screen.
- Some i-motion programs cannot be selected, e.g. if the size is QVGA.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Display setting”

The “Display setting” screen appears.
If a file other than i-motion is set for the receiving screen, set a ring tone as required.



Display setting

2 Select any item

Stand-by display	“Changing the standby screen image”→p.148	
Wake-up display	Sets a message or image shown when a FOMA terminal is turned on.	
	OFF	Does not show an image, etc.
	Message	▶**Enter a message** A message can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters.
	My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
FOMAphone dialing	Sets the image shown when you make a FOMA voice call. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.

FOMAphone calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming FOMA voice calls.	
	Select ring tone	“Changing Ring Tones”→p.138
	Select calling disp.	“Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails”→p.148
VoIPphone dialing	Sets the image shown when you make a VoIP call. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
VoIPphone calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming VoIP calls (Internal).	
	Select ring tone	“Changing Ring Tones”→p.138
	Select calling disp.	“Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails”→p.148
VoIPphone (Public)	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming VoIP calls (Public).	
	Select ring tone	“Changing Ring Tones”→p.138
	Select calling disp.	“Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails”→p.148
VoIPphone (Tie line)	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming VoIP calls (Tie line).	
	Select ring tone	“Changing Ring Tones”→p.138
	Select calling disp.	“Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails”→p.148
V.phone dialing	Sets the screen shown when you make a videophone call. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
V.phone calling	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming videophone calls.	
	Select ring tone	“Changing Ring Tones”→p.138
	Select calling disp.	“Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails”→p.148
Mail sending	Sets the image shown when you send an i-mode mail or SMS. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
Mail receiving	Sets a ring tone and screen for incoming i-mode mails and SMS.	
	Select ring tone	“Changing Ring Tones”→p.138
	Select receiving disp.	“Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails”→p.148
Check new messages	Sets the image shown when you check new messages. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.

● Setting the receiving screen for incoming calls or mails

<Example: To set the receiving screen for incoming FOMA calls>

1 Display setting screen (p.146)▶“FOMAphone calling”▶“Select calling disp.”▶Select any item

My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
i-motion*	Sets an i-motion. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option. Some i-motion programs cannot be set.	
	Inbox	Sets an i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website or a movie recorded using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.

*: “i-motion” does not appear on the mail receiving screen.

■ To check settings

▶✉ (Play)

NOTE

- ◆ Flash movies can be set in “Select calling disp.” or “Select receiving disp.”, but the tone set in “Select ring tone” sounds as a ring tone.
- ◆ Movies or i-motion programs that are available for Chaku-motion or a receiving image cannot be set if:
  - They are transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal via Infrared data exchange, DoCoMo keitai datalink or Data Link Software and then returned to your FOMA terminal.
  - They are copied from the miniSD memory card to a FOMA terminal (including round operation: a FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card first, then getting back to the terminal).
- ◆ When the receiving image settings are duplicated, the priority sequence will be assigned.→p.149
- ◆ You cannot set images for the dialing and receiving screens for PushTalk calls.
- ◆ Images cannot be set for sending and receiving screens for instant messages and receiving screen for presence reports.

<Priority sequence for screen>

- ◆ Priority is assigned as follows when screen settings are duplicated:

①Automatic display ②i-αppli stand-by display ③Display setting/Style mode

Changing the standby screen image

- ● The “Pre-installed” folder contains pre-installed standby screens and screens for Wake-up display. Pre-installed standby screens and screens for Wake-up display→p.484

1 Display setting screen (p.146)▶“Stand-by display”▶Select any item

OFF	Does not show an image, etc.	
Calendar	Sets a calendar.	
	Background	Sets a background image for the calendar. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	No background	Shows a calendar only.

My picture	Sets an image. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option.	
	Inbox	Sets an image downloaded from an i-mode site or website or shot using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed image.
	Original animation	Sets an original animation.
i-motion	Sets an i-motion. If you have created folders, they appear after the “Pre-installed” option. Some i-motion programs cannot be set.	
	Inbox	Sets an i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or website or a movie recorded using the built-in camera.
	Camera	
	Pre-installed	Sets a pre-installed i-motion.
i-αppli display	Sets the i-αppli standby screen. When the i-αppli standby screen is set, a star (★) appears. “Setting i-αppli as Standby Screens”→p.314	

■ When the calendar is set for the standby screen

The calendar appears on the standby screen. You can quickly and easily check the schedule of the previous or following month or edit schedule events.
Saturdays are colored in blue, holidays are in red and anniversaries are in pink.

■ To check adjacent months on the calendar

Pressing ● on the standby screen or sliding your finger over ● to place the pointer over calendar selects the calendar. (If pressing ● selects a desktop icon other than calendar, use ◉ to select the calendar.) Press ● again. Then pressing ◉ opens the previous month or ◉ to opens the next month.

■ To activate the schedule function

Press ◉ or ◉ to show the previous month or next month and press ● to store the schedule events for the month shown by the schedule function.

NOTE

- If a movie or i-motion is set for the standby screen, opening a FOMA terminal plays the movie or i-motion. Press [📞], [CLR], [📞], [⟳], [📷], [✉], [●] or [#] to stop the playback. While in Manner mode, only the image appears (without sound). When playback ends, the first frame of the movie or i-motion appears on the standby screen.
- If a Flash movie is set for the standby screen, opening the FOMA terminal plays the Flash movie (without the melody). When playback ends, the last frame of the Flash movie appears on the standby screen. Pressing [CLR] or [📞] during the Flash movie playback ends the playback, and the image shown at the ending point appears on the standby screen.
- Deleting the image, movie or i-motion that is set for the standby screen restores the default standby screen.

<Disp. phonebook image>

Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls

Default setting: ON

Use this procedure to specify whether to show an image when you receive a voice or videophone call from a phone number stored in the phonebook with the image.

1 [MENU]▶[Settings]▶“Incoming call”▶“Disp. phonebook image”▶“ON”

■ To hide images stored in the phonebook

▶“OFF”

NOTE

- Depending on the precedence or combination of a ring tone and receiving screen, either the ring tone or the receiving screen may revert to the one set at the time of purchase.
- If a caller does not show the caller ID or SIP address, no image appears.
- Regardless of this setting, images stored in the phonebook as secret data do not appear.

<Priority sequence for the image displayed when a call or mail is received>

- Priority is assigned as follows for the image display when voice call/videophone call settings are duplicated:

①Image for Discern connect→p.132 ②Image for Discern group→p.132
③Image for Add to phonebook→p.118 ④i-motion for Select ring tone→p.138
⑤Display setting/Style mode→pp.146, 164

Discern connect or Discern group priority sequence is as follows:
①i-motion for Ring tone ②i-motion, image for Image

<Indicator display> MENU93

Setting the Indicator Display Mode

Default setting	Setting: Display information Clock type: Clock1 (size big) Phone number: ON Mail: OFF Connection: ON

Set the display mode (message, clock, etc.) for the indicator display.

● “Guide to Indicator Display (Rear Panel Display)”→p.33

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Display”▶“Indicator display”▶Select any item

Display information	Displays text and information.	
	Clock type	Selects a clock type.
	Phone number	Sets whether to show the phone number or SIP address of an incoming call (ON/OFF).
	Mail	Sets whether to show the contents of a mail. When “ON” is set, the sender, date and time, and subject are shown when you receive a mail.
	Connection	Specifies whether to show conditions while in dialing or talking on a voice call/videophone call/PushTalk call, Infrared data exchange or data communication (ON/OFF).
Display clock only	Only displays a clock.	
	Clock type	Selects a clock type.
OFF		Shows nothing on the indicator display.

NOTE

◆ When “OFF” is set for the indicator display, nothing appears on the indicator display except when you shoot with the built-in camera or use some functions.

◆ When you receive a voice or videophone call with a Chaku-moji message, the message appears on the indicator display following the receiving indication (such as callers phone number and image). (The Chaku-moji message and receiving indication appear alternately.) However, Chaku-moji messages do not appear on the indicator display regardless of the “Chaku-moji” settings when:

- “Display clock only” or “OFF” is set for this function
- “OFF” is set for “Phone number” in “Display information”

◆ Even if Mail is set to “ON”, the indicator display does not show the sender names, dates and times and subjects of received mails that have been automatically filtered to the folders with mail security set.

◆ When a FOMA terminal receives multiple mails at the same time, the mail address, sender name, date and time and subject of the latest mail appear.→p.33

◆ When a FOMA terminal is folded, the display light of the indicator display lights for approximately 5 seconds and then turns off.

<Backlight> MENU70

Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting

Default setting	Lighting: ON (lighting)+Saver (Light time: 5 minutes) Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Display”▶“Backlight”▶Select any item

Lighting	Specifies the normal display light operation. If “OFF” is set, “ ” appears on the standby screen.		
	ON	Specifies whether to set power saver mode.	
		ON	▶**Enter a waiting time (02 to 20 minutes)** Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen turn off (power saver mode). Sets the waiting time before the FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To set the currently displayed time, press ●.
		OFF	Disables power saver mode.

Lighting	**OFF**	Specifies whether to set power saver mode.	
		ON	▶**Enter a waiting time (02 to 20 minutes)** Once the specified waiting time has elapsed, the standby screen turn off (power saver mode). Sets the waiting time before the FOMA terminal switches to power saver mode. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To set the currently displayed time, press ●.
		OFF	Disables power saver mode.
Charging	Specifies the display light operations during charging.		
	Standard	The display light lights according to the “ON” setting in “Lighting”.	
	All time ON	The display light stays on while charging.	
Area	Selects the display light area.		
	LCD+Keys	Sets the LCD panel and keypad for the area.	
	LCD	Sets only the LCD panel for the area.	
Brightness	Selects the brightness from “Level 3 to 1”.		

NOTE

- Pressing 5 for 1 second or longer also turns the display light on or off.
- When “Lighting” is set to “ON”, the display light stays on while a call is being received, and lights for roughly 15 seconds when the FOMA terminal is turned on, one of the keys is pressed or the FOMA terminal is opened. The display light also stays on while you are using the camera or playing a movie or i-motion. If you select “OFF”, the display light does not turn on. However, the display light stays on during movie shooting regardless of the “Lighting” setting.
- If “Charging” is set to “All time ON”, the displays and dial keys are lit all the time following the “Area” setting (“LCD+Keys” or “LCD”). If “Charging” is set to “Standard”, the display light operates following the “Lighting” setting.
- Even if “Charging” is set to “All time ON” while charging, the brightness of the display light is set to “Level 1” in order to increase the charging efficiency unless any keys are pressed for roughly 15 seconds.
- The time for lighting the message of a mail or MessageR/MessageF varies depending on the length of the message.
- Pressing any keys in power saver mode releases power saver mode.
- When charging starts, the display light of the indicator display lights for approximately 15 seconds and then turns off.

<Display design> MENU86

Changing the Display Color

Default setting	Color pattern: Pattern 1 Background 1: OFF Background 2: Pattern 1

Use this procedure to change designs of text, background, upper and lower sections of the display and software keys.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **“Display”▶“Display design”▶Select any item**

Color pattern	Selects a color pattern from “Pattern 1 to 5”. The selected color pattern appears on the display during selection.
Background 1	Selects the pattern for Background 1 (a 25-dot background pattern for the upper and lower sections of the display) from “OFF” (not displayed) and “Pattern 1 to 8”. The selected color pattern appears on the display during selection.
Background 2	Selects the pattern for Background 2 (background pattern for the software keys) from “Pattern 1 to 3”. The selected color pattern appears on the display during selection.

NOTE

- Changing this function does not affect the colors of icons and images. Furthermore, there are some screens or functions that are not affected by the change of this function, such as i-mode sites.

Changing the Menu Display

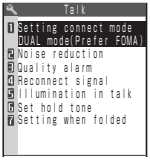
Setting the menu display mode <Menu display set> MENU 57

Default setting	Menu display: List Theme: Blue technology Memory focus: ON

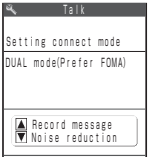
Specify how to show the branch menus (functions) under “Settings”, change the main menu design or set the Last one function for the main menu or Sliding Menu (Launcher).

● Original menus are shown as a list, regardless of the settings of this function.

■ Menu display



“List”



“Detail”

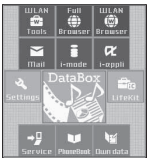
■ Theme



“Blue technology”



“Black reflection”



“Color blocks”

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Menu display set”

The “Menu display set” screen appears.

2 Select any item



Menu display set

Menu display	Selects the display mode for branch menus from “Detail” and “List”.	
Theme	Sets the background and icons used on the main menu screen.	
	Blue technology	Sets Blue technology.
	Black reflection	Sets Black reflection.
	Color blocks	Sets Color blocks.
	Original theme	“Changing the main menu screen design”→p.153
Memory focus	Specifies whether to highlight the icon you selected last time when opening the main menu or Sliding Menu (Launcher).	

Changing the main menu screen design

Use this procedure to change the icons and background image on the main menu screen.

1 Menu display set screen (p.152)▶“Theme”▶“Original theme”

The “Original theme” screen appears.
Select an image from Inbox, Camera, Pre-installed or a folder you created in My picture.



Original theme

Function menu➡p.153

2 Select any item

WLAN Tool	Sets a WLAN Tools icon image.
Full Browser	Sets a Full Browser icon image.
WLAN Browser	Sets a WLAN Browser icon image.
Mail	Sets a Mail icon image.
i-mode	Sets an i-mode icon image.
i-αppli	Sets an i-αppli icon image.
Settings	Sets a Settings icon image.
Data box	Sets a Data box icon image.
LifeKit	Sets a LifeKit icon image.
Network service	Sets a Network service icon image.
Phonebook	Sets a Phonebook icon image.
Own data	Sets an Own data icon image.
Background image	Sets a background image or color of the Multitask group frame. “Multitask”→p.394

■ **To set the Multitask group frame**

▶“Background image”▶✉ (Play)▶● (Frame)▶Use ✣ to select a color from the color palette
While selecting a color, press ✉ (Change) to switch the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors.

NOTE

- Pressing ✉ (Play) on the selection screen allows you to check the image of the selected item.
- If at least one image subject to FOMA card operational restriction function (p.41) is set as a menu icon or background image and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or removed, the original theme reverts to default.
- You can set a JPEG, GIF or animation GIF image file with a size of 100K bytes or less and up to 640 dots wide × 640 dots high for JPEG and up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or up to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high for GIF or animation GIF. If the image is larger than the display area (icon: 72 dots wide × 52 dots high, background: 240 dots wide × 270 dots high), the size is reduced without changing the aspect ratio. If the image is smaller than the display area, it is centered.
- An animation GIF image set as a menu icon will run only once, regardless of the specified number of repetitions. Also, an animation GIF image set as the background image will not run as an animation.

Function menu (Original theme screen)

Reset	Restores the highlighted icon or background image to the default setting.
All reset	Restores all the main menu icons and background images to the default settings.

Creating an original menu <Original menu>

MENU 52

Default setting	Own number, Check new messages, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm clock, Change security code

Adding often-used functions to the original menu allows you to easily access those functions.

- You can add up to 10 original menu entries.
- The functions that can be added to the original menu are the main settings for “Mail”, “i-mode”, “i-αppli”, “Messenger”, “Presence”, “WLAN Browser” and “Full Browser”, and the medium and branch settings (functions) for “Settings”, “Data box”, “LifeKit”, “Network service”, “Phonebook” and “Own data”.
- You cannot add the same function twice.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶“Display”▶“Original menu”

The “Original menu” screen appears.

2 Highlight “<Not recorded>” and press (Edit)▶Use to select a menu item to add

You can only select main menu items from “Mail/i-mode/i-αppli/Messenger/Presence/WLAN Browser/Full Browser”.

■ To change an already stored function

▶Highlight a stored item



Original menu

Function menu➡p.154

NOTE

◆ Pressing (MENU)▶(MENU) also opens the original menu and you can add or sort items except for Launcher menu.

Function menu (Original menu screen)

Add to org. menu	Adds an item to the original menu.
Sort	**▶Use to select a position and press ●** Rearrange the Original menu items.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Reset org. menu	Restores the original menu to default.
Release	Removes the highlighted function from the original menu.
Release all	Removes all functions from the original menu.

<Neuropointer>

Setting the Neuropointer

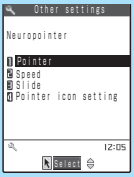
Default setting	Pointer: ON Simple: Normal Pointer icon setting: Blue technology

For easier use of the pointer controlled by the Neuropointer key (●), specify whether to turn the pointer on/off, the speed and design.

- To set the Neuropointer speed from “Initial setting” (p.49), select “Normal” or “High” in “Simple” (p.155).
- The pointer is available when “ ” appears on the screen.
- The pointer icon has two colors, which are decided by whether it is followed by the cursor or not. Moving the blue pointer ( ) automatically selects the cursor. When the pointer is white ( ), moving it does not select the cursor.

1 MENU▶Settings▶“Other settings”▶“Neuropointer”

The “Neuropointer” screen appears.



Neuropointer

2 Select any item

Pointer	Sets whether to show the pointer (whether to use the Neuropointer).	
Speed	“Changing the pointer speed”→p.155	
Slide	**Adjust**	**▶“YES”▶Slide your finger over the Neuropointer key following the instructions** Sets the limit of the Neuropointer key sliding to move the pointer effectively.
	Reset	Restores the slide adjustment to default.
Pointer icon setting	Changes the pointer icon design. Selecting an item changes the selected icon design. To check an icon design before selecting it, press (Play). Use the function menu to change the list format (Title name or Picture) for the selection screen.	

Changing the pointer speed

1 Neuropointer screen (p.155)▶“Speed”▶Select any item

Simple	**▶“Normal” or “High”▶“YES”** Chooses between two speeds.	
Detail	Sets a speed for each screen.	
	Standard[*1]	**▶Use to select “I”, “L” or “H”▶Use to adjust the speed▶“OK”** Speed can be controlled in the range of level 0 (leftmost) to level 11 (rightmost). The more you move the slide to the right, the faster the speed becomes. The more to the left, the slower it does.
	MainMenu	
	T9/Prediction	
	Software[*2]	
Reset	Restores the pointer speed to default.	

*1: Adjusts the pointer speed for typical screens such as the list or icon selection.
*2: The settings may be not applicable depending on the i-αppli.

<illumination> MENU89

Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes for Incoming Calls and Mails

Default setting	FOMAphone: Color 5 VoIPphone: Color 5 VoIPphone(Public): Color 5 VoIPphone(Tie line): Color 5 Videophone: Color 5 PushTalk: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1 Messenger: Color 7 Presence: Color 7 Set pattern: Standard Adjust color: Color 1 to 12

Set the color and pattern (flash pattern) in which the incoming call lamp flashes when you receive voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls, mails, chat mails, MessageR/MessageF, instant messages or presence reports.

- You can set different flash colors respectively for incoming calls and messages from particular phone numbers, SIP addresses, e-mail addresses or groups. →p.132
- The flash pattern for ✉ and ● is the same as for the incoming call lamp.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **“Incoming call”▶“Illumination”▶Select any item**

Set color	Selects the flash color of the incoming call lamp for “FOMAphone”, “VoIPphone”, “VoIPphone(Public)”, “VoIPphone(Tie line)”, “Videophone”, “PushTalk”, “Mail”, “Chat mail”, “MessageR”, “MessageF”, “Messenger” and “Presence”. The incoming call lamp flashes in the selected color during selection.	
	Color 1 to 12: The lamp flashes in the selected color. Gradation: The lamp flashes in the colors 1 to 12 in numeric order.	
Set pattern	Selects the flash pattern of the incoming call lamp.	
	Standard	Sets the flash pattern to Standard (flashing at 0.5 seconds interval).
	Melody linkage	Sets the flash pattern to Melody linkage.
Adjust color	Sets the color.	
	Edit color name	**▶Select a color▶Enter the color name** A color name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
	Adjust color tone	**▶Select a color▶Use ◎ to adjust the color tone**

NOTE

- If “Pattern 1 to 4” is selected for a ring tone, the incoming call lamp flashes according to the ring tone regardless of the settings of this function.
- If no flash pattern corresponding to the melody is set for a ring tone or Chaku-motion is set, the “Standard” pattern is used regardless of the “Melody linkage” setting.
- The incoming call lamp flashes in “Color 5” (green) when data on the miniSD memory card are being accessed (except for some functions). The color and flash pattern are not affected by the settings of this function.

<Incoming call lamp priority sequence>

- Priority is assigned as follows for the incoming call lamp operation when the incoming settings are duplicated:
  ①Illumination for Discern connect→p.132 ②Illumination for Discern group→p.132
  ③Illumination

<illumination in talk>

Specifying How the Incoming Call Lamp Flashes During a Call

Default setting: OFF

This function allows you to set the color in which the incoming call lamp flashes during a voice, videophone or PushTalk call.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **“Talk”▶“Illumination in talk”▶Select a color**

OFF:	The incoming call lamp does not flash.
Color 1 to 7:	The lamp flashes in the selected color.
Gradation 1:	The lamp flashes changing the color.
Gradation 2:	The lamp lights up changing the color.
Gradation 3:	The lamp color quickly changes.

NOTE

- While a message is recorded, a recorded message is played, the answer message is played or an incoming call is held, the incoming call lamp flashes in the same pattern as while you are talking.

<Call time display> MENU48

Displaying the Call Time During a Call

Default setting: ON

Use this function to set whether to display the call time during a voice, videophone or PushTalk call.

- If the call time exceeds “19 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds”, the count restarts from “0 seconds”.
- The shown call time is intended solely as a guide and should not be used as an accurate figure.
- The call time is not counted during i-mode or packet communication.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Call time/Charge” ▶ “Call time display” ▶ “ON”

■ To hide the call time

▶ “OFF”

NOTE

- The call time is reset to 0 second every time you switch the call mode between voice and videophone. However, if you switch the call mode and end a videophone call, the call time shown indicates the total time of the voice and videophone calls.

<Font> MENU66

Changing the Font

Default setting: Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium

This function allows you to customize the font (typeface) of the text shown on the display or indicator display.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Display” ▶ “Font” ▶ Select any item

Type	Selects a font type between “Font 1” and “Font 2”. A sample of the highlighted font appears on the bottom of the screen.
Thickness	Selects the thickness between “Thin”, “Medium” and “Bold”. A text sample using the highlighted thickness appears on the bottom of the screen.

NOTE

- This function is not available to set the font for clock display and phone number entry screen.
- “Font 2” is only available for alphabetic letters (double-byte or single-byte), numbers (double-byte or single-byte), hiragana and katakana (double-byte or single-byte), some symbols, Greek letters and Russian letters. All other characters such as kanji are shown using “Font 1”.
- Changing this function does not affect the thickness of text on the indicator display.

<Clock display> MENU39

Setting the Clock Display

Default setting: Display: ON Size: Big Display type: World watch OFF

Set the language mode (Japanese or English) of days shown on the standby screen, the clock display size or whether to show the world clock. You can also hide the date and clock.

- If a screen is not standby, the small clock appears at the bottom of the screen regardless of the settings of this function. →p.32

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Clock” ▶ “Clock display” ▶ Select any item

Display	Selects “ON” or “OFF”.	
Size	**Big**	Shows the date and large clock.
	Small	Shows the date and small clock.
	Down Small	Shows the small clock at the bottom of the screen.
Display type	Selects “World watch OFF” or “World watch ON”.	

NOTE

- The world clock is only available when “Size” is set to “Small”.
- When “Size” is set to “Down Small” and “Telop display setting” for i-channel is set to “ON” or “Receiving”, the clock is hidden while ticker appears.

<Desktop icon>

Using Desktop Icons

Default setting
Photo mode, Messenger

Adding frequently called phone numbers or frequently used functions to the standby screen as desktop icons enables you to quickly access those numbers or functions with simple operations.

Adding desktop icons

Select “Add desktop icon” from the function menu on the screen, list screen or detail screen of the function you want to add.

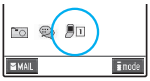
● The following can be added to the standby screen as desktop icons. You can add up to 15 desktop icons into the standby screen.

Category	Icon (Type)	Icon title*1
Access data	(Phone number)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
	(SIP address: VoIP call)	Name stored in the phonebook (SIP address if no name is stored)
	(SIP address: Create instant message)	
	(Mail address)	Name stored in the phonebook (mail address if no name is stored)
	(SMS address)	Name stored in the phonebook (phone number if no name is stored)
	URL (i-mode)	Page title (URL excluding “http://” or “https://” if no title is stored)
	(URL: WLAN Browser)	
	(Melody)*2	Melody title (“Melody” if no title is stored)
	(Image)*2	Image title (“Image” if no title is stored)
	(Movie or i-motion)*2	Movie or i-motion title (“i-motion” if no title is stored)
	(Chara-den)	Chara-den title (“Chara-den” if no title is stored)
	(PDF document)	PDF document title (“Document” if no title is stored)
	(i-αppli program)	Program name
Access function*3	(Photo mode)/ (Movie mode)/ (Voice mode)/ (To Do list)/ (Schedule)/ (Text memo)/ (Access reader)/ (Bar code reader)/ (i-channel)/ (Music)/ (Receive Ir data)/ (Dictionary)/ (Original menu)/ (Messenger)/ (Presence)	Respective function name (“Type” on the left)
Open folder	(Inbox folder)	Folder title (“folder” if no title is stored)

*1: When a desktop icon is selected, only the first 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters of the title appear.
*2: Pre-installed melodies or images, i-motion programs or original animations cannot be added as desktop icons.
*3: The same desktop icon cannot be added twice or more times.

<Example: To add a phone number from the phonebook>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.124)▶ⓘ (FUNC)▶“Add desktop icon”▶“YES”



Using desktop icons to access data or functions

1 On the standby screen▶●

The title of the icon in the current cursor position appears.

2 Move the cursor to the desktop icon you want to access and select the icon

■ If there are 6 or more desktop icons added

"◁▷" appears on the left and right of the screen. Use ⊙ to scroll through icons.



Desktop icon

Function menu➡p.159

Function menu (Desktop icon screen)

Edit title	**▶Enter a title** A title can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters.	
Reset desktop	Restores the default setting ("Photo mode" and "Messenger" only).	
Delete	**Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted desktop icon.
	Delete selected	**▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple desktop icons.
	Delete all	Deletes all desktop icons.
Move	**▶"YES"▶Use ⊙ to move an icon▶●** Moves the highlighted desktop icon.	

NOTE

◆ The function menu items available on the Desktop icon (standby) screen can also be accessed from the function menu on the "Desktop icon" screen (p.159). (However, use ◎ to perform "Move".)

Checking desktop icon information

MENU 63

1 MENU▶Settings▶"Display"▶"Desktop icon"

The "Desktop icon" screen appears.

2 Select a desktop icon title



Desktop icon

NOTE

◆ On the information screen of a URL desktop icon, use ◎ to scroll the screen to view all the URL information.

Desktop icons that give notice

Icon	Details of notice	When selected
New	Notifies you that you received a new mail. Highlighting this icon shows the emotion-expressing mail icon that suits the contents of the mail and a pictograph included in the mail title using 3D animation. The mail subject is also shown.→pp.161, 270	Opens the detail screen of the latest mail.
CHAT	Notifies you that you received a new chat mail. Highlighting this icon pops up an emotion-expressing mail icon using 3D animation according to the contents of the chat mail. "Chat mail" also appears.→pp.161, 270	Opens the Chat screen.
ToruCa	Notifies you of new ToruCa.	Opens the ToruCa folder list screen.

Continued on next page

Icon	Details of notice	When selected
	Notifies you of missed calls. Highlighting the icon shows the number of missed calls.	Shows the “Missed calls” record.
	Notifies you of recorded messages of voice calls.	Launches “Play/Erase msg.”.
	Notifies you of recorded messages of videophone calls.	Launches “Play/Erase VP msg.”.
	Notifies you that Voice Mail service center keeps a recorded message.	Launches “Voice Mail”.
	Notifies you that a FOMA terminal was unable to post an alarm of Alarm clock, Schedule or To Do list.	Shows the information about the most recent alarm that could not be posted.
	Notifies you that an i-αppli could not be launched automatically.	Opens the “Auto start info” screen.
	Notifies you that the i-αppli standby screen shut down due to an error.	Shows the security error history.
	Notifies you that software updating has been completed.	Opens the update results screen following the security code entry.
	Notifies you that the cumulative charge exceeds the specified limit.	Opens the Notice designate calls screen following the security code entry.
	Shows the auto-update of the pattern data of the scan function has been completed. Alternatively, shows new pattern data of the scan function have been released.	Shows the auto-update results for the pattern data of the scan function. If update has not been normally terminated or a new pattern has been released, a screen prompting you to update the pattern data of the scan function appears.
	Notifies you that the Data Security Service information has not been updated.	Opens the Data Security Service auto start screen.
	Notifies you that you received a new instant message.	Opens the received instant message detail screen.
	Notifies you that the Presence status has changed.	The buddy list screen for which the Presence status has changed.

NOTE

- If you access a function from a desktop icon that gives notice or from a menu, the desktop icon will disappear. However, the “ ” desktop icon remains displayed until you display the ToruCa display screen of the new ToruCa or delete the new ToruCa. Similarly, the “ ” desktop icon remains displayed until you play or delete a Record message.
- To delete a desktop icon that gives notice, press CLR for 1 second or longer (deleting the icon does not delete their contents). However, “ ”, “ ” and “ ” will remain.
- When you set “Missed calls display” in the “Ring time(sec.)” to “Not display” and receive a call whose ring time is shorter than the one set in “Set mute seconds”, the “ ” desktop icon does not appear. However, calls from phone numbers or SIP addresses stored in the phonebook are notified with the icon. →p.188
- If you receive a new mail or chat mail of which the destination Inbox or folder is protected for security, selecting the desktop icon does not show the emotion-expressing mail icon, a pictograph using 3D animation or the mail subject. Instead, “New mail” or “Chat mail” appears.

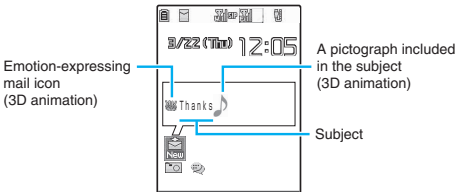
<3D display setting>

Using 3D Animation for the New Mail Desktop Icon Message

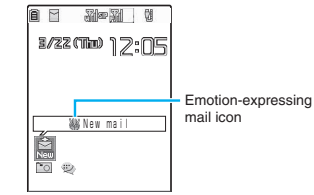
Default setting	ON

Show a 3D animation icon when the new mail or new chat mail desktop icon is highlighted.

- For new mails, the mail subject up to 15 double-byte characters appears.
- Details of notice given when the new mail or new chat mail desktop icon is highlighted→p.159
- Emotion-expressing mail icon→p.270



New mail (Setting is “ON”)



New mail (Setting is “OFF”)

1 MENU▶Settings▶“Display”▶“3D display setting”▶“ON”

■ **To disable 3D animation**

▶“OFF”

NOTE

- When the subject of a new mail is “No title” or SMS is received, highlighting the desktop icon shows “New mail” and pops up the emotion-expressing mail icon that suits the contents of the mail using 3D animation.
- Even if this function is set to “ON”, an emotion-expressing mail icon does not appear when “Emotion/Keyword notice” in “Mail settings” is set to “OFF”.
- A 3D animation icon may not appear depending on the pictograph. If many pictographs are included in a mail subject, 3D animation may not be used for all the pictographs.

<Icons setting>

Selecting Icons to Show on the Standby Screen

Default setting: ON

You can select and set the icons, date or time to show on the standby screen using the Neuropointer.

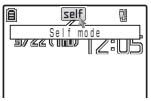
1 (MENU)▶Settings▶“Display”▶“Icons setting”▶“ON”

■ To disable selection

▶“OFF”

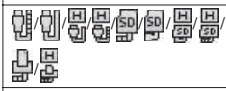
Selecting icons with the Neuropointer

1 **On the standby screen▶Slide ● to show the pointer▶Point an icon to check▶●**



The icon title appears. You can also select date or time.
After selecting an icon using the Neuropointer, ✣ is available to select icons.

Icon/display	After selected
/	Opens the “Lock selection” screen.
	Shows “Inbox”.
(white)/ (red)/ (white)/ (red)	Shows the list of unread mails.
(white)/ (red)	Shows “MessageR”.
(white)/ (red)	Shows “MessageF”.
(R, F: white)/ (R, F: red)/ (R: red, F: white)/ (R: white, F: red)	Opens the screen for selecting “MessageR” and “MessageF”.
(white)/ (red)/ (white)/ (red)/ (white)/ (red)	Performs “Check new messages”.
	Opens the received instant message detail screen.
	The buddy list screen for which the Presence status has changed.
	Shows “WLAN Tools”.
self	Opens the screen for releasing “Self mode”.

Icon/display	After selected
	Opens the screen for selecting “Vibrator” or “Ring time”.
	• Normal mode (when not in Manner mode) Opens the screen for selecting “Ring volume” or “Ring time”. • Manner mode, Super silent mode Shows the message notifying that it cannot be set. • Original manner mode Opens the screen for selecting “Original” or “Ring time”.
	Shows “Manner mode set”.
	Shows “Remote monitoring”.
	Shows “Alarm”.
	Shows “Voice Mail”. Even if there are already 11 or more recorded voice mail messages, “10 Voice mail” appears.
	Shows a message notifying that nothing is recorded.
	Shows “Play/Erase msg.”.
	Shows a message notifying that nothing is recorded.
	Shows “Play/Erase VP msg.”.
	Shows “Backlight”.
	Shows “Keypad lock”.
	Shows “Sidekeys guard”.
	Opens the screen for releasing “IC card lock”.
Date	Shows “Schedule”. When the time is not set, “Set time” appears.
Clock	Shows “Alarm clock”. When the time is not set, “Set time” appears.
World clock	Shows “World watch”. This title appears only when the world clock is set to be shown. →p.157
	Switches active tasks.
	Shows “USB mode setting”.
	

<Style mode>

Setting Style Mode

This function enables you to set the FOMA terminal functions such as the standby screen and ring tone at a time.

● The following settings can be performed at a time:
- “Display setting” (p.146)
- “Select ring tone” (p.138)
- “Original theme” in “Menu display set” (p.152)
- “Display design” (p.151)
- “Pointer icon setting” in “Neuropointer” (p.155)

Setting Style mode

Select the items shown on the Style mode list screen and set the selected items at a time.

● If storing the current settings in “お気に入り” (My favorite) before setting Style mode, you can restore the stored settings later.→p.165

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶“Other settings”▶“Style mode”

The “Style mode list” screen appears.



Style mode list

Function menu➡p.165

2 Select an item▶“YES”

No item is set in “お気に入り” at the time of purchase.

■ **To check settings**

▶Highlight an item▶(✉) (Detail)▶Highlight an item▶(✉) (Play)

NOTE

◆ Highlighting “Color pattern”, “Background 1” or “Background 2” while checking the setting automatically shows the highlighted item as the background on the displayed screen.
◆ When “i-αppli display” is set, the i-αppli standby screen settings have precedence in the standby screen settings.
◆ When “Discern connect” or “Discern group” is set or an image is set in a phonebook entry, those settings have precedence over this function.
◆ If Style mode is set and then the items set in Style mode are respectively set using other functions, the latter settings have precedence.
◆ Depending on the Flash movie, you may not be able to check the settings even in the items set.

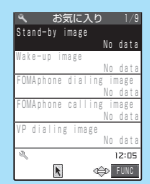
Function menu (Style mode list screen)

Edit title	Edits a title of a Style mode item.
Reset Setting info	Deletes the “お気に入り” settings.

Bookmarking the current settings

1 Style mode list screen (p.164)▶Highlight “お気に入り”▶(Detail)

The items that are currently registered in “お気に入り” appear.
“No data” appears for unregistered items.



Contents checking

Function menu➡p.165

2 (FUNC)▶“Take Setting info”▶“YES”

NOTE

- Images, i-motion programs or melodies that have been downloaded from sites or attached to mails may not be registered in “お気に入り” or not be set at a time.
- “Stand-by display” in which “i-αppli display” is set is not registered in “Stand-by image” in “お気に入り”.
- If an image, i-motion or melody that is registered in “お気に入り” is deleted, it is also deleted from “お気に入り” and “No data” appears.
- You cannot change settings on the contents checking screen of “お気に入り”.

Function menu (Contents checking screen)

Finish	Sets the items registered in “お気に入り” at a time.
Take Setting info	Registers the current settings in “お気に入り”.
Reset Setting info	Deletes the items registered in “お気に入り”.

Security Settings

Security codes

Security Codes Used on a FOMA Terminal 168
Changing Your Security Code ..... Change security code 169
Setting Your PIN Codes ..... PIN setting 169
Releasing PIN Lock 170

Restricting terminal operations and functions

Lock Functions 171
Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal ..... Dial lock/Omakase Lock 171
Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule .... Secret mode/Secret data only mode 173
Hiding Various Data ..... Secret folder 175
Hiding Your Personal Information or Disabling Call/Mail Functions ..... Original lock 177
Locking Key Operation Automatically ..... Keypad lock 182
Disabling the Sidekeys ..... Sidekeys guard 183
Using Face Authentication ..... Face authentication 183

Restricting incoming and outgoing calls and transmissions

Showing/Hiding Redial or Received Calls Record ..... Record display set 184
Setting Security for Mail Folders ..... Mail security 185
Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers ..... Restrictions 185
Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers ..... Call setting w/o ID 187
Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook ..... Ring time(sec.) 188
Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook ..... Reject unknown 189
Disabling Communication Functions ..... Self mode 189

Other security settings

Saving FOMA Terminal Data Online ..... Data Security Service 190
Other Security Settings 191

Security Codes Used on a FOMA Terminal

To make a FOMA terminal more convenient and secure, some functions require a security code entry. The security codes include the one for terminal operations, network security code for network services, i-mode password, etc. Take care to use an appropriate security code when using your FOMA terminal.

■Notes on security codes

- Avoid using easy-to-guess numbers (e.g. your birth date, a part of your phone number or your address, “1111”, “1234”) for security codes. Take care to make a note of the security codes you have set in case you forget them.
- Take particular care not to disclose your security codes to others. DoCoMo shall not take any responsibility for any damage or loss caused by disclosure of the security codes.
- NTT DoCoMo never ask you about your security codes.
- In case you forget your security code, you need to bring your FOMA terminal, FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification (e.g. driver’s license) proving you are the subscriber to an NTT DoCoMo shop.
  For more information, contact Inquiries described on the back cover of this manual.

● Security code

At the time of purchase, your security code is set to “0000” (4 zeros). You can change your security code at any time.→p.169

When the security code entry screen appears, enter your 4- to 8-digit security code and press ●.

- The entered security code appears as “_” instead of the numbers.
- If an incorrect security code is entered or no key is pressed roughly for 15 seconds, an alarm tone sounds and the alarm message appears.



● Network security code

Network security code is a 4-digit number you specified at time of contract. This code is required for using DoCoMo e-site or network services. You can change your network security code at any time.
If you have DoCoMo ID or a password for “My DoCoMo” (general support site for PC), you can change your network security code on your PC.
To change your network security code from i-mode, access “各種手続き” (applications and settings) in DoCoMo e-site (available only in Japanese).
* See the back cover of this manual for more information about My DoCoMo and DoCoMo e-site.

● i-mode password

You need a 4-digit “i-mode password” to register or unregister sites in My Menu and to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or pay i-mode sites. (Some other passwords may be set independently by your information service providers.)
i-mode password is set to “0000” (4 zeros) when you subscribe to the i-mode service. You can change your password at any time.
To change your i-mode password from i-mode, access MENU▶i-mode (i-mode)▶“iMenu”▶“English iMenu”▶“Options”▶“Change i-mode Password”.

● PIN1 code and PIN2 code

Two PIN numbers, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, can be set to a FOMA card (UIM).
PIN1 and PIN2 codes are set to “0000” (4 zeros) at the time of contract. You can change your codes at any time.→p.169
PIN1 code is a 4- to 8-digit number (code) you enter when inserting a FOMA card (UIM) into your FOMA terminal or turning the FOMA terminal on. This code identifies you as the user to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM) by others. Entering PIN1 code enables you to perform terminal operations such as making and receiving calls.
PIN2 code is a 4- to 8-digit security code you enter when performing Reset total cost, or using or requesting Client certificates.
When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you have used into the terminal, use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have set.

When the PIN1 or PIN2 code entry screen appears, enter your 4- to 8-digit PIN1 or PIN2 code and press●.

- The entered PIN1 or PIN2 code appears as "_" instead of the numbers.
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly three times in a row, the PIN1 or PIN2 code is locked. (The remained number of entries appears on the screen.) Entering the correct PIN1 or PIN2 code returns the remained number to three.

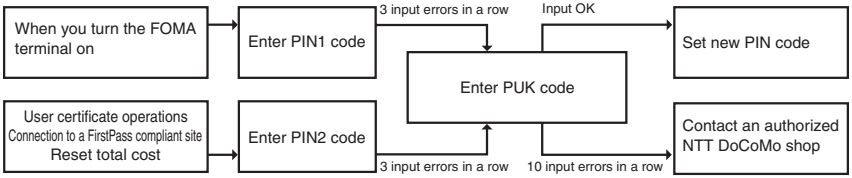


Example: PIN1 code

● PUK code

PUK code is an 8-digit number that will unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code. You cannot change this code.

- If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is locked.



● WLAN security code

This is a 4- to 8-digit code that you enter when referring to or changing WLAN settings. You can change your code at any time. →p.470
However, it may have been set by the network administrator to prohibit alteration.

<Change security code> MENU29

Changing Your Security Code

Default setting
0000 (4 zeros)

1 MENU▶Settings▶"Lock/Security"▶"Change security code"▶Enter your security code▶Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code▶Select "YES"

■ **To change your security code from "Initial setting"**
▶Enter your security code▶Enter a new 4- to 8-digit security code▶"YES"

<PIN setting>

Setting Your PIN Codes

Default setting	PIN1 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN2 code: 0000 (4 zeros) PIN1 code entry set: OFF

- PIN1 code, PIN2 code and PIN1code entry set are stored in a FOMA card (UIM). When purchasing a new FOMA terminal and inserting the FOMA card (UIM) you have used into the terminal, you can still use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have used for the FOMA card (UIM).
- If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly 3 times in a row, your PIN is automatically locked and you can no longer use the PIN code. Make a note of your codes just in case you forget them.
- PUK code is an 8-digit number that will unlock the locked PIN1 or PIN2 code.
- If you enter your PUK code incorrectly 10 times in a row, your FOMA card (UIM) is completely locked.
- If you forget your PUK code or your FOMA terminal is completely locked, you need to take your FOMA terminal, FOMA card (UIM) and a form of identification proving that you are the registered service subscriber (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo shop or service counter to have the terminal unlocked.

Changing your PIN1 or PIN2 code

● To change your PIN1 code, select “ON” in “PIN1 code entry set”.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**“Lock/Security”▶“PIN setting”▶Enter your security code**

The “PIN setting” screen appears.

2 **Select any item**



PIN setting

Change PIN1 code	**▶Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code currently used▶Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code▶Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code again** Changes the PIN1 code.
Change PIN2 code	**▶Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code currently used▶Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code▶Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN2 code again** Changes the PIN2 code.
PIN1 code entry set	Sets PIN1 code to be entered when you turn a FOMA terminal on.

Entering your PIN1 code when a FOMA terminal is turned on

When “PIN1 code entry set” is set to “ON”, the PIN1 code entry screen appears when you turn a FOMA terminal on. Enter your PIN1 code to proceed.

1 **Turn a FOMA terminal on**

2 **Enter the 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code**

If the entered PIN1 code is correct, the standby screen appears.



Releasing PIN Lock

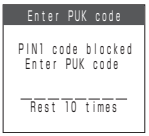
If you enter your PIN1 or PIN2 code incorrectly three times in a row, unlock the PIN1 or PIN2 code and set a new PIN1 or PIN2 code.

<Example: To unlock your PIN1 code>

1 **Enter the 8-digit PUK code**

2 **Enter a new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code**

3 **Enter the new 4- to 8-digit PIN1 code again**



Lock Functions

Purpose	Function	Refer to
To prevent others from using your FOMA terminal	Dial lock/Omakase Lock	p.171
To hide your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” data to prevent others from viewing them	Secret mode/Secret data only mode	p.173
To hide data such as images or mails to prevent others from viewing them	Secret folder	p.175
To prevent others from viewing or altering your personal information	Original lock	p.177
To disable call or mail functions		
To prevent others from viewing records of your incoming and outgoing calls	Original lock Record display set	p.177 p.184
To lock key operation automatically	Keypad lock	p.182
To disable the sidekeys	Sidekeys guard	p.183
To unlock using face authentication	Face authentication	p.183
To use a FOMA terminal without having to worry about incoming voice, videophone or PushTalk calls	Self mode	p.189

<Dial lock/Omakase Lock>

Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal

To lock your FOMA terminal to prevent others from using it, use “Dial lock” that will be set on your FOMA terminal or “Omakase Lock” that will be set remotely.

- Dial lock or Omakase Lock is not released even when a FOMA terminal is turned off.

Available operations and functions when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set

Function	Dial lock	Omakase Lock
Turning a FOMA terminal on/off	○	○
Calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118)	○	×
Setting/releasing Dial lock	○	×
Setting/releasing Omakase Lock	○	○
Receiving voice calls or videophone calls*	○	○
Receiving remote monitoring calls	○	○
Updating the Data Security Service data	○	×
Using functions other than the above	×	×

○: Available ×: Unavailable

*: You cannot make voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls. Even if receiving PushTalk calls, the FOMA terminal does not ring and records them as “Missed calls”. When a call with a Chaku-moji message arrives, a message appears on the incoming call screen. You cannot receive calls when Public mode (Driving mode) is set.

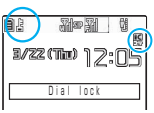
- If Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set, no alarm notification is given when a time set in “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” is reached. Once you release Dial lock or Omakase Lock, the “Missed alarm” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- If Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set, icons pasted into the desktop disappear. The icons reappear after Dial lock or Omakase Lock is released.
- Only phone numbers/SIP addresses appear even for calls from callers stored on the phonebook when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set.
- Calls that arrive when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set are recorded in “Received calls”.

Using a FOMA terminal to set Dial lock

Default setting
Release

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶“Lock/Security”▶“Lock”▶Enter your security code▶“Dial lock”

Operations during Dial lock



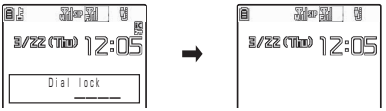
- “Dial lock” and “ ” appear on the display. Also, the message “Dial lock” appears on the indicator display.
- “ ” appears on the display at the same time and IC card lock is set to “ON”, and IC card functions become unavailable. You cannot release IC card lock when Dial lock is set.
- Although a FOMA terminal automatically receives MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, SMS, chat mails, instant messages or presence reports when Dial lock is set, the receiving and reception results screens do not appear. After Dial lock is released, the icon for received mails or messages appears on the standby screen.

Releasing Dial lock

- If you fail to release Dial lock 5 times in a row, the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, it can still be turned on again.

1 **Enter your security code on a screen when Dial lock is set▶●**

Dial lock is released, “ ” and “ ” disappear from the screen.



NOTE

- Even if Dial lock is released, “ ” still appears while IC card lock is set.
- Even if an incorrect security code is entered for releasing Dial lock, no error message appears. Press ☎ and enter the correct security code again.

Using Omakase Lock

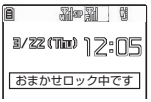
Default setting
Release

If you lost your FOMA terminal, contact DoCoMo or operate from My DoCoMo to lock the FOMA terminal remotely. This protects your important privacy and Osaifu-Keitai. To unlock the FOMA terminal, call our Call Center.

Call Center (for setting/releasing Omakase Lock)
0120-524-360 (Operating time: 24 hours a day) (only in Japanese)
* My DoCoMo is also available to set/release Omakase Lock via a PC, etc.

* For details about Omakase Lock, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Procedures and After-Sales Service]” or contact the number listed in “For inquiries” on the back cover of this manual.

Operations during Omakase Lock



- The message “おまかせロック中です” appears on the display and indicator display.
- Omakase Lock is a service where you can lock the FOMA terminal with the FOMA card (UIM) you subscribe to inserted.
- While in Omakase Lock, all key operations are locked except receiving voice calls/videophone calls and turning the power on/off. Other functions (including IC card) are unavailable.
- Mails you receive when Omakase Lock is set are kept at the mail center.
- The FOMA card (UIM) and miniSD memory card remain unlocked.

NOTE

- Other active functions are terminated before Omakase Lock is set. (Edited data may be canceled before the function is terminated.)
- You can set Omakase Lock even when other lock functions are set. If Omakase Lock is released, the lock functions that had been set before Omakase Lock are reactivated (except for Secret mode and Secret data only mode).

◆ Omakase Lock cannot be set when:
- The FOMA terminal is out of FOMA service area.
- The FOMA terminal is turned off.
- "ｦ" appears on the FOMA terminal because Self mode is set or data are being exchanged via Infrared data exchange or cable connection, etc.

◆ Omakase Lock cannot be set if you subscribe to the "Dual Network" service and are using the mova service.
◆ Omakase Lock is a service where a FOMA terminal is locked by a request from the subscriber to the FOMA card (UIM) inserted in the terminal. Even if someone else uses the terminal, it is locked at the subscriber's request.
◆ Omakase Lock can only be released when the same FOMA card (UIM) as used when the lock was set is inserted. When you cannot release the lock by yourself, contact "For inquiries" described on the back cover of this manual.
◆ If you try to release Omakase Lock set in a FOMA terminal that is on a voice call or videophone call, the lock is released after the call ends.

<Secret mode/Secret data only mode>

Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule

Default setting	Secret mode: OFF Secret data only mode: OFF

This function enables you to prevent others from accessing "Phonebook" and "Schedule" entries by storing them as secret data that can only be accessed by entering your security code. To store an entry as secret data, store it in your "Phonebook" or "Schedule" when the FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
In Secret mode, you can access all the data stored in your "Phonebook" or "Schedule", including secret data. In Secret data only mode, you can access only "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entries that are stored as secret data.

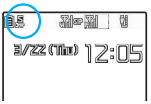
- You can move and store data in "My picture", "i-motion", "Inbox", "Outbox" or "Bookmark" that you want to hide from others into the "Secret" folder.→p.175
- If you make or receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the mode set is canceled even without answering the call. If data in a Secret folder appears, it returns to the list screen of each folder.
- You cannot store entries in the UIM phonebook as secret data.
- Turning a FOMA terminal off cancels Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

Storing phonebook or schedule entries as secret data MENU 40

- The operations for using the "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entries in Secret mode or Secret data only mode are the same as when a secret mode is not set.

<Example: To store an entry in Secret mode>

1 (MENU)▶(Settings)▶"Lock/Security"▶"Secret mode"▶Enter your security code



Secret mode is set and "S" appears on the screen.
Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time→p.30

■ **To cancel Secret mode**

▶(☎)

Secret mode is canceled and "S" disappears from the screen.

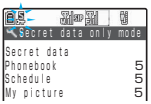
2 Store a "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entry

The entry is stored as secret data.
Adding information to the phonebook→p.119
Adding information to your schedule→p.399

Viewing only secret data <Secret data only mode>

MENU 41

1 (MENU)▶(Settings)▶“Lock/Security”▶“Secret data only mode”▶ Enter your security code



Secret mode is set and “ S ” flashes. The standby screen reappears in approximately 2 seconds.

Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time→p.30

■ **To cancel Secret data only mode**

▶☎

Secret mode is canceled and “ S ” disappears from the screen.

2 Search the phonebook or check your schedule

Searching the phonebook→p.124

Checking your schedule→p.401

NOTE

- Selecting “Set secret” from the phonebook detail function menu also enables you to store a phonebook entry as secret data.
- In Secret mode, “ S ” flashes when you select or show secret data or show a Secret folder or data stored in a Secret folder.
- “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entries stored as secret data can only be accessed, edited, deleted or referred in Secret mode or Secret data only mode. When a FOMA terminal is in normal mode, you will be notified of scheduled events stored as secret data by an alarm, while no alarm message appears.
- If a “Phonebook” entry stored as secret data is assigned to a memory number between “000” and “009”, “two-touch dialing” can only be used to call that number when the FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
- Phonebook entries stored as secret data are also stored as secret data in the PushTalk phonebook.
- If the caller of an incoming call is stored as secret data and shows the caller ID or SIP address, not the name but the phone number/SIP address appears. Only the phone number/SIP address appears also on “Received calls”. However, setting Secret mode or Secret data only mode shows the name stored in the “Received calls” record.
- If Secret mode or Secret data only mode is released and you receive a mail from a sender stored as secret data, not the name but the mail address appears. The mail address is not stored in the “Received address” record.
- If Secret mode or Secret data only mode is released and you receive an instant message from a sender stored as secret data, not the name but the SIP address appears. The SIP address is not stored in the “Received IM address” record.
- The following functions cannot be set for “Phonebook” entries stored as secret data:
  - Automatic display→p.134
  - Restrictions→p.185
  - Discern connect→p.132
- If you edit a “Phonebook” or “Schedule” entry in Secret mode, the edited entry is stored as secret data. If a phonebook entry is edited, all the data stored in the memory number of the edited entry are stored as secret data.
- You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret data only mode by accessing (MENU)▶(Settings)▶“Lock/Security” and then selecting “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode” in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
- If “Dial lock/Omakase Lock” is set at the same time as “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”, releasing “Dial lock/Omakase Lock” also cancels “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- If you receive a call while editing the phonebook or schedule, viewing the schedule or viewing the results of a phonebook search in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the Secret mode or Secret data only mode is canceled. Subsequently when you return to the phonebook or schedule screen and resume the interrupted operation, the security code entry screen appears. When you enter your security code on the screen, Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set and you can then continue the operation.
- When you make a call or send a mail or instant message by accessing a phonebook entry stored as Secret data, “Redial”, “Dialed calls”, “Sent address” or “Sent IM address” is not updated.
- While Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set, presence group cannot be registered or deleted.

Changing secret data back to normal

Set Secret mode or Secret data only mode and access a phonebook entry or scheduled event for which you want to cancel the mode.

<Example: To remove secrecy from a phonebook entry>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.124)▶(FUNC)▶“Release secret”

The secrecy is removed. In Secret mode, the “ ” icon stops flashing and remains on the screen.

■ **For scheduled events**

▶Schedule list screen▶(FUNC)▶“Release secret”▶“YES”

In Secret mode, the “ ” icon stops flashing and remains on the screen.

“Schedule list function menu”→p.401

<Secret folder>

Hiding Various Data

You can use “Secret” folders to store bookmarks, received mails, sent mails, images and movies that you want to hide from others.

- “Secret” folders appear in the folders of Bookmark, Inbox, Outbox and Data box only when Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set.
- If you make or receive a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the mode set is canceled even if you do not answer the call. If a file in a Secret folder appears, it returns to the list screen.
- The maximum numbers of files that can be stored in “Secret” folders are listed below.

Bookmark (i-mode)	Bookmark (WLAN Browser)	Bookmark (Full Browser)	Inbox	Outbox	My picture	i-motion
10 (3K bytes)	10 (3K bytes)	10 (6K bytes)	100 (150K bytes)	100 (150K bytes)	100 (1.2M bytes)	10 (1M bytes)

* Maximum number of files that can be stored may vary by the size of each file.

<Example: To move an image in My picture to Secret folder>

1 Set “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”

“Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule”→p.173

2 Image list screen (p.335)▶Select an image and press (FUNC)▶“Keep in secret”

NOTE

- Secret folders are pre-installed in a FOMA terminal. You cannot delete them, change their names or add another Secret folder.
- You cannot use Secret folders to store the images or i-motion programs in “Pre-installed” folders, unread mails or SMS and SMS reports stored in the FOMA card (UIM).
- You can also cancel Secret mode or Secret data only mode by accessing (MENU)▶(Settings)▶“Lock/Security”▶ and then selecting “Secret mode” or (MENU)▶(Settings)▶“Lock/Security”▶ and then selecting “Secret data only mode” in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

<Bookmark (i-mode/ WLAN Browser/ Full Browser)>

- When you use a bookmark in the Secret folder to access a site, the URL of the site is not stored in Last URL.

<Inbox/Outbox>

- When a mail is sent or received with mail folders full, mails stored in Secret folders are not deleted.
- For mails attached with large images, movies or i-motion programs in Secret folders, only the messages are stored and the attachments are not. On the list or detail screen, “ ”, “ ”, “ ” or “ ” indicating the attached file cannot be shown or played appears. Even if moving the mails into other folders, you cannot view or play the attached files.
- You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To function, Mail To function, Web To function, SIP To function, IM To function or i-αppli To function from mails stored in Secret folders. “ ” indicating an i-αppli to be activated from a mail message changes to “ ”.
- Since mails in Secret folders return to normal mails if they are moved out of Secret folders, chronologically-older mails may be deleted when other mails are received or sent, depending on the status of the folders. We recommend you to protect mails before moving them out of Secret folders.

Continued on next page

◆ Even in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, chat mails stored in Secret folders do not appear on the chat screen.
◆ When receiving the SMS report of a SMS stored in a Secret folder, you cannot select “Disp. SMS report” from the SMS detail function menu even if “ ” appears on the list or SMS detail screen. To check the SMS report by selecting “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu, move the SMS from the Secret folder into another one.

<My picture/i-motion>
◆ If a file set for the standby screen, a phonebook entry or image on the chat screen is moved to a Secret folder, the setting is reset to default.
◆ You cannot use the Phone To/AV Phone To function, Mail To function, Web To function or SIP To function from i-motion.

<Desktop icon>
◆ If an image, movie or i-motion pasted as a desktop icon is stored in a Secret folder, you cannot access the data from the desktop icon.
◆ Even if a bookmark or mail address is pasted as a desktop icon and the bookmark, received mail or sent mail that contains the mail address is stored in a Secret folder, you can access the bookmark or mail address from the desktop icon.

● Secret folder function menu

The functions available with Secret folders and files in the folders are restricted. The functions available with Secret folders are:

■ Secret folder function menu

Folder list screen▶Highlight the “Secret” folder▶ (FUNC)

Bookmark (i-mode/ WLAN Browser/ Full Browser) (p.231)	Inbox/Outbox (p.281)	My picture (p.372)	i-motion (p.372)
Add folder No. of bookmarks*1 Send all Ir data*1 Copy all to miniSD*1 Delete all*1	Add folder No. of messages*1 Open folder Send all Ir data*1 Copy all to miniSD*1 Delete read*1*2 Delete all*1	Add folder Delete all image*1	Add folder Delete all*1

*1: Not subject to the data in the “Secret” folder.
*2: Only shown on the Inbox folder screen.

■ Data list function menu

Bookmark (i-mode/ WLAN Browser/ Full Browser) (p.231)	Inbox/Outbox (pp.283, 285)	My picture (p.338)	i-motion (p.348)
No. of bookmarks Delete Put out	Color coding List setting Protect ON/OFF Unprotect all Mail info* No. of messages Delete Put out	Display image Image info Delete Memory info Title name, Picture Put out	i-motion info Delete Memory info List setting Put out

*: Only shown on the received mail list screen.

■ Data detail function menu

Inbox/Outbox (pp.287, 287)	My picture (p.340)	i-motion (p.351)
Protect ON/OFF Scroll Font size Delete Put out	Image info Set image disp. Delete this Retry	Normal play Slow Fast Stop i-motion info Set image disp.

Changing data in Secret folder back to normal

To change data in a Secret folder to normal, move the data into another folder.

<Example: To restore an image stored in the Secret folder under My picture to normal>

1 Set "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode"

"Preventing Others from Viewing Stored Data of Your Phonebook or Schedule"→p.173

2 Folder list screen (p.335)▶"Secret"▶Select an image and press (FUNC)▶"Put out"

3 Select a folder to save the image

NOTE

◆ Since a mail moved from a Secret folder is a normal mail, it may be deleted when other mails are received or sent. We recommend you to protect mails before moving them out of Secret folders.

<Original lock>

Hiding Your Personal Information or Disabling Call/Mail Functions

Default setting (Original lock 1 to 3)	OFF (Detail Data disp. edit del.: All selected Dial/sending mail: All OFF Incoming/Mail disp.: All OFF)

Locking the functions that use your personal information such as mails and phonebook entries allows you to prevent other people from viewing or improperly altering the personal information. You can also restrict making or receiving voice, videophone or PushTalk calls, or restrict sending or receiving i-mode mails, SMS or instant messages.

- You can assign functions and data to lock to Original lock 1 to 3 depending on the intended purposes.
- Turning a FOMA terminal off does not release the lock.

Activating Original lock

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶"Lock/Security"▶"Lock"▶Enter your security code

The "Lock selection" screen appears.



Lock selection

2 Select Original lock 1 to 3

Lock is enabled, and functions and data that are subject to lock are locked.

" " appears on the screen.

Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time→p.30

■ **To change the functions and data that are subject to lock**

"Customizing the functions and data to lock"→p.181

■ **To edit a title**

▶Highlight Original lock 1 to 3▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit title"▶Enter a title▶ (Set)

■ **To release Original lock**

▶"OFF"

● Operations during Original lock

To use the functions and data that are locked when Original lock is set, the security code entry is required.

● Entering your security code correctly deactivates Original lock temporarily so that locked functions and data become available. Exiting all active functions and returning to the standby screen reactivate Original lock.

<To view an i-mode mail while Original lock is set>



1 On the standby screen▶ (MAIL)

The security code entry screen as shown on the right appears.

2 Enter your security code

Original lock is released temporarily and the mail menu appears.

3 Read an i-mode mail→p.274

4 Close the mail menu to return to the standby screen

Original lock is reactivated and "" appears on the screen.

NOTE

◆ When multiple tasks are activated with the Multitask function (p.394), Original lock is not reactivated even if the standby screen reappears after an operation. Ending all tasks reactivates Original lock.

◆ The following functions are not available when Original lock is set (release Original lock to use them):

- Reset settings
- Initialize
- Software Update
- "Update" and "Set auto-update" for Scanning function

◆ If you have locked functions other than "Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp.", you can temporarily deactivate Original lock to use them. (To use the "Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." functions that are locked, release Original lock.)

◆ If you temporarily release Original lock when "Dial/sending mail", "Incoming/Mail disp." and other lock functions are set at the same time, "" appears on the screen.

● Functions and data that are subject to Original lock

● The functions and data that are subject to Original lock are listed below. You can specify (customize) whether to set Original lock for each group and item.→p.181

Category	Group	Function	When locked/Notes
Data disp. edit del.	Mail	Mail	Locks the mail function. • Mail boxes cannot be displayed. • Mails cannot be composed or sent.
		Mail member	Locks the activation of each function.
		Chat group	
		Messenger	Locks the Messenger function. • Inbox/Outbox boxes cannot be displayed. • Instant messages cannot be composed or sent.
	i-mode/WLAN	i-mode/WLAN	Locks the i-mode function and WLAN Browser function. • i-mode, Full Browser, i-channel and WLAN Browser etc. are not available. • The i-channel ticker does not appear.
		Bookmark	Locks the i-mode, WLAN Browser and Full Browser bookmark list displays.
	i-αppli	i-αppli	Locks the i-αppli menu and IC card list displays. All i-αppli programs (including pre-installed programs) cannot be performed. • Original lock does not lock the IC card function. • If the i-αppli standby screen is set, it is deactivated while in Original lock. If a shot or downloaded image had been set before the i-αppli standby screen, the image reappears. However, if an image that had been set before the i-αppli standby screen is subject to Original lock, the default image appears. If a pre-installed image had been set before the i-αppli standby screen, the image reappears.
	ToruCa	ToruCa	Locks the ToruCa list screen display. ToruCa can be acquired using a reader/writer unit even if Original lock is set, but the acquisition screen does not appear. Releasing the lock shows the "New ToruCa" desktop icon.

Category	Group	Function	When locked/Notes
Data disp. Edit del.	Multi media	My picture	Locks the activation of each function. It cannot be accessed from another function. • If the data subject to Original lock are set for a ring tone, the receiving screen or standby screen, the FOMA terminal works according to the default settings while in Original lock. • If “My picture” or “Chara-den” is subject to Original lock and Original lock is set, the “Pre-installed” substitute image is sent during a videophone call.
		i-motion	
		Melody	
		Chara-den	
		My document	
		Music	
		Voice announce	
		Bar code reader	Locks the activation of each function.
		Camera	
		Access reader	
	Schedule	Schedule	Locks the activation of each function. No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. • No alarm is given and the “Missed alarm” desktop icon appears while in Original lock. • If “Schedule” is subject to Original lock and the calendar is set for the standby screen, Schedule cannot be activated from the calendar on the standby screen while in Original lock.
		Alarm clock	
		To Do list	
	Memo	Play/Erase msg.	Locks the activation of each function. • Even if pressing ▼ (Memo/Check) with a FOMA terminal folded, it does not notify you of Record messages or VP Record messages.
		Play/Erase VP msg.	
		Voice memo	Locks the activation of each function.
		Voice memo (in-call)	
	Phonebook	Phonebook/ Presence	Locks the activation of phonebook, PushTalk phonebook or Presence function. Phonebook entries cannot be accessed. (This affects many other functions that use the phonebook.) • Even for a person who is stored in the phonebook, only the phone number or SIP address appears on the dialing or receiving screen of a voice or videophone call. When a new i-mode mail or chat mail arrives, the mail address appears instead of the name stored in the phonebook. • If “Only number in PH-book” is set for “MSG display settings” in “Chaku-moji”, a Chaku-moji message does not appear on the receiving screen. • Even for a person who is stored in the phonebook, only the phone number or SIP address appears in the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls” or “Redial” record. • On the mail list or detail screens, the mail addresses appear instead of the names stored in the phonebook. • Original lock for “Phonebook/Presence” and “Reject unknown” cannot be set at the same time. • The “Call rejection”, “Call acceptation”, “Call Forwarding” and “Voice Mail” settings are deactivated. • Even if you press ▼ (Memo/Check) with a FOMA terminal folded, you cannot have the terminal read out the caller or sender of “Missed call”, “New mail”, “Chat mail” or “Record message”.
		Own no./SIP add. List	Locks the “Own number” or “SIP address list” activation.
		Dialed calls	Locks the “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Sent address” or “Sent IM address” activation.

Continued on next page

Category	Group	Function	When locked/Notes
Data disp. Edit del.	Phonebook	Received calls	Locks the “Received calls”, “Received address” or “Received IM address” activation. • Even if you press ▼ (Memo/check) with a FOMA terminal folded, it does not notify you of “Missed calls”.
	Other settings	Text memo	Locks the “Text memo” activation.
		Notice designate calls	No alarm is given when the specified cost limit is exceeded. • Releasing the Original lock displays the “Notice designate calls” desktop icon on the standby screen. • Original lock does not lock the “Notice designate calls” setting operations. You can change the “Notice designate calls” settings.
		Chaku-moji	Locks “Chaku-moji”. • Original lock does not lock the operations performed when Chaku-moji mails arrive. (They are performed according to “MSG display settings” in “Chaku-moji”.) • Select “Create message” from the function menu to make a call with a Chaku-moji message.
Dial/sending mail	Keypad dial	Keypad dial	Prohibits you from making voice, videophone or PushTalk calls by dialing a phone number or using the Received calls record. • You cannot add or edit a phonebook entry or copy it from the miniSD memory card or using UIM operation. • You cannot make a call using a desktop icon. • You can make calls using the phonebook, Redial or Dialed calls record. • You can directly dial and make FOMA voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118).
	Send	Input add by keypad	Prohibits you from sending i-mode mails, SMS or instant messages by entering an address. • You cannot add or edit a phonebook entry or copy it from the miniSD memory card or using UIM operation. • You cannot use “Received calls”, “Mail member”, “Received address”, “Chat group” or “Received IM address” as a mail address when composing a mail or SIP address when composing an instant message. • You cannot compose a mail using a desktop icon. • You can compose mail and instant message using the phonebook, Redial, Dialed calls, Sent address or Sent IM address. • All chat members except Myself are deleted. • All the mail addresses in Draft are deleted. All the mails in Draft with only addresses entered are also deleted. • Addresses of the instant messages being edited, which is in the Unsent BOX is all deleted (Addresses of the instant messages which failed in transmission are not deleted). All the instant messages in Unsent BOX with only addresses entered are also deleted.
		Sending mail	Prohibits you from sending i-mode mails, instant messages or SMS. • Chat mails are not available.
Incoming/Mail disp.	Incoming call		Rejects incoming voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls or packet communication. A FOMA terminal does not perform operations for incoming calls, and they are stored in Missed calls. • Releasing Original lock displays the “Missed call” desktop icon on the standby screen.
	Disp. recv. mail/msg.		Automatically receives MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, chat mails, SMS, instant messages or presence reports, but does not display the receiving and reception results screens. A FOMA terminal also does not notify you of the received message by ringing, etc. • Releasing Original lock displays the “New mail”, “Chat mail”, “New Instant Message” or “Status report” desktop icon on the standby screen. • Chat mails are not available.

NOTE

◆ If desktop icons of data that are subject to Original lock are pasted into the standby screen, they do not appear while in Original lock.

Customizing the functions and data to lock

- You can assign functions to lock to Original lock 1 to 3 depending on the intended purposes, such as locking only phonebook entries or restricting only outgoing calls/mails.
- Specify whether to set Original lock for each category, group, and function. →p.178
- The customized settings are retained whether Original lock is set or released.

1 Lock selection screen (p.177)▶Highlight Original lock 1 to 3▶✉ (Detail)

The “Category list” screen appears.
“ 🔑 ” appears if any item in the category is subject to Original lock, and “ ALL 🔑 ” appears if all items are subject to Original lock.



Category list

Function menu➡p.181

2 Select a category you want to change

The “Group list” screen appears.
“ 🔑 ” appears if any item in the group is subject to Original lock, and “ ALL 🔑 ” appears if all items are subject to Original lock.

3 Select a group you want to change

The “Function list” screen appears.



Group list

Function menu➡p.181

4 Use ◎ to select a checkbox (☐)▶✉ (Finish)

The checked (☑) items become subject to Original lock.
Deselect items you do not want to lock with Original lock.

5 ✉ (Finish)▶✉ (Finish)▶● (Set)



Function list

Function menu➡p.181

Function menu (Category list/Group list screens)

Select	Selects all items in the highlighted item.
Release	Deselects all the selected items in the highlighted item.
Select all	Selects all items in the displayed items.
Release all	Deselects all the selected items in the displayed items.

Function menu (Function list screen)

Select all	Selects all items.
Release all	Deselects all the selected items.

<Keypad lock>

Locking Key Operation Automatically

Default setting	After folded: OFF Timer: OFF

You can automatically lock keys when folding your FOMA terminal or a certain period of time has passed without using any keys on the FOMA terminal.

● Turning a FOMA terminal off does not release the Keypad lock.

Setting Keypad lock

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**“Lock/Security”▶“Keypad lock”▶Enter your security code**

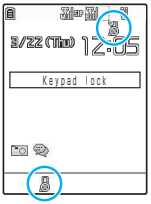
2 **Select any item▶✉ (Finish)**

After folded	**ON**	Locks automatically when a FOMA terminal is folded.
	OFF	Does not lock when a FOMA terminal is folded.
Timer	**▶Select “OFF”, “ON after 1 minute”, “ON after 5 minutes”, “ON after 15 minutes” or “ON after 30 minutes”** For example, setting “ON after 5 minutes” automatically locks keys after 5 minutes without any operation on the FOMA terminal. Selecting “OFF” deactivates the timer and does not lock keys.	

NOTE

◆ The timer count is reset if you use any key or open a FOMA terminal before Keypad lock is activated.

● Operations during Keypad lock



● “Keypad lock”, “ ” and “ ” appear on the display while in Keypad lock. Icons shown when other lock functions are set at the same time→p.30

● While in Keypad lock, you cannot perform any key operation except receiving voice, videophone, and PushTalk calls, turning the FOMA terminal on/off and using (Home).

● While in Keypad lock, the FOMA terminal rings for receiving MessageR, MessageF, i-mode mails, SMS, Chat mails, instant messages or presence reports, but you cannot view the contents.

● Alarms for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” and “To Do list” are given even while in Keypad lock.

NOTE

◆ You can directly dial and make FOMA voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) while in Keypad lock.

◆ While you are on a call (with “Setting when folded” set to other than “End the call”), exchanging data (such as i-mode), playing melody/i-motion/music or using the camera, Keypad lock is not activated even after folding the FOMA terminal or at the time set by the timer.

Releasing Keypad lock temporarily

1 **Enter your security code on a screen when Key Operation lock is set▶●**

■ To use Face authentication to release the lock temporarily

“Using Face authentication to temporarily release Keypad lock”→p.184

NOTE

◆ Releasing Keypad lock temporarily does not cancel the Keypad lock settings. Set both “After folded” and “Timer” settings to “OFF” to cancel the Keypad lock settings completely.

◆ Pressing (MENU) during a voice call displays the Keypad lock temporary release screen. You can display the main menu by releasing Keypad lock temporarily. The FOMA terminal returns to the Keypad lock waiting status when the call ends.

<Sidekeys guard>

MENU ✳(1second or longer)

Disabling the Sidekeys

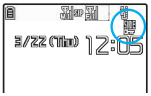
Default setting
OFF

You can disable the sidekeys (▲ (Home), ▼ (Memo/Check) by folding a FOMA terminal.
You cannot disable ▶ using this function.

- In the situations listed below, the sidekeys are enabled regardless of this setting.
  - The FOMA terminal is open.
  - An equipment such as a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone terminal.
  - An external connector is connected to a PC or other device and " " and " " appear on the screen.
  - An external connector is connected to a printer and " " appears on the screen.

1 MENU▶✳ (1 second or longer)

The sidekeys are disabled (when the FOMA terminal is folded) and " " appears on the screen.



■ **To cancel this function**

▶Repeat Step 1

" " disappears.

<Face authentication>

Using Face Authentication

Default setting	OFF New image: Not stored Function to reset: Only IC card lock selected

Take a photo of your face to identify you when releasing Keypad lock or IC card lock. Register a name of the image as a keyword used in case that the authentication fails.

- If the front camera lens is dirty, malfunction may occur. Wipe off the dirt with a soft cloth before use.
- Whether you are properly identified depends on the face status. The following measures may be available:

Condition	Measures
There is a big contrast between bright and dark, e.g. because the light is too strong or you are under incandescent light in a dark place	Move to a place where the face is evenly lighted.
The light shines on your face and the whole face looks white	
Hair, glasses, mask, etc. hides the characteristics of your face (eyes, nose, mouth, eyebrows, etc.)	Do up your hair or take off your glasses or mask so that your eyes, nose, mouth and eyebrows can be seen clearly.

- The face authentication technology does not guarantee complete identification. NTT DoCoMo shall not be liable for any losses or damages to you arising from use by a third party or mis-authentication.

1 MENU▶Settings▶"Lock/Security"▶"Face authentication"▶ Enter your security code

2 "ON"▶"OK"

The "New image" screen appears. Read the cautions carefully.

■ **To cancel Face authentication**

▶"OFF"▶Select "YES" or "NO"



Face authentication

Function menu➡p.184

3 Adjust your eyes to the guide frame▶●

The shot is repeated three times. Each shot is saved.
If the save or shot is not completed, the already saved shot is deleted, so that no image is stored.
When three shots are completely saved, the "Edit image name" screen appears.

■ **To stop shooting halfway**

▶CLR▶"YES"



New image

Continued on next page

4 Enter an image name▶“YES”

The entered image name is used as a keyword in case that authentication fails.
An image name can contain 2 to 8 double-byte or 4 to 16 single-byte characters.

■ **To edit an image name**

▶Select “NO” or the image name

5 Use ◉ to select a checkbox (☐)▶✉ (Finish)

The checked (☑) items become subject to Face authentication. Deselect items for which you do not want to use Face authentication.

Function menu (Face authentication screen)

New image	Stores images.
Edit image name	**▶Enter an image name▶“YES”**
Delete image	Deletes images.
Function to reset	Select the function to release using Face authentication. **▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (☐)▶✉ (Finish)**

NOTE

- ◆Keep a separate note of the stored image name, which is required in case authentication fails. To prevent others from knowing it, use a character combination that cannot be easily guessed.
- ◆If the same image is used for a long period of time, the authentication may fail because your face changes due to age, sunburns or scars. To maintain high successful authentication rate, you are recommended to update your image occasionally.

● Using Face authentication to temporarily release Keypad lock

If you have stored an image for “Face authentication” and selected “Keypad lock” for “Function to reset”, Face authentication is performed to identify that you are the owner of the FOMA terminal when releasing the lock.

- ● If Face authentication fails, enter the image name registered as a keyword for “Face authentication” to release the lock.
- ● To use Face authentication to release IC card lock→p.323

1 Press ◉ (auth.) on the standby screen.

The “Face scanning” screen appears.

2 Position your face so that the whole appears on the display



Face scanning

■ **If the face authentication fails**

▶Enter the image name▶“OK”

3 Enter your security code

Keypad lock is temporarily released.

<Record display set>

Showing/Hiding Redial or Received Calls Record

Default setting	Received calls: ON Redial/Dialed calls: ON

This function enables you to hide the “Received calls”, “Dialed calls”, “Redial”, “Received address” and “Sent address” records. This is useful for preventing other people from viewing your records of incoming and outgoing calls and mails.

1 MENU▶Settings▶“Lock/Security”▶“Record display set”▶Enter your security code▶Select any item

Received calls	Specifies whether to show or hide the Received calls record. Select “OFF” to hide the record.
Redial/Dialed calls	Specifies whether to show or hide the Redial or Dialed calls record. Select “OFF” to hide the record.

NOTE

- When you have a missed call while “Received calls” is set to “OFF”, the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby screen. If you attempt to access “Received calls” from this desktop icon, a message notifying “Received calls” is set to “OFF” appears and the desktop icon remains on the screen. To clear the desktop icon “Missed calls”, press CLR for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.
- To show the Dialed calls or Received calls record that are logged when “Record display set” is set to “OFF”, set it to “ON”.
- You cannot play Record messages when the “Received calls” record display is set to “OFF”.

<Mail security>

Setting Security for Mail Folders

Default setting: No security

This function enables you to apply security to your Inbox, Outbox, Draft or other folders so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your permission. Secured mailboxes or folders cannot be opened unless the security code is entered.

- The entered security code is valid until you exit the Inbox folder list screen or Outbox folder list screen to end a mail task. While it is valid, you do not need to enter the security code to open an secured Inbox or Outbox folder.
- The “” icon appears for secured mailboxes.
- For a secured folder, an icon such as “”, “”, “” or “” appears before the folder name on the folder list screen.
- If you set security for Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address or Received address list.

Setting security for individual mailboxes

1 MENU ▶ Mail ▶“Mail settings”▶“Mail security”▶Enter your security code

2 Use ◉ to select a checkbox (☐)

The selected mailbox is checked.
To deselect the checked mailbox, select it again.



3 Press ✉ (Finish) to finish setting

Setting security for individual folders

1 Inbox folder list screen (p.276)/Outbox folder list screen (p.276)▶ ◉ (FUNC)▶“Mail security”▶Enter your security code▶“YES”

■ To cancel mail security

▶Repeat Step 1

<Restrictions>

Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers

Default setting: All OFF

To prevent users from making private calls or receiving nuisance calls, you can restrict calls to/from the specific phone numbers/SIP addresses stored in the phonebook.

- The functions listed below can be set:

Item	Description
Restrict dialing	Disables calls to phone numbers/SIP addresses other than the specified ones. Use the phonebook to call the numbers/SIP addresses specified in this function.
Call rejection	Rejects calls from the specified phone numbers/SIP addresses.
Call acceptation	Accepts calls only from the specified phone numbers/SIP addresses.
Call Forwarding	Automatically forwards calls from the specified phone numbers regardless of whether Call Forwarding is activated or deactivated.
Voice Mail	Automatically connects calls from the specified phone numbers to the Voice Mail service center regardless of whether Voice Mail is activated or deactivated.

- Up to 20 phone numbers and SIP addresses can be specified in each item.
- You cannot set this function for UIM phonebook entries.

Continued on next page

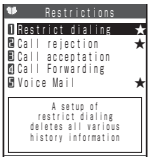
- This function is only valid when a caller shows the caller ID/SIP address. Restrictions should be set in conjunction with “Caller ID Request” and “Call setting w/o ID”.
- You cannot concurrently set Call rejection and Call acceptation for the same phone number/SIP address, or Call Forwarding and Voice Mail for the same number.
- This function cannot be set for phonebook entries added in “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- If you edit or delete a phone number/SIP address specified in this function, the restrictions are canceled. However, setting “Restrict dialing” restricts the phonebook editing or deleting, which prevents you from changing or deleting a phone number/SIP address to cancel Restrict dialing.
- The “Restrict dialing”, “Call rejection” and “Call acceptation” settings are also applied to the PushTalk phonebook entries.

When Restrict dialing is set

- You cannot make any calls using the keypad and Received calls record including the specified phone numbers/SIP addresses. Also, you cannot access phone numbers/SIP addresses other than the specified ones, add to, edit or delete phonebook entries, exchange data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), or operate the phonebook using “UIM operation”.
- The Redial/Dialed calls records and Sent address list that had been stored before the Restrict dialing setting are deleted. However, you can dial or send mails using the records of Redial/Dialed calls or Sent address list that have been stored after the Restrict dialing setting.

Setting dialing/receiving restrictions on phone numbers

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.124)▶(FUNC)▶“Restrictions”▶Enter your security code▶Select a function



A star “★” appears next to the selected function.

■ To deselect a selected function

▶Select a function with a star “★”

The function is deselected and the star “★” disappears.

■ To set dialing/receiving restrictions on multiple phone numbers/SIP addresses

▶Press CLR twice to return to the phonebook list screen▶Use ⊕ to show the desired phone number/SIP address▶Repeat step 1

Once you press ☎ to return to the standby screen after setting Restrict dialing, you can no longer set further restrictions. To set more restrictions, cancel the restrictions that have already been set for a phone number/SIP address and then set restrictions again for phone numbers/SIP addresses including the canceled number.

NOTE

<Restrict dialing>

- ◆ You can still make FOMA voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when Restrict dialing is set.
- ◆ To use “Automatic display” at the same time as Restrict dialing, set Restrict dialing for phonebook numbers for which “Automatic display” has already been set.
- ◆ Only the phone numbers or SIP addresses specified in Restrict dialing appear in the phonebook.

<Call rejection/Call acceptation>

- ◆ A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails, SMS, instant messages and presence reports regardless of this function.
- ◆ If you receive a call from a phone number/SIP address specified in Call rejection or from a number not specified in Call acceptation, the number/SIP address is recorded as a “Missed call” in the “Received calls” record and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.
- ◆ If you receive a FOMA voice call or videophone call from a phone number specified in Call rejection or from a number not specified in Call acceptation, the call is rejected even when the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to “Activate”. However, if the ring time for the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if the FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, the call is handled by the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service. When this happens, the phone number of the received call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and the “Missed call” desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- ◆ While “Original lock” is set for “Phonebook” items, this function is disabled and the FOMA terminal accepts calls from the phone numbers specified in Call rejection or the numbers not specified in Call acceptation.
- ◆ You can still make calls even when Call rejection or Call acceptation is set.

<Call Forwarding/Voice Mail>

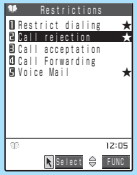
- If you receive a FOMA voice call or videophone call from a phone number specified in this function, a FOMA terminal rings for roughly 1 second and the call is then either forwarded to the forwarding number or connected to the Voice Mail service center.
- If no forwarding number is set or you have not subscribed to "Call Forwarding" or "Voice Mail", FOMA voice calls and videophone calls from the phone numbers specified in this function are handled as missed calls.
- While "Original lock" is set for "Phonebook" items, this function is disabled and the FOMA terminal acts normally when receiving a call from a specified phone number.

Checking the restriction settings

MENU 12

1 Phonebook list screen (p.124)▶ (FUNC)▶"Restrictions"▶Enter your security code

The "Restrictions" screen appears.



Restrictions

Function menu➡p.187

Function menu (Restrictions screen)

1 Restrictions screen▶Highlight a function with a star "★"▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item

Check settings	Shows a list of the phonebook entries for which the highlighted function is set.
Release settings	Cancels all the highlighted function settings.

<Call setting w/o ID> MENU 10

Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers

Default setting	All Accept (Select ring tone: Same as ring tone Select calling disp.: Same as display)

This function enables you to accept or reject voice calls, videophone calls and PushTalk calls from callers who hide the caller ID/SIP address based on the reason given or FOMA/VoIP.

1 MENU▶Settings▶"Lock/Security"▶"Call setting w/o ID"▶Enter your security code▶Select any item

Unknown	Specifies whether to accept calls from callers who are unable to show the caller ID, such as calls from overseas or payphones or calls sent via a call forwarding service. Relaying phone companies may show caller IDs in some cases.
Payphone	Specifies whether to accept calls from payphones.
User unset	Specifies whether to accept calls that hide the caller ID due to the setting of the caller's phone.
VoIP(Unknown)	Specifies whether to accept VoIP calls that hide the phone number or SIP address.

Continued on next page

2 Specify whether to accept or reject incoming calls for the selected item

Accept	Accepts calls.	
	Select ring tone	Selects a ring tone. →p.138 When “Same as ring tone” is selected in “Unknown”, “Payphone” or “User unset”, the FOMA terminal acts according to “FOMAphone” setting in “Select ring tone”. When “Same as ring tone” is selected in “VoIP(Unknown)”, the FOMA terminal acts according to “VoIPphone(Public)” setting in “Select ring tone”.
	Select calling disp.	Selects a call receiving image. →p.148 When “Same as display” is selected in “Unknown”, “Payphone” or “User unset”, the FOMA terminal acts according to “FOMAphone calling” setting in “Display setting”. When “Same as display” is selected in “VoIP(Unknown)”, the FOMA terminal acts according to “VoIPphone (Public)” setting in “Display setting”.
Reject	Rejects calls.	

NOTE

- The ring tone and call receiving image selected in this function are for voice calls hiding the caller ID. For videophone calls hiding the caller ID, the “Videophone” setting in “Select ring tone” and “V.phone calling” setting in “Display setting” are applied. If you receive PushTalk calls hiding the caller ID, the “PushTalk” setting in “Select ring tone” is applied.
- When “Reject” is set, the other party hears a busy tone.
- If you receive a FOMA voice call or videophone call from a caller for whom “Reject” is set, the call is rejected even when the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to “Activate”. However, if the ring time for the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, the call is handled by the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service.
- A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails, SMS, instant messages and presence reports regardless of this function.
- Only “User unset” is available to specify whether to accept or reject PushTalk calls.

<Ring time(sec.)> MENU90

Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting	Set mute seconds: All OFF Mute seconds: All 1 second Missed calls display: Display All

Set the mute time until a FOMA terminal starts ringing when receiving a voice, videophone or PushTalk call of which the phone number/SIP address is not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook (Set mute seconds). You can prevent accidentally making a call using the Received calls record to a number such as a nuisance caller that only rings for a short period of time.

- The specified mute seconds is also enabled when you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call hiding the caller ID, or receive a call during another voice, videophone or PushTalk call.
- If “Reject unknown” is set to “Reject”, you cannot set “Set mute seconds”.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Incoming call” ▶ “Ring time(sec.)” ▶ Select any item

Set mute seconds	**FOMAphone**	**ON**	**▶Enter a mute time (01 to 99 seconds)** Sets the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To set the currently displayed time, press ●.
		OFF	Sets 0 seconds to the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing.
	VoIPphone	**ON**	**▶Enter a mute time (01 to 99 seconds)** Sets the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To set the currently displayed time, press ●.
		OFF	Sets 0 seconds to the time for which a ring tone is muted before a FOMA terminal starts ringing.

Missed calls display	**FOMAphone**	Specifies whether to show received calls for which no ring tone sounded in the Missed calls record.
	VoIPphone	Specifies whether to show received calls for which no ring tone sounded in the Missed calls record.

NOTE

- While a FOMA terminal is ringing, a ring tone sounds, the terminal vibrates, the incoming call lamp lights up or flashes and an incoming call is indicated on the indicator display.
- When you receive a call from a caller stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, the FOMA terminal operates as specified in this function.
- If the time set in Set mute seconds is longer than the ring time for the “Record message” function, the FOMA terminal switches directly to “Record message” without ringing. To have a ring tone sound before a message is recorded, set a longer ring time for “Record message” than the time set in Set mute seconds. The same applies to the ring times for “Voice Mail”, “Call Forwarding” and “Automatic answer”.

<Reject unknown>

Blocking Calls from Callers Not Listed in the Phonebook

Default setting: Accept

You can specify whether a FOMA terminal accepts or rejects calls from phone numbers/SIP addresses that are not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or UIM phonebook.

- This function is only valid when a caller shows the caller ID/SIP address. This function should be set in conjunction with “Caller ID Request” and “Call setting w/o ID”.
- If “Set mute seconds” under “Ring time(sec.)” is set to “ON”, you cannot set “Reject unknown”.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**“Lock/Security”▶“Reject unknown”▶Enter your security code▶“Reject”**

■ **To receive calls from callers who are not stored in the phonebook**

▶“Accept”

NOTE

- When “Call setting w/o ID” accepts calls from payphones or calls hiding the caller ID/SIP address, the FOMA terminal acts according to the “Call setting w/o ID” setting even if this function is set to “Reject”.
- When you receive a call from a caller who is stored in the phonebook as a secret entry, the call is accepted even if this function is set to “Reject”.
- When phone numbers/SIP addresses are specified in “Call acceptation” in “Restrictions”, you can only receive calls from the phone numbers/SIP addresses even if this function is set to “Accept”.
- When “Reject” is selected for this function and you receive a call from a phone number/SIP address not stored in the phonebook, the call is logged as a missed call in the “Received calls” record and the “Missed call” desktop icon appears on the standby screen. When a FOMA voice call or videophone call arrives, the caller hears a busy tone even if you have set “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” to “Activate”. However, if the ring time for the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to 0 (zero) seconds, or if a FOMA terminal is turned off or out of service area, the caller does not hear a busy tone and the call is handled by the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service. When this happens, the phone number of the received call is not logged in the “Received calls” record and the “Missed call” desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- A FOMA terminal receives i-mode mails, SMS and instant messages regardless of this function.

<Self mode>

Disabling Communication Functions

Default setting: Release

This setting disables voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls, i-mode, mails, instant messages, presence, WLAN browser and full browser. This function is useful when you want to use a FOMA terminal without having to worry about interruptions such as incoming voice, videophone or PushTalk calls, etc.

- You can still make FOMA voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) while in Self mode. Making a FOMA voice call to an emergency number cancels Self mode. When in DUAL mode (Prefer WLAN) or Single mode (WLAN), the mode switches to DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA).

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**“Lock/Security”▶“Self mode”▶“YES”**

Self mode is set and “ self ” appears on the screen.

■ **To cancel Self mode**

▶Repeat Step 1

Self mode is canceled and “ self ” disappears from the screen.

● When Self mode is set

- Incoming voice or videophone calls are not logged in the Received calls record and the “Missed call” desktop icon does not appear on the standby screen.
- Callers of voice calls hear a message that your FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned off. Callers of videophone calls see a message that your FOMA terminal is out of service area or turned off. If the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is activated, calls are handled in the same way as when a FOMA terminal is turned off.
- If a PushTalk call arrives, a response informing that you cannot join is sent to the members.
- MessageR/MessageF and i-mode mails sent to you while Self mode is set are kept at the i-mode center, and SMS are kept at the SMS Center.
- Data exchange using Infrared data exchange or OBEX, packet communication with a PC connected and 64K data communication are also unavailable. However, you can read and write data on an IC card by using an Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.
- When presence group display is switched, the status of all members in the group becomes “Unknown”. Also, status update is impossible.

<Data Security Service>

Saving FOMA Terminal Data Online

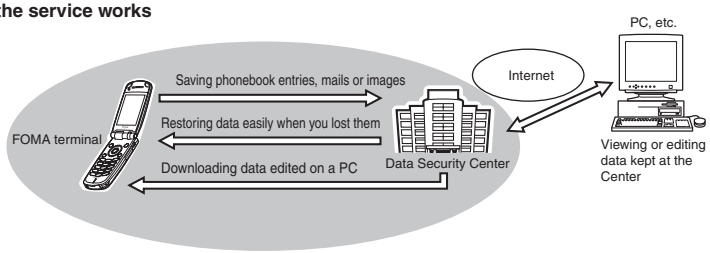
Subscription Required

● Data Security Service

Data Security Service is a service where you can back up phonebook entries, images, mails stored in your FOMA terminal (hereinafter referred to as “stored data”) to the DoCoMo Data Security Center. Even if you lose your FOMA terminal or get it wet then the stored data is deleted, use i-mode to retrieve the data stored at the Data Security Center to your new FOMA terminal. In addition, you can easily edit the data stored at the Data Security Center by opening the My DoCoMo page on your PC, and save the edited data in the FOMA terminal.

* For details on how to use Data Security Service, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

How the service works



- Data Security Service is a pay service you need to subscribe to. (To subscribe to the Data Security Service, you need to subscribe to i-mode beforehand).
- See the following pages for saving operations of Data Security Service:
  - “Saving phonebook entries to the Data Security Center” →p.135
  - “Saving mails to the Data Security Center” →p.286
  - “Saving images to the Data Security Center” →p.339
  - “Checking logs of communication with the Data Security Center” →p.136

Other Security Settings

Apart from those explained in this chapter, there are functions/services related to security settings as shown below.

Purpose	Function/Service	Refer to
To prevent others from using IC card functions	IC card lock	p.323
To avoid “nuisance calls” such as prank calls or unsolicited sales calls	Nuisance Call Blocking	p.424
To ignore calls hiding the caller ID	Caller ID Request	p.424
To send data securely by using a digital authentication service *Only available on sites that support FirstPass	FirstPass	p.246
To update FOMA terminal software when necessary	Software Update	p.514
To protect a FOMA terminal against malicious data	Scanning function	p.519
To accept only necessary i-mode mails	Receive option	p.270
To leave/hear the information about safety using i-mode at the time of disaster	“i-mode Disaster Message Board” service	See “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.
To change your mail address	Change Mail Address	
To check your mail address if you forget it	Confirm Mail Address	
To accept/reject mails from the specified domains	Spam Mail Prevention(Reject/ Receive Mail settings)	
To accept/reject mails only from i-mode terminals		
To accept/reject mails from the specified addresses		
To reject short messages (SMS)	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
To reject any further incoming i-mode mail sent from one i-mode mobile phone once you have received 200 messages a day from that phone	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject advertisements sent unilaterally	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To restrict the size of a received mail	Limit Mail Size	
To check the status of mail function settings	Confirm Settings	
To temporarily stop the mail function	Suspend Mail	

NOTE

◆ Be careful when making calls to unknown numbers logged as missed or received call. In particular showing your caller ID to other unknown parties may cause unnecessary problems.

<Nuisance Call Blocking priority sequence>

◆ Priority is assigned as follows when Nuisance Call Blocking function is set at the same time.

①Nuisance Call Blocking

②Reject unknown or Ring time(sec.)/Call setting w/o ID/Call rejection

Camera

Before Using the Camera 194
Shooting Still Images ..... Photo mode 201
Shooting Movies ..... Movie mode 206
Changing the Shooting Settings 211
Using the Bar Code Reader ..... Bar code reader 212
Scanning Text ..... Access reader 214

Before Using the Camera

You can shoot still images and movies using the built-in camera.

Using the camera

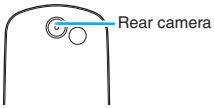
To switch between the front camera and rear camera, press (FUNC) on the shooting screen and select “Front camera” or “Rear camera” from the function menu.

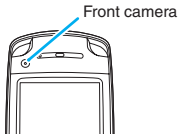
■ Rear camera

This camera is useful for taking photos of other people, animals or scenery. What you see is what you get on the screen (Normal display: photographed as it appears on the screen). The rear camera allows you to photograph things up close by using the lens switch and close-up function. →p.195

■ Front camera

This camera is useful for taking photos of yourself. Images appear as if you were looking in the mirror (Mirror display) and shot images are reversed (Normal display) when saved in a FOMA terminal.





- The cameras are manufactured using extremely high-precision technology. However, the shots may include lines or spots that appear dark or bright. Random color points (statistical noise) may also appear on the photographed images particularly when you shoot in dim conditions.
- Before shooting, wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth. Fingerprints or grease spots on the lens may prevent the camera from focusing properly and cause blurred images.
- Take care not to press on the lens when folding a FOMA terminal. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Image quality may deteriorate if a FOMA terminal is left in a warm place for a long period of time.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight for a long period of time or shoot directly at the sun or an extremely bright lamp. Doing so may lead to discoloration of photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.
- It is not possible to start the camera function or take pictures with the FOMA terminal folded.
- It is not possible to start the camera function or take pictures during a VoIP call.

● Lens switch

- To take close-up photos, change the lens switch to (macro lens). By switching to , the rear camera focuses on an object 6 to 8 cm away from it.
- Switch to (macro lens) when using the Access or Bar code reader.
- Take care when changing the lens switch that you don't touch the lens with your finger. Also, be sure to slide both ● (normal lens) and (macro lens) all the way into position; don't stop partway.

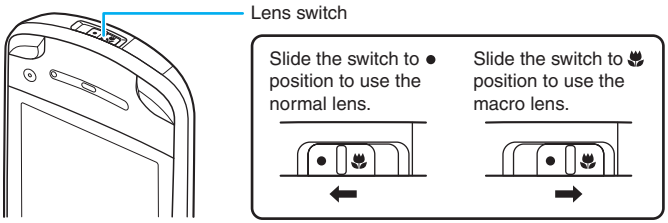
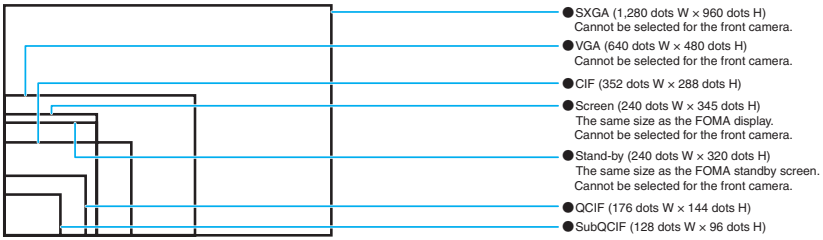


Image size and maximum number of images or movies

- The following shows the image sizes supported by FOMA N902iL. Select the size that suits your purpose:



* The image sizes framed above are intended as an approximate guide and not the actual sizes.

- A FOMA terminal can store up to approximately 3.6M bytes of still images. The following table lists the approximate number of still images that can be stored:

Destination folder	SXGA	VGA	CIF	Screen	Stand-by	QCIF	SubQCIF
N902iL (Phone)	Approx. 14	Approx. 72	Approx. 130	Approx. 130	Approx. 130	Approx. 360	Approx. 360
miniSD memory card (32M bytes)	Approx. 118	Approx. 540	Approx. 944	Approx. 944	Approx. 944	Approx. 1,890	Approx. 1,890

* The number of images that can be stored varies depending on factors such as shooting environment.

Continued on next page

● A FOMA terminal can store up to approximately 4M bytes of movies. The following table lists the approximate shooting time and number of movies that can be stored:

Destination folder	File size	Movie type set	Storage setting				Maximum number of movies
			Normal	Fine mode	Long dur. mode	Move mode	
N902iL (Phone)	Restricted (Short)	Normal	Approx. 44 sec.	Approx. 11 sec.	Approx. 1 min.	Approx. 31 sec.	Approx. 11
		Video	Approx. 59 sec.	Approx. 12 sec.	Approx. 1 min. 14 sec.	Approx. 37 sec.	
		Voice	Approx. 3 min. 3 sec.				
	Restricted (Long)	Normal	Approx. 1 min. 16 sec.	Approx. 19 sec.	Approx. 1 min. 42 sec.	Approx. 52 sec.	Approx. 6
		Video	Approx. 1 min. 40 sec.	Approx. 20 sec.	Approx. 2 min. 5 sec.	Approx. 1 min. 3 sec.	
		Voice	Approx. 5 min. 9 sec.				
	Local playback	Normal	Approx. 2 min. 4 sec.	Approx. 32 sec.	Approx. 2 min. 47 sec.	Approx. 1 min. 25 sec.	Approx. 4
		Video	Approx. 2 min. 43 sec.	Approx. 34 sec.	Approx. 3 min. 25 sec.	Approx. 1 min. 42 sec.	
		Voice	Approx. 8 min. 26 sec.				
miniSD memory card (32M bytes)	Restricted (Short)	Normal	Approx. 44 sec.	Approx. 11 sec.	Approx. 1 min.	Approx. 31 sec.	Approx. 93
		Video	Approx. 59 sec.	Approx. 12 sec.	Approx. 1 min. 13 sec.	Approx. 37 sec.	
		Voice	Approx. 3 min. 3 sec.				
	Restricted (Long)	Normal	Approx. 1 min. 15 sec.	Approx. 19 sec.	Approx. 1 min. 42 sec.	Approx. 52 sec.	Approx. 57
		Video	Approx. 1 min. 40 sec.	Approx. 20 sec.	Approx. 2 min. 5 sec.	Approx. 1 min. 3 sec.	
		Voice	Approx. 5 min. 9 sec.				
	Local playback	Normal	Approx. 2 min. 3 sec.	Approx. 32 sec.	Approx. 2 min. 46 sec.	Approx. 1 min. 25 sec.	Approx. 35
		Video	Approx. 2 min. 43 sec.	Approx. 34 sec.	Approx. 3 min. 24 sec.	Approx. 1 min. 42 sec.	
		Voice	Approx. 8 min. 26 sec.				
	Long time	Normal	Approx. 51 min. 9 sec.	Approx. 13 min. 15 sec.	Approx. 59 min. 59 sec.	Approx. 35 min. 22 sec.	—
		Video	Approx. 59 min. 59 sec.	Approx. 14 min. 8 sec.	Approx. 59 min. 59 sec.	Approx. 42 min. 26 sec.	
		Voice	Approx. 89 min. 59 sec.				

* The shooting time shown above is the approximate time you can shoot with the settings above. Maximum number of movies is the approximate number you can save when shooting with the settings above.

* The shooting time and maximum number of movies that can be stored vary depending on factors such as shooting environment.

Notes on using the camera

■ Notes on shooting

- The color and brightness in still images or movies shot with the built-in camera may differ from those of the actual objects.
- Do not leave the camera under direct sunlight for a long period of time or shoot directly at the sun or an extremely bright lamp. Doing so may lead to discoloration of photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.
- Take care that your fingers, hair or the camera strap do not cover the lens when shooting.
- Shooting images or movies uses a large amount of battery. It is recommended that you turn off the camera immediately after you finish shooting. The screen may look dark or blurred if you shoot with low battery.
- If one of the following events occurs during continuous or movie shooting, the shooting is interrupted and then the respective screen appears. After finishing the screen, the camera screen reappears and the shots taken before receiving a call or alarm notification can be saved. If one of the following events occurs during brightness adjustment, etc., the adjustment is determined and the camera menu reappears. If one of the following events occurs during auto-timer operation, the auto timer stops.
  - A voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication data arrives.
  - The alarm of Alarm clock, Schedule or To Do list is given.
  - An operation of another function is performed.
- Shooting is not interrupted in the following cases:
  - If you receive a mail, MessageR or MessageF while using the camera (including while the shooting screen appears), the shooting continues without the reception results screen regardless of the “Receiving display” settings (p.290).
  - Selecting “Operation preferred” in “Alarm setting” enables you to continue shooting, performing the camera settings or operating the auto timer even when it is time to give an alarm.
- Even while in “Manner mode” or “Public mode (Driving mode)”, a FOMA terminal makes the shutter sound and auto timer tone. Even if “Earphone” is set to “Earp.(Speaker in 20s)” or “Earphone(only)” and an earphone is attached to the terminal, these sounds come out of the speaker.
- When shooting a still image, keep a FOMA terminal steady until it emits the shutter sound and finishes loading the shot image (the shooting checking screen appears). Furthermore, keep the FOMA terminal steady while a message indicating the shot is being processed appears.
- After you display the shooting screen, switch the camera modes or change the camera settings, it may take long for the brightness or color tone to become its best.
- Setting “Auto save set” (pp.201, 207) to “ON” allows you to automatically save the shots to the folder specified in “Select to save” without showing the shooting checking screen.
- The camera is automatically finished if you do not press any keys for three minutes or longer.

■ Copyright Information

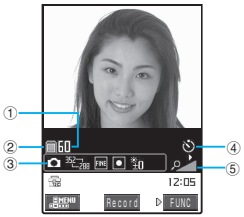
- Take care not to infringe copyrights when you duplicate or edit the images you shot or recorded with a FOMA terminal. Also take care not to infringe portrait rights by using or altering another person’s portrait without his or her permission. It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

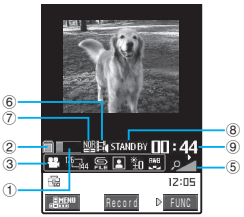
Guide to the shooting screen

The shooting screens show the icons of the camera settings.

Photo mode shooting



Movie mode shooting



Function	Icon	Description	Refer to
① **Remaining storage count/ Memory info**[*1]	123	Shows the number of photos that can be saved in the FOMA terminal (Phone) or miniSD memory card on the Photo mode screen. • White: 11 or more • Yellow: 10 or fewer • Red: No memory available	—
		Shows the amounts of total and available memories on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or miniSD memory card using a bar and colors before shooting a movie. • Blue: 500K bytes or more remaining • Yellow: Less than 500K bytes remaining • Red: No memory available[*2]	—
② **Select to save**		Shows the destination folder.	p.201 p.207
③ **Shooting menu**		Shows the shooting settings. You can access functions to perform the settings by pressing (●) (MENU) or 1 to 6.	p.199
④ **Auto timer**		Shows that the auto timer is set.	p.211
⑤ **Zoom**	to to	Shows the zoom settings. When a zoom arrow (◀ or ▶) appears, you can zoom in or out by pressing ◉ or ◉.	p.211
⑥ **Movie type set**		Shoots movies with video and voice.	p.207
		Shoots movies with video only.	
		Shoots movies with voice only.	
⑦ **Storage setting**	NOR	Shoots movies with “Normal” set for the image quality.	p.207
		Shoots movies with “Fine mode” set for the image quality.	
		Shoots movies with “Long dur. mode” set for the image quality.	
		Shoots movies with “Move mode” set for the image quality.	
⑧ **Shooting status**	●REC	Shows that a movie is being shot.	p.206
	STANDBY	Shows that movie shooting is in standby.	
⑨ **Remaining shooting time**	00:44	Shows the time left (minutes:seconds).	p.206

*1: The icon does not appear if miniSD is selected for the destination and the miniSD memory card is not inserted.
*2: Still images or movies can be shot as long as the “File size” is not set to “Long time” to shoot movies. The shot is saved or overwrites data in the FOMA terminal (Phone)/miniSD memory card.

NOTE

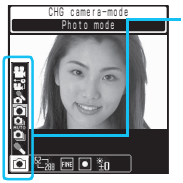
◆ The displayed remaining storage count is an approximate value determined according to the settings activated when shooting. Depending on the situation, the count may not change or shot data may be saved even if 0 is displayed.

Guide to the shooting menu

- Pressing ✉ (MENU) or 1 to 6 shows the shooting menu.
- Press ⓘ (FUNC) and select “Help” or press 0 to show the keys assigned to the shooting menu or the shooting operations.
- The settings available from the shooting menu can also be accessed from the function menu.

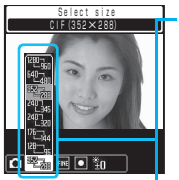
1 Shooting screen▶✉ (MENU)▶Use ⊕ to select any of the following

Neuropointer is also available for selecting items.
Items selectable on the shooting menu vary depending on the camera mode.



CHG camera-mode

- Movie mode · · · · · · · · Shoots a movie. →p.206
- Chance capture · · · · · Shoots a movie retroactively from the point you ended shooting. →p.209
- Picture voice (Photo mode) · · · · · · · · Records voice to add to a still image you shot. →p.210
- Photo mode · · · · · · · · Shoots a still image. →p.201
- A-Continuous mode · · · Continuously shoots still images at a time. →p.203
- M-Continuous mode · · · Continuously shoots still images one by one. →p.203
- Voice mode · · · · · · · · Records voice only. →p.210



Select size (Ex. “Photo mode”)

- SXGA · · · · · · · · · · · Shoots in SXGA (1,280 × 960).
- VGA · · · · · · · · · · · · Shoots in VGA (640 × 480).
- CIF · · · · · · · · · · · · · Shoots in CIF (352 × 288).
- Screen · · · · · · · · · · Shoots in Screen (240 × 345).
- Stand-by · · · · · · · · · Shoots in Stand-by (240 × 320).
- QCIF · · · · · · · · · · · · Shoots in QCIF (176 × 144).
- SubQCIF · · · · · · · · Shoots in SubQCIF (128 × 96).
- JAVA* · · · · · · · · · · Shoots in JAVA (240 × 240).

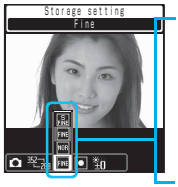
(Default: CIF)

Select size (Ex. “Movie mode”)

- QCIF · · · · · · · · · · · Shoots in QCIF (176 × 144).
- SubQCIF · · · · · · · · Shoots in SubQCIF (128 × 96).

(Default: QCIF)

*: This option appears only when the camera is launched from an i-αppli.



Storage setting (Ex. “Photo mode”)

- Super Fine · · · · · · · · Saves a shot as a large-sized file.
- Fine · · · · · · · · · · · · · Saves a shot as a medium-sized file.
- Normal · · · · · · · · · · · Saves a shot as a small-sized file.

(Default: Fine)

File size (Ex. “Movie mode”)

- Restricted(Short) · · · · Shoots up to 290K bytes as the file size (Suitable for sending to an i-motion-message-compatible terminal.)
- Restricted(Long) · · · · Shoots up to 490K bytes as the file size (Suitable for sending to a terminal supporting large-sized i-motion messages.)
- Local playback · · · · · · Shoots up to 800K bytes as the file size.
- Long time · · · · · · · · · · Shoots for a long time.

(Default: Restricted (Short))

Continued on next page

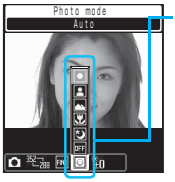
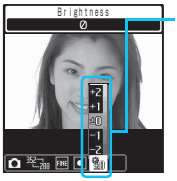


Photo mode
(Ex. “Photo mode”)

- Auto ····· Selects the shooting mode automatically.
- Portrait ····· Suitable for shooting people.
- Scenery ····· Suitable for shooting scenery (including night views).
- Close-up ····· Suitable for close-up shooting. →p.195
- Night mode ····· Suitable for shooting objects in poorly lit places.
- OFF ····· Does not use any effects for shooting.

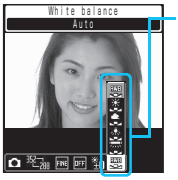
(Default: Auto (Photo mode, Continuous mode)/Portrait (Movie mode))



Brightness

-2/-1/±0/+1/+2 ····· Sets the brightness of the shot (-2/-1/±0/+1/+2).

(When the camera launches: ±0)



White balance

- Auto ····· Automatically corrects the color.
- Fine ····· Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
- Cloudy ····· Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
- Light bulb ····· Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
- Fluorescent lamp ···· Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.

(Default: Auto)

NOTE

◆ You can create desktop icons of “Movie mode”, “Photo mode” and “Voice mode” from the functions menu accessed by selecting MENU ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ “Camera”. The “Photo mode” desktop icon is pasted at the time of purchase.
Desktop icons →p.158

<Photo mode>

Shooting Still Images

Use the built-in camera to shoot still images.

- You can also save the shots directly in the miniSD memory card.
- You can also specify the folder to store images. You can also set a FOMA terminal to save shot images automatically in the specified folder after shooting.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶“ ”▶●

The “Photo mode” screen appears.
Pressing [ ] ( ) for 1 second or longer on the standby screen also launches the “Photo mode” screen.



Photo mode

Function menu➡p.201

2 Point the camera at an object▶● or [( )]

The image is shot. The incoming call lamp lights in red for approx. 3 seconds. The “Image checking” screen appears.



Image checking

Function menu➡p.202

3 ●

Saves the image to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.203).

NOTE

- ◆Following the steps below also displays the Photo mode screen:
  - • [MENU]▶ (LifeKit)▶“Camera”▶“Photo mode”
- ◆ Some images may go grainy, depending on the sizes. When you set “Display size” to “Fit in display” and shoot an image in QCIF (176 × 144) or in SubQCIF (128 × 96), the image appears enlarged and may look grainy on the image checking screen.
- ◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card while an image is being saved to the miniSD memory card. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the shots.
- ◆Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
- ◆ The incoming call lamp flashes in green while data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.

Function menu (Photo mode screen/Continuous mode screen)

Front camera, Rear camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera.
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.
Select size	Performs the settings as you do with the shooting menu (p.199).
Storage setting	
Light	Turns on/off the light. The light cannot be turned on/off when using the front camera.
Interval/Number[*1]	Sets the shooting interval and the number of shots you want to take on the continuous mode. →p.204
Image quality	
• **Photo mode**	“Selecting the mode suitable for shooting”→p.208
• **Brightness**	**▶Use ◎ to adjust the brightness ▶●** Selects the brightness among 5 levels from “−2 to ±0 to +2”. The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. “±0” set as default when the camera launches.
• **White balance**	“Setting the white balance”→p.208 The white balance can be specified only when Photo mode is “OFF”.
• **Color mode set**	“Setting the effects on the photographed images”→p.208
• **Image tuning**	“Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images”→p.209 Cannot be changed when using the front camera.
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. “Sound 1” is selected at the time of purchase.
Auto timer	Sets the auto timer. →p.211
Select frame[*2]	Sets a frame for the image. →p.205
Auto save set	Turns on/off the auto save set.
• **ON**	Does not display the image checking screen when you shoot an image. The image is automatically saved to the destination folder specified in “Select to save”.
• **OFF** (default)	Displays the image checking screen when you shoot an image.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot will be saved.
• **Phone** (default)	**▶Select a folder to save the image** The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	**▶Select a folder to save the image**

Continued on next page

File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96).
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an image to the display size.
Memory info	Shows the sizes of data stored and available spaces on the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card.
Help	Shows the shooting guide.

*1: The option cannot be set in Photo mode.
*2: The option cannot be set in Continuous mode.

NOTE

<Shutter sound>
◆A FOMA terminal does not emit the shutter sound in Manner mode. However, setting "Original" for "Manner mode set" and "ON" for "VM tone" emits the sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody as the shutter sound and cannot adjust the shutter sound volume.

<Select to save>
◆Selecting miniSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.
◆You cannot select miniSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

<File restriction>
◆You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

● Setting the image quality for still images

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)/ Continuous mode screen (p.203) ▶(i) (FUNC)▶"Storage setting"▶ Select "Super Fine", "Fine" or "Normal"

The mode can also be set from the shooting menu. →p.199
Data sizes caused by the combinations of "Storage setting" and "Select size" settings are listed below. Higher the image quality (in order of Super Fine, Fine and Normal), larger the data size becomes.
For saved images, add up to 5K bytes to the sizes below.

Storage setting / Select size	Super Fine	Fine (default)	Normal
SXGA (1,280 × 960)	Approx. 600K bytes max.	Approx. 500K bytes max.	Approx. 305K bytes max.
VGA (640 × 480)	Approx. 500K bytes max.	Approx. 100K bytes max.	Approx. 55K bytes max.
CIF (352 × 288)	Approx. 500K bytes max.	Approx. 55K bytes max.	Approx. 40K bytes max.
Screen (240 × 345) Stand-by (240 × 320)	Approx. 100K bytes max.	Approx. 55K bytes max.	Approx. 40K bytes max.
QCIF (176 × 144) SubQCIF (128 × 96)	Approx. 100K bytes max.	Approx. 20K bytes max.	9,000 bytes max.

Function menu (Image checking screen)

Save	Saves the image to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.201).
Mirror save	Saves the mirrored image (inverted left-right) to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Compose message	"Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted" →p.206
Edit image	▶**Edit the image** Adds a frame or effect to the image. "Editing Images"→p.344 The image cannot be edited if the size is larger than VGA (640 × 480).
Set as display	■**To set to screens such as standby, dialing or receiving** ▶**Select a screen** ■**To set to videophone-related screens (except V.phone dialing and V.phone calling)** ▶**Select a screen**▶**Check the image**▶●▶**"YES"** Sets the image for the standby screen, etc. The image cannot be set if the size is SXGA (1,280 × 960) or if the size is VGA (640 × 480) or CIF (352 × 288) and the Storage setting is Super Fine.
Change frame	"Changing a frame"→p.205
Mirror display	Changes the display to the mirror display. If the mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" appears.

Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96).
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an image to the display size.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot will be saved.
• **Phone** (default)	▶**Select a folder to save the image** The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	▶**Select a folder to save the image**
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes the shot image and returns to the Photo mode screen.

NOTE

◆Pressing ✉ (MAIL) on the image checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted.

<Edit image>

◆Selecting “Edit image” changes the display to the Normal display.

◆“Compose message” and “Save” are available after you edit an image.

<Set as display>

◆Selecting “miniSD” in “Select to save” saves images to the Camera folder under My picture (you cannot save them to the miniSD memory card).

<Mirror display>

◆An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting “Normal display” means what you see is what you get.

<Select to save>

◆Selecting miniSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.

◆You cannot select miniSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

<File restriction>

◆You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

Shooting continuously <Continuous mode>

Default setting	**Select size: CIF(352 × 288)** **Shot interval: 0.5 seconds (Auto continuous mode)** **Shot number: 4**

You can shoot a series of up to 20 continuous still images. The continuous mode is categorized into two types: Auto and Manual.

- Auto continuous mode allows you to specify the number of shots and the interval. Once you release the shutter, the FOMA terminal automatically shoots the remaining number of shots at the specified interval.
- Manual continuous mode allows you to shoot up to the specified number, one shot each time you release the shutter.
- The following image sizes are available: CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), SubQCIF (128 × 96)
- You can enjoy continuous image shots as an animation added to the original animation.
- Folding a FOMA terminal during continuous shooting terminates the shooting.

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)▶✉(MENU) or 1▶(AUTO) or (📷)

The “Continuous mode” screen appears.



Continuous mode (Ex. manual)

Function menu➡p.201

2 Point the camera at an object▶● or ▼(📷)

After shooting still images, the “Continuous shooting checking” screen appears showing four of the shots at the same time.



Continuous shooting checking

Function menu➡p.204

■ To stop continuous shooting

Auto continuous mode: ▶☎▶“NO”
Manual continuous mode: ▶CLR (or ☎▶“NO”)
The shooting is finished and the continuous shooting checking screen appears.

3 ● (FUNC)▶Select the saving method (Store selection, Store all or Store all&anime)

“Function menu (Continuous shooting checking screen)”→p.204
The images are saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.201).
If you select “Store selection” and finish saving images, the “Continuous shooting checking” screen appears with the saved images removed after the image saving is complete.

■ To select an image to save

▶Use ✣ to select an image and press ●
The ☑ icon (check mark) appears for the selected image.
Repeat the step to select images.
To deselect the image, select the image again.

Continued on next page

■ **To check images in detail**

▶Use ⊕ to select an image▶✉ (Detail)
Use ⊕ to change the image to check.
To return to the list, press CLR.
To save the image displayed in detail, press ●.
The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save" (p.201).



Detail checking

Function menu➡p.205

NOTE

◆If you receive a call during continuous shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the Continuous shooting checking screen shows the images you shot until the interruption.
◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card while an image is being saved to the miniSD memory card. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card to malfunction.
◆If the battery is low, you may be unable to save shots.
◆Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
◆In Manual continuous mode, the incoming call lamp lights in red each time you shoot. The lamp lights in red in Auto continuous mode. It flashes in green while data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.
◆When you automatically shoot a strong light or moving object, the interval may become longer than the specified one.
◆Keep a FOMA terminal steady until the shooting checking screen appears or while a message indicating that the shot is being processed appears.

● Setting the shooting interval and number of shots

● "Shot interval 0.5 seconds and Shot number 5" are the default settings for Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144) and SubQCIF (128 × 96).

1 Continuous mode screen (p.203)▶ (FUNC)▶"Interval/Number"▶ Select any item

Shot interval	Selects a shooting interval from "0.5 seconds", "1.0 seconds" and "2.0 seconds". The interval cannot be set for Manual continuous mode.
Shot number	**▶Enter the number of shots (2-digit)** Sets the number of shots between "05 and 20" (5 to 20 shots)*. Entering a 2-digit number automatically sets the number of shots. To set the currently displayed number of shots, press ●.

*: "05 to 10" (5 to 10 shots) appears for Screen (240 × 345) or Stand-by (240 × 320)

2 After changing the settings, press CLR▶CLR

NOTE

<Shot number>
◆When CIF (352 × 288) is set as the image size, the number of shots is always set to 4.
◆Changing the image size from CIF (352 × 288) to another changes the number of shots to 5.
◆Changing the image size to Screen (240 × 345) or Stand-by (240 × 320) changes the number of shots set to 11 or more to 10.

Function menu (Continuous shooting checking screen)

Store selection	Saves the selected still images. **▶"Save" or "Mirror save"** The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Store all	Saves all the still images. **▶"Save" or "Mirror save"** The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Store all&anime	Saves all the still images as an original animation. **▶"Save" or "Mirror save"▶Select No. for original animation** The images are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Select this	Attaches ☑ to the selected still image to show that it is selected.
Select all	Attaches ☑ to all the still images to show that they are selected.
Release this	Deselects the selected still image. ☑ disappears.
Release all	Deselects all the still images. ☑ disappears.
Mirror display	Changes the display to the mirror. If the mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" appears.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the shot will be saved.
• **Phone** (default)	**▶Select a folder to save the image** The Camera folder under My picture is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	**▶Select a folder to save the image**
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the selected still image.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Restriction all	Sets file restrictions on all the still images.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the images to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received them.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the images to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received them.

Cancel	Deletes all the shot images and returns to the Continuous mode screen.

NOTE

<Store all&anime>

◆"Store all&anime" cannot be selected if only one image has been shot or one or more shot images have already been saved.

◆Even if "miniSD" is selected in "Select to save", images are saved to the Camera folder under My picture.

<Mirror display>

◆An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

<Select to save>

◆Selecting miniSD creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.

◆You cannot select miniSD if the number of files stored in the selected folder has already reached the maximum.

<File restriction/Restriction all>

◆You can change the file restriction setting for a shot image after it is saved.

Function menu (Detail checking screen)

Save	Saves the displayed still image.
Mirror save	Inverts the left and right of the displayed image to save.
Compose message	"Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted" →p.206
Mirror display	Changes the display to the mirror. If the mirror display is currently selected, "Normal display" appears.
Display size	Specifies the display settings for an image smaller than Stand-by (240 × 320). The display size cannot be specified if the image size is neither QCIF (176 × 144) nor SubQCIF (128 × 96).
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays an image in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges an image to the display size.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

NOTE

◆Pressing ✉ (MAIL) on the Detail checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted.

<Mirror display>

◆An image shot with the front camera appears mirrored (inverted left-right). Selecting "Normal display" means what you see is what you get.

Shooting framed images

<Framed photography>

Framed shooting is possible when the image size is CIF (352 × 288), Screen (240 × 345), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), SubQCIF (128 × 96).

- Pre-installed frames→p.484
- You can download frames from sites.

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)▶ ☰ (FUNC)▶"Select frame"▶Select a frame

■ **To cancel framed photography**

▶"OFF"

2 Point the camera at an object▶ ● or ▼ (📷)

The "frame shooting check" screen appears.

3 Check and save the still image as you do in "Shooting Still Images" (p.201)

You can change the frame before saving the still image.→p.205

NOTE

◆Pressing ✉ (Play) on the Select frame screen allows you to check the selected frame.

◆Framed images shot with the front camera appear mirrored (inverted left-right). They are automatically saved in the normal display. When the images are converted from mirrored to normal, the frames are also inverted left-right.

◆If the sizes of an image and frame are the same, the image can be framed regardless of portrait or landscape.

- If a portrait frame is selected for a landscape image, the frame is rotated 90° (degrees) counterclockwise.
- If a landscape frame is selected for a portrait image, the frame is rotated 90° (degrees) clockwise.

◆Exiting the camera releases the frame.

● Changing a frame

You can change the frame before saving a still image.

- You cannot remove a frame.

1 Frame shooting check screen▶☰ (FUNC)▶"Change frame"▶Select a frame

Use ⊙ to change the frame.



Frame shooting check

Continued on next page

2 Check the framed image▶●

The screen returns to the frame shooting check.

■ **To rotate a frame 180°**
▶✉(Rotate)

■ **To cancel the selected frame**
▶i (FUNC)▶“Cancel”

● Composing an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted

If a still image cannot be attached/inserted, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be attached/inserted.

<Example: If selecting “Compose message” on the image checking screen>

1 Image checking screen (p.201)▶i (FUNC)▶“Compose message”▶Select any item

Attach image[*1] (i-mode mail)	
• **Attach mail**	Reduces only the file size to attach the image.
• **QVGA scale down**	Reduces the image size and file size without changing the aspect ratio to attach the resized image.
Insert image[*2] (Deco-mail)	
• **Insert mail**[*3]	Reduces only the file size to insert the image.
• **SubQCIF scale down**	Reduces the image size and file size without changing the aspect ratio to insert the resized image.

*1: Shooting an image of Stand-by (240 × 320) or smaller does not display the screen for selecting “Attach mail” or “QVGA scale down”.
*2: Shooting an image of SubQCIF (128 × 96) does not display the screen for selecting “Insert mail” or “SubQCIF scale down”.
*3: This option is unavailable for image sizes other than QCIF (176 × 144).

2 Compose an i-mode/Deco-mail message

Creating and sending an i-mode mail→p.257
Composing and sending a Deco-mail→p.261

NOTE

◆Pressing ✉ (MAIL) on the image checking screen also allows you to attach or insert a shot image to an i-mode mail or Deco-mail.
◆An image whose size exceeds 10,000 bytes is called large image. A large image sent to an i-mode terminal is resized in the i-shot center so that it can be received by the i-mode terminal.
◆If you attach a large image whose size is 10,001 to 500K bytes, the image is saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.201). Selecting “miniSD” saves the image to the Camera folder under My picture (you cannot save the image to the miniSD memory card).
◆You cannot compose an i-mode message when there are already 20 draft messages stored.

<Movie mode>

Shooting Movies

Use the built-in camera to shoot movies with voice.

- Folding a FOMA terminal during movie shooting terminates the shooting.
- If you set “File size” to “Long time” and shoot a movie, the movie checking screen does not appear, but the movie is saved directly to the miniSD memory card and then the shooting ends.
- The shooting time varies depending on the conditions such as an object.
- You cannot shoot movies while talking on the phone.

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)▶✉ (MENU) or 1▶“ ”

The desktop icon is also available for launching the “Movie mode” screen.→p.158



Movie mode
Function menu➡p.207

2 Point the camera at an object▶● or ▼ (📷)



The shooting starts. During shooting, the incoming call lamp flashes in red (it turns green when “File size” is set to “Long time”).
You can zoom in/out during shooting.
The screen indicates the approximate time left to shoot.

■ **If the file size reaches the limit specified in File size**
▶●
The movie checking screen appears.

3 ● or ▼ (📷)

The shooting terminates and the “Movie checking” screen appears.



Movie checking
Function menu➡p.209

■ **To play the movie you shot**
▶i (FUNC)▶“Play”

■ **To reshoot a movie**
▶CLR▶“YES”

4 ●

The movie is saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.207).

NOTE

◆Following the steps below also displays the Movie mode screen:
• ✉▶LifeKit (LifeKit)▶“Camera”▶“Movie mode”

◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card while a movie is being saved to the miniSD memory card. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal or miniSD memory card to malfunction.
◆If you receive a call during movie shooting, the shooting terminates. After you finish talking, the “Movie checking” screen shows the movie you shot until the interruption.
◆If the battery is low, you may be unable to save the movies.
◆Turning off a FOMA terminal or removing the battery pack during the file saving process may save incomplete files.
◆The incoming call lamp flashes in green while data is being saved to the miniSD memory card.
◆If you press a key to perform a function such as zoom in/out during shooting, the sound may be recorded.

Function menu (Movie mode screen)

Front camera, Rear camera	Switches between the front camera and the rear camera.
CHG camera-mode	Changes the camera mode.
Select size	Performs the settings as you do with the shooting menu (p.199).
File size	
Storage setting	Sets the image quality and duration for movie shooting.
• **Normal** (default)	Shoots a movie with the standard quality and duration.
• **Fine mode**	Shoots a movie with higher quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
• **Long dur. mode**	Shoots a long movie. The quality is not as high as for Normal.
• **Move mode**	Shoots a movie when the object is moving around. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
Light	Turns on/off the light. The light cannot be turned on/off when using the front camera.
Image quality	
• **Photo mode**	“Selecting the mode suitable for shooting”→p.208
• **Brightness**	▶**Use ⊙ to adjust the brightness** ▶● Selects the brightness among 5 levels from “-2 to ±0 to +2”. The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any keys for two seconds. “±0” is set as default when the camera launches.
• **White balance**	“Setting the white balance”→p.208
• **Color mode set**	“Setting the effects on the photographed images”→p.208
• **Image tuning**	“Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images”→p.209 Cannot be changed when using the front camera.
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. “Sound 1” is selected at the time of purchase.
Auto timer	Sets the auto timer.→p.211
Movie type set	
• **Normal** (when the camera launches)	Records video and voice.
• **Video**	Shoots a movie without voice.
• **Voice**	Records a voice without movies.
Auto save set	Turns on/off the auto save set.
• **ON**	Does not display the movie checking screen when shooting a movie. The movie is automatically saved to the folder specified in “Select to save”.
• **OFF** (default)	Displays the movie checking screen when shooting a movie.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the movie will be saved.
• **Normal or Video**	Specifies the folder where movies with video are saved.
• **Phone** (default)	▶**Select a folder to save the movie** The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	▶**Select a folder to save the movie** Saves the movie to the SD Video folder in the miniSD memory card.
• **Voice**	Specifies the folder where movies with voice only are saved.
• **Phone** (default)	▶**Select a folder to save the movie** The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	▶**Select a folder to save the movie** Saves the movie to the Multimedia folder in the miniSD memory card.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Display size	Sets the display mode for movies.
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays a movie in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges a movie to the display size.
Memory info	Shows the sizes of data stored and available spaces on the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card.
Help	Shows the shooting guide.
Face stamp	▶**Select a face stamp** Places a stamp that follows facial movements on the Movie mode screen. Face stamps can be selected only if the image size is QCIF (176 × 144).

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Shutter sound>

◆A FOMA terminal does not emit the shutter sound in Manner mode. However, setting “Original” for “Manner mode set” and “ON” for “VM tone” emits the sound. You cannot set a downloaded melody as the shutter sound and cannot adjust the shutter sound volume.

<Movie type set>

◆The movie type cannot be set in Voice mode.

<Auto save set/File restriction>

◆The auto save or file restriction cannot be set if the file size is set to “Long time”.

<Select to save>

◆Selecting “miniSD” creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.

◆You cannot set “miniSD” if:

- The number of files in the specified folder has reached the maximum (for “Normal or Video”).
- The number of files in the specified folder other than the SD Multimedia folder has reached the maximum (for “Voice”).

<File restriction>

◆You can change the file restriction setting for a shot movie after it is saved.

Setting the white balance

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)/ Continuous mode screen (p.203)/ Movie mode screen (p.206)▶ (FUNC)▶“Image quality”▶ “White balance”▶Select any item

The white balance can also be set from the shooting menu. →p.199

Auto (default)	Automatically corrects the color balance in the entire image under the typical shooting conditions. The color intensity may be slightly reduced if the colors in the image are distorted.
Fine	Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day.
Cloudy	Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade.
Light bulb	Suitable for shooting under incandescent light.
Fluorescent lamp	Suitable for shooting under fluorescent light.

NOTE

◆If the camera is set to the Photo mode, Auto continuous mode, Manual continuous mode or Picture voice and the Photo mode is not “OFF”, the white balance is automatically set to “Auto”.

◆Selecting “Fine”, “Cloudy”, “Light bulb” or “Fluorescent” may make the image more vivid under the specified conditions than Auto.

◆The settings are retained after you exit the camera, and applied to videophone shooting. →p.91

Setting the effects on the photographed images

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)/ Continuous mode screen (p.203)/ Movie mode screen (p.206)▶ (FUNC)▶“Image quality”▶ “Color mode set”▶Select any item

Normal (when the camera launches)	Shoots with the typical color settings.
Sepia	Shoots a sepia-tone image.
Monochrome	Shoots a black-and-white (monochrome) image.

Selecting the mode suitable for shooting

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)/ Continuous mode screen (p.203)/ Movie mode screen (p.206)▶ (FUNC)▶“Image quality”▶ “Photo mode”▶Select any item

The mode can also be set from the shooting menu. →p.199

Auto*1 (default: Photo mode/Continuous mode)	Selects the shooting mode automatically.
Portrait (default: Movie mode)	Suitable for shooting people.
Scenery	Suitable for shooting scenery (including night views).
Close-up	Suitable for close-up shooting. →p.195
Night mode*1*2	Suitable for shooting objects in a dark place.
OFF*1	Does not use any effects for shooting.

*1: The options cannot be set in Movie mode.
*2: The option cannot be set in Continuous mode.

NOTE

◆Only Portrait, Night mode and OFF can be selected for the front camera to shoot a still image. Portrait is always selected for shooting in Continuous mode or Movie mode with the front camera.

◆Auto, Scenery, or Close-up mode is restored to Portrait when the camera is switched to the front.

◆Auto, Night mode (in Photo mode only) or OFF is restored to Portrait when the Photo mode or Continuous mode is switched to Movie mode or Chance capture.

◆Night mode is restored to Auto when Photo mode is switched to Continuous mode.

◆If camera shake occurs while shooting in Night mode, set another mode.

● Avoiding the flicker on the photographed images

Setting this function according to the frequency of power supply in the area you use a FOMA terminal may decrease flicker on the screen that is caused by fluorescent light, etc.

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)/ Continuous mode screen (p.203)/ Movie mode screen (p.206)▶ (FUNC)▶"Image quality"▶ "Image tuning"▶Select any item

Auto (default)	Decreases flicker automatically.
Mode 1(50Hz)	Mode for shooting in 50Hz-frequency areas.
Mode 2(60Hz)	Mode for shooting in 60Hz-frequency areas.

NOTE

◆The flicker may not fully disappear depending on the ambient brightness or the colors of objects.

Function menu (Movie checking screen)

Play	Plays the movie you shot.
Save	Saves the movie to the folder specified in "Select to save".
Compose message	▶**Compose an i-mode message** Composes an i-mode message with the movie attached. "Creating and Sending i-mode Mail" →p.257
Set as stand-by	Sets the movie as the standby screen.
Display size	Sets the display mode for movies.
• **Actual size** (default)	Displays a movie in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges a movie to the display size.
Edit title	Edits a movie title.
Select to save	Specifies the folder where the movie will be saved.
• **Normal or Video**	Specifies the folder where movies with video will be saved.
• **Phone** (default)	▶**Select a folder to save the movie** The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	▶**Select a folder to save the movie** Saves the movie to the SD Video folder in the miniSD memory card.
• **Voice**	Specifies the folder where movies with voice only will be saved.
• **Phone** (default)	▶**Select a folder to save the movie** The Camera folder under i-motion is selected at the time of purchase.
• **miniSD**	▶**Select a folder to save the movie** Saves the movie to the Multimedia folder in the miniSD memory card.
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Cancel	Deletes the movie to reshoot new one.

NOTE

<Compose message>

◆Movies to send are saved to the folder specified in "Select to save". Selecting "miniSD" saves the movies to the Camera folder under i-motion in the FOMA terminal (Phone) (you cannot save them to the miniSD memory card).

◆Pressing (MAIL) on the Movie checking screen also allows you to compose an i-mode message with the movie attached.

<Set as stand-by>

◆The movie to set for the standby screen is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save". Selecting "miniSD" saves the movie to the Camera folder under i-motion in the FOMA terminal (Phone) (you cannot save it to the miniSD memory card).

◆A movie with only voice cannot be set.

<Select to save>

◆Selecting "miniSD" creates a folder automatically if there are no folders on the miniSD memory card.

◆You cannot set "miniSD" if:

- The number of files in the specified folder has reached the maximum (for "Normal or Video").
- The number of files in the specified folder other than the SD Multimedia folder has reached the maximum (for "Voice").

Capturing important scenes

<Chance capture>

Use the chance capture function if you do not want to miss important moments in shooting a movie.

● A movie you shot for the specified shooting time (roughly 45 seconds by default) before ending the shooting is saved. The part shot before the shooting time is not saved.

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)▶ (MENU) or 1▶"Chance capture"

Continued on next page

2 Point the camera at an object▶● or ▼(📷)



The shooting starts.
You can zoom in/out during shooting.
After the available shooting time runs out, the displayed remaining time turns to the “00:00” flash.

3 ● or ▼(📷)

The shooting terminates.

4 Check and save the movie as you do in “Shooting Movies” (p.206)

NOTE

◆You can also activate the Chance capture function by selecting ⓘ (FUNC)▶“CHG camera-mode”▶“Chance capture” on the “Photo mode” screen.
◆If shooting finished before the available shooting time reaches, the shot is saved from the beginning to the end as similar to the “Movie mode”.

Adding voice to still images

<Picture voice>

Add voice to a still image of QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96) to make a movie.

<Example: To shoot a still image and add voice>

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)▶✉(MENU) or 1▶“🖌”

2 Point the camera at an object▶● or ▼(📷)

A still image is shot.
The “Recording start” screen appears.
You can set the file size by selecting “File size” from the function menu before recording voice.



Recording start

Function menu➡p.210

3 ● or ▼(📷)

The recording starts.
The screen indicates the approximate seconds left to record.



4 ● or ▼(📷)

The recording terminates.

5 Check and save the created picture voice as you do in “Shooting Movies” (p.206)

NOTE

◆You can also create a picture voice by selecting ⓘ (FUNC)▶“CHG camera-mode”▶“Picture voice”▶“Photo mode” on the Photo mode screen.
◆If you want to create a picture voice using an existing still image, follow Step 3 and later after following the steps below:
On the Photo mode screen, press ⓘ (FUNC)▶“CHG camera-mode”▶“Picture voice”▶“My picture”▶Select a folder▶Select an image

Function menu (Recording start screen)

File size	Sets the file size for recording.
• **Restricted (Short)** (when the camera launches)	You can record up to 290K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to an i-mode message as a typical movie.
• **Restricted (Long)**	You can record up to 490K bytes. Select this option to attach the data to an i-mode message as a large-sized movie.
Shutter sound	Sets the shutter sound. “Sound 1” is selected at the time of purchase.

Using Voice mode

●A voice can be recorded without movies.

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)▶✉(MENU) or 1▶“🖌”

The desktop icon is also available for launching the “Recording start” screen.→p.158

2 ● or ▼(📷)

The recording starts.
The screen indicates the approximate seconds left to record.

3 ● or ▼(📷)

After the recording is finished, the “recording check” screen appears.

4 ●

The movie is saved to the folder specified in “Select to save” (p.207).

NOTE

◆Setting “File size” to “Long time” allows you to record up to about 90 minutes.
◆You can also record in Voice mode by selecting ⓘ (FUNC)▶“Movie type set”▶“Voice” on the “Movie mode” screen.
◆Voice that can be recorded in Voice mode is MP4 (Mobile MP4) format.

Changing the Shooting Settings

Perform the camera settings such as the zoom, auto timer or image quality.

Using the zoom

Using the zoom allows you to adjust an image size so that an image will be shot in your desired size.

- You cannot adjust the zoom if you are using the rear camera and the image size is SXGA (1,280 × 960).
- You cannot adjust the zoom if you are using the front camera and the image size is CIF (352 × 288) or JAVA (240 × 240).
- You can zoom in/out while shooting a movie.
- The zoom is digital.

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)/ Continuous mode screen (p.203)/ Movie mode screen (p.206)▶Use ⊙ to adjust the zoom

⊙: Zooms in by one step each time you press the key.
⊙: Zooms out by one step to 1× (default) each time you press the key.
Press and hold ⊙ or ⊙ to zoom in/out continuously.

Still image/ Movie	Rear/ Front	Size	Zoom	Maximum
Still image	Rear camera	SXGA (1,280 × 960)	—	—
		VGA (640 × 480)	16 steps	Approx. 2×
		CIF (352 × 288)		Approx. 3.3×
		Screen (240 × 345)		Approx. 2.7×
		Stand-by (240 × 320)		Approx. 3×
		JAVA (240 × 240)*		Approx. 4×
		QCIF (176 × 144)		Approx. 6.7×
		SubQCIF (128 × 96)		Approx. 10×
Movie	Rear camera	QCIF (176 × 144)	16 steps	Approx. 6.7×
		SubQCIF (128 × 96)		Approx. 10×
Still image/ Movie	Front camera	CIF (352 × 288)	—	—
		JAVA (240 × 240)*	—	—
		QCIF (176 × 144)	2 steps	Approx. 2×
		SubQCIF (128 × 96)		

*: This option appears only when the camera is launched from an i-αppli.

NOTE

- "1×" is set when the camera launches. Changing the image size or camera mode also sets the zoom to "1×".
- Changing the zoom may slightly change the image quality.

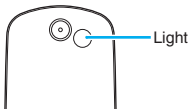
Turning on the light

When it is not so bright (e.g. in a room), turning on the light of a FOMA terminal brightens the object.

- If you do not shoot for 30 seconds or so after turning on the light, it is automatically turned off.

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)/ Continuous mode screen (p.203)/ Movie mode screen (p.206)▶▲ (☼)

To turn off the light, press ▲ (☼).



NOTE

- The light lights up for up to 5 minutes during movie shooting.
- You cannot turn on the light when recording a voice without movies or using the front camera.
- This function is only supplementary. You cannot always get enough light.

Using the auto timer

Setting the auto timer allows you to shoot images without holding a FOMA terminal (e.g. to shoot people including yourself or to avoid the camera shake).

- The auto timer is available for Photo mode, Auto Continuous mode and Movie mode. It is unavailable for Manual Continuous mode.
- The auto timer is reset to "OFF" each time you finish shooting.

1 Photo mode screen (p.201)/Continuous mode screen (p.203)/ Movie mode screen (p.206)▶● (FUNC)▶"Auto timer"▶"ON"▶Enter a 2-digit number for the auto timer



Enter a 2-digit number between "01" and "15" for the auto timer.
Entering a 2-digit number automatically sets the auto timer. To set the currently displayed time, press ●.
"10 seconds" is set at the time of purchase.

If the auto timer is set

The "" icon appears on the screen showing that the auto timer is set.



Pressing ● or ▼ (📷) sounds the auto timer tone and then the auto timer starts running.
The incoming call lamp and ✉, ⓘ and "" flash.
The countdown tone sounds approximately 5 seconds before the shooting. The incoming call lamp, ✉ and ⓘ flash rapidly.
During the auto timer countdown, you can shoot manually by pressing ● or ▼ (📷).

■ To cancel the auto timer settings

▶ⓘ (FUNC)▶"Auto timer"▶"OFF"

■ To stop the timer while it is running

▶✉ (Quit) or CLR

NOTE

◆Exiting the camera sets the auto timer to "OFF".

<Bar code reader>

Using the Bar Code Reader

Use the rear camera to scan JAN codes or QR codes. The data scanned especially from QR codes can be used for displaying/copying the text, using the functions of Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, SIP To, i-αppli To, or adding to bookmark/phonebook. The FOMA terminal can also scan image or melody data to play or save.

- A FOMA terminal can save up to 5 scanned data.
- Hold a FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not shake during scanning. You can reduce FOMA terminal shaking by putting your hand under the FOMA terminal or placing it on a magazine.
- When scanning a bar code, keep about 6 to 8 cm between the rear camera and the code.

■ JAN codes and QR codes

- JAN code



JAN code is a series of vertical lines (bars) with various widths and spaces representing numbers. A FOMA terminal can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

* Scanning the JAN code above displays "4942857113068".

- QR code



QR code is a type of two-dimensional symbology expressing numbers, alphabets, kanji, kana or pictographs both horizontally and vertically. Some QR codes express images or melodies. Some data are divided into several QR codes.

* Scanning the QR code above displays "株式会社NTT ドコモ" (NTT DoCoMo, Inc.).

Scanning codes

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶**"Bar code reader"**

The "Bar code reader" screen appears.



Bar code reader

2 "New"▶Switch to (macro lens)

"Lens switch"→p.195

3 Position a JAN code or QR code inside the recognition field



The area surrounded by "⌜, ⌝, ⌞, ⌟" at the corners of the screen is the recognition field.
Focus the JAN code or QR code so that the entire code appears as large as possible inside the recognition field.

■ To adjust the zoom

ⓒ: Returns to default.
ⓒ: Zooms in.

■ To turn on the light

▶✉ (ON) or ▲ (☼)

To turn off the light, press ✉ (OFF) or ▲ (☼).

4 ●▶Check the scanned data

It may take long to scan some data.

■ To cancel scanning

▶●▶●

■ To scan data divided into several QR codes

▶●▶Repeat Steps 3 to 4

A FOMA terminal can scan up to 16 QR codes expressing one data.

■ To discard scanned data

▶CLR▶"YES"

5 ⓘ (FUNC)▶"Store"▶"YES"▶●

The scanned data is saved.

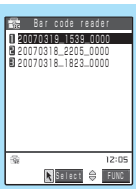
NOTE

◆Codes other than JAN or QR cannot be scanned. Some bar codes may not be scanned, depending on the size.
◆A FOMA terminal may fail to scan a code, depending on the scratch, stain, damage, print quality or the reflection of light.
◆You can also launch the Bar code reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered into the screen. However, you cannot display the already stored data or save the scanned data here. Image or melody data cannot be scanned correctly on the screen. Characters that cannot be entered on the text editing screen are replaced with space (blank) characters.
◆A data cannot be stored if it is a JPEG image whose width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, a JPEG image whose total dots exceed 2,304 × 1,728, a GIF image whose width or height exceeds 640 dots, a GIF image whose total dots exceed 640 × 480, or an image whose file size exceeds 100K bytes.
◆You cannot store a progressive JPEG image whose width or height exceeds 640 dots or whose total dots exceed 640 × 480.
Progressive JPEG images→p.234
◆Scanned data cannot be stored on the miniSD memory card.
◆On the "Bar code reader" screen, selecting ▶ (FUNC)▶"Add desktop icon" adds the desktop icon for this function.

Using the scanned data

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶**"Bar code reader"▶"Reading data list"**

The "Reading data list" screen appears.



Reading data list

Function menu➡p.213

2 Select a scanned data

The "Reading data detail" screen appears.



Reading data detail

Function menu➡p.213

3 Select any of the displayed items

"Add to phonebook" : Adds the name, reading, phone number, SIP address, mail address, URL, birthday, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook→pp.119, 121

"Compose message": Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered →p.257
"Add bookmark" : Bookmarks the URL and title→p.230
"Activate i-αppli" : Launches the specified i-αppli→p.314
Melody icon : Plays the melody→p.359
Phone number : Makes a call using the Phone To (AV Phone To) function→p.238
SIP address : Makes a call using the SIP To function→p.239
Mail address : Composes an i-mode message using the Mail To function→p.239
URL : Accesses the site using the Web To function→p.239

NOTE

◆The title of scanned data will be:
• Title: yyyymmdd_hhmm_xxxx (Year/month/day_time_4-digit number)
If two or more data are stored at the same time, the 4-digit number is incremented in the order of storage.

Function menu (Reading data list screen)

Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of the selected data. A title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Result	Displays the Reading data detail screen.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the data.

Function menu (Reading data detail screen)

Store	Saves the scanned data.
Display list	Displays the Reading data list screen. If the displayed data is not stored yet, a message asking whether to delete the data appears.
Internet	Accesses the site if a URL is selected. "Web To function"→p.239
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message entered in the scanned data if "Compose message" is selected. Composes an i-mode message with a mail address entered if the mail address is selected. "Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.257
Dialing	Calls the phone number if it is selected. "Phone To function"→p.238

Continued on next page

VoIPphone dial	Makes a VoIP call to the SIP address if it is selected. “SIP To function”→p.239
Add to phonebook	Adds the name, reading, phone number, SIP address, mail address, URL, birthday, postal code, address and memo in the scanned data to the phonebook if “Add to phonebook” is selected. Adds the phone number to the phonebook if it is selected. Adds the SIP address to the phone book If it is selected. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is selected. Adds the URL to the phonebook if it is selected. “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook”→p.119 “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook”→p.121
Add i-mode book.	Adds the URL and title in the scanned data to i-mode Bookmark if “Add bookmark” is selected. Adds the URL to i-mode Bookmark if it is selected. “Adding bookmarks”→p.230
Add WLAN bookmark	Adds the URL and title in the scanned data to WLAN Browser Bookmark if “Add bookmark” is selected. Adds the URL to WLAN Browser Bookmark if it is selected. “Adding bookmarks”→p.230
Add FB bookmark	Adds the URL and title in the scanned data to Full Browser Bookmark if “Add bookmark” is selected. Adds the URL to Full Browser Bookmark if it is selected. “Adding bookmarks”→p.230
Save image	**▶Select a folder▶“YES”▶Select an item** Saves the selected image to My picture under Data box. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select “NO” after selecting the folder.
Save melody	**▶“YES”▶Select a folder▶“YES”▶Select an item** Saves the selected melody to Melody under Data box. If you do not set the melody as a ring tone, select “NO” after selecting a folder.
Activate i-αppli	Launches the i-αppli specified in the scanned data if “Activate i-αppli” is selected. “Using the Bar code reader to activate i-αppli”→p.314
Copy	Copies text contained in the scanned data. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text”→p.448

NOTE

◆If the data you want to scan contains characters that cannot be scanned by the Bar code reader, those characters are converted to spaces (blanks).

<Compose message>

◆No addresses are entered if an address contains characters that cannot be entered.

<Dialing>

◆Double-byte/single-byte numbers and symbols (#, ＊ and +) can be contained in a phone number. You cannot make a call if any other characters are contained.

◆The image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.

<Internet/Add i-mode book./Add WLAN bookmark/ Add FB bookmark>

◆You cannot use the Web To function or add a bookmark if a URL contains illegal characters.

<Activate i-αppli>

◆You cannot launch an i-αppli from the scanned data if “Bar code “i-αppli To”” under “i-αppli To setting” (p.313) is not selected.

◆You cannot launch an i-αppli if no application is specified.

<Access reader>

Scanning Text

Use the built-in camera to scan printed text then add the scanned text data as a phonebook entry or bookmark, or use the data to compose a message. You can also make a call or access a website.

- A FOMA terminal can save up to 8 scanned data.
- Hold a FOMA terminal firmly so that it does not shake during scanning. You can reduce FOMA terminal shaking by putting your hand under the FOMA terminal or placing it on a magazine.
- When scanning text, keep about 6 to 8 cm between the rear camera and the text.
- Vertically written Japanese text can also be scanned.

■ Scan mode

The following are the scan modes. Select the mode suitable for data to scan:

Card read	Scans a name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on a business card to add to the phonebook.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the scanned recipient address, subject and message entered.
URL	Scans a URL, and accesses the site or adds the URL bookmarks.
Mail address	Scans a mail address and composes an i-mode message.
FOMA phone number	Scans a phone number and makes a call.
SIP address	Scans a SIP address and makes a call.
Free memo	Scans Japanese or English text to save to Text memo.

■ The number of characters that can be scanned

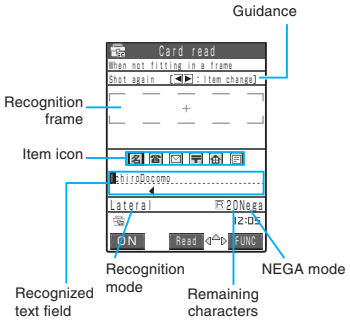
The following table shows the maximum number of characters that can be scanned for each item:

Item		Maximum number of characters that can be scanned
Card read	Name	16 in double-byte, 32 in single-byte
	Phone number	26 in single-byte numbers including #, ＊, +, p (pause), (,), -
	Mail address	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols
	Postal code	7 in single-byte
	Address	50 in double-byte, 100 in single-byte
	Memo	100 in double-byte, 200 in single-byte
Compose message	Receiver	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols
	Subject	15 in double-byte, 30 in single-byte
	Text	128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte
URL		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols
Mail address		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols
FOMA phone number		256 in single-byte numbers including (,), -
SIP address		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols
Free memo		128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte
Dictionary*	Japanese	32 in double-byte, 64 in single-byte
	English	64 in single-byte

*: The option can be selected when the Access reader is launched from Dictionary.

■ Guide to the scanning screen

Taking Card read for example, the following describes the scanning screen:



Guidance: Shows the operation.

Recognition frame: Shows the recognition field.

Item icon: Shows items to scan.
Card read mode: “Name/phone number/mail address/postal code/address/memo”
Compose message mode: “Receiver/subject/text”

Recognized text field: Shows the scanned text (The guidance appears on some screens).

Recognition mode: Shows the recognition mode “Lateral/Vertical/Postal/Phone/Address/URL” used for scanning text.

Remaining characters: Shows the remaining number of single-byte characters that can be scanned.

NEGA mode: Appears if the NEGA/POSI mode is set to Negative fix.

Scanning Text

<Example: To scan text in Card read mode>

1 (MENU)▶LiteKit▶“Access reader”

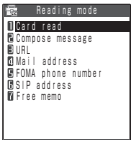
The “Access reader” screen appears.



Access reader

2 “New”

The “Reading mode” screen appears.
“Scan mode”→p.215



3 “Card read”▶Switch to (macro lens)

The “Access reader scanning” screen appears.
Use ◎ to select the icon for the item to save.
“Lens switch”→p.195



Access reader scanning

4 Display the text in the recognition field

Function menu➡p.217

Focus the text so that the entire text appears as large as possible inside the recognition field.
If the recognition field cannot display the entire text, the text can be scanned several times.

■ **To adjust the zoom**

1: Changes from “Normal” to “Large”.
2: Returns from “Large” to “Normal”.

■ **To turn on the light**

▶✉ (ON) or 4 (☼)
To turn off the light, press ✉ (OFF) or 4 (☼).

5 ●

The FOMA terminal scans the text, and the recognized text appears in red.

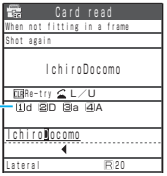
■ **To rescan the text**

▶CLR▶“YES”

If the screen does not display the entire text, press ◎, 2 (Home) or 8 (Memo/Check) to check.
Pressing ✉ (Store) stores the scanned text, and then the text data detail screen appears.
The following are the two methods to edit the scanned text:

■ **To select the text to edit**

▶Use ◎ to highlight the text to edit▶Press the candidate No.
Use ⇐ to change the cases between upper and lower if it can be changed.



Candidates

■ **To edit in the text editing**

▶● (FUNC)▶“Edit”▶Edit the text
The text can be edited in the typical text editing.
To return to the candidate selection, press ● (FUNC) and select “Select recog. data”.
Go on to Step 6 when you finish editing.



6 ●

The entry is fixed as the text.

■ **To scan the remaining text**

▶Repeat Steps 4 to 6
Ensure that the last two characters of the scanned text are included in the recognition field.

■ **To scan another item**

▶Use ◎ to select an item to scan▶Repeat Steps 4 to 6
In Card read mode, you can scan up to 4 phone numbers and up to 3 mail addresses.

7 ● (FUNC)▶“Store”

The Reading data detail screen appears. Press CLR to return to the Reading data list screen.

NOTE

- Do not move a FOMA terminal while the “Processing...” message appears on the screen.
- A FOMA terminal can scan kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabets (upper case and lower case), numbers and symbols. However, all katakana characters are scanned as double-byte, and all numbers and alphabets as single-byte. Some of the JIS level 2 kanji characters cannot be scanned.
- A FOMA terminal cannot recognize handwritten characters. If text is faxed or copied, if fonts are decorated, if character spaces are not fixed, or if fonts and the background cannot be easily distinguished, the FOMA terminal may fail to recognize the text. Whether the FOMA terminal can recognize the text correctly may depend on the ambient lighting.
- You can also launch the Access reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered into the screen.
- When launching the Access reader from Dictionary, choose the reading mode between “Dic.(Japanese)” and “Dic.(English)”.
- If you do not press any keys for three minutes or so before scanning the text, the Access reader scanning screen exits and the screen returns to the Access reader.

◆If a voice call arrives, an alarm such as alarm clock is given or another function is performed before storing of scanned data, the data is saved and the operation screen appears. Finishing the operation on the screen reopens the Reading data detail screen.
◆On the “Access Reader” screen, selecting ▶ (FUNC)▶“Add desktop icon” adds the desktop icon for this function.
◆In URL mode, “http://” is added to the beginning of the scanned data if it does not include “://”. If the scanned data includes “://” or “s://” at its beginning, it is replaced with “http://” or “https://”.

Using the text data

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶“Access reader”▶“Reading data list”

The “Reading data list” screen appears.



Reading data list

Function menu➡p.217

2 Select a scanned data

The “Reading data detail” screen appears.



Reading data detail

Function menu➡p.218

3 Select any of the displayed items

“Add to phonebook”:
Adds the name, phone number, mail address, URL, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook→pp.119, 121

“Compose message”:
Composes an i-mode message with the recipient address, subject and message already entered→p.257

* Select any displayed item such as Phone number or Mail address to edit the data.

Function menu (Access reader scanning screen/Reading data list screen)

Edit[*1]	Edits the scanned text.
Store[*2]	Saves the scanned data.
Internet	Accesses the site in URL mode. “Web To function”→p.239
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with all data entered in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered in Free memo mode. “Creating and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.257
Dialing	Calls the phone number in FOMA phone number mode. “Phone To function”→p.238
VoIPphone dial	Makes a VoIP call to the SIP address in SIP address mode. “SIP To function”→p.239
Add to phonebook	Adds the scanned data to the phonebook. Adds the data all at once to the phonebook in Card read mode. “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook”→p.119 “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook”→p.121
Add i-mode book.	Adds the URL to i-mode Bookmark in URL mode. “Adding bookmarks”→p.230
Add WLAN bookmark	Adds the URL to WLAN Browser Bookmark in URL mode. “Adding bookmarks”→p.230
Add FB bookmark	Adds the URL to Full Browser Bookmark in URL mode. “Adding bookmarks”→p.230
Search phonebook	Searches the data in the phonebook using the scanned data. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125 You cannot search on the Access reader scanning screen, in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
Add to memo	Adds the scanned data to Text memo. “Composing Text Memos”→p.409 You cannot add the scanned data in Card read mode or in Compose message mode.
Reading mode set[*2]	Selects the scanning mode from “Card read”, “Compose message”, “URL”, “Mail address”, “FOMA phone number”, “SIP address” and “Free memo”.

Continued on next page

NEGA/POSI mode*2	Sets the type of printing.
• **Auto setting**	Automatically sets the positive or negative.
• **Positive fix**	Suitable for dark text printed on a light background.
• **Negative fix**	Suitable for light text printed on a dark background.
Guidance OFF, Guidance ON*2	Shows or hides the guidance.
Vertical writing, Lateral writing*2	Selects vertical writing or lateral writing for the Japanese text to scan.
Display detail*3	Displays the Reading data detail screen.
Copy*3	Copies text contained in the scanned data. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.448
Delete this*3	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all*3	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Deletes all the data.

*1: Only available on the Access reader scanning screen.
*2: Only appears on the Access reader scanning screen.
*3: Only appears on the Reading data list screen.

Function menu (Reading data detail screen)

Edit	Edits the text of the selected item. You cannot edit the text when selecting “Add to phonebook” or “Compose message”.
Internet	Accesses the site in URL mode. “Web To function” →p.239
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered if the mail address is selected in Card read mode. Composes an i-mode message with all data entered if “Compose message” is selected in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered if the recipient address, subject or message is selected in Compose message mode. Composes an i-mode message with the mail address entered in Mail address mode. Composes an i-mode message with the data entered in Free memo mode. “Creating and Sending i-mode Mail” →p.257
Dialing	Calls the phone number if it is selected in Card read mode. Calls the phone number in FOMA phone number mode. “Phone To function” →p.238
VoIPphone dial	Makes a VoIP call to the SIP address in SIP address mode. “SIP To function” →p.239
Add to phonebook	Adds the data all at once to the phonebook if “Add to phonebook” is selected in Card read mode. Adds the data to the phonebook if the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address or memo is selected in Card read mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook if it is selected in Compose message mode. Adds the URL to the phonebook in URL mode. Adds the mail address to the phonebook in Mail address mode. Adds the phone number to the phonebook in FOMA phone number mode. Adds the SIP address to the phonebook in SIP address mode. Adds the data to the memo of the phonebook in Free memo mode. “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook” →p.119 “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook” →p.121
Add i-mode book.	Adds the URL to i-mode Bookmark in URL mode. “Adding bookmarks” →p.230
Add WLAN bookmark	Adds the URL to WLAN Browser Bookmark in URL mode. “Adding bookmarks” →p.230
Add FB bookmark	Adds the URL to Full Browser Bookmark in URL mode. “Adding bookmarks” →p.230
Search phonebook	Searches the phonebook using the selected data. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.125 You cannot search when selecting “Add to phonebook” or “Compose message”.
Add to memo	Adds the selected data to Text memo. “Composing Text Memos” →p.409 You cannot add the data when selecting “Add to phonebook” or “Compose message”.
Display list	Displays the Reading data list screen.
Copy	Copies data contained in the scanned data. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.448
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted data.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Deletes all the data.

NOTE

<Dialing>

- Single-byte numbers and symbols (#, ＊ and +) can be contained in a phone number. You cannot make a call to a phone number in which any other characters are included.
- The image settings for videophone are not retained after dialing or talking is finished. Set the image each time you make a call.

i-mode/i-motion/ i-channel

What is i-mode? 222
Displaying i-mode Menu ..... i-mode menu 222

Viewing sites

Viewing Sites 224
Viewing and Using Sites 226
Registering My Menu Entries ..... My Menu 228
Changing Your i-mode Password ..... Change i-mode Password 229
Viewing Websites ..... Internet connection 229
Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly ..... Bookmark 230
Saving Site Content ..... Screen memo 232

Downloading images and melodies from sites

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages ..... Save image 234
Downloading Melodies from Sites ..... i-melody 234
Downloading PDF data from Sites 235
Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites 237
Downloading Data Files from Sites 238

Useful i-mode functions

Using Phone To, Mail To, Web To, SIP To and IM To Functions
..... Phone To/Mail To/Web To/SIP To/IM To functions 238

Making i-mode settings

Making i-mode Settings 240

Using message services

When You Receive a Message ..... Receive message 242
Checking for Messages ..... Check new messages 243
Viewing Messages in the Message Box ..... MessageR/MessageF 244

Using certificates

Using SSL Certificate 245
Setting FirstPass 246
Changing the Certificate Host 247

Using i-motion

What is i-motion? 248
Downloading i-motion from Sites ..... Download i-motion 248
Setting i-motion 249

Using i-channel

What is i-channel? 250
Accessing a Site from the Channel List 251
Making the i-channel Settings ..... i-Channel setting 252

What is i-mode?

The i-mode service allows you to use an i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) display to access online services such as i-mode mail and connection to the Internet and i-mode sites (programs).

- i-mode services cannot be used while in the WLAN single mode.

- i-mode is a pay service you need to subscribe to. For information on subscription, see the back cover of the manual.
- For details of the i-mode service, refer to the latest “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

■ Notes on using i-mode

- Site (program) or Internet website (page) content is generally protected by copyright laws. Documents, pictures and other data downloaded from these sites or websites to your i-mode terminal are permitted only for personal use. It is prohibited to copy or modify the whole or part of data for resale or redistribution without the copyright holders’ permission.
- All data stored (messages, MessageR/MessageF, screen memos, i-αppli, i-motion, bookmarks, etc.) on your i-mode terminal may be lost when your i-mode terminal is damaged, repaired, or otherwise mishandled. It is recommended to back up the stored data or important data. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the data stored on your i-mode terminal.
- When i-mode terminal is repaired, the information downloaded via i-mode, i-αppli or i-motion is not transferred to a new mobile phone due to the copyright law except some information. And when the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the mobile phone is turned on with no FOMA card (UIM) inserted, some types of mobile phone may be incapable of viewing or playing melodies, images and movies downloaded from sites, files (images, movies, melodies) attached to sent or received messages, screen memos and MessageR/MessageF messages.
- If a file for which the viewing and playback are restricted by a FOMA card (UIM) is set as the standby screen or a ring tone, the FOMA terminal operates using the default settings when the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the FOMA terminal is turned on without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.

■ Important

- It is recommended to back up bookmark contents onto a miniSD memory card or note the contents down separately. You can also save the data to your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.435) or Data Link Software (p.499) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).

Displaying i-mode Menu

Starting i-mode

1 MENU ▶ i-mode



The “i-mode menu” screen appears. The i-mode menu consists of 10 items. Pressing ● (i-mode) on the standby screen also displays the “i-mode menu” screen.

■ If “ ” appears

You are out of range or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move until the signal strength indicator e.g. “ ” appears.

■ If “ ” is flashing

The FOMA terminal is communicating with the i-mode center. If you attempt to access an i-mode site (p.224) or website (p.229) or send an i-mode message (p.257) while you are in the service area but not using the i-mode service, “ ” flashes and it may take time to start up i-mode.

■ If “ ” is flashing

When you are receiving i-mode service (during i-mode), “ ” flashes.

Item	Description	Refer to
iMenu	This is the first page displayed when you access the i-mode center. From this screen, access a variety of sites (programs) such as “What’s New!!”.	p.224
Bookmark	Store the addresses of your favorite websites on your i-mode terminal so that you can jump directly to them next time.	p.230
Screen memo	Shows the i-mode site screens stored on your i-mode terminal.	p.232
Last URL	Displays the i-mode site or website that was displayed last time.	p.226
Go to location	Directly enter an address to access the i-mode-compatible website.	p.229
i-Channel	Shows the channel list screen.	p.251

Item	Description	Refer to
Message	Displays received MessageR/ MessageF. The message service automatically delivers the required information to your FOMA terminal.	p.244
Check new messages	Connects your FOMA terminal to the i-mode center to check for new messages or MessageR/MessageF.	pp.243, 271
Client certificate	Connects to the FirstPass Center to request or download user certificate.	p.246
i-mode settings	Make the i-mode settings.	p.240

NOTE

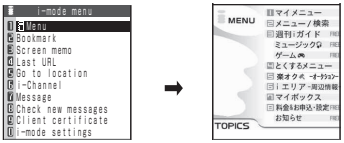
◆The i-mode service area is the same as the FOMA service area (the area in which calls can be made and received).

◆The i-mode menu can be displayed even when you are out of the FOMA service area. However, you cannot send/receive information to/from sites or via the Internet.

Displaying the iMenu screen

1 (MENU) ▶ i-mode ▶ "iMenu"

The FOMA terminal connects to the i-mode center and the "iMenu" screen (the first i-mode screen) appears.



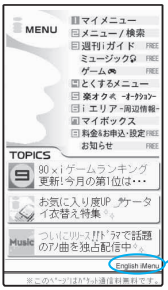
■ To cancel downloading pages

▶CLR or ✉ (Quit)

iMenu in English

The iMenu can be displayed in English.

1 Display the i-mode menu and select iMenu and press ●



2 Select "English iMenu" and then press ●



Select "日本語" to return to the Japanese display.

NOTE

◆There is no English for the menus on the Japanese display except マイメニュー (My Menu), 週間 i ガイド (What's New), メニュー (Menu List) and 設定 (Options).

◆Generally, the What's New site is updated every other Monday.

◆English sites in Menu List differ from Japanese version.

Exiting i-mode

1 During i-mode, press ☎ ▶ "YES"

" " flashes, then " " disappears.

NOTE

◆Pressing and holding ☎ for 2 seconds or longer will turn the FOMA terminal off.

Viewing Sites

You can use various services provided by the IP (information service provider). (A separate subscription may be required.)

1 (MENU)▶i-mode▶“iMenu”

2 **“English iMenu”▶“Menu List”▶Select a site**

The “Sites” screen appears.



Sites

Function menu➡p.224

● “みんなNランド” (Only in Japanese)

You can download and save i-αppli, dictionaries, face stamps and Deco-mail templates available on your FOMA terminal from the site “みんなNランド” under iMenu, and use them for various purposes.

The following shows how to access “みんなNランド”

Select “iMenu” → “メニュー／検索” → “ケータイ電話メーカー” → “みんなNらんど”

The QR code on the right is also available to access “みんなNランド”.

NOTE

- Some sites may charge you an information fee.
- You may be unable to view images on some sites.
- If an image cannot be downloaded, the “” icon appears. However, “” does not appear for a background image that cannot be downloaded.
- You can make and receive voice calls even while accessing a site (p.392). You can also send and receive messages.
- You can select any of the underlined items on the site screen to access the related pages (linked pages).
- The displayed site screen is not updated automatically. To see the latest information, select “Reload” from the function menu.
- The number of colors displayed on certain sites exceeds the maximum number of colors that the FOMA terminal can display. In this case, the site may not appear as intended.
- On some i-mode-compatible sites or websites, characters may be difficult or impossible to see depending on the selected colors.

Function menu (Sites screen)

Add bookmark	Adds the URL of the currently displayed page to the bookmark list. “Adding bookmarks”→p.230
Bookmark	Displays the Bookmark folder list screen. You can use bookmarks to access i-mode sites or websites. →p.230
Add screen memo	Saves the displayed page as a screen memo. “Saving a screen memo”→p.232
Screen memo list	Displays the screen memo list screen. “Displaying a screen memo”→p.232
Save image	Saves an image on the displayed page. Select “Normal image” or “Background image”. “Downloading Images from Sites and Messages”→p.234
Scroll mode	Sets the scroll mode. →p.226
Compose message	Pastes the URL of the currently displayed page or insert/attach an image to compose an i-mode message or Deco-mail message.
• **Attach URL**	Pastes the URL of the displayed page to compose an i-mode message. “Creating and Sending i-mode Mail” →p.257
• **Attach image**	▶**Select an image** Attaches an image on the displayed page to compose an i-mode message. “Creating and Sending i-mode Mail” →p.257
• **Insert image**	▶**Select an image** Inserts an image on the displayed page to compose a Deco-mail message. “Composing and Sending Deco-mail”→p.261
Enter URL	▶●▶**Enter a URL**▶**“OK”**▶● Enters a URL to access the website.
Add to phonebook	“Adding phone numbers and e-mail addresses to the phonebook”→p.228
Add desktop icon	Pastes the URL of the displayed page as a desktop icon. “Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Save schedule	Saves a schedule while browsing the displayed page. “Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries”→p.398
Refer dictionary	Uses a dictionary on the displayed page. “Using dictionaries from other functions”→p.411
Home	
• **Set as home URL**	Registers the URL of the displayed page as the home page. One URL can be stored.
• **Display home**	Displays the home page.

Change CHR code	Changes the character code to redisplay a page that is not displayed correctly.
Reload	Use this procedure to refresh the displayed page.
Retry	Plays a Flash movie or animation on the displayed page from the beginning.
iMenu	Displays the iMenu screen.
i-mode menu	Displays the i-mode menu.
Site info	
• **Title**	▶**Check the title**▶**"OK"** Displays the title of the displayed page.
• **URL**	▶**Check the URL**▶**"OK"** Displays the URL of the displayed page.
• **Certificate**	Displays the contents of the SSL certificate on an SSL-compatible page.
Site settings	Sets the image display mode, i-motion type and sound effects for the displayed page.
• **Set image disp.**	Sets the image display mode for a page. If "OFF" is selected, "" appears instead of an image on the page.
• **i-motion type**	"Setting the i-motion type to download"→p.249
• **Sound effect**	Sets sound effects for Flash movies.
Switch to FB	Displays the current page in full browser.→p.330

NOTE

<Compose message>
- ◆You can paste a URL up to 256 single-byte characters long on a message. Longer URLs cannot be pasted.

<Set as home URL>
- ◆Storing a URL in the "Set as home URL" option does not change the "Valid"/"Invalid" under "Home URL".

<Display home>
- ◆"Display home" is not available when "Home URL" is set to "Invalid".
- ◆If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, pressing the switch on the standby screen will also display the home page.
- ◆If the registered page to the HOME URL is displayed by pressing (Home) on the stand-by display, the page displayed may differ depending on the "Setting connect mode" settings.
  - When in the Dual mode (Prefer FOMA) or the FOMA Single mode, i-mode starts up and the i-mode home page is displayed.
  - When in the Dual mode (Prefer WLAN) or the WLAN Single mode, the WLAN browser starts up and the WLAN home page is displayed.

<Change CHR code>
- ◆If text is not displayed correctly, repeat the procedure. If you perform the procedure 4 times in a row, the site is displayed in the original character code.
- ◆Some sites may not be displayed correctly even when character codes are changed.
- ◆If you change the character code on a site displayed correctly, the site may no longer be displayed correctly.
- ◆"Change CHR code" only applies to the currently displayed site.

<Retry>
- ◆Selecting this option during playback restarts the playback from the beginning.

<Title>
- ◆Up to 64 double-byte or 128 single-byte characters are displayed.

<URL>
- ◆If the entire page is not shown, press ● to display the cursor. Use ◎ to move the cursor and check the page. Press ● again to hide the cursor. Select "OK" to return to the page screen.

<Certificate>
- ◆Up to 5 certificates are displayed. When there are two or more certificates, use ◎ to check the previous/next certificate.
- ◆When certificates are displayed, the screen scrolls by line regardless of the "Scroll" setting.

<Switch to FB>
- ◆Some sites may not be displayed in full browser.

Viewing SSL pages

To view SSL pages, the following certificates are required:
- CA certificate: Issued by an certification organization and stored on your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.
- DoCoMo CA certificate: Required to connect to the FirstPass center and stored on the FOMA card (green/white).
- User Certificate: Downloaded from the FirstPass center by selecting "Client certificate" (p.246) from the i-mode menu and stored on the FOMA card (green/white).
- WLAN CA Certificate, WLAN Client Certificate: A certificate installed by the network administrator in order to use a wireless LAN; the certificate is saved by the administrator during installation onto the FOMA terminal.

1 Open the SSL Page

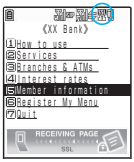
The SSL page opens and "" is displayed.

■ To cancel opening during authentication

▶●

■ To cancel loading an authenticated page

▶✉ (Quit)



SSL page

Continued on next page

2 Move from the SSL page to a normal page▶“YES”

SSL communication ends and “ ” disappears.

NOTE

◆The message “This site is not certified Do you connect?” may appear when you attempt to open an SSL page. This message appears when the SSL certificate for the page has expired or is not supported. In this case, you can continue to view the page by selecting “YES”. You may not be able to safely send your personal information such as your credit card number or contacts. To cancel displaying, select “NO”. The message “SSL connection terminated.” is displayed: press ● to return to the previous screen.

Scroll function

When you are viewing a webpage, MessageR/MessageF, i-mode mail or SMS and the text or list cannot appear on a screen, scroll up and down to view the rest.

■ To scroll by line

Press ○ to scroll down line by line to view the next part of the list or text.

Press ○ to scroll up line by line to view the previous part of the list or text.

You can set the phone to scroll multiple lines when ○ or ○ is pressed.→p.240

■ To scroll by screen

Press ▼ (Memo/Check) to scroll down by screen to view the next part of the list or text.

Press ▲ (Home) to scroll up screen by screen to view the previous part of the list or text.

■ To use the scroll mode

If selecting “Scroll mode” from the Sites function menu (p.224) or Screen memo detail function menu (p.233), you can scroll in the direction (up or down) as you slide ●. Pressing ☎ on the sites screen also sets/releases the scroll mode.

Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers

If you select an item on an i-mode site or website, a message may appear indicating that the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be sent. If it is OK to send the numbers, select “YES”. Otherwise, select “NO”. If you press ✉ (Back) or CLR, it returns to the previous screen.

- Before the manufacturer numbers are sent, a message appears indicating that they will be sent. They will not be sent automatically.

NOTE

◆Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are used by the IP (information service provider) to identify you and provide you with customized services and to confirm that you can use content provided by the IP.

◆Your Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.

Reconnecting to the last viewed page <Last URL>

Each time you view a page, the URL of the currently viewed page is set to “Last URL”. When you end an i-mode session, the URL of the last viewed page is saved to “Last URL”. Use “Last URL” to reconnect to the last viewed page.

1 MENU ▶ i-mode ▶“Last URL”▶“YES”

NOTE

◆The current URL is not saved to “Last URL” if:

- You accessed the page from Bookmark under the Secret folder
- You downloaded a PDF document showing separate charges

◆The URL of the data acquisition screen is not saved to “Last URL”. In this case, “Last URL” will save the URL of page viewed before the data acquisition screen.

Viewing and Using Sites

This section describes operations available while viewing an i-mode site or website.

Displaying images

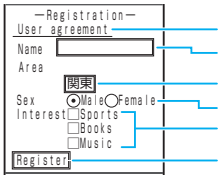
- The FOMA terminal displays GIF and JPEG images and Flash movies (p.228). Some images and movies may not be displayed even if the formats are supported.
- When a Flash movie is used, display operations may differ from on a normal page.
- You can set whether to display images in “Set image disp.” (p.225) under “Site settings”.

■ Image icons

(Color):	Appears while images load or if “Set image disp.” is set to “OFF”.
:	Appears if image loading failed.
(BW):	Appears if an image cannot be loaded.

Selecting a linked page or item

While connecting to i-mode, you may need to perform the following operations for some sites.



① Link
Selecting an item jumps to the page linked to the selected item.

② Text box
This field is used to enter texts directly. When you select a text box, the text entry screen appears.

③ Pull-down menu
An item is selected from a list of options. Only a part of options are shown and hidden options will appear as a list when you select an option.

④ Radio button
Only one option is selected. ● indicates a selected radio button.

⑤ Checkboxes
Checkboxes allow you to select one or more options. ☑ indicates a selected checkbox.

⑥ Button
Selecting a key performs the function assigned to the key.

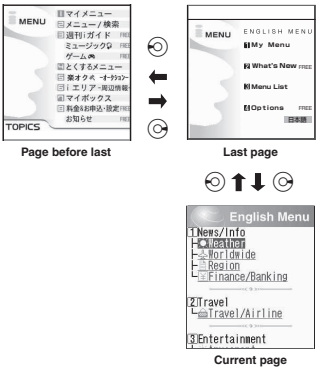
NOTE

◆Depending on how the site is constructed, a pull-down menu may include ▭ which enables you to select multiple options. Use ⊙ to move ▭ and press ● to select or deselect the item in ▭. When you have completed your selections, press ✉ (Finish) or CLR to end the procedure.

Jumping forward/back to a page

You can jump forward or back to a page that has been retrieved and stored in the FOMA terminal's cache (up to 30 pages are stored).

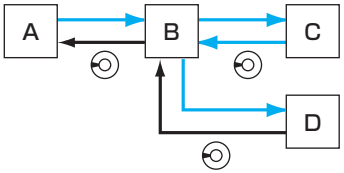
1 Press ⊙ to jump back to the previous page or ⊙ to jump forward to the next page



NOTE

◆You can review the pages you have visited in the current i-mode session by repeatedly pressing ⊙. However, when you have pressed ⊙ to return to an earlier page (from "C" to "B") and then gone from that page to another page (from "B" to "D"), pressing ⊙ twice from page "D" will not display page "C". The previous page is displayed in order of "D", "B", and "A".

■ When the page display sequence is "A", "B", "C", "B" and "D"



■ To view pages stored in cache

- A cache temporarily stores websites you have visited in the FOMA terminal. While viewing an i-mode site or website, press ⊙ to change pages, it will display the stored page without accessing the site. However, if the cache is full or if the page is set to always display the latest information, the FOMA terminal accesses the site even if you press ⊙. If the date and time information for a page has been updated, the FOMA terminal accesses the site and displays the latest information even when the page is stored in the cache.
- Even when site data are loaded from cache, the text and settings you entered previously do not appear.
- The cache is cleared when you exit i-mode.
- When you download an SSL-compatible page from the cache, a message appears indicating that an SSL page will be displayed.

Reloading data

Use this procedure to refresh the displayed page.

1 Site screens (p.224)▶ (FUNC)▶ “Reload”

NOTE

◆If you perform “Reload” on the final completion screen for pages such as questionnaires or other forms, a message asking whether to resend the data appears. Note that selecting “YES” will resend information that has already been sent once.

Adding phone numbers and e-mail addresses to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

You can add a phone number, e-mail address, SIP address or URL displayed on a site page or screen memo to your phonebook.

<Example: To add a phone number displayed on a site page>

1 Sites screen (p.224)▶ (FUNC)▶ “Add to phonebook”▶“YES”▶Add a phone number to phonebook

“Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook”→p.119
“Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook”→p.121
If information like the name, reading and mail address are included with a phone number, they are also entered into the phonebook with the phone number. Enter other necessary items and then save to the phonebook.

Handling Flash movies

Flash movie is an animation technique supported by the FOMA terminal that uses both images and sound. Flash movie gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download a Flash movie to your FOMA terminal and set it in the standby screen.

- A Flash movie playing error prevents successful completion of the saving.
- Note that if you play a Flash movie to which vibration is set, your FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the “Vibrator” setting.
- Some Flash movies may not run correctly.
- You may also be able to control a Flash movie even when “ ” does not appear at the bottom of screen.
- Flash movies are not displayed if you select “OFF” in “Set image disp.”.
- Selecting “YES” in “Use phone information” (p.241) enables you to use data stored on the FOMA terminal (time, date, signal strength, battery level, ring volume, language, model type and model info).

NOTE

◆To replay a Flash movie, select “Retry” from the site function menu or other menus.→p.225
◆Some Flash movies use sound effects. To run a Flash movie without the sound effects, select “Sound effect” in “Site settings” from the sites function menu and then select “OFF”. Even if “Vibrator” is set to “Melody linkage”, this setting is invalid for sound effects of Flash movie.
◆When a Flash movie is set as a screen such as standby by using “Display setting”, the sound effects or vibrator that are set in the Flash movie do not run. Furthermore, “Retry” is unavailable for repeating a Flash movie.
◆Some Flash movies may appear differently from the way they do on a site (e.g. a part of movie is not saved) if they are saved or stored as screen memo.
◆Display behavior may differ when a Flash movie appears.
◆For some Flash movies, the vibrator function is activated. If such Flash movie is set in the ringing screen, videophone ringing screen or mail receiving screen, the FOMA terminal vibrates according to the “Vibrator” or “Manner mode set” setting. However, a terminal does not vibrate when a Flash movie is set in the standby screen or as Wake-up display.
◆Depending on the activated Flash movie, you may not be able to use the Neuropointer to select menu screens.

<My Menu>

Registering My Menu Entries

My Menu provides you with a quick and convenient way to connect to frequently visited sites.

- You can register up to 45 sites in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be registered to My Menu.
- To connect quickly to a website, use “Bookmark” (p.230).

1 Sites screen (p.224)▶“My Menu Registration”▶Select the “Input password” box▶Enter your 4-digit i-mode password▶“Select”

i-mode password→p.168

NOTE

◆Charged sites in the Menu List under iMenu are automatically registered to My Menu upon subscription.

Viewing sites registered to My Menu

1 MENU ▶ i-mode ▶ "iMenu" ▶ "English iMenu" ▶ "My Menu" ▶ Select the site you want to view

NOTE

- To connect to a site from My Menu, the site must first be registered to My Menu.
- Dual Network service users may find that My Menu entries registered on their mova-compatible i-mode terminal are not available on the FOMA terminal and similarly that entries registered on their FOMA terminal are not available on the mova-compatible i-mode terminal.

<Change i-mode Password>

Changing Your i-mode Password

You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to register or unregister sites in My Menu, to subscribe to or unsubscribe from message services or charged i-mode sites, and to set your mail preferences.

- Until you change the i-mode password, it is set to "0000" (4 zeros) by default. You can change your i-mode password at any time from your FOMA terminal.
- Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.
- If you forget your i-mode password, the registered service subscriber need to take a form of identification (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter. A service representative will reset your i-mode password to "0000".

1 MENU ▶ i-mode ▶ "iMenu" ▶ "English iMenu" ▶ "Options" ▶ "Change i-mode Password"

2 Select the "Current Password" box ▶ Enter your current i-mode password

The entered number appears as "＊".

3 Select the "New Password" box ▶ Enter a new i-mode password

Enter a 4-digit number as your i-mode password.

4 Select the "New Password (Confirmation)" box ▶ Enter a new i-mode password again

Enter the number you entered in step 3.

5 Select "Select"

■ **If you enter your "Current Password" incorrectly**

A message notifying that the entered i-mode password is incorrect appears.

■ **If you enter different numbers in "New Password" and "New Password (Confirmation)"**

A message notifying that the entered i-mode passwords do not match appears.

<Internet connection>

Viewing Websites

This function enables you to view any website simply by entering its URL.

- i-mode-incompatible websites may not be displayed correctly.
- A website viewed on your terminal and on a PC may be displayed differently.
- You can view websites designed for a PC in full browser. →p.325

1 MENU ▶ i-mode ▶ "Go to location" ▶ "Enter URL" ▶ Select "<NEW>"



2 Enter a URL ▶ "OK"

A message warning that it may not be possible to display the site for the entered URL appears. Press ● or CLR to connect to the website with the entered URL.

■ **If you enter no URL or a URL that does not begin with "http://" or "https://"**

A message notifying that the URL is incorrect appears.

NOTE

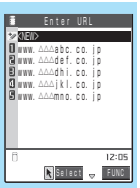
- Some websites may not be displayed correctly on a FOMA terminal.
- If the received data exceeds the maximum size that can be loaded for a single page, data reception stops. You may be able to view the data loaded so far by pressing ●.
- You can enter a URL up to 256 single-byte characters long including "http://" or "https://".

Accessing sites from the URL history

The FOMA terminal records the last 10 URLs you entered in the URL history.

1 (MENU)▶i-mode▶**"Go to location"▶"Enter URL"**

The "Enter URL" screen appears.



Enter URL

Function menu➡p.230

2 Select a URL number ▶"OK"▶"OK"

■ **To edit the selected URL**

▶Select the "Internet address" box▶Edit the URL

NOTE

◆Once the URL history contains 10 entries, the oldest entry is automatically replaced as new entries are added.

◆Multiple visits to the same site by entering the URL are logged as separate entries.

◆The URL history indicates URLs up to 22 single-byte characters long, excluding the "http://" or "https://" prefix.

Function menu (Enter URL screen)

ADD desktop icon*	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.158
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the selected URL pasted in the message. "Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.257
Set as home URL	Stores the selected URL as home URL. One URL can be stored.
Delete	Deletes URLs.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted URL.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple URLs.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the registered URLs.

*: This is not shown on the Enter URL screen of the Full browser.

<Bookmark>

Accessing Websites and i-mode Sites Quickly

Adding frequently visited sites to your Bookmark folders enables you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can change titles of your bookmarks and organize the bookmarks into categories by using folders.

Adding bookmarks

- You can bookmark up to 100 sites.
- The URL for each bookmark can contain up to 256 single-byte characters. Pages with longer URLs cannot be bookmarked.
- Up to 10 URLs can be stored in the Secret folder separately from normal bookmarks.
- Some sites cannot be bookmarked.

<Example: To display a site>

1 Sites screen (p.224)▶● (FUNC)▶"Add bookmark"▶"YES"▶Select a folder number

NOTE

◆A bookmark title can consist of up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters. Longer title is truncated when the bookmark is added. If no title is given, the URL is shown (excluding "http://" or "https://").

Using a bookmark to access an i-mode site or website

1 (MENU)▶i-mode▶**"Bookmark"**

The "Bookmark folder list" screen appears.



Bookmark folder list

Function menu➡p.231

2 Select a folder number

The "Bookmark" screen appears.

3 Select a bookmark number



Bookmark

Function menu➡p.231

NOTE

◆Page titles in the bookmark list are shown in the order they were used.

Function menu (Bookmark folder list screen)

You cannot rename or delete the “Bookmark” folder already created on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name** You can add up to 9 folders. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	**▶Enter a folder name** You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Sort folder	**▶Select the destination** Rearranges folders.
No. of bookmarks	Displays the total number of bookmarks in all the folders. However, bookmarks in the Secret folder are not included.
Send all Ir data	Sends all the bookmarks via Infrared data exchange. “Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time”→p.378
Copy all to miniSD	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Copies all the stored bookmarks to the miniSD memory card. However, bookmarks in the Secret folder are not copied.
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes the highlighted folder and bookmarks in the folder.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all the bookmarks. Bookmarks in the Secret folder are not deleted.

NOTE

- ◆You cannot apply security to bookmark folders.
- ◆All folders including Secret folders are displayed when Secret mode and Secret data only mode are set.

<Add folder>

- ◆Newly added folders appear below the existing folders.
- ◆The Secret folder location is not changed even if a folder is added.

<Send all Ir data>

- ◆Bookmarks in the Secret folder are not sent.

Function menu (Bookmark screen)

Move	Moves bookmarks.
• **Move this**	**▶Select a folder number▶“YES”** Moves the highlighted bookmark.
• **Move selected**	**▶Select a folder number▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□) of a bookmark▶✉ (Finish)▶“YES”** You can move bookmarks to other folders to organize them by category.
• **Move all**	**▶Select a folder number▶“YES”** Moves all the bookmarks stored in the folder.
Edit title	**▶Enter a title** You can enter up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters.
Add to phonebook*1	Adds highlighted bookmarks to the phonebook. “Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records”→p.122
Add desktop icon*1	Pastes a bookmarked URL as a desktop icon. “Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with a bookmarked URL pasted into the message. “Creating and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.257
Send Ir data	“Transferring One Data at a Time”→p.377
Copy to miniSD	Copies bookmarks to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted bookmark.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□) of a bookmark▶✉ (Finish)▶“YES”** Copies multiple bookmarks.
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Copies all the bookmarks stored in the folder.
Set as home URL	Stores a bookmarked URL as home URL. One URL can be stored.
Copy URL	**▶Use ◎ to highlight the beginning of text to copy▶● ▶Use ◎ to highlight the end of text to copy▶●** Copies a bookmarked URL.
No. of bookmarks	Shows the number of bookmarks in the folders.

Continued on next page

Delete	Deletes bookmarks.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted bookmark.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶**✉ (Finish)**▶**“YES”** Deletes multiple bookmarks.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Deletes all the bookmarks stored in the folder.
Keep in secret[*2]	“Hiding Various Data”→p.175

*1: This is not shown on the Bookmark screen of the Full browser.
*2: This option appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears.→p.175

NOTE

<Move>
◆You cannot move a bookmark to the Secret folder.

<Edit title>
◆f you delete a title and press ●, the URL is stored without the “http://” or “https://” prefix.

<Add desktop icon>
◆You can display the bookmark pasted as a desktop icon by selecting its icon even if the bookmark is stored in the Secret folder.

<Delete all>
◆“Delete all” deletes all the bookmarks in the currently displayed folder. Bookmarks in other folders are not deleted.

<Screen memo>

Saving Site Content

When you have found some useful information (travel information, etc.), you can save the displayed page on your FOMA terminal as a screen memo for later reference.

- You can save up to 100 screen memos. However, the number you can actually save varies between 2 and 100 depending on the amount of data on each saved page.

Saving a screen memo

1 Sites screen (p.224)▶◉ (FUNC)▶“Add screen memo”▶“YES”

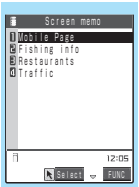
NOTE

◆When you save an SSL page as a screen memo, the SSL certificate for the page is also saved.
◆A title for a saved screen memo can be up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters long. Longer title is truncated.
◆If you save the same page twice, they are saved separately as different screen memos.
◆Even if an item is entered in a radio button, checkbox, text box, pull-down menu or selection box when you save a site page as screen memo, the item does not appear in the saved screen memo.
◆When you save a screen such as the data acquisition, the data is saved along with the screen. However, the data acquisition screen for i-motion with replay time limit cannot be saved as a screen memo.
◆Other than the data acquisition screen itself, the URL for that page (up to 256 single-byte characters) can be saved.

Displaying a screen memo

1 MENU▶i-mode▶“Screen memo”

The “Screen memo list” screen appears.



Screen memo list

Function menu➡p.232

2 Select a screen memo number

The “Screen memo detail” screen appears.



Screen memo detail

Function menu➡p.233

NOTE

◆Information on a screen memo is the one stored and may differ from the latest one.
◆If a saved page has no title, the page appears in the Screen memo list screen as “No title”.

Function menu (Screen memo list screen)

Edit title	▶**Enter a title** You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo title is marked with “🔒”. The “🔒” icon disappears when the protection is removed. Protected screen memos cannot be deleted.
No. of memos	Displays the numbers of stored and protected screen memos respectively.

Delete	Deletes screen memos.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted screen memo.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□) ▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple screen memos.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the registered screen memos.

NOTE

<Edit title>

◆If you delete the title, the screen memo is added as "No title".

<Protect ON/OFF>

◆Up to 50 screen memos can be protected. However, the number of screen memos storable varies depending on the data size.

<Delete>

◆Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

Function menu (Screen memo detail screen)

Save image	Saves an image or background image displayed in a screen memo. Select "Normal image" or "Background image". "Downloading Images from Sites and Messages"→p.234
Add to phonebook	Adds a phone number, e-mail address, SIP address or URL displayed on a screen memo to the phonebook. "Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook"→p.119 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook"→p.121
Edit title	**▶Enter a title** You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects a screen memo. Protected memo title is marked with "🔒". The "🔒" icon disappears when the protection is removed. Protected screen memos cannot be deleted.
Scroll mode	Sets the scroll mode.→p.226
Compose message	Enables you to compose an i-mode mail or Deco-mail with a URL for a screen memo pasted into a message or with an image attached or inserted.
• **Attach URL**	Composes an i-mode mail with a URL in a screen memo pasted in a message. "Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.257
• **Attach image**	**▶Select an image** Composes an i-mode mail with an image displayed in a screen memo attached. "Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.257
• **Insert image**	**▶Select an image** Composes a Deco-mail with an image displayed in a screen memo inserted into a message. "Composing and Sending Deco-mail"→p.261
Save schedule	Stores a scheduled event by browsing a screen memo. "Adding schedule events"→p.399
Refer dictionary	Uses a dictionary from a screen memo. "Using dictionaries from other functions"→p.411
URL	Displays the screen memo URL.
Certificate	Displays the SSL certificate details when the screen memo is from an SSL page.
Sound effect	Sets sound effects for Flash movies. Select "ON" or "OFF".
Retry	Replays the Flash movie or animation in a screen memo from the beginning.
Delete	Deletes the displayed screen memo.

NOTE

<URL>

◆You cannot edit the displayed URL.

<Retry>

◆Selecting this option during playback restarts the playback from the beginning.

<Delete>

◆Protected screen memos cannot be deleted. Unprotect them for deletion.

<Save image>

Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

If saving an image, background image or animation attached to or displayed in an i-mode mail, MessageR/MessageF, screen memo or site, you can set the saved image on a screen such as the standby or wake-up display.

<Example: To save an image displayed on a site page>

1 Sites screen (p.224)/Message detail screen (p.244)▶i (FUNC)▶"Save image"▶"Normal image"▶Select an image▶"YES"▶Select a folder number

Position the frame ▭ over the image to save.

■ **To save a background image**

▶Save image▶"Background image"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

2 "Yes"▶Select an item

■ **To not set the image for the standby screen, etc.**

▶"NO"

NOTE

- ◆You cannot save a JPEG image of which height or width exceeds 2,304 dots, JPEG image whose total number of dots exceeds 2,304 × 1,728 or GIF image of which size exceeds 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or height or width exceeds 2,304 dots.
- ◆Also, a progressive JPEG image* larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 640 dots cannot be copied.
  - *: Progressive JPEG is a format widely used for websites. The whole image is displayed as very low-quality and fuzzy, which becomes sharper as the lines fill in.
- ◆You cannot save an image with a file size larger than 100K bytes.
- ◆Up to 36 single-byte characters can be saved for the file name of the saved image. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between "/" and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "imagexxx" (xxx are numerals).
- ◆An image cannot be saved if "  " is displayed.
- ◆If you try to save an image during reception of a large image, a confirmation message appears saying that you cannot perform the operation while a large size of file is downloaded.
- ◆A transparent GIF file that is not an animation GIF file and has the extension "ifm" is saved as a frame or stamp in one of the following sizes:
  - Frame that has an image size of CIF (352 × 288), CIF Vert. (288 × 352), QVGA (320 × 240), Screen (240 × 345, 345 × 240), Stand-by (240 × 320), QCIF (176 × 144), QCIF Vert. (144 × 176), SubQCIF (128 × 96), SubQCIF Vert. (96 × 128)
  - Stamp that is not a frame image and has a size of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller

■ Important

- ● It is recommended to copy the stored images to the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.435) or Data Link Software (p.499) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot save images in the miniSD memory card or transfer them to PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output them from the FOMA terminal.)
- ● Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

<i-melody>

Downloading Melodies from Sites

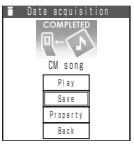
You can set your favorite song, the latest hit song downloaded from a site or a stored melody attached to an i-mode mail as a ring tone on your FOMA terminal.

- ● Up to 400 melodies can be stored (the number of melodies that can be stored depends on the amount of melody data stored).

<Example: To store a melody downloaded from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.224)▶Select a melody

2 Save▶"YES"▶Select a folder



■ **To play a melody**

▶"Play"

■ **To display melody information**

▶"Property"

3 "Yes"▶Select an item

■ **To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.**

▶"NO"

NOTE

- You may not be able to download a melody depending on the site or melody size.
- A downloaded melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played. While a melody of this type will be played in full when played back on a FOMA terminal, when it is set as a ring tone, only the designated section will be played.
- Some downloaded melodies may not be played correctly.
- When the file name of saved melody consists of only single-byte alphanumeric characters, the melody is saved using up to 36 single-byte characters of that file name. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between "/" and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "melodyxxx" (xxx are numerals).
- Downloaded melodies are played at the volume specified in "FOMAphone" in "Ring volume".

Important

- It is recommended to copy the stored melodies to the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.435) or Data Link Software (p.499) and FOMA USB Cable (optional). (You cannot save melodies in the miniSD memory card or transfer them to a PC if you are prohibited to attach them to mails or to output them from the FOMA terminal.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. Please note that NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility for such loss.

Downloading PDF data from Sites

Use this procedure to download a PDF-formatted data from a website and display it on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 400 files can be stored on the FOMA terminal (the number of files that can be stored depends on the amount of PDF data stored).

1 Sites screen (p.224)▶Select a PDF data file

When a PDF file that requires download of all the data is selected, the "PDF data" screen (p.379) appears after all the data is downloaded.
When a PDF data that enables you to download the specified pages is selected, the first downloaded page appears. The subsequent pages are downloaded when you move to those pages.
Operation for viewing a PDF document→p.381

To interrupt download

▶✉ (Quit) or CLR

When the message asking whether to save the partly downloaded data appears, select "YES" to save it. In this case, you can download the remaining data later.→p.235

If the password entry screen appears

Enter the password set to the PDF data.

To save the PDF data

▶● (FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

For a PDF data that requires download of all data, all the pages are saved. For a PDF data that enables you to download the specified pages, the data (pages) downloaded so far are saved. You can download the remaining pages later.→p.235

To close the view of PDF data

▶CLR

When the PDF data is not saved, a message asking whether to close the PDF appears. To close the PDF data, select "YES". To save the PDF data, select "NO". See "To save the PDF data" above.

Downloading remaining PDF data after downloading partially

When you save the partly downloaded PDF data, you can download the remaining pages (data) later. You can select between i-mode (FOMA network) or WLAN for the network to use for downloading.
The ways of downloading vary depending on the status of downloaded PDF data that can be checked with icons on the "PDF list" screen (p.379).

Icon	Description
PDF (pale blue)/ PDF (pale blue)	All pages are downloaded (no additional download is required).
PDF (pale blue)	Only a part has been downloaded by page. You can download the remaining data together or by specifying pages.
PDF (pale blue)/ PDF (pale blue)	Only a part has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. To view the document, download all the remaining pages (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully).

Continued on next page

<For partially downloaded (by page) PDF data (PDF (pale blue))>

1 PDF list screen (p.379)▶Select a PDF file to view

A message informing that the download will restart appears and then the "PDF data" screen (p.379) appears.

■ **When "MyDocument comm" (p.236) is set to "Comm setting"**

A screen for selecting or confirming the network to use is shown.

2 (Tool)▶Press ◀▶ on toolbar to view pages not downloaded.

When you try to view pages not downloaded, you are connected to the site to download the pages. Operation for viewing PDF data→p.381

■ **To specify the pages you want to download**

▶Select a page number indicated on toolbar▶Enter a page number you want to view

■ **To download all the remaining data together**

▶(FUNC)▶"DL remaining data"▶"YES"

■ **To save the PDF data**

▶(FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"

The document including newly downloaded pages is saved.

<For PDF data downloaded only partially because the download was interrupted, etc. ("PDF" (pale blue), "PDF" (pale blue))>

1 PDF list screen (p.379)▶Select a PDF file to view

Before the document is displayed, the message asking whether to download all the remaining data appears.

■ **When "MyDocument comm" (p.236) is set to "Comm setting"**

A screen for selecting or confirming the network to use is shown.

2 "YES"

You are connected to the site and downloading all the remaining data starts. After the downloading is complete, the "PDF data" screen (p.379) appears (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully).
You can also download all the remaining data by selecting "DL remaining data"→"YES"→"YES" from the function menu (PDF list screen).

■ **To save the PDF data**

▶(FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"

After the save, the icon changes to "PDF" (pale blue) or "PDF" (pale blue).

Setting the network for downloading PDF data

<MyDocument comm>

Default setting	Auto

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶"MyDocument settings"▶"MyDocument comm"▶Select any item

Auto	Auto-detects which network to use and download the PDF data, depending on the "Communication mode" settings and the signal strength.
i-Mode	Communicates through i-mode.
WLAN	Communicates through WLAN.
Comm setting	Confirms which network to use before downloading.

■ **When set to "Auto"**

The screen for selecting the network is not displayed when downloading. It automatically selects and connects to the network based on the "Setting connect mode" settings and signal strength (within range or out of range status). At such time, the following criteria are used to select the network.

Signal strength / "Setting connect mode" settings	FOMA in range/ WLAN in range	FOMA out of range/ WLAN in range	FOMA in range/ WLAN out of range	FOMA out of range/ WLAN out of range
DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA)	i-Mode	WLAN	i-Mode	i-Mode
DUAL mode (Prefer WLAN)	WLAN	WLAN	i-Mode	WLAN
Single mode (FOMA)	i-Mode			
Single mode (WLAN)	WLAN			

■ **When set to either "i-Mode" or "WLAN"**

The network selection screen is not shown, a connection is made to the selected network and the PDF data is downloaded.

■ **When set to "Comm setting"**

A screen for selecting or confirming the network to use is shown. When in FOMA Single mode, the "i-Mode" confirmation screen; when in WLAN Single mode, the "WLAN" confirmation screen is displayed. Also, when in DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA/Prefer WLAN), the screen for selecting either "i-Mode" or "WLAN" is displayed.

NOTE

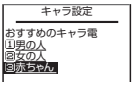
◆It may take long to display some PDF data.
◆PDF data may not be properly displayed if it contains formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.
◆Note that the communication fee for downloading large amounts of data will be expensive.
◆If you attempt to download a PDF file larger than 500K bytes, a confirmation message asking whether to download the file appears.
◆You cannot download a PDF file whose size is unknown or larger than 2M bytes.
◆Depending on sites, you may not be able to download PDF data.
◆When a document that you try to download has the same definition file (information file for defining PDF) as a document stored in the FOMA terminal (not in miniSD memory card), they are recognized as the same document. Consequently the document will not be downloaded and the document in the FOMA terminal will be displayed.
◆When you try to download PDF data with unsupported format, the download may not run and the screen showing only "" may appear. In this case, press to return to the previous screen.
◆Up to 36 single-byte characters can be saved for a name of a PDF file saved in Inbox or a user-created folder. If no file name is specified, the text between the last slash (/) and the period (.) in the URL from which the file was downloaded is used as the file name. However, if there is nothing between "/" and "." or in other cases, the file name is saved as "pdfXXX" (XXX are numerals). For file names of PDF data saved in the miniSD memory card, "PDFDCXXX.PDF" (XXX are numerals) is always used.

Downloading Chara-den Characters from Sites

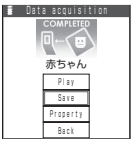
You can download your favorite Chara-den cartoon characters from i-mode sites and save the characters on your FOMA terminal.

- You can save up to 10 Chara-den characters, including the pre-installed ones.
- If you delete a pre-installed Chara-den character on the FOMA terminal and you want to re-install it, download it from "みんなNらんど" (only in Japanese) in "ケータイ電話メーカー" site.
  The QR code on the right can also be accessed.
  Accessing "みんなNらんど"
  →p.224

1 Sites screen (p.224)▶Select a Chara-den character



2 "Save"▶"YES"



■ **To play the Chara-den character**
▶"Play"
Controlling a Chara-den character→p.356

■ **To view the Chara-den information**
▶"Property"

NOTE

◆The maximum size of one Chara-den file you can download is 100K bytes.

Downloading Data Files from Sites

You can enormously expand the range of uses for your FOMA terminal by downloading additional data files such as dictionaries, face stamps, Deco-mail template files and WLAN profile simple setting files from i-mode sites.

- Up to five dictionaries, up to 720 images including face stamps and Deco-mail pictures, and up to 45 Deco-mail templates including the preinstalled data can be stored (the number of data that can be stored depends on the amount of data stored).
- Follow the network administrator's instructions when downloading a simple setting file to set a profile.

<Example: To download a dictionary file from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.224)▶ Select a data file



2 "Save"▶"YES"

■ **To display dictionary information**
▶"Property"

■ **When the memory for storing dictionaries is full**
▶Select a dictionary to delete▶"YES"
New dictionary is stored by overwriting the selected dictionary.

NOTE

◆The title used for a template is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).
◆You may not be able to download a data file depending on the site or file size.

<Phone To/Mail To/Web To/SIP To/IM To functions>

Using Phone To, Mail To, Web To, SIP To and IM To Functions

These functions provide quick and simple procedures for making voice, videophone or PushTalk calls, sending mail and instant messages and viewing websites using information (phone numbers, SIP addresses, e-mail addresses, URLs, etc.) displayed in a mail or on a site.

- You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To SIP To or IM To functions with mail sent from a PC.

Phone To function

You can make a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call to a phone number displayed in places like a website, from mail or PDF data.

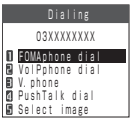
- When used for videophone calls, this function is called the AV Phone To function.
- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 26 single-byte characters as a phone number.

<Example: To make a FOMA voice call to a number displayed on a site>

1 Sites screen (p.224)▶ Select a phone number



2 "FOMAphone dial"



■ **To make a VoIP call**
▶"VoIPphone dial"
You can make a VoIP call with a prefix.→p.454

■ **To make a videophone call**
▶"V.phone"

■ **To make a PushTalk call**
▶"PushTalk dial"
This operation is available only for one-to-one call.

3 "Dial"



■ **To withhold your caller ID when "Caller ID Notification" is set to "ON"**
▶"Notify Caller ID"▶"Don't notify"

■ **To provide your caller ID when "Caller ID Notification" is set to "OFF"**
▶"Notify Caller ID"▶"Notify Caller"

■ **To follow the setting of "Caller ID Notification"**
▶"Notify Caller ID"▶"Cancel prefix"

NOTE

◆You may be able to use the Phone To function with the item in which a phone number is not indicated but linked (e.g. "please contact here").
◆You can use this function to make a call to the sender of a received mail or the receiver of a sent mail if the address is a phone number or in the "phone number@..." format.
◆You cannot use the Phone To function in the full browser screen.

Mail To function

You can send a mail to a mail address displayed in places like websites, in mail, PDF data or the full browser screen.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You cannot use the Mail To function if there are already 20 draft mail messages.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 or more e-mail addresses are displayed consecutively.
- Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.

<Example: To send a mail from the received mail detail screen>

1 Received mail detail screen (p.278)▶Select a mail address



2 Compose an i-mode mail and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.257.

NOTE

◆If an entered e-mail address is incorrect, correct the address before sending the mail.

◆You may be able to use the Mail To function with the item in which a mail address is not indicated but linked (e.g. “please contact here”).

Web To function

You can view the website of a URL displayed in places like a website, homepage, in mail or PDF data.

- Not all sites support this function.
- You can enter up to 512 single-byte characters for a URL.
- When using the Web To function, the browser that launches depends on the “Setting connect mode” settings.
  - When in FOMA Single mode, the i-mode browser launches.
  - When in WLAN Single mode, the WLAN browser launches.
  - When in DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA/Prefer WLAN), the browser you select, i-mode or WLAN, launches.
    - * Depending on the screen displaying a URL, you may not be able to choose which browser to launch.

<Example: To display a webpage from the received mail detail screen>

1 Received mail detail screen (p.278)▶Select a URL▶“i-mode” or “WLAN”



NOTE

◆You may be able to use the Web To function with an item in which a URL is not indicated but linked (e.g. “for more information”).

SIP To function

You can make voice call to the extension number of a SIP address displayed in places like a website, homepage, in mail or PDF data.

- This only works if “sip:” is displayed at the beginning of a SIP address.
- Not all sites support the SIP To function.
- Up to 50 single-byte characters can be used for a SIP address.

<Example: To make a call to an extension number displayed on a site>

1 Sites screen (p.224)▶Select a SIP address



2 “Dial”

■ **To make a call adding a prefix**

▶“Prefix”▶“Add prefix”▶Enter a prefix▶“Dial”

“Adding a prefix to a phone number (extension)”→p.454



NOTE

◆You cannot use the SIP To function in the full browser screen.

IM To function

You can send an instant message to a SIP address displayed in places like a website, in mail or PDF data.

- This only works if "im:" is displayed at the beginning of a SIP address.
- Not all sites support the IM To function.
- Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for a SIP address.

<Example: To send an instant message on a site screen>

1 Sites screen (p.224)▶ Select a SIP address



2 Composing and sending instant messages

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 2 to 4 on "Composing and Sending an Instant Message" (p.463).

NOTE

◆While you can create an instant message during i-mode communication, you cannot send it.
◆You cannot use the IM To function in the full browser screen.

Making i-mode Settings

1 (MENU)▶(i-mode)▶"i-mode settings"

The "i-mode settings" screen appears.

2 Select any item



i-mode settings

Scroll (default: 1 line)	Sets the number of scrolling lines on a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/ MessageF.
Font size (default: Standard)	Sets the font size on a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/MessageF.
Set image disp. (default: ON)	Sets the image display setting for a site page or the detail screen for screen memo or MessageR/ MessageF. When "OFF" is set, "" icon appears instead of an image. Flash movies are not displayed.
i-motion setting	Specifies the settings for i-motion.
• **Automatic replay**	"Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion"→p.249
• **i-motion type**	"Setting the i-motion type to download"→p.249
i-Channel setting	Sets the ticker and its speed for i-channel. "Making the i-channel Settings"→p.252
Message auto-display (default: MessageR preferred)	Sets the automatic display mode for MessageR/MessageF.
Start attachment (auto) (default: ON)	Sets whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening a MessageR/MessageF.
Use phone information (default: YES)	"Specifying whether to use stored data in Flash movies"→p.241
Message list display (default: 2 lines)	Sets the number of lines on the message list screen.
Home URL	Sets whether to enable the home URL display. Up to 256 single-byte characters can be entered for a URL.
• **Invalid** (default)	Disables the home URL display.
• **Valid**	Enables the home URL display. Select the Home URL field and enter a URL to be stored.
Sound effect (default: ON)	Sets whether to play sound effects for Flash movies on a site or screen memo.
Check settings	Enables you to check the settings specified in "i-mode settings".
Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. The last URL reverts to the iMenu URL once cleared.
Reset	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Resets the settings specified in "i-mode settings" to the defaults.

NOTE

<Scroll>
◆When displaying the SSL certificate, you can scroll one line at a time even if this function is not set to "1 line".

<Set image disp.>
◆Even if "ON" is selected, the "" icon appears if an image cannot be downloaded.

<Sound effect>
◆Even if "ON" is set, some Flash movies may not make any sound.

<Reset last URL>
◆Selecting "Last URL" displays the iMenu screen at the time of purchase or after you reset the i-mode settings or last URL.

Setting the connection timeout

<Set connection timeout> Default setting: 60 seconds

This option sets the delay after which a FOMA terminal automatically stops trying to connect when a site is busy and there is no response.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**“Connection setting”▶“Set connection timeout”▶Select an item**

Select “60 seconds”, “90 seconds” or “Unlimited”.

NOTE

◆Even when you select “Unlimited”, the connection may drop out due to poor signal reception.

Setting a host different from i-mode host (ISP connection)

<Host selection> MENU 81 Default setting: i-mode

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

Use this procedure to select a different host for using a service other than i-mode. If you set a host other than i-mode, you can no longer use i-mode or i-mode mail.

- You can store up to 10 hosts besides “i-mode”.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**“Connection setting”▶“Host selection”▶Highlight“<Not recorded>” and press (Mail) (Edit)▶Enter your security code▶Select any item**

Host name	Sets a host name. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Host number	Sets a host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.
Host address	Sets a host address. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.
Host address2	Sets a host address 2. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.

2 Press (Mail) (Finish) after changing the settings

NOTE

◆You cannot change hosts while using i-mode. End i-mode before changing the host.

◆Note that costs of packet communication while you are connected to a host other than i-mode are not covered by the “Pake-Houdai” deal.

◆To change a stored “User defined host”, use the procedure for storing the host.

◆To delete a stored “User defined host”, select a host you want to delete, select “Delete” from the function menu, enter your security code and select “YES”. If the deleted host was set as the host to connect, the host returns to “i-mode”.

◆If you use a different FOMA card (UIM) from that used when the host was stored, the host may revert to “i-mode”.

◆If you change a host to connect, the i-channel ticker is not displayed. When information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing (ch), the ticker appears automatically.

◆If you change a host to connect, the i-channel information may not be updated. To receive the latest information, press (ch) to display the channel list.

Specifying whether to use the stored data in Flash movies

<Use phone information>

Use this function to specify whether to use the data stored on the FOMA terminal when running Flash movies.

- Some Flash movies use the data stored on the FOMA terminal. To enable Flash movies to use the stored data, set “YES” for “Use phone information” in “i-mode settings”. The default setting is “YES”. Such movies may use the following types of stored data:
  - Battery level
  - Signal strength
  - Date and time
  - Ring volume setting
  - Bilingual setting
  - Model data

1 i-mode settings screen (p.240)▶“Use phone information”▶Select an item

Select “YES” or “NO”.

<Receive message>

When You Receive a Message

When a FOMA terminal is in a FOMA service area, MessageR and MessageF are automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode center.

- Up to 100 MessageR and 100 MessageF can be saved on a FOMA terminal. The number that can actually be saved varies between 20 and 100 for MessageR and between 10 and 100 for MessageF depending on the amount of data in each saved message.

Viewing newly received messages

- To prevent a FOMA terminal from automatically displaying new messages when they arrive, select "OFF" in "Message auto-display" (p.240).

The " R " (white) or " F " (white) icon flashes and the "MessageR Receiving..." or "MessageF Receiving..." message appears.



- Once reception is finished, the icon stops flashing and remains displayed.
- To stop the reception while receiving a message, press (i) (Quit) or CLR for 1 second or or longer. However, you may still receive a message depending on the timing of the cancellation.
- Once reception is finished, the numbers of each type of mail and MessageR/MessageF received are displayed on the reception results screen for roughly 15 seconds. The display time for the reception results screen may vary depending on the "Receive ringing time" setting.



- To view the MessageR or MessageF list screen, select "MessageR" or "MessageF".
- If you receive a message while on the standby screen, the contents of the received MessageR or MessageF are displayed for roughly 15 seconds. However, if you display the standby screen while another function is being used, messages are not automatically displayed.



- While you perform an operation such as scrolling on the MessageR or MessageF screen, the message continues to be displayed.

When automatic display is disabled

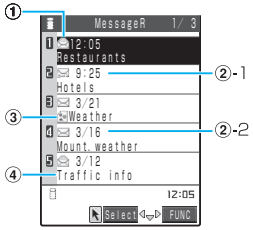
The reception results screen appears when you receive a MessageR or MessageF while using a FOMA terminal.

NOTE

- When a new MessageR/MessageF arrives, the FOMA terminal receives the message together with other MessageR/MessageF or i-mode mail held at the i-mode center.
- Received MessageR/MessageF are not automatically displayed if the current screen is not the standby screen, an i-αppli is running, a FOMA terminal is in Public mode (Driving mode), Dial lock is set or Original lock is set to "i-mode/WLAN" or "Disp. recv. mail/msg.".
- If you have already stored the maximum allowable number of MessageR/MessageF when you receive a new MessageR/MessageF, the oldest MessageR/MessageF that is neither unread nor protected is deleted before the new message is received.
- When the " R " (red) or " F " (red) icon appears, the FOMA terminal can receive no more MessageR/MessageF. (Two types of MessageR and MessageF status may be displayed simultaneously such as R F (R, F: red), R F (R: red, F: white) or R F (R: white, F: red).) To receive a new message, delete the unnecessary MessageR/MessageF or read the unread MessageR/MessageF until those icons no longer appear.
- When the " R " (white) or " F " (white) icon appears, there is a MessageR/MessageF held at the i-mode center. Use "Check new messages" to receive your MessageR/MessageF held at the center.
- When the " R "(red) or " F " (red) icon appears, the space for your MessageR/MessageF at the i-mode center is full. Delete the unnecessary MessageR/MessageF or read the unread MessageR/MessageF before checking for messages held at the center.
- After displayed automatically, messages are still marked as unread on the MessageR or MessageF list screen. However, if you perform an operation such as scrolling of screen while a message is being automatically displayed, the message is then marked as read on the MessageR or MessageF list screen.
- When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and MessageR/MessageF at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.
- You can download the ToruCa (detail) from ToruCa attached to a MessageR/MessageF.

Guide to the MessageR/ MessageF screen

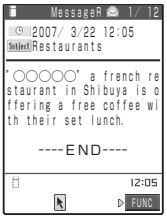
- Some of the icons displayed on the MessageR and MessageF list screens are also shown on the MessageR and MessageF detail screens. Some icons are not displayed.



List screen (2-line display)



List screen (1-line display)



Detail screen

① Shows the MessageR/MessageF status.

: Unread MessageR/MessageF

: Read MessageR/MessageF

: Unread and protected MessageR/ MessageF

: Read and protected MessageR/ MessageF

② Shows the message arrival time and date.

②-1 The time is shown for MessageR/ MessageF that arrived today.

②-2 The date is shown for MessageR/ MessageF that arrived yesterday or earlier.

③ Shows any attached or pasted file.

: Attached or pasted melody.

: Multiple attached or pasted melodies, some of which are invalid.

: All attached or pasted melodies are invalid.

: Attached images.

: Multiple attached images, some of which are invalid.

: All attached images are invalid.

: Multiple pasted files.

: Attached ToruCa.

: Multiple attached ToruCa, some of which are invalid.

: All the attached ToruCa are invalid.

The following icons appear when 1-line display is selected for a list screen:

: Attached or pasted file.

: Multiple attached or pasted files, some of which are invalid.

: All the attached or pasted files are invalid.

④ Shows the message subject.

<Check new messages>

Checking for Messages

Default setting	Check for all (mail, MessageR and MessageF)

- MessageR and MessageF delivered to the i-mode center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, in the following situations, your messages are held at the i-mode center:
  - The FOMA terminal is turned off.
  - "" appears
  - Message boxes are full
  - During a videophone call or remote monitoring
  - Self mode is set
  - During a PushTalk call
  - The FOMA terminal is connected to the FirstPass center
- Use "Set check new messages" (p.291) to set the inquiry items.

1 (MENU) ▶ (i-mode) ▶ "Check new messages"

The check new messages screen appears.
The following procedures are also available to check new messages.

- ( ) (mode)▶"Check new messages"
- ( ) (MAIL) (1 second or longer)
- ( ) (MAIL)▶"Check new messages"

The FOMA terminal checks for "Mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF" in that order.

The " " (white), " R " (white) and " F " (white) icons flash during checking, and the "Mail Checking..." message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and MessageR/MessageF.

The numbers of newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF are displayed.

Continued on next page

■ **To cancel the inquiry**

▶Hold down (i) (Quit) or CLR (for 1 second or longer) during the inquiry (1 second or longer)

Even if you cancel an inquiry, you may still receive the i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF depending on when cancelled.

2 Check the numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF messages

NOTE

◆When the "R" (white) or "F" (white) icon appears, there is a MessageR or MessageF held at the i-mode center. Once the space allotted at the i-mode center for holding your MessageR or MessageF is full, the "R" (red) or "F" (red) icon appears.

◆The table below shows the maximum number of MessageR/MessageF that can be held at the i-mode center and the maximum storage period.

	Max. number of messages	Max. storage period
MessageR	300	72 hours
MessageF	300	72 hours

Once the maximum number of stored messages is reached, messages are deleted as a new message arrives, starting with the oldest one.

◆Even if a MessageR or MessageF is held at the i-mode center, "F" (white) or "R" (white) may not appear if the FOMA terminal is turned off or "R 999 F 25" appears.

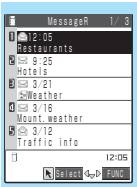
<MessageR/MessageF>

Viewing Messages in the Message Box

- When a FOMA terminal receives a MessageR/MessageF from the i-mode center, " R " (white) or " F " (white) icon appears at the top of the screen.

1 MENU ▶ i-mode ▶"Message" ▶"MessageR" or "MessageF"

The "Message list" screen appears.



Message list

Function menu➡p.244

2 Select a message you want to view

The "Message detail" screen appears.

To display the next or previous message on the message detail screen, use ⊙.

Press CLR on the message detail screen to return to the message list screen.



Message detail

Function menu➡p.245

NOTE

◆Keys such as "OK" and "Cancel" may appear in a MessageR/MessageF. The keys can be used in the same way as those on a site.

Function menu (Message list screen)

Display all	Reverts a sorted or filtered display to the original (all items shown in reverse chronological order).
Sort	Sorts messages according to the specified criterion.
Filter	Displays only the messages that meet the specified criterion.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects MessageR/MessageF.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all the protected MessageR/MessageF.
No. of messages	Displays the number of stored MessageR/MessageF, unread messages and protected messages.
Delete	Deletes MessageR/MessageF.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted MessageR/MessageF.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ⊙ to select a checkbox (☐) ▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple MessageR/MessageF.
• **Delete read**	Deletes the read MessageR/MessageF.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the stored MessageR/MessageF.

NOTE

<Sort>
- The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
- Sort and Filter are released when you exit the MessageR/MessageF list screen.

<Filter>
- To return to the original display, select “Display all”.
- Sort and Filter are released when you exit the MessageR/MessageF list screen.

<Delete this>
- You can also delete the unread MessageR/MessageF.
- You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

<Delete selected>
- You can also delete the unread MessageR/MessageF.
- You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

<Delete read>
- The protected and read MessageR/MessageF are not deleted.

<Delete all>
- The unread MessageR/MessageF are also deleted.
- The protected MessageR/MessageF are not deleted.
- When only filtered MessageR/MessageF are displayed, selecting “Delete all” deletes all the unprotected MessageR/MessageF shown on the current list screen.

Function menu (Message detail screen)

Add to phonebook	Adds a phone number, SIP address, e-mail address or URL displayed in MessageR/MessageF to the phonebook. “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook” →p.119 “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook” →p.121
Save melody	Saves a melody attached to or pasted into MessageR/MessageF.
Save image	Saves an image attached to MessageR/MessageF. “Downloading Images from Sites and Messages” →p.234
Save ToruCa	Saves a ToruCa attached to MessageR/MessageF.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects MessageR/MessageF.
Delete	Deletes the MessageR/MessageF displayed on the message detail screen.

NOTE

<Save melody>
- Select an attached melody to play it.
- When you save a pasted melody, its title is saved instead of the file name. If a melody has no title, its file name is saved.
- Some saved melodies may not be played correctly.

<Save image>
- All attached images are displayed regardless of the “Set image disp.” setting.

<Delete>
- You cannot delete the protected MessageR/MessageF.

Using SSL Certificate

Use this procedure to check the details of an SSL certificate or to set it to valid or invalid.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶“Connection setting”▶“Certificate”



2 Select a certificate▶Check the details

■ **To validate or invalidate an SSL certificate**

▶Highlight a certificate▶(FUNC)▶“Valid/Invalid”

NOTE
- The default settings for all certificates are “Valid”.
- The “” icon appears when a certificate is set to “Valid”. The “” icon appears when a certificate is set to “Invalid”.
- If an SSL certificate is set to “Invalid”, you cannot view SSL pages with that SSL certificate.
- DoCoMo Cert2 is always set to “Valid” and this setting cannot be changed.

Setting FirstPass

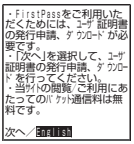
The user certificate proves that the user is a bona-fide FOMA service subscriber. A downloaded user certificate is saved on your FOMA card (UIM) and used on the site compatible with the client authentication.

Connecting to the FirstPass Center

Use this procedure to apply for issuance of and download the user certificate.

- You can apply for issuance of the user certificate or download it from the FirstPass Center.
- User certificates cannot be used with a FOMA card (blue).
- Date and time must be set before connecting to the FirstPass Center.→p.50
- The screens and procedures used at the FirstPass Center are subject to change.

1 (MENU)▶i-mode▶**"Client certificate"▶Check the details▶"English"**



2 **"Request your certificate"**



■ **If you are using FirstPass for the first time**

Select "The usage regulation (Japanese version only)" and carefully read the information provided.

■ **To apply invalidation**

Select "Other settings" then "Revoke your certificate".
Enter your PIN2 code and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

3 **Check the details▶"Continue"**

4 **Enter the PIN2 code**

PIN2 code→p.168



5 **Check the message▶"Download"▶Check the details▶"Continue"▶"Menu"**

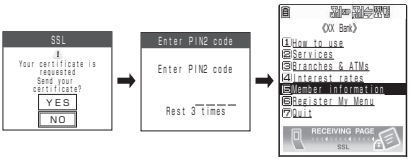
The confirmation message appears.
The FirstPass menu screen reappears after the downloading is complete.

NOTE

- Packet communication charge for connection to the FirstPass Center is free.
- Before using the FirstPass Center, select "Usage regulations (in Japanese only)" and read the information.
- You cannot use the following functions during connection to the FirstPass Center.
  - PushTalk
  - Sending or receiving i-mode mails (sending or receiving SMS is available)
  - Check new messages (Check new SMS is available)
  - Sending or receiving speed photo mails
  - Receiving MessageR/MessageF
  - Downloading i-motion
  - Web To function
- Always send a certificate request before downloading a new or updated user certificate. You cannot download a certificate without first requesting the certificate.
- Once an application for user certificate invalidation has been completed, you can no longer access FirstPass-compliant sites that require that user certificate.
- To use FirstPass after completion of invalidation, request the user certificate again and download it.
- To check a downloaded user certificate, see "Using SSL Certificate" (p.245).

Using a user certificate to connect to a site

1 **Sites screen (p.224)▶Select a user certificate▶Confirm the user certificate transmission▶"YES"▶Enter your PIN2 code**



NOTE

- Packet communication charge for connection to FirstPass-compliant sites is covered by "Pake-Houdai" deal.
- FirstPass is also available in full browser. However, the packet communication charge for connecting to FirstPass-compliant sites is not covered by the "Pake-Houdai" deal.
- If you connect to a FirstPass-compliant site without a user certificate, a message informing you of that fact appears. You may still connect to the site and view subsequent pages by selecting "YES", but note that it may not be safe to send your personal information (credit card number, contact details, etc.) on the site. To disconnect, select "NO". When the "SSL session was terminated" message appears, press ● to return to the original screen. Reconnect the site after downloading the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

■ Notes on using FirstPass

- FirstPass is a DoCoMo's digital authentication service. FirstPass enables client authentication, where a site authenticates the FOMA terminal.
- FirstPass can be used either when a FOMA terminal is directly connected to the Internet or when it is connected via a PC. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the Internet via a PC, the FirstPass PC software provided on the "CD-ROM for FOMA N902iL" bundled with the FOMA terminal must be installed on the PC. For more information, refer to the "FirstPassManual" (PDF) contained in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder on the CD-ROM. (The "FirstPassManual" is only in Japanese.)
  To view the "FirstPassManual" (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required.
  If the software is not installed on your PC, you can install Adobe Reader from the CD-ROM. See the Adobe Reader Help for details.
- When applying for issuance of a user certificate, carefully read and agree to the "FirstPass usage regulations" shown on your screen before proceeding with your application.
- To use a user certificate, you need to enter your PIN2 code (p.168). Take great care to prevent unauthorized persons from using your FOMA card (UIM) or PIN2 code since all the actions performed subsequent to the PIN2 code entry will be assumed to have been performed by you.
- If your FOMA card (UIM) is lost or stolen, you can have your user certificates invalidated by calling "Inquiries" described on the back cover.
- NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for and accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the sites or the content provided by FirstPass-compliant sites. Any disputes are to be resolved between the customer and the FirstPass-compliant site.
- NTT DoCoMo and its authentication company provide no guarantee regarding security or secrecy in the use of FirstPass and SSL certificates. Such certificates are used entirely at the discretion of the user.

Changing the Certificate Host

Default setting
DoCoMo

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

Use this procedure to set the host for downloading the user certificate.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Connection setting" ▶ "Certificate host"

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press ✉ (Edit) ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item

Default URL	Sets the URL of the initial screen for the host. You can enter up to 100 single-byte characters.
Host number	Sets a host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.

3 Once settings are complete, press ✉ (Finish)

NOTE

◆To change a stored "User defined host", use the procedure for storing the host.

◆To delete a stored "User defined host", select "Delete" from the function menu.

What is i-motion?

i-motion is a file containing video, voice and music data and downloaded from an i-motion site to your FOMA terminal. You can also set an i-motion as a ring tone.
Chaku-motion→p.138

● i-motion types

i-motion can be broadly divided into two types. The type of i-motion downloaded depends on the site or file type.

Type		Description
Type	Replay type	
Standard type (Can be saved*1)	Playable after downloading (Up to 500K bytes)	Can be played after the whole data is downloaded.
	Playable while downloading (Up to 500K bytes)	Can be downloaded and played at the same time.
Streaming type (Cannot be saved)	Playable while downloading (Up to 2M bytes*2)	Can be downloaded and played at the same time. The data is deleted after played. Cannot be played repeatedly or stored on the FOMA terminal.

*1: Some i-motion files cannot be saved.
*2: It is possible to play about 400M bytes with WLAN browser.

NOTE

◆The FOMA terminal can play i-motion in the MP4 format (Mobile MP4).
◆The i-motion of ASF format cannot be downloaded.

<Download i-motion>

Downloading i-motion from Sites

Downloading i-motion from sites to play

1 (MENU)▶i-mode▶"iMenu"▶"English iMenu"▶"Menu List"▶Select a site

2 Select i-motion

The "Data acquisition" screen appears when the data download is completed.

■ **To cancel the download**
▶(✉) (Quit)

■ **Standard-type i-motion**

Use the "Automatic replay" setting in "i-motion setting" (p.249) to specify whether to play standard i-motion automatically while downloading. Some i-motion may be played after downloaded.

■ **Streaming-type i-motion**

You cannot download streaming i-motion if "Standard type" is selected in "i-motion type". When you receive a message "Invalid content Change i-motion type for replay":

- "i-motion type" in "i-motion setting" (p.249) is set to "Standard type". Select "Site settings" → "i-motion type" from the function menu, change the settings to "Std · Streaming type", and then download the i-motion again.

When you receive a message "Replay streaming?":

- Select "YES" to play the i-motion. Select "NO" to return to the site screen.
- To cancel playback in progress after selecting "YES", press (✉) (Quit).

3 "Play"

Plays the downloaded i-motion.
"Operation during i-motion playback"→p.350



Data acquisition

NOTE

◆Untitled i-motion appears as "No title" on the data acquisition screen.
◆Some sites and i-motion do not allow playback during download.
◆Even if you stop playing a standard-type i-motion file during download, the download continues.
◆Even if "Automatic replay" is set to "ON", the data played during download is not automatically played after download.
◆Some i-motion are restricted to be played. "🕒" appears at the beginning of the title of an i-motion with restrictions on the playback count, playback period or time limit. i-motion with restrictions on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period. If the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal for a long period of time, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case, i-motion with restrictions on the playback period or time limit cannot be played.
"i-motion information"→p.349
◆Some downloaded i-motion may not be played correctly.
◆When you download and play standard-type i-motion at the same time (the first replay only), you cannot play fast, step or slow. When playing the streaming-type, you cannot pause the playback either. Press (✉) (Quit) to stop playback.

◆If data download is interrupted due to problems with signal reception or the downloaded data exceeds the maximum data size, a message saying that the data could not be downloaded and the data acquisition screen appear, on the condition that “Play”, “Save” or “Property” can appear on the data acquisition screen.
◆The reception status may affect the replay or motion during download. After the data download is completed, you can play the standard-type i-motion repeatedly, but not the streaming-type.
◆To play Chaku-Uta-Full® from a screen memo, select “Add screen memo” from the Data acquisition (p.248) function menu to save the Chaku-Uta-Full® as a “screen memo” (p.232).
However, you cannot save the data acquisition screen of the following i-motion as screen memo:
• i-motion with playback restrictions
• Streaming-type i-motion
• Incomplete i-motion
◆i-motion files saved in screen memos are not listed in the i-motion folder of Data box. Therefore, you cannot use the playlist or Stand-by display function with these i-motion files.

Saving i-motion

When “Save” can be selected on the data acquisition screen, the i-motion can be saved to your FOMA terminal.
- Some i-motion files may not be saved.
- Up to 100 i-motion files can be saved, including movies shot by the camera. The maximum number of i-motion files that can be saved varies between 4 and 100 depending on the amount of i-motion data.
- i-motion folder→p.334

1 Data acquisition screen (p.248)▶“Save”▶“YES”

■ **To cancel saving**
▶“NO”
Returns to the data acquisition screen without saving the i-motion.

2 Select the destination folder
You receive a message that the i-motion was saved.

NOTE
◆An i-motion without a title is listed as “movieXXX” (XXX are numerals).
◆You can set an i-motion downloaded from a site for the standby screen.→p.148
Some i-motion files cannot be set for the standby screen.
◆You cannot use the Phone To, Mail To, Web To or SIP To functions from an i-motion set for the standby screen.

Viewing i-motion details

You can check the i-motion details, including the title, file size and replay restrictions.

1 Data acquisition screen (p.248)▶“Property”
The i-motion info screen appears. Use ◯ to scroll the display up and down to check the details such as the remaining replay count, playback period and time limit.
After checking the information, press CLR.

Setting i-motion

Specifying whether to automatically play an i-motion

<Automatic replay> Default setting: ON

You can specify whether to automatically play an i-motion when:
- Downloading i-motion from a site
- Downloading i-motion from the received mail screen
- Displaying a screen memo of the data acquisition screen
- The “Automatic replay” setting is available only for standard-type i-motion. Streaming-type i-motion is automatically played regardless of this setting.
i-motion types→p.248

1 i-mode settings screen (p.240)▶“i-motion setting”▶“Automatic replay”▶Select any item

ON	Automatically plays the i-motion after downloading. Some i-motion files are played while downloading.
OFF	Opens the data acquisition screen without automatically playing the i-motion after downloading.

Setting the i-motion type to download

<i-motion type> Default setting: Standard type

Use this procedure to set the type of i-motion you want to download from a site.

1 i-mode settings screen (p.240)▶“i-motion setting”▶“i-motion type”▶Select any item

Standard type	Downloads only standard-type i-motion.
Std・Streaming type	Downloads standard-type and streaming-type i-motion.

Continued on next page

NOTE

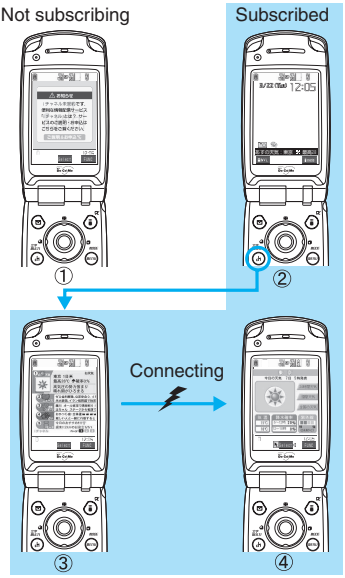
◆When you want to download a streaming-type i-motion, you need to select “Std · Streaming type” in “i-motion type”. If it is not selected and you try to download a streaming-type i-motion, you receive a message saying that you need to change the i-motion type and cannot download the streaming-type i-motion.

What is i-channel?

i-channel is a service whereby news, weather and other information is sent as graphical information to i-channel compatible terminals from DoCoMo or IPs (information service providers). Your FOMA terminal periodically receives the latest information and displays it as ticker on the standby screen. Pressing the i-channel key (ch) displays the channel list (p.251). Selecting a channel from the list provides you with rich, detailed information.

This service provides only Japanese channels.

- For precautions and details on how to use i-channel, see “Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]”.
- i-channel services cannot be used while in the single mode (WLAN).



* The above is only an image. The actual screens will look different.

① You have not subscribed to i-channel.

② After you subscribe to i-channel, a ticker automatically appears on the standby screen when you receive information or open the channel list.

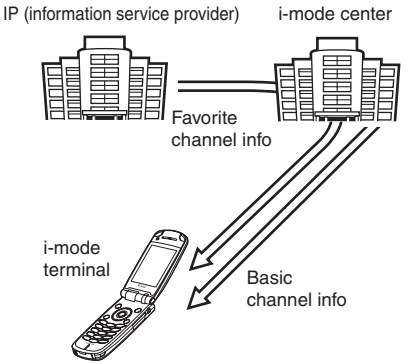
③ Pressing ch on the standby screen displays the channel list. The list displays information delivered on each channel.

④ Selecting a channel allows you to view detailed information on that channel.

■ Channel types

The channels are categorized into two types: “Basic channels” and “Favorite channels”. “Basic channels” are provided by NTT DoCoMo and registered by default, so that you can view the channels immediately after you start subscribing to i-channel. The packet communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the “Basic channels” is included in the i-channel service charge. “Favorite channels” are provided by IPs (information service providers) other than NTT DoCoMo. You can select and register any channels of your liking. The packet communication charge for automatically updating the information sent for the “Favorite channels” is not included in the i-channel service charge.

Only “Basic channels” information can be displayed as a ticker on the standby screen.



* i-channel is a pay service you need to subscribe to. (To subscribe you need an i-mode contract.)

• How to operate→p.251

NOTE

◆Information charges may apply for viewing some “Favorite channels”.

◆For some “Favorite channels”, you may need to apply to the IP (information service provider) that offers these channels in order to view them.

◆A packet communication charge will apply for viewing detailed information from the channel list on both “Basic channels” and “Favorite channels” in addition to the i-channel service charge.

■ Trial service

If you have subscribed to i-mode and use an i-channel-compatible terminal but have never subscribed to i-channel, you can try the "Basic channels" free of charge for a given period. A packet communication charge will apply for viewing detailed information from the channel list.

- For precautions or details on how to use a trial service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

NOTE

◆As a rule, the trial service will automatically start after a given time when the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted to start using the i-channel-compatible terminal. If it does not start automatically, press ch to start it.

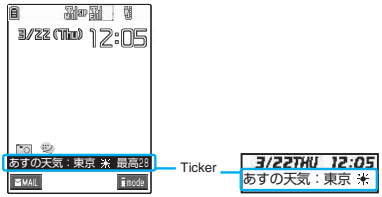
◆You can use the trial service only once per subscriber line.

◆The trial service will end automatically after a given period. To quit the service before the expiration, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

● Ticker text on the standby screen/indicator display

If you subscribe to i-channel, delivered information will automatically appear as a ticker on the standby screen or indicator display.

- ⇆ flashes while i-channel information is being delivered.
- You can set the ticker display mode in "i-Channel setting".→p.252



NOTE

◆Ticker appears even if i-motion or i-αppli is set as the standby screen background.

◆Ticker does not appear in Public mode (Driving mode), in Power saver mode, or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted.

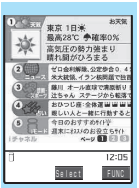
◆The standby screen can display ticker even in Self mode.

Accessing a Site from the Channel List

A channel list is available for accessing the i-channel information site. The channel screen can display up to 15 channels including official ones and general ones.

1 On the standby screen▶ch

The "Channel list" screen appears.
Selecting "i-Channel" from the i-mode menu also opens the i-channel list screen.



Channel list

Function menu➡p.251

2 Select a channel item

NOTE

◆If you have not subscribed to i-channel, launching the i-channel displays a message indicating that you have not subscribed to i-channel. Selecting "ご説明&お申込" (Guide & Subscription) on the screen introduces you to i-channel and prompts you to subscribe to i-channel. Depending on the communication status, a message may appear indicating that you have not subscribed to i-channel, and the previous screen may reappear.

◆In some cases, you may receive information when displaying the channel list.

◆Receiving information does not sound a ring tone or vibrate the FOMA terminal. The incoming call lamp does not light or flash.

◆You can change the i-channel host, though it usually does not need to change.→p.241

◆A message may appear indicating that channel information cannot be delivered if:

- A call or message is incoming
- The FOMA terminal was initialized
- The FOMA card (UIM) was replaced
- The host was changed

Function menu (Channel list screen)

Add desktop icon	Pastes a desktop icon for opening the channel list screen onto the standby screen. "Using Desktop Icons"→p.158
Retry	Shows the current channel list screen from the top.
Sound effect	Sets whether to sound a tone (ON/OFF) on the channel list screen.

NOTE

◆"Sound effect" set for the channel list screen affects "Sound effect" under "i-mode settings" (p.240).

<i-Channel setting>

Making the i-channel Settings

Default settings	Telop display setting: ON (Indicator display OFF) Telop speed setting: Normal

Set whether to display a ticker on the standby screen or in the indicator display. Also set the scroll speed of ticker.

- Setting the Telop display setting to “Receiving” displays a ticker twice when the latest information is delivered.
- Selecting “ON” for the indicator display displays a ticker as follows:
  - Setting the Telop display setting to “ON” displays a ticker twice in the indicator display each time the latest information is delivered or the FOMA terminal is folded.
  - Setting the Telop display setting to “Receiving” displays a ticker twice when the latest information is delivered.
  - It does not go into Power saver mode while the ticker is running in the indicator display.

1 MENU ▶ i-mode ▶ “i-mode settings” ▶ “i-Channel setting” ▶ Select any item

Telop display setting	Sets whether to display channel information as a ticker on the standby screen (ON/Receiving/OFF). If you select “ON” or “Receiving”, make the additional setting of whether to display in the indicator display when the FOMA terminal is folded (ON/OFF).
Telop speed setting	Sets the ticker scroll speed (Normal/High/Low).

NOTE

◆The i-Channel setting cannot be changed in Public mode (Driving mode) or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted.

<Telop display setting>

◆If you unsubscribe from i-mode before unsubscribing from i-channel, or after you unsubscribe from i-channel, the Telop display setting remains unchanged but a ticker will not automatically appear.

Mail

Mail Exchange by Three Types of Functions 254
What is i-mode Mail? 254
Displaying Mail Menu..... Mail menu 256

Composing i-mode mail/Deco-mail

Creating and Sending i-mode Mail ..... Compose message/Send 257
Composing and Sending Deco-mail ..... Deco-mail 261
Self-Decorating a Mail to Messages ..... Auto Deco-mail 263
Using Templates to Create Deco-mail 264
Attaching Files ..... Attach Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion/ToruCa 265
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later..... Save i-mode mail 267
Adding Addresses in Mailing Lists 268

Receiving and manipulating i-mode mail

When You Receive i-mode Mail ..... Auto receive mail 268
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively ..... Receive option 270
Checking for i-mode Mail ..... Check new messages 271
Replying to i-mode Mail ..... Reply to mail 272
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Destination ..... Forward mail 272
Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook..... 273
Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail ..... Save melody 273
Saving Images in Image Mail..... Receive image mail 274
Playing and Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail.... i-motion mail 274
Viewing/Saving ToruCa..... Receiving ToruCa 274

Using mail boxes

Viewing Mail in the Inbox and Outbox..... Inbox/Outbox 274

Using mail records

Using Mail Records..... Sent address list/Received address list 288

Specifying mail settings

Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions ..... Mail settings 289

Using a chat mail

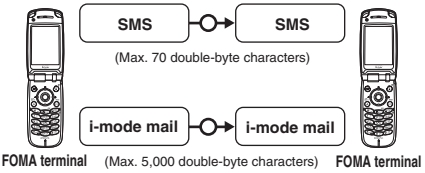
Composing and Sending Chat Mail ..... Compose chat/Send 294
Registering Members in a Chat Group 297

Using SMS (Short Message)

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message) ..... Compose SMS/Send 299
When You Receive SMS (Short Message)..... Receive SMS 300
Checking for SMS (Short Message) ..... Check new SMS 301
Setting SMS (Short Message) Options..... SMS settings 302
Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM) ..... UIM operation 302

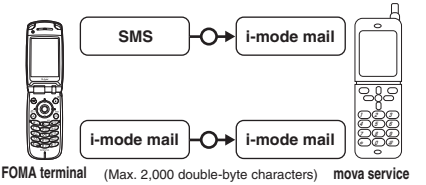
Mail Exchange by Three Types of Functions

FOMA terminal-to-FOMA terminal



FOMA terminal-to-mova service i-mode terminal

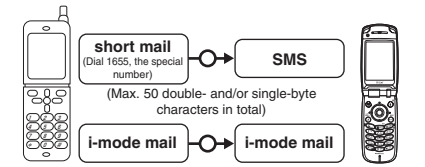
SMS sent from the FOMA terminal is received as an i-mode mail at the mova service i-mode terminal.



* If “SMS report req.” (p.300) is set to “ON”, you cannot send SMS to the mova terminal.

mova service i-mode terminal-to-FOMA terminal

short mail* sent from a mova service i-mode terminal can be received on a FOMA terminal as SMS.



*: short mail is a service that you can exchange text messages using the mova service mobile phone.

What is i-mode Mail?

Your FOMA terminal provides the mail function that is available for sending and receiving i-mode mail and SMS.
i-mode is required for subscribing to use i-mode mail.
How to send and receive i-mode mail
→pp.257, 268

- You can send and receive SMS (text-basis message exchange) between other FOMA terminals without i-mode subscription. How to send and receive SMS →pp.299, 300
- You cannot send/receive or check new mail and SMS with the WLAN single mode.

● i-mode mail

Mail exchange is available between i-mode mail and an e-mail via the Internet as well as between the i-mode terminals (a mova terminal included) simply by subscribing to i-mode.
In addition to the message body, you may attach up to 10 files such as Melodies, JPEG and ToruCa. Deco-mail is also supported, enabling you to change the font color, font size or background color of message text to easily create rich expressive mails.
Your mail address is assigned as follows at the time of i-mode subscription:

■ For new i-mode subscription

The part of the address preceding @ (at mark) is combined with a random alphanumeric. Confirm your mail address after i-mode subscription.
Example: abc1234~789xyz@docomo.ne.jp
<To confirm your mail address>
iMenu screen▶English iMenu▶Options▶Mail Settings▶“Confirm Mail Address”

- Only the part of the address preceding @ (at mark) is available for exchanging between the i-mode terminals (a mova terminal included) to send a mail.
- Use the full address including “@docomo.ne.jp” when receiving an e-mail from PC.
- Sending i-mode mail →p.257
- Receiving i-mode mail →p.268
- For details of the i-mode service, refer to the latest “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

■ Receive option

You can check the subject of a mail stored on the i-mode center and then select any mail to be received or delete a mail at the i-mode center before receiving. →p.270

■ **Specifying mail settings**

You can customize your mail settings as follows:

<Setting procedure>
iMenu screen▶English iMenu▶Options▶Mail Settings▶Set each option

* For details, refer to the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” presented at the time of your subscription to i-mode.

■ **Changing your mail address <Mail Address (Change Mail Address)>**

For example, if your address is “docomo.△△_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp”, you can change the part of the address preceding @ (at mark) to your preferred address.

■ **Confirming your mail address <Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address)>**

This allows you to check your current mail address.

■ **Secret code registration <Mail Address (Other Settings)▶Register a Secret Code>**

When using your phone number as an address, the 4-digit secret code can be registered in addition to the mail address. Mail without specifying the secret code is rejected from receiving and you can avoid an unwelcome mail.

■ **Resetting mail address <Mail Address (Other Settings)▶Reset Mail Address>**

You can return your mail address to “[your-phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp”.

■ **Spam Mail Prevention**

You can restrict the mail you receive by using any of the following methods to specify your mail accept and/or mail reject settings:

① Receive/reject setting <Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)▶Reject/Receive Mail Settings>
- Allows you to receive mails from the specified service providers of DoCoMo, au, SoftBank, Tu-Ka or WILLCOM. Also enables you to receive mails with domain or address specified from the other providers than above. You can reject a mail spoofing domains of the mobile phone or PHS from the Internet.

② Setting SMS rejection <Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)▶SMS Rejection Settings>
- You can restrict receiving SMS using one of the following four rejection settings: “Reject All SMS”, “Reject Anonymous SMS”, “Reject Intl. SMS” and “Reject Anonymous and Intl. SMS”. You can also check the setting status.

③ Restricting mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders <Receiving Mail (Other Settings)▶Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders>
- This option operates on rejection to 200th or later received i-mode mails sent from one i-mode terminal (including mova terminal) a day. “Reject” is set as default, so you do not have to change the setting to reject mail from large-volume i-mode mail senders.

④ Unsolicited advertising* mail rejection <Receiving Mail (Other Settings)▶Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail>
- Setting this option rejects received mails declaring “未承諾広告※” (unsolicited advertising) at the front of subject line, which are sent to you without your consent. Reject is set as default, so you do not have to change the setting to reject unsolicited advertising mails. (Senders are legally required to include “未承諾広告※” (6 double-byte characters) at the beginning of the mail subject line.)

■ **Restricting mail size <Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)>**

Use this option to restrict receiving i-mode mail size specified in advance.

■ **Confirming setting status <Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)>**

Use this option to check your current mail settings, including mail accept/reject settings.

■ **Stopping the mail functions <Suspend Mail>**

Use this option to stop the mail service at the i-mode center if you do not use it.

■ **Preventing spam mail**

It is effective to prevent spam mails that you change your mail address or use the address-specific reception/rejection function.

● Your SMS (Short Message) address

Your SMS address is the mobile phone number you subscribe.

● If your FOMA terminal cannot receive mail

As soon as mail reaches at the i-mode center, it is transferred to your i-mode terminal. However, if your FOMA terminal is turned off or you are outside the i-mode service area and cannot receive mail, mail is stored at the i-mode center. When the i-mode center keeps your mail, transfer is tried up to three times at certain intervals. Receive option setting enables you to select the i-mode mail at the i-mode center for receiving.

● Other useful features

■ Attachments

- **Attached melodies**
  You can attach melodies that you have downloaded from i-mode sites or websites to i-mode mail and then send and receive mail with the attached melodies. (Note that you cannot attach melodies when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.)
  - To send i-mode mail with melodies →p.265
  - For receiving i-mode mail with melodies →p.273
- **Attached images**
  You can attach still images that you have downloaded from i-mode sites, websites or miniSD memory cards to i-mode mail and then send and receive mail with the attached images. (Note that you cannot attach images when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.)
  - To send i-mode mail with images →p.265
  - For receiving i-mode mail with images →p.274
- **Attached ToruCa**
  With attached to an i-mode mail, you can send or receive ToruCa which is downloaded from the websites or i-mode sites, or is obtained from the reader/writer unit for ToruCa or the miniSD memory card.
  - To send i-mode mail with ToruCa →p.265

■ i-motion mail

You can use i-motion mail to exchange movies you have shot or downloaded from i-mode sites with phones that support i-motion mail, PCs or third-party mobile phones. (Note that you cannot attach movie files when their use as e-mail attachments or their transmission from the FOMA terminal is prohibited.)

- To send i-motion mail →p.265
- For receiving i-motion mail →p.274

■ Deco-mail

The FOMA terminal enables you to compose and send your own distinctive personalized mail or attractively decorated mail by changing the font size or the background color, etc. when editing i-mode mail, or by attaching images to the text body. (If you receive Deco-mail from a PC, it may not run as it did on the PC because some decorative features are not supported on i-mode terminals.)
If you send Deco-mail to a non-Deco-mail-supported-terminal, it is sent with URL showing the Deco-mail site. In this case, the recipient selects URL to view the Deco-mail.

- Composing and Sending Deco-mail →p.261
- Support model: Deco-mail-supported model is available. For more details, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

NOTE

<Attachments>

◆Even if “File restricted” is selected in “File restriction”, you can send still images shot using the built-in camera.

◆If you send i-mode mail to the i-mode terminal in mova service, you can send only one JPEG-format image as an attachment.

<i-motion mail>

◆If i-motion mail is sent to an i-mode terminal, each browser URL for the i-motion stored at the i-motion Center can be accessed and downloaded up to 50 times. Once it has been accessed and downloaded 50 times, the i-motion can no longer be downloaded any more.

◆When “File restricted” is selected in “File restriction”, you can still send movies shot using the built-in camera.

◆To play an i-motion in i-motion mail on a PC, you must have compatible software.
“Movie Playing Software”→p.500

■ Important

- We recommend that you take memos of the contents of your received, sent, and saved mails, and store them on the miniSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can also save them on your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.435) or Data Link Software (p.499) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The contents of your received, sent and saved mails may be lost due to failures, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo takes no responsibility in such an event so please take memos of the contents of your mail.

<Mail menu>

Displaying Mail Menu

1 MENU ▶ Mail

Pressing ✉ (✉MAIL) on the standby screen also displays Mail menu.

Inbox	Shows the Inbox folder list screen. Mail can be organized into different folders. Chat mail and mail-linked i-αppli mail are sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your received i-mode mail and SMS. →p.274
Outbox	Shows the Outbox folder list screen. Mail can be organized into different folders. Chat mail or mail-linked i-αppli mail are sorted into a dedicated folder. Open the respective folders to check the record and details of your sent i-mode mail and SMS. →p.274

Draft	Shows the Draft mail list screen. Use this to check the details of temporarily saved i-mode mail and SMS. →p.267
Compose message	Shows the screen used for creating i-mode mail. →p.257
Chat mail	Shows the “Chat” screen. →p.295
Compose SMS	Shows the screen used for composing SMS. →p.299
Check new messages	Checks for and receives any i-mode mails kept at the i-mode center. →p.271
Receive option	When “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”, this option enables you to check the subject of the i-mode mail kept at the i-mode center and then to select the i-mode mail for receiving or to delete any i-mode mail before it is received. →p.270
Check new SMS	Checks for and receives any new SMS kept at the SMS Center. →p.301
Template	Shows the template screen. →p.265
Mail settings	“Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions” →p.289

<Compose message/Send>

Creating and Sending i-mode Mail

Use this function to create and send a new i-mode mail.

- You can decorate the message body by changing the color of the text or the font size, putting the message body in motion or inserting images and lines. Deco-mail →p.261

1 (MENU) ▶ Mail ▶ “Compose message”

The “New mail” screen appears.
Pressing (NEW) on “Mail menu” also displays the “New mail” screen.



New mail

Function menu ➡p.258

2 “To” ▶ Select the address entry method

Phonebook	Enters an e-mail address by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.125
Sent address	Enters a mail address using the Sent address list.
Received address	Enters a mail address using the Received address list.
Mail member	Enters a mail address using the mail member. “Entering an address from the mail member” →p.259
Enter address	Enters the mail address directly.

3 “Subject”

The “Subject” screen appears.



Subject

Function menu ➡p.259

4 Enter a subject

You can enter the subject up to 15 double-byte characters or 30 single-byte characters.

5 “ ”

The “Message” screen appears.



Message

Function menu ➡p.259

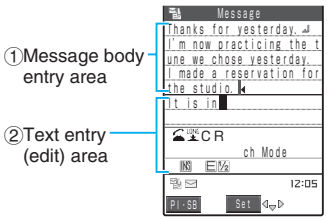
6 Enter the message body

You can enter the message body up to 5,000 double-byte characters.

You can also insert a line feed (hard return) while editing the message body. A line feed “ ” is counted as one double-byte character. Space is also counted as a character.
You can choose the font size of the message screen. →p.439
You can create and send the Deco-mail. →p.261
You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. →p.264

■ Message screen for i-mode mail

The following shows the Message screen while creating an i-mode mail.



① Message body entry area: Shows the confirmed message body.
② Text entry (edit) area: Shows the areas for the text entry, operation guidance and detail information. You find the pre-confirmed texts here.
You can use the Word Prediction function in the text entry (edit) area. →p.441

Continued on next page

7 Confirm the message ▶✉ (Send)



The screen shows an animation expressing the mail in transit, then i-mode mail is sent. Press ● to return to the Mail menu screen.

■ **To interrupt transmission**

▶ⓘ (Quit) or CLR (1 second or longer)

However, i-mode mail may be transferred depending on when to cancel.

■ **For another transmission request**

▶"YES"

● Creating i-mode mail from the phonebook screen

Search and show a mail address stored on the phonebook and then press ● (MAIL). The displayed mail address is pasted into the address field in the new mail screen.



NOTE

- ◆If sent mails (a total of both i-mode mail and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceed 400 messages or the maximum storage capacity, sent mails are automatically overwritten in chronological order. However, i-mode mail and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted. You should protect mails you want to keep.
- ◆If you send the mail, using the pictographs in the subject or the message body, to the terminal of other service providers such as au, SoftBank and Tu-Ka, those pictographs are automatically converted to the similar ones used in the destination providers. However, they may not be properly displayed depending on the model or function of the destination mobile phone.
- ◆When a phone number is entered into the address and the prefix number of "184" or "186" is appended, a message appears at transmission confirming that mail will be sent without "184" or "186". Select "YES" to send the i-mode mail without the "184" or "186" prefix. Selecting "NO" returns you to the previous screen.
- ◆You cannot send mail if a comma (,) or a space (blank) is entered in the address field.
- ◆A message may not be properly displayed in the destination terminal depending on the signal quality. Even if sending operation is properly terminated, "Transmission failed" may appear.
- ◆If you enter an address in the phonebook with "Secret code" (p.128) set, the secret code is automatically added when the message is sent. However, the secret code is not kept in the address of sent mail.

Function menu (New mail screen)

Send	Sends i-mode mail.
Preview	Allows you to check the address and message before sending mail. Selecting "Save" from the function menu in Preview is available for saving a mail.
Save	Saves the i-mode mail message you are currently editing in the Draft mailbox. "Saving i-mode mail"→p.267
Delete receiver	Deletes an added address. When other addresses are entered after the deleted address, the addresses close up to fill the space. If there is only one address entered, you cannot delete the address.
Change rcv. type	Changes the receiver type with a receiver highlighted.
• **To**	Used to enter the destination address. The mail address in this field can be seen by any one who receives mail.
• **Cc**	Used to enter the broadcast address. The mail address entered in this field can be seen by any one who receives mail. The Cc field should be selected when you send the mail as a carbon copy to the other destination.
• **Bcc**	Used to enter the broadcast address. The mail address in this field cannot be seen by any one who receives mail.
Template	You can use templates to compose and send the Deco-mail. "Using Templates to Create Deco-mail"→p.264
Attach file	Attaches the image, i-motion, melody or ToruCa data to an i-mode mail message. "Attaching Files"→p.265
Activate camera	Activates camera function. "Shooting Still Images"→p.201 "Shooting Movies"→p.206
• **Photo mode**	Starts up the camera function so you can shoot an image. The image sizes you can shoot are Stand-by (240 × 320) or SubQCIF (128 × 96).
• **Movie mode**	Starts up the camera function so you can shoot a movie. File size setting can be specified as Restricted (Short) or Restricted (Long). The image sizes you can shoot are QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96).
Delete att. file	Deletes the attached file highlighted.
Del all att. files	Deletes all the attachments.
Add header	Pastes a header into the message body.
Add signature	Pastes your signature into the message body.
Erase message	Erases the message body being edited.
Delete	Deletes the mail being edited.

NOTE

<Change rcv. type>

◆Using this option enables transmission specifying to To, Cc or Bcc for destination, respectively. However, "To" is a must to send the mail.

◆The mail address in the "To" and "Cc" fields can be seen by any one who receives mail. However, it may not be displayed in certain terminals, devices or mailers on the destination.

<Add header> <Add signature>

◆If you select the "Insert setting" checkboxes under "Header/Signature", a header and a signature are automatically attached when creating an i-mode mail. →p.291

Searching for an address in the phonebook

You can enter a mail address into the address field after searching a phonebook.

1 New mail screen (p.257)▶"To"▶"Phonebook"▶Select the search method

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125

2 Select a mail address in the phonebook entry detail screen

3 Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.257.

Adding addresses

If adding the different addresses, you can send mail to two or more destinations at a time (broadcast mail).

- You can enter up to 5 addresses.

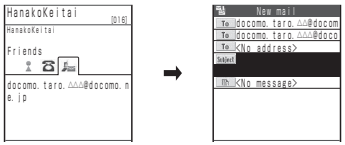
<Example: To look up and add addresses from the phonebook>

1 New mail screen (p.257)▶"To" with no address▶"Phonebook"▶Select the search method

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125

2 Select a mail address in the phonebook detail screen

To add more mail addresses, repeat steps 1 and 2.



■ **To change the entered address**

▶Select the address you want to change▶Select the address entry method

If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data, select "YES".

3 Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.257.

Entering an address from the mail member <Mail member>

Using Mail member allows you to add two or more addresses at a time.

To use Mail member, you need to register the addresses of the mailing list members beforehand. →p.268

1 New mail screen (p.257)▶"To"▶"Mail member"

2 Select a mail member

Once a mail member is selected, it is entered to the address field.



3 Edit the subject and message body and send it

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.257.

NOTE

◆If you specify addresses using Mail member when another address is already entered, a message appears to confirm whether to overwrite the address. Select "YES" to overwrite the address. Otherwise, select "NO".

Function menu (Address/Subject screen)

- The same function menu as that of the "Text entry (edit)" screen →p.446

Function menu (Message screen)

- See the function menu of the "Text entry (edit)" screen (p.446) for the items not listed below.

Decorate mail	"Decorating a message" →p.262
Select area	Decorating the area-selected characters or cut and paste is available. →p.263
Load template	Creates Deco-mail using templates. "Using Templates to Create Deco-mail" →p.264
Activate camera	Activates camera. →p.201
Property	Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message.

Continued on next page

Undo	Reverts the entered text or the decoration of the message body to the previous one.
Preview	Displays the message preview.

NOTE

<Activate camera>

◆The size of image that can be shot using the camera function is SubQCIF(128 × 96).

<Undo>

◆After you use the “Undo” option to revert the message to the previous one, you cannot cancel “Undo”.

◆Pressing ● on the message screen returns to the new mail screen, and then you cannot use the “Undo” option even if the message screen is displayed again. (If you select “Preview” on the message screen and display it, the “Undo” option is available.)

<Preview>

◆When the message body contains a link to the phone number, mail address, URL, SIP address or i-αppli on the preview screen, the linked text is underlined. However, you cannot use the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions.

Sending a still image shot in talking <Speed photo mail>

You can send a still image taken on the scene or stored on the FOMA terminal to the destination during a FOMA voice call.

- To use Speed photo mail to the person you are talking with, you must be ready to store the phone number and the mail address on the same memory number of the phonebook.

<Example: To send an image shot while on a call>

1 FOMA voice in-call screen (p.56)▶ (FUNC)▶“Speed photo mail”▶“Photo mode”

■ To send an image saved on the FOMA terminal

▶“Speed photo mail”▶“My picture”

You cannot select an still image to which transmission is restricted.

You can send only images of “QCIF” or “SubQCIF” that are up to 9,000 bytes in data size for mail attachment.

2 ● or ( )

A still image is shot.

The FOMA terminal emits the shutter sound when you take a picture.

You can use the camera functions to adjust the brightness or set the image size before taking the picture. →p.201

The “Speed photo mail image” screen appears.



Speed photo mail image

Function menu➡p.261

■ To save and send the still image you shot

▶Speed photo mail image function menu▶“Save & send”

If you send the image without selecting “Save & send”, it is not saved in My picture.

3 ●▶●

A send confirmation message appears.



■ When multiple mail addresses are stored

▶Select the mail address to send the shot image

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

NOTE

◆This function cannot be used in the following cases:

- The phone number and mail address for the person in talk are not stored on the phonebook.
- The phone number and mail address for the person in talk are stored on the phonebook in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
- When the called party has not provided a caller ID (User unset or Not support, etc.)
- Packet communication is in progress for data communication.
- During a VoIP call
- Draft is full
- During Call waiting
- The terminal is activated for a call when updating software.

◆Sent mail using this function is stored in Outbox with your phone number as the subject.

◆Even if “Select size” is set to other than “QCIF (176 × 144)” or “SubQCIF (128 × 96)”, launching this function reverts the setting to “QCIF (176 × 144)”.

◆If you change the “Select size” while this function is running, only the “QCIF (176 × 144)” and “SubQCIF (128 × 96)” formats can be selected.

<Priority order for addresses highlighted in the send confirmation screen>

◆If there are several mail addresses for the person in talk stored on the phonebook, the addresses shown in the send confirmation screen are highlighted in the following priority order.

①i-mode address (where @ (at mark) is followed by docomo.ne.jp)

②Address or phone number not including the domain (the domain is the part of the address following @ (at mark)).

③The first address stored on the phonebook

Function menu (Speed photo mail image screen)

Save & send	Saves the photographed image in My picture and then sends it as speed photo mail. →p.260
Compose message	Sends the photographed image as speed photo mail without saving it.
Set as display	Saves the photographed image and sets it as a screen before sending it as speed photo mail. This is the same procedure as “Set as display” in the function menu of the image checking screen. →p.202
File restriction	Sets the file restrictions.
• **File unrestricted** (default)	Allows the image to be sent or forwarded from the sending destination FOMA terminal.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the image to be sent or forwarded from the sending destination FOMA terminal.
Cancel	Deletes the photographed image and returns to the Photo mode screen.

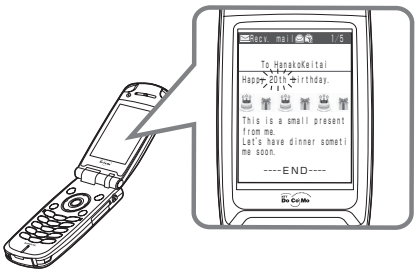
<Deco-mail>

Composing and Sending Deco-mail

The Deco-mail function allows you to decorate the message body of i-mode mail (text-basis) by changing the color of the text or the font size, putting the message body in motion or inserting images or lines, and to create a richly expressive mail.

- To create a Deco-mail, you can either select the decoration and then enter the message body, or you can enter the message body first and then decorate the mail.

Deco-mail display
(Displayed in the received mail detail screen after the reception)



NOTE

- If you forward received Deco-mail or quote Deco-mail in a reply, inserted images and decorations appear as quoted in the message.
- If you reply with quote or forward Deco-mail including images that cannot be sent as a mail, images are deleted.

Composing Deco-mail

- The Deco-mail pictures are saved in the “Decomail-picture” folder in “My picture”. Deco-mail pictures are preinstalled at default →p.484
- If you decorate the message body in Deco-mail, you can enter fewer characters than in the text mail.
- The decoration affects the number of characters available for entering characters and decorating.
- You can preview the decoration by selecting “Preview” from the function menu on the Message screen.

<Example: To change the font size>

1 Enter the address and subject on the New mail screen (p.257)▶“ ”

The “Message” screen appears.

2 Enter message▶ (FUNC)▶“Decorate mail”

The decoration menu appears.
Pressing also displays the decoration menu on the Message screen while in creating the new i-mode mail.

3 “ ”



■ **To decorate the text already entered**

▶“Edit”▶Use to select the start of the text to decorate▶Use to select the end of the text to decorate ▶“ ”▶Select size

The size of characters in the specified area is changed.

4 Select size



5 Enter text to be decorated

Press (Exit) or CLR to end the decoration menu.



Decorating a message

1 Message screen (p.257)▶(FUNC) ▶"Decorate mail"▶Select any item

Auto	"Self-Decorating a Mail to Messages" →p.263
A	**▶Use ◎ to select a color▶Enter the message body** Selects the color of the entered text or lines from the color palette. Pressing ✉ (Change) switches the color palette between 25 and 256 colors.
AA	**▶Select any item▶Enter the message body** Selects the size of the entered text.
AA	Sets to the large font size.
AA	Sets to the standard font size.
AA	Sets to the small font size.
	Selects the image to be inserted from the images saved in My picture. →p.335
A	**▶ABegin▶Enter text to be blinked** Makes the entered text blink.
ABegin	Sets the point at which blinking starts.
AEnd	Sets the point at which blinking ends.
A	**▶ABegin▶Enter text to be displayed as ticker** Scrolls the entered text horizontally (displays as tickers).
ABegin	Sets the point at which the ticker starts.
AEnd	Sets the point at which the ticker ends.
A	**▶ABegin▶Enter text to be swung** Swings the entered text horizontally (swinging text).
ABegin	Sets the point at which swinging starts.
AEnd	Sets the point at which swinging ends.
	▶Select any item▶Enter the message body Selects the position of the entered text. If the line length at the text entry position is too short to hold all the text, the setting is changed to however many lines are needed to accommodate the text.
L	Sets left-justified text.
C	Sets centered text.
R	Sets right-justified text.
	Inserts a line.
	▶Use ◎ to select a color Selects the background color from the color palette. Pressing ✉ (Change) switches the color palette between 25 and 256 colors.
Undo	Reverts the entered text or message decoration to the previous state. (You cannot use this operation after exiting the Message screen.)
Edit	"Changing the decorations"→p.263
Reset All	Deletes all the decorations.
	Confirms the decorated message body in the preview style.

NOTE

- The latest 5 colors selected by the 256-color palette are displayed on the bottom of the 25-color palette.
- If you change the background color setting, the cursor color also changes in accordance with the selected colors.
- Pictographs are also displayed in the specified color. To return them to their original color, select "Edit", specify the area to be changed and then select "Reset".
- If you enter a character in the area you want to decorate, the character is decorated as well.
- You can insert JPEG images or GIF images such that the total size of the message and the image does not exceed 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters).
- If you insert multiple copies of the same image, they are counted as one image. However, if you save or send an image once and then edit and insert it again, it is handled as a separate image.
- If you copy and paste an image that has already been inserted in the edit screen, it is also regarded as the same image and the original and copied images are counted as one image.
- When inserting an animation, you can see its action during a preview until a certain time has elapsed to stop operation.
- If you make the text blink, set ticker or swing, those actions are shown during a preview until a certain time has elapsed to stop operation.
- If you paste the non-decorative text-only header or signature using "Add header" or "Add signature" from the compose message screen, a header and signature are pasted in succession to the decorative size and color attributes of the message text at the beginning and the end of the message body, respectively.
- Some background colors may overlap with the text color displayed in URL where an image or i-motion is downloaded, and the URL text may be unreadable.
- Even if you delete the decorated text, the decorating data itself is retained and reduces the number of characters that can be entered. You should remove the decorations first and then delete the text. Also, if you delete all texts by holding down CLR for 1 second or longer, all data including the decoration is deleted.
- If you exchange the mail with Deco-mail incompatible i-mode terminal such as PC, decoration may not be properly displayed.

◆If a Deco-mail is sent to a non-Deco-mail-supported-terminal, it is held for up to 10 days at the i-mode center. The message can be viewed in i-mode using the Web To function during those days.

Changing the decorations

1 Message screen (p.257)▶(FUNC)▶“Decorate mail”▶“Edit”▶Use ⊕ to select the start point▶Use ⊕ to select the end point▶Select any item

■ **To change the decoration after specifying the area**

▶Message screen (p.257)▶(FUNC)▶“Select area”▶Use ⊕ to select the start point▶Use ⊕ to select the end point▶“Decorate mail”▶Select any item

	▶Use ⊕ to select a color Selects the color of the texts or lines to be changed from the color palette. Pressing (Change) switches the color palette between 25 and 256 colors.	
	Changes the font size in the specified range.	
		Changes to the large font size.
		Changes to the standard font size.
		Changes to the small font size.
	Changes or cancels blinking for the text in the specified area.	
		Select: Changes the blink setting.
		Reset: Cancels blink.
	Changes or cancels ticker for the text in the specified area.	
		Select: Changes the ticker setting.
		Reset: Cancels ticker.
	Changes or cancels swinging for the text in the specified area.	
		Select: Changes swinging.
		Reset: Cancels swinging.
	Changes the alignment of the text in the specified area.	
		Changes to left-align the text.
		Changes to centered text.
		Changes to right-align the text.
Undo	Reverts the decoration for the text or message body to the previous state. (This option is not available after exiting the Message screen.)	
Reset	Cancels the decorations.	
	Confirms the decorated message body in the preview style.	

NOTE

◆ You cannot change the inserted images or lines. To change the images or lines, delete them in the Message screen first and then insert new ones.

◆ To change the specified background color, select “Decorate mail” from the function menu of the Message screen and choose “” (Change background color).

<Auto Deco-mail>

Self-Decorating a Mail to Messages

Your FOMA terminal recognizes emotion from a tone in messages of a mail, and automatically converts to Deco-mail adding the best-suited decoration to message. The entire message body is displayed in the background color standing for emotion, and decorated with the font color, font size and tickers to the sentences.

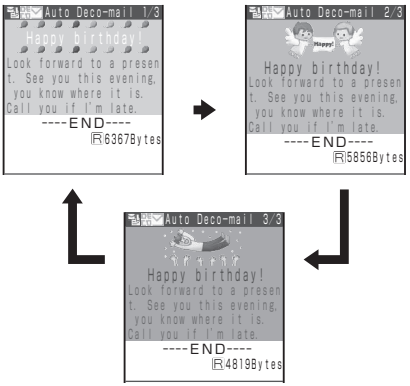
1 Message screen (p.257)▶(FUNC)▶“Decorate mail”

2 “Auto”



3 Press (Next) to select candidate for decoration

Three decoration patterns are available.



Continued on next page

NOTE

◆You cannot use the auto Deco-mail in the following cases:
- When ten files are attached
- When 5,000 bytes or less remains in total of the attached files and messages
- When a message alone has a 1,000 bytes or more

◆If an invalid termination occurs during preview of the decoration patterns for auto Deco-mail, the mail data including the displayed decoration patterns are stored.

◆Immediately after returning to the Message screen from the Auto Deco-mail screen, selecting "Undo" is not available on the function menu.

◆When running the Auto Deco-mail to the message body already decorated, a message appears to indicate that all the decorations will be canceled.

◆The emotional recognition is listed below. The following priority is applied for recognizing emotion in the message.

Priority	Classification by emotion
1	Hurry
2	Love/Dislike/Happy/Angry/Sad/Fun/Surprise
3	Question/Advice/Cheer up/Join/Remark/ Please/Information/OK
4	Reply/Notice

◆The Auto Deco-mail provides the following decoration pattern:
- Background color
- Character color /font size (big or small)
- Word alignment (Center)
- Ticker/swing/blink
- Insert image (animation GIF or still image)

◆The best picture, which matches the contents of the message, is automatically selected from "auto Deco-mail pictures". Note that some message body may not display the image you intended.
Auto Deco-mail picture preinstalled at default→p.486

Using Templates to Create Deco-mail

You can create Deco-mail by using preinstalled templates at default. A template is a form for Deco-mail to which the layout and decoration have already been set. By using a template, Deco-mail can be created and transmitted easily.

- Preinstalled templates at default→p.487
- You can download templates from sites. "Downloading Data Files from Sites"→p.238
- You can edit a template on the Template preview screen.→p.265
- Templates include the decoration information in advance. Consequently, you can enter fewer characters than in the text mail.
- When you try to use a template in the following cases, a message confirms whether to release the edited message:
  - There is already text entered in the message body.
  - The header or signature is automatically inserted.
  - There is an attached file.

1 New mail screen (p.257)▶ (FUNC)▶"Template"▶"Load template"▶Select a template

■ To display a preview of the template

▶Highlight the template ▶ (Play)
- The template is shown in the preview. →p.265
- During preview, pressing switches to the other templates.
- If the template does not fit into the screen, use to scroll the screen.
- During preview, pressing selects the template.

■ To load the template from the Message screen

▶Message screen (p.257)▶ (FUNC)▶"Load template"▶Select a template

2 ▶Edit the message

After you have applied the template, you can still edit the message. You can use "Decorate mail" (p.261) to add arrangement of decorative features.



3

This confirms the edited message and returns to the New mail screen.



4 (Send)

Saving a template

This function allows you to save the Deco-mail you are composing as a template.

- Up to 45 templates can be stored.
- If the message has any attachments other than inserted images, those attachments are deleted.
- Text mail cannot be saved as a template.
- Templates are saved in "Template" in the Mail menu.
- You can save a template from the menu function of the Received mail detail screen (p.287) or Sent mail detail screen (p.287).

1 New mail screen (p.257)▶ (FUNC)▶“Template”▶“Save template”▶“YES”

NOTE

◆The subject of the message being composed is used as the template title. If no subject is entered, YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm is used as the title (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).

Viewing the templates list

1 (MENU)▶ Mail▶“Template”

The “Template” screen appears.



Template

Function menu➡p.265

Function menu (Template screen)

Compose message	Creates Deco-mail using templates. “Using Templates to Create Deco-mail”→p.264
Sort	Sorts the templates according to the specified criteria.
Edit title	**▶Enter a title** You can enter up to 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters.
Info	Displays the template size, save date and whether or not it includes images.
No. of messages	Shows the number of saved templates.
Delete	Deletes the template.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted template.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶“YES”** Deletes multiple templates.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all the saved templates.

NOTE

<Compose message>

◆Even if you set to automatically paste the header or signature using “Header/Signature”, the header or signature is not pasted.

Previewing a template

1 Template screen (p.265)▶Select a template

The “Template preview” screen appears.



Template preview

Function menu➡p.265

Function menu (Template preview screen)

Compose message	Creates Deco-mail using templates. “Using Templates to Create Deco-mail”→p.264
Edit	Edits the template.
Save insert image	**▶Select an image▶“YES”▶Select a folder** **■If the image can be set as a screen such as standby▶“YES”▶Select an item** Saves the images inserted in the template. If you do not set the image as a screen such as standby, select “NO” after selecting the folder.

NOTE

<Compose message>

◆Even if you set to automatically paste the header or signature using “Header/Signature”, the header or signature is not pasted.

<Edit>

◆The title used when the template is saved as a separate file is YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm (where Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).

◆If the template contains no decorations at all after editing, it cannot be saved.

<Attach Melody/Image/Movie/i-motion/ToruCa>

Attaching Files

1 New mail screen (p.257)▶ (FUNC)▶“Attach file”▶Select any item

Attach image	**▶Select a folder▶Select an image** Attaches an image.
Attach i-motion	**▶Select a folder▶Select an i-motion** Attaches an i-motion.
Attach melody	**▶Select a folder▶Select a melody** Attaches a melody.
Attach ToruCa	**▶Select a folder▶Select a ToruCa** Attaches a ToruCa.

Continued on next page

■ **To switch the image list screen**

▶On the image list screen▶ (FUNC)▶ “Title name”

The Picture list screen changes to the Titles list screen. You cannot select images that cannot be attached to mail.

To return to the Picture list screen, select “Picture” from the function menu.

■ **To display an image**

▶Use to highlight an image▶ (Play)

Images that cannot be sent as attachments are not displayed.

To return to the list, press CLR.

■ **To play a melody**

▶Highlight a melody you want to play▶ (Play)

Melodies that cannot be attached cannot be selected.

To stop melody playback, press any one of , , #, CLR, (Home), (Memo/Check).

If the FOMA terminal is in Manner mode, a message appears asking whether to play the melody. Select “YES” to play the melody.

■ **To display ToruCa**

▶Highlight ToruCa you want to view▶ (Play)

You cannot select the ToruCa that is not attachable.

The ToruCa (detail) is transferred as ToruCa without detail information.

To return to the list, press CLR.

■ **For sending an image to the mova service i-mode terminal as i-shot**

You can send an image-attached mail as an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal. If you send an i-shot mail to the mova service i-mode terminal, you can attach only one JPEG image. If you attach a GIF-format image downloaded from an i-mode site or website, the attached file is deleted and only the message body reaches the destination.

When sending mail to the mova service i-mode terminal, up to 184 double-byte characters (389 bytes) can be received for the message if the number of received characters is not set on the destination. When the number of received characters is set on the destination, up to 2,000 double-byte characters including URL for i-shot (where the image is stored) can be received on the destination.

■ **To re-size and change the file size of an image attached to a mail**

If the file size of an image stored in the Inbox, Camera or User-created folder exceeds 500K bytes, select “Size for mail” from the Image list function menu.→p.338

■ **To re-size an i-motion attached to a mail**

To attach an i-motion larger than 500K bytes to a mail, select “Trim for mail” from the Edit movie function menu, and cut the file into sections less than 500K bytes.→p.355

NOTE

◆The table below shows the files that can be attached to i-mode mail.

File type	Max. files attached to 1 mail
Melody	Up to 10 files and 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) including melodies, images and ToruCa. The maximum number of files may vary depending on the file sizes.* *: You may be unable to attach ToruCa downloaded from a site or obtained via i-αppli, etc., depending on the data size.
Image*1	
ToruCa	
Large image*2	Either a large image or movie/i-motion can be attached.* *: Some i-motion programs cannot be attached.
Movie/i-motion*3 (i-motion mail)	

*1: Still image shot using the built-in camera or a JPEG or GIF format image of 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) or less that was downloaded from a site.

*2: JPEG format image larger than 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) but no larger than 500K bytes (256,000 double-byte characters). Note that the size is changed at the i-shot Center to the one suitable for being received at an i-mode terminal before being sent to the recipient. You cannot attach a GIF image that exceeds 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters).

*3: Movie or i-motion of up to 500K bytes (equivalent to 256,000 double-byte characters)

◆If an image selected for “Attach image” is larger than QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high) or Stand-by (240 dots wide × 320 dots high), “Attach image” appears and you can select any one from “Attach mail”, “QVGA scale down” or “QVGA trim away”.

◆If the amount of data remaining for the message (including attached files) is less than 200 bytes (equivalent to 100 double-byte) for i-mode mail or less than 400 bytes (equivalent to 200 double-byte) for Deco-mail, you cannot attach a large image, movie or i-motion.

◆When you attach a large still image, movie or i-motion to i-mode mail, the number of characters that can be entered decreases by 200 bytes (equivalent to 100 double-byte) for i-mode mail or 400 bytes (equivalent to 200 double-byte characters) for Deco-mail.

◆When you send an i-motion mail, a mail with the URL for viewing the i-motion is sent and the receiver can view the i-motion. (Some models receive a mail with an i-motion attached.)

◆The sent image may not be properly or completely displayed depending on the destination terminal. A grainy image may also be displayed.

◆When you send an i-motion mail, movies may be grainy or may be converted to continuous still images depending on the destination terminal.

◆You cannot attach movies or melodies stored on a miniSD memory card. Copy the data to the FOMA terminal (Phone) first and then attach them.→p.369

◆You can send still images shot with the built-in camera as attachments to an i-mode terminal, PC or third-party mobile phone. However, when attached images are sent to a mova service i-mode terminal, they are sent as an image browser URL with an automatically assigned storage period. The mova service user can then retrieve the image by selecting the URL.
◆Attached melodies or GIF images cannot be received by a mova service i-mode terminal.
◆You cannot attach a file which is prohibited to be sent as a mail attachment or output from the FOMA terminal.
◆You can attach the still images or movies shot using the built-in camera even if "File restriction" is set to "File restricted".
◆If the destination terminal is other than FOMA N902iL, sent melody may not be properly played.
◆A recipient cannot receive ToruCa without ToruCa-supported-terminal.

<Save i-mode mail>

Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later

If you have to break off while creating i-mode mail, you can temporarily save the message on your FOMA terminal. Draft mail can be edited to be sent.

Saving i-mode mail

The unfinished message is stored in Draft.
- Draft can store up to 20 i-mode mail and SMS in all.
- When 20 messages are stored in Draft, you cannot create any more new messages.

1 New mail screen (p.257)▶ (FUNC)▶"Save"

If there are no characters entered in the address, subject, or message body, the mail cannot be saved. Note that if there is an attached file, the mail can be saved even when no text is entered.

Sending draft i-mode mail

1 ▶ iMail ▶"Draft"

The "Draft mail list" screen appears.

2 Select mail▶Edit the address, subject or message body and then send it



Draft mail list

Function menu➡p.267

Function menu (Draft mail list screen)

List setting	Selects a mail-list format from Subject, Name or Address.
Send Ir data	"Sending one data at a time via Infrared data exchange"→p.377
Send all Ir data	Sends all the mail in the Draft via Infrared data exchange. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.378
Copy to miniSD	Copies a mail in Draft to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted mail.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□) ▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple mails.
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all mails in Draft.
No. of messages	Shows the number of mails in Draft.
Store at DSC	"Saving mails to the Data Security Center"→p.286
Delete	Deletes Draft mail.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□) ▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple mails.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all mails in Draft.

MENU97

Adding Addresses in Mailing Lists

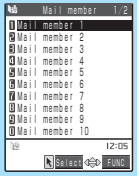
Default setting
Not stored

Add two or more addresses to a mail member in the FOMA terminal, and you can simply enter several addresses with the mail member specified.

- Up to 20 mail members (5 addresses for each) can be stored.

1 (MENU)▶(Ddata)▶**"Mail member"**

The "Mail member list" screen appears.



Mail member list

Function menu➡p.268

2 Select a mail member

The "Mail member detail" screen appears.

3 Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (Edit)▶Enter a mail address

Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.
To add another mail address, repeat step 3.



Mail member detail

Function menu➡p.268

■ **To look-up and enter the mail address**

<Example: To enter a mail address by searching the phonebook>

▶Select "<Not stored>"▶"Phonebook"▶Select a look-up item

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125

Function menu (Mail member list screen)

Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the mail member pasted to the address field. "Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.257
Edit member name	**▶Enter the member name** Edits the mail member name. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset member name	Resets the mail member name to default.

Function menu (Mail member detail screen)

Edit address	**▶Enter the mail address** Edits the mail address. You can enter up to 50 single-byte characters.
Look-up address	■ **No addresses are recorded ▶Select any item** ■ **The address is recorded ▶"YES"▶Select any item** Enters a mail address by looking-up the phonebook or record.
• **Phonebook**	Enters mail addresses from a Phonebook detail screen. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125
• **Sent address**	Enters a mail address using the Sent address.
• **Received address**	Enters a mail address using the Received address.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted address.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Delete all members in the selected mail member.

<Auto receive mail>

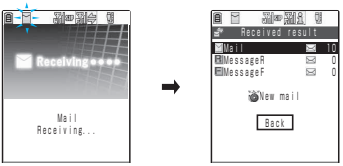
When You Receive i-mode Mail

If the FOMA terminal is in service area, i-mode mail is automatically sent from the i-mode center.

- Inbox can hold up to 1,000* messages for the total of i-mode mail and SMS.
  *: Secret folder in Inbox can hold up to 100 messages separately.
- i-mode mail sent from the mova service i-mode terminal can also be received on a FOMA terminal.

1 When you receive an i-mode mail, " " (white) icon blinks and "Mail Receiving…" is displayed

After a mail is completely received, the number of messages appears for the received mail, MessageR and MessageF on the reception results screen.
When "Mail" is selected, the received mail list screen appears.
No operation for about 15 seconds brings back to the previous screen. The time for displaying the reception result screen depends on the "Receive ringing time" setting.
The ring tone volume for the mail conforms to the setting of "Mail" under "Ring volume".



■ **For receiving the i-shot service mail**

When you receive the i-shot service mail sent from the mova service i-mode terminal, an image is received as an attachment.

■ **When a mail with a large size of image file is received**

If you automatically retrieve a large size of the image file exceeding 10,000 bytes, "" is displayed and the received image is stored in "My picture". If not, display the mail detail screen and select "", then a large size of the image file is retrieved and stored in "My picture".

NOTE

- When the " (white)" icon flashes, the mail reception is in progress. When reception is completed, this icon lights up.
- When the icons such as " " (red) or " " (red) are displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail. To receive a new message, delete some unnecessary mails or read the unread mails until those icons no longer appear. A read message is overwritten in chronological order on receiving.
- If the FOMA terminal contains 1,000 received messages (the total of i-mode and SMS) or exceeds the storage capacity even less than 1,000 messages, messages are automatically deleted from the Trash box and Inbox in chronological order on receiving. Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, protected received mails or i-mode mail and SMS in the Secret folders. You should protect any necessary received mail. →p.284
- If you select "ON" in "Receive option setting" (p.290) and set your FOMA terminal not to automatically receive i-mode mail, mail sent to you is stored at the i-mode center (the standby screen shows a message saying mails at the i-mode center and the " " icon appears). In this situation, you can use "Check new messages" (p.271) to receive all the i-mode mails held at the i-mode center, or use "Receive option" to the check the subject lines of the i-mode mails held at the i-mode center and then choose the mail to be downloaded. →p.270
- Extremely large messages may not be accepted at the i-mode center.
- You can use "Attached file" (p.290) to specify whether you will accept melodies or images attached to your mail.
- Once the FOMA terminal receives an i-mode mail, it is deleted from the i-mode center.
- You can send or receive i-mode mails, melodies, images or ToruCa as attachment. Unsupported attachments are automatically deleted at the i-mode center. When an attachment has been deleted in this way, the "添付ファイル削除 (attached file deleted)" message is added to the corresponding i-mode mail message.
- When a new i-mode mail is delivered, you also receive any other i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF stored on the i-mode center.
- If you receive the i-mode mail from a terminal in which the To, Cc and Bcc fields can be set, you can check through the mail detail screen which address type you receive among To, Cc and Bcc. →p.278
- You can preset an upper limit on the size of the i-mode mail you receive. →p.255
- When you receive multiple items of i-mode mail, SMS, chat mail and MessageR/MessageF at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp flashing pattern that are set for chat mail.

<When a mail with a large size of image file is received>

- When you select "" while in active service at other function, a message may appear saying that you cannot retrieve a large size of the image file. Quit the active function before retrieving the image.
- If you select "" before finishing data editing in the other function, a message appears asking whether to discard the editing data. Choose "YES", and the editing data is discarded and the image is loaded. If "NO", it stops loading the image. No editing data proceeds to load the image.

<Priority order for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>

- Priority is assigned as follows for ring tone and illumination when you receive i-mode mail.
  ①"Discern connect" specified for each mail address →p.132
  ②"Discern group" specified for each group →p.132
  ③"Select ring tone"/"Style mode" →pp.138, 164, "Illumination" →p.156

Displaying the new i-mode mail

- Set "3D display setting" to "ON" and select the desktop icon of a new mail, and an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body and pictographs included in the subject are displayed as a 3D animation.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶" New "

Selecting the " (white) icon displays the unread mail list. For the function menu on the unread mail list screen, see the function menu of the Received mail list screen (p.283).



Continued on next page

NOTE

◆Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.
◆If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters permitted, either "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
◆If the size of mail to be sent to you exceeds the value set in "Limit Mail Size" in "Options", the file or data that is attached or pasted in the mail is deleted in the i-mode center so that you cannot download it.
◆Some image file attached to the i-mode mail may not be properly displayed. Images larger than 240 dots wide are shown reduced.
◆Some background colors may overlap with the text color displayed in URL where an image or i-motion is downloaded, and the URL text may be unreadable.
◆If a sender sends you a Deco-mail that exceeds 10,000 bytes or in which 11 or more Deco-mail picture or Decorate PI images are inserted, you will receive a mail including the message and URL for viewing the Deco-mail.
◆If you receive decorated mail (HTML mail) from a PC, the decorations may not be properly displayed.
◆You may not be able to use the Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, SIP To or IM To functions included in a message body received from a PC.

Emotion-expressing mail

When you receive a mail, an icon informs you showing an emotion to the tone of the mail. You can also find the icon in the received mails containing the keywords specified in advance.

- The following are the icons for the emotion-expressing mail:

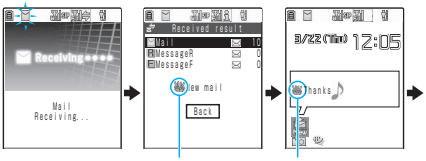
Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning	Icon	Meaning
	Hurry		Advice		OK
	Love		Cheer up		Reply
	Dislike		Question		Information
	Happy		Join		Angry
	Remark		Sad		Please
	Fun		Notice		Icon unsupported*
	Surprise				

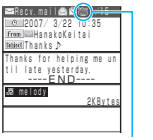
*: "Icon unsupported" icon is displayed for the following mails:
- Mail forwarded by Infrared data exchange or cable connection
- Mail retrieved from the Data Security Center
- Mail copied from miniSD memory card
- SMS copied or moved from the FOMA card (UIM)
- For SMS on the FOMA card (UIM)

- You can specify whether to display icons in "Emotion/Keyword notice".→p.294
- The "Disp keyword" icons displayed are the following three:
  You can specify the settings of "Disp keyword" in "Emotion/Keyword notice".→p.294



- If the received mail includes the contents for the icons of emotion-expressing mails or keywords, the following priority will be applied.
  ① Disp keyword 1 ② Disp keyword 2
  ③ Disp keyword 3 ④ Disp emotion
- Using the filter function allows you to list only mails containing the emotion-expressing icons specified.→p.283
- For the received i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS, the icons are displayed as follows.





Emotion-expressing mail icon

NOTE

◆Some received mail may indicate the emotion-expressing mail icon misunderstanding the contents.
◆MessageR/MessageF does not indicate the emotion-expressing mail icon.
◆An icon used in the emotion-expressing mail covers the received date and time, subject and 1,000 bytes (500 double-byte characters) from the head of the message to detect the tone of a mail. While an icon used in "Disp keyword" covers the subject and the entire message body to detect the keyword.
◆When you receive two mails or more at the same time, only an icon for the latest mail is displayed on the reception results screen and as a popup on desktop.

<Receive option>

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

You can check information such as the subject lines of mail held at the i-mode center and then select the mail you want to receive or delete at the i-mode center before receiving your mail.

- To use this function, you must first set "Receive option setting" (p.290) to "ON". If set to "ON", i-mode mail is not automatically received.

When mail arrives

When the i-mode center notifies you of mail reception, your FOMA terminal shows the message saying mails at the i-mode center and the "" icon is displayed rather than "" (white) or "" (white).

Receiving mail selectively

- If you used this function to show the receive option screen, the "" icon disappears even when you do not receive or delete mail.
  The "" icon also disappears if you turn the FOMA terminal off or display the mail screen.

1 (MENU)▶Mail▶"Receive option"

■ **If "Receive option setting" is set to "OFF"**

A message appears asking whether you want to enable mail receive options. Select "Receive option setting" to specify the "Receive option" setting. When you set the receive option to "ON", the Mail menu screen reappears.

2 Select and set option for each item of i-mode mail



"受信" (Receive): Select and download the mail you want to receive.

"削除" (Delete): Select and delete the mail you do not want to receive.

"保留" (Hold): Leaves the selected mail at the i-mode center.

Use "Check new messages" (p.271) to receive the mail.

■ **To delete all mails**

▶"削除" (Delete) at the bottom of the page ▶"決定" (Set)

■ **When there are multiple pages of mail**

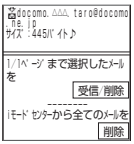
▶"前ページ" (Previous page) or "次ページ" (Next page)▶Move to the previous or next page and receive the mail selectively

When you view the 2nd page, your selections on the 1st page remain valid.

The meanings of the icons displayed after サイズ(Size):XXXバイト(bytes) are as follows:

	Image file attached.
	Melody file attached.
	i-motion attached.
	ToruCa attached.

3 "受信／削除" (Receive/Delete)▶"決定" (Set)



The completion screen appears and mail reception begins.

■ **To cancel selective reception**

▶"キャンセル" (Cancel)

■ **When there are multiple pages of mail**

Selecting "受信／削除" (Receive/Delete) midway through the pages applies your options (hold, receive or delete) to the mail up to the selected page and mail on the remaining pages remains held at the i-mode center.

NOTE

◆You can also access "Receive option" as follows (only Japanese mode available):

- (MENU)▶i-mode (i-mode)▶"iMenu"▶"メニュー／検索" (Menu/Search)▶"メール選択受信" (Receive option)

◆If you manually check for a new message, all messages will be received even if the "Receive option setting" is set to "ON". Deselect "Mail" in "Set check new messages" (p.291) if you do not want to receive any mail.

<Check new messages>

Checking for i-mode Mail

Default setting	Check for all (mail, MessageR and MessageF)

- i-mode mail which reaches the i-mode center is automatically transferred to your FOMA terminal. However it is kept at the i-mode center in the following cases.
  - The FOMA terminal is turned off
  - "" appears
  - Inbox is full
  - "Receive option setting" (p.290) is set to "ON"
  - During a videophone call or remote monitoring
  - While Self mode is set
  - During a PushTalk call
  - While connecting to the FirstPass Center
- Use "Set check new messages" (p.291) to set the inquiry items.

1 (MENU)▶Mail▶"Check new messages"



The check new messages screen appears.
The following procedures are also available to check new messages.

- (i)(i-mode)▶"Check new messages"
- (✉)(MAIL) (1 second or longer)
- (✉)(MAIL)▶"Check new messages"

The FOMA terminal checks for "Mail", "MessageR" and "MessageF" in that order.

The "" (white), "R" (white) and "F" (white) icons flash during checking, and the "Mail Checking..." message appears on the screen. The FOMA terminal then receives your i-mode mail and MessageR/MessageF.

■ **To cancel the inquiry**

▶Hold down (i) (Quit) or CLR (for 1 second or longer) during the inquiry

Even if you cancel an inquiry, you may still receive the i-mode mail, MessageR or MessageF depending on when cancelled.

Continued on next page

2 Check the numbers of the newly received i-mode mails, MessageR and MessageF messages

NOTE

◆Depending on the signal status, you may not check new message or interrupt your checking.

◆When the "" (white) icon is displayed, i-mode mail is kept at the i-mode center. Once i-mode mail is full on storage at the i-mode center, the icon is changed to "" (red).

◆Even if an i-mode mail is kept at the i-mode center, the "" (white) may not appear when a FOMA terminal is turned off or "" appears.

◆This function is not available for receiving SMS. Use "Check new SMS" to receive SMS.

<Reply to mail>

Replying to i-mode Mail

You can reply to a sender of the i-mode mail. To return the mail, there are two manners: entering a new message or quoting a message of the received i-mode mail.

- "Re:" is added to the subject of the i-mode mail to be replied. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 double-byte characters (including "Re:"), the characters over this limit are deleted.

Replying by composing a new message

1 Received mail list screen (p.277) or Received mail detail screen (p.278) ▶(Reply)▶Edit the subject and message body to send it

■ **To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses**
▶"Reply"▶"To sender"

■ **To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses**
▶"Reply"▶"To all"
If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen. If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, only those addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.257.
After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the "" icon changes to "".

NOTE

◆The "" icon is displayed for senders to whom you cannot reply (e.g. senders with mail addresses longer than 50 single-byte characters).

◆When you reply to an i-mode mail that has "Re:" (all single-byte characters) already included in the subject line, "Re2:" is inserted into the reply's i-mode mail subject line instead of "Re:". Similarly, if "Re2:" is included, "Re3:" is inserted in the reply, and "Re4:" if "Re3:" is included and so on up to "Re99:". If the "Re:" in the original mail includes double-byte characters or an upper case "E" ("RE:"), this is discarded and replaced by "Re:" in your reply.

◆You cannot reply to an i-shot mail sent from the address "photo-server@docomo-camera.ne.jp".

Replying by quoting the received message

You can reply to the received i-mode mail quoting its message body.

- The quoted attachment of the i-mode mail or Deco-mail are deleted.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.278) ▶(FUNC)▶"Reply with quote"▶Edit the subject and message body and send it

■ **To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses**
▶"Reply with quote"▶"To sender"

■ **To send a reply to all the broadcast addresses**
▶"Reply with quote"▶"To all"
The message in the received i-mode mail is quoted in the body of the reply.
A quotation mark (set to ">" by default) is displayed at the start of the quoted message in the reply.
Quotation marks are not placed at every beginning of lines.
To edit the quotation symbol→p.291
For details of the subsequent procedure, see steps 3 to 7 on p.257.
After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the "" icon changes to "".

NOTE

◆If the following type of files are attached or pasted, those files or information are deleted: Attachment prohibited to i-mode mail or Deco-mail for replying with quote and output prohibited from the FOMA terminal.

◆If a message body of the i-mode mail contains attached data such as melodies or i-αppli start modules, you cannot reply message with the attached data quoted.

<Forward mail>

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Destination

You can forward the received i-mode mail to other addresses.

- "Fw:" is added to the subject of the i-mode mail to be forwarded. If the number of characters used for the subject exceeds 15 double-byte characters (including "Fw:"), the characters over this limit are deleted.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.278) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Forward" ▶ " To " ▶ Select the address entry method

For detailed information on entering addresses →p.259

You can edit the subject and message body. You can forward i-mode mail consisting of up to 10,000 bytes (equivalent to 5,000 double-byte characters) including the received message body and any additional messages, headers, signatures and attached melodies or images.

2 (Send)

After the mail has been sent, the received mail detail screen appears and the " " icon changes to " ".

NOTE

- If you forward the i-mode mail with "Fw:" (all single-byte characters) in the subject line, "Fw2:" is added into the forwarded i-mode mail subject line instead of "Fw:". Similarly, if "Fw2:" is included, "Fw3:" is added in the forwarded mail, and "Fw4:" if "Fw3:" is included and so on up to "Fw99:". If the "Fw:" in the original mail includes the double-byte characters or "FW:" (upper case "W"), this is discarded and replaced by "Fw:" in the forwarded mail.
- If the following type of files are attached or pasted, those files or information are deleted: Attachment prohibited to i-mode mail or Deco-mail for forwarding and output prohibited from the FOMA terminal.
- Images are not attached when you forward an i-mode mail without retrieving the large size still image when you receive it.
- If i-mode message contains the pasted data such as melodies or i-αppli start modules, you cannot quote the pasted data even for forwarding.
- If you forward the received mail containing URL for referencing the Deco-mail in the message, the forwarded destination cannot view the Deco-mail with the Web To functions after selecting URL. In addition, you cannot view the Deco-mail with URL direct input.

Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook

You can store the sender's mail address or a phone number to your phonebook.

<Example: To add the sender's mail address to the phonebook>

1 Received mail detail screen (p.278) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Save address"

■ **When there are multiple mail addresses to be stored**

▶On the mail address selection screen, select the mail address to be stored

■ **To add the destination address or the phone number on the sent mail to the phonebook**

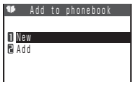
▶Sent mail detail screen (p.278)▶ (FUNC)▶"Save address"

If the i-mode mail is sent to the multiple addresses, select the mail address to be added from the mail addressee list.

■ **To add address, phone number, SIP address or URL typed in the message body of the received or sent mail to the phonebook**

▶Sent mail detail screen or Received mail detail screen▶Highlight the mail address, phone number, SIP address or URL to be added▶ (FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"

2 "YES" ▶ "Phone" ▶ "New"



The entered information is displayed in the add new phonebook entry screen. Enter the required items and store the entry.

"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook"→p.119

"Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook"→p.121

■ **To add information to the UIM phonebook**

▶"YES"▶"UIM"

When you add information to the UIM phonebook, "Overwrite" is displayed as the storage method instead of "Add".

<Save melody>

Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail

You can save a melody (or) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail on your FOMA terminal.

- You cannot play a melody during a call.
- If the sender is not using a FOMA N902iL, melodies you receive may not be properly played.
- Select the melody beforehand.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.278) ▶ (FUNC) ▶ "Save data" ▶ "YES" ▶ Select a folder

■ **To stop a melody**

▶, 0 to 9, *, #,

■ **To prevent melodies from playing automatically when you open a mail**

▶Set "Start attachment(auto)" (p.289) to "OFF"

2 "YES" ▶ Select an item

■ **To not set the melody as a ring tone, etc.**

▶"NO"

NOTE

- If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.

<Receive image mail>

Saving Images in Image Mail

You can save the image ( ) attached or inserted to the received i-mode mail.
Saving inserted images→p.287

1 Received mail detail screen (p.278) Select the image to be saved

■ **To change the display format from image to the file name**
▶Select the image
To return to images display again, select the file name.

2 (FUNC)▶"Save data"▶"YES"▶ Select a folder

3 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **To not set the image for the standby screen, etc.**
▶"NO"

NOTE

◆Images in formats that are larger than the display are shown reduced. However, too large images may not be displayed.
◆Images may be displayed differently between i-mode mail and My picture. To view an image correctly, you must first save the image in the "Inbox" folder.

<i-motion mail>

Playing and Saving i-motion from i-motion Mail

When you receive an i-motion data sent as i-motion mail, the data is not downloaded to the FOMA terminal when you receive mail. This function downloads the i-motion from the i-motion Mail Center and saves it on your FOMA terminal.

- Receive the mail attached with the URL to browse the i-motion.
- Select an i-motion mail beforehand.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.278)▶Select a URL▶"i-mode" or "WLAN"

The "Data acquisition" screen appears when the data download is completed.



Data acquisition

■ **To cancel the process during i-motion downloading**
▶ (Quit)

■ **To save an retrieved i-motion**
▶Data acquisition screen▶"Save"▶"YES"▶ Select a folder
Can be saved in the "Inbox" folder under i-motion.→p.334

■ **To display the information of an retrieved i-motion**
▶Data acquisition screen▶"Property"
→p.249

NOTE

◆If "ON" is selected in "Automatic replay" (p.249), the FOMA terminal plays the i-motion during downloading. However, depending on the signal quality, playback may pause or the image may break up. When this occurs, play the i-motion again after it has finished downloading.
◆When you download and play an i-motion at the same time (the first replay only), you cannot play fast, step or slow.

<Receiving ToruCa>

Viewing/Saving ToruCa

Displays or saves ToruCa attached to the received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.278)▶Select ToruCa

ToruCa appears.

■ **To save ToruCa**
▶Press (Save) while ToruCa is displayed▶Select a folder

■ **To display the ToruCa (detail)**
▶Press "詳細 (detail)" while ToruCa is displayed▶"YES"

■ **To save the ToruCa (detail)**
▶Press (Save) while ToruCa (detail) is displayed▶Select a folder

■ **To cancel the process during ToruCa (detail) downloading**
▶ (Quit) or CLR

NOTE

◆Some ToruCa may not show "詳細 (detail)".

<Inbox/Outbox>

Viewing Mail in the Inbox and Outbox

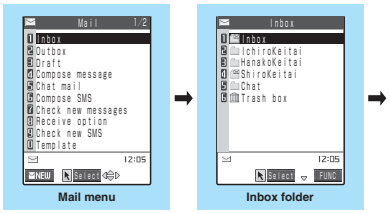
Inbox can hold up to 1,000* messages (the total of i-mode mail and SMS), and Outbox can hold up to 400* messages (the total of i-mode mail and SMS). Both received mails and sent mails can be protected up to half of the maximum storage capacity. The number of mail messages that can be saved and protected varies depending on the amount of data in each message. When the large file size is saved, the number of messages that can be saved and protected decreases.

*: Up to 100 messages can be stored in the Secret folders of Inbox and Outbox, respectively.

Reading i-mode mail

<Example: To read a message body in Inbox>

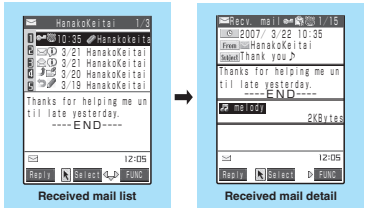
1 (MENU)▶Mail▶"Inbox"▶Select a folder▶Select a mail



Mail menu

Inbox folder

Function menu➡p.281



Received mail list

Received mail detail

Function menu➡p.283

Function menu➡p.287

■ To view the previous or next mail

▶Mail detail screen▶(Navigation)

Press (CLR) to return to the Received mail list screen.

NOTE

◆You can paste the received address of the sender or broadcast member, or the address to be sent (a phone number for SMS and a mail address for an i-mode mail) on your standby screen as a desktop icon. You can use the desktop icon to create a new i-mode mail with a mail address which the desktop icon contains as an address information. (SMS uses a phone number as an address to create a new SMS.) However, you cannot paste the mail addressee with the "Fm", "To" or "Cc" icon as desktop icons. Also for broadcast mail, only one mail address can be pasted in each operation.

◆You can also view the mails contained in other than the Secret folder even in the Secret data only mode.

◆You cannot view the large size images or play i-motion from the mails in the Secret folder.

■ Mail-linked i-αppli

- The sent i-mode mail using a mail-linked i-αppli is sorted into the mail-linked i-αppli dedicated folder.
- Where the sender used a mail-linked i-αppli to send i-mode mail and the recipient has created a dedicated mail folder for that mail-linked i-αppli, the i-mode mail is sorted into that folder. If there is no dedicated folder but the "Auto-sort" function has been set, mail is sorted into the folder designated in the "Auto-sort" settings. If the "Auto-sort" function has not been set, mail is sorted into the Inbox.
- Selecting the dedicated folder for a mail-linked i-αppli activates the software.
- To view the mail list screen for a folder without activating the software, highlight the folder and select "Open folder" from the function menu.

■ Having the FOMA terminal read out mail (i-mode mail or SMS)



Messages written in English are read out in spelling out.

- By selecting "Read out message" from the function menu in the Received mail detail screen, you can have the FOMA terminal read out the body of the received message in the designated voice.
  To cancel reading, press (●). (After cancelling, press (●) to start reading from the beginning of the message.)
  To end reading, Press (✉) (Exit).
- You can set the voice used to read out received mail using "Read out setting" (p.291).
- A FOMA terminal reads out mails at the volume level set in "FOMAphone" in "Ring volume". If "Silent" or "Step" is set, messages are read out at the "Level 2" volume.
  Volume in Manner mode→p.145
- While a message is being read out, an image appears in the top half of the screen, as shown in the figure. If the sender's address and image are stored in the phonebook, the stored image is displayed.

- While reading out a mail, press (Navigation), (2) (Home) or (8) (Memo/Check) to scroll the message. Also, pressing (5) for 1 second or longer turns the backlight on or off. Pressing any other key stops the reading.
- If you receive a call while a message is being read out, reading ends and the ringing screen appears.
- If you receive new mail or messages while a message is being read out, the setting in "Receiving display" takes effect. Also, if the specified alarm time is reached while a message is being read out, the setting in "Alarm setting" takes effect.
- The FOMA terminal may be unable to read out some message body in the received mail from PC, etc.

Guide to the folder list screens

- Mails can be organized into different folders in the Inbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the “Inbox”, “Secret”*, “Chat” and “Trash box” folders, but you can add folders using the function menu of the Inbox folder list screen and mail-linked i-αppli.
- Mails can be organized into different folders in the Outbox. At the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal only has the “Outbox”, “Secret”*, and “Chat” folders, but you can add folders using the function menu of the Outbox folder list screen and mail-linked i-αppli.

*: The Secret folders are only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.



Inbox folder list

Function menu➡p.281

: Folder containing no unread mails

: Folder containing unread mails

: Folder with security (p.281) set containing no unread mails

: Folder with Auto-sort (p.282) containing no unread mails

: Folder with security set containing unread mails

: Folder with Auto-sort containing unread mails

: Folder with security and Auto-sort set containing no unread mails

: Folder with security and Auto-sort set containing unread mails

: Inbox folder for a mail-linked i-αppli (p.305)

: Inbox folder for a mail-linked i-αppli containing unread mails

: Inbox folder with security set for a mail-linked i-αppli

: Inbox folder with security set for a mail-linked i-αppli containing unread mails

: Inbox folder with Auto-sort set for a mail-linked i-αppli

: Inbox folder with Auto-sort set for a mail-linked i-αppli containing unread mails

: Inbox folder with security and Auto-sort set for a mail-linked i-αppli

: Inbox folder with security and Auto-sort set for a mail-linked i-αppli containing unread mails

: Trash box folder

: Trash box folder with security set

: Secret folders (only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode) →p.175



Outbox folder list

Function menu➡p.281

: Outbox folder

: Outbox folder with security (p.281) set

: Outbox folder for a mail-linked i-αppli (p.305)

: Outbox folder with security set for a mail-linked i-αppli

: Outbox folder with Auto-sort (p.282) set

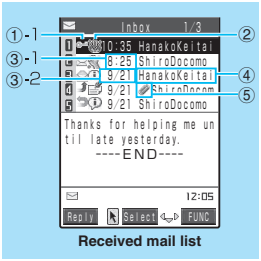
: Outbox folder with security and Auto-sort set

: Outbox folder with Auto-sort set for a mail-linked i-αppli

: Outbox folder with security and Auto-sort set for a mail-linked i-αppli

: Secret folders (only displayed in Secret mode or Secret data only mode) →p.175

Guide to the mail list screens



Received mail list

Function menu➡p.283

①Shows the mail status.

①-1 Receive

: Unread mail

: Read mail

: Forwarded mail

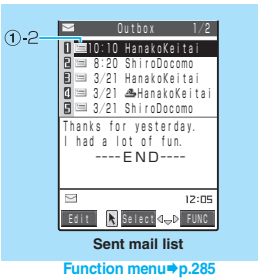
: Replied-to mail

: Unread protected mail

: Read protected mail

: Forwarded protected mail

: Replied-to protected mail



Sent mail list

Function menu➡p.285

①-2 Send

: Mail sent successfully

: Mail sent unsuccessfully

: Mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully

: Mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully

: Mail to multiple recipients, all sent unsuccessfully

: Protected mail sent successfully

: Protected mail sent unsuccessfully

: Protected mail to multiple recipients, all sent successfully

: Protected mail to multiple recipients, some sent successfully

: Protected mail to multiple recipients, all sent unsuccessfully

②Emotion-expressing mail icon that indicates characteristics of the message.

etc.: Emotion-expressing mail icons ➡p.270

③Shows the time and date of transmission.

③-1 The time is shown for mail sent and received on the current day.

③-2 The date is shown for mail sent and received on the previous day.

④Shows the sender/recipient or subject of a mail. You can switch the display mode by address or phone number, by name or by subject. When i-mode mail has no subject, “No title” is displayed. For SMS, the message header is displayed. (For an SMS report, “SMS report” is displayed.) For Voice Mail notices, “Noticecall voicemail” is displayed.

⑤Shows the message type and the attached or pasted file information type.

<2 lines>

: SMS

: SMS with SMS report received

: SMS on the FOMA card (UIM)

: Attached melody

: Multiple attached melodies, some of which were invalid or deleted.

: All the attached melodies were invalid or deleted.

: Attached images

: Multiple attached images, some of which were invalid or deleted.

: All the attached images were invalid or deleted (too many pasted images to be displayed in the mail detail screen).

: Large image downloaded and confirmed as OK.

: Large image downloaded but was then found to be invalid or was deleted.

: Large image attached but was not automatically downloaded.

: Before downloading, attached large image was found to be invalid.

: Displayed when an i-mode mail with an attached i-motion has been sent.

: An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted or the file name was edited.

Continued on next page

: Before downloading a large image pasted to a Deco-mail, the type of file was found to be unknown.

: Launching i-αppli available from the message body

: Moving the mail which can start an i-αppli from the message to the Secret folder.

: Mail sent or received by the mail-linked i-αppli

: Multiple data pasted (also displayed when data is pasted together with the i-αppli To function)

: ToruCa is attached

: Multiple ToruCa are attached, some of which were invalid or deleted.

: All of the attached ToruCa were invalid or deleted.

: Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

<1 line/1line+body>

: One or more files without large files are attached or pasted.

: Multiple files attached or pasted, none of which are large but some of which are invalid.

: One or more files attached or pasted, none of which are large but all of which are invalid.

: One or more files attached, including one or more large files

: Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and some of which are invalid.

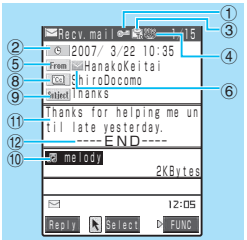
: Multiple files attached, one or more of which are large and all of which are invalid.

: Attached or pasted file or data cannot be used because a different FOMA card (UIM) was used when the mail was sent or received.

NOTE

◆When you view i-mode mail with an attached image in the Received mail detail screen or Sent mail detail screen, the screen switches between image display and file name display every time you press ●.

Guide to the mail detail screens



Received mail detail

Function menu➡p.287

① Shows the mail status. (See the explanation for item ① in the mail list screen on p.277.)

② Shows the time and date of transmission (time and date of arrival at the Center).

③ Shows the sending type of received mail.

: Received mail addressed specifically to the recipient by the sender.

: Received mail addressed specifically to the recipient in broadcast sent as a copy from the sender.

: Received mail broadcast by the sender with the other recipients not shown.

④ Emotion-expressing mail icon that indicates characteristics of the received message.

etc.: Emotion-expressing mail icons →p.270



Sent mail detail

Function menu➡p.287

⑤ Shows received mail with the sender's e-mail address.

From: Sender's mail address

: E-mail address to which replies cannot be sent (shown when the e-mail address exceeds 50 half-pitch characters, etc.)

⑥ : If the sender's address and phone number are stored in the phonebook, the icon stored in the phonebook is displayed.

⑦ Shows sent mail with the recipient's address and recipient type.
Use this to check whether the message was sent successfully. If the message was sent to multiple recipients, all the recipients are shown.

- To OK: Recipient to which mail was successfully sent.
- To ✕: Recipient to which mail was not successfully sent.
- Cc OK: Recipient to which mail was successfully sent for broadcasting as a copy.
- Cc ✕: Recipient to which mail failed to be sent for broadcasting as a copy.
- Bcc OK: Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was sent successfully.
- Bcc ✕: Broadcast mail that was set up not to display the addresses of other recipients was not sent successfully.

⑧ Received mail with multiple addresses (not including the recipient itself). Up to 4 recipients can be shown.

- To: The sender addressed the message specifically to the recipient.
- To: An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender specifically addressed the message.
- Cc: An e-mail address to which the sender sent a copy of the message as broadcast mail.
- Cc: An e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent to which the sender sent a copy of the message as broadcast mail.

The "Fm", "To" or "Cc" icons are used to indicate an e-mail address to which replies cannot be sent.

If the sender of received mail or the recipient of sent mail is stored in the phonebook, the "Name" stored in the phonebook appears in fields ⑤, ⑦ and ⑧.
To display the name, the other party's e-mail address must be stored correctly in the phonebook.→p.119

⑨ Shows the message subject. Where there is no subject, "No title" is displayed. The "SMS" icon is displayed for the received SMS ("SIM" for SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)) and the title is "SMS" ("SMS report" for SMS report). If the SMS report is already received, "" is also displayed.

⑩ When a message includes attached or pasted files, this shows the icon, file name and file size (in bytes).

- : Pasted melody (if the pasted melody file is faulty, it is displayed as text in the message.)
- : Multiple data pasted (also displayed when data is pasted together with the i-αppli To function)
- : An i-motion attached to sent mail was deleted or the file name was edited.
- : i-motion attached to sent mail is subject to Original lock
- : An attached image was deleted.
- : Large image was deleted after downloading (also displayed when data was edited or overwritten after downloading).
- : Attached large images are subject to Original lock
- : An attached melody was deleted.
- : ToruCa is attached
- : Attached ToruCa are invalid or the ToruCa (detail) is attached.
- : An attached ToruCa was deleted.

Attached file icons→p.277

⑪ Shows the mail message.
⑫ Shows the end of the message body.

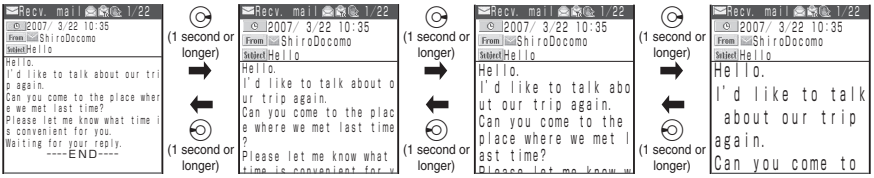
On the following situations, only mail address is displayed without the stored name, even when the phone number or mail address is stored in the phonebook.

- "Restrict dialing" (p.185) is set and the phone number is not designated in the "Restrict dialing" settings.
- When details are displayed in Secret data only mode for mail sent to an e-mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data or for mail received from an e-mail address or phone number that was not stored as secret data
- When the FOMA terminal is not in Secret mode or Secret data only mode and details are displayed for mail sent to an e-mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data or for mail received from an e-mail address or phone number that was stored as secret data

Changing the font size or list mode of the message

Changing the font size in the message body

On the mail detail screen, you can change the font size in the message body.



Small　Standard　Large 1　Large 2

NOTE

- When you perform the operation shown above to change the font size, the setting in "Font size" (p.289) also changes.
- The font size can be changed in the same way in the message reading out screen (p.275).

Changing the display mode on the mail list screen (2 lines/1 line/1line+body)

You can switch to any item of 1line+body, 1 line and 2 lines using the "Mail list disp." setting in "Mail settings" in the Mail menu. →p.289

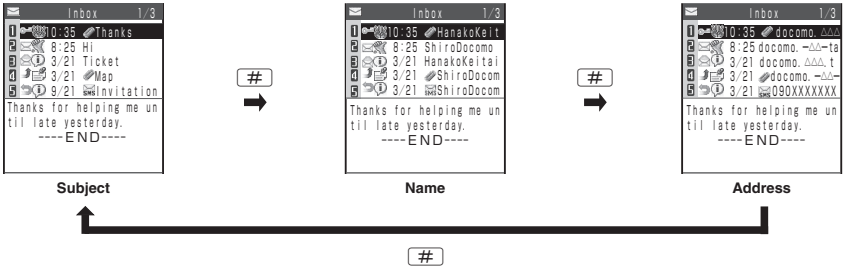


1line+body　2 lines　1 line

Changing the display mode on the mail list screen (Name/Address/Subject)

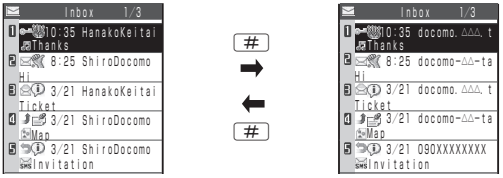
On the mail list screen, you can switch to show the display mode by destination address or source name, by mail address or phone number, or by subject. If the name of the destination or the source is stored in the phonebook, it is used for display.

- Message list screen (1line+body)



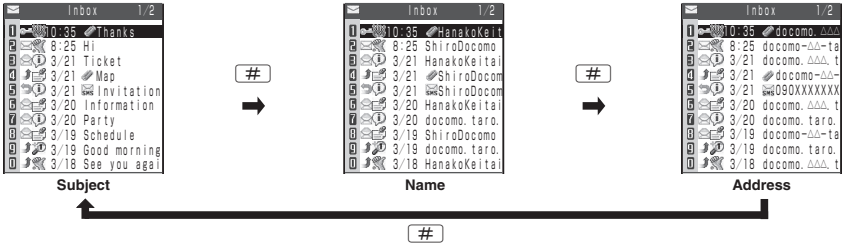
Subject　Name　Address

- Message list screen (2 lines)



Name　Address

● Message list screen (1 line)



NOTE

◆ You can also change the display mode by selecting “List setting” from the function menu in the Inbox list screen, Outbox list screen or Draft list screen and then selecting any item of “Subject”, “Name”, or “Address”.

● Checking the message count of Inbox or Outbox

To check the total number of saved messages in all the folders, select “No. of messages” from the function menu in the folder list screen.
To check the number of messages stored in each folder, display the list screen for mails in the folder you want to check and then select “No. of messages” from the function menu.

● Backlight function

When you open the FOMA terminal, press a key or send or receive an i-mode mail or SMS, the backlight turns on for about 15 seconds. (Lighting interval varies depending on the setting of “Receive ringing time”.) However, when an i-mode mail or SMS is displayed, lighting time depends on the message size. The backlight does not turn on if “Lighting” under “Backlight” is set to “OFF”.

Inbox/Outbox folder list function menu

● You can add up to 22 folders.

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name▶Set the sort criteria** Adds a new folder, and then sets the Auto-sort function to this folder. “Automatic sorting settings”→p.282
Auto-sort	“Automatic sorting settings”→p.282
Edit folder name	**▶Enter a folder name** You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Mail security	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Sets or cancels folder security. “Setting security for individual folders”→p.185
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”**
Sort folder	**▶Select the folder to be moved** Rearranges folders.
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in all the folders.
Open folder	Displays list of the mails in the selected folder.
Add desktop icon*	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Send all Ir data	Sends all the mail in the selected folder using Infrared data exchange. However, SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) and mails in the secret folder are not sent. “Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time”→p.378
Copy all to miniSD	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Copies all mails in the selected mail box. However, SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) and mails in the secret folder are not copied.
Delete read*	Deletes all the messages you have already read.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all messages.

*: Only displayed in the Inbox folder list screen.

NOTE

<Add folder>

◆When you download a mail-linked i-αppli, an i-αppli mail folder is automatically created (5 folders max.) separately from a folder which you can add using “Add folder”.

<Edit folder name>

◆You cannot edit the folder name for the “Inbox”, “Outbox”, “Chat”, a mail-linked i-αppli, “Trash box” or “Secret” folders.

◆You cannot edit the names of folders for which mail security is set.

<Mail security>

◆You cannot set the mail security to the “Secret” folder.

Continued on next page

<Delete folder>

◆You cannot delete a folder if a message in the folder is protected or set in mail security. Remove the protection or mail security and then delete the folder.

◆You cannot delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is a corresponding mail-linked i-αppli. You can delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is no corresponding software, but the folder created in the Inbox folder list screen or Outbox folder list screen is also deleted.

◆If you delete a folder that is specified in the "Auto-sort" settings, the automatic sorting setting for that folder is also canceled.

◆You cannot delete the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" and "Secret" folders which are pre-installed at default.

<Sort folder>

◆You cannot sort the "Inbox", "Outbox", "Chat", "Trash box" or "Secret" folders.

◆You cannot sort the folder if an additional folder is only one.

<No. of messages>

◆Mail messages stored in the Secret folder are not included.

<Delete read>

◆This option does not delete the protected read i-mode mail and SMS.

◆i-mode mails and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

<Delete all>

◆Unread mails are also deleted. However, this option does not delete the protected i-mode mail and SMS.

◆i-mode mails and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.

● Automatic sorting settings

You can automatically sort i-mode mail (including broadcast mail) or SMS to the specified folders by making conditions in advance such as a mail addressee, phone number or subjects used in the source of the received mail or the destination of the sent mail.

- You can set a total of 700 e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for automatic sorting in all the folders in the Inbox and Outbox. You can set multiple e-mail addresses, phone numbers, phonebook groups or mailing lists for the same folder. Only one subject can be set for each folder.
- When Original lock is set for the phonebook, the group name is displayed as "Group". When Original lock is set for the mail member, the member name is displayed as "Mail member".
- If received or sent mail meets multiple sort criteria, the Auto-sort settings are prioritized as shown below: Note that mail for mail-linked i-αppli is sorted into the dedicated folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings. Unless "Sort all" is specified, chat mail is always sorted into the "Chat" folder regardless of the Auto-sort settings.
  ①Address sort ②Subject sort ③Reply/Send impossible ④Mail address/Phone number ⑤Mail member ⑥Phonebook group
- If you use Look-up group to store a mail address registered as secret data in a folder and receive a mail from the mail address, the mail is sorted into "Inbox" folder when Secret mode or Secret data only mode is not set. When Secret mode or Secret data only mode is set, the mail is sorted into the folder set in Auto-sort.
  If you register a folder using Look-up address and receive a mail from the destination stored as secret data, a mail is sorted to the folder set in Auto-set regardless of setting in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.
- The message received or sent before setting in Auto-set remains in the folders stored before setting.

1 Inbox folder list screen (p.276)/ Outbox folder list screen (p.276)▶ Highlight the destination folder for sorting▶ⓘ (FUNC)▶"Auto-sort"

If even one message is set for sorting, additionally press ⓘ (FUNC).

2 Select any item

Address sort	Sets a mail address or phone number to be used for automatic sorting.
• **Look-up address**	Sets a mail address or phone number referencing the phonebook and records.
• **Phonebook**	Sets a mail address or phone number by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.125
• **Received address**	Sets a mail address or phone number from the Received address list.
• **Sent address**	Sets a mail address or phone number from the Sent address list.
• **Look-up group**	▶**Select a group** Sets the mail address or phone number of the selected group.
• **Look-up member**	▶**Select a mail member** Sets a mail address or phone number of the selected mail member.
• **Enter address**	Sets a mail addresses or phone number entering a character one by one.
Subject sort	▶**Enter a subject** Sets a mail subject as an auto-sort criterion.
Reply impossible*	Sets a mail address or phone number to which you cannot reply (or which failed to be sent).
Sort all	This can be set only for mail-linked i-αppli folders. Sorts all mails into a mail-linked i-αppli folder.

Edit addr/subj	Edits a previously specified mail address, phone number or mail subject.
List setting	Selects from “Name” or “Address” about how to view the list of mail addresses or phone number to be automatically sorted.
Release	Deselects all the auto-sort criteria.
• **Release this**	Deselects the selected auto-sort criterion.
• **Release selected**	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶**(Finish)**▶**“YES”** Deselects the selected auto-sort criteria.
• **Release all**	Deselects all the auto-sort criteria.

*: If you have selected the Auto-sort settings in the Outbox folder, “Send impossible” is displayed.

NOTE

◆You cannot set the“Inbox”, “Outbox”, “Chat”, “Trash box” or “Secret” folders in automatic sorting.
◆If even a single address on the broadcasted mail matches the auto-sort criteria, the message is sorted to the folder set in “Address sort” or “Send impossible”. Sort condition is looked up to in sequence order of the input address.
◆For the folder with mail security (p.281) set, you need to enter the security code after selecting “Auto-sort” from the Inbox/Outbox folder list function menu.

<Address sort (Look-up group)>
◆You cannot set “Group 00” or groups in the FOMA card (UIM).

<Address sort (Enter address)>
◆Ensure that the mail address should be entered including domain (the part of the address following @ (at mark)). However, If the address format is “[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp”, simply enter the phone number.

<Subject sort>
◆If the subject meets the sort criteria for multiple folders, the mail is sorted into the folder closest to the “Inbox” or “Outbox” folder.
◆Only one subject can be set for each folder.
◆You cannot sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as “No title” even if setting “No title” as a sort criteria.
◆You cannot use this option to sort SMS.

<Reply impossible>
◆You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports.
◆“Reply impossible” can only be set for one folder within Inbox.

<Send impossible>
◆“Send impossible” can only be set for one folder within Outbox.

<Sort all>
◆You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports or SMS received directly to the FOMA card (UIM).
◆“Sort all” can only be set for one i-αppli mail folder for received and sent i-αppli mail respectively.

<List setting>
◆You can also switch between “Name” and “Address” by pressing # on the Auto-sort setting screen.

Function menu (Received mail list screen)

● Since the available functions are different between the received and unread mail list screens, the items displayed are different.

Reply	“Replying by composing a new message”→p.272
Move	▶**Select a folder**▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)**▶ **(Finish)**▶**“YES”** Moves the selected mail to other folder.
Search mail	Searches for mail using a sender or subject specified.
• **Search sender**	Specifies the mail address by referencing the Phonebook or history, or by entering a character one by one.
• **Phonebook**	Specifies a mail address by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.125
• **Received address**	Specifies a mail address from the Received address list.
• **Sent address**	Specifies a mail address from the Sent address list.
• **Enter address**	Specifies a mail addresses by entering a character one by one.
• **Search subject**	▶**Enter a subject**
Display all	Reverts the search and sort display or the display by the filter function to the original display (all “Chronological ↑”).
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.
Filter	Displays mail according to the specified criteria.
• **Unread**	Displays only unread i-mode mail and SMS.
• **Read**	Displays only read i-mode mail and SMS.
• **Protected**	Displays only protected i-mode mail and SMS.
• **Image**	Displays only i-mode mail with attached or inserted images, or with pasted downloading information for large images.

Continued on next page

Filter	
• **Melody**	Displays only i-mode mail with attached or pasted melodies.
• **ToruCa**	Displays only i-mode mail with ToruCa attached.
• **i-αppli**	Displays only i-mode mail including i-αppli launcher.
• **SMS**	Displays only SMS
• **keyword**	▶**Select a "Disp keyword" (1 to 3) icon** Displays only i-mode mail and SMS with the selected "Disp keyword" icon added. "Emotion/Keyword notice"→p.294
• **Emotion**	▶**Select a "Disp emotion" icon** Displays only i-mode mail and SMS showing the "Disp emotion" icon.
Color coding	Selects the color coding of the received mail (time and date, mail address/name, subject) from "Default" (black), "Red" or "Blue".
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from "Subject", "Name" or "Address".
Read all	Marks all the unread mail in the folder as read.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all protected mail.
Send Ir data	"Sending one data at a time via Infrared data exchange"→p.377
Copy to miniSD	Copies the received mails to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted mail.
• **Copy selected**	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶✉**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Copies multiple mails.
• **Copy all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Copies all mails stored in the folder.
UIM operation	Moves or copies the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or moves or copies the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).→p.302
Mail info	Displays information such as the sender without opening the i-mode mail.
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in the folder.
Store at DSC	"Saving mails to the Data Security Center"→p.286
Move trash box	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶✉**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Moves the selected mail to the "Trash box" folder.
Delete this[*1]	Deletes the highlighted mail.
Delete	Deletes the received mail.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)** ▶✉**(Finish)**▶**"YES"**
• **Delete read**	Deletes the read mail.
• **Delete all SMS-R**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all SMS reports.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all the received mail.
Keep in secret[*2]	"Hiding Various Data"→p.175

*1: Only shown on the Unread mail list screen.
*2: The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears.→p.175

NOTE

<Move>
- You cannot use this option to move mail to the "Trash box" or "Secret folder".
- You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to other folder.

<Search mail>
- You can further search from the Reference result screen.
- The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
- To return to the original display, select "Display all".
- You cannot search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as "No title" even if setting "No title" as a criterion for searching by subject.

<Sort> <Filter>
- The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
- Sort and Filter are released when you exit the Received mail list screen.

<Color coding>
- On the received mail list screen, pressing ✳ is also available for changing colors.

<List setting>
- On the received mail list screen, pressing # is also available for switching among "Subject", "Name" and "Address".

<Read all>
- If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Read all", only the currently displayed mail is marked as read.

<Protect ON/OFF>
- If you exceed the limit on the number of received mail messages (the total number of i-mode mail and SMS) that can be stored on the FOMA terminal (p.274), precedence is given to deleting mail in the "Trash box" folder when new mail arrives. If there is no mail in the "Trash box" folder, the unprotected-read received mail is deleted in chronological order. i-mode mail and SMS in the "Secret" folder are not deleted.
- You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).
- You cannot protect mail in the "Trash box" folder.

<Unprotect all>
- If you view mail with the Filter function and then select "Unprotect all", protection is only removed from the currently displayed mail.

<UIM operation>
- When you move or copy the received SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Inbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Move trash box>

- This option moves mail to be deleted to the “Trash box” folder. Mail moved to the “Trash box” folder is not deleted immediately and can be retrieved and returned to another folder until it is deleted. Once the Inbox is full, mail moved to the “Trash box” folder is the first to be deleted as new mail arrives.
- You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the “Trash box” folder.
- If you move unread mail to the “Trash box” folder, it is marked as read.

<Delete this>

- You can delete the unread i-mode mail or SMS (including SMS in the FOMA card (UIM)).
- You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete selected>

- You cannot delete this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.

<Delete read>

- If you select “Delete read” after the mails are shown using the Filter function, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected and already read.

<Delete all SMS-R>

- Protected SMS reports cannot be deleted.

<Delete all>

- You can delete the unread i-mode mail or SMS.
- If you select “Delete all” after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except the protected i-mode mails or SMS.

Function menu (Sent mail list screen)

Edit	**▶Edit the address, subject or message body▶✉ (Send)** Re-edits the message.
Move	**▶Select a folder▶Use ✣ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶“YES”** Moves a mail to other folder.
Search mail	Searches for mail specifying the destination address or subject.
• **Search receiver**	Specifies the mail address by referencing the Phonebook or record, or by entering a character one by one.
• **Phonebook**	Specifies a mail address by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.125
• **Sent address**	Specifies a mail address from the Sent address list.
• **Received address**	Specifies a mail address from the Received address list.
• **Enter address**	Specifies a mail addresses by entering a character one by one.
• **Search subject**	**▶Enter a subject**
Display all	Reverts the search and sort display or the display by the filter function to the original display (all Chronological ↑).
Sort	Sorts mail according to the specified criteria.
Filter	Displays only the messages that meet the specified criterion.
Color coding	Selects the color coding of the sent mail (time and date, mail address/ name, subject) from “Default” (black), “Red” or “Blue”.
List setting	Selects a mail-list format from “Subject”, “Name” or “Address”.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Unprotect all	Unprotects all protected mail.
Send Ir data	“Transferring One Data at a Time” →p.377
Copy to miniSD	Copies the sent mails to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted mail.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Use ✣ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶“YES”** Copies multiple mails.
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Copies all mails stored in the folder.
UIM operation	Moves or copies the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or moves or copies the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone). →p.302
No. of messages	Displays the number of messages and protected messages in the folder.
Store at DSC	“Saving mails to the Data Security Center” →p.286
Delete	Deletes sent mail.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted mail.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ✣ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶“YES”** Deletes multiple mails.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all the sent mails.
Keep in secret*	“Hiding Various Data” →p.175

*: The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears. →p.175

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Move>
- ◆You cannot move mail to the Secret folder.
- ◆You cannot move SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).

<Search mail>
- ◆You can further search from the Reference result screen.
- ◆The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
- ◆To return to the original display, select “Display all”.
- ◆You cannot search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is shown as No title even if setting “No title” as a criterion for searching by subject.

<Sort> <Filter>
- ◆The Sort and Filter functions can be used together.
- ◆Sort and Filter are released when you exit the Sent mail list screen.

<Color coding>
- ◆On the sent mail list screen, pressing ✳ is also available for changing colors.

<List setting>
- ◆On the sent mail list screen, pressing # is also available for switching among “Subject”, “Name” and “Address”.

<Protect ON/OFF>
- ◆If sent mail (a total of both i-mode mail and SMS) stored on the FOMA terminal exceeds the maximum storage capacity (p.274), the unprotected sent mail is deleted in chronological order. However, i-mode mail and SMS in the Secret folder are not deleted.
- ◆You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM).

<UIM operation>
- ◆When you move or copy the sent SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Outbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Delete>
- ◆You cannot use this option to delete protected i-mode mail or SMS.
- ◆If you select “Delete all” after the mails are shown using Filter, those mails shown are deleted except i-mode mails or SMS which are protected.

● Saving mails to the Data Security Center
<Data Security Service>

You can save i-mode and SMS to the DoCoMo Data Security Center.
- To use this service, you need to subscribe to “Data Security Service”.
- If you have not subscribed to “Data Security Service”, a message appears indicating that you have not subscribed to the service. You can access the “Data Security Service” site from the message screen to subscribe to the service.
  Data Security Service→pp.135, 190
- The Data Security Service operation is not available with the Single mode (WLAN).

1 Received mail list screen (p.277)/ Sent mail list screen (p.277)/Draft mail list screen (p.267)▶ (FUNC) ▶“Store at DSC”

2 Use to select a checkbox (□) ▶ (Finish)

Up to 10 messages can be selected.

■ **To store the message with attachments or inserted images which cannot be kept at the Data Security Center**

▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶“OK”

Messages are stored with attachments and inserted image deleted.

3 Enter your security code▶“YES”

A FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the mails at the center.

4 (Finish)

NOTE
- ◆SMS on the FOMA card (UIM) cannot be stored at the Data Security Center.
- ◆A large image, movie or i-motion attached to an i-mode mail is deleted when the mail is saved.
- ◆If the received mail has an image attached or pasted for which output is prohibited from the FOMA terminal, mail will be saved in an image deleted condition.
- ◆You cannot save the “Color coding” set on the Received mail list screen or Sent mail list screen.

■ Restore mail

Message put in the Data Security Center can be restored to the FOMA terminal. To restore message, connect to i-mode. For details on how to use this function, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

Function menu (Received mail detail screen)

Reply	“Replying by composing a new message”→p.272
Reply with quote	“Replying by quoting the received message”→p.272
Forward	“Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Destination”→p.272
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Move	▶**Select a folder** Moves a mail to another folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or mail address. “Copying (or cutting) text”→p.448
Save address **Add to phonebook**	“Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook”→p.273
Save data	Saves a melody, image or ToruCa that is attached to or pasted into mail. “Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail”→p.273 “Saving Images in Image Mail”→p.274 “Viewing/Saving ToruCa”→p.274
Save insert image	▶**Select an image**▶**“YES”**▶**Select a folder**▶**“YES”**▶**Select any item** Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, etc., select “NO” after selecting the folder.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a sender address as a desktop icon. “Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Save template	Saves a received i-mode mail as a template. “Saving a template”→p.264
Refer dictionary	Starts the dictionary. “Using Dictionaries”→p.410
Property	▶**Select the image** Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
URL	Displays the URL of the large image attached to mail.
Read out message	Has the FOMA terminal read out the message in an i-mode mail.→p.275
Chat	Starts chat mail.→p.295
Send Ir data	“Transferring One Data at a Time”→p.377
Copy to miniSD	“Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card”→p.366
UIM operation	Moves or copies the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or moves or copies the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).→p.302
Scroll	Selects “1 line”, “3 lines” or “5 lines” for the number of scrolling lines on the screen.
Font size	Selects the size of displayed characters from “Standard”, “Small”, “Large 1” or “Large 2”.
Delete att. file	Deletes the attached file. Note that data saved in the Data box is not deleted.
Move trash box	Moves the mail to the “Trash box” folder.
Delete	Deletes the received mail displayed in the Received mail detail screen.
Keep in secret*	“Hiding Various Data”→p.175

*: The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears. →p.175

NOTE

<Move>
- You cannot use this option to move mail to the “Trash box” or “Secret” folder.
- You cannot move SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to other folder.

<URL>
- Select “” or “” on the received mail detail screen, then “URL” from the function menu, and you can check the destination URL for the images. You can enter URLs up to 150 single-byte characters including “http://”.

<UIM operation>
- When you move or copy the received SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Inbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Delete att. file>
- You cannot use this option to delete a file pasted into the message body.

<Move trash box>
- You cannot move protected mail or SMS or SMS reports in the FOMA card (UIM) to the “Trash box” folder.

Function menu (Sent mail detail screen)

Edit	▶**Edit the address, subject or message body**▶ **(Send)** Re-edits the message.
Resend	Resends the message.
Protect ON/OFF	Protects or unprotects mail.
Move	▶**Select a folder** Moves a mail to another folder.
Copy	Copies the message body, subject or mail address. “Copying (or cutting) text”→p.448
Save address **Add to phonebook**	“Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook”→p.273

Continued on next page

Save data	Saves a melody, image or ToruCa that is attached to mail. “Playing and Saving Melody Attached or Pasted in i-mode Mail” →p.273 “Saving Images in Image Mail” →p.274 “Viewing/Saving ToruCa”→p.274
Save insert image	**▶Select an image▶“YES”▶Select a folder▶“YES”▶Select any item** Saves an image inserted into the message of Deco-mail. If you do not set the image to the standby screen, etc., select “NO” after selecting the folder.
Add desktop icon	Pastes a destination address as a desktop icon. “Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Save template	Saves a sent i-mode mail as a template. “Saving a template”→p.264
Refer dictionary	Starts the dictionary. “Using Dictionaries”→p.410
Property	**▶Select the image** Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail.
Disp. SMS report	Displays the SMS report for an SMS.→p.299
Send Ir data	“Transferring One Data at a Time” →p.377
Copy to miniSD	“Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card”→p.366
UIM operation	Moves or copies the SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM), or moves or copies the SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).→p.302
Scroll	Selects 1 line, 3 lines or 5 lines for the number of scrolling lines on the screen.
Font size	Selects the size of displayed characters from “Standard”, “Small”, “Large 1” or “Large 2”.
Delete att. file	Deletes the attached file. Note that data saved in the Data box is not deleted.
Delete	Deletes the sent mail displayed in the sent mail detail screen.
Keep in secret*	“Hiding Various Data”→p.175

*: The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears. →p.175

NOTE

<Resend>

- Selecting “Resend” resends the message unedited. Use this option as a simple way to resend mail when the initial transmission has failed.
- When you resend a message for which a previous transmission failed, the message is saved as a sent mail. When you resend broadcast mail for which the previous transmission failed at all the addresses, the message is also saved as a sent mail.

<Disp. SMS report>

- If there is no SMS report for the selected SMS, this function cannot be used.
- When receiving the SMS report of a SMS stored in the Secret folder, you cannot select “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu even if “” appears on the SMS detail screen. To check the SMS report by selecting “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu, move the SMS from the Secret folder into another one.

<UIM operation>

- When you move or copy the sent SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the relevant SMS appears in the Outbox folder regardless of the original folder type.

<Sent address list/Received address list>

Using Mail Records

When you send or receive mail, destination addresses are recorded in the Sent address list and sender addresses are recorded in the Received address list. You can use this procedure to send mail by selecting a mail address from these address lists. Different icons are used for the i-mode mail and SMS address lists so that you can quickly distinguish the record types.

- Up to 30 i-mode mail address or SMS phone number entries can be stored in the respective Sent address and Received address lists.
- If you set security for Inbox or Outbox, e-mail addresses are not recorded in the Sent address or Received address list.

Checking an address list

<Example: To display the Received address list screen>

1 (MENU)▶Data box▶**“Received calls”▶“All calls”▶ (FUNC)▶“Received address”**

“Received address list” screen appears.
You can also display the “Received address list” screen by pressing and holding for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.
Pressing also displays this screen when selecting the address in editing mail.



Received address list

Function menu➡p.289

■ **To display the Sent address list screen**

▶(MENU)▶Own data (Own data)▶“Dialed calls”▶(FUNC)▶“Sent address”

You can also display the Sent address list screen by pressing ⟳ for 1 second or longer on the standby screen.
Pressing ⟳ also displays this screen when selecting the address in editing mail.

2 Select a source address

“Received address detail” screen appears.



3 Check the details

NOTE

◆The following icons are used in the Sent address list and Sent address detail screens:

- : i-mode mail transmission succeeded.
- : i-mode mail transmission failed.
- SMS: SMS transmission succeeded.
- SMS: SMS transmission failed.

◆The following icons are used in the Received address list and Received address detail screens:

- : Received i-mode mail
- SMS: Received SMS

◆Turning the FOMA terminal off or deleting the sent or received mail does not delete the entries in the address lists. You should delete the record entries themselves to prevent others from seeing them.

Function menu (Sent address/ Received address list screen)

This explanation also applies to the function menus in the sent address and received address detail screens.

Add to phonebook	“Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook”→p.273
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Compose message[*1]	Create an i-mode mail with the mail address pasted to the destination address. “Creating and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.257
Dialing	Makes a voice call, a videophone call and a PushTalk call using the Phone To, AV Phone To or SIP To function to the SIP address or phone number in the phonebook in which the mail address is stored. →p.238
Received calls[*2]	Switches to the received calls screen (or dialed calls screen) (list). →pp.64, 74
Delete	Deletes the mail address.
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted mail address.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ✥ to select a checkbox (□)**▶(Mail)**(Finish)**▶**“YES”** Deletes the selected sent or received address.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Deletes all items in the Received address or Sent address list.

*1: If an SMS is selected, this option changes to “Compose SMS”, which composes an SMS with the phone number pasted in as the recipient.
“Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)”→p.299

*2: “Redial” is for the Sent address list screen from Redial and “Dialed calls” is for the Sent address list screen from Dialed calls.

NOTE

<Received calls>

◆The displayed received calls screen is “All calls” (shows the entire received calls record).

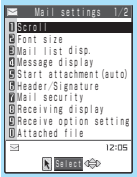
<Mail settings>

Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

1 (MENU)▶Mail▶“Mail settings”

The “Mail settings” screen appears.

2 Select any item



Mail settings

Scroll (default: 1 line)	Selects any of “1 line”, “3 lines” and “5 lines” to specify how many lines are scrolled on the screen when pressing ⟳ on the mail detail screen.
Font size (default: Standard)	Selects any of “Standard”, “Small”, “Large 1” or “Large 2” for the font size displayed on the mail detail screen.
Mail list disp. (default: 1line+body)	Sets the number of lines and item to be displayed on the mail list screen. Select any option from “2 lines”, “1 line” and “1line+body”. ■ **To switch the mail list display** ▶**Select the display mode** Switches to “Subject”, “Name” or “Address”.
Message display	Sets the position from where to start displaying the message body.
• **Standard** (default)	Displays the message from the header (received/sent date and time).
• **From message**	Displays the mail from the message body.
Start attachment(auto) (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically play the attached or pasted melody when opening an i-mode mail.

Continued on next page

Header/Signature	“Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation marks”→p.291
Mail security	“Setting security for individual mailboxes”→p.185
Receiving display	Sets whether to display the receiving and reception results screens on a priority basis when you receive a mail, MessageR or MessageF while you are using the FOMA terminal.
• **Alarm preferred** (default)	Shows the receiving and reception results screen.
• **Operation preferred**	Gives priority to displaying the screen currently used rather than the receiving and reception results screens.
Receive option setting	Sets whether to receive mail selectively.
• **ON**	Does not automatically receive mail.
• **OFF** (default)	Receives mail automatically.
Attached file (default: Receive all)	Sets the mode to receive the attached files selecting from “Receive all”, “Receive image”, “Receive melody” or “No receive”.
Speed photo auto disp. (default: ON)	Sets whether to automatically display a still image when receiving a speed photo mail. If you set Speed photo auto display to “OFF” and you receive a speed photo mail, the attached image is not automatically displayed. To display the image, display the received mail.
Read out setting	Select a voice for reading a received mail from “Female 1 or 2”, “Male 1 or 2” or “Robot”.
Chat	“Specifying the chat mail settings”→p.298
Emotion/Keyword notice	“Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail”→p.294
SMS settings	Sets the options for SMS.
• **SMS report request** (default: OFF)	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS. Select “ON” or “OFF”.
• **SMS validity period** (default: 3 days)	Sets the period of time that the sent SMS is stored at the SMS Center by selecting “None”, “1 day”, “2 days” or “3 days”. Set “None” not to store SMS at the SMS Center.
• **SMS input character** (default: Japanese (70 char.))	Sets the input method of the SMS message. Up to 70 characters of all the double bytes and single bytes can be entered in Japanese. Up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered in English.
Check settings	Allows you to check the settings specified in “Mail settings”.
Reset	Resets the settings specified in “Mail settings” to default.→p.294

NOTE

<Scroll>

◆The number of lines scrolled can also be set on the mail detail screen by selecting “Scroll” from the function menu. Using that method also changes this setting.

<Font size>

◆You can also change the font size on the mail detail screen by pressing ⊖ or ⊕ for 1 second or longer. You can also change the font size on the mail detail screen or Read out mail screen by selecting “Font size” from the function menu. Using any of these methods also changes this setting.

◆When you have moved to other screen than the mail detail screen, the Small or Large font size automatically turns to Standard. When you are back to the mail detail screen, the font size returns to Small or Large again.

<Message display>

◆If the entire message body can be displayed on a single page, all or part of the mail headers (sending/receiving date and time) and the message body are displayed even when you select “From message”.

<Start attachment(auto)>

◆Even if you select “ON” in this option, you may not be able to play melodies sent from devices other than the FOMA N902iL correctly.

<Receiving display>

◆When you receive a mail or MessageR/MessageF while receiving an incoming voice call, making a voice call, being on a call or using FOMA terminal functions such as an i-αppli, i-motion, Chara-den or the camera, the receiving and reception results screens may not appear even if you have set “Alarm preferred”.

<Receive option setting>

◆This setting applies only to i-mode mail. SMS and MessageR/MessageF are automatically received regardless of this setting.

<Attached file>

◆Setting to “Receive all” receives all attached files of the images, melodies and ToruCa.

◆When you receive a mail with the files attached, those files are deleted as follows at the i-mode center depending on the Attached file setting: Setting to “No receive”, “Receive melody” and “Receive image” deletes all attached files, files other than the melody files and files other than the image files, respectively. You cannot retrieve the attached file once you have deleted even if you check new messages.

◆The melody may not be played correctly if you receive it through other than FOMA N902iL terminals.

◆When “No receive” or “Receive melody” is set, a still image on a speed photo mail is deleted at the i-mode center.

◆A FOMA terminal receives an image inserted into a Deco-mail message even if “No receive” or “Receive melody” is set.

<SMS report request>

◆You can view received SMS reports in the “Inbox” folder. You can also check the report by selecting “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu in the detail screen of the sent SMS.

Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation marks

Default setting	Header/Signature (Not stored): Insert Quotation marks: >

Storing text to be inserted at the beginning of an i-mode mail message body (a header) and your name or other information (signature) to be added at the end in advance allows you to quickly and easily paste that information into an i-mode mail (text mail) or Deco-mail message. This function also allows you to edit a symbol or comment (quotation mark) at the beginning of quoted text when you reply to received mail by quoting the original message.

1 Mail settings screen (p.289)▶Select "Header/Signature"

2 Select "Edit header" or "Edit signature"▶●

■ **To edit the quotation mark**
▶"Edit Quotation marks"

3 Enter the header or signature▶✉ (Finish)

You can enter up to 5,000 double-byte (10,000 single-byte) characters for header or signature, and up to 10 double-byte (20 single-byte) characters for quotation marks

■ **To edit the quotation mark**
▶Enter the quotation marks

■ **To decorate header or signature**
You can decorate header or signature. "Composing Deco-mail"→p.261

4 Select "Insert setting"▶Select the check box of "Header" and/or "Signature"▶✉ (Finish)

■ **To compose mail without adding a header or signature automatically**
▶Deselect the checkbox under "Insert setting"

NOTE

- Even if you select the checkbox under "Insert setting", the header or signature is not pasted into speed photo mail, template, chat screen or i-mode mail composed from an i-mode mail-linked i-αppli.
- You cannot set the background color to the decoration for header or signature. It changes to the background color of a mail to be pasted.
- If pasting the decorated header or signature to i-mode mail (text mail), it turns to Deco-mail.

Specifying which items are inquired to the i-mode center

<Set check new messages> Default setting: Selected all

Use this option to select the items checked for when you send an inquiry to the i-mode center by "Check new messages". You can specify whether to check for "Mail"(i-mode mail), "MessageR" and "MessageF".

- A deselected checkbox "□" denotes that the FOMA terminal will not check for that item.

1 MENU▶Settings▶"Connection setting"▶"Set check new messages"

2 Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)

Setting the voice to read out received mails

- The FOMA terminal cannot read out SMS report (p.299), mail without messages, mail only including attached melodies or URLs for an i-αppli activation, or Deco-mail without messages.
- The FOMA terminal cannot read out mail during a voice call or PushTalk call, while running the music player or during 64K data communication.

1 Mail settings screen (p.289)▶"Read out setting"▶Select a voice to read out

● Rules used for reading out mail

The read out mail function generally follows the rules given below when reading out received mail.

■ Symbols, special characters and pictographs

● Symbols, special characters and pictographs are not read out, except for certain symbols

* The FOMA terminal may not correctly read out sentences that include symbols, special characters or pictographs.

■ Numbers

● The FOMA terminal will read out numbers up to 16 digits long.

Example: 1234 → “Sen nihyaku sanju yon”

■ Monetary amounts

● If a currency symbol (e.g. “￥” (double- or single-byte character)) is placed at the beginning of a number, the FOMA terminal reads out the number up to 16 digits long as a monetary amount. If commas (,) are used as a delimiting character in an input string, the FOMA terminal will recognize the string as a monetary amount only if the commas are used every 3 digits.

Example: ￥12345
￥12,345 ┐ “Ichiman nisen sanbyaku yonju go en”

■ Phone number

● If numbers are delimited by hyphens (-) or parentheses (()) in the patterns listed below, the FOMA terminal reads them out as phone numbers but not as sequences of digits. The FOMA terminal will also read numbers preceded by “Tel:” as phone numbers.

Example: Tel: 0120-102-001→ “Teru zeroichinizero ichizeroni zerozeroichi”

Land line			
XX-XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXX-XXXX	XXXX-XX-XXXX	XXXXX-X-XXXX
(XX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XX-XXXX	(XXXXX)X-XXXX
XX(XXXX)XXXX	XXX(XXX)XXXX	XXXX(XX)XXXX	XXXXX(X)XXXX
XXXX-XXXX	XXX-XXXX	XX-XXXX	X-XXXX
Mobile phone			
XXX-XXXX-XXXX	XXXX-XXX-XXXX	(XXX)XXXX-XXXX	(XXXX)XXX-XXXX
XXX(XXXX)XXXX	XXXX(XXX)XXXX		
Toll-free			
XXXX-XXX-XXX	XXXX-XXXXXX		

* “X” indicates a number.

■ Time

● Numbers separated by a colon (:) are read out as time.* If the hour component is a 1- or 2-digit number and the minute component is a 2-digit number, the number is read out as time. If “AM” or “PM” is added before or after the number, it is read out before the number.

“Hour”:“Minute”(“Hour” = 0 to 29: “Minute” = 00 to 59) Example: 23:15 → “Nijusanji jugofun”
AM “Hour”:“Minute” or “Hour”:“Minute” AM (“Hour” = 0 to 12; “Minute” = 00 to 59) Example: AM 5:05 → “Gozen goji gofun”
PM “Hour”:“Minute” or “Hour”:“Minute” PM (“Hour” = 0 to 12; “Minute” = 00 to 59) Example: PM 5:05 → “Gogo goji gofun”

*: The time entered in the format of “Hour”:“Minute”:“Second” (e.g. 23:15:10) is not read out.

■ Date

● Numbers separated by a slash (/) or a period (.) are read out as date. If “M”, “T”, “S” or “H” (upper case) is inserted before a date, the corresponding (Japanese) era name is read out.

“Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “Year”. “Month”.“Day”(“Year” = 0 to 9999; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) Example: 2007/3/22 2007/03/22 2007.3.22 2007.03.22 —“Nisennananen sangatsu nijuninichi”
“M” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “M” “Year”“Month”“Day” (“Year” = 0 to 99; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) Example: M10/04/20 → “Meiji junen shigatsu hatsuka”
“T” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “T” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0 to 99; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) Example: T8.10.15 → “Taishou hachinen jugatsu jugonichi”
“S” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “S” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0 to 99; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) Example: S50.3.6 → “Shouwa gojunen sangatsu muika”
“H” “Year”/“Month”/“Day” or “H” “Year”.“Month”.“Day” (“Year” = 0 to 99; “Month” = 1 to 12; “Day” = 1 to 31) Example: H17.10.3 → “Heisei junananen jugatsu mikka”

- The above formats for numbers, monetary amounts, phone numbers, time and date can also be used with double-byte characters.
- When monetary amounts, phone numbers, time or date are read out and the string read out is immediately preceded or followed by any of the characters shown below, the numbers will not be delimited correctly. When you want to have monetary amounts, phone numbers, time or date read out correctly, you should use a space as the delimiting character before and after the item.
  0 to 9, A to Z (upper case), colon (:), ¥, slash (/), period (.), hyphen (-) (double-byte or single-byte)

■ Symbols

● The FOMA terminal can read out the symbols shown below. (These symbols are read out as shown when used with numbers.)

$(dollars)→doru	%(percent)→paasento	￥(yen)→en	° (degrees)→do
℃(degrees)→do	￥(yen)→en	＄(dollars)→doru	%(percent)→paasento
ミリ (mm)→miri	キロ (kilograms)→kiro	センチ (cm)→senchi	メートル (meters)→meetoru
グラム (grams)→guramu	トン (tons)→ton	アール (ares)→aaru	ヘクタール (hectares)→hekutaaru
リットル (liter)→rittoru	ワット (watts)→watto	カロリー (calories)→karorii	ドル (dollars)→doru
セント (cent)→sento	パーセント (percent)→paasento	ミリバール (millibars)→miribaaru	ページ (pages)→peeji
㎜(millimeters)→mirimeetoru	cm(centimeters)→senchimeetoru	km(kilometers)→kiromeetoru	㎎(milligrams)→miriguramu
kg(kilograms)→kiroguramu	cc(cc)→siisii	m^2(square meters)→heihoumeetoru	

■ Other settings

● Alphabetic letters are read out in alphabet reading, but may be read otherwise in certain combinations.

● Depending on the content of a sentence or description (particularly where place names or proper nouns are used), the FOMA terminal may not read out the sentence or may read it out incorrectly.

● Mail is not read out in a natural voice. In some cases the sounds or stress may be difficult to understand.

● Items such as punctuation marks (periods and commas), line feeds and spaces serve as separators for passages read out, except where a period (.) or comma (,) is preceded and/or followed by numbers. In text that has no delimiting punctuation, reading is paused automatically.

Depending on the content being read out, there may be a pause before the FOMA terminal starts reading. The FOMA terminal may also be unable to correctly read out passages where kanji characters are used. To ensure that the content of your received mail is read out correctly, you should recommend the following guidelines to people with whom you frequently correspond:

- Create your mail using katakana for nouns, particularly proper nouns such as place names and personal names.
- Use punctuation marks when creating a mail.

Setting Emotion/Keyword for emotion-expressing mail

<Emotion/Keyword notice>

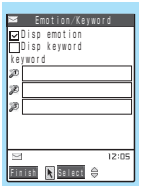
Default setting	Disp emotion: ON Disp keyword: OFF

You can specify whether to display the emotion-expressing mail icons when receiving i-mode mails, chat mails or SMS. You can also set to use icons for notifying you of the received mails containing the keywords specified.

● "Emotion-expressing mail"→p.270

1 Mail settings screen (p.289)▶"Emotion/Keyword notice"

The "Emotion/Keyword" screen appears.



Emotion/Keyword

Function menu➡p.294

■ **To use "Disp emotion"**

▶Select the checkbox (☐) of "Disp emotion"

The checkbox is checked (☑), and an emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed when you receive a mail.

■ **To use "Disp keyword"**

▶Select the check box (☐) of the "Disp keyword"▶Enter one keyword or more

The checkbox is checked (☑), and when you receive a mail containing the strings entered in "keyword", the corresponding emotion-expressing mail icon is displayed. Enter at least one keyword (available for entering up to 3 keywords consisting of 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters).

2 (Finish)

Function menu (Emotion/Keyword screen)

Delete keyword	Deletes the selected keyword.
Delete all keyword	Deletes all the keywords specified.

NOTE

◆Changing or deleting the keywords also deletes the keyword icons displayed on received mail list screen, etc.

Resetting your mail function setting <Reset>

1 Mail settings screen (p.289)▶"Reset"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"

<Compose chat/Send>

Composing and Sending Chat Mail

This allows you to exchange mail with several people just as if you were having a normal conversation.

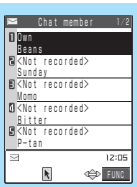
- You cannot launch Chat mail in the following situations:
  - If Receive option is set to "ON"
  - If your Inbox is full of saved mail
- The communication fee for sending chat mail to several people is the same as sending a mail with multiple recipients.
- You can set a ring tone specifically for chat mail. When you receive multiple items of mail that includes chat mail, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for chat mail.

Selecting chat session members <Chat member>

Use this procedure to select the people you want to chat with.

1 (MENU)▶Mail▶"Chat mail"▶(FUNC)▶"Chat member"

The "Chat member" screen appears.
For details of the subsequent procedure, see "Refer address" in the function menu list on the Chat member screen.



Chat member

Function menu➡p.294

Function menu (Chat member screen)

You can register up to 6 chat session members (including yourself).

Edit	Enters and registers the e-mail addresses of chat session members other than yourself.
Refer address	■**If no address is recorded** ▶**Select any item** ■**If an address is recorded** ▶**"YES"▶Select any item** Enter the chat member's mail address from the phonebook or records.
• **Phonebook**	Enters a mail address from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.125
• **Sent address**	Enters the mail address using the Sent address list.
• **Received address**	Enters the mail address using the Received address list.

Change member	“Changing chat session members” →p.295
Add chat group	Adds the current chat member to the chat group at a time.
Display setting	Displays the details of the chat session member settings.
Delete	Deletes a selected chat session member other than yourself.
Delete all	Deletes all the chat session members other than yourself.

NOTE

<Edit>

◆If the added a mail address is registered in a chat group, the member’s name is displayed. If the address is not registered in a chat group but registered in the phonebook, up to 4 double-byte or 8 single-byte characters of the name stored in the phonebook are displayed. If the address is not registered in the phonebook, up to 8 single-byte characters of the address are displayed.

<Refer address (Phonebook)>

◆If you change an e-mail address of the registered chat member by searching it in the phonebook, the name of a person and an image file (if an image is registered) on the phonebook is used for the chat member screen.

<Display setting>

◆If you display your own details, your mail address is not shown.

<Delete> <Delete all>

◆You cannot delete yourself.

● Changing chat session members

1 Chat member screen (p.294)▶ (FUNC)▶“Change member”▶ Select any item

Chat group	Select the member to be replaced from the group list or member list.
• **Group list**	▶**Select a “Chat group”**
• **Member list**	▶**Use to select a checkbox (□)** ▶ **(Finish)**
Mail member	▶**Select a mail member**

NOTE

◆If you receive chat mail from a group member who has been deleted from the list of chat group members, the chat mail does not appear on the chat screen. Even if you select “Quit” without deleting the chat mail, it is not displayed on the chat screen when starting the next chat mail, but saved as an i-mode mail.

Composing and sending chat mail

Use this procedure to compose and send a new chat mail.

1 (MENU)▶ (Mail)▶“Chat mail”

The “Chat” screen appears.



2 ▶Enter your message▶ (Send)

You can send up to 250 double-byte characters from the Chat screen.
When sending is completed, your message appears in the Latest message area.
To send another message, repeat step 2.

■ If message transmission fails

The Latest message area turns gray and your message remains displayed in the text editing area, so you can simply resend the failed chat mail message.

■ To end a chat mail session

▶Function menu of the Chat screen▶“Quit”

NOTE

◆Attached and pasted files are not displayed.
◆Sent and received chat mail is stored in the “Chat” folder. To resend chat mail, send it from the “Chat” folder.
◆The subject used for chat mail you send is “チャットメール” (single-byte characters).
◆Chat mail displayed in the Chat screen is marked as read in the “Chat” folder.
◆If you receive i-mode mail while a chat mail is running, the reception results screen does not appear.
◆Even in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, chat mails stored in Secret folders are not displayed on the Chat screen.

Function menu (Chat screen)

Send	Sends chat mail.
Select receiver	▶**Use to select a checkbox (□)** ▶ **(Finish)**
Chat member	“Selecting chat session members” →p.294
Broadcast address	“Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail”→p.296
Refresh	Receives the chat mail held at the i-mode center.
View first line	Displays the most recent message in the Latest message area

Continued on next page

View last line	Displays the oldest message in the Latest message area.
Delete read	Deletes the read and unprotected chat mail you have sent and received.
Quit	Select whether to delete the chat mail and quits the chat mail

NOTE

<Delete read>

◆This option also deletes chat mail that could not be sent.

<Quit>

◆The unsent chat mails are deleted when quitting a chat mail.

◆To quit a chat mail without deleting the chat mail, select “NO” after you select “Quit”.

◆If you quit chat without deleting the chat mail, the sent and received chat mail is saved in the “Chat” folder in the Outbox screen and Inbox screen respectively.

◆Chat mails that failed to send are stored in the “Chat” folder under the Outbox list.

◆If you did not delete the chat mails at the end of a session, the chat mail appear in the message record area in reverse chronological order at the start of next session.

◆When closing the Chat screen, you can delete all chat mails. In this case, chat mails are deleted from the Chat folder as well. However, a protected chat mail is not deleted.

● Adding chat session members by referring to broadcast mail

- You can use this function only for the broadcast mail from the FOMA terminal supporting the chat mail.

1 Chat screen (p.295)▶i (FUNC)▶“Broadcast address”▶“YES”▶Use ◎ to select the check box (□)▶✉ (Finish)

■ **When all the addresses are for chat session members**

▶“Broadcast address”▶“OK”

Receiving chat mail

<Chat mail recv.>

If a chat mail is not launched and you receive a chat mail, the “CHAT” icon appears on the standby screen. Selecting this icon launches a chat mail so that you can start it.

- Chat mail can display up to 250 double-byte characters (or 500 single-byte characters).
- If a file is attached to a received chat mail, only the message body is displayed in the Chat screen.
- If you select “CHAT” or “Chat” from the function menu on the received mail detail screen, the chat session member or the destination is changed according to the following conditions:
  - If the source mail address is set as a chat member, the members at the last chat session closed are set as is. However, if you launch a chat from the received mail detail screen, the non-source session members in the destination list are excluded from sending. If you select “CHAT”, a chat mail follows the “Select receiver” setting. If the source mail address is off the sending list, it is added to the destination.
  - If the source mail address is not set as a chat member but is included in a chat group, all the members of the chat group in which the source member is included is set as a chat member. Note that the non-source members in the destination list are excluded from sending.
  - If the source mail address is not set as a chat member and is not included even in a chat group, only the source mail address is set as a chat member.
- If you set “3D display setting” to “ON” and select the desktop icon of a new mail, an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body and pictographs included in the subject are displayed as a 3D animation.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶“CHAT”



Standby

■ **When the sender is not included as a chat member**

▶“YES”

A message appears asking whether to delete the chat member and launch a chat mail. Select “YES” to change the current chat member setting and launch a chat mail.

■ **To not change the current chat member setting**

▶“NO”

The current chat member setting is retained and the Mail menu screen appears.

2 Start chat mail

Received chat mail is displayed in the Latest message area. If you have undeleted chat mail, it is displayed in the message record area in reverse chronological order.

NOTE

◆The FOMA terminal recognizes a chat mail whether it meets the following criteria:
- The subject line includes “チャットメール” (all double-byte or all single-byte characters).
- A source or destination mail address is included in a chat member or a chat group.
- Not mail-linked i-αppli
- Not a Deco-mail
- Not SMS

◆Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, SIP To, and IM To functions are not available on the Chat screen. You can use the functions of Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, SIP To, and IM To if they are displayed from Inbox.

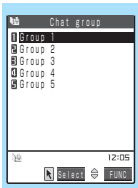
Registering Members in a Chat Group

Registering the chat member in a chat group beforehand simplifies the operation of the chat member entry.

- You can add up to 5 members in one chat group. Including the owner is not necessary.
- You can add up to 5 chat groups.
- Multiple registration of one member to several chat groups is not allowed.
- When you register a member in a chat group, you can edit the member name or set an image.

1 (MENU)▶Own data▶“Chat group”

The “Chat group list” screen appears.



Chat group list

Function menu➡p.297

2 Select a chat group

The “Group member list” screen appears.

3 Highlight “<Not stored>” and press (Edit)▶Enter a mail address▶●

Up to 50 single-byte characters can be entered for the mail address.
To add the mail addresses, repeat steps 2 and 3.



Group member list

Function menu➡p.297

■ **To enter a mail address by looking up the phonebook**

▶Select “<Not stored>”▶“Phonebook”▶Select e search method▶Select the mail address to be quoted

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125

NOTE

◆If an i-mode mail address is “[phone-number]@docomo.ne.jp”, only the phone number should be used for registration to the chat member. For an e-mail address, you can use either the part of the address preceding @ (at mark) or the entire address including “@docomo.ne.jp” for registration.

◆Up to the first eight characters of the registered mail address is used as a member name. If there exists the mail address registered as a chat member in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed in up to the first four double-byte or eight single-byte characters. The registered image is also set if it is stored in the phonebook.

Function menu (Chat group list screen)

Active chat	Sets the member of the chat group as a chat member and launches a chat mail.
Edit group name	**▶Edit a group name** Edits a group name. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset group name	Resets the group name to the default.

Function menu (Group member list screen)

Edit	**▶Enter the mail address** Edits the mail address. You can enter up to 50 single-byte characters.
Refer address	**■If no address is recorded** **▶Select any item** **■If an address is recorded** **▶“YES”▶Select any item** Enter the mail address of the group member looking-up the phonebook or records.
• **Phonebook**	Enters mail addresses from a phonebook detail list screen. The registered name and image stored in the phonebook are registered. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.125
• **Sent address**	Enters the mail address using the Sent address list.
• **Received address**	Enters the mail address using the Received address list.

Continued on next page

Change member	**■If no member is registered ▶"Mail member"▶Select a mail member ■If a member is registered ▶"Mail member"▶"YES"▶Select a mail member**
Member setting	"Setting member details"→p.298
Delete this	Deletes the mail address of the highlighted group member.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the members in the selected group.

● Setting member details

1 Group member list screen (p.297)▶ (FUNC)▶"Member setting"▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item

Edit member name	**▶Enter the member name** Edits a member name. You can enter up to four double-byte or eight single-byte characters.
Set image	Selects the image shown for each member in the Chat screen. If you have created folders, they appear next to the "Pre-installed" item.
• **Inbox**	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
• **Camera**	Selects a still image shot using your FOMA terminal.
• **Pre-installed**	Selects an image pre-installed in the FOMA terminal. Choose from "Beans", "Sunday", "Momo", "Bitter", "P-tan" and "Tong · Tong".
Set voice (default: Female 1)	Selects a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the Chat screen, from "Female 1 or 2", "Male 1 or 2" or "Robot".

NOTE

<Edit member name>

◆If there is no member name entered, up to the first 8 characters of the mail address are used as a member name.

<Set image>

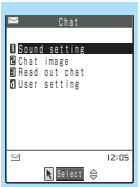
◆You cannot change the background color.

Specifying the chat mail settings

1 Mail settings screen (p.289)▶"Chat"

The "Chat setting" screen appears.

2 Select any item



Chat setting

Sound setting	Sets the tone sounded in the Chat screen when new chat mail is received or chat mail is sent. If you have created folders, they appear next to the "Pre-installed" item.
• **Inbox**	Selects a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website.
• **Pre-installed**	Select the chat sound from "Alarm 1" to "Alarm 3".
• **Voice announce**	Selects the notification tone from the recorded melody or ring tone in "Voice announce".
• **OFF**	No notification tone sounds.
Chat image (default: ON)	Sets whether to display an image in the Latest message area.
Read out chat (default: OFF)	Sets whether to read out new chat mail on the Chat screen.
User setting	"Setting user details"→p.298

NOTE

<Sound setting>

◆The notification tone does not sound when you receive a chat mail from the member not registered as a chat member.

● Setting user details

1 Chat setting screen (p.298)▶"User setting"▶Select any item

Name	**▶Enter a user name** Enters a user name. You can enter up to four double-byte or eight single-byte characters.

Image	Selects the owner image to be displayed on the Chat screen. If you have created folders, they appear next to the “Pre-installed” item.
• **Inbox**	Selects an image stored in the Inbox.
• **Camera**	Selects a still image shot using your FOMA terminal.
• **Pre-installed**	Selects an image pre-installed in the FOMA terminal. Choose from “Beans”, “Sunday”, “Momo”, “Bitter”, “P-tan” and “Tong · Tong”.
Voice (default: Female 1)	Selects a voice to be used for reading chat mail in the Chat screen from “Female 1 or 2”, “Male 1 or 2” or “Robot”.

NOTE

<Name>

◆If you leave the name blank or enter only spaces, “Own” is used.

<Image>

◆You cannot change the background color.

<Compose SMS/Send>

Composing and Sending SMS (Short Message)

● This service allows you to exchange the messages with subscribers of the overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. For information on the supported country and overseas carriers, refer to the DoCoMo website.

1 MENU ▶ Mail ▶“Compose SMS”

The “New SMS” screen appears.



New SMS

Function menu➡p.300

2 “To”▶Select the address (or the destination phone number) entry method

Only one SMS address can be entered.

Phonebook	Enters the phone number by searching the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.125
Sent address[*1]	Enters the phone number from the Sent address list.
Received address[*2]	Enters the phone number using the Received address list.
Enter address	Enters the phone number directly.

*1: “Sent address” can be displayed by pressing ⟳ on the “New SMS” screen as well.

*2: “Received address” can be displayed by pressing ⟲ on the “New SMS” screen as well.

■ **For the destination using an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo**

▶Enter + (press 0 (for 1 second or longer)) - the country code - the destination mobile phone number

If the mobile phone number begins with a zero (0), omit the zero.

You can also send SMS by entering in order of “010” - “Country code” - “the destination mobile phone number” (To reply to SMS received from overseas, enter “010” to send overseas).

■ **To change the entered address**

▶Select the destination address▶Select the destination address entry method

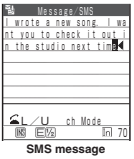
If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data, select “YES”.

In the following situations, SMS cannot be sent to the entered phone number:

- The destination address includes the characters other than numbers, “*” or “#”.
- The destination address includes “+” except as the first digit.
- The destination address includes a space

3 “ ”

The “SMS message” screen appears.



SMS message

4 Enter the message body

The number and type of characters that can be entered in the edit message screen follow the “SMS input char.” setting (p.300). If “Japanese” is selected, you can enter up to 70 characters of all the double bytes or single bytes. If “English” is selected, you can enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

Space is also counted as a character.

You can use the function menu of the “Text entry (edit)” screen (p.446) while entering a message.

5 ✉ (Send)

The animation screen showing the mail in transit is displayed and SMS is sent. Select “OK” to return to the Mail menu screen.

To edit the sent or unsent SMS→p.287

● SMS (Short Message) reports <Disp. SMS report>

If “ON” is selected in “SMS report request” (p.300), you receive an SMS report after you send an SMS. SMS reports are saved in the Inbox along with the sent SMS, enabling you to check whether the message successfully reached the destination.

To view an SMS with an SMS report ( ), select “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu.

You can also view an SMS report by selecting the SMS report in the received mail list screen. SMS reports are indicated by “SMS report” in the subject line.

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆If Outbox in the FOMA terminal contains over the maximum storage messages (the total of SMS and i-mode mail), the sent mail is automatically deleted in chronological order. However, the FOMA terminal does not delete the i-mode mail and SMS in the Secret folder as well as the protected sent mail.
◆A message may not be properly displayed in the destination terminal depending on the signal quality.
◆Even though “Caller ID Notification” is set to “OFF”, your caller ID is provided to the destination during SMS transmission.
◆If additional number of the multi number is set to the default dial number, SMS cannot be sent. Set the default dial number to Basic Number.
◆You can insert a line feed while editing the message text. The line feed symbol is counted as two characters in “Japanese” and as one character in “English”.
◆Some characters may not be properly displayed at the receiving side depending on the font type to be sent or terminal at the receiving side.

Function menu (New SMS screen)

Send	Sends SMS
Preview	Allows you to check the destination address and contents of SMS before sending a mail.
Save	Saves the SMS being edited into Draft. SMS can be saved up to 20 messages together with the i-mode mail. You can send SMS in Draft later.
SMS report req. (default: OFF)	Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS. Select “ON” or “OFF”.
SMS valid. per. (default: 3 days)	Sets the storage period at the SMS Center in the case where SMS is not carried to the destination because of the out-of-FOMA service and such. “None” to “3 days” can be selected.
SMS input char. (default: Japanese)	Sets the input method of the SMS message. Up to 70 characters of all the double bytes and single bytes can be entered in Japanese. Up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered in English.
Erase message	Deletes only the message body.
Delete	Deletes the SMS being edited.

NOTE

◆If you set “SMS input character”, “SMS report request” or “SMS validity period” in the Mail settings screen, the setting is retained when the FOMA terminal is turned off. However, “SMS input char.”, “SMS report req.” or “SMS valid. per.” set using the function menu is only valid for the current SMS.
◆If “None” is set in “SMS valid. per.”, the message is deleted from the SMS Center after resending for a given period of time.

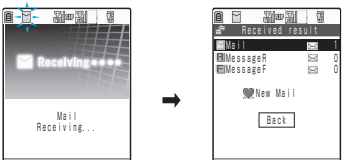
<Receive SMS>

When You Receive SMS (Short Message)

When the FOMA terminal is in a FOMA service area, SMS is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the SMS Center.

- The received SMS can be stored in the FOMA terminal up to 1,000 messages together with i-mode mail.

1 When you receive SMS, the “ ” (white) icon flashes and “Mail Receiving…” is displayed



After receiving is completed, the number of messages for the received SMS, i-mode mail, MessageR and MessageF appear on the reception results screen.
When “Mail” is selected, the received mail list screen appears.
No operation for about 15 seconds returns to the previous screen. The time for displaying the reception result screen depends on the “Receive ringing time” setting.
The ring tone volume conforms to the setting of “Mail” under “Ring volume”.

NOTE

◆If the FOMA terminal contains 1,000 received messages (the total of i-mode and SMS) or exceeds the storage capacity even less than 1,000 messages, messages are automatically deleted from the Trash box and Inbox in chronological order on receiving. Note that the following mails are not deleted: unread mails, protected received mails or i-mode mail and SMS in the Secret folders. You should protect any necessary received mail. →pp.284, 287
◆When the “ ” (red) icon is displayed, the FOMA terminal cannot receive any further i-mode mail or SMS. To receive a new message, delete unnecessary i-mode mail or SMS or read unread i-mode mail or SMS until those icons no longer appear. The mails and messages are overwritten starting with the oldest one as a new mail or message is received.
◆When you receive multiple mails (i-mode and SMS) at the same time, the FOMA terminal uses the ring tone and incoming call lamp pattern set for the last item of mail received.
◆If you receive the short mail from the mova terminal, the source phone number is displayed. If the caller ID is not provided, the reason is displayed.
◆If you receive SMS while playing an i-motion, the video and sound may be interrupted.

<Priority order for ring tone and incoming call lamp operations>

◆When receiving SMS, setting priority for the ring tone and illumination is as follows:

①"Discern connect" specified for each phone number →p.132

②"Discern group" specified for each group→p.132

③"Select ring tone"/"Style mode" →pp.138, 164, "Illumination"→p.156

Viewing received SMS (Short Message)

- For received SMS, the beginning of the message is displayed as the subject in the received mail list screen.
- For received SMS reports, "SMS report" is displayed as the subject of the received mail list screen.
- For Voice Mail notices, "Noticecall voicemail" is displayed as the subject of the received mail list screen.
- If you set "3D display setting" to "ON" and select the desktop icon of a new mail, an icon expressing the emotion that matches the message body and pictographs included in the subject are displayed as a 3D animation.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶"✉ New"



Selecting the "✉" (white) icon displays the unread mail list. For the function menu on the unread mail list screen, see the function menu of the received mail list screen (p.283).

NOTE

◆If a received SMS includes double-byte characters that are not listed in the kuten code table, those characters are shown as blanks (spaces).

◆The source phone number of the displayed SMS is highlighted. Press ● with the phone number highlighted and you can make a voice call, videophone call or a PushTalk call to the displayed phone number (Phone To/AV Phone To function). If the source phone number is stored in the phonebook, the stored "Name" is highlighted. In that case, you can call a phone call in the same operation.

Replying to/forwarding received SMS (Short Message)

You can reply to the source SMS or forward SMS.

- You cannot enter a subject.
  "Replying by composing a new message"→p.272

NOTE

◆You cannot reply with quote to SMS.

◆You cannot reply to SMS with User unset, Payphone or Unknown.

◆You cannot reply to or forward an SMS report.

◆You cannot reply to Voice Mail notices.

◆If you reply to or forward SMS on the FOMA card (UIM), the "✉" remains on the received mail list screen and received mail detail screen and the "↩"/"↑" icon does not appear.

<Check new SMS>

Checking for SMS (Short Message)

- SMS arriving at the SMS Center are automatically sent to your FOMA terminal, but are kept at the Center if the FOMA terminal is turned off, "📵" is displayed, the FOMA terminal is in Self mode, or the memory on the FOMA terminal is full.

1 MENU▶Mail▶"Check new SMS"

"SMS Checking…" is displayed while you check for new SMS. After completion of inquiry, a message appears indicating that the inquiry has done and press ●.

If there are any messages held at the SMS Center, automatic receiving begins.

In some cases, automatic receiving may not begin immediately after the inquiry is sent.

NOTE

◆Depending on the signal status, you may not be able to check for new message or your checking may be interrupted.

◆You cannot receive i-mode mails, MessageR/MessageF using this function. To receive an i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF, use "Check new messages".

<SMS settings>

Setting SMS (Short Message) Options

Setting the SMS (Short Message) Center

Default setting: DoCoMo

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

Use this setting to specify whether the FOMA terminal uses the DoCoMo SMS Center or another provider's SMS center for SMS.

<Example: To use another provider's SMS center>

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶"Connection setting"▶"SMS center selection"▶Select any item

DoCoMo	Uses the DoCoMo SMS Center.
User setting	**▶Enter the address of the SMS center▶"International" or "Unknown"** Uses another provider's SMS center.
Reset	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes the "User setting" data and sets to "DoCoMo".

NOTE

◆If the entered SMS center address includes "#" or "✱", you cannot select "International".

<UIM operation>

Saving SMS (Short Message) to Your FOMA Card (UIM)

This function allows you to move or copy SMS stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) to your FOMA card (UIM). You can also use this function to move or copy SMS stored on your FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone).

- The FOMA card (UIM) will hold up to 20 received or sent SMS.

Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) to the FOMA card (UIM)

<Example: To move an SMS from the Inbox to the FOMA card (UIM)>

1 (MENU)▶Mail▶"Inbox"▶Select a folder▶Highlight SMS▶(FUNC)▶"UIM operation"▶Select any item

Move to UIM	Moves SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).
Copy to UIM	Copies SMS in the FOMA terminal (Phone) to the FOMA card (UIM).

NOTE

◆Received or sent SMS that moved or copied to the FOMA card (UIM) is displayed in the Inbox or Outbox folder.

◆If there appears an icon of "", "" (white) or "" (red), you cannot move or copy SMS.

◆You cannot protect SMS in the FOMA card (UIM). If you move or copy the protected SMS to the FOMA card (UIM), the protection is removed from the SMS on the FOMA card (UIM).

◆If you remove the battery pack, date and time for sent SMS stored on the FOMA card (UIM) are erased and they appear at the end of the list. However, for the sent SMS stored with the SMS report, date and time are not deleted.

Moving or copying SMS (Short Message) on the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal (Phone)

<Example: To move an SMS from the FOMA card (UIM) to the Inbox>

1 (MENU)▶Mail▶"Inbox"▶Select a folder▶Highlight SMS▶(FUNC)▶"UIM operation"▶Select any item

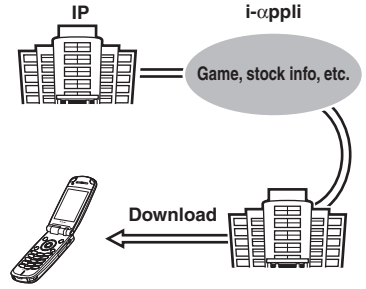
Move from UIM	Moves SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).
Copy from UIM	Copies SMS stored in the FOMA card (UIM) to a FOMA terminal (Phone).

i-αppli

What is i-αppli? 304
Downloading i-αppli from a Site 305
Activating i-αppli 306
Activating i-αppli Automatically 312
Activating i-αppli from a Site or Mail ..... i-αppli To function 313
Setting i-αppli as Standby Screens ..... Set i-αppli stand-by 314
Managing i-αppli 315

What is i-αppli?

By simply downloading i-αppli from i-αppli compatible sites, users can broaden the functions of their i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter referred to as i-mode terminal) with a wide variety of new possibilities, such as: automatically obtain information about shares, play games, etc. The mapping i-αppli downloading only necessary data enables smooth scrolling. Some i-αppli allow you to directly save data from the i-αppli to the phonebook or schedule, and others can be linked to Data box when you save or obtain images.



- To download i-αppli→p.305
- To activate i-αppli→p.306
- To activate i-αppli automatically→p.312

- i-αppli cannot be downloaded or updated in Single mode (WLAN).
- Some i-αppli cannot be activated in Single mode (WLAN) due to communication failure.
- i-αppli cannot be activated from the WLAN browser.

NOTE

◆Some i-αppli use the i-mode terminal's mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) serial number information.

◆Some i-αppli make communications while they are run. You can set not to make communications.

Using stored data

Some i-αppli allow you to browse or use data (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedule entries, images and icon information) stored on your i-mode terminal. The stored data can be used for:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Retrieving images from Data box
- Saving images to Data box
- Saving i-motion
- Browsing i-motion
- Changing the alarm clock setting
- Saving ToruCa

What is i-αppli DX?

i-αppli DX links with the data in i-mode handsets (mail, Call Memory, Call History, etc.) to add more functionality and fun to i-αppli. You can compose mail on your favorite character screen, and have characters let you know who callers are when calls are received. Mail-linked i-αppli gives you real-time updates for fast moving information such as stock prices, and the in-progress updates of games.

Using stored data

Some i-αppli DX allow you to browse, store and use not only stored data (phonebook entries, bookmarks, schedule entries, images and icon information) that can be used with normal i-αppli, but also data such as mail, Call History and ring tones. The stored data can be used for:

- Adding phonebook entries
- Browsing phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Adding bookmarks
- Adding schedule events
- Using the Mail menu
- Using the Compose message screen
- Browsing the latest Dialed calls record
- Browsing the latest Received calls record
- Browsing the latest unread mail
- Saving melodies
- Changing ring tones (FOMAphone, Videophone, Mail, MessageR, MessageF and Chat mail)
- Retrieving images from Data box
- Saving images to Data box
- Saving Chara-den
- Browsing Chara-den
- Changing screen settings (standby screen, dialing/receiving phone call, receiving videophone call, receiving/sending mail, receiving MessageR/MessageF and menu icon)
- Changing the videophone alternative image setting
- Changing the alarm clock setting
- Newly adding, selecting or acquiring ToruCa
- Saving i-motion
- Browsing i-motion
- Browsing Inbox/Outbox

NOTE

◆i-αppli DX may make communications to verify the validity of the application regardless of communications settings. The number of communications and timing varies depending on the application.

● What is mail-linked i-αppli?

Mail-linked i-αppli is a type of i-αppli DX that exchanges information via i-mode mail and gives you real-time updates for fast moving information such as stock prices, and the in-progress updates of games.
i-αppli mail using mail-linked i-αppli may not be displayed properly.

● What is Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli?

Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli enables you to read and write data in the IC card to download electronic money, ticket, etc. and view the balance and usage history on your mobile phone, giving you more functionality and fun.

● “What is Osaifu-Keitai?”→p.318

NOTE

◆The information stored in the IC card is sent to your IP (information service provider) when you use Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli. (Information on the contract with DoCoMo is not sent.)

● Other useful features

■ i-αppli standby screen

i-αppli can be set as standby screens, and you can receive mail and make calls while the i-αppli is active. You can make your standby screen even more useful by displaying the latest news and weather, or by setting favorite characters to inform you of incoming mail and appointments.→p.314

- This function is available with i-αppli compatible with i-αppli standby screens.

■ i-αppli auto start

Specify the time, date, day of the week, etc. to activate i-αppli automatically. Some i-αppli can be activated automatically at the specified interval.→p.312

■ Using the camera

Take pictures using the built-in camera with the i-αppli.→p.194

- This function is available with i-αppli compatible with the camera function.

■ Infrared data exchange

You can link i-αppli with devices equipped with the Infrared data exchange function. There are more ways you can use this feature by linking it with other infrared-capable devices.→p.374

- This function is available with i-αppli compatible with the Infrared data exchange function.
- The i-mode terminal may not be able to communicate with some devices even if they are equipped with the Infrared data exchange function.

■ Infrared remote control

You can use i-αppli to operate devices compatible with infrared remote control.→p.379

For example, the pre-installed “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE®) EPG Remote Control) combines TV program listings with AV remote control functions.→p.311

- This function is available with i-αppli compatible with the infrared remote control function. The i-αppli must be compatible with the devices.

Downloading i-αppli from a Site

You can download i-αppli from an i-mode site and run it on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 200 downloaded i-αppli (up to 5 mail-linked i-αppli) can be stored. The number of i-αppli that can be stored varies between 10 and 200 depending on the size.
- When you download a mail-linked i-αppli, i-αppli mail folders will be created automatically in the Outbox and Inbox list. Folder names will be the same as the application and cannot be changed. If Original lock is set for the i-αppli, the folder names will be “i-αppli”.
- If there are already 5 folders for mail-linked i-αppli, delete one or more of the existing folders to allocate space for new i-αppli.
- You cannot download a mail-linked i-αppli if an i-αppli is already stored and both i-αppli use the same Inbox and Outbox.
- You cannot download a mail-linked i-αppli while the security is established. Release the security before download.
- Mail sent or received via a mail-linked i-αppli are automatically filtered into a folder created when the mail-linked i-αppli is downloaded. You can also filter received mail manually.
- If you delete a mail-linked i-αppli without deleting its folder and then download the i-αppli again, the folder can be reused. You can also delete the folder and create a new folder. If you neither use the folder nor create a new folder, you cannot download the mail-linked i-αppli.

Continued on next page

1 Select i-αppli

When the message “Completed” appears after downloading, press ●. i-αppli immediately activated from a site (p.313) is activated without the message.

■ **To cancel download during data reception**

▶During download▶●

■ **If the i-αppli setting screen appears**

▶Set the i-αppli▶✉ (Finish)

Software settings→p.307

2 “YES”

When you activate the i-αppli, “ ” appears at the bottom of the screen. If i-αppli DX is activated, “ ” appears.

■ **To cancel activating i-αppli**

▶“NO”

NOTE

- ◆You may not be able to download i-αppli depending on the site or size.
- ◆Some i-αppli automatically make communications after downloaded. “Network set” under “Software setting” is available to disable automatic communications.
- ◆If you download an i-αppli or i-αppli DX that uses the stored information or the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) serial number information, a message appears indicating that the information will be used. When this happens, the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) serial number information will be sent to your IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to third parties.
- ◆When you are downloading i-αppli or its information from an SSL site, “ ” appears.→p.225
- ◆When you download an i-αppli that makes communications or can be set as standby screens, the i-αppli setting screen appears. Configure the settings separately for the downloaded i-αppli and press ✉ (Finish). (Press CLR to cancel the settings.)
- ◆Even if space is available to store software, you may not be able to download individual Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli depending on the size of the IC card data. Follow the instructions on the confirmation screen to delete the displayed i-αppli, then retry downloading the i-αppli. Some i-αppli may not be subject to deletion depending on the i-αppli to be downloaded. Some i-αppli will be deleted after you activate the i-αppli and delete the IC card data.
- ◆If you attempt to download an already downloaded i-αppli using a different FOMA card (UIM), a message appears asking whether to overwrite the i-αppli. Select “YES” to start download. After the download is completed, the already downloaded i-αppli will be deleted.
- ◆“i-αppli mail” refers to mail sent with mail-linked i-αppli or as mail to be used for mail-linked i-αppli. i-αppli mail contain i-αppli data that enable the mail to be automatically saved to the i-αppli mail folder.

Viewing i-αppli information during download <Display software info>

Default setting: Not display

You can set to check the i-αppli information when downloading the i-αppli.

1 MENU▶Settings▶“i-αppli settings”▶“Disp. Software info”

Select “Display” or “Not display”.

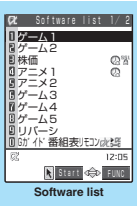
Activating i-αppli

Activating i-αppli

1 MENU▶i-αppli▶“Software list”

The “Software list” screen appears.

You can also press ● ( ) for 1 second or longer on the standby screen to display the “Software list” screen.



Software list

Function menu➡p.307

2 Select an i-αppli to activate

Exiting i-αppli

1 CLR (1 second or longer)▶“YES”

You can also exit the i-αppli by selecting ☎▶“YES”.

■ **For software developers**

If a developed i-αppli does not run correctly, the trace information may be used for reference.

Select MENU▶i-αppli (i-αppli)▶“i-αppli action info”▶“Trace info”. The trace information appears in occurrence order. Select “Copy info” from the function menu to copy the trace information. To delete the trace information, select “Delete info” from the function menu.

NOTE

◆i-αppli can be activated automatically.→p.312
◆If you receive a voice, videophone or PushTalk call while i-αppli is activated, the operation is paused. The i-αppli screen reappears when the call ends. If you receive a call during i-αppli communication, the "V-phone while packet" setting applies.→p.101
◆Some i-αppli allow you to use the Phone To (AV Phone To) or Web To function from the i-αppli. However, you cannot use the functions from the i-αppli standby screen (p.314) (except while running i-αppli).
◆i-αppli mail using mail-linked i-αppli may not be displayed properly.
◆Do not remove the battery pack while running i-αppli. Doing so may erase the data or information that has been entered.
◆Images used with i-αppli* or data you enter may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.
*: Images used with i-αppli refer to those shot with the camera activated from a camera-linked i-αppli, retrieved using the i-αppli Infrared data exchange function, downloaded with i-αppli from an i-mode site or website, or retrieved with i-αppli from Data box.
◆If the trace information memory is full, the oldest entry is overwritten.
◆Some i-αppli may not make a sound.
◆If the camera is activated from i-αppli, the shot images are saved and used as part of the i-αppli.
◆If the camera is activated from i-αppli, the settings for size, quality, frame, etc. may be configured depending on the i-αppli.
◆Some i-αppli enable you to activate the Bar code reader to scan JAN codes or QR codes. The scanned data are used with the i-αppli.
◆With some i-αppli, IPs (information service providers) can access the i-αppli stored on the FOMA terminal, and suspend services. If this happens, the subscriber will not be able to activate the i-αppli, make standby settings, or perform upgrades. The subscriber will only be capable of deleting the i-αppli or displaying software details. In order to use the service again, it is necessary for the subscriber to receive i-αppli suspend cancellation commands, so please contact the IP (information service provider).
◆With some i-αppli, IPs (information service providers) may send data to i-αppli stored on the FOMA terminal.
◆When an IP (information service provider) suspends/resumes service, or sends data, the FOMA terminal communicates with the network, making "⇦⇨" blink. Packet communications charges will not apply.

Function menu (Software list screen)

Set i-αppli To	"Setting whether to activate by i-αppli To"→p.313
Auto start time	"Setting the activation date and time"→p.312
Software setting	Configures i-αppli settings.
• **Stand-by display**	"Setting i-αppli as Standby Screens"→p.314
• **Network set**	Sets whether to make communications when the i-αppli is activated. If "Confirm every session" is set, you can select whether to make communications every time the i-αppli is activated. ▶✉ **(Finish)**
• **Stand-by net**	Sets whether to make communications with i-αppli set as the standby screen. ▶✉ **(Finish)**
• **Icon info**	Sets whether to permit the use of icon information on unread mail and messages when the i-αppli is activated. ▶✉ **(Finish)**
• **Change mld./img.**	Sets whether to allow the change of ring tones for calls, mail and messages, change of images displayed on the standby screen or when mail are sent or received, or change of menu icons when the i-αppli DX is activated. If "ON" is set, the ring tones, images or menu icons will be automatically changed. If "Check every change" is set, you can select whether to change these every time the i-αppli attempts to change them. ▶✉ **(Finish)**
• **See P.book/hist.**	Sets whether to allow view of the phonebook, latest Call History, latest unread mail and ToruCa or ToruCa (detail) when the i-αppli DX is activated. If "ON" is set, the phonebook or history will be automatically viewed. ▶✉ **(Finish)**
Software info	"Checking i-αppli information"→p.308
Upgrade	"Upgrading i-αppli"→p.315
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.158
Memory Info	Shows the i-αppli memory status.
Delete	"Deleting i-αppli"→p.315

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Software setting (Network set)>

- If “OFF” is set, you may not be able to receive timely information.
- Even if “ON” is set, communications cannot be made in Single mode (WLAN).

<Software setting (Icon info)>

- If this function is set to “ON” for i-αppli set as the i-αppli standby screen, the information on unread mail and messages, in range/out of range icons, battery level and manner mode may be transmitted to an IP (information service provider) via the Internet as your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) serial number information is, and the information may be disclosed to third parties.
- If this function is set to “OFF”, some i-αppli that require icon information may not work.

Adjusting volume for i-αppli

<i-αppli vol.>

You can adjust the volume of i-αppli.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**“i-αppli settings”▶“i-αppli vol.”**

The “i-αppli vol. setting” screen appears.

2 Set volume

NOTE

- You can set the i-αppli volume to “Silent” or “Level 1 to 6” (default: Level 4).
- With some i-αppli, you can adjust the volume separately. However, if “i-αppli vol.” is set to “Silent”, the sound is not played regardless of the volume setting for the i-αppli.
- The i-αppli volume for manner mode follows the manner mode settings. When Manner mode is set to Original, the i-αppli is played at “i-αppli vol.” under the Manner mode setting.

Checking i-αppli information

1 Software list screen (p.306)▶(FUNC)▶“Software info”▶Check the i-αppli information



NOTE

- The displayed i-αppli names cannot be changed.
- On the software list screen, the following icons indicate i-αppli types and settings:
  - : i-αppli DX.→p.304
  - : Mail-linked i-αppli.
  - : “Auto start time” has been set.→p.312
  - : The i-αppli is set under “Set i-αppli stand-by”.
  - : “Auto start time” has been set and the i-αppli is set under “Set i-αppli stand-by”.
  - : “i-αppli To setting” can be set.
  - : “Set i-αppli stand-by” can be set.
  - : “i-αppli To setting” and “Set i-αppli stand-by” can be set.
  - : Downloaded from an SSL page.
  - : Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.→p.318

Checking the security error history

When an i-αppli or i-αppli DX attempts to perform a disallowed function, a security error occurs, and the details are recorded in the security error history.

1 (MENU)▶i-αppli▶**“i-αppli action info”▶“Security error history”**

The “Security error history” screen appears.



Security error history

Function menu➡p.308

Function menu (Security error history screen)

Copy info	Copies the security error information.
Delete info	Deletes the security error information.

Activating another i-αppli from the active i-αppli

You can activate an i-αppli from the active i-αppli. Download i-αppli from which the specified i-αppli can be activated, and you can activate the specified one without having to return to the Software list screen.

- Specify an i-αppli to activate another one if it is not specified.
- If the specified i-αppli is not stored on the FOMA terminal, you must download the i-αppli beforehand.

1 Select an item for selecting i-αppli▶ “YES”

NOTE

◆If the i-αppli URL is specified in the activation item, a message appears asking whether to activate the specified i-αppli. Select “YES” to exit the active i-αppli and activate the specified one. To return to the active i-αppli, select “NO”.

Pre-installed i-αppli

The FOMA terminal comes with “ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョンMOBILE” (Dragon Quest Fushigi no Dungeon Mobile), “リバーシ” (Reversi), “カメラでケンサク！ ERサーチ” (Camera de kensaku! ER search), “ゼンリン🏠地図＋ナビN” (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N), “Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE® EPG Remote Control), “ケータイクレジット「iD（アイディ）」” (iD credit payment service) and “「DCMX」クレジットアプリ” (“DCMX”).

- Viewing the display for extended periods of time may cause eye strain.
- If you have deleted a pre-installed i-αppli and want to restore it, download it from “みんなNらんど” in “ケータイ電話メーカー”.
  Accessing “みんなNらんど”
  →p.224
  If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using was not used for download, the FOMA card operational restriction function will apply.→p.41
- The following are the “Software setting” items at the time of purchase:

	Stand-by display	Net-work set	Stand-by net	Icon info	Change mld./img.	See P.book /hist.
ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョンMOBILE (Dragon Quest Fushigi no Dungeon Mobile)	None	ON	None	None	—	—
リバーシ (Reversi)	None	ON	None	None	—	—
カメラでケンサク！ERサーチ (Camera de kensaku! ER search)	None	ON	None	None	—	—
ゼンリン🏠地図＋ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)	None	ON	None	None	None	None
Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE® EPG Remote Control)	None	ON	None	None	None	None
ケータイクレジット「iD（アイディ）」(iD credit payment service)	None	ON	None	None	None	None
「DCMX」クレジットアプリ (“DCMX”)	None	ON	None	None	None	None

● Playing ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョンMOBILE (Dragon Quest Fushigi no Dungeon Mobile)

Here is the latest volume of the “不思議のダンジョン” series that feature popular characters and monsters of Dragon Quest.
Collect various items and make your way through dungeons varying each time you play in the roll playing game.

Continued on next page

1 Software list screen (p.306)▶“ドラクエダンジョン” (Dra-que Dungeon)



■ **To exit the game**
▶✉ (終了 (Exit))▶“はい” (Yes)

■ **To adjust the volume or message speed**
▶● (設定 (Set))▶Change the settings

2 “START”

The game starts.

■ **To display how to play in detail**
▶On the game screen▶✉ (メニュー (Menu))▶“さくせん” (Strategy)▶“冒険の心得” (Adventure tips)

■ **To save and exit the game**
▶On the game screen▶✉ (メニュー (Menu))▶“中断” (Quit)
The next time you select “START” on the title screen, the saved data is reloaded.

■ **ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョンMOBILE (Dragon Quest Fushigi no Dungeon Mobile) i-mode menu site version**
Reload the saved data of ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョンMOBILE (Dragon Quest Fushigi no Dungeon Mobile) preinstalled on your FOMA terminal onto the i-mode menu site version, and continue to enjoy the results of your play for the preinstalled version.
For more details, visit the ドラゴンクエスト不思議のダンジョンMOBILE (Dragon Quest Fushigi no Dungeon Mobile) i-mode menu site or special site. (i-mode information charges apply to download the i-mode menu site version in addition to packet communications charges.)

● Playing リバーシ (Reversi)

Enjoy the “8 × 8 board” reversi game.

1 Software list screen (p.306)▶“リバーシ” (Reversi)▶“GAME START”



■ **To display how to play in detail**
▶“HELP”

■ **To set the tone or vibration**
▶“OPTION”

2 Select the opponent’s level

3 “FIRST” or “SECOND”

The game starts.

● Using カメラでケンサク！ ERサーチ (Camera de kensaku! ER search)

Shoot and recognize magazines, TV commercials, CD sleeves, logos, etc. and get information about shopping, campaigns, etc.

1 Software list screen (p.306)▶“カメラでケンサク！ ERサーチ” (Camera de kensaku! ER search)



■ **To display how to use in detail**
▶✉ (ヘルプ (HELP))

2 Select “検索START!” (Start search)▶Select a genre▶“カメラ起動” (Activate camera)

3 Shoot an object▶“OK”

The characteristics of the shot image* are sent, and the search result screen of the related information appears. If there are some candidates, the candidate list screen appears.

*: The characteristics stated above refer to the numerical values of the image characteristics.

4 Select an item on the search result screen▶“YES”

A website appears.

● Using ゼンリン地図＋ナビN (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)

This i-αppli guides you to the destination in accordance with weather conditions or your preference, e.g. with many roofs or less up-and-down. You can also search for routes going on foot, by train, air or sea, or door-to-door routes.

1 Software list screen (p.306)▶“ゼンリン地図＋ナビN” (ZENRIN Maps + Navi N)▶Use ◉ to select a menu item



■ **To display how to use in detail**
▶◉▶“設定・HELP” (Setting・HELP)

■ **To display the last-viewed map**
▶✉ (地図 (Map))

■ **To display the sub menu while viewing a map**
▶●

● Using Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE® EPG Remote Control)

“Gガイド番組表リモコン” (G-GUIDE® EPG Remote Control) is a useful combination of TV program listings and AV remote control functions. Monthly usage charges do not apply.
Get information about analog or digital terrestrial programs easily anytime and anywhere. You can check the title, content, start/end time, etc.
When you find a program you want to watch, use the Internet to set your DVD recorder to record the program. (The DVD recorder must be compatible with online timer recording. Before using this function, you need to configure the initial settings.)
You can search for information by any keywords such as a genre or your favorite TV personality. You can also operate your TV set, VCR, or DVD player via remote control (some models do not support this).

- Before using the G-GUIDE® EPG Remote Control, configure the initial settings and agree to the terms of use.
- Packet communications charges apply to use the function.
- For more details, see the “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.



* The screen is only an image and may look different from the actual one. The displayed TV guide corresponds to the area where you live.

■ Online timer recording

If you own a DVD recorder that is compatible with online timer recording, it is possible to set your DVD recorder to record programs while away from home by giving instructions via Internet. You need to configure the initial settings for online timer recording.

- Initial settings
  ①Connect your DVD recorder to the Internet according to the user’s manual.
  ②Activate this application, select “リモート録画予約” (Online timer recording) from メニュー (Menu) and follow the instructions to configure the initial settings.
- How to timer record
  After configuring the initial settings, select the program you wish to record, then select “リモート録画予約” (Online timer recording) from the menu. You will be connected via the Internet to the DVD recorder set in this application, and can timer record.

* If the DVD recorder has already been programmed to timer record a program in the same time slot, an error message will appear on the TV program listings screen.

- Packet communications charges apply to use online timer recording.

● Using ケータイクレジット「iD（アイディ）」(iD credit payment service)

ケータイクレジット「iD（アイディ）」(iD credit payment service) is a credit card service that enables you to shop or withdraw cash by simply holding up your Osaifu-Keitai. You can shop with ease without the need to carry your card or need to sign.

- To use iD, apply at an iD compatible card issuer, acquire the iD i-αppli and card i-αppli provided by the card issuer.
- To use the iD i-αppli for the first time, agree to “ご利用上の注意 (Notes on use)”, make the necessary preparations and download the card i-αppli.



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

- To use the iD credit service, a fee (annual fee etc.) will be charged by each card issuer. This fee will differ depending on the card issuer.
- Packet communications charge will apply to download the iD i-αppli and card i-αppli for each card issuer.
- For information about iD, visit the iD website or i-mode site.
  Website: http://id-credit.com
  (only in Japanese)
  i-mode site:
  iMenu▶メニュー／検索 (Menu/search)▶ケータイクレジット「iD」(iD credit payment service) (only in Japanese)

● Using 「DCMX」クレジットアプリ (“DCMX” credit application)

“DCMX” is a credit service that is compatible with “iD” and provided by the NTT DoCoMo group. DCMX is categorized into DCMX mini that will offer a monthly credit line of 10,000 yen, and DCMX and DCMX gold that will offer a cash or revolving credit line and issue a credit card.



* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

Use this application to subscribe to DCMX mini easily and quickly, and use the mobile credit service immediately.

Continued on next page

● Application function

Application/Audit*1

↓

Set card information

↓

Use
No complicated charging!
Hold your mobile phone over the reader/writer unit in a shop, and enjoy shopping without your signature.

Check*2
Check the bill and balance of this month on your mobile phone!

Change
Use this application to update and re-issue your current card!

*1: A simple audit will be performed online at the time of application. Applications for other than DCMX mini will be connected to the application page on i-mode.

*2: The check function is only available for DCMX mini.

- For details about the service and sign-up, visit the following:
  Website: http://www.dcmx.jp (only in Japanese)
  i-mode site: iMenu▶メニュー／検索 (Menu/search)▶DCMX (ケータイクレジット) (only in Japanese)
- For more information about this service, contact "Inquiries" described on the back cover of this manual.

■NOTE
- Agree to "ご利用上の注意" (License Agreement) the first time you activate this i-αppli.
- Packet communications charges will apply to use this i-αppli via i-mode communications.
- After you sign up and make the settings, the service cannot be activated with this i-αppli. To check your usage history or change the settings, activate iD then select and activate DCMX simultaneously.

■Notes on Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli
- NTT DoCoMo cannot take responsibility for the IC card data.

NOTE
◆Packet communications charges apply when you use the i-mode communications function such as "初期設定" (Initial settings) and "主なメニュー" (Main menu) of the i-αppli.
◆If Network set is set to "OFF", you cannot use the i-mode communications, "初期設定" (Initial setting) or functions from "主なメニュー" (Main menu) of the i-αppli.
◆NTT DoCoMo cannot take responsibility for the data stored on the FOMA terminal.

Activating i-αppli Automatically

Set i-αppli to activate automatically at the specified date and time or intervals.

Setting whether to activate i-αppli automatically

<Auto start set> Default setting: OFF

- You can set automatic activation time for up to 3 i-αppli.

1 (MENU)▶i-αppli▶"Auto start set"▶"ON" or "OFF"

Setting the activation date and time <Auto start time>

Default setting: All OFF

Set the date and time when i-αppli is automatically activated.

- i-αppli is not activated automatically:
  - While the power is turned off
  - When another function is running
  - During a call
  - During communication
  - If the alarm clock, Schedule or To Do list alarm, or Software Update is set to be performed at the same time as automatic activation

1 Software list screen (p.306)▶(FUNC)▶"Auto start time"▶Use to select a checkbox (☐)

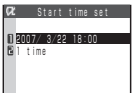
■To enable the time interval set for i-αppli
▶Check the "Time interval set" checkbox



■To set the activation date and time
▶Check the "Start time set" checkbox

2 (Finish)▶Set the activation date and time

■To set the activation date and time
▶Select a date and time
▶Enter the activation date and time



■ **To set the automatic activation repetition**
▶Select the repeat setting item▶“Daily” or “Weekly”
If you have selected “Weekly”, use ◉ to select a checkbox (□), and press ✉ (Finish).

3 ✉ (Finish)

NOTE

◆If you set the Time interval set and Start time set for the same i-αppli to be activated within 10 minutes after it is activated for the earlier setting, the i-αppli will be automatically activated at the earlier time only.

Checking whether the i-αppli was activated automatically

You can check whether the i-αppli was automatically activated at the specified time. You can also check i-αppli that failed to be activated from the IC card function.

1 MENU ▶ i-αppli ▶“i-αppli action info”▶“Auto start info”

The screen shows the i-αppli name, automatic activation time and whether the i-αppli was activated. “Start ○” indicates that it was activated automatically, “Start ×” indicates that it was not activated automatically and “Start-” indicates that the automatic activation time has not elapsed.



NOTE

◆If the i-αppli was not activated automatically, the “ ” (Not run soft) desktop icon appears on the standby screen. Select the icon to display the Auto start info screen. Select i-αppli to activate. Desktop icons that give notice →p.159

◆i-αppli information is also logged if the i-αppli could not be automatically activated because you are using i-mode or running another application.

◆“Auto start info” may contain information on i-αppli even if you did not know that it was activated.

<i-αppli To function>

Activating i-αppli from a Site or Mail

You can activate i-αppli from functions other than i-αppli, such as an i-mode site or mail.

Setting whether to activate i-αppli by i-αppli To <i-αppli To setting>

Default setting
All activated

You can set whether to activate i-αppli from i-mode sites, mail, Infrared data exchange, Bar code reader or IC card function.

● This setting can be set separately for each i-αppli.

1 Software list screen (p.306)▶ ◉ (FUNC)▶“Set i-αppli To”▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□) of an item▶✉ (Finish)

You can select “Site “i-αppli To””, “Mail “i-αppli To””, “Ir “i-αppli To””, “Bar code “i-αppli To”” or “IC card “i-αppli To””.

Activating i-αppli from a site

If i-αppli is set to be activated from an i-mode site, you can activate the i-αppli from the site.

● This function is not available on some sites.

1 Sites screen (p.224)▶Select an item to activate i-αppli▶“YES”

NOTE

<i-αppli that is immediately activated from a site>

◆Unlike normal i-αppli, some i-αppli are immediately activated from i-mode sites.
- This type of i-αppli is not stored on the FOMA terminal after downloaded from an i-mode site. It is not listed even on the Software list screen.
- While i-αppli is activated, a message may appear asking whether to make communications.
- After you exit the i-αppli, a message may appear asking whether to save the i-αppli.
- Some i-αppli cannot be stored on the FOMA terminal.

Activating i-αppli from mail

If the i-αppli activation command is pasted into a received i-mode mail, you can activate the i-αppli from the i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.278)▶Select an item to activate i-αppli▶“YES”

NOTE

◆If multiple data are pasted into a mail, the pasted data themselves may not be displayed.

◆If you reply with a quote or forward the i-mode mail, the i-αppli activation command cannot be quoted. In addition, if you forward the mail using the Data Link Software, DoCoMo keitai datalink or Infrared data exchange, the i-αppli activation command cannot be quoted.

◆i-αppli cannot be activated from i-mode mail in the Secret folder.

Activating i-αppli during Infrared data exchange

If you receive i-αppli activation signals during Infrared data exchange, you can activate i-αppli.

1 (MENU)▶ (LifeKit)▶“Receive Ir data ▶“Receive” ▶Receive i-αppli activation signals

Using the Bar code reader to activate i-αppli

If a scanned bar code contains the i-αppli activation command, you can use the Bar code reader to activate i-αppli.

1 (MENU)▶ (LifeKit)▶“Bar code reader”▶“New”▶Scan a bar code

2 Select an item to activate i-αppli ▶“YES”

Using the IC card function to activate i-αppli

The IC card function will be available to activate i-αppli by holding the FeliCa mark on the FOMA terminal up to a reader/writer.

- i-αppli is not activated:
  - While another function is running
  - During a call
  - If the i-αppli to activate is not installed
- While the IC card lock is activated, the IC card function is not available to activate i-αppli. If i-αppli is activated using other than the IC card function while the IC card lock is activated, you cannot use the IC card function with the i-αppli.

1 Hold the FeliCa mark “ ” on the FOMA terminal near the reader/writer

<Set i-αppli stand-by>

Setting i-αppli as Standby Screens

Set the selected i-αppli as the standby screen. “ ” or “ ” appears at the bottom of the i-αppli standby screen.

- Only one i-αppli can be set as the i-αppli standby screen.
- Some i-αppli cannot be set as the standby screen.

1 Software list screen (p.306)▶ (FUNC)▶“Software setting” ▶“Stand-by display”▶“ON”▶ (Finish)

NOTE

- “ ” appears for an i-αppli set as the standby screen.
- If an i-αppli set as the i-αppli standby screen makes communications, it may not run correctly due to poor signal quality, etc.
- If “Stand-by net” under “Software setting” is set to “OFF”, you may not be able to receive timely information.
- Even if “Stand-by net” under “Software setting” is set to “ON”, communications cannot be made in Single mode (WLAN).
- If an i-αppli is set as the standby screen, the image set in “Stand-by display” under “Display setting” (p.146) does not appear.
- Even if an i-αppli is set as the standby screen, the screen set in “Stand-by display” under “Display setting” appears when you switch tasks to display the standby screen.
- If an i-αppli is set as the standby screen then the power is cycled, a message appears asking whether to display the i-αppli standby screen.
- If “Dial lock” (p.171) or “Original lock” (p.177) is activated on the i-αppli standby screen, the screen is closed. To redisplay the i-αppli standby screen, release “Dial lock” or “Original lock”.

Activating the i-αppli standby screen

Activate an i-αppli set as the i-αppli standby screen.

1 On the i-αppli standby screen▶CLR

The i-αppli is activated, and the “ ” or “ ” icon at the bottom of the screen changes to the flashing “ ” or “ ” icon.



Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen <Deactivate i-αppli standby screen>

● Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen while running the i-αppli

1 While running the i-αppli▶ CLR (1 second or longer) or ☎

Cancel	Cancels deactivating the i-αppli standby screen.
Ended	Exits the i-αppli standby screen left activated and redisplays the screen.
Terminated	Deactivates the i-αppli standby screen.

● Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen while it is displayed

1 MENU▶Settings▶"i-αppli settings"▶"End stand-by display"

2 "Terminate"▶"YES"

■ **To leave the i-αppli standby screen activated**
▶"End"

NOTE

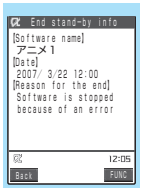
◆If you deactivate the i-αppli standby screen, the image set in "Stand-by display" under "Display setting" appears on the standby screen.

Checking the i-αppli standby screen exit information

If an error occurred and the i-αppli standby screen was deactivated, the i-αppli name, occurrence time and reason are logged so that you can check them.

1 MENU▶i-αppli▶"i-αppli action info"▶"End stand-by info"

The "End stand-by info" screen appears.



End stand-by info

Function menu➡p.315

Function menu (End stand-by info screen)

Copy info	Copies the i-αppli standby screen exit information.
Delete info	Deletes the i-αppli standby screen exit information.

NOTE

◆No information will be logged if the i-αppli standby screen exits successfully.

Managing i-αppli

Upgrading i-αppli <Upgrade>

You can upgrade a downloaded i-αppli when the new version is available on a site.

1 Software list screen (p.306)▶ (FUNC)▶"Upgrade"▶"YES"

NOTE

◆You cannot upgrade mail-linked i-αppli that change folder names while:
- The mail security is established
- The folder security is established
- The Inbox or Outbox for the mail-linked i-αppli to be upgraded is used

Deleting i-αppli <Delete i-αppli>

You can delete i-αppli individually or delete all i-αppli.

1 Software list screen (p.306)▶ (FUNC)▶"Delete"▶Select any item

Delete this	Deletes the highlighted i-αppli.
Delete selected	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple i-αppli.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the stored i-αppli.

NOTE

◆If you attempt to delete i-αppli that is set as the i-αppli standby screen (marked with), that is set to be automatically activated (marked with) or that is set as the i-αppli standby screen then set to be automatically activated (marked with), a message appears with the application status asking whether to delete the i-αppli.

Continued on next page

- If you attempt to delete a mail-linked i-αppli, a message appears asking whether to delete the folder for the mail-linked i-αppli. Select “NO” to delete the i-αppli only, or “YES” to delete the i-αppli and its folder. Even if “YES” is selected, you cannot delete the folder when the folder is being used, the folder security is established or the folder contains protected mail.
- If a mail-linked i-αppli is deleted, a new i-αppli mail received while the i-αppli is selected may also be deleted.
- Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli will be deleted after you activate the i-αppli and delete the IC card data. This type of i-αppli cannot be deleted by “Delete this”. (Other i-αppli will be deleted by “Delete selected” or “Delete all”.) Delete the IC card data before deleting the i-αppli.
- Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be deleted.

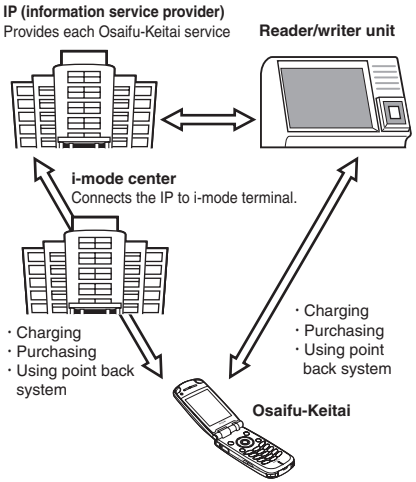
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

What is Osaifu-Keitai? 318
Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli 318
What is ToruCa? ..... ToruCa 319
Acquiring ToruCa ..... Acquire ToruCa 320
Viewing ToruCa ..... ToruCa viewer 321
Making the ToruCa Settings ..... ToruCa settings 323
Locking the IC Card Functions ..... IC card lock 323

What is Osaifu-Keitai?

“Osaifu-Keitai” refers to a useful IC card function of an i-mode terminal (i-mode FeliCa) or to an i-mode terminal equipped with an IC card.
FeliCa is a type of contactless IC card technology that allows you to read/write data simply by holding the card over a reader/writer unit.
Simply hold an Osaifu-Keitai over a reader/writer unit* in a shop to use your phone as electronic cash to make payments, as an airline ticket or point card. Your FOMA terminal makes your life more convenient.
Osaifu-Keitai is more useful than the existing FeliCa-compatible contactless IC cards in that you can even transmit electronic cash into the IC card of your Osaifu-Keitai or check the account balance or transaction history.

*: A unit that reads data from and writes data to IC cards.



* To use the IC card functions, download Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli supporting the IC card function.

- The ways to subscribe to or use the Osaifu-Keitai services depend on your IP (information service provider). Check with them directly. For cautions on using the services, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.
- Take notes of the names or contact numbers of the Osaifu-Keitai services. Osaifu-Keitai malfunction, repair, model change, etc., may erase or alter data stored on the IC card. (In case of repair, you will be asked to erase data by yourself.) Please be aware that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any damages the subscriber may incur due to the IC card data being deleted, erased, or altered. The way to erase data stored on the IC card and the warranty in the case of loss or alteration of the data depends on the Osaifu-Keitai services. Check with your IP (information service provider) beforehand.
- In case of a model change or exchange due to a malfunction, data stored on the IC card cannot be copied to your new phone. The measures to be taken depend on the Osaifu-Keitai services. Check with your IP (information service provider) beforehand.
- Take great care not to lose your Osaifu-Keitai. If you have lost your Osaifu-Keitai, check with your IP (information service provider) for information on the Osaifu-Keitai services you have subscribed to. IC card functions can be restricted by Dial lock, Omakase Lock or IC card lock.
→pp.171, 323

Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli to read/write IC card data

Launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli from the software list screen. Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli allows you to read/write data on the IC card and use useful functions, e.g. charging electronic cash or transportation tickets, or viewing the account balance or transaction history on your mobile phone.

- Take care not to let others know your security codes and passwords for services.
- Data exchange between the software and the IC card is interrupted in the following cases. When this happens, data that has been exchanged is discarded. Operations to be performed after you finish talking depend on the services you have used:
  - There is an incoming call while an i-αppli is launched
  - The battery runs out

1 MENU ▶ i-αppli ▶ **“Software list”**
The “Software list” screen appears.

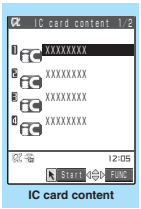
2 Select the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli
The Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli is launched.

● Viewing Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

You can view the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.

1 (MENU) ▶ (LifeKit) ▶ **"IC card content"**

The "IC card content" screen appears.



IC card content

■ **To launch an application**

▶Select an application to launch

Function menu (IC card content screen)

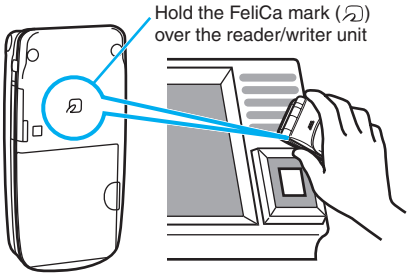
See the "Software list" function menu as the options are the same.→p.307

Using the Osaifu-Keitai

Holding the FeliCa mark "" on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit allows you to use the FOMA terminal as electronic cash or as a train ticket. To use this function, there is no need to launch an application.

- While you are talking on the phone, you cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli but can use the Osaifu-Keitai by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit.

1 Hold the FeliCa mark " " over a reader/writer unit to use your desired service



NOTE

- ◆Attach the battery pack when using the Osaifu-Keitai. Even when the power is turned off or the battery is low, you still can use IC card functions by holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit (cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli). Not using the battery pack for a long period of time or failing to charge the battery when the battery alarm sounds may make the IC card functions unavailable for use when needed, so be sure to charge the battery pack.
- ◆Do not subject a FOMA terminal to strong shocks when holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit. If a reader/writer unit does not recognize the FeliCa mark, get the FOMA terminal closer to the unit and move it a little in parallel to the surface of the unit.
- ◆While the IC card lock is set, you may be unable to download, upgrade or uninstall the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.
- ◆Holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit may launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.

<ToruCa>

What is ToruCa?

ToruCa is an electronic card that can be acquired via Osaifu-Keitai, which can be used as an ad, restaurant card, coupon, etc. ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit or downloaded from a site, and can be easily exchanged via a mail, Infrared data exchange or the miniSD memory card.

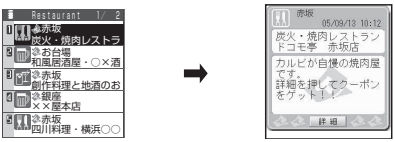
- Acquired ToruCa is saved to "ToruCa" under "LifeKit".
- This function is available with a terminal that supports ToruCa. For more details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".

Continued on next page

ToruCa usage flow



Hold Osaifu-Keitai over the reader/writer to acquire ToruCa.



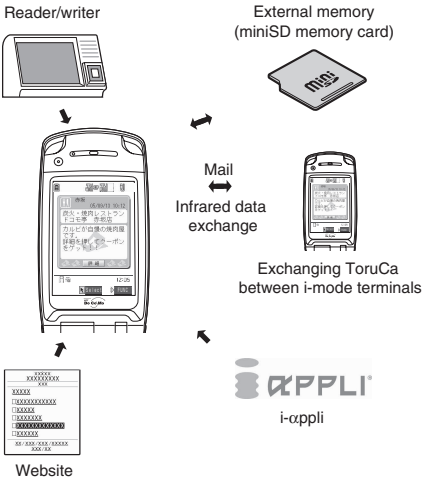
ToruCa



Detail

Select ToruCa from the list. Pressing the “詳細” (detail) button displays the detailed information.

How ToruCa is acquired



NOTE

- A packet communication charge will be made for downloading ToruCa and ToruCa detail from a site.

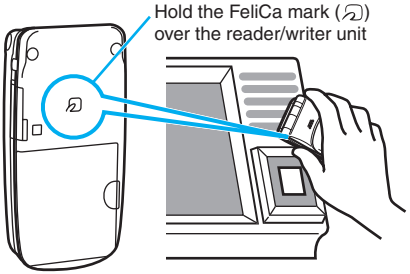
<Acquire ToruCa>

Acquiring ToruCa

Acquiring data via a reader/writer unit

1 Hold the FeliCa mark “ ” on a FOMA terminal over a reader/writer unit

The ToruCa acquisition tone sounds, and the incoming call lamp flashes for about 10 seconds. The “New ToruCa” desktop icon appears on the screen.



NOTE

- The acquisition screen does not appear when another function is running.
- ToruCa acquired via a reader/writer unit is saved to the “ToruCa” folder.
- Up to 100 ToruCa can be stored. The maximum size of ToruCa that can be stored is 1K bytes each. The maximum size of ToruCa detail that can be stored is 100K bytes each.
- You cannot change the ToruCa acquisition tone.
- The volume of the ToruCa acquisition tone is the same as that specified in “FOMAphone” under “Ring volume”. If “Step” is set, the tone sounds at volume “Level 4”.
- The ToruCa acquisition tone does not sound in Manner mode.
- ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit while Original lock is set.
- You cannot acquire ToruCa via a reader/writer unit while IC card lock or Omakase Lock is set.
- Setting Dial lock sets IC card lock to “ON” to disable the IC card function. You cannot release IC card lock while Dial lock is set.

<ToruCa viewer>

Viewing ToruCa

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶“ToruCa”

The ToruCa folder list screen appears.

2 Select a folder▶Select ToruCa

The ToruCa viewer screen appears.



ToruCa folder list

Function menu➡p.321

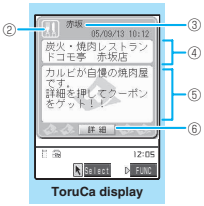
Guide to ToruCa list screen/ ToruCa display screen

ToruCa appears as follows:



ToruCa list

Function menu➡p.322



ToruCa display

Function menu➡p.322

① The folder titles appear.
② The ToruCa category icons appear.
③ The places, etc. (Index) appear.
④ The ToruCa titles appear.
⑤ The ToruCa contents appear. You can use the Phone To, Mail To or Web To function*.
*: You cannot use WLAN Browser by using Web To function.
⑥ More details appear.

NOTE

- You cannot use the Mail To function if you already have 20 draft mails.
- The Phone To, Mail To or Web To function may be unavailable for some ToruCa.
- The “詳細” (detail) button may not appear for some ToruCa.
- You cannot acquire ToruCa (detail) in WLAN single mode. Communicate with FOMA in DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA/Prefer WLAN).

Function menu (ToruCa folder list screen)

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name** You can add up to 20 folders to the memory on a FOMA terminal. A folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters on a FOMA terminal. As for the miniSD memory card, a folder name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	**▶Enter a folder name** A folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters on a FOMA terminal. As for the miniSD memory card, a folder name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.
Search all*	**▶“Index” or “Title”▶Enter text to search for▶●**
Filter all*	Displays ToruCa meeting the specified criteria (“Unread”, “Read”, “Category”). If you select “Category”, press ◆ to select a category icon.
Display all*	Cancels displaying “Search all” and “Filter all”.
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”**
No. of ToruCa	Displays the number of ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Delete all ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.

*: The option does not appear if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

<Add folder>
- A newly created folder will appear above the “miniSD” folder.

<Edit folder name>
- You cannot change the names of “ToruCa” and “miniSD”.

<Delete folder>
- You cannot delete “ToruCa” or “miniSD”.

Function menu (ToruCa list screen)

Move	
• **Move this**	**▶Select a folder▶"YES"** Moves the highlighted ToruCa to another folder.
• **Move selected**	**▶Select a folder▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Moves ToruCa you select to another folder.
• **Move all**	**▶Select a folder▶"YES"** Moves all displayed ToruCa to another folder.
Copy	
• **Copy this**	**▶Select a folder** Copies the highlighted ToruCa.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Select a folder▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies the selected ToruCa.
• **Copy all**	**▶Select a folder** Copies all displayed ToruCa.
Search[*1]	**▶"Index" or "Title"▶Enter text to search for▶●**
Disp all in folder[*1*2]	Cancels displaying "Search", "Filter" and "Sort".
Sort[*1]	Sorts ToruCa by the specified criteria.
Filter[*1]	Displays ToruCa meeting the specified criteria ("Unread", "Read", "Category"). If you select "Category", press ⊕ to select a category icon.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the selected ToruCa attached. Composing and sending i-mode message→p.257
Send Ir data[*1]	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.377
Copy to miniSD[*3]	
• **Copy this**	**▶Select a folder** Copies the highlighted ToruCa to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Select a folder▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies ToruCa you select to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶Select a folder▶"YES"** Copies all displayed ToruCa to the miniSD memory card.
No. of ToruCa	Displays the number of ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.
ToruCa info	Displays the ToruCa information.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted ToruCa.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ⊕ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes the selected ToruCa.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all displayed ToruCa.

*1: The option does not appear if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card.
*2: "Display all" appears instead when "Search all", "Filter all" or "Display all" works on the ToruCa folder list screen.
*3: "Copy to phone" appears instead if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card. When "Copy to phone" appears, folders are not to be selected.

NOTE

<Sort>
◆"By category" sorts in the order of ToruCa category icon.

Function menu (ToruCa display screen)

Move	**▶Select a folder** Moves the displayed ToruCa to another folder.
Copy	**▶Select a folder** Copies the displayed ToruCa.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the displayed ToruCa attached. Creating and sending i-mode message→p.257
Send Ir data[*1]	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.377
Copy to miniSD[*2]	**▶Select a folder** Copies the displayed ToruCa to the miniSD memory card.
Update[*1*3]	Updates the displayed ToruCa (detail).
Save image[*1*3]	Saves the displayed ToruCa (detail). Select "Normal image" or "Background image".
Add to phonebook[*1]	Adds a phone number or mail address contained in the displayed ToruCa to the phonebook.→p.119
Delete	Deletes the displayed ToruCa.

*1: The option does not appear if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card.
*2: "Copy to phone" appears instead if the ToruCa is stored on the miniSD memory card. When "Copy to phone" appears, folders are not to be selected.
*3: Can be selected when ToruCa (detail) appears.

NOTE

◆You may be unable to perform attachments to a message, send data via Infrared data exchange, or copy to miniSD depending on the data size of ToruCa downloaded from a site or acquired via i-αppli, etc.

<Compose message>
◆The ToruCa (detail) is transferred as ToruCa without detailed information.→p.266
The detail data can be acquired on the recipient side. However, the detail data may not be acquired depending on the content of the received ToruCa.

<Send Ir data>

◆The ToruCa (detail) is transferred as ToruCa without detailed information. The detail data can be acquired on the recipient side. However, the detail data may not be acquired depending on the content of the received ToruCa.

<Copy to miniSD>

◆The ToruCa (detail) is copied as ToruCa without detailed information. To reacquire the detailed information, recopy the ToruCa copied to the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal. However, the detail data may not be acquired depending on the content of the copied ToruCa.

<Update>

◆You cannot update ToruCa (detail) in WLAN single mode. Communicate with FOMA in DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA/Prefer WLAN).

<ToruCa settings>

Making the ToruCa Settings

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶"ToruCa settings"▶Select any items

Receive from R/W (default: Accept)	Sets to acquire ToruCa (Accept) or not (Reject) when you hold the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit.
Scroll (default: 1 line)	Selects "1 line", "3 lines" or "5 lines" for the number of scrolling lines on the ToruCa display screen.

<IC card lock>

Locking the IC Card Functions

Default setting: OFF

Lock the IC card functions in order to prevent other people from using the functions without your consent.

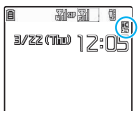
- Turning off the power does not unlock the IC card functions.

Setting/releasing IC card lock

- If SimpleLock is set to "ON", you can easily set/release the IC card lock on the standby screen. →p.323

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶"Lock/Security"▶"IC card lock"▶Enter your security code

IC card lock is set and "IC" appears.



■ **To release IC card lock**

▶Repeat Step 1

IC card lock is released and "IC" disappears from the screen.

Using Face authentication to release IC card lock

If you have registered an image for "Face authentication" and selected "IC card lock" for "Function to reset", an authentication of read face data is performed to identify the user.

- If the face authentication fails, enter the image name registered as a keyword for "Face authentication" to release IC card lock.
- "Using Face Authentication"→p.183

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶"Lock/Security"▶"IC card lock"▶Enter your security code

The "Face scanning" screen appears.

2 **Position your face so that the entire face appears on the display**

IC card lock is released and "IC" disappears from the screen.



Face scanning

■ **If the face authentication fails**

▶Enter the image name▶"OK"

IC card lock is released and "IC" disappears from the screen.

NOTE

◆IC card lock cannot be set/released while you are talking on a videophone call.

◆While an Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli is running, you cannot release IC card lock.

◆Removing the battery pack sets IC card lock automatically. In this case, attaching the battery pack releases the IC card lock automatically.

◆Even if the battery runs out and the power is then turned off, the current IC card lock remains unreleased.

Setting/releasing IC card lock easily <SimpleLock>

Default setting: OFF

- Set/release IC card lock easily on the standby screen.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶"Lock/Security"▶"SimpleLock"▶Enter your security code▶"ON"

■ **To cancel Face authentication**

▶"OFF"

● Using SimpleLock to set IC card lock

1 On the standby screen▶ 3 (1 second or longer)

■ To release IC card lock

▶On the standby screen▶ 3 (1 second or longer)▶Enter your security code

If you have registered an image for “Face authentication” and selected “IC card lock” for “Function to reset”, an authentication of read face data is performed before entering your security code.→p.323

Full Browser

Viewing Website Designed for PC ..... Full Browser 326
Setting Full Browser..... Full Browser settings 331

i-mode is not available to use home URL, bookmark and other data registered in full browser. Furthermore, the options set in full browser are invalid for i-mode.

<Full Browser>

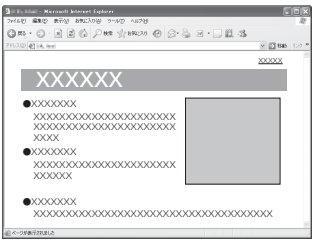
Viewing Website Designed for PC

You can enjoy viewing websites designed for PC with the full browser function. Some websites incompatible with i-mode can be displayed correctly. However, such websites may not be displayed or be displayed incorrectly depending on the site.

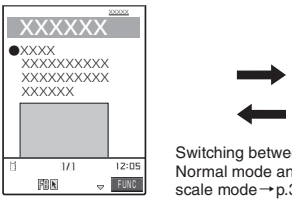
- You can choose the network for Full Browser from i-mode (FOMA network) or WLAN.
- The packet communication fee for i-mode full browser is charged separately from “Pake-Houdai”.
- You can view website composed of frames*1. You can also select a frame to display it. →p.329
- You can view TLS/SSL*2-compliant websites in full browser.

*1: The “frame” used in this chapter refers to each of separated sections that constitute a website page and differs from that used for framed photography.

*2: TLS and SSL are authentication/encryption technology to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from a TLS/SSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping data, site spoofing or altering, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information (e.g. address) safer.



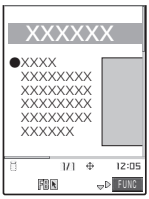
Website designed for PC



Normal mode →p.328

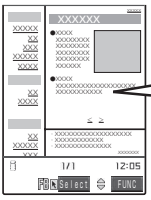
Shown in the width of your FOMA terminal display

Switching between Normal mode and Full scale mode →p.328

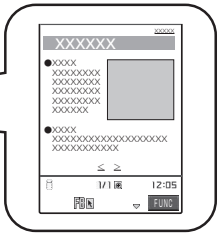


Full scale mode →p.328

Shown in similar size to the display of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high on a PC



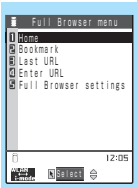
All frames →p.329



Selected frame →p.329

1 (MENU)▶(Full Browser)

The “Full Browser menu” screen appears.



Full Browser menu

■ **When “Full Browser comm” (p.327) is set to “Comm setting”**

The screen appears for selection or confirmation of the network to be used.

■ **When changing the network to be used**

▶✉(WLAN/i-mode)

2 Select any item

Home	Shows the website with the URL registered as home URL. If no home URL is registered, the screen for registering the home URL appears.
Bookmark[*1]	Shows a website added as bookmark.
Last URL	Shows the website you visited last.
Enter URL[*2]	Enters a URL to display the website.
Full Browser settings	Sets or checks the full browser options.→p.331

*1: For how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation.→p.230

*2: For how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode.→p.229

■ **When the confirmation message asking whether to use full browser appears**

The default setting of “Access setting” (setting whether to use full browser) is “No”.

When “No” is set for “Access setting”, a confirmation message asking whether to use i-mode full browser appears. Read the given notes carefully and perform the setting.

When you select “Yes” on the confirmation message, “Yes” is set for “Access setting” (p.331) and the setting will be retained.

NOTE

- ◆It may take time to open some websites.
- ◆You cannot save a page displayed in full browser as a screen memo.
- ◆Websites viewed in full browser cannot be changed to i-mode or WLAN browser.
- ◆Full browser does not support Flash movie and PDF.
- ◆The Phone To function, SIP To function and IM To function are not available in full browser.
- ◆Be sure to insert the FOMA card (UIM) before setting “Access setting”.
- ◆You cannot view the home URL site in full browser even when pressing (Home) on the standby screen.
- ◆When “Access setting” is set to “Yes” and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced, the “Access setting” changes to “No”.

Setting a network used at the full browser activation

<Full Browser comm>

Default setting: Auto

Set the network used at the full browser activation.

1 Full Browser menu screen (p.327)▶“Full Browser settings”▶“Full Browser comm”▶Select any item

Auto	Auto-detects the available network to start the full browser depending on the “Setting connect mode” settings and radio wave strength.
i-mode	Uses i-mode communication.
WLAN	Uses WLAN communication.
Comm setting	Confirms the network used at the full browser activation.

■ **Setting to “Auto”**

No screen appears to select the network at the full browser activation. The available network is auto-detected for connection depending on the “Setting connect mode” settings and radio wave strength (within range or out of range status). The criteria for selection is as follows:

Signal strength / “Setting connect mode” settings	FOMA in range/ WLAN in range	FOMA out of range/ WLAN in range	FOMA in range/ WLAN out of range	FOMA out of range/ WLAN out of range
DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA)	i-mode	WLAN	i-mode	i-mode
DUAL mode (Prefer WLAN)	WLAN	WLAN	i-mode	WLAN
Single mode (FOMA)	i-mode			
Single mode (WLAN)	WLAN			

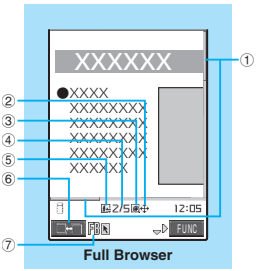
■ **Setting to “i-mode” or “WLAN”**

No screen appears for network selection and the browser is activated connecting through the set network.

■ **Setting to “Comm setting”**

The screen appears for selection or confirmation of the network to be used. The confirmation screen appears to use “i-mode” for Single mode (FOMA) or “WLAN” for Single mode (WLAN). For DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA or Prefer WLAN), the screen prompts you to select “i-mode” or “WLAN”.

Full Browser screen



Full Browser

Function menu➡p.330

① Scroll bar
Indicates the current location in the displayed page.→p.328

② Full scale mode
Appears when the Full scale mode is used.
→p.328

③ Selected frame display icon
Indicates that the selected frame (p.329) appears.

④ 2/5 Number of activated multi windows
Indicates the order and number of activated windows.→p.329

⑤
"" lights up when another frame is in communication while the selected frame is shown (p.329). "" lights up when another frame is in communication while multiple windows are active (p.329).

⑥ Change window icon
Pressing (Mail) ( ) switches pages when multiple websites are open.

⑦
Appears during connection to the Internet in full browser mode.

Changing display mode

You can switch the display mode between Normal and Full scale on the Full Browser screen.

- The default mode can be set in "Full Browser settings" (p.331).
- You can switch the current display mode between Normal and Full scale by using the function menu.
- The display mode is retained when full browser is exit. The same display mode is applied the next time full browser is activated.

Normal mode

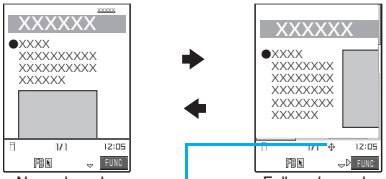
Websites are displayed in the width of a FOMA terminal display. Only vertical scrolling is required for viewing websites (horizontal scrolling is not needed).

Full scale mode

Websites are displayed in the similar size to the display of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high on a PC. You can view websites by scrolling vertically and horizontally.

1 **Full Browser screen (p.328)▶ (Menu) (FUNC)▶"Change disp. mode"**

When displayed in Normal mode, the display mode changes to Full scale.
When displayed in Full scale mode, the display mode changes to Normal.
When the display mode is switched, the top of the current page is shown in the Normal mode and the upper left area is shown in the Full scale mode.



Normal mode

Full scale mode

Full scale mode indication
Indicates that you can scroll in 4 directions of up, down, left or right.

Scrolling

When the whole page is not displayed on the Full Browser screen, you can view the remaining part by scrolling the screen.

To scroll using

Press to scroll down, and to scroll up on the Full Browser screen (in Original layout and Mobile layout modes).
Press to scroll right, and to scroll left on the Full Browser screen (only in Original layout mode).
The screen is scrolled continuously in the direction you press.

To scroll using (Home) or (Memo/Check)

Press (Memo/Check) to scroll down one screen, or (Home) to scroll up one screen on the Full Browser screen. Furthermore, pressing (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer enables you to jump to the bottom of the page and (Home) for 1 second or longer to jump to the top of the page.

To scroll using the Neuropointer

Slide to move the cursor to the direction you want to scroll. When the cursor reaches the edge of screen, the cursor changes to "" (depending on the scroll direction).
In Normal mode, you can scroll a screen in 2 directions of up and down.
In Full scale mode, you can scroll a screen in 4 directions of up and down, or right and left.

■ **To switch to scroll mode**

Select “Scroll mode” from the Full Browser function menu (p.330) to switch to scroll mode. In scroll mode, the screen is scrolled in the direction where ● is slid. Keep moving the cursor to scroll a screen continuously.

In Normal mode, you can scroll a screen in 2 directions of up and down.

In Original layout mode, you can scroll 360 degrees (8 directions).

Scroll mode can also be set or released by pressing [☎] on the Full Browser screen.

● Returning to the previous page/ going to the next page

Pressing ⟲ returns to the page previously displayed before the current page. Pressing ⟳ returns to the page before “History back” operation (only in Normal mode).

Use the function menu to perform “History back” and “History forward” in Full scale mode.

→p.330

● Using multi window

You can open up to five websites simultaneously in full browser.

- Switch the multi-opened websites one by one.

NOTE

◆You cannot arrange the multi-opened websites side-by-side.

1 Full Browser screen (p.328)▶ (FUNC)▶“Open new window”▶ Select any item

Bookmark*1	Shows a website added as bookmark.
Enter URL*2	Enters a URL to display the website.
Display home	Shows the website registered as home URL.
Link	Opens the link selected (highlighted) in a website.

*1: For how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation. →p.230

*2: For how to enter URLs, see the page describing the URL entry in i-mode. →p.229

The selected website opens with a new window.

■ **To display other pages**

Press ✉ ([▭]) to change pages to display.

■ **To close a page**

▶Display the page you want to close▶ (FUNC)▶“Close window”▶“YES”

NOTE

◆You can change websites to display from the function menu.

▶Full Browser screen (p.328)▶ (FUNC)▶“Change window”▶Select the title of the website

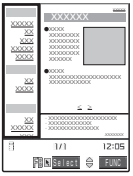
◆Some websites contain a link set to open the websites using new windows. When you select such link, the website will open with a new window.

● Displaying a page composed of frames

You can view websites composed of frames that are designed for PC.

- You can select a frame to display.

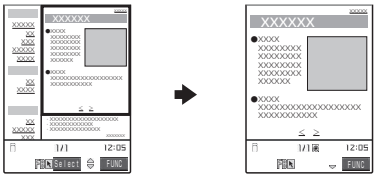
1 Full Browser screen (p.328)▶ Display a page composed of frames



2 Use ✣ to select a frame▶●

The selected frame appears.

Neuropointer is also available to select frames.



All frames　　Selected frame

■ **To return to the all-frames screen**

▶ (FUNC)▶“All frames”

Pressing [CLR] also returns to the all-frames screen.

NOTE

◆For a website including several frames, all the frames may not be displayed (resulting in frames without characters or images).

Uploading images

Upload JPEG or GIF images stored in your FOMA terminal to websites.

- Procedure for uploading images depends on websites. Follow the procedure described on the website you visit.

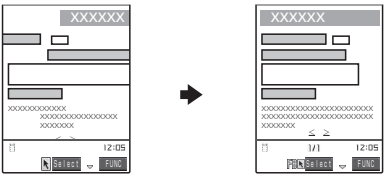
NOTE

- ◆You cannot upload multiple images that exceed 80K bytes in total or data in which the selected image and other data exceed 100K bytes in total.
- ◆Some websites may not support uploading function.
- ◆You cannot upload images that are not allowed to be output to a device other than the FOMA terminal.

Switching to full browser from i-mode or WLAN browser

Switch to full browser to display websites incompatible with i-mode or WLAN browser.

1 Website screen displayed in i-mode or WLAN browser▶(●) (FUNC)▶“Switch to FB”▶“YES”



Switch to full browser to correctly display websites incompatible with i-mode or WLAN browser such as websites designed for PC. Some websites may not be displayed or be displayed incorrectly.

NOTE

- ◆Websites viewed in full browser cannot be changed to i-mode or WLAN browser.
- ◆If the display mode is changed to full browser during character entry, the entered characters are cleared.
- ◆The packet communication fee for i-mode full browser is charged separately from “Pake-Houdai”.

Function menu (Full Browser screen)

Add bookmark[*1]	Adds the site to the bookmark list.
Bookmark[*1]	Opens the Bookmark folder list screen.
Save image	**▶Use (●) to select an image, then press (●) (SET)▶“YES”▶Select a folder** Saves the image in the displayed page. When selecting an image in Full scale mode, press (●) to go down, or (●) to go up.
Enter URL[*2]	Enters a URL to display the website.
Scroll mode	Changes to Scroll mode. “To switch to scroll mode”→p.329
Open new window	Opens a website with a new window. “Using multi window”→p.329
Close window	Closes the displayed window.
Change window	Switches windows when multiple websites are open.
All frames	Returns to the all frames screen.
Change disp. mode	Switches to Normal mode or Full scale mode on the full browser screen.→p.328
Compose message	Pastes the URL of the displayed page to compose an i-mode message. “Creating and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.257
Reload	Refreshes the displayed page.
Retry	Plays an animation in the displayed page from the beginning.
Home	
• **Set as home URL**	Registers the URL of the displayed page as the home page. One URL can be stored.
• **Display home**	Displays the home page.
History back	Goes back one page from the current page.
History forward	Returns to the screen that had been displayed before performing “History back”.
Site info	
• **Title**	Displays the title of the displayed page.
• **URL**	Displays the URL of the displayed page.
• **Certificate**	Displays the TLS/SSL certificate details when the displayed page supports TLS/SSL.
Set image disp.	Sets whether to display images. When “OFF” is set, “” appears instead of images.
Change CHR code	Changes the character code to redisplay a page displayed incorrectly.
Cookie	
• **Cookie settings**	“Setting Cookie”→p.331
• **Delete Cookies**	“Deleting Cookie”→p.332
Referer setting	“Setting Referer”→p.332

*1: For how to use bookmarks, see the pages describing the i-mode bookmark operation.→p.230

*2: For how to enter URLs, see the pages describing the URL entry in i-mode.→p.229

NOTE

<Scroll mode>

- ◆Pressing [C] on a site screen also switches to or cancels Scroll mode.

<Full Browser settings>

Setting Full Browser

1 Full Browser menu screen (p.327)▶“Full Browser settings”▶Select any item

Access setting[*1]	Sets whether to use i-mode full browser. →p.327
Home URL	Sets the home page.
Scroll	Sets the scroll speed and whether to display linked pages.
• **Speed**	Selects the speed for scrolling pages from “High speed” and “Low speed”.
• **During scroll in focus**	Sets whether to display the selected item (highlighted) of the page (linked) while scrolling a website.
Font size	Selects any of “Standard”, “Small” and “Large” for the size of characters displayed on the Full Browser screen.
Set image disp.	Sets whether to display images. When “OFF” is set, “” appears instead of images.
Cookie settings	“Setting Cookie” →p.331
Delete Cookies	“Deleting Cookie” →p.332
Referer setting	“Setting Referer” →p.332
Display Mode setting	“Changing display mode” →p.328
Script setting	▶**“Valid” or “Invalid”** Sets whether to validate JavaScript[*2] when a website is displayed. Some websites may be displayed incorrectly unless “Script setting” is set to “Valid”.
Window Open Guard	▶**“Valid” or “Invalid”** Sets whether to automatically open a new window by using JavaScript[*2]. Setting to “Valid” does not open a window automatically.
Full Browser comm	“Setting a network used at the full browser activation” →p.327
Check settings	Enables you to check the contents of “Full Browser settings”.
Reset last URL	Clears the stored last URL. No “last URL” remains after this operation is performed.
Reset	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Returns the full browser settings to default.

*1: Setting is not available for WLAN full browser.
*2: JavaScript is a programming language that can be included on web pages to make them more interactive.

Cookie

Default setting: Valid

Using Cookie* enables you to effectively access the websites that you have visited once.

- You can set or delete Cookie from the Full Browser settings or function menu on the Full Browser screen.

*: Cookie is the mechanism for temporarily saving the date you visited the website, number of accesses and your other information. The information is sent from server, saved temporarily in your FOMA terminal and used for contents service. If Cookie is sent, the information such as date you visited the website and number of accesses is also sent to the site. Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Cookie. However, some websites and contents services require you to validate the Cookie setting for their correct display and use.

Setting Cookie

1 Full Browser menu screen (p.327)▶“Full Browser settings”▶“Cookie settings”▶Select any item

Valid	Always validates Cookie. No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent or received.
Invalid	Always invalidates Cookie.
Notify (sending)	Enables you to choose whether to send Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is received and the information is saved in your FOMA terminal.
Notify (receiving)	Enables you to choose whether to receive Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent.
Notify (send/recv.)	Enables you to choose whether to send or receive Cookie every time you connect to a page.

NOTE

- ◆Expired Cookies are deleted in the ascending order of no use when the number and size of Cookies exceed the maximum limit.
- ◆The all Cookies stored in your FOMA terminal are deleted when “Reset” is performed.
- ◆When “Notify” is set, some websites may continuously display message screens asking whether to send and receive (update) Cookie.

● Deleting Cookie

1 Full Browser menu screen (p.327)▶“Full Browser settings”▶“Delete Cookies”▶Enter your security code▶“YES”

The all Coolies stored in your FOMA terminal are deleted. (You cannot delete them separately.)

Referer

Default setting: Send

You can set whether to send Referer*.

*: Referer is a source of link information. Sending Referer transfers information such as the page from which you access the site. Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Referer. However, you may not access the linked pages in some websites unless Referer is sent.

● Setting Referer

1 Full Browser menu screen (p.327)▶“Full Browser settings”▶“Referer setting”▶Select any item

Send	Sends Referer.
Unsend	Does not send Referer.
Notify	Confirms whether to send Referer.

NOTE

◆When “Notify” is set, a message asking whether to send Referer appears continuously depending on the website.

Display/Edit/Organization/ Music Playback

Mastering still images

Data Box 334
Displaying Still Images..... My picture 335
Editing Images..... Edit image 344

Mastering movies

Playing Movies/i-motion..... i-motion 347
Editing Movies ..... Edit movie 353

Mastering Chara-den

What is Chara-den?..... Chara-den 355

Mastering melodies

Playing Melodies..... Melody 359

Mastering memory cards

miniSD Memory Card 362
Copying Data Stored on the FOMA Terminal to the miniSD Memory Card 366
Previewing Data Stored on the miniSD Memory Card ..... SD-PIM 367
Copying Data Stored on the miniSD Memory Card to the FOMA Terminal..... 369
Managing the miniSD Memory Card 370
Using the FOMA Terminal as miniSD Reader/Writer..... 370

Mastering various data

Working with Folders and Files..... 372
Preventing Phonebook Image Forwarding..... Forwarding image 373

Transferring data via Infrared data exchange/ cable connection

Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/ Cable Connection ..... Infrared data exchange/OBEX 374
Transferring One Data at a Time 377
Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time 378
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function 379

Mastering PDF viewer

Viewing PDF Data ..... My document 379

Printing a still image

Printing Stored Images ..... PictBridge print 385

Listening to music

Music Playback Methods 387

Data Box

The following items and folders are prepared for Data box, and still images or movies shot with the built-in camera or data downloaded from messages or websites are categorized into the folders.

- The following are the maximum numbers of files that can be stored on the N902iL (phone):
  My picture: 720 including images you shoot
  i-motion: 100 including movies you shoot
  Melody: 400
  Chara-den: 10 including characters preinstalled at the time of purchase
  My document: 400 PDF documents
  Up to 100 data, up to 1,200K bytes can be stored in Secret under My picture, and up to 10 data, up to 1,000K bytes in Secret under i-motion.
- Up to 20 folders can be added to My picture, i-motion, Melody and My document, respectively.
- Data stored in My picture, i-motion, Melody and My document can be moved to another folder in the same item.

My picture

Folder	File format	Content
Inbox	JPEG, GIF, SWF*1	All images can be saved here. Images copied from the miniSD memory card or transferred via Infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox. Still images shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.
Camera		
Decomail-picture		Deco-mail images preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Images can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
Pre-installed		Preinstalled images and animations for the standby screen or wake-up are stored.
Secret*2		Stores images that you want to prevent others from viewing.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		Images can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
Original animation	—	Animations created in Continuous mode or original animations are stored.
miniSD Picture	JPEG, GIF	Still images you shot, JPEG images/GIF images copied from the FOMA terminal, JPEG images/GIF images and animations saved from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored.
miniSD Image Box	JPEG, GIF	GIF animations copied from the FOMA terminal, JPEG images and GIF animations transferred from a PC, etc. to a miniSD memory card are stored. →p.364
Frame	IFM	Frames stored at the time of purchase are stored. Frames downloaded or acquired via ToruCa will be saved.
Stamp		Marker stamps preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Marker stamps downloaded or acquired via ToruCa will be saved.
Face stamp	FSD	Face stamps preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Downloaded face stamps will be saved.

i-motion

Folder	File Format	Content
Inbox	MP4	All movies or i-motion can be saved here. Movies or i-motion copied from the miniSD memory card or transferred via Infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox. Movies shot using Chara-den are saved to the Camera folder.
Camera		
Pre-installed		i-motion preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
Secret*2		Stores movies or i-motion you want to prevent others from viewing.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		Movies and i-motion can be saved here as well as to Inbox and Camera folders.
miniSD	MP4, ASF*3	Movies you shot, movies or i-motion copied from the FOMA terminal, or movies transferred from a PC, etc. to a miniSD memory card are stored.
Playlist*4	—	—

Melody

Folder	File Format	Content
Inbox	SMF, MFi	All melodies can be saved here. Melodies copied from a miniSD memory card or transferred via Infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox.
Pre-installed	MFi	Melodies or sound effects preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)	SMF, MFi	Melodies can be saved here as well as to Inbox.
Voice announce	—	Messages recorded using Voice announce are stored.
miniSD	SMF, MFi	Melodies copied from the FOMA terminal or saved from a PC, etc. to a miniSD memory card are stored.
Playlist*4	—	—

Chara-den

Folder	File Format	Content
—	AFD	Chara-den characters preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. Downloaded Chara-den characters will be saved.

My document

Folder	File Format	Content
Inbox	PDF	PDF documents preinstalled at the time of purchase are stored. All PDF documents can be saved here. PDF documents copied from a miniSD memory card or transferred via Infrared data exchange are saved to the Inbox.
(User-created folders 1 to 20)		PDF documents can be saved here as well as to Inbox.
miniSD		PDF documents copied from the FOMA terminal or transferred from a PC, etc. to a miniSD memory card are stored.

Music

Folder	File Format	Content
—	m3u	Playlist transferred from a PC to the miniSD memory card are stored.

*1: SWF is a file format for Flash movies.
*2: The options appear only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode. The folder cannot contain images/i-motion stored at the time of purchase.
*3: ASF format is play-only.
*4: Playlist is a folder used for playlist playback. The folder cannot contain data and cannot be deleted.

Important

- It is recommended to copy data stored in the Data box to the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using a miniSD memory card or by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.435), the Data Link Software (p.499) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional). (Images, movies or melodies that are not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal cannot be stored on a miniSD memory card or transferred to a PC.)
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility for data loss. Save the data to the miniSD memory card, or use the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.435), the Data Link Software to save the data to your PC just in case.

<My picture> MENU46

Displaying Still Images

Still images shot with the built-in camera, downloaded from websites or stored on the miniSD memory card appear in My picture under the Data box.

- An image cannot be displayed if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high or if the file size exceeds 1,200K bytes. Also, a progressive JPEG image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 640 dots cannot be displayed. Progressive JPEG image→p.234

1 MENU ▶ Data box ▶ “My picture”

The “Folder list” screen appears.
The “Secret” folder appears in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.
Content in My picture→p.334



Folder list

Function menu➡p.372

2 Select a folder

The “Image list (Picture list)” screen appears.
Image list screen→p.336



Image list

Function menu➡p.338

Continued on next page

3 Select an image

The “My picture” screen appears.
Use ⊙ to view the previous or next image.
If the image is larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high, ● can be used to switch between actual size or enlarged.
With actual size and large size, the Neuropointer can be scrolled the image.



My picture

Function menu➡p.340

NOTE

- If an image is displayed in the actual size or large size, you cannot use ⊙ to view the previous or next image, or use the function menu.
- Original animation, GIF-formatted animation or Flash movie cannot be displayed in the actual size or large size.
- It may take some time to display images if a lot of data are stored on the FOMA terminal or on the miniSD memory card.
- Flash movies are played at the volume set in “FOMAphone” under the “Ring volume” settings. If “Step” is set, Flash movies are played at volume “Level 2”.

Displaying images stored on the miniSD memory card

1 Folder list screen (p.335)▶“miniSD”▶“Picture” or “Image Box”

The “miniSD folder list” screen appears.



Example: miniSD folder list (Picture)

Function menu➡p.372

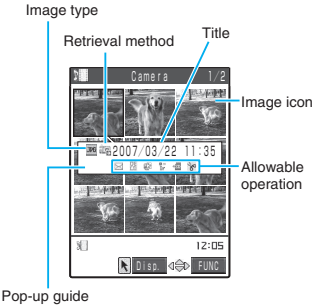
2 Select a folder▶Select an image

Guide to the Picture list and Title list

■ Picture

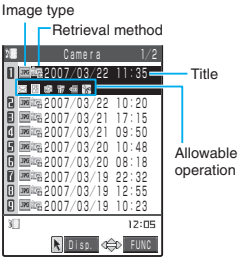
Nine images* stored on the FOMA terminal appear on the screen at a time, and the title of the selected image appears in a popup guide. Popup icons show the image type, the image retrieval method, and the settings that can be specified for the image.

*: Four images appear simultaneously as for the images stored on a miniSD memory card (Picture).



■ Title list

Titles of nine images are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the image type, the image retrieval method, and the settings that can be specified for the image.



■ Image type icon

icon	Description
JPG (Pale blue)/ JPG (Blue)/ JPG (Navy blue)	JPEG-formatted image (Can be attached to a normal message/ Can be attached to a large message/Can be compressed then attached to a large message (if it becomes 500K bytes or smaller after compressed))*1
GIF (Pale blue)/ GIF (Blue)/ GIF (Navy blue)	GIF-formatted image (Can be attached to a normal message/ Cannot be attached to a message (10,001 to 100K bytes)/Cannot be attached to a message (larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high, larger than 100K bytes))*1
	GIF (IFM) frame, marker stamp*1
	FSD face stamp

icon	Description
	SWF Flash movie
	MP4 movie/i-motion*1
(Note in blue)	MP4 i-motion with sound effects*1
(Note in orange)	ASF i-motion
	MP4 i-motion with playback restrictions*2
	MP4 i-motion with sound effects and playback restrictions*2
	AFD Chara-den characters
	Image to which the FOMA card operational restriction applies

*1: "" is added to icons for data that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal. The data cannot be transferred via mail, or Infrared data exchange, except if it was shot with the FOMA terminal and file restrictions are set.

*2: "" turns to "" when the playback count reaches the limit or when the playback period expires.

■ Retrieval method icons

icon	Description
No icon	Data stored at the time of purchase
	Data downloaded from a site, message or ToruCa, or acquired from i-αppli
	Data shot with the camera
	Data copied from the miniSD memory card or a PC, acquired via Infrared data exchange or Bar code reader
	Chara-den shots
	Frame/Marker stamp/Facestamp
	Data clipped from a PDF document

■ Allowable operation icon

The icon does not appear if the data is stored on the miniSD memory card (Image Box).

icon	Description
QVGA	Movies and i-motion of QVGA (320 dots wide × 240 dots high). Appears only in folders under i-motion.
/ /	Can be attached to an i-mode message (10,000 bytes or smaller/ 500 to 10,001K bytes/larger than 500K bytes) If the data size exceeds 500K bytes, you need to reduce the size to be attached to a message. "Reducing the image size to be attached to a message"→p.341 "Clipping a movie to be attached to a message"→p.355
	Can be inserted into a Deco-mail message
	Can be set to the screen
	Can be set as a ring tone
	Can be transferred via Infrared data exchange
	Can be copied to the miniSD memory card
	Can be edited
	Larger than 800K bytes. Appears only in the miniSD folder. Can be played from the point where playback was ended last time.

■ Titles and file names

- Still images or movies shot with the built-in camera or recorded with Chara-den are automatically titled and named.
  Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm
  (Year/Month/Day Time)
  File name: yyyymmddhhmmxxx
  Date and time
  (xxx is replaced with a 3-digit number for still image.)
  * Still image: the time when the data is saved; Movie: the time when the shooting is finished. If the "Auto save set" is set to "OFF", the time when the movie is saved appears.
- Original titles are assigned to downloaded i-motion and Chara-den characters.
- The file names and titles are the same for downloaded images.
- The title appears on the Image list screen of the FOMA terminal.
- The file name appears when the data is transferred to a PC.
- The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.
- If a file name you attempted to create contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to "imagexxx" or "moviexxx".

● Setting the image list display mode <Viewer settings>

- Original animations and miniSD memory cards (Image Box) are always listed by title.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Display" ▶ "Viewer settings" ▶ Select any item

Picture (default)	Changes to the picture list.
Title	Changes to the title list.

Function menu (Image list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit image	"Editing Images"→p.344
Edit title	▶**Edit a title** Edits the title of the selected image. The title can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters. As for miniSD memory card (Picture), the title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.
Display image	Displays the selected image (displays the My picture screen).
Set as display	★ appears for items to which the image is set. ■**To set to screens such as standby or voice call** ▶**Select any item** ■**To set to videophone-related screens (except V.phone dialing and V.phone calling)** ▶**Select an item**▶**Check the image**▶●▶**"YES"**
Image info	"Image information"→p.340
Compose message	
• **Attach image**	"Composing a message with an image attached"→p.341
• **Insert image**	"Composing a Deco-mail message"→p.342
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.377
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.158
Copy to miniSD	"Copying images stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card"→p.344
Add image to PB	Saves the selected image to a phonebook entry.→p.119
Size for mail	"Reducing the image size to be attached to a message"→p.341
Positioning	"Setting the position when setting an image"→p.342
Clipping area	"Setting the area when setting an image"→p.342
Edit file name	▶**Edit a file name** Edits the file name of the selected image. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("-", "_"). Symbols other than "-" or "_" cannot be used.
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the selected image.
• **File unrestricted**	Allows the melody to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Move	
• **Move this**	▶**Select the destination folder**▶**"YES"** Moves the selected image to another folder.
• **Move selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.372
• **Move all**	▶**Select the destination folder**▶**"YES"** Moves all images stored in the folder to another folder.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes a selected image.
• **Delete selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.372
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all images from the folder.
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal and on a miniSD memory card. The amount of Secret is not included in the amount on the FOMA terminal.
Sort	Sorts images by specified criteria.
Title name, Picture	Switches between Picture and Title name.
Composite image	"Making a composite image out of 4 images"→p.342
PictBridge print	Prints JPEG images using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to connect the FOMA terminal to your printer.→p.385
Store at DSC	"Saving images to the Data Security Center"→p.339
Keep in secret[*1]	"Hiding Various Data"→p.175
Facestamp demo[*2]	Checks the facestamp follow. The image is displayed normally (not mirror). If a stamp can follow facial movements, "  " appears. If not, "  " appears.
Copy to phone[*3]	"Copying images stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal"→p.344
DPOF setting[*3]	"Setting how to print images stored on a miniSD memory card"→p.387
Copy[*3]	Copies an image to another folder on the miniSD memory card. Create a destination folder beforehand.→p.372
• **Copy this**	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies selected images to another folder.
• **Copy selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.372
• **Copy all**	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies all images to another folder.

*1: The option appears in "Secret mode" or in "Secret data only mode". If it is the Secret folder, "Put out" appears.→p.175

*2: The option appears only when the folder is Face stamp.

*3: The options appear only for images stored on the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

<Edit title>

◆You may be unable to edit a title if there is little space available on the miniSD memory card.

◆You cannot edit the titles of images stored at the time of purchase.

<Set as display>

◆Images stored in the Inbox, Camera or User-created folders can be set to the following screens:

- Stand-by display
- FOMA dialing
- VoIP dialing
- VoIP call(Pub.)
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Holding
- Record message
- VP voice memo
- Wake-up display
- FOMA calling
- VoIP calling
- VoIP call(Tie)
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving
- On hold
- Substitute image
- Preparing VP msg

◆Images stored in the Pre-installed folder can be set to the Stand-by display or Wake-up display.

◆You cannot set an image to the screens if:

- Image larger than 640 dots wide x 640 dots high
- The file size exceeds 100K bytes (except Stand-by display and Wake-up display)

◆Some images may not appear in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set.

◆Some images cannot be set to screens.

<Add image to PB>

◆You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and not larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

◆You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

<Edit file name>

◆You cannot edit the file name of the image if it is:

- Stored at the time of purchase
- A still image of Chara-den character with “File restricted”
- The image is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

◆You cannot use single-byte spaces for file names.

<File restriction>

◆You cannot restrict an image if it is:

- Neither JPEG nor GIF
- A still image of Chara-den character with “File restricted”

<Delete>

◆You cannot delete images stored at the time of purchase.

◆If you attempt to delete an image that has been set to a screen or original animation or set as a user icon for Schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select “YES” to delete the image, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:

- The screens restore to default.
- Original animation is released.
- The Schedule alarm screen turns to the one to which “” was set.

◆Even if the original image is deleted, the same one attached to a message is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to a message is also deleted.

<Memory info>

◆The displayed size is only an approximation. The amount in the Secret folder appears only in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.

<Sort>

◆“By source” sorts documents in the following order:

①Images stored at the time of purchase
②Images downloaded or acquired via i-αppli or ToruCa
③Images shot with the camera
④Images copied from the miniSD memory card or acquired via Infrared data exchange
⑤Chara-den shots
⑥Images clipped out of PDF documents

Saving images to the Data Security Center

<Data Security Service>

Save images stored in the Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture and user-created folders under “My picture” to DoCoMo’s Data Security Center.

- To use this service, you need to subscribe to “Data Security Service”.
- If you have not subscribed to Data Security Service, a message appears indicating that you have not subscribed to the service. You can access the Data Security Service site from the message screen to subscribe to the service.
  Data Security Service→pp.135, 190
- When in Single mode (WLAN), the Data Security Service operations are not available.

1 Image list screen (p.335)▶ (FUNC)▶“Store at DSC”

2 Use to select images▶ (Finish)

Up to 10 images can be selected.

3 Enter your security code▶“YES”

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the images.

4 (Finish)

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆You cannot save an image if the size exceeds 100K bytes, if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal or if it is a Deco-mail picture stored at the time of purchase.

■ Retrieving images

Images stored at the Data Security Center can be retrieved to the FOMA terminal. To retrieve, connect to i-mode. For details on how to use this function, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]”.

Function menu (My picture screen)

● The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit image	“Editing Images”→p.344
Set as display	▶**Select any item** Sets the selected image to the standby screen, etc.
Image info	“Image information”→p.340
Compose message	
• **Attach image**	“Composing a message with an image attached”→p.341
• **Insert image**	“Composing a Deco-mail message”→p.342
Send Ir data	“Transferring One Data at a Time”→p.377
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).
• **Normal** (default)	Displays the character in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges the character to the display size.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Copy to miniSD	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies the displayed image.
Add image to PB	Saves the displayed image to a phonebook entry.→p.119
Positioning	“Setting the position when setting an image”→p.342
Clipping area	“Setting the area when setting an image”→p.342
Delete this	Deletes the displayed image.
Retry	Replays the displayed animation from the beginning.
PictBridge print	Prints JPEG images using the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to connect the FOMA terminal to your printer.→p.385
Facestamp demo*1	Checks the facestamp follow. The image is displayed normally (not mirror). If a stamp can follow facial movements, “” appears. If not, “” appears.
Copy to phone*2	Copies the displayed image.
DPOF setting*2	“Setting how to print images stored on a miniSD memory card”→p.387

*1: The option appears only when the folder is Face stamp.
*2: The options appear only for images stored on the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

<Set as display>

◆An animation can be set to the following screen:

- Stand-by display
- FOMA dialing
- VoIP dialing
- VoIP call(Pub.)
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Holding
- Record message
- VP voice memo
- Wake-up display
- FOMA calling
- VoIP calling
- VoIP call(Tie)
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving
- On hold
- Substitute image
- Preparing VP msg

◆You cannot set an image to the screens if:

- Image larger than 640 dots wide × 640 dots high
- The file size exceeds 100K bytes (except Stand-by display and Wake-up display)

◆Some images may not appear in the actual sizes, depending on the sizes or where they are set.

◆Some images cannot be set to screens.

<Add image to PB>

◆You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and not larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

◆You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

<Delete this>

◆If you attempt to delete an image that has been set to a screen or original animation or set as a user icon for Schedule, a message appears asking whether to delete the image. If you select “YES” to delete the image, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:

- The screens restore to default.
- Original animation is released.
- The Schedule alarm screen turns to the one to which “” was set.

◆Even if the original image is deleted, the same one attached to a message is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to a message is also deleted.

● Image information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
File classification	The file format The format of Flash movies does not appear.
File size	The file size in K bytes

Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
File restriction	“File restricted”/“File unrestricted”
Transfer for Repair*1	Whether stored data can be backed up at DoCoMo’s repair center when your FOMA terminal is repaired (Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable even if the data cannot be transferred or if any loss or damage occurs to the data). “Permitted” appears for downloaded images/melodies/PDF documents that are allowed to be moved.
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
Source	From where the file was acquired When the image was downloaded from the WLAN Browser, the display is “i-mode”.
Set as display*1	Where the image is set When no image is set, “No set” appears.
DPOF setting*2	
• **Prints**	The specified number of prints When it is not set, “No set” appears. When 100 or higher is specified, “＊＊” appears.
• **Date**	Whether or not the date is specified

*1: The option appears only for images stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*2: The option appears only for images stored on a miniSD memory card (Picture).

Composing a message with an image attached

- If an image cannot be attached, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be attached.

1 Image list screen (p.335)▶ (FUNC)▶“Compose message”▶“Attach image”

■ If the JPEG image is larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, or if the file size exceeds 500K bytes

▶Select any item▶Check the resized image

Attach mail	Attaches an image without changing the size.*
QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and attaches the resized image.*
QVGA trim away	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio, then clips and attaches the center.*

*: If the file size exceeds 500K bytes, it is reduced to 500K bytes or smaller.

2 Compose an i-mode message

Creating and Sending i-mode Mail→p.257

NOTE

- Whether “Attach image” appears depends on the image size.
- “QVGA trim away” cannot change where to be clipped. The center is to be clipped.
- JPEG image from 10,000 bytes to 500K bytes is called Large image. A large image sent to the FOMA terminal is resized at the i-shot Center so that it can be received by i-mode terminals.
- You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
  - There are already 20 draft messages stored
  - Flash movie is to be attached
  - The image is GIF whose size exceeds 10,000 bytes
  - The image is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

Reducing the image size to be attached to a message

- Resize an image so that it can be attached to an i-mode message if the JPEG image is larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high, or if the file size exceeds 500K bytes. You cannot operate this function if the image is not the above.

1 Image list screen (p.335)▶ (FUNC)▶“Size for mail”▶ Select any item

Attach mail	Attaches an image without changing the size.*
QVGA scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and attaches the resized image.*
QVGA trim away	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio, then clips and attaches the center.*

*: If the file size exceeds 500K bytes, it is reduced to 500K bytes or smaller.

2 Check the edited image▶●▶“YES”

NOTE

- The resized image is newly saved to the folder where the original is stored.
- “QVGA trim away” cannot change where to be clipped. The center is to be clipped.
- The following show the title and file name of the saved image:
  - Title: yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm
  - File name: yyyymmddhhmmXXX (XXX: 3-digit number)

Composing a Deco-mail message

- If an image cannot be inserted, the image size or file size is reduced so that the image can be inserted.

1 Image list screen (p.335)▶ (FUNC)▶“Compose message”▶ “Insert image”

■ If the JPEG image is larger than 128 dots wide × 96 dots high or 96 dots wide × 128 dots high, or if the file size exceeds the limit when inserted to a Deco-mail message

▶Select any item▶Check the resized image

Insert mail	Inserts an image without changing the size.*
SubQCIF scale down	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio and inserts the resized image.*
SubQCIF trim away	Reduces the image size without changing the aspect ratio, then clips and inserts the center.*

*: If the file size exceeds the limit when inserted to a Deco-mail message, it is also reduced.

2 Compose a Deco-mail message

Composing and sending a Deco-mail message →p.261

NOTE

◆Whether “Insert image” appears depends on the image size.
◆“SubQCIF trim away” cannot change where to be clipped. The center is to be clipped.
◆You cannot compose a Deco-mail message when:
- There are already 20 draft messages stored
- The image is GIF whose size exceeds 9,000 bytes

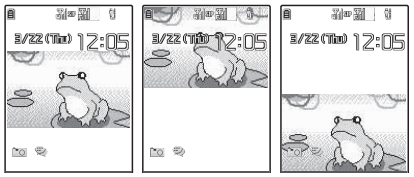
Setting the position when setting an image

Position an image when it is smaller than the image display area.

1 Image list screen (p.335)▶ (FUNC)▶“Positioning”

Select “Center”, “Upper” or “Lower”.

<Example: Standby screen>



Displayed in the center　Displayed at the top　Displayed at the bottom

NOTE

◆The position is effective for the following screens. However, the specified display position may not function for some image sizes.
- Stand-by display
- FOMA dialing
- VoIP dialing
- VoIP call(Pub.)
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Wake-up display
- FOMA calling
- VoIP calling
- VoIP call(Tie)
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving

Setting the area when setting an image

Set the area where an image appears when it is larger than the image display area.

1 Image list screen (p.335)▶ (FUNC)▶“Clipping area”

Select “Center”, “Upper” or “Lower”.

<Example: Calling>



Center part displayed　Upper part displayed　Lower part displayed

NOTE

◆The clipping area is effective for the following screens. However, the specified clipping area may not function for some image sizes.
- Stand-by display
- FOMA dialing
- VoIP dialing
- VoIP call(Pub.)
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Wake-up display
- FOMA calling
- VoIP calling
- VoIP call(Tie)
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving

Making a composite image out of 4 images

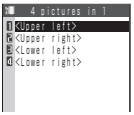
- You cannot set an image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.

1 Image list screen (p.335)▶ (FUNC)▶“Composite image”

2 Select a position▶Select a folder▶ Select an image▶Repeat to select four images in total

■ To cancel a specified image

▶Select an image to cancel▶Select “Release this” on the folder selection screen



3 (Finish)▶●

■ **To retry creating a composite image**

▶ (Cancel)

NOTE

- ◆The created composite image is saved to the folder used to create the image.
- ◆Four images are synthesized without changing the aspect ratio. The original images are not resized.
- ◆Pressing (Play) on the image selection screen allows you to check the selected image, which cannot be viewed in the actual size.

Creating animations

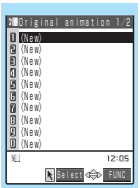
<Original animation>

Use stored images to create an animated cartoon consisting of up to 20 frames.

- You can create up to 20 animations.

1 (MENU)▶Data box▶"My picture"▶"Original animation"

The "Original animation list" screen appears.



Original animation list

Function menu➡p.343

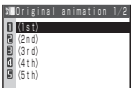
2 "<New>"

3 Select a frame▶Select a folder▶Select an image▶Repeat to select images

■ **To cancel a specified image**

▶Select a frame to cancel

▶Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen



4 (Finish)

NOTE

- ◆Pressing (Play) on the image selection screen allows you to check the selected image.
- ◆Only frames with an image specified are played in order.
- ◆You can specify a JPEG image whose size is 640 dots wide × 640 dots high or smaller.

Function menu (Original animation list screen)

Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted original animation. The name can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.
Org. animation	Newly creates an original animation when "<New>" is highlighted. The created original animation is edited if it is highlighted.
Display image	Plays the highlighted original animation (Displays the original animation playback screen).
Set as display	**▶Select any item** Sets the highlighted original animation to the standby screen, etc.
Image info	Checks the settings of the original animation set as display. When no image is set, "No set" appears.
Release animation	Releases the highlighted original animation.

NOTE

<Set as display>

◆An image can be set to the following screen:

- Stand-by display
- FOMA dialing
- VoIP dialing
- VoIP call(Pub.)
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Wake-up display
- FOMA calling
- VoIP calling
- VoIP call(Tie)
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving

Playing an original animation

1 Original animation list screen (p.343)▶Select an original animation

The "Original animation playback" screen appears.

If there are two or more original animations, use to play the previous or next animation.



Original animation playback

Function menu➡p.343

Function menu (Original animation playback screen)

Set as display	**▶Select any item** Sets the animation being played to the standby screen, etc.
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area (240 dots wide × 270 dots high).
• **Normal** (default)	Displays a movie in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges a movie to the display size.

Continued on next page

Retry	Plays an animation from the beginning.

NOTE

<Set as display>

◆An image can be set to the following screen:

- Stand-by display
- FOMA dialing
- VoIP dialing
- VoIP call(Pub.)
- V.phone dialing
- Mail sending
- Checking
- Wake-up display
- FOMA calling
- VoIP calling
- VoIP call(Tie)
- V.phone calling
- Mail receiving

Copying images stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

Copy images stored in the My picture Inbox folder, Camera folder, Decomail-picture or user-created folders under i-motion to the miniSD memory card.

- Icons on the image list screen show which images can be copied.

<Example: Image list screen for Inbox, Camera, User-created folders>

1 Image list screen (p.335)▶ (FUNC)▶"Copy to miniSD"▶ Select any item

Copy this	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies the selected image.
Copy selected	**▶Select the destination folder▶ Select image▶ (Finish)▶YES** Copies images you select.
Copy all	**▶Enter your security code▶ Select the destination folder▶ "YES"** Copies all images.

NOTE

◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.

◆The following shows the file name after copied:

- File name: NEC_mmmm (mmmm = 0001 to 9999)

◆You cannot copy an image to the miniSD memory card if:

- It is stored at the time of purchase
- It is neither JPEG nor GIF
- It is a still image of Chara-den character with "File restricted"
- It is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal
- There is little space available on the miniSD memory card
- The miniSD memory card is not supported
- An error occurs on the miniSD memory card
- The file size exceeds 1,200K bytes after copied
- The miniSD memory card is being inserted

◆Copying an image to the miniSD memory card may increase the file size.

Copying images stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Copy images stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

- Copied images are saved to the Inbox folder under My picture.

<Example: Image list screen for the miniSD folder (Picture)>

1 Image list screen (p.335)▶ (FUNC)▶"Copy to phone"▶ Select any item

Copy this	Copies the selected image.
Copy selected	**▶Select an image▶ (Finish)▶ "YES"** Copies images you select.
Copy all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all images.

NOTE

◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.

◆You cannot copy Flash movies.

◆You cannot copy an image whose file size exceeds 1,200K bytes.

◆An image cannot be copied if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots or if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high. Also, a progressive JPEG image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 640 dots cannot be copied.

Progressive JPEG image→p.234

◆The name of the copied file is that of the one stored on the miniSD memory card.

<Edit image>

Editing Images

Edit still images you shot or images copied to the phone.

- The following are the editing methods and image sizes:

Method	Size of editable file
Frame • Frames an image.→p.346	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high*1 Up to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high*1
Retouch • Applies special effects such as sepia tone to an image.→p.345	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high Up to 288 dots wide × 352 dots high

Method	Size of editable file
Marker stamp • Pastes a marker stamp such as heart into an image.→p.346	2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high*2 1,728 dots wide × 2,304 dots high*2 2,048 dots wide × 1,536 dots high*2 1,536 dots wide × 2,048 dots high*2 1,616 dots wide × 1,212 dots high*2 1,212 dots wide × 1,616 dots high*2 1,280 dots wide × 960 dots high*2 960 dots wide × 1,280 dots high*2 Up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high*3 Up to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high*3
Character stamp • Pastes a stamp of entered text into an image.→p.346	
Trim away • Clips an image to the desired size.→p.347	
Brightness • Adjusts the image brightness.→p.345	
Rotate • Rotates an image clockwise or counterclockwise by 90 or 180 degrees.→p.345	
Change size • Resizes an image.→p.345	
Correct backlight • Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight.→p.345	Up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high Up to 480 dots wide × 640 dots high
Refresh skin tone • Corrects the skin parts.→p.345	

*1: You cannot frame an image if the size is not 352 × 288, 288 × 352, 240 × 320, 320 × 240, 240 × 345, 345 × 240, 176 × 144, 144 × 176, 128 × 96 or 96 × 128 (dots wide × dots high).
*2: An image will be editable after reduced to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 640 dots high.
*3: Some editing methods may not function due to the image size.

- Editable images→p.337
- When “Edit image” is selected from the image checking function menu, only “Frame”, “Retouch”, “Correct backlight” and “Refresh skin tone” are available.

1 My picture screen (p.336)▶ (FUNC)▶“Edit image”

The Edit image function menu (p.345) appears.

2 Select an editing method

3 Check the edited image▶●

The “Edit image” screen appears. To edit further, press (FUNC) to select a method.



Edit image

Function menu➡p.345

4 ●▶“YES” or “NO”

Selecting “YES” overwrites the original image. Selecting “NO” saves a new image to the folder where the original is stored.

NOTE

◆Editing an image repeatedly may impair the image quality or increase the file size.
◆Some images may hardly reflect the editing effects.

Function menu (Edit image screen)

Frame	“Adding frames”→p.346
Retouch	Applies effects to an image.
• **Sharp**	Sharpens the outline of an image.
• **Blur**	Softens the outline of an image.
• **Sepia**	Makes a sepia-tone image.
• **Emboss**	Impresses an image in relief.
• **Negative**	Makes a negative image.
• **Horizontal flip**	Reverses the left and right of an image (mirroring).
Marker stamp	“Pasting marker stamps”→p.346
Character stamp	“Pasting character stamps”→p.346
Trim away	“Trimming”→p.347
Brightness	**▶Use to adjust the brightness** Selects the brightness among 5 levels from “-2 to ±0 to +2”.
Rotate*1	Rotates an image. Select “90° to right”, “90° to left” or “180°”.
Change size	Resizes an image to the selected size, keeping the aspect ratio. Select “VGA(640 × 480)”, “CIF(352 × 288)”, “QVGA(320 × 240)”, “QCIF(176 × 144)”, “SubQCIF(128 × 96)”, “Stand-by(240 × 320)”, “Screen(240 × 345)”, “VGA Vert.(480 × 640)”, “CIF Vert.(288 × 352)”, “QCIF Vert.(144 × 176)” or “SubQCIF Vert.(96 × 128)”.*2
Correct backlight	Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight.
Refresh skin tone	Corrects the skin parts.
Compose message	“Composing a message with an image attached”→p.341
Save	Saves the edited image.

*1: Rotating may change the aspect ratio.
*2: Dots wide × dots high enclosed in brackets show the image size.

Adding frames

- You can use downloaded frames in addition to frames stored at the time of purchase (p.484).

1 My picture screen (p.336)▶ (FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶“Frame”▶Select a frame

The image appears in the selected frame.
Use ⊖ to try another frame.

■ **To rotate a frame 180°**
▶✉ (Rotate)

■ **To cancel the selected frame**
▶ (FUNC)▶“Cancel”

NOTE

- ◆The orientation of a downloaded frame is portrait or landscape. An image can be framed only if the size of the frame is the same as that of the image.
- ◆If the size of an image that was clipped or resized is the same as that of the frame, the image can be framed. The quality of the resized and framed image may deteriorate.

Pasting marker stamps

- You can use downloaded marker stamps in addition to marker stamps stored at the time of purchase.
- You can rotate or resize marker stamps.

1 My picture screen (p.336)▶ (FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶“Marker stamp”▶Select a marker stamp

■ **To edit a marker stamp**
▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item

90° to right	Rotates 90° clockwise.
90° to left	Rotates 90° counterclockwise.
180°	Rotates 180°.
Scale up	Doubles the size.
Scale down	Halves the size.

2 Position the marker stamp▶●

Use ✣ or Neuropointer to position the marker stamp.

■ **To use another marker stamp**
▶✉ (Add)▶Repeat Steps 1 to 2



NOTE

- ◆You can use downloaded stamps of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller. Stamps of other sizes are regarded as GIF images.
- ◆You can repeatedly resize a marker stamp.
- ◆A marker stamp cannot be larger than an image to edit. You cannot reduce the size of a marker stamp to less than 1 dot.

Pasting character stamps

Default setting	**Character color: Black** **Font: Gothic style** **Font size: Standard size**

- A character stamp can contain up to 1-15 double-byte or 3-30 single-byte characters. The number of characters that can be entered depends on the image size and font size.
- You can change the color, font and size of a character stamp.

1 My picture screen (p.336)▶ (FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶“Character stamp”▶Enter text

■ **To edit a character stamp**
▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item

Character input	**▶Enter text** Reenters text.
Character color	**▶Use ✣ to select a color** Sets the color of a character stamp. To use another color palette, press ✉ (Change).
Font	Selects “Gothic style” or “Pop style” as the font setting.
Font size	Selects “Enlargement size”, “Standard size” or “Reduction size” as the character size.

2 Position the character stamp▶●

Use ✣ or Neuropointer to position the character stamp.



NOTE

- ◆The font thickness is specified in the “Font” setting.

● Trimming

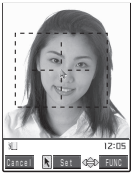
1 My picture screen (p.336)▶ (FUNC)▶“Edit image”▶“Trim away”

Select “CIF(352 × 288)”, “QVGA(320 × 240)”, “QCIF(176 × 144)”, “SubQCIF(128 × 96)”, “Stand-by(240 × 320)”, “Screen(240 × 345)”, “CIF Vert.(288 × 352)”, “QCIF Vert.(144 × 176)”, “SubQCIF Vert.(96 × 128)”, “Background(240 × 270)”, “Menu icon(72 × 52)” or “Chat(80 × 80)”.*

*: Dots wide × dots high enclosed in brackets show the image size.

2 Determine where to clip▶●

Use ◈ or Neuropointer to position the clipping frame.



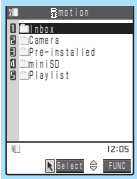
Playing Movies/i-motion

Movies that you have shot or that are stored on the miniSD memory card and i-motion downloaded from an i-mode site or Internet website can be played in i-motion under Data box. Movies of QVGA (320 × 240) or smaller can be rotated and played on the landscape screen.

- To download i-motion to the FOMA terminal →p.248
- Using “Set repeat play”, after starting to play a movie or i-motion, the sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded.→p.351

1 (MENU)▶Data box▶“i-motion”

The “Folder list” screen appears.
The “Secret” folder appears in Secret mode or in Secret data only mode.
Content in the i-motion folder →p.334



Folder list

Function menu➡p.372

2 Select a folder

The “Movie list” screen (Preview) appears.
Movie list screen→p.348

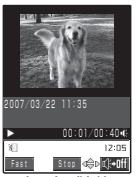


Movie list (Preview)

Function menu➡p.348

3 Select a movie

Press ● to play on the portrait screen, or (Wide) to play on the landscape screen.
The “i-motion” screen appears to play the movie.
Operation during playback →p.350



i-motion (high)

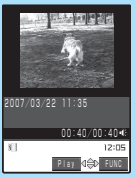
■ If the message “Play continue? YES/NO” appears

- Selecting “YES” plays the movie from the point where it was stopped last time.
- Selecting “NO” plays the movie from the beginning.



i-motion (wide)

When playback ends, the “i-motion stopped” screen appears.



i-motion stopped

Function menu➡p.351

NOTE

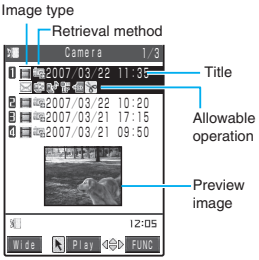
- ◆If you attempt to play a movie or i-motion with sound in manner mode, a message appears asking whether to play it. Selecting “YES” plays it with sound. Selecting “NO” plays it without any sound. If you attempt to play a voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer’s voice) or if the turn of voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer’s voice) comes around during continuous playback or playlist playback, the playback will be canceled or stopped.
- ◆Video or sound in a movie or i-motion may be interrupted if you receive a message, MessageR or MessageF during playback.
- ◆A movie may not be properly played if it was not shot with FOMA N902iL.
- ◆A movie or i-motion can be played from the point where it was stopped last time in the following cases. It may not be played from the exact point.
  - If there is a voice call while an image or movie over 800K bytes saved to the miniSD memory card, CLR or if play was ended by ☎.

Guide to Preview and Title list

- Icons for image types, retrieval methods and allowable operation settings→p.336
- Titles and file names→p.337

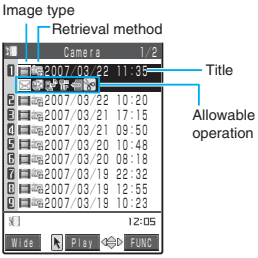
■ Preview

The screen shows four movies listed by title and the preview image of the selected movie appears below the titles. Popup icons show the image type, image retrieval method, and settings that can be specified for the movie. A preview image does not appear for voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer's voice).



■ Title list

Titles of nine movies are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the movie type, movie retrieval method, and settings that can be specified for the movie.



Function menu (Movie list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit i-motion	"Editing Movies"→p.353
Edit title	▶**Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted movie. ■**Inbox, Camera, User-created folders** The name can contain up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters. ■**miniSD folder** The title can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.
Ring tone	Sets the highlighted movie as a ring tone.→p.138
Stand-by display	Sets the highlighted movie to the standby screen.→p.148
i-motion info	"i-motion information"→p.349
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the highlighted movie attached. "Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.257
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.377
Copy to miniSD	"Copying movies stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card"→p.352
Move	
• **Move this**	▶**Select the destination folder**▶**"YES"** Moves the highlighted movie to another folder.
• **Move selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.372
• **Move all**	▶**Select the destination folder**▶**"YES"** Moves all movies stored in the folder to another folder.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.158
Edit file name	▶**Edit a file name** Edits the file name of the highlighted movie. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("-", "_"). Symbols other than "-" or "_" cannot be used.
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the highlighted movie.
• **File unrestricted**	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.

Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted movie.
• **Delete selected**	“Selecting multiple data”→p.372
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Deletes all movies from the folder.
Memory info	Displays the amounts of data stored and available space on the FOMA terminal and on a miniSD memory card. The amount of Secret is not included in the amount on the FOMA terminal.
Sort	Sorts movies by specified criteria.
List setting	Specifies how to list movies.
• **Title**[*1]	Changes to the title list.
• **Title+image**[*1] (default)	Changes to the preview display.
• **Name**[*2*3]	Changes to the title list (or file name list).
• **Name+ image**[*2*3] (default)	Changes to the preview display.
• **Title, File name**[*3]	Switches between File name and Title.
Keep in secret[*4]	“Hiding Various Data”→p.175
Copy to phone[*3]	“Copying movies stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal”→p.353
Copy[*3]	Copies a movie to another folder on the miniSD memory card. Create a destination folder beforehand. →p.372
• **Copy this**	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies the highlighted movie to another folder.
• **Copy selected**	“Selecting multiple data”→p.372
• **Copy all**	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies all movies to another folder.

*1: The option appears only for movies stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
*2: The name is either file name or title.
*3: The option appears when the movie or i-motion is stored on the miniSD memory card.
*4: The option appears in “Secret mode” or in “Secret data only mode”. If it is the Secret folder, “Put out” appears. →p.175

NOTE

<Ring tone>
◆You cannot set a movie or i-motion as a ring tone when:
- The movie or i-motion contains no sound
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- The movie or i-motion contains ticker

◆A movie or i-motion can be set as a ring tone only if the Ring tone setting is “Available”. Refer to the “i-motion info” to check whether it is “Available” or “Unavailable”.
◆If a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) is set as a ring tone, an i-motion image does not appear on the screen.
◆A voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer’s voice) can be set as a ring tone for a PushTalk call, instant message or presence report.

<Stand-by display>
◆You cannot set a movie or i-motion to the standby screen when:
- The movie or i-motion is voice-only or text-only
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- The movie is QVGA (320 × 240)

◆Some movies may not be properly played on the standby screen.
◆You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To/AV Phone To function or SIP To function from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

<Compose message>
◆You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
- There are already 20 draft messages stored
- There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
- It is a movie of Chara-den character with “Rec.File Restriction”
- The i-motion is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal

◆If a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) is to be attached, a message appears asking whether to reduce the size so that it can be attached. If you select to reduce the size, it is reduced to QCIF (176 × 144).

<Sort>
◆“By source” sorts movies in the following order. Movies or i-motion with the same source icon are sorted in the order in which they were shown before you selected “By source”.
①i-motion downloaded or acquired via i-αppli
②Movies shot with the built-in camera
③Movies copied from the miniSD memory card or acquired via Infrared data exchange
④Chara-den movies

● i-motion information

You can check the following:

File name	The file name
Format	The file format
Default title	The original title
Creator	Who created the file If there is no information, “Unknown” appears.
Copyright	Copyright information on the file If there is no information, “Unknown” appears.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/ Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
File size	The file size in K bytes
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
Source	From where the file was acquired When the movie was downloaded from the WLAN Browser, the display is “i-mode”.
Description	The file description If there is no information, “Unknown” appears.

Continued on next page

File restriction	“File restricted”/“File unrestricted”
Replay restriction	
• **If there are count restrictions**	Remaining play count and total play count
• **If there are period restrictions**	Date of play period
• **If there are span restrictions**	“Playable date - Date of play span”
• **If there are no play restrictions**	“Not restricted”
Video	“Included”/“Not included”/“Unplayable” for video
Audio	Audio information “AMR”/“AAC”/“Not included”/“Playable”/“Unplayable (MP4)”/“Unplayable (ASF)”
Text	“Included”/“Not included”/“Unplayable” for text
Ring tone	Whether a ring tone is “Available” or “Unavailable” When the i-motion is set as a ring tone, it is shown where the i-motion is set.
Receive display	Whether a receive display is “Available” or “Unavailable” When the i-motion is set to a receive display, it is shown where the i-motion is set.

Operation during i-motion playback

You can perform the following operations during i-motion playback:



During playback　When tickers are displayed　When adjusting the volume

Control key	Operation
●	Pauses/Resumes playback*4
○ (▲), ○ (▼)	Adjusts volume
○	Plays the previous or next movie or i-motion*1*2
✉	Fast*2*3
i	Mutes (disabled when there is no audio)*3
○ for 1 second or longer	Skips backward*4
○ for 1 second or longer	Skips forward*4
● to pause playback, then ✉	Advances frame (moves forward one frame each time it is pressed)*2*3
● to pause playback, then “Slow” from the function menu	Slow*2*3
CLR	End

*1: You cannot operate these if you play it from the “Data acquisition” screen (p.248).

*2: You cannot operate these for a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is being downloaded and played.

*3: You cannot operate these during playback on the wide (landscape) screen.

*4: The operations may be unavailable for some i-motion.

NOTE

◆The volume for i-motion is set to “Level 10” at the time of purchase. The volume can be selected between “Level 0” and “Level 20”, and the setting is retained next time an i-motion is played.

◆The volume set for i-motion does not affect ring volumes set in “Ring volume”.

◆Seek (skip back/forward) can be operated while a movie is played (including slow playback and fast forward) or while a movie is paused.

◆Sound is muted during seeking (skip backward/forward).

◆Seek (skip backward/forward) is unavailable when:

- A streaming-type i-motion is played
- The i-motion can be played during downloading
- There are no seek points in the i-motion
- The interval between seek points is too long
- A seek point exists only at the beginning of the i-motion
- The i-motion is a voice-only ASF file with no seek data

◆Tickers are not shown during seeking (skip backward/forward) or during frame advance.

Using the Phone To, Mail To, Web To and SIP To Functions

- You can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To or SIP To function (p.238) if:
  - An underlined phone number, mail address, URL or SIP address appears on the screen after playback is ended or stopped
  - A phone number, mail address, URL or SIP address appears on the running ticker then you select “Select link” from the function menu
- If you can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web to or SIP To function, the data can also be saved to the phonebook. When playback ends, select “Add to phonebook” from the function menu.
- Adding information to phonebook “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook”→p.119
  “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook”→p.121



Phone To function



Mail To function



Web To function



SIP To function

Function menu (i-motion stopped (pause) screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the displayed image or selected folder, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Normal play	When playback is paused, the i-motion is replayed from the paused point.
Slow	Plays slow. To return to normal playback, press ✉ or select “Normal play” from the function menu while it is paused.
Fast	Plays fast. To return to normal playback, press ✉ or select “Normal play” from the function menu while it is paused.
Stop	Exits i-motion and returns to the movie list screen.
Position to play	▶○▶**Select a point where playback is to start** Starts playback from the specified point.
Select link	You can use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To or SIP To function (p.238) if a phone number, mail address or URL appears on the running ticker.
Edit i-motion	“Editing Movies”→p.353
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the current i-motion attached. “Creating and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.257
Select ring tone	Sets the current i-motion as a ring tone.→p.138
Stand-by display	Sets the i-motion being played to the standby screen.→p.148
Set repeat play (default: OFF)	Specifies whether to play i-motion continuously in file order in the folder (to play repeatedly on the FOMA terminal). After starting to play a movie or i-motion, the sound can continue to be played with the FOMA terminal folded. Select “ON” (play repeatedly) or “OFF”.
i-motion info	“i-motion information”→p.349
Send Ir data	“Transferring One Data at a Time”→p.377
Copy to miniSD	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies the displayed i-motion.
Copy to phone*	Copies the displayed i-motion.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for Chara-den characters.
• **Normal** (default)	Displays a movie in the actual size.
• **Fit in display**	Enlarges a movie to the display size.

*: The option appears when the movie or i-motion is stored on the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

<Slow>
- ◆An i-motion is muted during slow playback.
- ◆You cannot play slow a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is being downloaded and played.

<Fast>
- ◆An i-motion is muted during fast playback.
- ◆You cannot play fast a streaming-type i-motion or i-motion that is being downloaded and played.

<Position to play>
- ◆You may be unable to select a playback point for some movies or i-motion.

<Select ring tone>
- ◆You cannot set a movie or i-motion as a ring tone when:
  - The movie or i-motion contains no sound
  - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
  - The movie or i-motion contains ticker
- ◆A movie or i-motion can be set as a ring tone only if the Ring tone setting is “Available”. Refer to the “i-motion info” to check whether it is “Available” or “Unavailable”.
- ◆A voice-only i-motion (without video, e.g. a singer’s voice) can be set as a ring tone for a PushTalk call, instant message or presence report.

<Compose message>
- ◆You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
  - There are already 20 draft messages stored
  - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
  - It is a movie of Chara-den character with “Rec.File Restriction”
  - The i-motion is not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal
- ◆If a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) is to be attached, a message appears asking whether to reduce the size so that it can be attached. If you select to reduce the size, it is reduced to QCIF (176 × 144).

<Set as stand-by>
- ◆If a movie or i-motion that was set for the standby screen is deleted, the standby screen is restored to the one set at the time of purchase.
- ◆You cannot set a movie or i-motion to the standby screen when:
  - The movie or i-motion is voice-only or text-only
  - There are playback restrictions on the i-motion
  - The movie is QVGA (320 × 240)
- ◆Some movies may not be properly played on the standby screen.
- ◆You cannot use the Web To, Mail To or Phone To/AV Phone To function or SIP To function from an i-motion set to the standby screen.

<Set repeat play>
- ◆The Set repeat play settings are retained after playing i-motion.
- ◆If Set repeat play is set to “ON”, data that cannot be played are automatically skipped. Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To and SIP To functions are unavailable from i-motion.
- ◆If you attempt to play i-motion whose playback is restricted, a message may appear indicating the restriction, and the repeat play may be stopped.

● Playing movies in your preferred order <Playlist playback>

Select and register up to 10 i-motion or movies, and play them consecutively.

1 Folder list screen (p.347)▶Highlight “Playlist” and press (FUNC)▶“Edit playlist”▶Select No. for the movie or i-motion▶Select a folder▶Select a movie or i-motion▶Repeat steps to add

■ **To release an added movie**
▶Select a movie to release▶Select “Release this” on the folder selection screen▶“YES”



2 (Finish)

The i-motion folder list screen appears.
Selecting the Playlist folder starts playlist playback, and the registered movies are played repeatedly.

NOTE

◆Deleting a movie or i-motion that has been added to a playlist removes the file from the playlist.

Function menu (Playlist folder)

1 Highlight “Playlist” on the i-motion “Folder list” screen (p.347) and press (FUNC)▶ Select any item

Add folder	**▶Enter a title** Adds a folder. The name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	You cannot rename the Playlist folder.
Delete folder	You cannot delete the Playlist folder.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all movies/i-motion from the Inbox, Camera and user-created folders. i-motion stored in the Secret folder or miniSD folder are not deleted.
Edit playlist	Creates a playlist or edits the existing playlist. “Playing movies in your preferred order”→p.352
Release playlist	Releases a playlist.

Copying movies stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card

Copy movies stored in the Inbox folder, Camera folder or user-created folders under i-motion to the miniSD memory card.

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera, user-created folders>

1 Movie list screen (p.347)▶ (FUNC)▶“Copy to miniSD”▶Select any item

Copy starts.
It may take long to copy a large amount of data.
Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process.

Copy this	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies the highlighted movie.
Copy selected	**▶Select the destination folder▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶“YES”** Copies movies you select.
Copy all	**▶Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶“YES”** Copies all movies.

NOTE

◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
◆The following shows the file name after copied:
- File name: MOLxxx (xxx = 001 to FFF: hexadecimal)

◆You cannot copy a movie when:
- It is a movie of Chara-den character with “Rec.File Restriction”
- It is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal
- There is little space available on the miniSD memory card
- The miniSD memory card is not supported
- An error occurs on the miniSD memory card
- The miniSD memory card is being inserted

Copying movies stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

Copy movies stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

- Copied movies are saved to the Inbox folder under i-motion.

<Example: Movie list screen for the miniSD folder>

1 Movie list screen (p.347)▶ (FUNC)▶"Copy to phone"▶ Select any item

Copy starts.
It may take long to copy a large amount of data. Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process.

Copy this	Copies the highlighted movie.
Copy selected	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□)▶ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies movies you select.
Copy all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all movies.

NOTE

- ◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the copy process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- ◆You cannot copy a movie when:
  - It is not MP4
  - It is MP4 but unplayable
  - * You may be unable to copy some movies even when none of the above applies.
- ◆Movies larger than 800K bytes are truncated to the first 800K bytes and then copied. However, a movie of QVGA (320 × 240) whose file size exceeds 800K bytes cannot be truncated, which means that it cannot be copied.

<Edit movie>

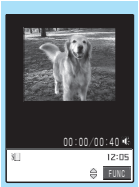
Editing Movies

- You cannot use the multi-task function while editing a movie.
- Editable movies→p.337

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera, user-created folders>

1 Movie list screen (p.347)▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit i-motion"

The "Edit movie" screen appears.



Edit movie

Function menu➡p.353

2 (FUNC)▶Select an editing method→p.353

NOTE

- ◆Editing a movie may impair the movie quality or increase/decrease the file size.
- ◆While checking an edited movie, if you receive a call or fold the FOMA terminal or if the battery runs out, information currently fixed is saved. However, the information is not saved if the memory for movies is full.
- ◆The file size displayed during movie editing is only intended as an approximate guide.

Function menu (Edit movie screen)

Trim i-motion	"Clipping a part of a movie"→p.353
Trim for image	**▶▶Press when you want to clip▶ (Set)▶"Yes"▶Select a folder** Clips the selected frame as a still image.
Rerecord sound	Erases the sound so that new sound can be recorded. "Rerecording sound"→p.354
Edit ticker	"Subtitling movies"→p.354
Trim for mail	"Clipping a movie to be attached to a message"→p.355
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the edited movie attached. "Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.257
File restriction	Sets file restrictions on the edited movie.
• **File unrestricted**	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the melody to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.

NOTE

<Compose message>

- ◆You cannot compose an i-mode message when:
  - The file size of the edited movie exceeds 500K bytes
  - There are already 20 draft messages stored
  - The movie is QVGA (320 × 240)

● Clipping a part of a movie

1 Edit movie screen (p.353)▶ (FUNC)▶"Trim i-motion"▶ (Start)

Clipping starts.

■ **To start clipping from your desired frame**
▶▶Press when you want to start clipping▶ (Start)

2 Press when you want to finish clipping▶ (End)

The clipped section of the movie is played. Playback stops automatically when it ends.

Continued on next page

■ **To check the clipped section again**
▶✉ (Play)

3 ●▶●▶“YES”

NOTE

◆The approximate size of the clipped file appears during movie clipping.
◆A movie of QVGA (320 × 240) cannot be clipped.

● Rerecording sound

Add new sound to a movie.

1 Edit movie screen (p.353)▶ i (FUNC)▶“Rerecord sound”▶ ✉ (Start)

The recording starts.

■ **To start recording from your desired point**
▶●▶Play a movie until you want to start recording▶✉ (Start)

2 Press ✉ (End) to finish recording

Movie playback continues. Press ✉ (Start) and ✉ (End) to record again.

3 Press ● to finish recording

■ **To check the rerecorded movie**
▶✉ (Play)

4 ●▶●▶“YES”

NOTE

◆Rerecording sound onto a movie with subtitles deletes the subtitles.
◆You may be unable to rerecord a movie if it was not shot with the built-in camera.

● Subtitling movies

Default setting	Font color: Black Background color: White Font size: Normal Word alignment: Left Blink/Underline/Scroll: OFF

Add new subtitles (text displayed during playback) to a movie or edit the existing subtitles.

- You can edit up to 5 subtitles per movie. Each subtitle can contain up to 20 double-byte characters.

1 Edit movie screen (p.353)▶ i (FUNC)▶“Edit ticker”▶“New”

2 ✉ (Start)▶Enter subtitles

■ **To show subtitles from your desired point**
▶●▶Press ● when you want to show subtitles▶✉ (Start)

3 Set subtitle effects

Select “Finish setting” when you finish setting.

Font color	**▶Use ✣ to select a color** Sets the text color. To use another color palette, press ✉ (Change).
Background color	**▶Use ✣ to select a color** Sets the background color. To use another color palette, press ✉ (Change).
Font size	Selects “Normal” or “Large” as the font size.
Word alignment	Sets the text position. Select “Left”, “Center” or “Right”. This setting may be unavailable depending on the Scroll setting.
Blink	Specifies whether to flash subtitles.
Underline	Specifies whether to underline subtitles.
Scroll	Sets the scrolling mode.
• **OFF**	Scrolling is unavailable.
• **Scroll in** • **Scroll out** • **Scroll in&out**	**▶Select “Right to left”, “Left to right”, “Bottom to top” or “Top to bottom” as the scrolling direction**
Finish setting	Exits the subtitle effects settings.

4 ●▶Press ● when you want to end ticker▶✉ (End)

Repeat Steps 2 to 4 to add another subtitle.

■ **If the subtitle list appears**
▶✉ (Finish)
Go on to Step 6.

5 Press i (FUNC) when you finish editing▶“Finish editing”

■ **To check a movie with subtitles inserted**
▶✉ (Play)

■ **Editing subtitles**
▶i (Edit)
Editing subtitles→p.355

6 ●▶●▶“YES”

NOTE

◆If you edit subtitles, the edited data cannot be specified as a ring tone.
◆The scrolling speed is set automatically to match the time from the start point to the end point.
◆Subtitle effects unsupported by FOMA N902iL may be deleted or altered.
◆You may be unable to edit subtitles if the movie was not shot with the built-in camera.

Editing registered subtitles

- If you attempt to edit subtitles already added to a movie, a message appears warning you that the subtitle data may be deleted.

1 Edit movie screen (p.353)▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit ticker"▶"YES"▶"Edit"

The Ticker list screen appears.



■ **To check subtitle details**
▶Select a ticker▶Check the details▶CLR

2 (FUNC)▶Select any item

Change text	Edits subtitle text.
Change effect	Changes subtitle effects such as the font color, background color and scroll.
Change start po.	Resets the subtitle start point.
Change end point	Resets the subtitle end point.
Add ticker	**▶"<Available>"▶Add a subtitle**
Delete ticker	Deletes the highlighted subtitle.

3 Press (Finish) when you finish editing

4 ▶▶"YES"

NOTE

◆You cannot edit a subtitle when no subtitles have been added.

Clipping a movie to be attached to a message

- A movie whose size is larger than 290K bytes, which is shot with the built-in camera, can be clipped using this function.

1 Edit movie screen (p.353)▶ (FUNC)▶"Trim for mail"▶Select any item

Mail(L)	Clips a movie larger than 490K bytes to 490K bytes or smaller.
Mail(S)	Clips a movie larger than 290K bytes to 290K bytes or smaller.

2 ▶Press when you want to start clipping▶ (Start)

Clipping starts.
Playback stops automatically when the size becomes the maximum that can be attached to a message.

■ **To check the clipped movie**
▶ (Play)

3 ▶▶"YES"

NOTE

◆A movie with subtitles inserted cannot be clipped with the subtitles remaining.
◆The approximate size of the clipped file appears during movie clipping.
◆"Trim for mail" is unavailable for a movie of QVGA (320 × 240).

<Chara-den>

What is Chara-den?

Chara-den is a function that allows you to send a cartoon character, instead of your image, to the other party's FOMA terminal during a videophone call.
You can check actions available during a videophone call, or use a still image or movie as a character.

Displaying Chara-den characters

Default setting	Set image disp.: Fit in display Substitute image: Dimo

- Downloading Chara-den characters →p.237
- The following are Chara-den characters preinstalled at the time of purchase:


Dimo

© Disney


ビーンズ (Beans)


サンデー (Sunday)

1 (MENU)▶Data box▶"Chara-den"

The "Chara-den list" screen appears.
Guide to the Chara-den list →p.356



Chara-den list

Function menu➡p.357

Continued on next page

2 Select a Chara-den character

The “Chara-den player” screen appears.
Controlling a Chara-den character→p.356



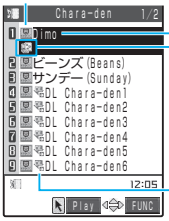
Chara-den player

Function menu➡p.357

Guide to the Chara-den list

- Icons for image types, retrieval methods and allowable operation settings→p.336
- Titles and file names→p.337

Image type (Chara-den)



Title

Allowable operation

Retrieval method

Titles of nine Chara-den characters are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the image (Chara-den) type, Chara-den retrieval method, and settings that can be specified for the Chara-den.

Using Chara-den characters

You can control a Chara-den character by selecting from preinstalled actions.

1 Chara-den player screen (p.356)▶Control a Chara-den character

■ To check the action list

▶✳

Actions shown in the list depend on the character type.
No. such as “1” or “#1” appearing on the right of the action indicates that pressing that key during Chara-den playback will perform the corresponding action.



■ To check the action details

▶Highlight an action▶(Detail)▶Check the details▶(Exit)

■ To change the action mode

▶(Parts) or (Whole)

The mode is Parts action when appears and Whole action when appears.

(Whole):

The whole body of a Chara-den character moves to express feelings.

(Parts):

The parts (head, hands, feet, etc.) of a Chara-den character move.

■ To use keys to select actions during Chara-den playback

Press the following keys to perform character actions:

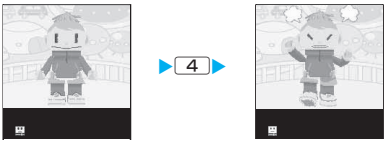
“Whole”:
1-digit number on the right side of the action name (1 to 9) or #1 to #9

“Parts”:
2-digit number on the right side of the action name (11 to 99)

<Example: “怒る” (Angry) in Whole action mode>

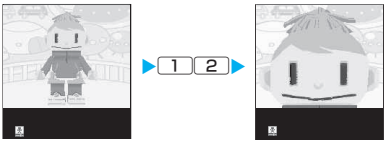
* A Chara-den character is displayed normally (not mirror).

▶(Whole)▶



<Example: “顔アップ” (Face close up) in Parts action mode>

▶(Parts)▶



■ To have a character’s mouth synchronize your voice

Some Chara-den characters can move the mouth synchronizing your voice as if it were talking. If you use the function menu or press one of the keys to make the character perform an action while speaking into the phone, the character performs the selected action rather than moving its mouth.



Function menu (Chara-den list screen)

Chara-den call	**▶Enter a phone number▶ or** Makes a videophone call with the highlighted Chara-den character set as an alternative image. Use to search for a phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
Substitute image	Sets the highlighted Chara-den character as an alternative image for videophone calls.
Rec. Chara-den	"Saving Chara-den character as image or movie"→p.358
Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted Chara-den character. The name can contain up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.
Chara-den info	"Chara-den information"→p.357
Memory info	Displays the amounts of Chara-den data stored and available space.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.158
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted Chara-den character.
• **Delete selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.372
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the Chara-den entries.
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for movies.
• **Normal**	Displays a movie in the actual size.
• **Fit in display** (default)	Enlarges a movie to the display size.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.

NOTE

<Memory info>

◆The displayed size is only an approximation.

<Delete>

◆If you attempt to delete a Chara-den character that has been set as an alternative image for videophone calls, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. If "YES" is selected to delete the character, the preinstalled Chara-den "Dimo" is set as an alternative image. If you have already deleted "Dimo", a preinstalled still image is transmitted as an alternative image.

◆If you attempt to delete a Chara-den character stored in the phonebook, a message appears asking whether to delete the character. If "YES" is selected to delete the character, the one stored in the phonebook is also deleted.

Function menu (Chara-den player screen)

Chara-den call	**▶Enter a phone number▶ or** Makes a videophone call with the displayed Chara-den character set as an alternative image. Use to search for a phone number from Received calls, Redial or Search phonebook.
Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as an alternative image for videophone calls.
Rec. Chara-den	"Saving Chara-den character as image or movie"→p.358
Switch Chara-den	**▶Select a Chara-den character** Changes a Chara-den character to display.
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.158
Action List	Displays the action list.
Change Action	Changes the action mode.→p.356
Chara-den info	Displays information about the displayed Chara-den character.
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for movies.
• **Normal**	Displays a movie in the actual size.
• **Fit in display** (default)	Enlarges a movie to the display size.

● Chara-den information

You can check the following:

Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File restriction	Always "File restricted"
Rec.File Restriction	"File restricted"/"Not restricted"
Display size	The file display size (wide × high in dots)
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired When the Chara-den was downloaded from the WLAN Browser, the display is "i-mode". A blank appears here for a Chara-den character preinstalled at the time of purchase.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Substitute image	Where the alternative image is set When no image is set, "No set" appears.

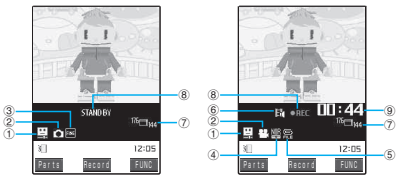
NOTE

◆"Rec.File Restriction" indicates whether or not the restrictions apply when an image or movie shot using Chara-den is edited, copied to the miniSD memory card or attached to a message.

Saving Chara-den character as image or movie

<Rec. Chara-den>

■ Guide to the Rec. Chara-den screen



Recording a still image　　Recording a movie

① Shows the currently selected action mode.
- : Whole
- : Parts

② Shows the shooting mode.
- : Photo mode
- : Movie mode

③ Shows the "Storage setting" (image).
- : Normal
- : Fine
- : Super Fine

④ Shows the "Storage setting" (movie).
- : Normal
- : Prefer img qual
- : Prefer time
- : Prefer motion spd

⑤ Shows the "File size setting".
- : Restricted(Short)
- : Restricted(Long)
- : Local playback

⑥ Shows the "Movie type set".
- : Video + voice
- : Video

⑦ Shows the size selected in "Select size".
- 176×144: QCIF(176 × 144)
- 117×96: Small(117 × 96)

⑧ Shows the shooting status.
- STAND BY: Stand-by
- ●REC: Shooting

⑨ Shows the remaining shooting time in the "min:sec" format (not shown until shooting starts).

● Shooting still images

1 Chara-den player screen (p.356)▶ (FUNC)▶"Rec. Chara-den"

The "Rec. Chara-den" (image) screen appears.



Rec. Chara-den (image)

Function menu➡p.358

2 Perform an action▶●

Performing an action→p.356

■ **To perform a Parts action**

▶ (Parts)

■ **To compose an i-mode message with a still image attached/inserted**

▶ (MAIL)▶Select "Attach image" or "Insert image"

■ **To retake the shot**

▶CLR

3 ●

The still image is saved to the Camera folder under My picture.

NOTE

◆No shooting tone is sounded when:
- "FOMAphone" under Ring volume is set to "Silent"
- The ring volume is set to "Silent" e.g. in manner mode

Function menu (Rec. Chara-den screen)

Switch Chara-den	**▶Select a Chara-den character** Changes a Chara-den character to shoot.
Substitute image	Sets the displayed Chara-den character as an alternative image for videophone calls.
Action List	Displays the action list.
Change Action	Changes the action mode.→p.356
Set image disp.	Sets the display mode for movies.
• **Normal**	Displays a movie in the actual size.
• **Fit in display** (default)	Enlarges a movie to the display size.
Movie mode*1	Switches between Photo mode and Movie mode.
Select size*2	Sets the size of character to shoot.
• **QCIF (176 × 144)** (default)	Shoots a character in 176 dots wide × 144 dots high (QCIF).
• **Small (117 × 96)**	Shoots a character in 117 dots wide × 96 dots high.
Movie type set*3	Sets the movie shooting mode.
• **Video + voice** (default)	Shoots a movie including sound.
• **Video**	Shoots a movie without any sound.

Storage setting*3	Sets the image quality and duration for movie shooting.
• **Normal** (default)	Shoots a movie with the typical quality and duration.
• **Prefer img qual**	Shoots a movie with higher quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
• **Prefer time**	Shoots a long movie. The quality is not as high as for Normal.
• **Prefer motion spd**	Shoots a movie with smoother motion.
Storage setting*2	Sets the quality for image shooting.
File size setting*3	Sets the file size for shooting a movie.
• **Restricted (Short)** (default)	You can shoot up to 290K bytes. Select this option to shoot a typical movie and attach it to an i-mode message.
• **Restricted (Long)**	You can shoot up to 490K bytes. Select this option to shoot a large-sized movie and attach it to an i-mode message.
• **Local playback**	You can shoot up to 800K bytes.

*1: When you are using Movie mode, “Photo mode” appears here. Photo mode is selected at the time of purchase.
*2: The options cannot be set in Movie mode.
*3: The options cannot be set in Photo mode.

NOTE

<Switch Chara-den>
◆Changing the Chara-den character sets the action mode to Whole.

Shooting movies

1 Rec. Chara-den (image) screen (p.358) ▶(i) (FUNC)▶“Movie mode”

The “Rec. Chara-den” (movie) screen appears.



Rec. Chara-den (movie)

Function menu➡p.358

2 ● ▶Perform an action▶●

Performing an action→p.356

■ **To perform a Parts action**
▶✉ (Parts)

■ **To compose an i-mode message with the movie attached**
▶✉ (MAIL)

■ **To check the movie**
▶(i) (FUNC)▶“Check /w playing”

■ **To retake the shot**
▶CLR

3 ●

The movie is saved to the Camera folder under i-motion.

NOTE

◆Only QCIF (176 × 144) can be selected for the size, which cannot be changed.
◆No shooting tone is sounded when:
• “FOMAphone” under Ring volume is set to “Silent”
• The ring volume is set to “Silent” e.g. in manner mode
◆When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is attached, a sound is recorded according to the “Select microphone” setting.
◆Performing an action during shooting may record keypad sounds.

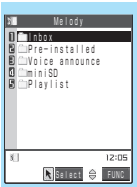
<Melody> MENU16

Playing Melodies

Preinstalled melodies, sound effects or melodies downloaded from sites can be played in the Melody folder under Data box. Melodies stored on the miniSD memory card cannot be played. To play them, copy them to the phone beforehand.

1 (MENU)▶Data box▶“Melody”

The “Folder list” screen appears.



Folder list

Function menu➡p.372

2 Select a folder

The “Melody list” screen appears.
Melody list screen→p.360



Melody list

Function menu➡p.360

3 Select a melody

The “Melody” screen appears to play the melody.
Operation during playback →p.360



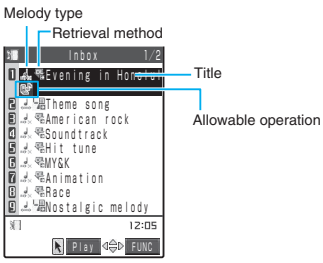
Melody

Function menu➡p.361

NOTE

◆Melodies are played at the volume set in “FOMAphone” under the “Ring volume” settings. They are played at “Level 2” when “Silent” or “Step” is set.

Guide to the melody list



Titles of nine melodies are listed on the screen. Popup icons show the melody type, melody acquisition method, and settings that can be specified for the melody.

Melody type icon

	MFi/SMF*1*2

*1: "" is added to icons for melodies that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal.

*2: A melody may be restricted so that only a designated part of the melody will be played when it is set as a ring tone, etc. The entire melody can be played in "Melody" under Data box. You can also change the file names and titles of those melodies.

Retrieval method icons

No icon	Stored at the time of purchase
	Downloaded from site
	Copied from the miniSD memory card or a PC, acquired via Infrared data exchange or Bar code reader

Allowable operation icon

	Can be attached to an i-mode message (10,000 bytes or smaller)
	Can be set as a ring tone
Ir	Can be transferred via Infrared data exchange
SD	Can be copied to the miniSD memory card

Titles and file names

Original titles are assigned to downloaded melodies.
The title appears on the melody list screen of the FOMA terminal.
The file name appears when the data is transferred to a PC.
If a file name you attempt to create contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to "melodyxxx" (xxx: 3-digit number).
The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.

Operation during melody playback

You can perform the following operations during melody playback:

Control key	Operation
	Plays the previous or next melody
(), (), ()	Adjusts volume*1*2
0 to 9, *, #, , ,	Stops playback
CLR	End

*1: After you adjust the volume, if you press or wait for about 2 seconds, the screen turns to the melody screen.

*2: Adjusting the volume during playback is only a temporary change. When playback ends, the volume is restored to the level specified in "Ring volume".

Function menu (Melody list screen)

The melody list function menu varies depending on the folder containing the melody.

- Melody list function menu for Inbox, miniSD or user-created folders →p.360
- Melody list function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announce →p.361

Melody list function menu for Inbox, user-created or miniSD folders

Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted melody. The title can contain up to 25 double-byte or 50 single-byte characters.
Edit file name*1	**▶Edit a file name** Edits the file name of the highlighted melody. The file name can contain up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("-", "_"). Symbols other than "-" or "_" cannot be used.
Play melody*1	Plays the highlighted melody (Displays the melody screen).
Ring tone*1	Sets the highlighted melody as a ring tone. →p.138
File restriction*1	Sets file restrictions on the highlighted melody.
• **File unrestricted**	Allows the movie to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
• **File restricted**	Does not allow the melody to be sent or forwarded from the FOMA terminal that has received it.
Add desktop icon*1	"Using Desktop Icons" →p.158
Compose message*1	Composes an i-mode message with the highlighted melody attached. "Creating and Sending i-mode Mail" →p.257
Send Ir data*1	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.377
Copy to miniSD*1	
• **Copy this**	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies the highlighted melody.
• **Copy selected**	"Selecting multiple data" →p.372
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Copies all melodies.

Copy to phone*2	Copies a melody stored on the miniSD memory card to the Inbox folder on the FOMA terminal.
• **Copy this**	Copies the highlighted melody.
• **Copy selected**	“Selecting multiple data”→p.372
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Copies all melodies.
Melody info	“Melody information”→p.361
Memory info	Displays the amounts of melody data stored and available space.
Copy*2	Copies a melody to another folder on the miniSD memory card. Create a destination folder beforehand.→p.372
• **Copy this**	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies the highlighted melody to another folder.
• **Copy selected**	“Selecting multiple data”→p.372
• **Copy all**	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies all melodies to another folder.
Reset title	Restores the title to the original.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted melody.
• **Delete selected**	“Selecting multiple data”→p.372
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all melodies from the folder.
Sort*1	Sorts melodies by specified criteria.
Move	
• **Move this**	**▶Select the destination folder▶“YES”** Moves the highlighted melody to another folder.
• **Move selected**	“Selecting multiple data”→p.372
• **Move all**	**▶Select the destination folder▶“YES”** Moves all melodies stored in the folder to another folder.

*1: The option appears only for melodies stored in the Inbox or user-created folder.
*2: The option appears only for melodies stored on the miniSD memory card.

NOTE

<Edit file name>
◆You cannot edit the name of a file-restricted melody but can edit the one transferred via Infrared data exchange or OBEX.

<Compose message>
◆An MFi-formatted melody cannot be attached regardless of the retrieval method or the File restriction setting.
◆You cannot attach a melody whose file size exceeds 10,000 bytes.

<Melody info>
◆You may be unable to attach a melody to a message even if the file is unrestricted.

<Memory info>
◆The displayed size is only an approximation.

<Delete>
◆If you attempt to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the melody. If “YES” is selected to delete the melody, the corresponding ring tone or alarm tone is restored to default.

<Sort>
◆If you exit a sorted melody list, sort is released.
◆“By source” sorts melodies in the following order. Melodies with the same source icon are sorted in the order in which they were shown before you selected “By source”.
①Melody downloaded or acquired via i-αppli
②Melody acquired via Infrared data exchange

■ Melody list function menu for Pre-installed or Voice announce

Play melody	Plays the selected melody.
Ring tone	Sets the selected melody as a ring tone.→p.138

Function menu (Melody screen)

Ring tone	Sets the currently played melody as a ring tone.→p.138
Set repeat play*1	Plays melodies continuously in the folder.
Add desktop icon*2	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Compose message*2	Composes an i-mode message with the currently played melody attached. “Creating and Sending i-mode Mail”→p.257
Copy to miniSD*2	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies a melody to the miniSD memory card.
Melody info*2	“Melody information”→p.361

*1: The option does not appear for the Voice announce folder.
*2: The option does not appear for the Pre-installed or Voice announce folder.

● Melody information

You can check the following:

Default title	The original title
File name	The file name
File size	The file size in K bytes
File restriction	“File restricted”/“File unrestricted”
File classification	Melody file type “MFi” or “SMF”
Transfer for Repair*	Whether or not the file can be moved when an error occurs→p.341
Source	From where the file was acquired When the melody was downloaded from the WLAN Browser, the display “i-mode”.
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)
Vibrator linkage	“ON”/“OFF” of Vibrator linkage

Continued on next page

Illumination linkage	“ON”/“OFF” of Illumination linkage
Ring tone*	Where the ring tone is set When no melody is set, “No set” appears.

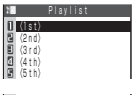
*: The option appears only for melodies stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

Playing melodies in your preferred order <Playlist playback>

Select and register up to 10 melodies, and play them consecutively.

1 Folder list screen (p.359)▶Highlight “Playlist” and press (FUNC)▶“Edit playlist”▶Select No. for the melody▶Select a folder▶Select a melody▶Repeat steps to add

■ **To release an added melody**
▶Select a melody to release▶Select “Release this” on the folder selection screen



2 (Finish)

The melody folder list screen appears. Selecting the Playlist folder starts playlist playback, and the registered melodies are played repeatedly.

NOTE

◆The playlist is released once you change the title and file name of one of the registered melodies or delete data.

Function menu (Playlist folder)

1 Highlight “Playlist” on the melody “Folder list” screen and press (FUNC)▶ Select any item

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name** Adds a folder. The name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	You cannot rename the Playlist folder.
Delete folder	You cannot delete the Playlist folder.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all melody files stored in the Inbox, user-created, Voice announce and Playlist folders.
Edit playlist	Creates a playlist or edits the existing playlist. “Playing melodies in your preferred order”→p.362
Release playlist	Releases a playlist.

miniSD Memory Card

The miniSD memory card can be used as an external memory on the FOMA terminal. In addition, you can insert the miniSD memory card into the miniSD memory card adapter and use it on a PC, etc. that supports an SD memory card. The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.

- N902iL supports up to 2G byte of the miniSD memory card (commercially available) (As of January, 2007). Visit the following website regarding the latest information for operation check such as manufacturer and size of the miniSD memory card. Note that some miniSD memory cards may not run if not announced on the site.
  - i-mode:
    “みんなNらんど” (As of January, 2007)
    Select “iMenu” → “メニュー／検索 (Menu/Search)” → “ケータイ電話メーカー” → “みんなNらんど” (Only in Japanese)
  - PC:
    http://www.n-keitai.com/ (Only in Japanese)

  The provided information is result of the operation check, and full operation is not guaranteed.
- You can copy data such as phonebook entries, messages, bookmarks and still images or movies shot with the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, or copy data stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal. Still images and movies stored on the miniSD memory card can be viewed on the FOMA terminal.
- When you operate or copy data on the miniSD memory card, the incoming call lamp flashes green (the lamp may not flash depending on the function).

Notes

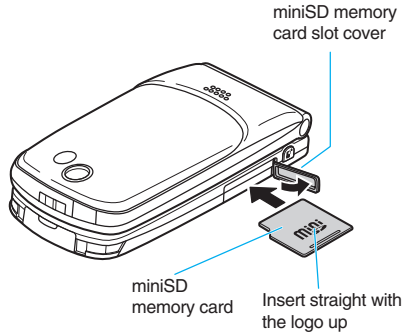
* Format a miniSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. A miniSD memory card formatted on other mobile phones or on a PC may be unusable on the FOMA terminal. →p.370

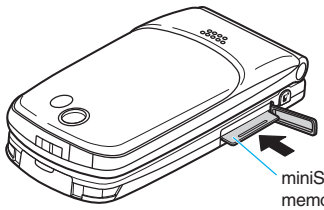
- Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting or removing the miniSD memory card.
- Do not put a label or sticker on the miniSD memory card.

Inserting/Removing the miniSD memory card

Inserting

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before inserting a miniSD memory card.





1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover

2 Insert the miniSD memory card into the miniSD memory card slot and push it in until it locks into place

Insert the miniSD memory card straight and slowly with the printed side upwards.
Fully inserting locks the card into place.

3 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover

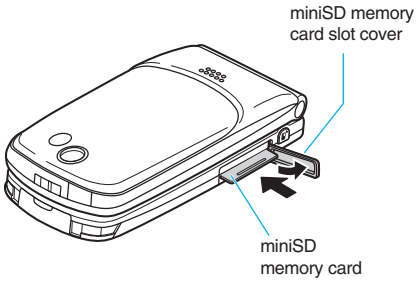
After you insert the miniSD memory card then turn on the FOMA terminal, " SD " appears on the screen.

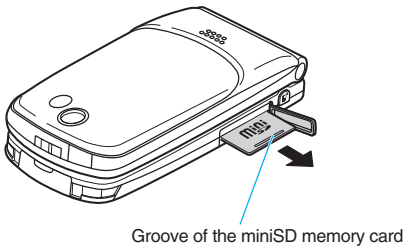
NOTE

◆If an error occurs on the miniSD memory card or if it is incorrectly formatted, " SD " appears on the screen.

Removing

Ensure that the FOMA terminal is turned off before removing the miniSD memory card.





1 Open the miniSD memory card slot cover

2 Gently push the miniSD memory card inwards

When you push the miniSD memory card in then release it, the card pops out slightly.
Note that the card may fly out of the slot.

3 Slowly pull the miniSD memory card out of the slot

Grip the groove in the edge of the miniSD memory card and slowly pull the card out.

4 Close the miniSD memory card slot cover

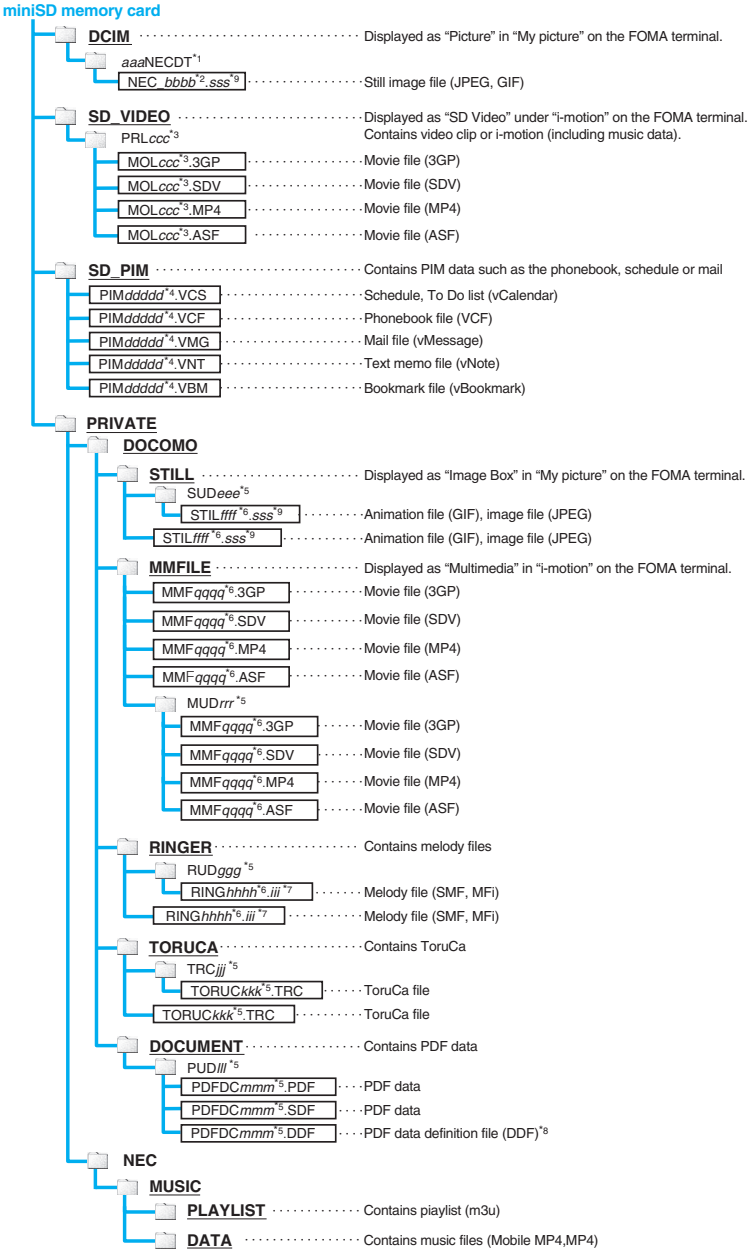
NOTE

◆Do not insert or remove a miniSD memory card while the FOMA terminal is turned on. Doing so may damage the miniSD memory card or destroy data on the card.
◆The miniSD memory card could spring out of the FOMA terminal during insertion or removal.
◆After removing the miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal, keep the card in the protective case that came with the product. Storing the miniSD memory card in another case may cause the miniSD memory card to become unusable.
◆Check that the miniSD memory card is facing in the right direction, and hold it straight as you insert it into the FOMA terminal (Inserting the miniSD memory card at an angle may damage the card).
◆It may take long to select or display data stored on the miniSD memory card.

Folder tree on the miniSD memory card

If data are copied from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, the folders shown below will be created and the data will be saved to the corresponding folder. Under the folders, files and subfolders are automatically named as shown below.

- When copying data from a PC or another device to the miniSD memory card, create and name the folders and files as shown below:



*1: "*aaa*" is a 3-digit number between 100 and 999. "NECDT" can be changed to any alphanumeric characters.
*2: "*bbbb*" is a 4-digit number between 0001 and 9999. "NEC_" can be changed to any alphanumeric characters.
*3: "*ccc*" is a hexadecimal number between 001 and FFF, using 0 to 9 and A to F.
*4: "*ddddd*" is a 5-digit number between 00001 and 65535.
*5: "*eee*", "*ggg*", "*jjj*", "*kkk*", "*lll*", "*mmm*" and "*rrr*" are all 3-digit numbers between 001 and 999.
*6: "*ffff*", "*hhhh*" and "*qqqq*" are all 4-digit numbers between 0001 and 9999.
*7: "*iii*" is a file extension, MLD or MID.
*8: The folder appears only if it is viewed on a PC, etc.
*9: "*sss*" is a file extension, JPG or GIF.

NOTE

- The SD_PIM folder does not appear until you copy PIM data such as the phonebook.
- If two or more data are copied to the SD_PIM folder, "yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm" (year/month/day hour:minute) is automatically added to the title names.
- On some PCs, folder names and file names may appear in lower case.
- A file edited on a PC then saved to a miniSD memory card may not be displayed or played correctly on FOMA N902iL if you name the file using different characters from the folder/file names shown on p.364.
- If the miniSD memory card is formatted and SDVIDEO.DAT, MMFILE.DAT or DCIM.DAT is deleted, the settings of the destination folder are canceled. To reset the settings, activate "Select to save" (pp.201, 207). Turning off the FOMA terminal or inserting/removing the miniSD memory card does not cancel the settings.
- Do not use a PC to delete or move folders stored on the miniSD memory card. Doing so may prevent FOMA N902iL from reading the miniSD memory card.
- FOMA N902iL cannot recognize data that are stored on a miniSD memory card but are unsupported by FOMA N902iL.
- The FOMA terminal may be unable to display or play a data that was copied from another device to a miniSD memory card. Also, another device may be unable to display or play a data that was copied from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card.
- Before purchasing the miniSD memory card reader/writer or PC card adapter, ask the manufacturer of the miniSD memory card if it is available for your FOMA terminal.
- A miniSD memory card formatted on a device other than FOMA N902iL may not function correctly.

Number of files storable on a miniSD memory card

The number of files storable on the miniSD memory card varies depending on the memory capacity of the miniSD memory card. The following table shows the maximum number of folders that can be created and the maximum number of files that can be saved to each folder. If a folder is added to change the copy destination, more files can be stored on the miniSD memory card. Note that the maximum number of files storable may vary depending on the file sizes.

Folder	Max. number of folders	Max. number of files storable in each folder
DCIM	900	9,999
SD_VIDEO	4,095	4,095
SD_PIM	1	65,535
STILL	999	9,999
MMFILE	999	9,999
DOCUMENT	999	999
RINGER	999	9,999
TORUCA	999	999
MUSIC	None	1,000

Use the "Categories function menu" (p.367) to check the memory capacity and available capacity of the miniSD memory card. The displayed memory capacity will be lower than the one described on the miniSD memory card.

- If there is insufficient space left on the miniSD memory card and you attempt to copy phonebook entries, own number, schedule entries, To Do list entries, text memo, messages or bookmarks, a message appears indicating that the data cannot be copied due to lack of space. In cases of images, movies and i-motion, "Copy to miniSD" on the function menu is grayed out. In this case, insert another miniSD memory card or delete any unnecessary data from the card, then retry to copy the data.
- Music data cannot be copied from the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card (MUSIC folder).
- When the number of files in the folder to which a file is to be copied has already reached the limit then you attempt to copy:
  - Data to other than the SD-PIM folder, a new folder is automatically created and the file will be saved to the folder except if a still image shot with the built-in camera is directly saved to the miniSD memory card.
  - Data to the SD-PIM folder, a message appears indicating that the folder is full of data, and the file cannot be copied to the miniSD memory card.
- When the miniSD memory card is full, you cannot add another folder for images, movies or i-motion, edit titles or copy/move files. Delete any unnecessary data and retry.

Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card

The following table shows data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card:

Data type	Details
Still image	JPEG and GIF data stored in Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture, miniSD and user-created folders
Movie	MP4 data stored in Inbox, Camera, miniSD and user-created folders
Phonebook	Name, Reading, Phone number, SIP address, Mail address, URL (i-mode), URL (WLAN browser), Memo, Address, Birthday, Image, Memory number*1, Secret store*2, Group number*3, Group name*3, PushTalk phone number*3, PushTalk group number*3, PushTalk group name*3, Presence information*3
Schedule	Date(from), Date(to), Summary, Contents, Secret store*2, Category*4, Alarm, Repeat
To Do list	Contents, Category*5, Completion date, Period, Change status, Priority, Alarm
Text memo	Make date, Last modify date, Category, Contents
Received mail*6, Sent mail*6, Draft mail, SMS	Unread/Read, Message type, Saved in, Sender, Receiver, Title, Receive/ Send date, Message, Attach
Bookmark*6*7	URL, Title
PDF data	PDF documents stored in Inbox, miniSD and user-created folders
Melody	MFi/SMF melodies stored in Inbox, miniSD and user-created folders
ToruCa	ToruCa stored in ToruCa, miniSD and user-created folders

*1: Data cannot be copied by “Copy & add this”.
*2: Secret store shows if it is stored as a secret data.
*3: Data can be copied by “Copy all”.
*4: Category is the icon information setting that was set in Schedule.
*5: Category is set in To Do list.
*6: Folder names remain unchanged after you copy all of received messages, sent messages and bookmarks to a miniSD memory card.
*7: An i-mode bookmark copied from the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal is saved to the “Bookmark” folder under “i-mode menu”. A WLAN browser bookmark is saved to the “Bookmark” folder under “WLAN Browser menu”. A full browser bookmark is saved to the “Bookmark” folder under “Internet(Full Browser)”.

NOTE

◆If a schedule with a user icon set is copied, the “Category” information is not transferred.
◆A data cannot be copied if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal. However, a “File restricted” data on the FOMA terminal can be copied.

Copying Data Stored on the FOMA Terminal to the miniSD Memory Card

Copy one or more data stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card.
“Copy this”, “Copy selected” and “Copy all” are the methods to copy data stored on the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.→p.362
- To copy a still image or movie, see p.344 and 352.

■ To copy one data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select “Copy to miniSD” then “Copy this” from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy, or “Copy to miniSD” from the function menu on the detail screen of the data you want to copy.

■ To copy multiple data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select “Copy to miniSD” then “Copy selected” from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy.

■ To copy all data stored in a folder on the FOMA terminal (Received mail, Sent mail, Bookmark)

Select “Copy to miniSD” then “Copy all” from the function menu on the list screen of the data you want to copy.

■ To copy all data stored on the FOMA terminal

Select “Copy from phone” from the function menu on the Categories screen.→p.367
You can also copy all data in the following methods:

- Phonebook, Schedule, To Do list, Draft mail, Text memo
  Select “Copy to miniSD” then “Copy all” from the function menu on the list or detail screen of the data you want to copy.
- Received mail, Sent mail, Bookmark
  Select “Copy all to miniSD” from the function menu on the folder list screen.

NOTE

◆If you copy a message that includes the i-αppli activation settings, the settings are deleted from the message.

◆If you copy a secret data (phonebook, schedule), the secret is released.
◆If all data are copied to the miniSD memory card, secret data (phonebook, schedule) are also copied, except data stored in the Secret folder.
◆If all phonebook data are copied, “Own number” contents are also copied. All PushTalk phonebook data are also copied.
◆If one phonebook data is copied, PushTalk phonebook data are not copied.
◆“Copy all” cannot be selected from the phonebook detail screen or message detail screen.
◆Copying messages may delete some types of files attached.
◆While copying SD-PIM data such as the phonebook, the FOMA terminal is effectively out of range. You cannot make/receive a call, use i-mode or use data communication.
◆If you copy one entry in “Own number” but do not “Display all data”, the name, reading, own number and the first stored mail address are saved as phonebook. If you “Display all data” to copy one data, all the stored data are saved as a phonebook entry.
◆Receiving a call, message or alarm notification cancels copying still images or movies to the miniSD memory card.
◆You may be unable to copy depending on the data size of ToruCa downloaded from a site or acquired via i-αppli.
◆When the specified destination folder is full, a new folder is automatically created and data are saved to the new folder.

<SD-PIM>

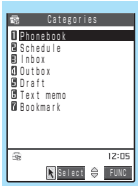
Previewing Data Stored on the miniSD Memory Card

Display and check data stored on the miniSD memory card.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.→p.362
- While running SD-PIM or displaying the data details, you cannot activate another function.
- Previewing images and playing movies →pp.335, 347

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶“SD-PIM”

The “Categories” screen appears.



Categories
Function menu➡p.367

2 Select any item

The “File list” screen appears.



File list
Function menu➡p.368

3 Select a file

The “Data list” screen appears.



Data list
Function menu➡p.368

4 Select a data

The “Data detail” screen appears.



Data detail
Function menu➡p.368

NOTE

◆A Deco-mail message appears without decoration.
◆“ ” appears for a bookmark added on the i-mode browser screen. “ ” appears for a bookmark added on the WLAN Browser screen. “ ” appears for a bookmark added on the Full Browser screen.

Function menu (Categories screen)

miniSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.→p.370
Copy from phone*	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Copies all data stored in the highlighted item to the miniSD memory card.
miniSD format	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Formats the miniSD memory card.
Check miniSD	Checks the miniSD memory card. Checking the miniSD memory card may fix problems.

*: If “Schedule” is selected, you can select “Schedule”, “To Do list” or “All”. If “Bookmark” is selected, you can select “i-mode brw.”, “WLAN brw.”, “Full brw.” or “All”.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Check miniSD>

- Do not remove the miniSD memory card during Check miniSD. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
- You cannot check unformatted or incompatible miniSD memory cards.
- The incoming call lamp flashes green during Check miniSD.
- If you press (Quit) or or receive a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call, the Check miniSD is stopped and "" appears.
- If the Check miniSD is interrupted, some data may remain to be recovered. Check miniSD again.
- It may take long to check the miniSD memory card depending on the amount of data.
- Some data may not be recovered depending on the miniSD memory card.
- If Check miniSD is performed, the titles of data stored on the miniSD memory card are renamed to the file names.
  Titles and file names→p.337

Function menu (File list screen)

- Copy & overwrite (Copy & OW this/Copy & OW select/Copy & OW all) overwrites data stored on the FOMA terminal with data stored on the miniSD memory card.
  Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.

Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Edits the title of the highlighted file. The title can contain up to 15 double-byte or 31 single-byte characters.
Copy & add	Copies data to the FOMA terminal.
• **Copy & add this**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data in the highlighted file.
• **Copy & add select**	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□) ▶ (Finish)▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data in the selected files.
• **Copy & add all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data in all files.
Copy & overwrite[*1]	Overwrites data on the FOMA terminal.
• **Copy & OW this**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES" ▶"YES"**[*3] Overwrites all data in the highlighted file.
• **Copy & OW select**	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□) ▶ (Finish)▶Enter your security code▶"YES"▶"YES"**[*3] Overwrites all data in the selected files.
• **Copy & OW all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES" ▶"YES"**[*3] Overwrites all data in all files.
Copy from phone[*2]	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data stored in the selected item from the FOMA terminal.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the highlighted file.
• **Delete selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.372
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all files stored in the selected item.
miniSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.

*1: In case of Schedule, To Do list data are also to be overwritten (If only either data are stored, only the stored data are to be overwritten).
*2: If "Schedule" is selected, you can select "Schedule", "To Do list" or "All". If "Bookmark" is selected, you can select "i-mode brw.", "WLAN brw.", "Full brw." or "All".
*3: In case of phonebook, if only one file is to be copied, a screen appears asking whether to set the first data as your own data.

NOTE

<Delete this> <Delete selected> <Delete all>

- If a file to delete is read-only, a message appears asking whether to delete the file.

Function menu (Data list/detail screen)

- Copy & OW all overwrites data stored on the FOMA terminal with data stored on the miniSD memory card.
  Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.

Copy & add this	Copies the highlighted or displayed data to the FOMA terminal.
Copy & add all[*1]	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all data stored in a file to the FOMA terminal.

Copy & OW all[*1]	■**Phonebook** ▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** ▶**"YES"**▶**"YES" or "NO"** ■**Schedule**[*2]**, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, Text memo, Bookmark** ▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** ▶**"YES"** Copies all data stored in a file to the FOMA terminal.
miniSD info	Displays the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.

*1: Only the data list screen appears.
*2: To Do list data are also to be overwritten (If only either data are stored, only the stored data are to be overwritten).

Copying Data Stored on the miniSD Memory Card to the FOMA Terminal

Copy, add or overwrite data stored on the miniSD memory card to the FOMA terminal.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.→p.362

Copying to the FOMA terminal

■ **To add all data stored in a file**
"Copy & add" - "Copy & add this" from the "File list function menu"→p.368
"Copy & add all" from the "Data list function menu"→p.368

■ **To add all data stored in the selected files**
"Copy & add" - "Copy & add select" from the "File list function menu"→p.368

■ **To add all data stored in all files**
"Copy & add" - "Copy & add all" from the "File list function menu"→p.368

■ **To add one selected data**
"Copy & add this" from the "Data list/detail function menu"→p.368

Overwriting to the FOMA terminal

■ **To overwrite all data stored in a file**
"Copy & overwrite" - "Copy & OW this" from the "File list function menu"→p.368
"Copy & OW all" from the "Data list function menu"→p.369

■ **To overwrite all data stored in the selected files**
"Copy & overwrite" - "Copy & OW select" from the "File list function menu"→p.368

■ **To overwrite all data stored in all files**
"Copy & overwrite" - "Copy & OW all" from the "File list function menu"→p.368

NOTE

◆When copying a large image that is attached to a received or sent message, it is saved to the Data box and linked to the corresponding message. If there is no space available in the Data box to store data, the attached file is deleted when the message is saved.
◆When copying a movie that is attached to a received or sent message, it is saved to the Data box and linked to the corresponding message. If there is no space available in the Data box to store data, the attached file is deleted when the message is saved.
◆You cannot copy phonebook data while "Restrict dialing" is set.
◆It may take long to read or write data on the miniSD memory card if there are many files stored.
◆If the memory of the FOMA terminal becomes full of data during the copy process, the copy is interrupted. Already copied data are saved.
◆While copying SD-PIM data such as the phonebook, the FOMA terminal is effectively out of range. You cannot make/receive a call, use i-mode or use data communication.
◆If you receive a call, message or alarm notification while copying an image, the copy continues. If you receive a call, message or alarm notification while copying a movie, the copy is interrupted.

<To use the file list function menu to copy>
◆If Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add select/Copy & add all) or Copy & overwrite (Copy & OW this/Copy & OW select/Copy & OW all) is selected for phonebook data, PushTalk phonebook are also copied. However, the group list is not registered when "Copy & add" is selected.
◆If Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add select/Copy & add all) is selected but group names on the miniSD memory card and on the FOMA terminal are different, the data is saved to Group 00 in the phonebook.
◆Copy & add (Copy & add this/Copy & add select/Copy & add all) cannot copy:
- A schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
- A bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one

<To use the data list/detail function menu to copy>
◆If Copy & add all or Copy & OW all is selected for phonebook data, PushTalk phonebook are also copied. However, the group list is not registered when "Copy & add all" is selected.
◆If Copy & add all is selected but group names on the miniSD memory card and on the FOMA terminal are different, the data is saved to Group 00 in the phonebook.
◆Copy & add this and Copy & add all cannot copy:
- A schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
- A bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one

◆If one phonebook data is copied, PushTalk phonebook data are not copied.
◆When the Outbox is full, copying one sent message overwrites the oldest unprotected message.

Continued on next page

◆When the Inbox is full, copying one received message overwrites the oldest unprotected read message.

Managing the miniSD Memory Card

Format the miniSD memory card or check how data are used.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.→p.362

Formatting the miniSD memory card

* Format a miniSD memory card on the FOMA terminal. A miniSD memory card formatted on other mobile phones or on a PC may be unusable on the FOMA terminal.

Format the miniSD memory card so that it can be used on the FOMA terminal.

- Formatting the miniSD memory card deletes all data stored on the card. Before formatting the card, make sure that the stored data are not important to you.

1 Categories screen (p.367)▶ (FUNC)▶“miniSD format”▶ Enter your security code▶“YES”

NOTE

◆Do not remove the miniSD memory card during the format process. Doing so may cause the FOMA terminal and miniSD memory card to malfunction.
◆Data saved to the miniSD memory card are not guaranteed if the format was interrupted.
◆The incoming call lamp flashes green during the format process.
◆If you press (Quit) or or receive a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call, the format is stopped and “ ” appears. Format the card again.

Checking how the miniSD memory card is used

Check the amounts of available space and data stored on the miniSD memory card.
Number of files storable on the miniSD memory card→p.365

1 Categories screen (p.367)▶ (FUNC)▶“miniSD info”

Using the FOMA Terminal as miniSD Reader/Writer

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the miniSD memory card inserted, and you can read/write data stored on the miniSD memory card.

- The miniSD memory card is optional for use in this terminal. If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.→p.362
- To use the FOMA terminal as miniSD reader/writer, you need the following:

Item	Description
Cable	FOMA USB Cable (optional)
PC	PC with USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1 based) supporting FOMA USB Cable (optional)
Operating System	Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese editions)

1 USB mode setting screen (p.371)▶“miniSD mode”

If “miniSD mode” is set, “ ” appears.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal and a PC via the FOMA USB Cable

“ ” will appear when miniSD mode is set, a miniSD memory card is inserted and the FOMA USB Cable is connected.
The miniSD memory card appears in the My Computer window on a PC as storage memory (external storage device).
To remove the FOMA USB Cable, follow the Windows safe removal procedure.

NOTE

◆You cannot change the USB mode setting or access the miniSD memory card from the FOMA terminal while data is being transferred between a PC and the miniSD memory card. You cannot access the miniSD memory card from a PC while data is being transferred between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card.

Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and a PC are properly connected. An improper connection may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss.
- Attempting to transfer data with the FOMA terminal's battery low or empty may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Make sure that the FOMA terminal's battery is fully charged. Also check the PC's power.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable while the incoming call lamp is flashing to indicate that data is being exchanged between a PC and the FOMA terminal. Doing so may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss.

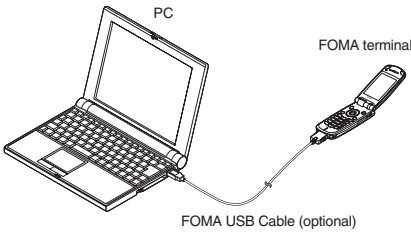
Setting USB mode

<USB mode setting> Default setting: Communication mode

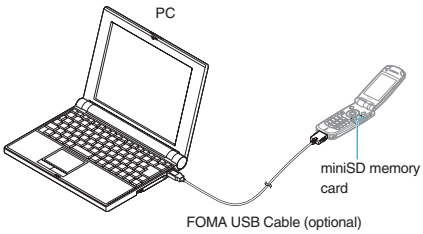
Set USB mode to use various functions by connecting the FOMA terminal to your PC or printer.

- USB mode is categorized into "Communication mode", "miniSD mode" and "Print mode".

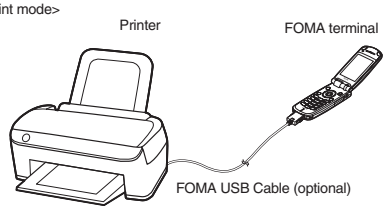
<Communication mode>



<miniSD mode>



<Print mode>



1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "External connection" ▶ "USB mode setting"

The "USB mode setting" screen appears.



USB mode setting

2 Select any item

Communication mode	Uses the external connector for packet communication, 64K data communication and data exchange via cable connection. • "": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected/The FOMA USB Cable is connected but data are not ready to be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a PC • "": The FOMA USB Cable (optional) is connected and data are ready to be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and a PC
miniSD mode	Uses the external connector as a miniSD memory card reader/writer. • "": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected • "": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected (You cannot transfer data between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card, display data in memory or format the miniSD memory card)
Print mode	Uses the external connector for PictBridge print. • "": The FOMA USB Cable is not connected/The FOMA USB Cable is connected but data are not ready to be printed • "": The FOMA USB Cable is connected and data are ready to be printed

NOTE

◆Communication mode is set when you remove/insert the battery pack.

Working with Folders and Files

Add folders to the folder/miniSD folder list screens of My picture, i-motion, Melody and My document for organizing the files.

Creating, editing and deleting folders

Function menu (Folder list screen)

- Function menu appearing when highlighting the Playlist folder under i-motion or Melody →pp.352, 362

Add folder	**▶Enter a folder name** Adds a folder. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Edit folder name	**▶Edit a folder name** Edits the name of the added folder. The name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** You can delete a folder containing data.
Delete*	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all data you have stored. However, data stored in the Secret folder are not deleted.

*: "Delete all image" appears for My picture, and "Delete all" for i-motion and Melody.

NOTE

<Edit folder name>

◆You can rename only user-created folders.

<Delete folder/Delete all image/Delete all>

◆You can delete only user-created folders.

◆If you attempt to use "Delete folder", "Delete all image" and "Delete all" to delete an image or movie that has been set to a screen, an original animation or a user icon for Schedule, or if you attempt to use "Delete folder" or "Delete all" to delete a melody that has been set as a ring tone or alarm or set to a playlist or random melody, a message appears asking whether to delete the item. If you select "YES" to delete the image, the corresponding feature (screen, etc.) changes as follows:

- The screens, ring tones or alarms restore to default.
- Original animation and playlist are released.
- The Schedule alarm notification screen is replaced with the one to which "" was specified.

◆Even if the original image is deleted by "Delete folder" or "Delete all image", the same one attached to a message is not deleted. However, if the image is large, the one attached to a message is also deleted.

◆If the original movie is deleted by "Delete folder" or "Delete all", the same one attached to a message is also deleted.

Function menu (miniSD folder list screen)

For ToruCa, see "ToruCa folder list function menu" (p.321), and for Bookmark, see "Bookmark folder list function menu".

Edit folder name*1	**▶Edit a title** Edits a folder title. The name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.*2
Create folder*1	**▶Enter a title** Creates a folder. The folder name can contain up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.*2
Delete folder	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes the highlighted folder.
DPOF Print*1*3	"Printing Stored Images"→p.385

*1: The options do not appear for "Image Box".

*2: The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters for "Melody" and the Movable contents folder under "i-motion".

*3: The option does not appear for "i-motion", "Melody" or "My document".

NOTE

<Create folder>

◆You cannot create a folder in the "Image Box" on the FOMA terminal but on your PC.

<Delete folder>

◆A message appears asking whether to delete a folder if the folder:

- Is read-only on a PC, etc.
- Contains a file

Selecting multiple data

Delete multiple images, movies or other data types at the same time, or move them to another folder within the item.

1 Image list (Picture list) function menu, etc.

■ **To delete**

▶"Delete"▶"Delete selected"

■ **To move**

▶"Move"▶"Move selected"▶Select the destination folder

■ **To copy**

▶"Copy to miniSD" ("Copy to phone"/"Copy")▶"Copy selected"▶Select the destination folder (When "Copy to phone" appears, a folder is not to be selected).
The multi-selection screen appears.

2 Use ⊛ to select an image▶● ▶ ✉ (Finish)▶“YES”

If it is the title list, use ⊛ to select a checkbox (□), and press ●.



Multi-selection

Function menu➡p.373

Function menu (Multi-selection screen)

Select all	Selects all images and movies.
Release all	Deselects all the selected images and movies.
Title name, Picture*	Switches between Picture and Title name.

*: The option appears only when the folder is “My picture”.

When there is insufficient memory or when there are too many items stored

When you attempt to save still images or movies or download an image, melody, i-motion or Chara-den character from a site, if there is insufficient memory capacity or if the space available for storing data is already full, a message appears asking whether to delete some unnecessary data to save new data.

1 Select “YES” on the message

■ To cancel saving the data

▶“NO”

2 Select a folder▶Select data to be deleted

Selecting multiple data→pp.37, 372

3 ✉ (Finish)▶“YES”

✉ (Finish) does not appear until enough memory is allocated for data.

NOTE

◆When you attempt to delete an image or movie that has been set to a screen or a melody that has been set as a ring tone, a message appears asking whether to delete the file. If “YES” is selected to delete the file, the corresponding screen or ring tone is restored to default.

<Forwarding image>

Preventing Phonebook Image Forwarding

Default setting ON

Prevent still images stored in the phonebook from being sent when copying phonebook data to the miniSD memory card or transferring phonebook data via Infrared data exchange or data exchange (OBEX).

1 MENU▶ LifeKit▶“Forwarding image”▶“OFF”

■ To transfer

▶“ON”

<Infrared data exchange/OBEX>

Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/Cable Connection

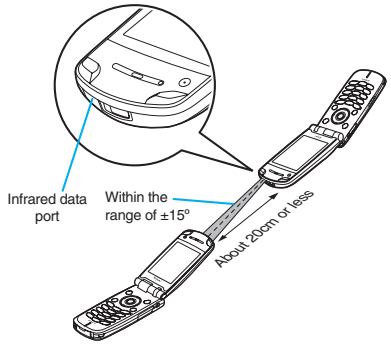
The Infrared data exchange or cable connection allows the FOMA terminal to exchange data such as phonebook entries and received messages with another FOMA terminal or a PC.

- The Infrared data exchange with another FOMA terminal or a PC supporting the feature allows you to transfer one data at a time or multiple data at the same time. "" appears during Infrared data exchange.
- Connect the FOMA terminal and a PC via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and you can receive one data at a time from the PC via OBEX (protocol for data communication), or exchange multiple data at the same time between the FOMA terminal and the PC. "" appears while a cable is connected.
- You can transfer the following:
  - Received mail
  - Sent mail
  - Draft mail
  - i-mode bookmark
  - Full browser bookmark
  - WLAN browser bookmark
  - Phonebook
  - PDF data*1
  - ToruCa*1
  - Own number data
  - To Do list
  - Holiday/Anniversary*2
  - Text memo
  - Schedule
  - Image*1
  - Movie (i-motion)*1
  - Melody*1

*1: You cannot send all data via Infrared data exchange.

*2: Data can only be transferred via cable connection.

Transferring data via Infrared data exchange



- Set the receiving FOMA terminal to standby first, and bring each Infrared data port on the sending and receiving FOMA terminals close to 20 cm or less.
- Place the FOMA terminals on a stable surface, such as a table, so that the Infrared data ports are aligned on the same level and facing each other.
- Do not move the FOMA terminals during data exchange.
- Do not place anything between the FOMA terminals or cover the Infrared data ports.
- If data exchange is finished unsuccessfully, adjust the positions then retry the exchange.
- The FOMA terminals may not communicate successfully if they are placed under direct sunlight, directly under a fluorescent light, or close to other infrared equipment.

Transferring data via cable connection

- To transfer data, you need the software such as DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.435) or FOMA N902iL Data Link Software (p.499).
- Before transferring data, set "USB mode setting" to "Communication mode". →p.371

Important

- Ensure that the FOMA terminal and a PC are properly connected. An improper connection may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Install the N902iL communication setting file (driver). →p.434
- Attempting to transfer data with the FOMA terminal's battery low or empty may not only prevent data transfer but may also result in data loss. Make sure that the FOMA terminal's battery is fully charged. Also check the PC's power.
- All data on the FOMA terminal may be deleted if an error occurs while transferring all from a PC to the FOMA terminal. Before transferring all, check the cable connection, the FOMA terminal's battery level and the PC's power.

Note on transferring data

Before data transfer

- You cannot transfer data while another function is running. Exit all other functions before transferring. You cannot run another function while transferring data.
- You cannot transfer data while making/receiving a voice call/videophone call/PushTalk call or using i-mode, WLAN Browser, packet communication or 64K data communication.→p.496
- You cannot transfer data while Dial lock, Self mode, or Omakase Lock is set.
- You cannot receive data stored in the phonebook while “Restrict dialing” is set. However, you can send data with “Restrict dialing” and data in “Own number”.
- Whether you can transfer data may depend on the status of the other party’s FOMA terminal. If you transfer with the terminal whose model is different from yours, it may not reflect the settings of received messages or bookmark folder tree, or may not receive a Deco-mail message correctly.
- The data transfer function via Infrared data exchange, or cable connection conforms to the IrMC1.1 standard. You may be unable to exchange data with the terminal or a PC that does not conform to IrMC1.1. Some data may not be transferred correctly even if the terminal or application of the other party conforms to IrMC1.1.
- When transferring a still image, melody, movie/i-motion, PDF document, PushTalk phonebook or ToruCa via cable connection, which does not comply with IrMC, you need the transferring software compatible with FOMA N902iL.
- You may be unable to transfer data via Infrared data exchange if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is connected.

During data transfer

- The FOMA terminal is out of range, which means that you cannot make/receive a voice call/videophone call/PushTalk call or use i-mode, i-mode mail, packet communication, 64K data communication or WLAN communication. However, the FOMA terminal may receive an incoming call or message immediately after starting data transfer. In this case, the transfer will be canceled. After the transfer is finished, the out of range status may continue for a while.
- Infrared data exchange will be canceled and a message appears asking whether to continue the communication when:
  - The receiving device does not receive data within 30 seconds or so
  - The sending device cannot find the receiving device

  Select “YES” to retry the communication. Select “NO” to cancel the communication.
  If you do not select “YES” or “NO” within 30 seconds or so, the Infrared data exchange will be automatically finished.
- It may take long to transfer a large amount of data. The receiving device may be unable to receive a large amount of data. It may take long to transfer the phonebook because stored images are also transferred. To shorten the sending time, you can set “Forwarding image” to “OFF”, so that images stored in the phonebook are not transferred.

Data to be transferred

- Data received by the FOMA terminal are saved as follows:

Data	Destination/Order	
Still image/ image	The first in the Inbox folder.	
Movie/ i-motion		
Melody		
PDF data		
ToruCa	The first in the ToruCa folder.	
Phonebook[*1]	The lowest memory number available between “010” and “699”. If none of the numbers above is available, it is saved under the lowest memory number available between “000” and “009”.	
Own number data		
Schedule	In date order of received schedules.	
To Do list	The first in the To Do list.	
Received mail	(Receive one)	The Inbox folder in date order of received messages.
	(Receive all)	User-created folders or Trash box folder according to the folder tree on the sender.
Sent mail	(Receive one)	The Outbox folder in date order of sent messages.
	(Receive all)	User-created folders according to the folder tree on the sender.
Draft mail	The Draft folder in date order of draft messages.	
Text memo	The first <Not recorded>.	
i-mode bookmark	(Receive one)	The first in the Bookmark folder under i-mode menu.
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder under i-mode menu in the same order as on the sender.[*2]
WLAN browser bookmark	(Receive one)	The first in the Bookmark folder under WLAN Browser menu.
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder under WLAN Browser menu in the same order as on the sender.[*2]

Continued on next page

Full browser bookmark	(Receive one)	The first in the Bookmark folder under Internet (Full Browser).
	(Receive all)	The Bookmark folder under Internet (Full Browser) in the same order as on the sender.*2

*1: The order in the PushTalk phonebook cannot be transferred via Infrared data exchange or cable connection. The entries are registered in received order, which means that the memory number order will apply.

*2: The entries may not be registered in the same order, depending on the sender's model.

- Receiving all still images deletes all the images stored in the phonebook.
- Receiving phonebook entries saves still images stored in the phonebook you received to the Inbox folder under "My picture". However if the amount of data exceeds the storage limit of "My picture", the exceeding images are deleted to create a phonebook, and a message appears indicating that some images could not be saved.
- Titles of still images, movies, i-motion or PDF documents can contain up to 9 double-byte characters or 18 single-byte characters. Titles of melodies can contain up to 50 single-byte characters. If the length of a title exceeds the maximum, the exceeding part will be truncated.
- The FOMA terminal may not properly receive some symbols or pictographs entered in a message or phonebook.

- You cannot send or receive:
  - UIM phonebook, SMS
  - Data stored in the Secret folder
  - Frame data (can be received only), Flash movie
  - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion, PDF document with FOMA card operational restriction
- You cannot receive:
  - Image other than JPEG or GIF
  - Movie other than MP4 or 3GP
  - Melody, still image, movie, i-motion, PDF document whose size is beyond the capacity of the FOMA terminal
- You cannot save if:
  - You receive a bookmark with the same URL as that of the existing one
  - You receive a schedule data with the same date/time and repeat settings as those of the existing one
  - You receive a schedule or To Do list data while the clock is not set
  - The number of data stored has already reached the limit or there is no memory available and you receive the same type of data
- Note the following when you transfer phonebook data:
  - The data to be transferred are name, reading, phone number, SIP address, mail address, URL (i-mode), URL (WAN browser), postal code, address, memo, birthday, still image and icon info setting. When more than one phone numbers and addresses are stored on the phonebook, all the phone numbers and mail addresses are transferred.
  - The Secret code cannot be transferred.
  - If a phonebook entry stored as a secret data is transferred via Infrared data exchange, the Secret is released before the transfer.
  - When all phonebook entries are transferred, they are sent in the memory number order.
  - The "Own number" data is sent when all phonebook entries are transferred. The personal data of "Own number" stored on the receiving device are overwritten (excluding the phone number).
  - Some pictographs or symbols in a phonebook entry may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
  - When one data is transferred at a time, only UIM phonebook entries are transferred. When all data are transferred, PushTalk phonebook entries are also transferred.
- Note the following when you transfer messages:
  - A large image acquisition information or i-αppli activation information is deleted when you send a message. A file-restricted data is also deleted. Some still images are deleted depending on the format. However, even a file-restricted data can be sent if it is a sent message or draft message received via cable connection or copied from the miniSD memory card.
  - If there is no enough space in the Inbox folder, messages in the Trash box folder and older received messages are automatically deleted in order. However, unread mail, protected received mail, and i-mode mail and SMS in the Secret folder are not deleted. It is recommended that you protect important messages.
  - If there is no space available in the Outbox folder, receiving one sent message overwrites the oldest unprotected sent message in the Outbox folder.
  - Receiving all messages deletes all existing messages and user-created folders before reception.
  - You cannot transfer the Inbox folder or Outbox folder for a mail-linked i-αppli. All messages in the folder are saved to the Inbox or Outbox folder.
  - Some pictographs or symbols in a message may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them.
  - If there is no space available in the Data box to store data, the attached file is deleted when the message is saved.
  - The "Color coding" setting set on the Inbox screen or Outbox screen cannot be transferred.

- Note the following when you transfer ToruCa data:
  - The ToruCa (detail) is transferred as ToruCa without detailed information. The detail data can be acquired on the recipient side. However, the detail data may not be acquired depending on the content of the received ToruCa.
  - You may be unable to transfer depending on the data size of ToruCa downloaded from a site or acquired via i-αppli.

Transferring One Data at a Time

Exchange one data at a time between your FOMA terminal and a PC/another FOMA terminal.

- You cannot send a data at a time from the FOMA terminal to a PC via cable connection.
- The progress bar indicates the amount of data that has been sent. Transferring a PDF document may pop up the bar twice even if the data is properly transferred.

Sending one data at a time via Infrared data exchange

<Send Ir data>

Select “Send Ir data” from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: To send one phonebook data>

1 “Phonebook detail screen” (p.124) ▶(FUNC)▶“Send Ir data”

2 Direct the Infrared data port toward the other party▶“YES”

Make sure that the other party is set to standby.
Data transfer starts.
A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.

■ **To cancel the transfer**
▶“NO”

■ **To exit during transfer**
▶(Quit)

Receiving one data at a time via Infrared data exchange

<Receive Ir data> MENU 79

1 (MENU)▶Tools▶“Receive Ir data”

The “Receive Ir data” screen appears.



Receive Ir data

2 “Receive”▶Direct the Infrared data port toward the other party▶Receive data from the other FOMA terminal

Data transfer starts.
The progress bar may not appear depending on the other party.

3 “YES”

A message appears indicating that the received data are completely stored.
The received data will be discarded if the receiving FOMA terminal is not operated at all for 30 seconds or so after the data are received.

■ **To cancel saving received data**
▶“NO”

NOTE

◆Even if you select “Receive”, you may receive all Ir data if the other party sends all. In this case, the FOMA terminal performs the Receive all operation.
◆Selecting “Add desktop icon” from the Receive Ir data function menu allows you to activate the Receive Ir data function from the desktop icon.

Receiving one data at a time via cable connection

<Write one>

- The method to transfer data varies depending on the transferring software. For more details, follow the instructions to the software.

1 Use the transferring software on a PC to send one from the PC

2 Send data from a PC

A large amount of data may slow down the progress indicator showing the communication speed.

3 “YES”

A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed. The received data will be discarded if you do not operate your FOMA terminal at all for 30 seconds or so after you receive the data.

■ **To cancel saving received data**
▶“NO”

Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time

Exchange all data between your FOMA terminal and a PC/another FOMA terminal.

- Transferring all data overwrites the data stored on the FOMA terminal. The stored data, including protected messages or secret data such as phonebook and schedule, are deleted. However, frames, Flash movies or secret data stored in the Secret folder are not deleted. Make sure that the data to be overwritten are not important to you.
- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient.
"Session number"→p.378
- The progress bar indicates the number of data that has been sent. A large amount of data may slow down the progress indicator, or it may seem different between the parties even if the data are being transferred successfully.
- Transferring all may change the order of data on the recipient side.

Session number

- Transferring all requires the session number to authenticate the sender and recipient. Before sending or receiving all, the sender and recipient should agree on a 4-digit number as the session number then both enter the same number.

Sending all data via Infrared data exchange <Send all Ir data>

Select "Send all Ir data" from the function menu on the list screen or detail screen of the data you want to send.

<Example: To send all phonebook data>

1 Phonebook list screen (p.124)▶ (FUNC)▶"Send all Ir data"

2 Enter your security code▶Enter the session number

"Session number"→p.378

3 Direct the Infrared data port toward the other party▶"YES"

Make sure that the other party is set to standby.
Data transfer starts.
A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.

■ **To cancel the transfer**
▶"NO"

■ **To exit during transfer**
▶ (Quit)

Receiving all data via Infrared data exchange

<Receive all Ir data>

1 Receive Ir data screen (p.377)▶"Receive all"

2 Enter your security code▶Enter the session number

"Session number"→p.378

3 Direct the Infrared data port toward the other party▶"YES"

■ **To cancel the transfer**
▶"NO"

4 Press "YES" on the Overwrite confirmation screen

■ **To cancel the transfer**
▶"NO"

5 Receive all data from the other FOMA terminal

Data transfer starts.

■ **To exit during transfer**
▶ (Quit)

NOTE

◆Selecting "Add desktop icon" from the Receive Ir data function menu allows you to launch the Receive Ir data function from the desktop icon.

Transferring all data via cable connection

<Write all/Read all>

- The method to transfer data varies depending on the transferring software. For more details, follow the instructions to the software.

<Example: To send all data from the FOMA terminal to a PC>

1 Use the transferring software on a PC to send all data from the FOMA terminal

It is also required to enter the session number on the PC.
Enter a 4-digit number as the session number.

2 Enter your security code on the FOMA terminal▶Enter the session number on the FOMA terminal

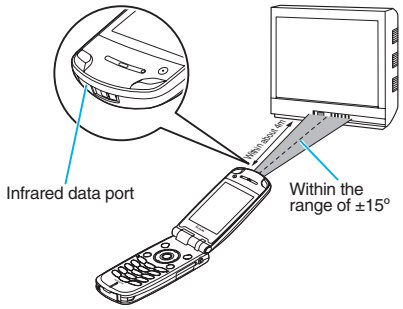
Data are transferred. A message appears indicating that the transfer is completed.
"Session number"→p.378

Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

- To use the remote control function, download the software compatible with the device to use.
- “G-GUIDE® EPG Remote Control” are stored at the time of purchase.→p.311
- Remote control button operations vary according to the software.
- Some devices may not be remotely controlled.
- You cannot use the infrared remote control in Self mode.

Using remote control

- Direct the Infrared data port of the FOMA terminal at the remote control sensor on TV, etc. The remote control is effective within approximately 4 meters from the product. This may vary depending on the ambient light level.



<My document>

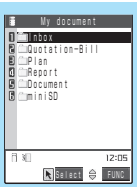
Viewing PDF Data

Use PDF Viewer to view PDF documents that have been downloaded from sites and saved. You can also view documents stored on the miniSD memory card.

- Downloading from sites→p.235

1 MENU ▶ Data box ▶ **“My document”**

The “Folder list” screen appears.



Folder list

Function menu➡p.372

2 Select a folder

The “PDF list” screen appears.

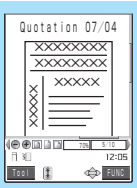


PDF list

Function menu➡p.383

3 Select a PDF document

The “PDF data” screen appears.



PDF data

Function menu➡p.384

■ If the password entry screen appears

Enter the password set to the document.

■ If a message appears indicating that download resumes

You are attempting to open a document, a part of which has been downloaded by page. The remaining pages can be downloaded later on.→p.235

■ If a message appears asking whether to download all remaining data

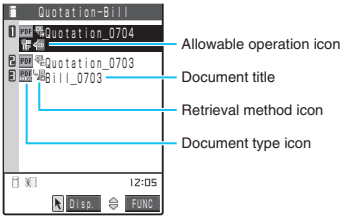
You are attempting to open a document, only a part of which has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. The remaining pages must be downloaded.→p.235

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆It may take long to display a document.
◆A document may not be properly displayed if it contain formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.
◆While viewing a document, a part of which has been downloaded by page, if you attempt to view a page that has not been downloaded yet, download starts. You can download the remaining pages all together. →p.235
◆To transfer a document from a PC to the miniSD memory card, use the specified folder tree/name and file name. →p.364
A document cannot be displayed on the FOMA terminal if the folder tree/name or file name is different from the specified one.
◆You cannot attach a PDF document to an i-mode message.
◆The FOMA terminal cannot receive a message sent from a PC with a PDF document attached.
◆The incoming call lamp continues flashing while you view a document stored on the miniSD memory card (even if you fold the FOMA terminal).

Guide to the PDF list



■ PDF type icon

icon	Description
(Pale blue)/ (Pale blue)*1	All the pages have been downloaded. The file size of a document with a blue icon "", "*1" displayed exceeds 2M bytes, which cannot be stored on the FOMA terminal.
(Pale blue)*1	Only a part has been downloaded by page. The remaining pages can be downloaded later on.*2 →p.235
(Pale blue)*3/ (Pale blue)*1	Only a part has been downloaded for some reason e.g. because the download was interrupted. To view the document, download all the remaining pages*2 (some documents may not be viewable even if the download is finished successfully). →p.235

*1: An icon including "" indicates that the document is file-restricted, which cannot be transferred via Infrared data exchange or cable connection, or copied to a miniSD memory card.

*2: If all the remaining pages are downloaded and saved, the pale blue icon "", "" or "" will change to "" or "".

*3: A document cannot be transferred via Infrared data exchange or cable connection.

■ Retrieval method icon

icon	Description
No icon	Stored at the time of purchase
	Downloaded from a site, etc.
	Acquired from the miniSD memory card, a PC, etc.

■ Allowable operation icon

The icons do not appear if the document is stored on the miniSD memory card.

icon	Description
	Can be transferred via Infrared data exchange
	Can be copied to a miniSD memory card

NOTE

◆A document stored on a miniSD memory card, which appears with a blue icon "(blue)" or "(blue)", cannot be viewed on the FOMA terminal.

Operations on the PDF screen

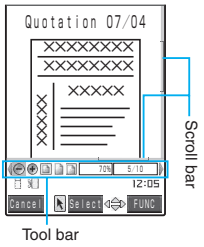
Use the scroll bar and tool bar to view a document.

■ Scroll bar

The scroll bar appears on the screen to indicate the location of the displayed page in the document.

■ Tool bar

Use icons on the tool bar to view a document. You can zoom in/out or rotate the pages.



■ To use icons on the tool bar

▶ (Tool)

To cancel using the icons, press (Cancel).

Use to select an icon.

As for the tool bar itself, you can:

- Use to change the display.
- The Neuropointer is also available to select an icon.

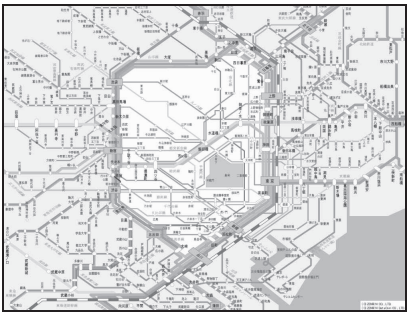
■ Icons on the tool bar

Zoom	Indicates the zoom factor. Specify a zoom percentage to display pages in the specified percentage. ▶●▶**Enter a 4-digit number** For example, enter “0070” to specify 70%.
Page	Indicates the current page number. Specify a page number to go to the page. ▶●▶**Enter a 4-digit number** For example, enter “0005” to jump to p.5.
	Zooms out.
	Zooms in.
	Displays the entire page.
	Displays a page at 100%.
	Adjusts the page width to the display.
	Displays the first page.
	Displays the previous page.
	Displays the next page.
	Displays the last page.
	Searches for text in the document.
	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
	Copies text. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.448 Copied text can be pasted into text memo, etc.
	Clips a part of the document as an image.→p.383
	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.
	Displays a single page on the screen.
	Displays the document in double-page spread.
	Displays the Bookmark list screen.

● PDF documents stored at the time of purchase

The “鉄道路線図” (route map) PDF documents by “ゼンリン” (ZENRIN) are already stored on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

- The Inbox folder under My document contains 札幌路線図 (Sapporo route map), 仙台路線図 (Sendai route map), 東京都心路線図 (Tokyo metropolitan route map), 中部路線図 (Chubu route map), 関西路線図 (Kansai route map) and 博多路線図 (Hakata route map).



東京都心路線図
(Tokyo metropolitan route map)

NOTE

◆To restore a “鉄道路線図” (route map) PDF document after deleting it, download it from “みんなNらんど” in “ケータイ電話メーカー”.
Accessing “みんなNらんど”→p.224
If the FOMA card (UIM) you are using was not used for download, the FOMA card operational restriction function will apply.→p.41

● NEC Mobile PDF

NEC Mobile PDF automatically converts uploaded Microsoft® Word or Microsoft® Excel documents to PDF data, and notifies the specified FOMA terminal of the URL for viewing the PDF.

* Compatible models: N901iS, N902i, N902iS, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N902iL, N903i (As of January, 2007)

● "NEC Mobile PDF"→p.500

Functions available on the PDF screen

You can zoom in/out and rotate a page and change page display modes. You can also set i-mode bookmarks and marks, or clip and save a page.

- The tool bar is useful to change display modes of the PDF screen.
- The keys are also available to change page display modes.→p.383
- Some bookmarks are already placed in a document. You can also use "i-mode bookmark" as if you put a sticky note to immediately jump to the page or location you want to view.

● Scrolling

■ Use ◉ to scroll

Use ◉ in the direction you want to scroll on the PDF screen.

■ Use ▲▼ to scroll

Press ▲ to scroll up and ▼ to scroll down.

■ Use the Neuropointer to scroll



Press the Neuropointer in the direction you want to scroll on the PDF screen. You can scroll in eight directions. The cursor is fixed in the center of the document, and the eight scroll directions appear.

NOTE

◆You cannot use the Neuropointer to operate the scroll bar.

● Showing/hiding tool bar and scroll bar

Press 8 to show/hide the tool bar and scroll bar.

● Changing page display modes

1 PDF data screen (p.379)▶✉ (Tool) ▶Select an icon

Use ◉ to select an icon.

2 Perform any operation

To finish operating the tool bar, press ✉ (Cancel).
Icons on the tool bar→p.381
The PDF data screen reappears.

● Searching for text

1 PDF data screen (p.379)▶✉ (Tool) ▶🔭▶◉▶Enter text to search for

You can enter up to 8 double-byte characters or 16 single-byte characters. However, some special characters may not be searched for.

2 Select the checkbox (☐) of the condition▶✉ (Search)

When the text is found, a page containing the text appears.
Press ✳ to search from the current position to the beginning of the page under the same condition.
Press # to search from the current position to the end of the page under the same condition.



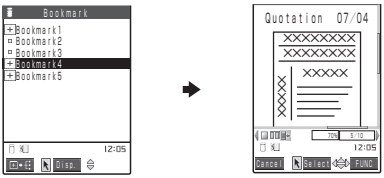
● Using a bookmark to view a document

■ To use a "bookmark" placed in a document

- If bookmarks are placed in a document, follow the steps below to jump to the location (page) where a bookmark is placed.

1 PDF data screen (p.379)▶✉ (Tool) ▶📑▶Select a bookmark for the location (page) you want to view

Selecting a bookmark displays the location (page) where the bookmark is placed.
If there are no bookmarks in the document, a message appears notifying that no bookmark was found.



Press ✉ (⊞) with + bookmark highlighted, and other bookmarks appear under the bookmark.

■ **To use "i-mode bookmark"**

- i-mode bookmark allows you to place a bookmark anywhere you like so that you can immediately jump to any page or location (up to 10 bookmarks available for one document).
- To jump to the location (page) where you placed a bookmark, follow the steps below:

1 PDF data screen (p.379)▶ (FUNC)▶"i-mode bookmark"▶ Select a bookmark for the location (page) you want to view

The location (page) appears in the same display mode (zoom, etc.) as the one when you placed the bookmark.

■ **To add an i-mode bookmark**

▶ (Add)▶"YES"▶Enter a title of the i-mode bookmark

The current display mode (page, zoom, etc.) is saved as an i-mode bookmark.

■ **To edit a title of the i-mode bookmark**

▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit title"▶Enter a title

■ **To delete an i-mode bookmark**

▶ (FUNC)▶"Delete"▶"YES"

■ **To delete all i-mode bookmarks placed in a document**

▶ (FUNC)▶"Delete all"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"

● Clipping a page

You can clip a part of the document to save as a JPEG image.

1 Display a page to clip▶ (Tool)▶ ▶ ▶"YES"▶Select the destination folder

The clipped page is saved.

NOTE

- ◆An image clipped out of a PDF document that is not allowed to be output from a FOMA terminal cannot be output from a FOMA terminal, e.g. attached to a message or copied to the miniSD memory card.
- ◆You may be unable to clip an image if it is prohibited to copy the document.

● Using keys to change page display modes

The functions assigned to the keys are listed below:

Key	Description
1	Zooms out.
2	Displays the entire page.
3	Zooms in.
4	Displays the previous page.
5	—
6	Displays the next page.
7	Searches for text in the document.
8	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar.→p.382
9	—
0	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.
#	Searches next.→p.382
*	Searches previous.→p.382

Function menu (PDF list screen)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the functions listed in the menu are different.

Edit title	Edits a document title.
Display document	
• **From the last**	Displays a page that was displayed last time.
• **First page**	Displays the first page of a document.
• **i-mode bookmark**	Displays a page where the selected bookmark is placed.
Document info	"Document information"→p.385
DL remaining data	Downloads all remaining pages of a document, only a part of which has been downloaded.→p.235
Add desktop icon[*1]	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.158
Send Ir data[*1]	Transfers documents between the FOMA terminals.→p.377
Copy to miniSD[*1]	
• **Copy this**	▶**Select the destination folder** Copies the selected document to the miniSD memory card.
• **Copy selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.372
• **Copy all**	▶**Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Copies all documents to the miniSD memory card.

Continued on next page

Move	
• **Move this**	**▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Moves the selected document to another folder.
• **Move selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.372
• **Move all**	**▶Select the destination folder▶"YES"** Moves all documents to another folder.
Memory Info	Displays the sizes of used and free spaces in memory.
Sort[*1]	Sorts documents by specified criteria.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the selected document.
• **Delete selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.372
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all documents in the folder.
Copy to phone[*2]	Copies a PDF document stored on the miniSD memory card to the Inbox folder on the FOMA terminal.
• **Copy this**	Copies the selected document to the Inbox folder.
• **Copy selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.372
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all documents to the Inbox folder.
Copy[*2]	Copies a PDF document to another folder on the miniSD memory card. Create a destination folder beforehand.→p.372
• **Copy this**	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies the selected documents to another folder.
• **Copy selected**	"Selecting multiple data"→p.372
• **Copy all**	**▶Select the destination folder** Copies all documents to another folder.

*1: The option does not appear for the PDF list screen of the miniSD memory card.
*2: The options do not appear for the PDF list screen of the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

<Copy to miniSD>
◆A document cannot be copied if only a part has been downloaded by page ("PDF (Pale blue)") or if it is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.

<Sort>
◆"By source" sorts melodies in the following order.
①Downloaded from a site
②Acquired via Infrared data exchange or from a miniSD memory card

<Copy to phone>
◆A PDF data cannot be copied if the file size exceeds 2M bytes.

Function menu (PDF data screen)

Zoom out	Zooms out a page.
Zoom in	Zooms in a page.
View types	
• **Zoom to**	Specifies a zoom factor to display a page.
• **Fit page**	Adjusts the page size to the display.
• **Actual size**	Displays a page at 100% (in the actual size).
• **Fit width**	Adjusts the page width to the display.
Go to	
• **First page**	Displays the first page.
• **Previous page**	Displays the previous page.
• **Next page**	Displays the next page.
• **Last page**	Displays the last page.
• **Specified page**	**▶Enter a page number you want to view** Displays the specified page.
Search	
• **Search**	**▶Enter text▶✉ (Search)** Searches for text.→p.382
• **Previous result**	Searches previous.→p.382
• **Next result**	Searches next.→p.382
Page layout	
• **Single page**	Displays a single page on the screen.
• **Continuous-Facing**	Displays the document in double-page spread.
Display link	Selects a URL, phone number, mail address or SIP address to access, make a call, compose an i-mode message or instant message. The scroll and tool bars do not appear when you display the link destination in the document. Press CLR to return to the normal PDF data screen.
Hide tool/ scr.bars[*1]	Shows/hides the tool bar and scroll bar.→p.382
Rotate view	
• **Clockwise**	Rotates a page 90° clockwise.
• **Counter-clockwise**	Rotates a page 90° counterclockwise.
Bookmark	Jumps to the location (page) where a bookmark is placed if bookmarks are placed in the document.→p.382
Copy	Copies text. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text"→p.448 Copied text can be pasted into text memo, etc.
i-mode bookmark	Sets (Adds/Deletes) "i-mode bookmark". Jumps to the location (page) where "i-mode bookmark" is placed.→p.383

Mark	Puts (up to 10) marks on your desired positions.
• **Add**	Adds a mark.
• **Change**	Edits a mark.
• **Delete**	Deletes a mark.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all marks.
Capture screen	Clips an image out of a document. →p.383
Add desktop icon[*2 *3]	"Using Desktop Icons" →p.158
DL remaining data[*2]	Downloads all remaining pages of a document, only a part of which has been downloaded. →p.235
Save	Saves a downloaded document.
Help	Shows a description of an operation assigned to a key.
Document property	Displays the document properties.
End	Closes the PDF data screen.
Document info	"Document information" →p.385
Delete this[*3]	Deletes the displayed document.

*1: If the tool bar and scroll bar are currently hidden, "Show tool/scr.bars" appears. The tool bar and scroll bar are set to be shown at the time of purchase.
*2: The option does not appear if the document is stored on the miniSD memory card.
*3: The options do not appear while browsing a document on a site.

NOTE

◆"i-mode bookmark" or "Mark" set on the FOMA terminal is unavailable on a PC, etc.

● Document information

You can check the following:

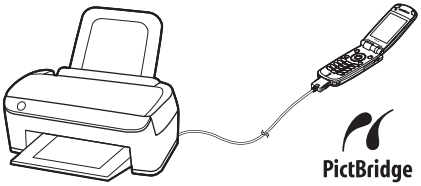
File name	The file name
File classification	The file format
File restriction	"File restricted"/"File unrestricted"
Transfer for Repair[*]	Whether or not the file can be moved when an error occurs →p.341
File size	The file size in K bytes
Source	From where the file was acquired When the PDF document was downloaded from the WLAN Browser, the display is "i-mode".
Saved at	The save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes)

*: The option appears only for PDF documents stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

<PictBridge print>

Printing Stored Images

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PictBridge-compatible printer via the FOMA USB Cable (optional), and you can directly print JPEG images without using a PC.



"Mobile Printing Ready" (PictBridge, miniSD)
* This Mobile Printing Ready product is designed to provide easy printing from mobile phones.
This product follows Mobile Imaging and Printing Consortium (MIPC) guidelines version 1.0 for PictBridge, Memory Cards.

- Only JPEG images can be printed (Images shot with the built-in camera are JPEG-formatted).
- Some printers cannot properly print images if they were not shot with the built-in camera.
- Check that your printer supports the PictBridge print before connecting the printer and the terminal.
- You can set how to print images stored on the miniSD memory card. →p.387
- You cannot print images that are not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.
- Charge the battery fully for PictBridge print. You may be unable to print if the battery is low.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable while communicating with the printer. "" appears during communication.
- The print mode (layout, sheets, etc.) specified on the FOMA terminal may be unavailable on some printers.

1 USB mode setting screen (p.371)▶"Print mode"

If "Print mode" is set, "" appears.
Set "Print mode" before connecting the FOMA USB Cable, or you may be unable to print.

2 Connect the FOMA terminal and a printer via the FOMA USB Cable

Turn on the printer before connecting.

Continued on next page

3 Image list screen (p.335) or Title list screen (p.336)▶Select an image to print, and press (FUNC)▶"PictBridge print"

DPOF Print is available from the "image list" screen or "title list" screen on the miniSD memory card.
It is not required to highlight an image if you print multiple images or print DPOF.

■ **To print from the "My picture" screen**

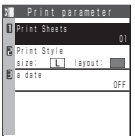
One image is printed if you select from the "My picture" (p.336) function menu. Go on to Step 5.
▶(FUNC)▶"PictBridge print"

4 Select the print type

Selecting "DPOF Print" prints an image by following the print settings specified in "DPOF setting" (p.387) and the paper size and layout specified for the printer (Step 5 and subsequent steps are not required).

Print this	Prints the selected image.
Print Choice	**▶Use to select images▶ (Finish)** If it is the title list, use to select a checkbox (□), and press (Finish). Prints images you select.
DPOF Print	Prints images stored on the miniSD memory card by following the "DPOF setting". →p.387

5 Set the print settings



■ **Print settings**

Set the following:

Print Sheets*	**▶Enter the number of sheets (01 to 99)**	
Print Style	**• Paper size**	
	Sets the paper size. • L size • A4 • 2L size • Card • 8" × 10" • Default • Postcard	
	• Layout	
	Sets the print layout.	
	• 1-up (borderless)	Prints one image on one sheet without a frame.
	• 1-up	Prints one image on one sheet with a frame.
	• 2-up	Prints two images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same two images are printed.
	• 4-up	Prints four images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same four images are printed.
	• 8-up	Prints eight images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same eight images are printed.
	• 16-up	Prints 16 images on one sheet. When only one image is selected, the same 16 images are printed.
	• Default	Prints in default layout.
a date	Sets whether to stamp the date.	

*: "Print Sheets" can be set only when "Print this" is selected in Step 4.

6 (Finish)

The image is printed.

When an error occurs on the printer

- If the "Error" message appears, an error may have occurred on the printer.
- Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the printer then fix the error.
- After the error is fixed, make sure that "" appears at the top of the FOMA terminal display, then connect the FOMA USB Cable to the printer.

NOTE

◆For information on how to recover from the error, see the printer users guide.
◆Up to 100 copies can be selected at a time in Print Choice.
◆Selectable paper size and layout for Print this or Print Choice vary depending on the printer. DPOF Print prints an image using the paper size and layout set on the printer.
◆When you select to add the date, the shooting date and time are stamped if there is the information. If the image does not contain the date/time information, the "Saved at" information shown on the Image info screen will be stamped. However, even if you select to add the date, it may not be stamped in some layout settings.
◆An image cannot be printed if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high or if the file size exceeds 1,200K bytes. Also, a progressive JPEG image larger than 640 dots wide × 480 dots high or whose width or height exceeds 640 dots cannot be printed.
Progressive JPEG image→p.234
◆The multi-task function is unavailable for PictBridge print.
◆While printing, the FOMA terminal is effectively out of range. You cannot make/receive a call or use i-mode.

Setting how to print images stored on a miniSD memory card <DPOF setting>

Set Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) for printing images stored on the miniSD memory card.

- DPOF is a format for setting the print mode for images shot with a digital camera.
- Save still images shot with the FOMA terminal to the miniSD memory card, and specify still images to print, the number of sheets, etc. The images can be printed on a DPOF-compatible printer or in a print service shop.
- Printing DPOF-set still images on a PictBridge-compatible printer→p.385

1 Folder list screen (p.335)▶"miniSD"▶"Picture"▶Select a folder▶Choose an image▶ (FUNC)▶"DPOF setting"▶Select any item

DPOF set One	Sets the print settings for the selected image.
DPOF set Choice	**▶Select the image** Sets the print settings for images you select.

2 "Print"▶Specify "Print Sheets" (2-digit number from 01 to 99) and "a date" (whether to stamp the date)▶ (Finish)

■ To cancel print settings for the displayed image
▶"Print OFF"

■ To cancel print settings for all stored images
▶"All print OFF"

NOTE

- ◆You can set the DPOF setting for up to 999 images. However, the specified copies may not be printed on some printers.
- ◆DPOF cannot be set if the width or height exceeds 2,304 dots, if the size exceeds 2,304 dots wide × 1,728 dots high or if the file size exceeds 1,200K bytes.
- ◆You may be unable to set the DPOF setting if there is little space available on the miniSD memory card.
- ◆You cannot set DPOF for images stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone).
- ◆The specified number of sheets can be checked in "Image info".

Music Playback Methods

There are two methods to playback music with a FOMA terminal.

- Playback using music player
  Play music data (AAC-format) that is ripped from the audio CD, etc. to be transferred to the miniSD memory card.
- Playback as an i-motion
  Play music data (i-motion without video, e.g. a singer's voice) that is downloaded from an i-motion site and stored on Data box of the FOMA terminal. If you store it on the miniSD memory card, you can also play music from there.

The following describes how to play with the music player.

- For how to play i-motion from Data box, refer to "Playing Movies/i-motion".→p.347
- You can use the mail service or view an i-mode site while listening to the music (Background playback).

Using Music Player <Music player>

You can use Music player to play AAC-format music data stored on the miniSD memory card.

- When an earphone is connected, sound only comes out of the earphone regardless of the "Earphone" setting.
- When a commercially available hands-free device is connected, sound may only come out of the hands-free device.
- If you do not have a miniSD memory card, purchase one at your local electronics store.

* You can enjoy music stored on the miniSD memory card within personal use. Take great care not to infringe the third party's intellectual property right such as copyright.

Saving music data to the miniSD memory card

This explanation refers to the example of using "FOMA N902iL N902i N702iD Music Player Data Transfer Software" (p.499) with a PC equipped with a reader/writer for miniSD memory cards.

- The FOMA terminal can also be used as a reader/writer for miniSD memory cards, using the FOMA USB Cable (optional).→p.370
- For how to use the "FOMA N902iL N902i N702iD Music Player Data Transfer Software", see the help file.

Continued on next page

1 Use a commercially available conversion software package to convert music you want to play on the FOMA terminal into AAC-format music data

Contact the software vendor for information on how to use the software.

2 Use the "FOMA N902iL N902i N702iD Music Player Data Transfer Software" to create a Playlist

3 Transferring music data and created playlist to the miniSD memory card

4 Inserting the miniSD memory card into the FOMA terminal

NOTE

◆You cannot use the FOMA terminal to create a playlist, move, copy or edit a folder/music data stored on the miniSD memory card. Use a PC to perform these.

Playing music with Music Player

1 (MENU)▶Data box▶"Music"

The "Playlist" screen appears.

■ **To list all tracks**
Select "All tracks"



Playlist

2 Select a playlist

The "Track list" screen appears.

■ **To play tracks in a playlist at random (Random play)**
▶✉ (Random)



Track list

Function menu➡p.389

3 Highlight the track name▶● (Play)

The "Music player" screen appears. Tracks in the playlist are played in display order.

■ **To play repeatedly**
▶✉ (Repeat)
Repeat, Repeat 1 and OFF are switched each time ✉ is pressed.

■ **To end playback**
▶CLR

When playback ends, the "Track list" screen reappears.



Music Player

Function menu➡p.390

Playable data formats and numbers of tracks

File format	MPEG4-AAC
Bit rate	320kbps or less
Sampling rate	8kHz, 11.025kHz, 12kHz, 16kHz, 22.05kHz, 24kHz, 32kHz, 44.1kHz, 48kHz
Playlist count	Up to 20 (including a list of all tracks)*
Number of playable tracks	1,000

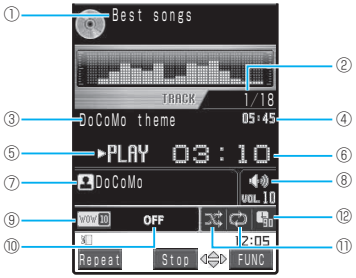
*: 21 or more tracks can be stored on the PC, but the 21st and subsequent will not be played or displayed on the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

◆When an earphone is connected, sound comes out of the earphone even in Manner mode. If the earphone is removed in Manner mode, playback is paused.
◆When a hands-free device is connected, sound only comes out of the hands-free device.
◆Folding the FOMA terminal does not interrupt playback. The indicator display shows information on a track being played.
◆Playback is paused when:
- You make/receive a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call, 64K data communication or packet communication.
- You receive a mail, MessageR or MessageF (only when "Receiving display" is set to "Alarm preferred").
- You receive a presence report (only when "Set on sts. report" is set to "Alarm preferred").
- You receive an alarm for "Schedule", "Alarm clock" or "To Do list" (only when "Alarm setting" is set to "Alarm preferred").

◆A file that cannot be played with the music player is skipped during playback.
◆You can create desktop icon for "Music" from the (MENU)▶Data box (Data box) Function menu.
Desktop icons→p.158

Guide to the music player screen



①Playlist name
②Track No. (in the playlist)
③Track name
④Track time (Minute:Second)
⑤Playback status

PLAY: Playing PAUSE: Pausing

FF: Skipping forward

REW: Skipping backward

⑥Time elapsed (Minute:Second)
⑦Artist
⑧Volume
Volume level from 1 to 20. MUTE appears during mute.

⑨Sound effects
Sound effects level from 0 to 20.

⑩Sound quality
Sound quality set in “Equalizer set.” (p.390)

OFF: OFF

Bass: Bass Treble: Treble

Treble Reducer: Treble Reducer

Pop / Jazz / Rock /

Techno / Classical: Each genre

Speech: Speech

⑪Playback mode

: Playing at random

: Playing all repeatedly

: Playing one repeatedly

⑫Off timer
Time set in “Off timer” (p.389)

Operations on the music player screen

Control key	Operation
●	Pauses/Resumes playback.
✉	Repeatedly plays tracks in a playlist (Repeat/Repeat 1/OFF)→p.388
⏻, ▲ (Home), 🎙, ▼ (Memo/Check)	Adjust volume
▲ (Home) for 1 second or longer	Plays the previous track in the playlist During random playback, the previously played track is played when the key is pressed, regardless of the order in the playlist.
⟳ (or ▼ (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer)	Plays the next track in the playlist During random playback, the order in the playlist is ignored.
⟲	Plays from the beginning of the track
⟲ for 1 second or longer	Skips backward
⟳ for 1 second or longer	Skips forward
CLR	Ends playback

NOTE

◆The volume set on the music player screen does not affect ring volumes set in “Ring volume”.

Function menu (Track list screen)

Music Info	Displays information about the highlighted track. “Music information”→p.390
Artist name disp., Title disp.	Specifies whether to display the artist name or title name (track name).
Off timer (default: 90 minutes)	Stops playback when a given time has elapsed since the start of playback. A star “★” appears next to selected option (time).

● Music information

Item	Contents
Title	Displays the title. If there is no information, “Unknown” appears.
Artist	Displays the artist. If there is no information, “Unknown” appears.
Copyright	If there is no file copyright information, “Unknown” appears.
Saved at	Displays the save date and time (Year/Month/Day Hours:Minutes).
File size	The file size in K bytes (kilobyte).
Play time	Displays playback time (minutes: seconds) of the file.
Audio	Audio information displays “Playable (AAC)/Not included/Unplayable/Unplayable (MP4)”. If there is no display information, “Unknown” is displayed.

Function menu (Music player screen)

● The settings can be changed during playback.

SRS_WOW (default: OFF)	Sets sound effects from level 0 to 20.
Equalizer set. (default: OFF)	Selects the sound quality from the following:
• **OFF**	Disables the equalizer setting.
• **Bass**	Emphasizes bass.
• **Treble**	Emphasizes treble.
• **Treble Reducer**	Reduces sound leaking out of the earphone.
• **Pop**	Sets the equalizer for each genre.
• **Jazz**	
• **Rock**	
• **Techno**	
• **Classical**	
• **Speech**	Sets the equalizer for speech.
Repeat setting (default: OFF)	Repeatedly plays tracks in the playlist.
• **OFF**	Does not repeat the currently played (paused) music.
• **Repeat**	Repeats all tracks in the playlist.
• **Repeat 1**	Repeats the currently played (paused) track.

NOTE

◆“SRS_WOW” set on the music player screen does not affect “SRS_WOW” (p.140) for i-motion playback.

Other Useful Functions

Multi Access..... Multi access 392
Multitask..... Multitask 394
Setting Alarm Mode ..... Alarm setting 395
Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock ..... Alarm clock 397
Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries ..... Schedule 398
Adding To Do List Items..... To Do list 402
Storing Your Name and Image..... Own number 404
Recording Your Voice or the Other Party's Voice ..... Voice memo(in-call)/Voice memo 405
Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones ..... Voice announce 406
Checking Call Times and Charges ..... Call data 407
Setting the Upper Limit of Charge to Show the Alarm ..... Notice designate calls 408
Using a FOMA Terminal as a Calculator ..... Calculator 409
Composing Text Memos ..... Text memo 409
Using Dictionaries..... Dictionary 410
Using an Earphone/Microphone with Switch ..... Earphone/microphone with switch 412
Selecting a Callee for Calls Made with an Earphone Connected ..... Auto dial setting 413
Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone/ Microphone Connected..... Automatic answer 413
Selecting a Microphone to Use When Connecting an Earphone/Microphone ..... Select microphone 414
Setting an Operator to Use..... NW search mode 414
Resetting Function Settings..... Reset settings 414
Resetting FOMA Terminal Functions to Default..... Initialize 416

<Multi access>

Multi Access

Multi Access is a function that enables you to make more than one FOMA or WLAN communications at the same time. This allows you to receive mails during a FOMA voice call or make a FOMA voice call while using the i-mode services. In addition, you can use the VoIP phone and the WLAN browser at the same time.
“Multi Access Combination Patterns”→p.494

Communication lines that can be used concurrently

FOMA communications let you use the 3 types of lines listed below.

Communication type	Line to use
Voice call	1 line
i-mode, i-αppli or i-mode mail	1 line for any of the communications
Packet communication via PC	
SMS	1 line

WLAN communications let you use the VoIP phone, the WLAN browser, Messenger and Presence at the same time.

NOTE

- Communication charges apply for each of the lines used during multi access communication.
- Multi access is not available during a videophone call. However, reception of SMS and instant messages, as well as auto-updating of presence are available.
- Multi access is not available during a PushTalk call or 64K data communication. However, sending or reception of SMS and reception of instant messages, as well as auto-updating of presence are available.

When you receive a call or mail during communication

Receiving an i-mode mail during a FOMA voice call

When you receive an i-mode mail during a FOMA voice call, the FOMA voice in-call screen remains shown. You can then read the i-mode mail without interrupting your FOMA voice call.

1 ch (MULTI)▶Use ch (MULTI) or ◎ to select “Transmission” and press ●

The reception results screen for the i-mode mail appears.
Switching tasks→p.394



➡



2 Checking the i-mode mail

Reading i-mode mail→p.274

3 ch (MULTI)▶Use ch (MULTI) or ◎ to select “Talking” and press ●

The FOMA voice in-call screen reappears.

NOTE

- If you receive an i-mode mail or MessageR/MessageF during a FOMA voice call, the “Mail”, “MessageR” or “MessageF” icon flashes and then lights up without a ring tone to notify you of the received message.
- If no operations are performed on the reception results screen, the in-call screen reappears.

Receiving a FOMA voice call during i-mode or packet communication

If you receive a FOMA voice call while you are using i-mode, receiving or sending an i-mode mail or using packet communication with a FOMA terminal and PC connected, the FOMA voice call reception screen appears and you can answer the FOMA call without ending i-mode or packet communication.

- It works the same way if you receive a VoIP phone call while using the WLAN browser as well--you can answer the VoIP phone call without closing the WLAN browser.

1 ☎

The FOMA voice in-call screen appears and you can answer the call.

■ To return to the i-mode screen without answering a FOMA voice call

▶ch (MULTI)▶Use ch (MULTI) or ◎ to select the i-mode group task icon ( ) and press ●

The caller hears ringing without a message.

2 To end the call, press ☎

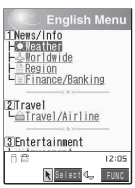
The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ To return to the i-mode screen without ending a FOMA voice call

▶ch (MULTI)▶Use ch (MULTI) or ◎ to select the i-mode group task icon ( ) and press ●



➡



Using two types of communication simultaneously

Another type of communication is available without interrupting the current communication.

- To switch screens during multi access, select the desired function on the task icon display area. →p.394

Connecting to i-mode during a FOMA voice call

During a FOMA voice call, press (MENU) and select the i-mode menu in the main menu to connect to i-mode. →p.222

Sending an i-mode mail during a FOMA voice call

During a FOMA voice call, press (MENU) and select the Mail menu in the main menu to compose and send an i-mode mail.

1 During a FOMA voice call▶(MENU)▶Select the Mail menu

Using menus →p.35



2 Compose an i-mode mail▶send it

Creating and Sending i-mode Mail →p.257

3 (ch) (MULTI)▶Use (ch) (MULTI) or ◎ to select "Talking" and press ●

The FOMA voice in-call screen reappears.

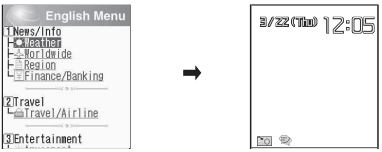
Making a FOMA voice call during i-mode

While connecting to i-mode or receiving/sending a mail, you can make a FOMA voice call without ending i-mode.

- It works the same way while using the WLAN browser--you can make a VoIP phone call without closing the WLAN browser.

1 During i-mode▶(MENU) (1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears.



2 Make a FOMA voice call

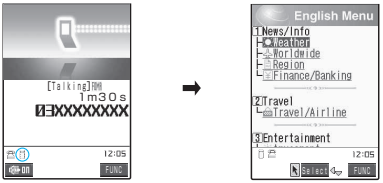
Making FOMA voice calls →p.56

3 To end the call, press ☎

The call ends and the i-mode screen reappears.

■ **To return to the i-mode screen without ending a FOMA voice call**

▶(ch) (MULTI)▶Use (ch) (MULTI) or ◎ to select the i-mode group task icon ( ) and press ●



Connecting the WLAN browser during a VoIP call

During a VoIP call, press (MENU) to connect to the WLAN browser from the WLAN Browser menu in the main menu. →p.458

Sending instant messages during a VoIP call

During a VoIP call, press (MENU) and select Messenger from WLAN tools in the main menu to compose and send an instant message. →p.463

1 During a VoIP call▶(MENU)▶"WLAN tools"▶"Messenger"

2 Composing an instant message▶Send it

Composing and sending an instant message →p.463

3 (ch) (MULTI)▶Use (ch) (MULTI) or ◎ to select "Talking" and press ●

The VoIP in-call screen reappears.

NOTE

- If you attempt to make a videophone call during i-mode, the "Disconnecting" message appears and then a FOMA terminal dials the videophone call. When the videophone call ends, the i-mode screen reappears.
- When you attempt to make a PushTalk call during i-mode, a message asking whether to disconnect i-mode appears. Select "YES" to disconnect i-mode and make the call. When the PushTalk call ends, the i-mode screen reappears.

<Multitask>

Multitask

Multitask enables you to use multiple functions at the same time. Up to 4 functions can be performed simultaneously, one (2 functions for the WLAN tools group) from each of the Main menu groups shown below.

"Multitask Combination Patterns"→p.496



The running groups are enclosed by frames.

Task icon display area:
The running tasks are expressed by icons.

Group	Main menu item (task)
WLAN Tools	WLAN Tools
i-mode	i-mode, Full Browser and WLAN Browser
Mail	Mail
i-αppli	i-αppli
Settings	Settings and Service
Tools	Data box, LifeKit, Phonebook and Own data

- The voice call charge continues to increase while you are concurrently using another function during a voice call.
- In the i-mode, settings and tool groups, it is not possible to do more than one function from the same group at the same time.

Activating tasks (functions)

1 While using a task▶ (MENU) (1 second or longer)

The standby screen appears. It may not appear depending on the active task.

2 Select a task from a group of which tasks are not currently running

■ **To activate a task from the main menu**
▶(MENU)▶Select a task→p.35

■ **To activate a task using the menu number**
▶(MENU)▶Enter the menu number of the task you want to activate→p.478

■ **To activate a task from the mail menu**
▶✉ (MAIL)→p.256

■ **To activate a task from the i-mode menu**
▶i (i-mode)→p.222

NOTE

◆When you try to activate another task from the group in which you are currently editing data, the message "XXX Cancel editing and switch?" (XXX is a task name such as Mail or i-mode or group name) appears. Select "YES" to end the editing and switch tasks. Select "NO" to return to the previous screen. If having no edited data, you can directly activate the selected task.

◆In the following cases, one task is added to compose a mail while viewing another mail. If three tasks are already running and you try to perform one of the operations below, a message notifying that the task cannot run appears. End a task not belonging to the Mail group and then perform the operation. "Ending a Task"→p.395

- Accessing the Mail menu to compose a mail
- Accessing the Mail menu to compose SMS
- Using a template to create a Deco-mail
- Using Reply/Reply with quote/Forward for a received mail
- Editing a sent mail
- Editing a draft mail

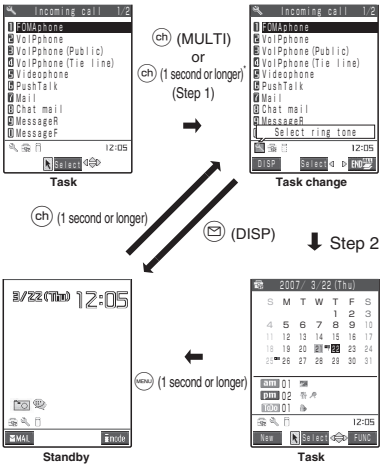
Switching tasks

When you are running multiple tasks, you can switch them to change an active task.

1 While activating multiple tasks▶ (ch) (MULTI) or (ch) (1 second or longer)*

The task change screen appears.

2 Use (ch) (MULTI) or ⊙ to select a task icon you want to switch and press ▶●



*: To switch tasks on the standby screen, the phonebook list screen (tabs) or the member/group member list in the PushTalk phonebook, press (ch) (MULTI) for 1 second or longer to show the task change screen. On the standby screen, you can also switch tasks by selecting a task icon on the task icon display area with the Neuropointer.

Ending tasks

■ **To end a task**

- Open the task screen you want to end▶☎
- On the task change screen, select a task icon you want to end and press ☎▶“YES”

■ **To end all tasks**

- On the task change screen▶ⓘ (END ALL)▶“YES”

<Alarm setting>

Setting Alarm Mode

Default setting
Alarm preferred

You can select either “Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred” as the alarm setting for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list”.

1 MENU▶Settings▶“Clock”▶“Alarm setting”▶“Operation preferred” or “Alarm preferred”

■ **When Operation preferred is selected**
The alarm sounds only when a screen is standby.

■ **When Alarm preferred is selected**
The alarm sounds even when you are operating or talking on a FOMA terminal.

Alarm actions

When you set an alarm for the “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” function, the icon showing that the alarm has been set appears on the standby screen. When the specified time is reached, the alarm for the respective function is given.

When you set an alarm

When you set an alarm for “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list”, an icon appears on the standby screen.



■ **For alarms set for today (excluding times that have already passed)**
“ ” appears.

■ **For alarms set for tomorrow or later**
“ ” appears.

NOTE

◆If a schedule event or To Do list item is stored with “OFF” selected, neither “ ” nor “ ” appears.

When the specified time is reached

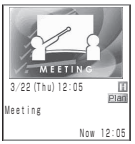
An alarm is given as follows for each function.



Alarm clock*1



Schedule*1



To Do list*1

Change status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule, To Do list
Standby screen displayed	If “Snooze OFF” is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for the specified time (01 to 10 minutes). If “Snooze ON” is selected, the alarm tone sounds repeatedly for one minute, and then repeats the operation up to 5 times at about 5 minute intervals. An animation or i-motion appears on the display and an animation appears on the indicator display.	The alarm sounds repeatedly for about 5 minutes, and an animation or i-motion appears on the display and an animation appears on the indicator display.
FOMA terminal turned off	If “Auto power ON” is selected for the “Auto power ON” setting, a FOMA terminal automatically turns on and an alarm is given. If the setting is set to “Auto power OFF”, the terminal does not turn on and no alarm is given. The “ Miss” (Missed alarm) desktop icon does not appear on the screen even after the terminal turns on.	No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. The setting remains effective.
A voice, videophone or PushTalk call in progress*2	The clock alarm tone (pip-pipipi...) sounds 3 times through the FOMA terminal’s earpiece. An animation appears on the display.	
Receiving or dialing a voice, videophone or PushTalk call*2	Whether the alarm is given depends on the condition. When an alarm is given, the alarm tone sounds and an animation appears on the display and in the indicator display.	
i-mode or sending/ receiving a mail*2	An alarm is given in the same way as in “Standby screen displayed”.	

Continued on next page

Change status	Function	
	Alarm clock	Schedule, To Do list
Infrared data exchange, SD-PIM operation or data exchange in OBEX in progress	No alarm is given when the specified time is reached. When data communication ends, the "(Missed alarm)" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. →p.397	
Earphone/ microphone connected	An alarm is given in the same way as in "Standby screen displayed". The alarm sounds through the earphone and speaker according to the setting of "Earphone".	
PIN1 code entry set is set to "ON" and the PIN1 code entry screen is shown after a FOMA terminal is turned on.*2	An alarm is given in the same way as in "Standby screen displayed". When the alarm screen is closed, the PIN1 code entry screen reappears.	An alarm is given after the correct PIN1 code is entered.
Dial lock/ Omakase lock/Original lock set	Regardless of the "Alarm setting" setting, no alarm is given when the specified time is reached. If a FOMA terminal is turned off, it is not automatically turned on even when the specified time is reached and the "(Missed alarm)" desktop icon does not appear after unlocking. When Original lock is set, the "(Missed alarm)" desktop icon appears on the standby screen, however, when Dial lock/Omakase lock is set, this icon appears after unlocking. →p.397	Regardless of the "Alarm setting" setting, no alarm is given when the specified time is reached. When Original lock is set, the "(Missed alarm)" desktop icon appears on the standby screen, however, when Dial lock/ Omakase lock is set, this icon appears after unlocking. →p.397

*1: The animation shown for the "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarm varies depending on the selected icon or category. If an i-motion is set as the alarm tone for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list", the image appears during the alarm.

*2: This operation is performed when "Alarm preferred" is set. When "Operation preferred" is set, the "(Missed alarm)" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. →p.397

NOTE

- The alarm volume for "Schedule" and "To Do list" follows the "FOMAphone" setting under "Ring volume".
- The volume of the clock alarm tone sounded during a call is the same as that specified in "Volume".
- Even if "Snooze ON" is set, the snooze function is not activated for the alarm of Alarm clock during a call.
- Unless "FOMAphone" under "Vibrator" is set to "OFF", both vibration and the alarm tone are given as an alarm.
- Even if an i-motion is set in "Alarm tone", the i-motion is not played when it cannot be activated (e.g. during a call). Instead, the clock alarm tone, specified icon and animation corresponding to the category are used for an alarm.

<Alarm priority sequence>

- When the "Alarm clock", "Schedule" and "To Do list" alarms are set to sound at the same time, alarm priority is assigned as follows.
  ①Alarm clock ②To Do list ③Schedule

To stop an alarm tone

Alarm clock

When "Snooze OFF" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion. If you press any key again, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the display is cleared.

When "Snooze ON" is set

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion and the alarm message "Snooze..." appears. After the "Snooze..." message appears for about 5 minutes, the alarm is given again. If you press [☎] while the "Snooze..." message appears, the release tone ("pipip") sounds and the snooze setting is released.

Schedule and To Do list

Pressing any key stops the alarm tone, animation or i-motion and the alarm message remains shown. Pressing any key again clears the alarm message. However, pressing any sidekey with the FOMA terminal folded does not close the alarm screen.

If a call arrives during an alarm

The alarm stops and a FOMA terminal receives the call. The "Alarm clock" snooze setting is also canceled.

NOTE

- Snooze is canceled when:
  - A voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call is received
  - "Alarm preferred" is selected in "Alarm setting" and then the alarm for Alarm clock, Schedule or To Do list is given
- If "Keypad sound" is set to "OFF", the release tone does not sound.

Checking details of an alarm that could not be given

If a FOMA terminal was unable to give an alarm, the "Missed alarm" desktop icon appears on the standby screen. You can check the details of the missed alarm (Missed alarm info) from the desktop icon.

1 On the standby screen▶●▶"Missed alarm"

The missed alarm information for "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list" appears.

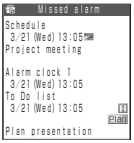


2 Check the details▶CLR

The standby screen reappears and the "Missed alarm" desktop icon disappears.

NOTE

◆If "Alarm clock", "Schedule" or "To Do list" alarms are set to sound at the same time but a FOMA terminal was unable to give the alarms, the respective missed alarm information appears.



◆To clear the desktop icon "Missed alarm", press CLR for 1 second or longer on the standby screen. Once you clear this desktop icon, you can no longer check the missed alarm information.

<Alarm clock> MENU 44

Using a FOMA Terminal as an Alarm Clock

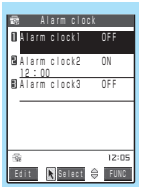
Default setting: All OFF

● You can store up to 3 alarm settings.

Setting the alarm clock

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶"Alarm clock"

The "Alarm clock" screen appears.
If you have set the alarm clock before, the previously specified settings appear.



Alarm clock

Function menu➡p.398

2 Select an item to edit▶✉ (Edit)

3 Set the respective parameters

Time setting	**▶Enter a time** Enters a time when the alarm will sound.
Repeat	Sets the alarm repetition.
• **1 time**	Sounds the alarm only once.
• **Daily (D)**	Sounds the alarm every day.
• **Select day (W)**	**▶Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)** Sounds the alarm every week on the specified day (Sun to Sat).
Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. A "Clock Alarm Tone" can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder in "Melody". "Changing Ring Tones" →p.138
• **Melody**	**▶Select a folder** Selects a ring tone or melody.
• **i-motion**	**▶Select a folder** Selects an i-motion.
• **Voice announce**	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm tone. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" →p.406
• **Random melody**	**▶Select a folder** Automatically selects a ring tone to set it as an alarm tone.
• **OFF**	Does not sound an alarm.
Volume	**▶Use ◉ to adjust the volume** Sets the alarm tone volume. "Adjusting the Ring Volume" →p.77
Snooze setting	Specifies whether to set the snooze (repeating) alarm.
• **ON**	Sounds the alarm tone repeatedly for 1 minute and then repeats the operation up to 5 times at about 5-minute intervals.
• **OFF**	**▶Enter the ring time (01-10 minutes)** Sounds the alarm tone continuously for the specified ring time. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To set the currently displayed time, press ●.
Auto power ON	Specifies whether to automatically turn on a FOMA terminal when the alarm time is reached.

4 ✉ (Finish)

NOTE

◆When "Auto power ON" is set to "ON" and a melody or i-motion downloaded from a site is set as the alarm tone, the "Clock Alarm Tone" sounds because of the FOMA card operational restriction function.

Continued on next page

◆Before entering an area such as aircraft or hospital where there is electronic equipment that uses extremely precise control systems or very low signal level and it is prohibited to use a mobile phone, set the “Auto power ON” setting to “OFF” and then turn a FOMA terminal off.

Function menu (Alarm clock screen)

Edit	Edits the alarm clock settings.
Display detail	Changes the display from a list to details.
Finish (Set this)	Enables the highlighted alarm clock setting.
Release this	Disables the highlighted alarm clock setting.
Release all	Disables all the alarm clock settings.

<Schedule> MENU 45

Adding Schedule Events, Holidays and Anniversaries

Setting schedule events sounds the alarm tone at the specified dates and times and shows the alarm messages and animations to notify you of the events. You can also set holidays and anniversaries. Stored schedule and holiday events can be quickly checked on the FOMA terminal’s calendar. You can switch the calendar display mode between 1-month and 1-week to view the number or details of scheduled or To Do list events for a given day. You can organize your schedule in a variety of ways, e.g. storing regularly scheduled events such as weekly meetings on a given day every week, setting alarm tones and animations that match the scheduled events, or storing multiple schedule events for the same day.

- You can view or store events from January 1, 2004 to December 31, 2037.
- You can store up to 100 schedule events, holidays and anniversaries, respectively. The national public holidays stored on a FOMA terminal at the time of purchase are not included in those holidays.
- You can store two or more schedule events for the same day, while you can only set one holiday and one anniversary per day.
- Schedule alarms→p.395

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶**“Schedule”**

The “Schedule” screen appears.



Schedule

Function menu➡p.398

Function menu (Schedule screen)

New	“Adding schedule events”→p.399 “Adding holidays and anniversaries”→p.399
Weekly display, Monthly display	“Changing the schedule display mode”→p.399
Icon display	**▶Select an icon** Shows scheduled events for each icon. Repeated scheduled events (D or W) appear as a single item.
User icon settg.	“Setting your preferred image as a user icon”→p.400
Switch To Do list	Switches to the To Do list screen (p.402).
No. of schedules	Shows the numbers of stored schedule events, holidays and anniversaries. In “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”, entries stored as secret events also appear.
Send all Ir data	Sends all the schedule entries via Infrared data exchange. “Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time”→p.378
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the selected schedule entry.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ● to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶“YES”** Deletes multiple schedule entries.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶Select any item▶“YES”** Selects an item to delete. You can select “Schedule”, “Holiday”, “Anniversary” or “All” (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
• **Delete past***	Deletes all the schedule entries set to come before the selected day. You can select “Schedule”, “Holiday”, “Anniversary” or “All” (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
Reset holiday	Resets the national public holidays to default.

*: Past means the period prior to the day on which the cursor is positioned on the Schedule screen.

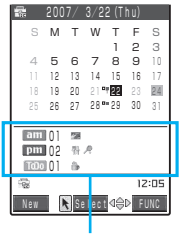
NOTE

◆Selecting “Holiday” or “All” in “Delete all” resets holidays to the default settings.

◆Selecting “Delete past” or “Delete selected” does not delete the default public holidays stored at the time of purchase.

● Changing the schedule display mode

The schedule display mode provides two types: “Monthly display” and “Weekly display”. Use ⊛ to select a date so that you can check the number and icons of schedule and To Do list stored on the selected date.



Indicates icons and the numbers of schedule and To Do list events stored in the morning and afternoon of the highlighted date.



Indicates the date, day of the week, icon and event details.

Blue date: Saturday
Red date: Sunday, public holiday or holiday
Pink date: Anniversary
__: Today
□: There is an event scheduled for the morning.
■: There is an event scheduled for the afternoon.
T : There is a To Do list item.

Public holidays are based on 国民の祝日に関する法律（昭和23年法律第178号までのもの）およびその法改正（平成17年法律第43号までのもの）(Public Holiday Law [Up to 1948 No. 178] and its amended version [Up to 2005 No. 43]). The official dates of vernal and autumnal equinoxes are gazetted on February 1 the previous year, and they may differ from ones preset on the FOMA terminal. (As of January, 2007)

Adding holidays and anniversaries

<Example: Storing a holiday>

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶**“Schedule”**▶✉ **(New)**▶**“Holiday”**

■ **To store an anniversary**
▶“Anniversary”

2 Set the respective parameters

Date setting	▶**Enter the date** Enters the date of the holiday or anniversary you want to add.
Repeat	Sets the repetition of holiday or anniversary.
• **1 time**	Sets the holiday or anniversary only for that year.
• **Annually (Y)**	Sets the holiday or anniversary for every year.
Contents	▶**Enter a message** Enters the details of the holiday or anniversary. A message can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

3 ✉ **(Finish)**

NOTE

◆If there is already a holiday or anniversary stored for the specified date, a message asking whether to overwrite the existing entry appears.

Adding schedule events

Adding an event such as a trip or appointment to your schedule notifies you of the event using an alarm tone or animation when the specified date and time arrives.

● To add a schedule event, enter the “Contents”. You cannot add events without their “Contents”.

1 Schedule screen (p.398)▶✉ (New)▶“Schedule”

2 Set the respective parameters

Date(from)*	▶**Enter “Start Year”, “Start Date” and “Start Time”** Enters the starting date and time for the schedule event.
Date(to)*	▶**Enter “End Year”, “End Date” and “End Time”** Enters the finishing date and time for the schedule event.
Repeat	Sets the repetition of the scheduled event.
• **1 time**	Sets the event only for the specified date and time.
• **Daily (D)**	Sets the event to repeat every day.
• **Select day (W)**	▶**Use ⊛ to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)** Sets the event to repeat every week on the specified day (Sun. to Sat.).

Continued on next page

Alarm	Specifies the alarm settings used when the starting date and time is reached.
• **ON**	An alarm is given at the starting date and time.
• **ON/Set time**	▶**Enter a prior alarm time (01-99 minutes)** Sets how many minutes before the starting date and time the alarm is given. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To set the currently displayed time, press ●.
• **OFF**	No alarm is given when the starting time is reached.
Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. A "Clock Alarm Tone" can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder in "Melody". "Changing Ring Tones" →p.138
• **Melody**	▶**Select a folder** Selects a ring tone or melody.
• **i-motion**	▶**Select a folder** Selects an i-motion.
• **Voice announce**	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" →p.406
• **OFF**	Does not sound an alarm.
Summary	▶**Enter a message** Enters the summary of the schedule event. A summary can contain up to 20 double-byte or 40 single-byte characters. The entered summary appears on the screen during the alarm.
Contents	▶**Enter a message**▶**Select an icon.** Enters the scheduled event details. Contents can contain up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters. If no summary is entered, the contents appear on the screen during the alarm. If both summary and contents are entered, the summary appears first and the contents next.

*: Selecting this option shows the "Date setting" screen on which you can set both (from) and (to) of Date setting.

3 (✉) (Finish)

NOTE

- If "ON/Set time" is selected, an alarm is given only at the specified date and time before the scheduled event (01-99 minutes before the event). The alarm is not given at the date and time originally specified for the scheduled event.
- If you attempt to set an alarm for the same date and time as those for an already stored event during schedule registration, the message asking whether to overwrite the existing entry appears.
- Schedule events can be stored to give the alarms at the same date and time only when the Repeat setting for one is "Daily" or "Select day" and the Repeat setting for another is "1 time" (no repeats). In this case, the event with the "1 time" setting has priority.
- If the day of the week set as the starting time and the one set in the Repeat setting are different, the one set in the Repeat setting has priority and the schedule event is set to come on the first specified day of the week after the starting time.
- If you store a schedule event during a voice call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication, the alarm does not sound although it normally sounds when the alarm tone is selected.

Important

- It is recommended to back up the details of stored schedule events by taking notes or saving onto the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.435), Data Link Software (p.499) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The trouble, repair, etc. of a FOMA terminal may erase the details of the schedule events. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the schedule event details just in case.

Setting your preferred image as a user icon

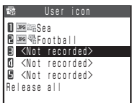
This procedure enables you to set an image or animation stored in "My picture" as a user icon. The specified user icons are shown as "" to "" on the icon selection screen. If a user icon is set, the selected image or animation appears when an alarm is given. Also, "" appears on the indicator display.

- You can set up to 5 user icons.

1 Schedule screen (p.398)▶(●) (FUNC)▶"User icon settg."▶"<Not recorded>"

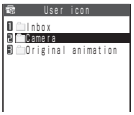
■ To change a user icon already set
▶Choose an item you want to change

■ To cancel all the user icon settings
▶"Release all"▶"YES"
This operation is only available when user icons have already been set.



2 Select a folder including images

Images can also be selected from user-created folders. Selecting images →p.335



■ **To cancel an icon set for schedule events**

▶"Release this"▶"YES"

■ **To cancel an icon not set for any schedule events**

▶"Release this"

3 Select an image to set

The selected image is previewed and the screen returns to the user icon list after a while.

■ **To preview**

▶Select an image to preview▶✉ (Play)

NOTE

◆If you attempt to change or cancel a user icon that is being used for scheduled events, a message asking whether to cancel the icon appears. If you change or cancel a user icon or delete it from My picture, the alarm screen for the scheduled event where the icon was used changes to the one that appears when "🕒" is set.

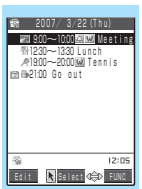
Checking schedule details

Open the detail screen to check the details of a scheduled event.

1 Schedule screen (p.398)▶Select the date which the scheduled event to check is stored

The "Schedule list" screen appears.
The following icons appear on the list screen:

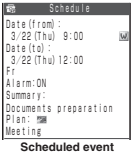
- 🕒: Specified schedule icon indicating that a schedule event is stored
- H: A holiday is stored.
- 👤: An anniversary is stored.
- 📋: A To Do list is stored.
- 🔔: An alarm is set.
- D: Repeated daily
- W: Repeated weekly
- Y: Repeated annually
- A: Two days or more interval between Date(from) and Date(to)



Schedule list

Function menu➡p.401

2 Select an item to check in detail



Scheduled event detail



Holiday detail



Anniversary detail

Function menu (Schedule list screen)

New	"Adding schedule events"→p.399 "Adding holidays and anniversaries"→p.399
Edit	Edits schedule entries.
Copy	Copies Schedule, Holiday or Anniversary entry to store it in other dates. If an entry to be copied contains the repeat setting, it is canceled when the entry is copied.
Icon display	▶**Select an icon** Shows scheduled events for each icon. Repeated scheduled events (D or W) appear as a single item.
User icon settg.	"Setting your preferred image as a user icon"→p.400
Switch To Do list	Switches to the To Do list screen (p.402).
Release secret	Returns a schedule recorded in the Secret mode/Secret data only mode back to a normal schedule. "Changing secret data back to normal"→p.175
Compose message	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.257
Compose IM	"Composing and Sending an Instant Message"→p.463
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.158
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.377
Send all Ir data	Sends all the schedule entries via Infrared data exchange. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.378
Copy to miniSD	
• **Copy this**	Copies the selected schedule entry.
• **Copy selected**	▶**Use ● to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple schedule entries.
• **Copy all**	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all schedule entries.

Continued on next page

Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the selected schedule entry.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ● to select a checkbox (□)▶✉ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple schedule entries.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code▶Select any item▶"YES"** Selects an item to delete. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).
• **Delete past**	Deletes all the schedule entries set to come before the selected day. You can select "Schedule", "Holiday", "Anniversary" or "All" (deleting all the entries of Schedule, Holiday and Anniversary).

NOTE

- ◆Selecting "Holiday" or "All" in "Delete all" resets holidays to the default settings.
- ◆Selecting "Delete past" or "Delete selected" does not delete the default public holidays stored at the time of purchase.
- ◆If you attempt to use "Delete this" or "Delete selected" to delete scheduled events which repetition (daily or weekly) is set, a message asking whether to delete the repeat settings appears. Selecting "YES" deletes all the repeat settings of the scheduled events.
- ◆When you perform Delete past, all the repeated scheduled events (daily or weekly) prior to the selected date are deleted, while the others from the selected day are left undeleted.
- ◆If scheduled events are shown by icon and you select "Delete selected" from the function menu, the Delete selected screen for the list of dates selected on the previous screen appears. You cannot select Delete selected when scheduled events are shown by icon.

<To Do list> MENU95

Adding To Do List Items

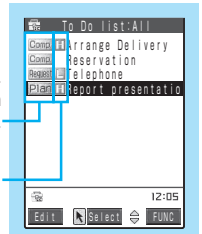
You can manage your schedule by adding items to the To Do list. Alarms can also be set for items.

- ● You can store up to 100 items in the To Do list.
- ● To Do list alarms→p.395

Checking items

1 (MENU)▶LiteKit▶**"To Do list"**

The "To Do list" screen appears.



Shows the entry status. The blue icon turns into red when the specified day has elapsed.

Shows the priority.

To Do list

Function menu➡p.402

2 Select an item to check

■ **To edit an item**

▶✉ (Edit)

"Adding and editing items" →p.403



To To Do list detail

Function menu➡p.402

Function menu (To Do list screen/To Do list detail screen)

New	"Adding and editing items"→p.403
Edit	
Switch Schedule	Switches to the Schedule screen (p.398)
Change status	Selects a status from "Plan", "Acceptance", "Request", "Provisional plan", "Confirmation", "Denial", "Completion" and "Substitution". If selecting "Completion", enter the completion date.
Category display*	Selects a category from "All", "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" and "Meeting", and shows items by category.
Sort/Filter*	Sorts items according to the specified criterion or shows items with specific status.
Add desktop icon*	"Using Desktop Icons"→p.158
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.377
Send all Ir data*	Sends all items via Infrared data exchange. "Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time"→p.378

Copy to miniSD	
• **Copy this**	Copies the selected To Do list item.
• **Copy selected**	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)**▶✉**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Copies multiple To Do list items.
• **Copy all**	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Copies all the To Do list items.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the selected item.
• **Delete selected***	▶**Use ◉ to select a checkbox (□)**▶✉**(Finish)**▶**"YES"** Deletes multiple items.
• **Delete completed***	Deletes a finished item.
• **Delete all***	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all items.

*: Available only To Do list screen.

Adding and editing items

- Always enter "Contents". You cannot add To Do list items without "Contents".
- You can set items in "Due date" or "Completion date" from January 1, 2004 to December 31, 2037.

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶"To Do list"▶✉ (New)

■ **To add a new item when other items have been stored**
▶i (FUNC)▶"New"

■ **To edit an already stored item**
▶Select an item to edit▶✉ (Edit)

2 Set the respective parameters

Contents	▶**Enter the details of an item** Enters the details of an item. Contents can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters.
Due date	Sets the due date for an item.
• **Enter date**	▶**Enter the date and time** Enters the date.
• **Choose date**	▶**Select a date from the calendar**▶**Enter a time** Selects a date from the calendar.
• **No date**	Does not set a due date.
Priority	Sets priority for an item.
• H	Sets H (high) priority.
• L	Sets L (low) priority.
• **None**	Does not set priority.
Category	Selects a category of an item from "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" and "Meeting".
Alarm	Specifies the alarm settings used when the due date is reached.
• **ON**	An alarm is given on the due date.
• **ON/Set time**	▶**Enter a prior alarm time (01-99 minutes)** Sets how many minutes before the due date the alarm is given. Enter the time as a 2-digit number. To set the currently displayed time, press ●.
• **OFF**	No alarm is given when the due date is reached.
Alarm tone	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. A "Clock Alarm Tone" can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder in "Melody". "Changing Ring Tones"→p.138
• **Melody**	▶**Select a folder** Selects a ring tone or melody.
• **i-motion**	▶**Select a folder** Selects an i-motion.
• **Voice announce**	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" →p.406
• **OFF**	Does not sound an alarm.
Completion date*	Sets the completion date for an item.
• **Enter date**	▶**Enter the date** Enters the date.
• **Choose date**	▶**Select a date from the calendar** Selects a date from the calendar.
• **No date**	Does not set a completion date.

*: Shown only when you edit an existing item which "Status" is "Completion".

3 ✉ (Finish)

NOTE

◆If "ON/Set time" is selected, an alarm is given only at the specified time before the To Do list item (01-99 minutes before the item). The alarm is not given at the date and time originally specified for the To Do list item.

◆If you store an item during a voice call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication, the alarm does not sound although it normally sounds when the alarm tone is selected.

Continued on next page

Important

- It is recommended to back up the details of stored To Do list items by taking notes or saving onto the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.435), Data Link Software (p.499) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You may lose your data through the damage or repair of your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of the To Do list items just in case.

<Own number> MENU 0

Storing Your Name and Image

Default setting
Own number only

You can store your personal information including your name, home phone number, SIP address and e-mail address. Storing personal information allows you to identify your FOMA terminal or to quote the stored data on the Text entry (edit) screen.

- You cannot change or delete your Own number.

Showing personal data

This function only shows your name, reading, Own number, the first SIP address, the first e-mail address, the first URL (i-mode) and the first URL (WLAN Browser) listed.

1 MENU ▶ Own data ▶ "Own number"

The "Own number" screen appears.
If you have stored your personal data such as your home phone number or address, you can view all the data by selecting "Display all data" from the function menu and entering your security code.



Own number

Function menu➡p.404

Function menu (Own number screen)

SIP address	Displays a list of SIP addresses and WLAN profiles.
Edit	Edits your personal data. "Storing personal data"→p.404
Display all data	▶**Enter your security code**▶**Use ⊙ to check the details**
Copy name	Copies the name stored in the personal data. The copied name can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text"→p.448
Copy phone number*1	Copies the phone number currently shown. The copied phone number can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. "Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text"→p.448
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time"→p.377
Copy to miniSD	"Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the miniSD memory card"→p.366
Big font, Standard font	Changes the font size for the name displayed.
Delete phone No.*2	Deletes the phone number currently shown.
Reset	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Resets (deletes) personal data other than your Own number and the first SIP address and restores the default settings set at the time of purchase. When you have selected "Display all data" to show the personal data, you do not need to enter your security code.

*1: Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a SIP address, "Copy SIP address" appears.
- If you have selected a mail address, "Copy mail add." appears.
- If you have selected a URL, "Copy URL" appears.
- If you have selected an address, "Copy address" appears.
- If you have selected a birthday, "Copy birthday" appears.
- If you have selected a memo, "Copy memorandums" appears.

*2: Depending upon what you have selected, one of the following is applicable.
- If you have selected a SIP address, "Delete SIP address" appears.
- If you have selected a mail address, "Delete mail add." appears.
- If you have selected a URL, "Delete URL" appears.
- If you have selected an address, "Delete address" appears.
- If you have selected a birthday, "Delete birthday" appears.
- If you have selected a memo, "Delete memorandums" appears.
- If you have selected an image, "Delete image" appears.

Storing personal data

1 MENU ▶ Own data ▶ "Own number"▶ ✉ (Edit)▶Enter your security code

2 Set the respective parameters

N Name	▶**Enter your name** Enters your name. The name can contain up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.

Reading	**▶Enter the reading** Enters the reading of your name. Entering your name sets the reading automatically. Change it if necessary. A reading can contain up to 32 single-byte characters, consisting of katakana, alphabets, numbers and symbols.
Phone number	**▶Enter a phone number▶select an icon** Adds a phone number other than your Own number and selects an icon. A phone number can be up to 26 digits. Storing a new phone number shows "<Not stored>" on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number.
SIP Address	**▶Enter a SIP address▶Select an icon** Adds a SIP address and selects an icon. A SIP address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphanumerics and symbols.
Mail address	**▶Enter an e-mail address▶select an icon** Enters an e-mail address and selects an icon. An e-mail address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphabetic letters, numbers and symbols. Once the first mail address is stored, "<Not stored>" is displayed on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.
URL (i-mode)	**▶Enter the URL of an i-mode site** Enters the URL of an i-mode site. A URL can contain up to 256 single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols. Once the first URL is stored, "<Not stored>" is displayed on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional URL.
URL (WLAN Browser)	**▶Enter the URL in the WLAN Browser** Enter the URL in the WLAN Browser. A URL can contain up to 256 single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols. Once the first URL is stored, "<Not stored>" is displayed on the personal data edit screen. Select this option to store an additional URL.
Address	**▶Enter a ZIP code▶Enter a street address** Enters a ZIP code and street address. A postal code can consist of up to 7 single-byte numbers. A street address can contain up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters, consisting of kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.
Birthday	**▶Enter a birthday** Enters a birthday (year, month and day). Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.
Memorandums	**▶Enter a memo** Enters a memo (short note). A memo can contain up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters long and can include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic letters, numbers, and pictographs.
Image	Sets an image to be shown for your personal data.
• **Photo mode**	Activates the camera to shoot an image. The shot image can be set for your personal data.
• **Select image**	**▶Select a folder** Selects an image.
• **Release this**	Cancels the image set for your personal data.

3 (Finish)

NOTE

◆Changing your mail address or setting the secret code does not automatically change the mail address stored here until you change it manually.

<Voice memo(in-call)/Voice memo>

Recording Your Voice or the Other Party's Voice

Voice memo is divided into two types. "Voice memo" (during a call) enables you to record the other party's voice during a voice call or videophone call. "Voice memo" (in standby) enables you to record your own voice while the screen is standby.

- You can record either one voice memo (in standby) or one voice memo (during a call), which overwrites the existing memo.
- You can record a memo for approximately 20 seconds.
- Playing and erasing recorded voice memos→p.85

Recording the other party's voice during a call

1 During a call▶▼ (Memo/check) (1 second or longer)

A FOMA terminal beeps and recording begins. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the "Recording" screen changes back to the in-call screen.



In-call

■ **To stop recording**

▶●, CLR, ☎ or ▼ (Memo/check) (1 second or longer)

Pressing ☎ ends the call as well as recording. Pressing CLR does not stop recording during a videophone call.

Continued on next page

NOTE

◆If you receive a call, use another function or a FOMA terminal gives you “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” alarm, recording stops.
◆You cannot record voice while a videophone call is on hold or you are using a function menu option.
◆If a FOMA voice call is on hold or a VoIP call is on inbound hold (p.455), you can activate “Voice memo(in-call)” to record voice by the following step:
▶(MENU)▶(LifeKit)▶“Voice memo(in-call)”

Recording your voice in standby mode MENU43

1 (MENU)▶(LifeKit)▶“Voice memo”▶“YES”▶

Record a voice memo

When a FOMA terminal beeps, begin speaking into the mouthpiece. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 20 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the “Recording” screen changes back to the “LifeKit” list screen.

■ To stop recording

▶●, CLR or ☎

Pressing ☎ returns to the standby screen and saves the recorded voice.

■ Important

- It is recommended to take notes of the contents of voice memos.
- The trouble, repair, etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of voice memos. NTT DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any such loss of data and users are advised to make a note of the recorded messages and memos as a precautionary measure.

<Voice announce> MENU91

Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones

This function enables you to record your voice and set it as an original ring tone or answer message.

- You can make two voice recordings: “Voice announce 1” and “Voice announce 2”.
- You can record a memo for approximately 15 seconds.
- Voice recorded here can be set to the following functions:
  - Ring tone
  - Ring tone for Call setting w/o ID
  - Ring tone for Multi Number
  - On hold tone
  - Holding tone
  - Answer message for Record message
  - Alarm tone for Alarm clock
  - Alarm tone for Schedule
  - Alarm tone for To Do list
  - Alarm tone for Notice designate calls

Recording voice

1 (MENU)▶(LifeKit)▶“Voice announce”▶**Select an item to record voice**▶**“YES”**



Voice announce

Function menu➡p.406

2 **Record voice**

Speak into the mouthpiece. The terminal beeps 5 seconds before the recording time (about 15 seconds) ends. When recording ends, the terminal gives a short double-beep and the “Recording” screen changes back to the in-call screen.

■ To stop recording

▶●, CLR or ☎

Pressing ☎ during recording returns to the standby screen and saves the recorded voice.

NOTE

◆You cannot record new voice for an option that has already recorded voice. Erase recorded voice to record new voice.
◆If you receive a voice, videophone, PushTalk call or presence notification, use another function or if the FOMA terminal notice, such as “Alarm clock”, “Schedule” or “To Do list” occurs, recording stops.

Playing recorded voice

1 (MENU)▶(LifeKit)▶“Voice announce”▶**Select an item to play**

■ To stop playback

▶●, CLR or ☎

Function menu (Voice announce screen)

Record	Records voice.
Play	Plays recorded voice.
Erase	Erases recorded voice.

<Call data> MENU61

Checking Call Times and Charges

You can check the previous or total call time/charge for voice/videophone calls, etc.

- If you switch between voice call and videophone call, the total call time of voice call and videophone call appears in the last call duration area, and the charges of voice call and videophone call appear separately in the last call cost area. The shown charge may differ from the actual charge.
- The call time is the total of incoming and outgoing calls; it is indicated respectively for FOMA and VoIP voice calls and digital communication (videophone calls and 64K data communication).
- Charges are made only for outgoing calls, which are broken down into FOMA voice call charges and digital communication charges (videophone call and 64K data communication charges.) If you call a toll free number or directory assistance (104), "¥0" or "¥✻✻" appears.
- Charge data are accumulated on a FOMA card (UIM). If you insert another FOMA card (UIM), the charge data (starting from December 2004) accumulated on the inserted FOMA card (UIM) are indicated on the Total calls cost line.
  * FOMA terminals released before the 901i series stores charge data on their FOMA cards (UIM) but cannot show the data.
- You can reset call times and charges shown on a FOMA terminal.
- Call times and Total calls cost shown on a FOMA terminal may differ from the actual figures. Consumption tax is not included in charges.
- Call charges and total call costs do not count against VoIP phone usage.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Call time/Charge" ▶ "Call data"

You can check the following:

Last call duration	Shows the approximate duration of the last call. The duration is shown no matter whether you made or received the call. "FOMA" indicates FOMA calls, "VoIP" shows VoIP calls.
Last call cost	Shows the approximate charge for the last call. "Talk" shows the charge for FOMA voice calls and "Digital" for videophone calls and 64K data communication.
Total calls duration	Shows the total duration of all the calls made since the last reset (when the total was reset to "0"). "FOMA" shows the total duration of FOMA voice calls, "VoIP" shows the total duration of VoIP calls and "Digital" shows the total duration of videophone calls and 64K data communication.
Total calls cost	Shows the approximate total charges for all the calls made since the last reset. The approximate total charges are for the total of FOMA voice calls and digital communication (videophone calls and 64K data communication).
Total duration reset	Shows the time and date of the last call reset.
Total cost reset	Shows the time and date of the last charge reset.

NOTE

- If the last and accumulated voice or digital call time exceeds "199 hours, 59 minutes, 59 seconds", the call time count returns to 0 second.
- Call time and charge are not counted during PushTalk calls, i-mode or packet communication or Chaku-moji calls. To check i-mode communication charges, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" you received at the time of contract.
- The time when your FOMA terminal is ringing or that when the other party's terminal is ringing is not counted.
- Turning off a FOMA terminal resets the duration and charge for the last call to "0 second" and "¥✻✻" respectively.
- The total duration or charge information will remain if a FOMA terminal is turned off.

Resetting the total calls time and cost <Reset total> MENU60

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Call time/Charge" ▶ "Reset total" ▶ Enter your security code ▶ Select any item

Reset total duration	Resets the accumulated duration.
Reset total cost	**▶"YES" ▶Enter the PIN2 code** Resets the accumulated charge.

Resetting charges automatically <Auto reset total cost>

Default setting: OFF

You can set the accumulated charge shown in "Call data" to automatically return to zero at 0:00 AM on the 1st day every month.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Call time/Charge" ▶ "Auto reset total cost" ▶ Enter your security code

2 "Auto reset" ▶ Select any items

ON	**▶Enter the PIN2 code** Sets Auto reset. PIN2 code→p.168
OFF	Does not set Auto reset.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- The charge is automatically reset even during packet communication.
- If it becomes time to reset charge automatically during a call, Auto reset is performed after the call ends.
- If it becomes time to reset charge automatically while a FOMA terminal is turned off, turn on the terminal again and enter the PIN2 code to reset the charge.
- Setting Auto reset total cost to "ON" and changing the month in "Set time" reset the total call charges automatically.
- When Auto reset total cost is set to "ON", the PIN2 code entry screen appears when a FOMA terminal is turned on.
- Auto reset total cost is set to "OFF" if:
  - You turn on a FOMA terminal without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.
  - You press CLR on the PIN2 code entry screen displayed when the FOMA terminal is turned on.
  - The PIN2 code is locked. →p.169
  - The FOMA card (UIM) is failed.

<Notice designate calls>

Setting the Upper Limit of Charge to Show the Alarm

Default setting	Cost limit: Not set Notify cost limit: OFF

The standby screen or alarm notifies you when the accumulated charge indicated in "Call data" exceeds the specified cost limit.

- The alarm is given only once when the accumulated charge exceeds the limit set in advance.
- Exceeding the limit does not prevent you from making calls.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Call time/Charge" ▶ "Notice designate calls" ▶ Enter your security code

2 Set the respective parameters

Cost limit setting	Sets the cost limit between 10 yen and 100,000 yen by 10 yen.
Notify setting	
• **Notify cost limit**	Specifies whether to give an alarm when the cost limit is exceeded. Setting "OFF" does not give an alarm. Setting "ON" gives an alarm following the settings of "Alarm tone" and "Volume".
• **Alarm Tone**	Selects an alarm tone. If you have created folders, they appear after the "Pre-installed" option. "Clock Alarm Tone" can be selected from the "Pre-installed" folder. "Changing Ring Tones" →p.138
• **Inbox**	Selects a melody downloaded from an i-mode site or website as a ring tone.
• **Pre-installed**	Selects an alarm tone from the pre-installed ring tones and melodies.
• **Voice announce**	Selects "Voice announce 1" or "Voice announce 2" for an alarm. "Recording and Playing Alarm Tones and On Hold Tones" →p.406
• **OFF**	Does not sound an alarm.
• **Volume**	Use ◉ to set the alarm tone volume. "Adjusting the Ring Volume" →p.77

3 ✉ (Finish)

NOTE

- The alarm volume applied while in original manner mode is the same as that specified in "Phone vol." under "Original".
- The charges for PushTalk calls, i-mode, packet and WLAN communication and Chaku-moji transmission are not supported by this function. To check i-mode communication charges, see the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" you received at the time of contract.

● Alarm actions

When the accumulated charge exceeds the cost limit after a call, you are notified as follows:

■ **When Notify cost limit is set to "ON" and Alarm is set to other than "OFF"**



When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the alarm starts sounding in three seconds after you finished talking and lasts about five minutes, which opens the screen notifying that the accumulated charge has exceeded the limit. To stop the alarm tone, press any key. After the alarm, pressing CLR or ☎ shows the "¥ MAX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon on the standby screen.

■ **When Notify cost limit is set to "ON" and Alarm tone is set to "OFF"**

When the accumulated charge exceeds the preset cost limit, the "¥ MAX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

● Checking the details of "¥ MAX" (Notice designate calls)

Selecting the "¥ MAX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon on the standby screen shows the details of Notice designate calls.

1 On the standby screen ▶ ● ▶ "¥ MAX" ▶ Enter your security code

The alarm information on "Notice designate calls" is shown.



2 Check the details▶●

The standby screen reappears and the "¥MAX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon disappears.

NOTE

◆The "¥MAX" (Notice designate calls) desktop icon disappears if the cost limit is changed to the one exceeding the current total calls charge in "Cost limit setting".

◆If you set the cost limit for the first time to a value lower than the total calls cost and make or receive a call, the alarm of Notice designate calls sounds when you end the call.

◆You can choose the alarm mode between "Operation preferred" or "Alarm preferred" in "Alarm setting".

<Calculator> MENU85

Using a FOMA Terminal as a Calculator

A FOMA terminal performs four basic arithmetic operations (＋ (addition), － (subtraction), × (multiplication), ÷ (division)).

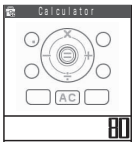
- Up to 10-digit number and up to nine decimal places can be shown.
- A result number consisting of more than 10 figures appears with ".E".

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶"Calculator"▶Calculate

The entered numbers and calculation result appear.

■ To calculate "23 + 57"

2 3 + 5 7 =



■ To use negative numbers in calculation

To calculate using negative numbers, simply insert "－" before the first digit.

－ 2 3 + 5 7 =

NOTE

◆CLR (AC or C) is available as follows:

- Pressing ＋, －, ×, ÷ or ＝ shows AC. Pressing CLR allows you to recalculate from scratch.
- When C appears during a number or decimal point entry, pressing CLR allows you to clear a number or decimal point entered wrongly.

<Text memo> MENU42

Composing Text Memos

The text memo function is available for composing and saving short messages, etc. Composed text memos can be pasted into your schedule or mail.

- You can store up to 10 text memos.
- A text memo can contain up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters.

Storing a text memo

1 MENU▶LifeKit▶"Text memo"

The "Text memo" screen appears.



Text memo

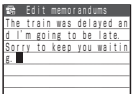
Function menu➡p.410

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>" and press ✉ (Edit)

■ To edit a stored text memo

▶Select an item to edit▶✉ (Edit)

3 Compose a memo



NOTE

◆Highlighting "<Not recorded>" on the "Text memo" screen and pressing ● also enables you to compose a text memo.

■ Important

- It is recommended to back up the text memos by taking notes or saving onto the miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using Data Link Software (p.499) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- The trouble, repair, etc. of the FOMA terminal may erase the contents of text memos. NTT DoCoMo disclaims any responsibility whatsoever for loss of data. Take notes of text memos just in case.

Checking the details of text memos

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶"Text memo"▶Select an item to check in detail▶Check the details



Function menu (Text memo screen)

Edit	Edits a text memo.
Compose message	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail" →p.257
Compose IM	"Composing and Sending an Instant Message" →p.463
Edit schedule	"Adding schedule events" →p.399
Add desktop icon	"Using Desktop Icons" →p.158
Send Ir data	"Transferring One Data at a Time" →p.377
Send all Ir data	"Transferring Multiple Data at the Same Time" →p.378
Copy to miniSD	
• **Copy this**	Copies the selected text memo.
• **Copy selected**	**▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Copies multiple text memos.
• **Copy all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Copies all text memos.
Text memo info	Shows the category or when it was created.
Category	Categorizes a text memo into "None", "Personal", "Holiday", "Travel", "Business" or "Meeting".
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes the selected text memo.
• **Delete selected**	**▶Use ◎ to select a checkbox (□)▶(Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple text memos.
• **Delete all**	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all text memos.

<Dictionary>

Using Dictionaries

- Using dictionaries from other functions →p.411

Activating a dictionary

1 (MENU)▶LifeKit▶"Dictionary"

The "Dictionary" screen appears.



Dictionary

Function menu➡p.411

2 Select any item

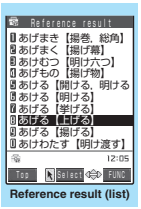
Enter word	**▶Enter a word** A word can contain up to 32 double-byte or 64 single-byte characters.
Access reader	**▶"Dic. (Japanese)" or "Dic. (English)"▶Scan text** Enters a word from the access reader. "Scanning Text" →p.214
Reference history	Searches a word from the list of previously retrieved words. "Using reference history" →p.411

3 Select the dictionary type

The "Reference result (list)" screen appears.
If there is no word candidate, a cursor is placed on the closest word from the entered character.

■ **To open the previous or next list**
▶Reference result (list) screen▶◎





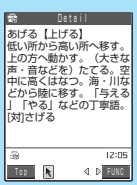
Reference result (list)

Function menu➡p.411

4 Select a word from the reference result list

The "Reference result (detail)" screen appears.

■ **To view the previous or next word**
▶Reference result (detail) screen▶◎



Reference result (detail)

Function menu➡p.411

Function menu (Dictionary screen)

Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.158

Using reference history

1 Dictionary screen (p.410)▶“Reference history”

The “Reference history” screen appears.

2 Select a word



Reference history

Function menu➡p.411

Function menu (Reference history screen)

Delete this	Deletes the selected reference history item.
Delete all	Deletes all the reference history items.

Function menu (Reference result (list) screen)

Copy	For Japanese-English and Japanese dictionary, characters in brackets (【】) in search results are copied. For English-Japanese dictionary, words in search results are copied The copied word can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.448
Refer dic.	Searches the retrieved word in another dictionary.

Function menu (Reference result (detail) screen)

Copy	Copies the texts selected on the Reference result (detail) screen. The copied texts can be pasted into the entry screen, etc. “Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.448
Re-reference	“Searching from the Reference result (detail) screen”→p.411
Refer dic.	Searches the retrieved word in another dictionary.
Refer edit*	Edits texts referring to the searched word. “Changing the Active Window”→p.450

*: Shown only when Refer edit is available.

Searching from the Reference result (detail) screen

1 Reference result (detail) screen (p.410)▶● (FUNC)▶“Re-reference”

2 ●▶at the first character of the string to search ●

3 ●▶Move the cursor to the end of the string to search ●

4 Select the dictionary type

5 Select a word from the reference result list

Using dictionaries from other functions

Select “Refer dic.” from each function menu on:

- The text edit screen
- The sent mail/received mail detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new message
- The instant message detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new IM.
- A webpage or screen memo

■ When activating a dictionary from the text edit screen

You can select “Enter word”, “Select area” or “Reference history”.
Selecting “Select area” allows you to select the word(s) you want to look up from the text edit screen.

■ When activating a dictionary from the sent mail/received mail detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new message

You can select “Enter word”, “Select area” or “Reference history”.
Selecting “Select area” allows you to select the word(s) you want to look up from the sent mail/received mail message or a mail being composed.

■ When activating a dictionary from the instant message detail screen or message entry screen for composing a new IM

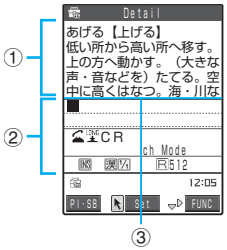
You can select “Enter word”, “Select area” or “Reference history”.
Selecting “Select area” allows you to select the word(s) you want to look up from the instant message or a new IM being composed.

Continued on next page

■ **When activating a dictionary from a webpage or screen memo**

You can select “Enter word”, “Site refer(enter)” or “Reference history”. Selecting “Site refer(enter)” allows you to enter the word you want to look up referring to a webpage or screen memo.

● Guide to the dictionary reference screen



Selecting “Refer edit” or “Site refer(enter)” splits the screen into the upper and lower.
Selecting “Change window” from the function menu switches the active window between ① and ②. Moving the Neuropointer onto a window to activate also enables you to switch the active window.

■ **When you select Refer edit from the Reference result (detail) screen**

① shows the dictionary detail screen.
② shows the text edit screen.
③ draws a border line.
To exit the dictionary, select “Quit dic.” from the function menu or switch to the window ① and press ✉ (End).

■ **When you select Site refer(enter) from a webpage or screen memo**

① shows the webpage or screen memo.
② shows the word entry screen.
③ draws a border line.
Enter a word and then press ●. The dictionary selection screen appears with the word entered.

<Earphone/microphone with switch>

Using an Earphone/ Microphone with Switch

You can make or receive calls using the switch of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional).

- To connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to a FOMA terminal, open the earphone/microphone terminal cap and insert the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch into the socket. →p.26
- The call connection tone or end call tone always sounds when the switch is pressed regardless of the “Keypad sound” setting.
- Note that connecting a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch while a ring tone sounds may accept a voice call or PushTalk call.
- Do not wrap the cord of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around a FOMA terminal. Doing so may lower the signal strength. Furthermore, bringing the code of a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch close to a FOMA terminal may generate noise.

● Using the switch to make calls

- You can make calls by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch.

1 Press the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer when a screen is standby

A FOMA terminal makes a call to the phone number/SIP address set in “Auto dial setting” (p.413).
Pressing the switch for 1 second or longer with a FOMA terminal folded also makes a voice call to the phone number/SIP address set in “Auto dial setting”.

■ **To make calls from the phonebook list screen**

▶Phonebook list screen (p.124)▶Select a phonebook entry▶Press the switch for 1 second or longer

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the first phone number listed in the phonebook entry.
You can also make calls from the “Redial/Dialed calls (list)” screen or “Received calls (list)” screen.

■ **To make calls from the phonebook detail screen**

▶Phonebook detail screen (p.124)▶Select a phone number/SIP address▶Press the switch for 1 second or longer

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and makes a call to the selected phone number/SIP address.
You can also make calls from the “Redial/Dialed calls (detail)” screen (p.65) or “Received calls (detail)” screen (p.74).

Pressing the switch for 1 second or longer on the phone number entry screen also allows you to make calls.

2 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer when finishing talking

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

● Using the switch to accept calls

1 When a call arrives, press the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch

Pressing the switch with a FOMA terminal folded also enables you to answer calls.

■ **To receive voice calls**

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers a voice call.

■ **To receive videophone calls**

A FOMA terminal emits a short beep and answers a call with the substitute image when the terminal is folded, or with the camera image when the terminal is opened. Selecting “Substitute image” from the function menu switches the camera image to the substitute image.

■ **To answer PushTalk calls**

A FOMA terminal emits the confirmation tone and answers a PushTalk call.

2 Press the switch on the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer when finishing talking

The FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep and ends the call.

NOTE

◆You can set “Earphone” to make a FOMA terminal emit sound such as a ring tone through the earphone and speaker when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected.

◆A ring tone does not sound if “FOMAphone”, “VoIPphone”, “VoIPphone(Public)”, “VoIPphone(Tie line)”, “Videophone” or “PushTalk” under “Ring volume” is set to “Silent” or while in manner mode. However, the beeps sound when “Manner mode set” is set to “Original” in which “Phone vol.” is not “Silent”.

◆If you subscribe to “Call Waiting”, you can answer a call that comes in during another call by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch. You can also switch call mode by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer. However, pressing the switch does not end a call.

◆Do not repeatedly press and release the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch. Doing so may cause a FOMA terminal to automatically answer a call.

<Auto dial setting>

Selecting a Callee for Calls Made with an Earphone Connected

Default setting: OFF

Selecting the other party to call allows you to make voice calls simply by pressing the switch for 1 second or longer when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal.

- You can specify a phone number/SIP address stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.
- Even when a FOMA terminal is folded, you can make voice calls by pressing the switch on a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch for 1 second or longer.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶“Dialing”▶“Auto dial setting”▶“ON”

■ **To not dial automatically**

▶“OFF”

2 Phonebook detail screen (p.124)▶Show a phone number/SIP address to set▶●

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125

NOTE

◆You cannot set a phonebook entry containing no phone number/SIP address, UIM phonebook entry or PushTalk phonebook entry.

◆Deleting the phonebook entry set here disallows you to dial using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch even if you set this function to “ON”.

◆If this function is set to “ON” and the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is used to make a call, the network that will be used may differ depending on the “Setting connect mode”.

- If it is set to DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA) or FOMA Single mode, the call is made as a FOMA voice call.
- If it is set to DUAL mode (Prefer WLAN) or WLAN Single mode, the call is made as a VoIP voice call.

<Automatic answer> MENU94

Automatically Receiving Calls with an Earphone/Microphone Connected

Default setting	Automatic answer: OFF Ring time (seconds): 6 sec.

You can set a FOMA terminal to automatically accept incoming voice calls, videophone calls or PushTalk calls without having to press the switch when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal.

- You cannot automatically accept calls during a voice call, videophone call, PushTalk call or 64K data communication.
- You can automatically accept calls with a FOMA terminal folded.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶“External connection”▶“Automatic answer”▶Select any item

ON	**▶Enter the ring time (001-120 seconds)** Enables the Automatic answer function. A FOMA terminal automatically answers a call after ringing for the specified ring time. Enter the time as a 3-digit number. To set the currently displayed time, press ●.
OFF	Disables the Automatic answer function.

NOTE

◆When a FOMA terminal automatically answers a videophone call, the caller sees the substitute image. Selecting “My side” from the function menu during a videophone call enables you to switch the substitute image to the camera image.

◆The ring time for Automatic answer needs to be different from the one for “Record message” or “Remote monitoring”.

◆To give priority to this function when “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is set at the same time, set a ring time shorter than the one set for Voice Mail or Call Forwarding.

◆If the mute time set in “Ring time(sec.)” is longer than the ring time set for Automatic answer, a FOMA terminal automatically answers calls without ringing. To have the FOMA terminal ring before automatically answering calls, set a longer ring time for Automatic answer than the mute time.

Continued on next page

◆The shorter of the ring times set in “Ring time setting” and “Automatic answer” is applied for Automatic answer performed when a PushTalk call arrives.
◆Connecting an earphone/microphone with switch while a FOMA terminal is ringing does not answer a call automatically. Removing it while a terminal is ringing answers a call automatically.

<Select microphone>

Selecting a Microphone to Use When Connecting an Earphone/Microphone

Default setting: External microphone

You can select which microphone you want to use when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the earphone/microphone terminal on a FOMA terminal.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “External connection” ▶ “Select microphone” ▶ Select any item

Internal microphone	Enables the microphone on a FOMA terminal when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected. Be sure to select this option when connecting an earphone without a microphone.
External microphone	Enables the microphone on the earphone when an earphone/microphone with switch is connected.

NOTE

◆When “Select microphone” is set to “Internal microphone”, the microphone sensitivity is set at the same level as when the hands-free operation is set to ON. You need not put the mouthpiece to your mouth when talking on a FOMA terminal with the earphone/microphone connected.

<NW search mode>

Setting an Operator to Use

Default setting: DoCoMo

* If you wish to use DoCoMo, the settings do not need to be changed.

You can set the name of the operator that supports the FOMA service.

- As of January 2007, no operator other than NTT DoCoMo can be selected in Japan.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Network setting” ▶ “NW search mode” ▶ “Manual” ▶ Select an operator

<Reset settings> MENU23

Resetting Function Settings

This function allows you to reset function settings to default set at the time of purchase.

Do not mistake “Initialize” for “Reset settings”. Selecting “Initialize” will delete all data you have stored. →p.416

- If a FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, “USB mode setting” is not reset to default.
- To reset the i-mode functions to default, perform “Reset” in “i-mode settings”. →p.240
- To reset the mail functions to default, perform “Reset” in “Mail settings”. →p.294
- To reset the full browser functions to default, run “Reset” in “Full Browser settings”. →p.331
- To reset the WLAN settings to default, perform “Delete WLAN setting”. →p.470

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ “Other settings” ▶ “Reset settings” ▶ Enter your security code ▶ “YES”

■ To cancel the reset
▶“NO”

● Functions that will be reset

For more information on the functions to be reset, see “Menu Function List” (p.478). In addition to the functions listed in “Menu Function List”, the following functions will be reset:

Function	Default setting
My picture	
Image list function menu	
• **Sort**	Chronological
Function menu (My picture screen)	
• **Set image disp.**	Normal
i-motion	
i-motion	
• **Volume**	Level 4
Movie list function menu	
• **List setting**	Title + image (FOMA terminal (Phone)), Name + image (miniSD)
• **Sort**	Chronological
i-motion stopped (pause) function menu	
• **Set repeat play**	OFF
• **Set image disp.**	Normal
Melody	
Melody function menu	
• **Set repeat play**	OFF
Chara-den	
Chara-den list/Chara-den player/Rec. Chara-den function menu	
• **Substitute image**	Dimo
• **Set image disp.**	Fit in display
Chara-den list/Chara-den player function menu	
• **Rec. Chara-den**	Photo mode
Rec. Chara-den function menu	
• **Select size**	QCIF (176 × 144)
• **Movie type set**	Video + voice
• **Storage setting**	Normal
• **Storage setting**	Fine
• **File size setting**	Restricted (Short)
My document	
PDF list function menu	
• **Sort**	Chronological
Music	
Music player	
• **Volume**	Level 10
Track list function menu	
• **List setting**	Title
• **Off timer**	90 minutes
Music player function menu	
• **SRS_WOW**	OFF
• **Equalizer set.**	OFF
• **Repeat setting**	OFF

Function	Default setting
Camera	
Movie mode	
• **Select size**	QCIF (176 × 144)
• **File size**	Restricted(Short)
• **Storage setting**	Normal
• **Image quality**	Photo mode: Portrait White balance: Auto Image tuning: Auto
• **Shutter sound**	Sound 1
• **Select to save**	Phone (Camera folder)
Photo mode	
• **Select size**	CIF (352 × 288)
• **Storage setting**	Fine
• **Image quality**	Photo mode: Auto White balance: Auto Image tuning: Auto
• **Shutter sound**	Sound 1
• **Select to save**	Phone (Camera folder)
Movie mode/Photo mode	
• **Camera**	Rear camera
• **Auto timer**	OFF (Seconds: 10 sec.)
• **Auto save set**	OFF
• **File restriction**	File unrestricted
• **Display size**	Actual size
Setting Continuous mode→p.203	
Schedule function menu	
• **Display**	Monthly display
• **User icon settg.**	Not stored
Phonebook function menu	
• **Discern connect**	All OFF
• **Restrictions**	All OFF
• **Big font, Standard font**	Standard font
PushTalk phonebook function menu	
PushTalk setting	
• **Auto answer setting**	OFF
• **Ring time setting**	30 seconds
• **Setting when folded**	Speaker talk
• **Caller ID setting**	OFF
• **Set i-mode arrival act**	PushTalk preferred
• **PushTalk arrival act**	Call Rejection
Own number function menu	
• **Big font, Standard font**	Standard font

Continued on next page

Function	Default setting
Videophone in-call function menu	
• **V.phone settings**	Brightness: 0
• **Display light**	All time ON
Last one function*	
• **Main menu**	Data box
• **Search phonebook**	Search reading
Volume	Level 4
Manner mode	Release
Public mode	Release

*: "Last one function" allows the latest selected function to be pre-selected at the next same operation.

<Initialize>

Resetting FOMA Terminal Functions to Default

Performing this function deletes stored data and returns the function settings to default set at the time of purchase.

Performing "Initialize" deletes all of your important data including phonebook, mail, downloaded images and melodies, i-αppli, PDF data, still images and movies shot with the built-in camera (even protected data).

- If you have deleted the pre-installed Chara-den characters or PDF data, initializing a FOMA terminal restores them.
- Performing Initialize does not delete data that have already been stored at the time of purchase.
- For more information on the default settings to restore, see "Reset settings" (p.414).
- Performing "Initialize" returns the functions and data that are listed below and that can be reset by the "Reset settings" function to default set at the time of purchase:

- Instant message data
- Received IM address
- Sent IM address
- Presence group
- Presence buddy list
- WLAN Browser settings
- WLAN settings
- Mail data
- Mail folders
- Template
- Color palette history
- Chat member for chat mail
- i-mode settings
- Home
- Full Browser settings
- Channel list
- Software list
- i-αppli Auto start set
- i-αppli action info*1
- Call data
- Set time (date/time)
- Style mode
- Pause dial
- Security code
- Clear learned under Character input set
- To Do list
- Schedule
- Text memo
- Play/Erase msg.
- Play/Erase VP msg.
- Voice memo
- Voice announce
- Mail settings
- Bookmark
- Screen memo
- Last URL
- Go to location
- Message
- Access reader
- Bar code reader
- Dictionary
- Chaku-moji Sent messages record
- Additional service
- Multi Number (Number Setting)
- Phonebook
- PushTalk phonebook
- Group setting
- Received calls
- Redial/Dialed calls
- Received address
- Sent address
- Mail member
- Chat group
- Own dictionary
- Download dictionary
- Image data saved for Face authentication
- Sent/rec'd DataList (Data Sec. Service)
- Data added by user*2

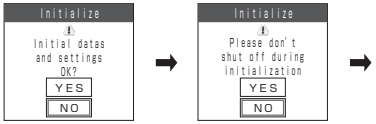
*1: The launch information on an i-αppli that had been preinstalled at the time of purchase is not restored to default (except if it is upgraded or it is deleted once and then downloaded).
*2: Saved data, downloaded data, i-αppli programs, still images or movies shot with the built-in camera, etc.

- The group names, folder names, etc. that you have edited revert to their default names.
- Secret data and data stored in Secret folder are also deleted.
- Ensure that the battery is fully charged before initializing a FOMA terminal. It may not be possible to initialize a FOMA terminal if the battery is low.
- Do not turn a FOMA terminal off while it is being initialized.
- You cannot use any other functions while a FOMA terminal is being initialized. Also, you cannot receive voice calls, videophone calls, PushTalk calls or mails.

- Performing "Initialize" restores a FOMA terminal to default.
  It is recommended to back up your data stored on your FOMA terminal by taking notes or using DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.435), Data Link Software (p.499) and a miniSD memory card (p.362).

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "Other settings" ▶ "Initialize" ▶ Enter your security code

2 "YES" ▶ "YES"





Initialization begins.
Initialization may take several minutes.
When initialization ends, a FOMA terminal is automatically restarted.

■ If initialization is failed

▶Press "OK" after turning a FOMA terminal on
Initialization is performed again.

NOTE

◆Performing initialization deletes i-αppli programs if they:
- had been preinstalled at the time of purchase and were upgraded
- had been preinstalled at the time of purchase and were deleted once and then downloaded
- were downloaded after purchase

You can download the i-αppli programs that had been pre-installed at the time of purchase from the "みんなNらんど" page in the "ケータイ電話メーカー" site. A packet communication charge is applied for download. →p.224

◆After the FOMA terminal functions are reset, i-channel ticker does not appear. When information is automatically updated or you receive the latest information by pressing ch, the ticker appears automatically.

◆Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli and data on the IC card are not deleted.

◆You cannot initialize a FOMA terminal while another function is running.

◆Data saved, stored or set on the FOMA card (UIM) or miniSD memory card are not deleted.

◆Data communication settings specified by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC are not deleted.

◆If there are large amounts of data to be deleted, initialization may take some time.

Network Services

Available Network Services 420
Voice Mail Service 420
Call Waiting Service..... 421
Call Forwarding Service..... 423
Nuisance Call Blocking Service..... 424
Caller ID Request Service 424
Dual Network Service 425
English Guidance..... 425
Service Numbers 426
Handling Incoming Calls While Talking on Another Call..... 426
Setting up Remote Control ..... Remote Control 427
Multi Number 427
Adding and Using Services ..... Additional service 429

This section explains the overview of the network services using the menus on the FOMA terminal. For more details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network services]”.

Available Network Services

Your FOMA terminal provides you with access to the following DoCoMo network services. The table below outlines the available services.

- When you are out of the FOMA service area or in a place where the FOMA reception is poor, you cannot use the services.
- For more details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network services]”.
- For subscription and inquiries, contact the number listed in “For inquiries” on the back cover of this manual.

Service	Sub-scription	Monthly charge	Refer to
Voice Mail	Required	Pay	p.420
Call Waiting	Required	Pay	p.421
Call Forwarding	Required	Free	p.423
Nuisance Call Blocking	Required	Free	p.424
Caller ID Notification	Not required	Free	p.53
Caller ID Request	Not required	Free	p.424
Public mode (Driving mode)	Not required	Free	p.79
Public mode (power off)			p.80
Dual Network	Required	Pay	p.425
English Guidance	Not required	Free	p.425
Multi Number	Required	Pay	p.427
SMS (Short Message)	Not required	Free	p.299

NOTE

- This section explains the overview of the network services using the menus on the FOMA terminal.
- When DoCoMo makes a new network service available, you can add the new service to the menu (Additional service). →p.429

Voice Mail Service

Subscription Required

When you are in a place where the FOMA reception is poor, turning the FOMA terminal off, cannot answer the phone or in Single mode (WLAN), the Voice Mail service announces to a caller who made a FOMA voice or videophone call to a FOMA phone number and keeps a message for you.

- The Voice Mail service only applies to calls made to a FOMA phone number.
- To give priority to the Voice Mail service when “Record message” (p.82) is set at the same time, set a ring time for the Voice Mail service shorter than the one set for the Record message.
- When you do not answer an incoming FOMA voice or videophone call when the Voice Mail service is set to “Activate”, the call is logged as “Missed calls” in the “Received calls” record, and the “Missed calls” desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Basic flow of Voice Mail service

Voice Mail service activated

⬇

Your FOMA terminal receives a FOMA voice/ videophone call

⬇

You cannot answer the call and it is connected to the Voice Mail service center

⬇

The caller records a message

If the caller is in a hurry and wishes to leave a message without listening to the Voice Mail answering message, he or she can interrupt the answering message and switch to message recording mode immediately by pressing [#].

⬇

The Voice Mail service center notifies you that you have a recorded message

⬇

You listen to the recorded message

NOTE

- Up to 20 messages of up to three minutes per message can be recorded for each of FOMA voice call and videophone call. Messages are stored for up to 72 hours.
- If you receive a FOMA voice or videophone call when the Voice Mail service is set to “Activate”, the ring tone specified in “Select ring tone” sounds. You can answer the call while the FOMA terminal is ringing. If you do not answer the call within the specified period of time, it is transferred to the Voice Mail service center.
- Voice mail cannot be connected via videophone at “32K” communication speed.
- When connecting to the voice mail via Chara-den, you cannot perform DTMF operation. Switch to the DTMF transmission mode using the function menu. →p.91

Using the Voice Mail service

1 (MENU)▶(Service)▶“Voice Mail”▶Select any item

Play messages	When you select “YES”, the FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center. Then play your recorded messages by following the audio instructions.
Activate	**▶“YES”▶“YES”▶Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)** If you set the ring time to 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the “Received calls” record.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Voice Mail service.
Set ring time	**▶Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)** Changes the ring time only.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings. • Function menu (Check setting screen) displayed when you select “Check setting”→p.421
Setting	When you select “YES”, follows the voice instructions to change the settings. The FOMA terminal calls the Voice Mail service center. Hereafter, follow the voice instructions.
Check messages	Checks for voice messages. Afterwards, you receive a message indicating that checking is completed.
Message notification*	Sounds the exclusive notification tone when the Voice Mail service center receives another voice message. The volume is fixed to “Level 2”.
Erase icon	Deletes the icon “(1)” (Voice Mail) on the standby screen.
Activate notice call	When you receive a call while the FOMA terminal is out of the FOMA service area or is turned off, this service sends you an SMS (p.300) notifying you of the information about the call (the date and time, caller ID) once you turn the FOMA terminal back on or move back into the FOMA service area.
• **All Calls**	Notifies you of all calls.
• **Calls with Caller ID**	Notifies you of only calls with caller ID.
Deactivate notice call	Deactivates call notification.
Notice call status	Displays the current call notification settings.

*: The option is available only for FOMA voice call messages.

NOTE

<Play messages><Setting>

◆If you press keys ([0] to [9], [*], [#]) following the voice instructions, a call may not end even if [☎] is pressed. In this case, press [☎] again.

◆To change the settings for the videophone on the voice mail, make a FOMA voice call to “1412”.

<Activate>

◆If the mute time set for “FOMAphone” in “Ring time(sec.)” (p.188) is longer than the ring time for the Voice Mail service, the ring tone does not sound and the Voice Mail service launches. To make the ring tone sound before the Voice Mail service launches, set the ring time for the Voice Mail service longer than the mute time.

<Check messages>

◆If you have recorded messages stored at the Voice Mail service center, the “(1)” (Voice Mail icon) and “(VM)” (“Voice Mail” desktop icon) appear on the standby screen. However, if the videophone messages are stored, an SMS will notify, not the icon.

◆The number in the Voice Mail icon changes according to the number of stored messages (“(1)”, “(2)”, “(3)”… “(+)” (10 messages or more)).
The number of messages shown indicates the number of newly stored messages and does not include saved messages.

◆The messages that arrive at the Voice Mail service center after you check for messages may not be included in the number shown in the Voice Mail icon.

<Erase icon>

◆Clearing the icon does not delete the corresponding recorded messages. The Voice Mail icon appears again when you check for messages.

<Activate notice call>

◆Call logs are notified even with “Reject all” set for SMS.

◆One SMS notifies up to five call logs.

◆The setting and notification (SMS reception) charge is free.

Function menu (Check setting screen)

Activate	Activates the Voice Mail service.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Voice Mail service.
Set ring time	Changes the ring time.

Call Waiting Service

Subscription Required

When you receive a FOMA voice call while on another FOMA voice call, the Call Waiting service notifies you with a ring tone during the call and enables you to answer the new FOMA voice call putting the current call on hold. You can also use this service to put the current FOMA voice call on hold and make a new FOMA voice call to someone else.

Continued on next page

● To use Call Waiting, select “Answer” in “In-call arrival act” (p.426) beforehand. If another item is selected, you will not be able to answer a FOMA voice call received while on another FOMA voice call even if Call Waiting is activated.

NOTE

◆Call charge is applied to a caller while a call is on hold.

◆If Call Waiting is activated and “In-call arrival act” is set to “Answer”, you can answer a videophone call received while on a FOMA voice call or answer a FOMA voice or videophone call received while on a videophone call. However, you need to end the current FOMA voice call or videophone call (you cannot hold the current call).→p.426

Using the Call Waiting service

1 MENU▶Service▶“Call Waiting”▶Select any item

Activate	Activates the Call Waiting service.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Call Waiting service.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

NOTE

<Activate>

◆If you receive a FOMA voice call while another FOMA voice call is on hold, the hold is released and you return to the first call. If you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps), pressing ☎ or ● automatically puts the first call on hold and connects to the second FOMA voice call.

Putting the current FOMA voice call on hold to answer a newly received FOMA voice call

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press ☎ or ●

Your initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal answers the new FOMA voice call.



2 Switch back to the first call

■ **To end the call with the second caller**

▶☎▶☎ or ●

This ends the call with the second caller and returns you to the first call.

■ **To put the second call on hold**

▶☎

This puts the second call on hold and returns you to the first call.

You can switch between the two calls by pressing ☎.

You can also switch the calls by selecting “Change held call” from the function menu.

■ **To end a FOMA voice call on hold**

▶i (FUNC)▶“End held call”

NOTE

◆If you receive another FOMA voice call while the “Multi calling” is shown, a message appears indicating that you can answer the new call by ending the FOMA voice call you are on or held FOMA voice call. To end the held FOMA voice call and answer the incoming call, press ●, select “End held call” from the function menu and then press ☎ or ●. To end the FOMA voice call you are on and answer the incoming call, press ● then ☎, after that press ☎ or ●.

Ending the current FOMA voice call to answer a newly received FOMA voice call

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press ☎

The first call ends and the ring tone sounds.

2 ☎ or ●

The FOMA terminal answers the newly received FOMA voice call.

Putting the current FOMA voice call on hold to make a new FOMA voice call to someone else

You can put your current FOMA voice call on hold and make a new FOMA voice call to someone else.

1 Dial another phone number during a call▶☎

The initial call is automatically put on hold and the FOMA terminal switches to the new call.

You can also make a call by searching the phonebook.

Searching the phonebook →p.124



2 Switch back to the first call

■ **To end the new call**

▶☎▶☎ or ●

This ends the new call and returns you to the first call.

■ **To put the new call on hold**

▶[☎]

This puts the new call on hold and returns you to the first call.
You can switch between the two calls by pressing [☎].
You can also switch the calls by selecting "Change held call" from the function menu.

■ **To end a FOMA voice call on hold**

▶[i] (FUNC)▶"End held call"

NOTE

◆If you receive another FOMA voice call while the "Multi calling" is shown, a message appears indicating that you can answer the new call by ending the FOMA voice call you are on or held FOMA voice call. To end the held FOMA voice call and answer the incoming call, press [●], select "End held call" from the function menu and then press [☎] or [●]. To end the FOMA voice call you are on and answer the incoming call, press [●] then [☎], after that press [☎] or [●].

Call Forwarding Service

Subscription Required

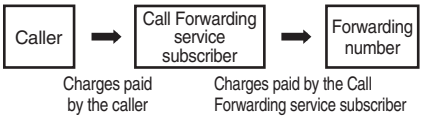
The Call Forwarding service forwards a FOMA voice or videophone call when you are in a place where the FOMA reception is poor, turning the FOMA terminal off, do not answer the phone within the set ring time or in Single mode (WLAN).

- The Call Forwarding service only applies to calls made to a FOMA phone number.
- To give priority to the Call Forwarding service when "Record message" (p.82) is set at the same time, set a ring time for the Call Forwarding service shorter than the one set for Record message.
- When you do not answer an incoming FOMA voice or videophone call when the Call Forwarding service is set to "Activate", the call is logged as "Missed calls" in the "Received calls" record, and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding service

Call Forwarding number registered
↓
Call Forwarding service activated
↓
Your FOMA terminal receives a FOMA voice or videophone call
↓
If you do not answer the FOMA voice or videophone call, it is automatically forwarded to the specified number

Call Forwarding service call charges



NOTE

◆You can answer an incoming call while the FOMA terminal is ringing even if you set the Call Forwarding service to "Activate".

Using the Call Forwarding service

1 [MENU]▶[Service]▶"Call Forwarding"▶

Select any item

Activate	Register a forwarding number and set the ring time, and then select "Activate".
• **Register fwd number**	▶**Enter a forwarding number** Use [☆] to enter the number from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method) →p.125 Once you set the number, a star "★" appears next to "Register fwd number".
• **Set ring time**	▶**Enter the ring time (000-120 seconds)** Once you set the time, a star "★" appears next to "Set ring time". If you set the ring time to 0 (zero) seconds, received calls are not logged in the "Received calls" record.
• **Activate**	Activates the Call Forwarding service.
Deactivate	Deactivates the Call Forwarding service.
Change forwarding No	Changes the forwarding number only. Enter the new forwarding number, select "Change forwarding No" if the Call Forwarding service is already activated, or select "Change No.+Activate" if the service is deactivated.
Fwd number busy*	Connects a received FOMA voice call to the Voice Mail service center when the forwarding number is busy.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

*: You are required to subscribe to the "Voice Mail" service.

NOTE

◆If you have already set a forwarding number, you can omit the steps for "Register fwd number" and "Set ring time".

◆To give priority to the Call Forwarding service when "Remote monitoring" is set at the same time, set the ring time for the Call Forwarding service shorter than the one set for "Remote monitoring".

Continued on next page

◆If the mute time set for “FOMAphone” in “Ring time(sec.)” is longer than the ring time for the Call Forwarding service, the ring tone does not sound and the Call Forwarding service launches. To make the ring tone sound before the Call Forwarding service launches, set the ring time for the Call Forwarding service longer than the mute time.

Setting or canceling the Call Forwarding guidance message

1 On the standby screen▶1 4 2 9▶Make a FOMA voice call

Follow the voice instructions.
For more details, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [Network services]”.

Nuisance Call Blocking Service

Subscription Required

You can register to block receiving “nuisance calls”. Once you have registered a phone number, the calls from the number are automatically rejected and a message is sent to the caller.

- You can register a phone number for the Nuisance Call Blocking service only if the call is made to your FOMA phone number.
- Even if you receive a call from the number registered, the ring tone does not sound and the call is not recorded in the “Received calls” record.

NOTE

◆When you receive a PushTalk call from a caller registered for the Nuisance Call Blocking service, the call is disconnected without sending the call rejection message to the caller.

Using the Nuisance Call Blocking service

1 MENU▶Service▶“Nuisance Call Blk”▶Select any item

Register Caller	**▶“YES”▶“OK”** Adds the last caller to your list of barred callers.
Register number	**▶Enter or quote a phone number▶“YES”▶“OK”** Directly enters the number or quote it from the phonebook, Redial or Received calls record. • Enter a part of the number then press ○, and you can enter the number by searching the phonebook. • Use ○ to enter the number from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125 • Press ○ to search the Received calls record, ○ to search the Redial record to enter the number.
Delete last entry	**▶“YES”▶“OK”** Deletes the last registered number. Repeat the same procedure to delete the numbers one by one starting from the last registered one.
Delete all entries	**▶“YES”▶“OK”** Deletes all the barred numbers in the list.
The number of entries	Checks the number of barred callers.

NOTE

<Register number>

◆You cannot quote a phone number from the Received calls or Redial record of PushTalk call to register a barred caller.

Caller ID Request Service

Subscription Not required

When you receive a FOMA voice or videophone call from a caller who does not show his or her phone number (caller ID), the Caller ID Request service sends a message which requests the caller to show the phone number and then automatically disconnects the call.

- The Caller ID Request service only applies to calls made to a FOMA phone number.
- Calls rejected by the Caller ID Request service are not logged in the “Received calls” record and no “Missed calls” desktop icon appears.

Using the Caller ID Request service

1 MENU▶Service▶“Caller ID Request”▶Select any item

Activate	**▶“YES”▶“OK”** Activates the Caller ID Request service.

Deactivate	**▶"YES"▶"OK"** Deactivates the Caller ID Request service.
Check setting	Displays the current service settings.

NOTE

◆If a PushTalk call without the caller ID arrives, the call is disconnected without sending the message.

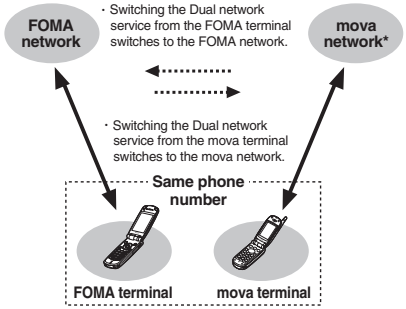
Dual Network Service

Subscription Required

You can use a mova terminal with the FOMA phone number of your FOMA terminal. You can choose to use FOMA or mova depending on which service area you are in.

- You cannot access the networks from both FOMA and mova terminals at the same time.
- Use a deactivated terminal to switch the Dual Network service mode.

Overview of the Dual Network service



*: Some services are not available.

NOTE

◆For accessing from a mova terminal and other details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

Using the Dual Network service

1 (MENU)▶Service▶"Dual Network"▶Select any item

Dual Network switching	**▶"YES"▶Enter your network security code** Switches from mova terminal to FOMA terminal.
Check setting	Checks whether the FOMA terminal can access the services.

NOTE

<Dual Network switching>

◆End communication of the active terminal before switching the networks.

English Guidance

Subscription Not required

This function enables you to set English as the language for audio messages given when setting network services such as "Voice Mail" or when you are out of the FOMA service area.

Item	Setting	Guidance language
Outgoing call (including guidance messages for network service settings)	Japanese	Japanese
	English	English
Incoming call (guidance messages played for callers)	Japanese	Japanese
	Japanese+ English	Plays in Japanese first and then in English.
	English+ Japanese	Plays in English first and then in Japanese.

NOTE

◆For the guidance message given during a call between DoCoMo mobile phones, the caller's setting for outgoing calls takes priority over the receiver's setting for incoming calls.

Using the English Guidance

1 (MENU)▶Service▶"English Guidance"▶Select any item

Guidance setting	Sets the guidance language.
• **Outgoing+ Incoming**	Sets the language used for outgoing and incoming calls.
• **Outgoing call**	Sets the language used for outgoing calls.
• **Incoming call**	Sets the language used for incoming calls.
Check setting	Check the current guidance settings.

Service Numbers

This function enables you to call the DoCoMo general inquiries or technical inquiries.

- The options below may not appear or different options may appear depending on the FOMA card you are using.

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ **“Service Numbers”** ▶ **Select any item**

ドコモ故障問合せ	Calls the DoCoMo technical inquiries.
ドコモ総合案内・受付	Calls the DoCoMo general inquiries.

NOTE

◆If inquiries are not displayed, it is recommended that you store the contact numbers described on the back cover of this manual in the phonebook.

Handling Incoming Calls While Talking on Another Call

You can specify how to handle a FOMA voice, videophone or 64K data communication call that arrives during another call if you have subscribed to “Voice Mail”, “Call Forwarding” or “Call Waiting” service.

- If you have not subscribed to “Voice Mail”, “Call Forwarding” or “Call Waiting” service, you cannot answer a call that arrives during another call.
- To use “In-call arrival act”, set “Set in-call arrival” to “Activate”.

Specifying how to handle incoming calls while on another call <In-call arrival act>

Default setting: Answer

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ **“In-call arrival act”** ▶ **Select any item**

Voice Mail	Transfers a FOMA voice or videophone call received while on another call to the Voice Mail service center regardless of the “Call Waiting” and “Voice Mail” service settings.
Call Forwarding	Transfers a FOMA voice or videophone call received while on another call to the forwarding number regardless of the “Call Waiting” and “Call Forwarding” service settings.
Call Rejection	Rejects a FOMA voice, videophone or 64K data communication call received while on another call.
Answer	“Call Waiting” is available when you receive a FOMA voice call while on another FOMA voice call if “Call Waiting” is set to “Activate”. If you are on a FOMA voice (with “Call Waiting” set to “Deactivate”), videophone or 64K data communication call, you can handle an incoming call in one of the following ways: • Ending the FOMA voice, videophone or 64K data communication call in progress and answering the new FOMA voice, videophone or 64K data communication call • Manually handling a FOMA voice, videophone or 64K data communication call received while on another call using the function menu →p.427 • If “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service is set to “Activate”, calls are handled according to the settings of the corresponding service.

Activating/Deactivating “In-call arrival act” <Set in-call arrival>

1 MENU ▶ Service ▶ **“Set in-call arrival”** ▶ **Select any item**

Activate	Activates “In-call arrival act”.
Deactivate	Deactivates “In-call arrival act”.
Check setting	Shows the current setting.

Ending a call or 64K data communication in progress to answer a new call

● When a call in progress and incoming call are the same type

<Example: To end a FOMA voice call in progress to answer a new FOMA voice call>

1 **When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press** ☎

This ends the call in progress and the FOMA terminal starts ringing.

■ **For videophone or 64K data communication call**

A message indicating that you can answer the new call by ending the call in progress appears. ▶●▶☎

2 ☎ **or** ●

This accepts the incoming FOMA voice call.

■ **For 64K data communication call**

▶Take the call on a PC

● When a call in progress and incoming call are different types

If you receive a videophone or 64K data communication call while on a FOMA voice call, if you receive a FOMA voice or 64K data communication call while on a videophone call, or if you receive a FOMA voice or videophone call during 64K data communication, use the procedure below to end the call or 64K data communication in progress so that you can answer the incoming call.

<Example: To end a videophone call in progress to answer an incoming FOMA voice call>

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call and a message* appears, press ●

When you receive a 64K data communication call, a message appears without the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps).

*: A message indicating that you can answer the new call by ending the call in progress appears.

2 ch (MULTI)▶ch (MULTI) or ◇ to select "Connecting V-phone" and press ●▶☎

3 ☎ or ●

Manually rejecting calls or transferring calls to Call Forwarding or Voice Mail service

<Example: When "Set in-call arrival" is set to "Activate" and "In-call arrival act" set to "Answer">

1 When you hear the double tones (repeated soft double-beeps) during a call, press i (FUNC)

■ **When you receive a call other than FOMA voice call while on a FOMA voice call**
▶●▶i (FUNC)

2 Select how to handle the incoming call

■ **To reject an incoming call**
▶"Call Rejection"

■ **To forward an incoming call to the forwarding number**
▶"Call Forwarding"

■ **To transfer an incoming call to the Voice Mail service center**
▶"Voice Mail"

With any of the above procedures, you can return to your initial call.

<Remote Control>

Setting up Remote Control

This function enables you to use the "Voice Mail" and "Call Forwarding" services, etc. from a touch-tone general subscriber phone, pay phone or DoCoMo mobile phone.

1 MENU▶Service▶"Remote Control"▶ Select any item

Activate	Activates the remote control.
Deactivate	Deactivates the remote control.
Check setting	Displays the current remote control settings.

NOTE

◆For how to operate a network service from a pay phone, etc., see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

Multi Number

Subscription Required

Besides Basic Number, you can add up to two numbers (Additional Number 1 and 2) as FOMA phone numbers of your FOMA terminal.

- If you remove or replace a FOMA card, the Multi Number settings (such as name and phone number) stored in the FOMA terminal may be erased. If this happens, register them again.
- The name corresponding to Multi Number (Basic Number, Additional Number 1 or 2) appears on the dialing or receiving screen.
- When you dial using the Redial/Dialed calls or Received calls record, the Multi Number logged in the record appears on the screen and will be used for dialing.

NOTE

◆Additional Numbers are notified when you subscribed to Multi Number.
◆For details about Multi Number, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".
◆Selecting a number in "Set Multi Number" enables you to use the specified phone number for all calls you will make.
◆You can also switch phone number each time making a call. →p.428
◆You can receive FOMA voice, videophone or 64K data communication calls that are made to Additional Number 1 or 2. You can also set a ring tone for each number. →p.428

Continued on next page

◆When you make a call selecting “Multi Number” from the function menu, the item selected when making a call (“Basic Number” or the name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) is displayed on the Redial (detail) or Dialed calls (detail) screen even if you have not subscribed to “Multi Number”.
If you make a call without using the function menu, only the dialing phone number is displayed on the Redial (detail) or Dialed calls (detail) screen.
◆When you make a call using the Redial/Dialed calls record, the item selected the last time you made a call (“Basic Number” or the name of Additional Number 1 or 2) is displayed in the record, and the call is made from that number. However, if only the dialing phone number is displayed in the record, the call is made from the number set in “Set Multi Number” (p.428) setting.
◆When you make a call using the Received calls record, the call is made from the number logged in the record regardless of the “Set Multi Number” (p.428) setting.
◆When a call is received by Additional Number 1 or 2, the name of Additional Number 1 or 2 is displayed on the Receiving screen or Received calls (detail) screen.
◆If a call is received by Additional Number 1 or 2 in Public mode (Driving mode), the operation performed is the same as that of Basic Number. →p.79

Using the Multi Number

1 (MENU)▶(Service)▶“Multi Number”▶Select any item

Set Multi Number	Sets a phone number to be used for making a call normally.
• **Basic Number**	Sets your contracted number (Basic Number) to be used for making a call.
• **Additional Number1***	Sets the additional number to be used for making a call.
• **Additional Number2***	
Check setting	Checks the “Set Multi Number” setting.
Number Setting	**▶Highlight an item to register (or change) an additional number and press (Edit)▶Enter a name▶Enter an additional number** Registers the additional number you were notified when you applied for Multi Number to the FOMA terminal. A name can contain up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters. An additional number can contain up to 26 digits. • The Multi Number setting function menu displayed when you select “Number Setting” →p.428
Select ring tone	Sets the ring tones for Additional Number 1 and 2. “Changing Ring Tones” →p.138

*: The respective names are displayed if the names have been changed.

NOTE

<Number Setting>
◆The name is displayed when you make the Multi Number settings, select a phone number to use for each call, etc.

<Select ring tone>
◆When the ring tone settings are duplicated, a FOMA terminal acts according to the priority assigned. →p.140

Function menu (Multi Number setting screen)

Edit	Sets an additional number.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted additional number.
Delete all	Deletes all the registered additional numbers.

Switching phone number each time making a call

When making a call, you can select a phone number to be used for the call.

1 Phone number entry screen (p.56)▶ (FUNC)▶“Multi Number”▶Select any item

Basic Number	Sets your contracted number (Basic Number) to be used for making a call.
Additional Number1*	Sets the additional number to be used for making a call.
Additional Number2*	
Cancel number	Cancels the setting to restore the “Set Multi Number” setting.

*: The respective names are displayed if the names have been changed.

NOTE

◆You can also switch phone number using the procedures above from the function menu of Phonebook detail, Redial/Dialed/Received calls detail screen.
◆When you make a call by selecting the “Multi Number” from the function menu, the dialed number is displayed on the dialing screen with the suffix “✗590#” for Basic Number, “✗591#” for Additional Number1 or “✗592#” for Additional Number2.
◆When the Redial/Dialed/Received calls detail screen shows the name of Multi Number (“Basic Number” or the name of Additional Number1 or Additional Number2) and you would like to make a call using the different number from the displayed Multi Number name, select an item from “Multi Number” on the function menu.

<Additional service>

Adding and Using Services

When DoCoMo offers new and additional network services, this function allows you to add the services to a menu.

Adding additional service and response message

1 (MENU)▶Service▶"Additional service"▶ Select any item

Additional service	**▶Highlight "<Not stored>" and Press (FUNC)▶"Add new service"▶Enter a service name** Adds a new service. A service name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. • The Additional service function menu displayed when you select "Additional service"→p.429
• **Enter number**	**▶Enter a number▶"YES"** Uses the Enter number to connect. The number can contain up to 20 digits.
• **Enter USSD number**	**▶Enter a number▶"YES"** Uses the service code to connect. The number can contain up to 40 digits.
Additional guidance	**▶Highlight "<Not stored>" and press (FUNC)▶"Add new guidance"▶Enter a command▶Enter a response message▶"YES"** Stores response messages for commands posted from the network when using "service code (USSD)" to access an added service. A command can contain up to 20 digits. A message can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. • The Additional guidance function menu displayed when you select "Additional guidance"→p.429

NOTE

◆When a new network service is provided, you will be notified of the "Enter number" or "service code" that you need in order to use the new service. Register the "Enter number" or "service code" on your FOMA terminal along with the service name.
◆You can add up to 10 new network services.
◆Enter a "service code" in the "Enter USSD number" field on the screen for adding new services.

<Additional service>
◆To add a service, enter the "Enter number" or "service code" provided by DoCoMo. The "Enter number" is the number used to connect to the service center. The "service code (USSD)" is the code to notify the service center.

Function menu (Additional service screen/Additional guidance screen)

Add new service, Add new guidance	Adds a setting.
Edit	Changes the setting.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted service or message.
Delete all	Deletes all services or messages.

Using the newly added service

1 (MENU)▶Service▶"Additional service"▶ "Additional service"

2 Select a service▶●

Data Communication

Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal..... 432
Before Using..... 433
Checking the Procedure..... 434
AT Commands..... 434
CD-ROM..... 435
DoCoMo Keitai Datalink..... 435

For details on data communication, see “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF) in the bundled CD-ROM.
To view the “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF), Adobe Reader (recommend version 6.0 or later) is required. If the software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the same CD-ROM. Refer the Adobe Reader Help for details.

Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

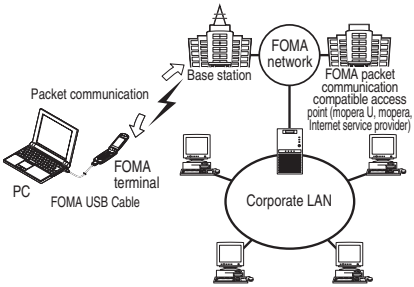
Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and a PC is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

- Packet communication
  Data is received at the maximum 384kbps and sent at the maximum 64kbps. Packet communication is charged depending on the amount of data sent and received regardless of its time or distance. The communication fee will be expensive when a large file is sent and received. It is possible to access a corporate LAN connected to the FOMA network and exchange data.
- 64K data communication
  Data can be sent and received at the stable 64kbps. It is charged depending on how long the line is connected regardless of the amount of data.

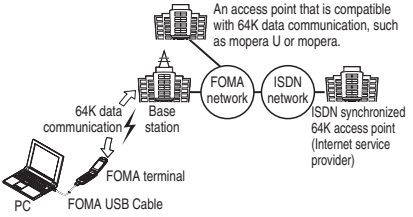
■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.
Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication such as DoCoMo Internet connection service, “mopera U” or “mopera”.



■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.
Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication such as DoCoMo Internet connection service, “mopera U” or “mopera”.



Notice before using

- Data communication is not supported for using the WLAN function of the FOMA terminal.

Internet service provider fees

You may need to pay user fees to your Internet service provider to use the Internet. This fee should be paid directly to the service provider separate from the FOMA service charges. Contact your Internet service provider for details.
DoCoMo Internet service, “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service to which you need to subscribe. “mopera” is a free service to which you don’t need to subscribe.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronous 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. In that case, use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. Your ID and password will be given by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact them for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

When using FirstPass compliant websites on your browser, you need FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization. Install the FirstPass PC software from the bundled CD-ROM and make the settings. For more information, refer to the “FirstPassManual” (PDF) contained in the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder on the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is in Japanese only.)
To view the “FirstPassManual” (PDF), Adobe Reader (recommend version 6.0 or later) is required. If the software is not installed on your PC, you can download it from the same CD-ROM. Refer the Adobe Reader Help for details.

● Data communication glossary

Administrator privilege
If you don't have this privilege on Windows 2000 or Windows XP, the access is limited and you cannot install/uninstall drivers or applications.

APN (Access Point Name)
A string to identify your Internet service provider, a corporate LAN, etc. on packet communication. For example, the mopera U APN is "mopera.net".

cid (Context Identifier)
A number to register an APN for packet communication into the FOMA terminal. It is like a memory number in a phonebook and can register from 1 to 10.

DNS (Domain Name System)
A system that converts a domain name such as "nttdocomo.co.jp" to an IP address (a complicated number string) so that a computer can easily manage it.

OBEX (Object Exchange)
An international standard (protocol) of data communication defined by IrDA. Use OBEX-enabled devices or software to transfer data between various information devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

QoS (Quality of Service)
Service quality of network communication speed. You can set the QoS of the FOMA terminal with any speed or the highest speed only.

W-TCP
TCP parameter to make the most of TCP/IP transmission capability during packet communication on the FOMA network. This setting is required to make the most of the FOMA terminal's communication capability.

Before Using

Operating environment

The following table shows the operating environment to use data communication:

PC	• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive • USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) • Recommend a display resolution of 800 dots wide x 600 dots high and a High Color (more than 65,536 colors)
OS*1	• Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese edition)
Memory	• Windows 2000: 64M bytes or higher*2 • Windows XP: 128M bytes or higher*2
Hard disk space	• 5M bytes or higher*2

*1: The operation of the upgraded operating system is not included in the warranty.
*2: The required memory size and hard disk space may be different according to the system configuration.

NOTE

◆You can perform data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal with the DoCoMo PDA, "musea", "sigmarion Ⅱ" or "sigmarion Ⅲ". "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅱ" is required to be updated in doing so. For information on how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
◆The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.
◆The FOMA terminal is not compatible with FAX communication.

Required devices

In addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, the following hardware and software are required:
• "FOMA USB Cable (optional)" or "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional)"
• "FOMA N902iL CD-ROM" (bundled)

NOTE

◆Purchase the dedicated "FOMA USB Cable" or "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01". A USB cable for a PC is not available because the shape of the connector is different.
◆"FOMA USB Cable" is regarded as described in this manual.

Checking the Procedure

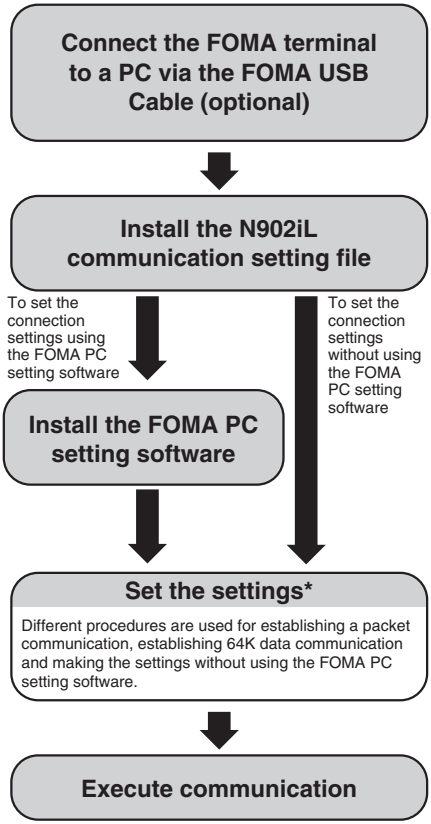
Data communication can connect to the Internet service provider and LAN which support FOMA data communication with a dial-up connection.

■ **For "FOMA N902iL CD-ROM" (bundled)**

- The CD-ROM contains the N902iL communication setting file (driver), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
- The N902iL communication setting file is the software (driver) required to perform packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX) by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC via the FOMA USB Cable (optional). Installing the N902iL communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows. Use the FOMA PC setting software to easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication, and establish a dial-up connection.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes the preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



*: To use the Internet with the FOMA terminal and a PC connected, "mopera U" (subscription required) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are only charged for a month when you use the service. "mopera" (no subscription required) allows you to access the Internet immediately.

AT Commands

AT commands are used to control the modem, etc. This FOMA terminal is compatible with AT commands. In addition, this FOMA terminal supports some extended commands and its own AT commands.

To use AT commands to set up the FOMA terminal's functions on a PC, see "Manual for Data Communication" (PDF) on the bundled CD-ROM.

CD-ROM

The bundled CD-ROM contains a software used on data communication with FOMA terminal, “Manual for Data Communication” and the “Kuten Code List” manual (PDF). For more detail, see the bundled CD-ROM.

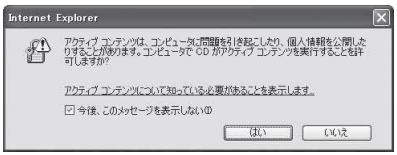
Contained applications/ PDF documents

The bundled CD-ROM contains the following applications/PDF documents.

- N902iL通信設定ファイル (N902iL communication setting file)
- FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC setting software)
- Guide to DoCoMo keitai datalink
- Guide to FOMA N902iL Data Link Software
- FirstPass PCソフト (FirstPass PC software)
- “Manual for Data Communication” (PDF)
- “Kuten Code List” (PDF)
- Adobe® Reader® 7.0
- Guide to moperaU

When the CD-ROM is inserted to the PC, the following warning screen may appear. This warning screen is displayed according to the security setting of the Internet Explorer. There is no problem using the software.
Click “はい” (Yes).

* This screen is an example when using Windows XP. The warning screen may differ depending on the environments of your PC.



DoCoMo Keitai Datalink

“DoCoMo keitai datalink” is software that allows you to back up your “phonebook” entries, “mail” messages, etc. and edit the data on your PC. For more details and the download, visit the following DoCoMo website. You can also access the website from the bundled CD-ROM:

http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/

The above software and website are only available in Japanese.

For details such as how to download/install/ operate the software, transferable data, operating environment and restrictions, see the website above. For how to operate the software after it is installed, see the help. To use “DoCoMo keitai datalink”, you need to purchase the “FOMA USB Cable (optional)”.

Entering Text

Entering Text 438
Editing and Storing Common Phrases ..... Common phrases 447
Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text 448
Using Kuten Codes 448
Storing Frequently Used Words ..... Own dictionary 449
Resetting the Learning Record ..... Clear learned 449
Using Downloaded Dictionaries ..... Download dictionary 449
Changing the Active Window 450

For “Kuten Code List”, see the PDF “Kuten Code List” in the bundled CD-ROM.
To view the “Kuten Code List” (PDF), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If the software is not installed on your PC, you can install it from the CD-ROM. See the Adobe Reader Help for details.

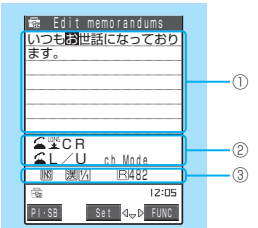
Entering Text

Use dial keys to enter text on the FOMA terminal. The text entry function is used to create a phonebook entry, compose a message, etc.

- The text entry method is divided into “Mode 1(5-touch)”, “Mode 2(2-touch)” and “Mode 3(T9 input)”.

Text entry (edit) screen

The text entry (edit) screen consists of the following areas: ①text entry, ②operation guidance and ③information display. The text entry area shows text being entered, the cursor and the end mark. The operation guidance area shows operations that can be currently performed, such as conversion, search and highlight. The information display area shows information such as text entry mode, input mode and remaining character count.



Text entry (edit)

Function menu➡p.446

① **Text entry area**

■: Cursor. Text is entered at this location.

◀: End mark. Text can be entered up to this mark. The location of the end mark varies depending on the function being used.

② **Operation guidance area**

▲▼ CHG: Indicates that ◇ can be used for conversion.→p.442

▲▼ All/▲▼ Search: Indicates that ◇ can be used to search on the Search phonebook screen.→p.125

☒ Fix mode/☒ Fix END: Indicates that Fix mode can be used in “Mode 3 (T9 input)”.→p.441

◀▶▲▼ Area: Appears when you copy (or cut) text.→p.448

CR: Indicates that you can insert a line-feed symbol “↵” by holding down ☎ for 1 second or longer.→p.444

L／U: Indicates that ☎ can be used to switch between upper case and lower case.→p.443

AA→aa: Indicates that “Mode 3 (T9 input)” can be release by pressing ☎.→p.440

aa→Aa: Indicates that Mode3 (T9 input) can be switched to “Shift mode” by pressing ☎.→p.440

Aa→AA: Indicates that “Mode 3 (T9 input)” can be switched to “CapsLock mode” by pressing ☎.→p.440

ホーム Back: Indicates that you can return to the previous character assigned to the same key by pressing ⌂ (Home) when the text entry method is “Mode 1(5-touch)”.

ch Mode: Indicates that the Input mode can be switched by pressing ch.→p.439

③ **Information display area**

2 / 予: Indicates that the text entry method is “Mode 2(2-touch)” (p.440) or “Mode 3(T9 input)” (p.440). No icon appears in “Mode 1(5-touch)”.

FIX: Indicates that “Fix mode” is selected in “Mode 3 (T9 input)”.→p.441

INS / OVR: “INS” indicates Insert mode and “OVR” Overwrite mode.→p.443

日 / 123 / 漢 / 打: Indicates the current input mode when the text entry method is “Mode 1(5-touch)” or “Mode 3(T9 input)”.

☒: Appears in “Kuten code input mode”.→p.448

½ / 1/1: “1/2” appears when entering single-byte and “1/1” appears when entering double-byte text.→pp.439, 440

Sm: Appears when entering lower case in “Mode 1 (5-touch)” or “Mode 2 (2-touch)”.→p.443

Shift / CAPS LOCK: Indicates that “Shift mode” or “CapsLock mode” is selected in “Mode 3 (T9 input)”.→p.440

R: Indicates the remaining number of characters that can be entered in bytes. A single-byte character is counted as 1 byte and a double-byte character is counted as 2 bytes. In other words, a double-byte character is equal to two single-byte characters.

入: Indicates the number of characters that have been entered when you are composing an SMS, instant message or adding entries to the UIM phonebook. No distinction is made between double-byte and single-byte characters.

NOTE

- ◆When you compose an i-mode message, pressing the keypads displays the Text entry (edit) screen and allows you to use functions such as kuten code input and word prediction.
- ◆In addition to the keys, Access reader and Bar code reader are available to enter text.

■ The numbers of characters remaining and entered

Characters shown on the text entry (edit) screen are counted according to the rules listed below. On the text entry (edit) screen, the end mark “◀” appears as an approximate guide indicating that you can enter characters up to the location in the current function.

- A single-byte character is counted as 1 byte and a double-byte character is counted as 2 bytes.

● A double-byte character is equal to two single-byte characters.

Double-byte: ＡＢＣＤＥ 5 characters (counted as 10 bytes)

Single-byte: ABCDEFGHIJ 10 characters (counted as 10 bytes)

■ Character combinations

Take care with character combinations when entering text.

<Example> Entering "ﾄﾞｺｴ" in single-byte kana input mode and "の携帯電話" in Kanji/Hiragana input mode

ﾄﾞｺｴの携帯電話 (9 characters when shown on the screen)

11112222 2 (count as 14 bytes, equivalent to 14 single-byte characters)

● Single-byte dakuten "ﾞ" and han-dakuten "ﾟ" are each counted as 1 character.

■ Scrolling

On the text entry (edit) screen, use ◉ to scroll by line, or ▼ (Memo/Check) or ▲ (Home) to scroll by page.

On the conversion candidate list screen, use ◉ to scroll by line, or ⟲, ▼ (Memo/Check) or ▲ (Home) to scroll by page.

Selecting the text entry method MENU35

Default setting	Input mode: Mode 1(5-touch)

There are three methods to enter text:

● Mode 1(5-touch)→p.439
Several characters are assigned to a key, and a character being entered changes each time you press the key.

● Mode 2(2-touch)→p.440
Characters are entered using a combination of two number keys.

● Mode 3(T9 input)→p.440
Candidates assigned to a key appear each time you press the key, and you can select any of the candidates.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"Input mode"▶Select any item

● Changing the text entry method while entering text

When the text entry (edit) screen appears, your preferred text entry method is selected. There are 2 ways to change to another method.

● Switching the text entry method is only a temporary change. Once you end the text entry then display the text entry (edit) screen, your preferred text entry method is reselected.

● The text entry method may not be switched for some specific text entry such as postal code.

■ Using the function menu

"CHG input method" under the text entry (edit) function menu→p.446

■ Pressing ✉ (PI·SB) for 1 second or longer

The text entry method changes in "Mode 1(5-touch)"→"Mode 2(2-touch)"→"Mode 3(T9 input)" order each time you press and hold ✉ (PI·SB) for 1 second or longer.

Selecting the font size MENU35

Default setting	CHG input size: Standard

● Select "Small", "Standard", "Large 1" or "Large 2" for the font size used on the text entry (edit) screen.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"CHG input size"▶Select any item

Entering text in Mode 1 (5-touch)

● Key Assignment (5-touch input)→p.488

● Changing the input mode

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶(ch)

The input mode changes in "Alphabetic (single-byte)"→"Numeric (single-byte)"→"Kanji/Hiragana (double-byte)"→"Kana (single-byte)" order each time you press (ch) (Selecting "Full pitch" from the function menu allows you to use double-byte when changing the input mode).

● Switching between double-byte and single-byte

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶(FUNC)▶"Full pitch"/"Half pitch"

In the information display area, "1/1" appears for double-byte and "1/2" for single-byte.

You cannot switch between double-byte and single-byte in "Kanji/Hiragana input mode".

Text entry example

- To enter “う”, set “Kanji/Hiragana input mode” and press 1 3 times.
- To enter “Ｂ”, set “Alphabetic input mode” and press 2 twice.

Entering text in Mode 2 (2-touch)

- Key Assignment (2-touch input)→p.489

Switching the input mode (double-byte/single-byte)

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ch

“Single-byte” and “Double-byte” are switched each time ch is pressed (“Half pitch” and “Full pitch” are also available from the function menu).
In the information display area, “1/1” appears for double-byte and “1/2” for single-byte.

Text entry example

- To enter “う”, set “Double-byte input mode” and press 1 3.
- To enter double-byte “Ｂ”, set “Double-byte input mode” and press 1 7.
- To enter single-byte “B”, set “Single-byte input mode” and press 1 7.

Entering text in Mode 3 (T9 input)

This mode allows a quick text entry with few key operations.
For example, to enter a reading “あした”, you need to press 1 once, 3 twice and 4 once in Mode 1 (5-touch). In Mode 3 (T9 input), you only need to press 1 3 4 corresponding to the keys of columns to which the characters belong.
Column characters are assigned to one key. Every time you press a key, a list of candidates appears from which you select and enter desired readings.
Mode 3 (T9 input) also features 2 helper functions: “Yomi edit” and “Fix mode”.
“Yomi edit” allows you to edit reading candidates that have been entered. “Fix mode” allows you to enter a reading directly. Linking Mode 3 (T9 input) to the Prediction function (p.441) allows faster and easier text entry.

- Key Assignment (T9 input)→p.490

Changing the input mode

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ch

The input mode changes in “Alphabetic (single-byte)”→“Numeric (single-byte)”→“Kanji/Hiragana (double-byte)”→“Kana (single-byte)” order each time you press ch (Selecting “Full pitch” from the function menu allows you to use double-byte when changing the input mode).
Mode 3 (T9 input) works in “Kanji/Hiragana (double-byte)”, “Kana (double-byte)”, “Kana (single-byte)”, “Alphabetic (double-byte)” and “Alphabetic (single-byte)”.

- In “Numeric (double-byte)” and “Numeric (single-byte)”, Mode 1 (kana) is automatically selected.
- Immediately after “Alphabetic (double-byte)” or “Alphabetic (single-byte)” is set, CapsLock mode is activated. The mode changes in “CapsLock” → “Mode released” → “Shift” each time you press .
- Entered characters are always upper case in “CapsLock mode”. In “Shift mode”, only the first character is entered in upper case, and subsequent characters will be in lower case. Entered characters are always lower case when neither mode is selected.
- After a character is confirmed in “Shift mode”, the mode is released.

Entering text

<Example: To enter “春” in T9 Kanji change mode>

1 ch▶“Kanji/Hiragana input mode”

2 Enter characters to be converted

6 (は column), 9 (ら column)

Candidates, which are predicted from a combination of “は column” and “ら column”, appear.



■ **If you press the wrong key**
▶Press CLR to delete the character▶Press the key again

■ **If there are no recognized candidates for the entered characters**
▶Characters that cannot be recognized are displayed in gray▶Use to change the range for candidates

■ **To change the conversion candidate display mode (Kanji/Kana/Alphabetic)**
▶

3 ▶Use to select a conversion candidate

The selected conversion candidate appears in the text entry area.



■ **To return to entering characters to be converted**
▶CLR

■ **To convert directly to characters other than the displayed conversion candidates**
▶ (CHG)▶Use to select a candidate

● Editing conversion candidates

<Example: To enter “らわらわた” and convert it to “爛々と”>

1 Enter characters to be converted

9 (ら column), 0 (わ column), 9 (ら column), 0 (わ column), 4 (た column)

The conversion candidates predicted from “らわらわた” are displayed. In this case, “らんらんと” does not appear.



2 (Yomi) or *

Yomi edit mode is set, and the cursor moves to the first character. The “ら column” characters are listed in the conversion candidate display area.

3 Press a corresponding keypad to the number for the character you want to enter

In this case, press 1 (ら). After you change the character, the cursor moves to the next character. Repeat the step to edit the conversion candidate.



■ **If you do not want to edit a conversion candidate**

▶Use ◎ to move the cursor to the next character to be edited

■ **To quit editing in mid-operation**

▶✉ (Return)

The already edited text appears as a conversion candidate.

4 Use ◎ to select “爛々と”

“爛々と” will appear as the first conversion candidate when “らわらわた” is entered from the next time.



● Using fix mode to enter conversion candidates

<Example: To enter a reading “はためく”>

1 * (Fix mode)

The Fix mode is set, and “” in the information display area changes to “FIX”.



2 Press the key for the column that includes the character to enter

In this case, press 6. The “は column” characters are listed in the conversion candidate display area.

3 Press a keypad corresponding to the number for the character you want to enter

In this case, press 1 (は). Repeat steps 2-3 to enter the rest of the reading.



4 * (Fix END)

When you press * (Fix END), the conversion candidates appear and you can convert them to kanji, hiragana, etc. by using ◎ then pressing (CHG).



● Setting T9 change mode MENU 35

Specify whether to convert entered characters to kanji or to kana when you enter text using the T9 input method.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Other settings”▶“Character input set”▶“T9 change mode”▶Select any item

T9 Kanji change mode (default)	Converts entered characters to kanji.
T9 Kana change mode	Converts entered characters to kana.

Using word prediction MENU 35

Default setting: ON

The FOMA terminal’s word prediction function works by automatically storing character strings that you enter so that the stored character string is included in your list of candidates as well as common phrases the next time you enter the same character string.

- Candidates for word prediction is stored at the time of purchase.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶“Other settings”▶“Character input set”▶“Prediction”▶“ON”

■ **To deactivate the word prediction**

▶“OFF”

Using word prediction to enter text

1 Enter the reading

The predictive candidates are listed in the guidance area. In Mode 3 (T9 input), entering a character displays the candidates in gray, which can be selected.



2 ◉

The cursor appears in the guidance area, and you can choose from the predictive candidates.



■ **To return to reading entry**

▶CLR

■ **If no predictive candidates appear or if you do not want to enter any of the candidates**

▶Enter the reading unchanged

■ **To delete predictive candidates**

▶CLR (1 second or longer)▶“YES”

3 Select a predictive candidate

Once you confirm the text, candidates to follow the text will appear.



4 Select a candidate

■ **If no candidates appear or if you do not want to enter any of the candidates**

Enter the next section of text unchanged

Displaying guidance MENU 35 Default setting ON

Use this procedure to specify whether to display guidance (p.438) on the text entry (edit) screen.

1 MENU▶Settings▶“Other settings”▶“Character input set”▶“Guidance”▶“ON”

■ **To hide the guidance**

▶“OFF”

Entering text

<Example: Entering “携帯二郎”>

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶Enter hiragana

■ **If you press the wrong key**

▶Press CLR to delete the character▶Press the key again



■ **If you press more times than appropriate**

▶ (Home)

Returns to the previous character assigned to the same key.

■ **To continuously enter a character assigned to the same key**

▶Press ◉ or the key again for 1 second or longer

The cursor moves and the following character can be entered now.

■ **To confirm the hiragana**

▶●

■ **To display the conversion candidates for English and kana in Mode 1 (5-touch)**

▶✉ (ABC123)

The conversion candidates are displayed for alphanumeric characters or katakana. The numeric conversion candidates are also displayed depending on how many times you press the key; e.g. pressing the same key continuously converts “き” to “２２”.

<Mode 1>

2 (け) 4 times, 1 (い) twice, 4 (た) once, 1 (い) twice,

3 (し) twice, # (゛(dakuten)) once, 9 (ろ) 5 times, 1 (う) 3 times,

<Mode 2>

2 4	1 2	4 1	1 2
け	い	た	い
3 2	0 4	9 5	1 3
し	゛(dakuten)	ろ	う

In Mode 2 (2-touch), entering a single digit and then confirming the entry deletes the character. Always enter 2 digits.

<Mode 3>

2	1	4	1
か column (け)	あ column (い)	た column (た)	あ column (い)
3	#	9	1
さ column (し)	゛(dakuten/handakuten)	ら column (ろ)	あ column (う)

In Mode 3 (T9 input), press ◉ to highlight sections of text so that the candidates for the desired characters appear and press ✉ (Yomi) or ✳ to switch to Yomi edit mode.

2 While in Mode 1 (5-touch) or Mode 2 (2-touch), use ◉ or ● (CHG) to convert the reading to kanji

The kanji candidate for the first phrase is highlighted, and the kanji candidates for the remaining phrases are underlined (_).



■ **If the kanji candidate is the desired kanji**

▶●

The kanji are confirmed and the next phrase is highlighted.

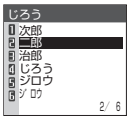
■ **To change the conversion range**

▶Use ◎ to change the conversion range

The kanji candidate changes as the conversion range changes. If there are no kanji to be converted for the selected range, the hiragana are displayed.

3 Use ◎ to display the conversion candidates

A list of conversion candidates for the highlighted phrase appears. Hiragana and katakana are included in the conversion candidates.



Conversion candidate list screen

■ **If all the characters in the conversion range belong to "あ" column**

Numbers are also included in the conversion candidates.

4 Select the kanji you want to enter

NOTE

- You can convert up to 20 hiragana characters to kanji, up to 6 phrases at once.
- If the text is not converted to the desired kanji, changing the reading to the "on" or "kun" reading may make the desired kanji appear.
- When 2 or more kanji characters cannot be converted at the same time, convert one character at a time.
- If a character still cannot be converted, use Kuten codes. →p.448
- Some complicated kanji characters may be partly modified or abbreviated.
- If the number of converted characters exceeds the limit, a message appears asking whether to confirm the number of characters that does not exceed the limit.

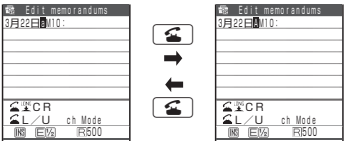
● Switching between upper case and lower case

Use either of the following 2 methods to switch between upper case and lower case.

■ **Pressing [clear] to change the case of a character**

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ Press [clear] with the cursor placed on a character you want to change

The character switches between upper case and lower case each time you press the key. This method can only be used when "[clear] L／U" is displayed in the operation guidance.



■ **Using the function menu before entering**

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ ▤ (FUNC)▶"Lower case"/"Upper case"

When you change to "Lower case", "Sm" appears in the information display area. No icon appears when "Upper case" is selected.

● Switching between Insert mode and Overwrite mode

When you enter text in "Insert" mode, the new text is inserted into the existing text. In "Overwrite" mode, the new text replaces the existing entered text.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ ▤ (FUNC)▶"Overwrite"/"Insert"

In "Insert" mode, "INS" appears, and "OVR" in "Overwrite" mode.

When the text entry (edit) screen first appears, Insert mode is always set.

● Inserting text

In "Insert" mode, use ◎ to move the cursor to the right character next to the location where you want to enter text. When you enter text, it is inserted to the cursor position.



● Overwriting text

In "Insert" mode, use ◎ to move the cursor to the character you want to overwrite. When you enter a character, it replaces the character in the cursor position.



● Inserting a space (blank)

- Move the cursor to the right character next to the location where you want to enter a space (blank). A double-byte space is entered in double-byte input mode and a single-byte space in single-byte input mode. A space is counted as a character.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ ▤ (FUNC)▶"Space"

Inserting a line feed

You can begin a new line by entering a line feed symbol "↵". There are the following methods to insert a line feed "↵".

■ Pressing ○ at the end of a sentence

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ Press ○ with the cursor placed at the end of a sentence

The line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

■ Pressing C for 1 second or longer

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ Press C (for 1 second or longer) with the cursor placed on the position where you want to break a line

This method can only be used when "LONG CR" is displayed in the operation guidance.

The line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.



■ Using the function menu

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ ▼ (FUNC)▶"Line feed"

The line feed symbol "↵" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

NOTE

- The line feed symbol "↵" can be deleted or overwritten as a character can be.
- The line feed symbol "↵" is counted as 1 double-byte character. However, the counting method is different for the SMS message entry. →p.299
- You may not be able to insert a line feed "↵" in an i-mode text box.

Inserting symbols

Use this procedure to enter symbols such as brackets, Greek characters and units.
You cannot enter double-byte symbols on the e-mail address entry screen, i-mode mail address entry screen or URL entry screen.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ ▼ (FUNC)▶"Symbols"▶Select a symbol to enter

"Symbols and Special Characters"→p.491

NOTE

- Single-byte symbols are displayed when you can only enter single-byte characters.

Entering face symbols

You can select face symbols to enter from the list.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ ▼ (FUNC)▶"Face Mark"

The "Face Mark" screen appears. The meaning appears under the face symbol.



2 Select a face symbol to enter

"Smiley Face Symbols"→p.493

NOTE

- If you select a download face symbol dictionary in "Download dictionary", the face symbols stored in the download dictionary are also displayed.
- The selected face symbol is displayed first next time the face symbol list is displayed.

Entering pictographs

You can enter pictographs such as a face, weather or animal on the text entry (edit) screens such as i-mode mail messages, text memos and common phrases.

- Up to 12 previously entered pictographs are stored in Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 respectively. The stored pictographs are displayed at the start of each row in the respective Pictograph 1 and Pictograph 2 displays. Entered pictographs are also stored when you press ✉ (PI・SB) to enter.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ ▼ (FUNC)▶"Pictograph"▶Select a Pictograph

"Pictographs"→p.492
The list changes in "Pictograph 1"→"Pictograph 2"→"Full pitch 1"→"Full pitch 2"→"Half pitch" order each time you press ✉.

■ To set PI・SB input mode
▶✉ (PI・SB)

Entering symbols and pictographs continuously

Display symbol and pictograph candidates so that symbols and pictographs can be entered until the candidates display is cleared.

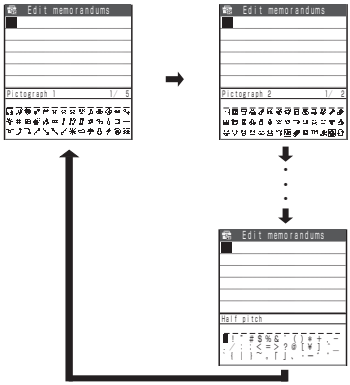
- Entering symbols→p.491
- Pictographs→p.492

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ ✉ (PI・SB)

The Pictograph 1 candidates appear in the guidance area. The "current page/total pages" figures are displayed in the top-right corner of the guidance area.

2 Press (PI·SB) to change the candidate screen

The list changes in “Pictograph 1”→“Pictograph 2”→“Full pitch 1”→“Full pitch 2”→“Half pitch” order each time you press (PI·SB).



■ **To set the full screen mode**

▶(Full)

3 Select a symbol or pictograph

The selected symbol or pictograph is entered. You can then continue on directly to enter other symbols or pictographs. Up to 14 symbols and pictographs are displayed on the first line of the symbols and pictographs list.



4 To finish entering, press CLR

Continuous pictograph/symbol entry is finished.

● Using character conversion to enter symbols, face symbols and pictographs

In “Kanji/Hiragana input mode”, you can enter symbols, face symbols and pictographs by entering and converting the corresponding readings.

■ **Entering symbols**

Entering and converting “きごう” in “Kanji/Hiragana input mode” displays symbol candidates. You can also enter a symbol by entering and converting a symbol name such as “かっこ” or “さんかく”.

“Symbols in Japanese conversion”→p.491

■ **Entering face symbols**

Entering and converting “かお” or “かおもじ” in “Kanji/Hiragana input mode” displays face symbol candidates. You can also enter a face symbol by entering and converting a face symbol name such as “ありがとう” or “さよなら”.

“Smiley Face Symbols”→p.493

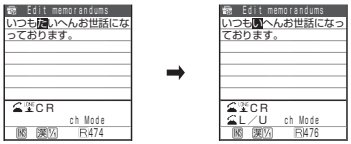
■ **Entering pictographs**

Entering and converting a meaning of a pictograph such as “はーと” or “おんぷ” in “Kanji/Hiragana input mode” displays pictograph candidates.

“Pictographs”→p.492

● Deleting text

Use to move the cursor to a character to delete, and press CLR shortly (for less than 1 second). The character in the cursor position is deleted.



■ **When there is no character in the cursor position**

The character left to the cursor is deleted.

■ **If you press CLR for 1 second or longer**

The character in the cursor position and all the characters right to the cursor are deleted.

■ **If there is no character right to the cursor and you press CLR for 1 second or longer**

All the text is deleted.

● Data protection during text entry and edit

When you are entering text on the text entry (edit) screen and the battery fails or you receive a voice call, the entered text is saved and not cleared from the screen.

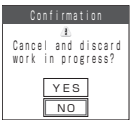
■ **If the battery runs out**

If the low-voltage alarm sounds during text entry, the text entry (edit) screen changes to the “Recharge battery” message screen. When this happens, the entered text is automatically confirmed and saved, so that you can continue entering text when you turn the FOMA terminal back on and retrieve the function. However, in some functions the entered data is not saved. Also, text that is unconfirmed or being converted is not saved.

Re-editing phonebook entries→p.122

■ **If you press ☎**

If you press ☎ during text entry, a message appears asking whether to finish text entry. However, this message does not appear if no text is entered.



<To exit without saving text>

Select “YES”. The previous screen or standby screen reappears without saving the entered text.

Pressing ☎ is also available to exit the entry screen without saving the entered text.

Continued on next page

<To continue entering text>
Select “NO”. The text entry (edit) screen reappears with the entered text still displayed. CLR is also available to redisplay the text entry (edit) screen.

■ When you receive a voice call

If you receive a voice call during text entry, you can answer the call without having to cancel the entry. When the call ends, the text entry (edit) screen reappears. If you press ch (MULTI) during a voice call to display the task switch screen, you can redisplay the text entry (edit) screen and continue talking. →p.394

Function menu (Text entry (edit) screen)

Face Mark	“Entering face symbols” →p.444
Lower case, Upper case	“Switching between upper case and lower case” →p.443
Half pitch, Full pitch	“Switching between double-byte and single-byte” →pp.439, 440
Copy	“Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text” →p.448
Cut	
Paste	
Common phrases	“Entering common phrases” →p.446
Space	“Inserting a space (blank)” →p.443
Line feed	“Inserting a line feed” →p.444
Symbols	“Inserting symbols” →p.444
Pictograph	“Entering pictographs” →p.444
Kuten code	“Kuten code” →p.448
Overwrite, Insert	Selects whether to insert or replace text at the cursor location during text entry. →p.443
Quote data	
• **Phonebook**	“Entering text by quoting personal data or phonebook entries” →p.447
• **Own data**	
• **Access reader**	Pastes text data scanned by “Access reader”. “Scanning Text” →p.214
• **Bar code reader**	Pastes text data scanned by “Bar code reader”. “Using the Bar Code Reader” →p.212
Refer dic.	Starts the dictionary. “Using Dictionaries” →p.410
Prediction OFF, Prediction ON	Specifies whether to turn on/off the word prediction function (displays previously entered words with similar spelling).
CHG input method	Changes the text entry mode to “Mode 1(5-touch)”, “Mode 2(2-touch)” or “Mode 3(T9 input)”.
T9 Kana CHG mode, T9 Kanji CHG mode	When you enter characters using the T9 input method, you can specify whether to convert entered characters to Kanji or to Kana. Switching the text entry method is only a temporary change. Once text entry exits and the text entry (edit) screen reappears, it returns to the setting specified in “Input mode” under “Character input set”.
Jump	Moves the cursor quickly to the beginning or end of a sentence.
Undo	Restores the status of an entered character to previous.
Change window	Switches between windows when the operation display for a function and the Text entry (edit) display are shown concurrently in different windows on the display. “Changing the Active Window” →p.450

● Entering common phrases

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ (FUNC)▶“Common phrases”▶ Select a folder

“Common Phrases” →p.493

2 Select a common phrase▶●

NOTE

◆Common phrases can be used on the following text entry (edit) screens:

- Text memo
- Common phrases
- Common phrases folder name
- Schedule
- To Do list
- Wake-up message
- Edit in i-mode text box
- Instant message
- i-mode mail subject
- i-mode mail message
- i-mode mail header
- i-mode mail signature
- i-mode mail quotation mark
- Auto-sort subject
- Search mail subject
- Text edit with i-αppli
- Dictionary

◆Fixed common phrases are displayed differently depending on the input mode, as shown below. Original common phrases and fixed common phrases that have been edited are displayed as stored regardless of the input mode.

- Mode 1 (5-touch) and Mode 3 (T9 input):
  Displayed as kanji/hiragana in Kanji/Hiragana input mode. Displayed as single-byte katakana in other input modes.
- Mode 2 (2-touch):
  Displayed as kanji/hiragana in double-byte input mode. Displayed as single-byte katakana in single-byte input mode.
  (In English mode, the fixed common phrases are the same regardless of the input mode.)

● Entering text by quoting personal data or phonebook entries

In the Text entry (edit) screen for an e-mail message or “Text memo”, you can use this procedure to enter the name, readings, phone number, SIP address, e-mail address, URL (i-mode), URL (WLAN browser), street address, birthday or memo stored in the “Phonebook” or in the “Own number”.

- Data cannot be quoted from some text entry (edit) screens.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ (FUNC)▶“Quote data”▶ “Phonebook” or “Own data”

■ **When “Phonebook” is selected**

▶Select “Search group”, “Search column” or “Search all”▶Search the phonebook for the entry to be quoted.

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125

■ **When “Own data” is selected**

▶Enter your security code

2 Select the item to be quoted



Quoting a phonebook entry

3 (Finish)

NOTE

◆When you quote a street address, the postal code “〒” symbol and “-” are not quoted.

<Common phrases> MENU 38

Editing and Storing Common Phrases

This function allows you to store common phrases in advance so that they can be retrieved during text entry. Common phrases stored at the time of purchase can be edited (changed).

- Common phrases are categorized into 5 folders. Folders 1 and 2 each contain 10 preset fixed common phrases. You can modify preset common phrases. Folders 3 to 5 can each contain up to 10 original common phrases. You can also rename the folders to suit the uses of the common phrases they contain.
- Common Phrases→p.493

Composing a new common phrase

1 MENU ▶ Own data ▶“Common phrases”

The “Common phrase folder list” screen appears.



Common phrase folder list

Function menu➡p.447

2 Select a folder

The “Common phrase list” screen appears.



Common phrase list

Function menu➡p.448

3 Highlight “<Not stored>” and press (Edit)▶Enter a common phrase

NOTE

◆Common phrases can contain up to 64 double-byte or 128 single-byte characters.

◆When you create an original common phrase to be used for mail subjects, messages, headers, signatures or quotation marks, do not use “single-byte katakana” or “pictographs” as these may not be displayed correctly (pictographs can be used for i-mode mail).

◆Fixed common phrases are retrieved as kanji/hiragana when the text entry method is “Kanji/Hiragana input mode” in Mode 1 (5-touch) or Mode 3 (T9 input) or “double-byte character input” in Mode 2 (2-touch), and as “single-byte katakana” when another text entry method is used.

(In English mode, the fixed common phrases are the same regardless of the input mode.)

Function menu (Common phrases folder list screen)

Edit folder name	**▶Edit a folder name** Changes the selected folder name. The folder name can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Reset name	Restores a folder name to default.

NOTE

◆If there are no characters entered in the folder name to be changed, it returns to the default folder name.

Function menu (Common phrase list screen)

Edit	▶**Edit a common phrase** Edits the selected common phrase.
Delete this	Deletes a highlighted common phrase.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**"YES"** Deletes all common phrases.

NOTE

◆If you delete a fixed common phrase that has been edited, it is restored to default. Unedited fixed common phrases cannot be deleted.

Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text

- Only one item of copied or cut data can be retained. Copying or cutting a new item overwrites the previously retained text.

Copying (or cutting) text

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ (FUNC)▶"Copy" or "Cut"

You can also copy text using the PDF data function menu (p.384).

2 Highlight the beginning of the text to be copied or cut▶●



3 Move the cursor to the end of the text to be copied or cut▶●

The selected range of the text is stored. You can store up to 5,000 double-byte characters or 10,000 single-byte characters.

■ If the text was cut

The selected range of the text is deleted although it is stored in the FOMA terminal.

■ If you select the blank spaces including no characters

Two single-byte spaces are inserted in double-byte input mode and one single-byte space is inserted in single-byte input mode.

Pasting text

Once you have cut or copied text, you can paste that text as many times as you like until you cut or copy other text or turn the FOMA terminal off.

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ (FUNC)▶"Paste"

■ If the text to be pasted includes a character that cannot be entered on the text entry (edit) screen

A message appears notifying you that the character will be replaced with a space when the text is pasted.

Using Kuten Codes

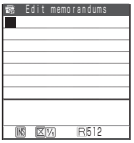
This function allows you to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbols and alphanumeric characters using 4-digit kuten codes.

- Actual characters or symbols on the screen may look different from the ones in the Kuten Code list.
- For "Kuten Code List", see the PDF "Kuten Code List" in the bundled CD-ROM.

<Example: To enter "慶" (kuten code 2336)>

1 Text entry (edit) screen (p.438)▶ ✳

The input mode changes to "Kuten code" mode and "区" appears in the information display area.

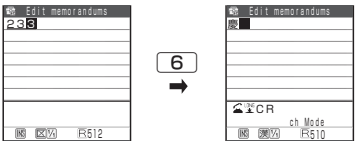


■ When the text entry mode is Mode 3 (T9 input)

▶Text entry (edit) screen▶ (FUNC)▶"Kuten code"

2 Enter kuten code 2 3 3 6

The character ("慶" in this example) corresponding to the entered code appears, and the input mode is restored to default.



■ If no character corresponds to the entered kuten code

A space is entered.

NOTE

◆When the text entry mode is "Mode 1(5-touch)" or "Mode 2(2-touch)", you can still switch to kuten code input by selecting "Kuten code" from the function menu.

<Own dictionary> MENU82

Storing Frequently Used Words

Default setting
Not stored

Save a frequently used word with your preferred reading to your own dictionary. You can recall the word by entering and converting the reading on the text entry (edit) screen.

- Up to 100 words can be stored in the Own dictionary.
- A word can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters. A reading can contain up to 10 double-byte hiragana characters.

Adding a new word

1 (MENU)▶Own data▶**"Own dictionary"**

The "Own dictionary" screen appears.



Own dictionary

Function menu➡p.449

2 **"<New>"▶Enter a word▶Enter the reading**

NOTE

◆You cannot enter a line feed or common phrase as a word or its reading.
◆Symbols (、。・！？) other than dakuten or han-dakuten cannot be stored in a reading.
◆A space entered in a reading is automatically deleted.

Checking words

1 (MENU)▶Own data▶**"Own dictionary"**



2 **Select a word to check**

■ **To edit a word**

▶Select a word to edit▶(Edit) (Edit)

Function menu (Own dictionary screen)

Edit	Edits a stored word.
Delete	
• **Delete this**	Deletes a highlighted word.
• **Delete selected**	▶**Use ⊙ to select a checkbox (□)▶(Edit)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple words.
• **Delete all**	▶**Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all words.

<Clear learned> MENU35

Resetting the Learning Record

The learned strings that were entered and automatically stored as conversion candidates are cleared and restored to default.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**"Other settings"▶"Character input set"▶"Clear learned"▶Enter your security code▶Select any item**

T9/Expect words/ Pic.	Clears the learning records stored for "Mode 3(T9 input)", "Prediction", "Pictographs" and "Symbols".
Kana/Kanji change/face	Clears the learning records stored for kana-kanji conversion and the sorting order of the face mark screen.

<Download dictionary>

Using Downloaded Dictionaries

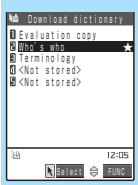
Default setting
Not stored

This function allows you to download dictionaries from i-mode sites, etc. and set them for use in conversion.

- You can store and activate up to 5 downloaded dictionaries.
- Downloading dictionaries→p.238

1 (MENU)▶Own data▶**"DL dictionary"**

The "Download dictionary" screen appears.



Download dictionary

Function menu➡p.450

Continued on next page

2 Select a dictionary to set

"★" appears next to the selected dictionary.

■ **To deselect the selected dictionary**

▶Select the dictionary with "★"

The dictionary is deselected and "★" disappears.

NOTE

◆If pictographs are registered in a downloaded dictionary, the pictographs can be entered by converting kana-kanji.

◆If you set a downloaded dictionary for face marks, up to 600 face marks (including the preinstalled 100 face marks) can be displayed on the face mark screen when you select "Face Mark" from the function menu during text entry.

◆If you add two downloaded dictionaries for face marks and activate both, the face marks stored in the first-activated downloaded dictionary will be listed.

Function menu (Download dictionary screen)

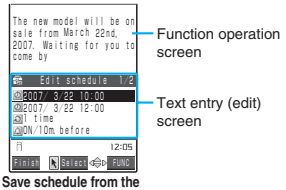
Edit title	**▶Edit a title** Changes the title of the selected download dictionary. A title can contain up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.
Set dictionary	Selects or deselects a downloaded dictionary. A dictionary is set when it is downloaded.
Dictionary info	Displays information on the selected download dictionary.
Delete this	Deletes a highlighted download dictionary.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all download dictionaries.

NOTE

◆If you attempt to rename a dictionary and confirm the name without entering any characters, it is restored to default.

Changing the Active Window

Some screens, such as saving schedule entries, are split into 2 windows showing the function operation screen and the text entry (edit) screen.



Save schedule from the i-mode screen

- The function operation screen and text entry (edit) screen are shown at the same time in the following situations:
  - Saving schedule entries from the i-mode screen or WLAN browser screen
  - Entering a word to search by activating dictionaries from the i-mode screen
  - Chat screen for chat mail
  - Editing text while viewing dictionary search results

Changing the active window

When the operating window of each function and the text entry (edit) window are displayed at the same time, you can change between the windows. Use either of the following 2 methods to switch between the windows:

■ **Using the function menu**

Select "Change window" from the function menu to change the active window.

■ **Using the Neuropointer**

Slide your finger over the Neuropointer key to display the pointer and then use it to select the active window.

NOTE

◆When you switch to the other screen, the entered text and cursor position in the current screen remain unchanged.

◆You cannot switch screens when entering readings. However, if you press ✳ in alphabetic input mode to enter "http://", etc., you can switch screens. Characters being entered are automatically fixed.

◆If you change from the text edit screen to the i-mode screen or WLAN browser screen, only scrolling can be performed.

◆You cannot switch screens in the Chat screen for chat mail.

WLAN

What is WLAN? 452

Using VoIP

What is VoIP Phone? 452
Making a VoIP Call 453
Dialing a Previously Dialed Number ..... Redial/Dialed calls 455
Using the Extension Function When the Other Party is Busy 455
Receiving a VoIP Call 456
Linking to Another Extension 457
Adjusting the Volume of VoIP 458
Setting to Distinguish Between Extension and Outside Call ..... Public distinction-STD 458
Setting the SIP Address HOST Display ..... HOST Effective set 458

Using the WLAN Browser

What is WLAN Browser? ..... WLAN Browser 458
Viewing a Web Page on the WLAN Browser 458
Setting the WLAN Browser ..... WLAN Browser settings 459

Using the presence function

What is Presence? 460
Registering the Presence Information 460
Registering to the Buddy List 461
Checking the Presence Information 462

Using the Messenger

What is Messenger? 463
Displaying the Messenger Menu ..... Messenger menu 463
Composing and Sending an Instant Message ..... Compose/Send instant message 463
Saving an Instant Message to Send Later ..... Save instant message 464
When You Receive an Instant Message ..... Receive instant message automatically 464
Saving an Instant Message ..... Saved BOX 466

Setting WLAN

WLAN Settings 468
Checking and Changing the WLAN Settings ..... Check/Change setting 468
Setting How to Select an Access Point ..... Host setting 470
Displaying Stored SIP Addresses ..... SIP address list 470
Changing the WLAN Security Code ..... Change PIN (WLAN) 470
Resetting the WLAN Settings to Default ..... Delete WLAN settings 470
Configuring Simple Profile Settings 471
Profile Setting Item List 472

What is WLAN?

The FOMA terminal is compatible with the Wireless LAN (hereinafter referred to as WLAN) network. Various functions are available in the WLAN area.

■ VoIP phone

You can make and receive a VoIP (extension, outside) call.

- **VoIP call and SIP address**

  A VoIP call uses not a phone number but a SIP (Session Initiation Protocol) address assigned to a phone.

  A SIP address consists of the Address field and HOST field (Domain). The default setting is that the HOST field (Domain) does not appear e.g. when a VoIP call is incoming. →p.458

<SIP address example>

abc123@XXXX.com

Address HOST (Domain)

* For how to enter a SIP address, see “Entering a SIP address” (p.454).

■ WLAN Browser

You can access an Intranet or Internet site via the WLAN network.

■ Presence

The FOMA terminal’s display shows the presence information on members registered to the WLAN network.

■ Messenger

Simple (instant) messages can be exchanged between members registered to the WLAN network.

What is VoIP Phone?

VoIP (Voice over Internet Protocol) is a voice call made over the IP network. Various (extension) services are available corresponding to the functions of the main device (SIP server) on the network.

The following extension services are available on the FOMA terminal:

Service	Description
Step call	Lets you call another party with simple steps when the called party is busy. →p.455
Camp on	Sounds a tone when the other party hangs up the call. →p.455
Call waiting	Lets you call the other party and break in the conversation. If the other party puts the current call on hold, you can start talking. →p.456
Call pickup	Lets you answer a call ringing another extension. You can answer the call for the person away from the desk. →p.457
Extension forwarding	Lets you put the current call on hold and dial the forwarding party’s phone number (extension) to forward the call to the party. →p.457
Park hold	Lets you answer a held call on any of the extension phones. →p.457
Conference call	Lets you put the current call on hold and call another extension to start talking with the called and held parties. →p.457

- Available services vary depending on the used main device (SIP server).
- To use the extension services, the prefix (special extension) set on the main device (SIP server) may be used. For the prefixes of the services, contact the network administrator.

Making a VoIP Call

Dial a phone number (extension) to make a VoIP call. A SIP address is also available to make a VoIP call.

- You cannot make a VoIP call in Single mode (FOMA).

1 Enter a phone number (extension)

If "FOMA" is displayed, press ● to display "WLAN".

■ To enter a SIP address

"Entering a SIP address" →p.454

■ To enter a prefix

"Entering a prefix"→p.454

■ To make an outside call

"Making an outside call" →p.454

You can set to add a prefix automatically.→p.454



Phone number entry

Function menu➡p.453

2 [☎]

The "VoIP in-call" screen appears.



VoIP in-call

Function menu➡p.453

3 To end the call, press [☎]

■ If no sound is heard for a given time

The line is automatically disconnected and the standby screen reappears.

NOTE

- In DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA or Prefer WLAN), you can select a call type, FOMA voice call or VoIP call, by pressing ● while entering a phone number.
- If the phone is left for a long time with "WLAN" displayed, "WLAN" may not appear even after you move to inside the WLAN range. In this case, scan access points.→p.52
- When making a VoIP call, you may hear a busy tone and a message may appear indicating the reason such as line congestion or network failure. In this case, select "OK" and retry after a while. If the problem is not solved, contact the network administrator.
- If you hear an announcement that a call cannot be made, the other party's mobile phone or PHS phone is turned off or out of range. Press [☎] and retry after a while.
- You can talk in hands-free mode.→p.70
- You can use a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) to make a call.→p.412
- You may not be able to make an emergency VoIP call (110, 118, 119, etc.) depending on the main device (SIP server).
- To make an emergency call (110, 118, 119, etc.) in DUAL mode (Prefer WLAN) or Single mode (WLAN), it is required to add a public prefix (see "Making an outside call"→p.454, "Setting the auto assist" →p.454).
- FOMA voice calls received during a VoIP call are recorded as "Missed calls" under "Received calls", and the "Missed calls" desktop icon appears on the standby screen after the call ends.

Function menu (Phone number entry screen)

Sending mode	Selects "FOMA" or "WLAN" for the mode.
Inp. SIP address	Displays the SIP address entry screen.→p.454
Notify Caller ID	Cannot be used for a VoIP call (the SIP address will be sent to the other party regardless of this setting).
Prefix numbers	**▶Select a prefix name to add** "Setting Prefix Numbers"→p.68
Prefix	Enters a prefix for VoIP.→p.454
Chaku-moji	Cannot be used for a VoIP call (Chaku-moji will not be sent).
Int'l call	Cannot be used for a VoIP call (although it is available for a FOMA voice call or videophone call).
Multi Number	
Add to phonebook	"Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook"→p.119 "Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook"→p.121
Compose message	"Creating and Sending i-mode Mail" →p.257
Connection speed	Cannot be used for a VoIP call (although it is available for a videophone call).
Select image	

Function menu (VoIP in-call screen)

Inp. SIP address	Displays the SIP address entry screen.→p.454
Prefix	Enters a prefix for VoIP.→p.454
Holding	The other party hears the hold tone. However, you cannot use the extension services such as call forwarding while on hold.→p.78
End talking call*	Disconnects the current call and answers the held one.
End held call*	Disconnects the held call and continues the current one.
Change held call*	Puts the current call on hold and answers the held one.

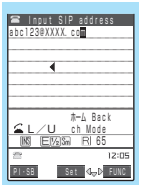
*: The option appears only if "Multi calling" is displayed.

Entering a SIP address

1 On the standby screen▶ (1 second or longer)▶“Inp. SIP address”

2 Enter a SIP address

A SIP address can contain up to 80 single-byte alphanumeric characters. If the other party's domain is the same as yours, you can omit the “@” mark and domain.



Input SIP address

3

The “Phone number entry” screen appears.

Entering a prefix

- Dial a prefix only to use the extension feature.

1 On the standby screen▶ (1 second or longer)▶“Prefix”

2 “Add prefix”▶Enter a prefix

A prefix can contain up to 10 digits.

■ **If a prefix to use is registered under “Prefix setting” (p.475)**

▶Select an item

Adding a prefix to a phone number (extension)

Add a prefix to use the extension services such as call forwarding.

1 On the standby screen▶Enter a phone number (extension) on the “phone number entry” screen

2 (FUNC)▶“Prefix”▶“Add prefix”▶Enter a prefix

The prefix is added to the dialed phone number (extension).
A prefix can contain up to 10 digits (up to 80 single-byte characters with a prefix added to a SIP address).

<If a prefix to add is 200>

200 1234

Prefix Phone number (extension)

■ **If a prefix to use is registered under “Prefix setting” (p.475)**

▶Select an item

Making an outside call

1 Dial a phone number with a public prefix added

■ **To make an outside call to 03-XXXX-XXXX**

Public prefix-03-XXXX-XXXX

■ **To mobile phones**

Public prefix-090-XXXX-XXXX or Public prefix-080-XXXX-XXXX

■ **To PHS phones**

Public prefix-070-XXXX-XXXX

Setting the auto assist

To make an outside call with an extension dial, a public prefix (e.g. “0”) may be required. If the beginning of the phone number meets a specific condition, the call will be regarded as an outside call, and the public prefix will be automatically added.

- This feature may not be available depending on the main device (SIP server).

<Example: The public prefix is “0” and will be automatically added when a call is made to a mobile phone (the number starting with 090-)>

1 MENU▶Settings▶“WLAN setting”▶“Check/Change setting”▶Enter your WLAN security code

2 “Profile setting”▶Select a profile▶“Auto assist setting”▶“ON”

The “Public prefix” entry screen appears.

3 Enter the public prefix “0”

The “Auto assist setting” screen appears.

4 Set the number for the prefix to be added

In the given example, select “0” (because the number starts with 090-).

- Multiple conditions (numbers) can be set.



Auto assist setting

Function menu➡p.455

■ **If you make a call to a number starting with 090- after the above setting is made**

The number “0” corresponds to the beginning of the phone number. The public prefix “0” is automatically added to the number. After the number is dialed, “0090-XXXX-XXXX” is displayed while ringing. The phone number recorded in the Redial/Dialed calls record does not include the public prefix.

Function menu (Auto assist setting screen)

Select all	Selects all the public prefixes.
Release all	Deselects all the selected public prefixes.

If you entered a wrong number (extension)

■ **To insert a number**

Press ◎ to move the cursor to the left of the number to insert, and enter the number.

■ **To delete a number**

Press ◎ to move the cursor to the number to delete, and press CLR.

If CLR is pressed for 1 second or longer, all the numbers to the left of the highlighted number including the number will be deleted.

■ **To reenter a number**

Move the cursor to the beginning or end of the number and press CLR for 1 second or longer to return to the standby screen.

■ **To correct a SIP address**

The address cannot be corrected on the "phone number entry" screen. Select ⓘ (FUNC)▶"Inp. SIP address" to display the "Input SIP address" screen, and reenter the address.

Putting a current call on hold

<Holding>

1 During a call▶CLR

The other party hears the hold tone.

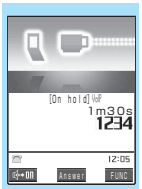
■ **If the call cannot be held by pressing CLR ▶ⓘ (FUNC)▶"Holding"**

The other party hears the hold tone (inbound hold). You cannot use the extension services such as call forwarding while on inbound hold.

■ **To end the held call ▶☎**

■ **If the held party hangs up**

The call ends.



VoIP call on hold

Function menu➡p.455

2 Press CLR or ● to resume the call

NOTE

◆Use "Set hold tone" to select a tone that sounds while a call is on hold.

Function menu (VoIP call on hold screen)

Inp. SIP address	Displays the SIP address entry screen.→p.454
Prefix	Enters a prefix.→p.454
End held call	Ends the held VoIP call.

<Redial/Dialed calls>

Dialing a Previously Dialed Number

You can use the Redial/Dialed calls records to redial an extension or outside call. Redial a VoIP call using the Redial/Dialed calls records in the same way as you do for a FOMA voice call.

→p.64

Using the Extension Function When the Other Party is Busy

Calling another extension

<Step call>

When you make an extension call and the other party is busy, you can call another party by simply dialing the last digit of the (extension) number.

- You can call the party only if the digits other than the last are the same as those of the busy party.
- This feature may not be available depending on the main device (SIP server).

<Example: To dial "5" to call "1235" when the extension "1234" is busy>

1 While hearing the busy tone, press 5 (the last digit of the extension)

The last digit will be changed and another extension call will be made.

NOTE

◆If the busy party is stored in the phonebook, the displayed name remains unchanged even after a call is made to another party.

Notifying you that the call ends <Camp on>

When you make an extension call and the other party is busy, you will be notified after the call ends.

- This feature may not be available depending on the main device (SIP server).

Continued on next page

1 While hearing the busy tone, press CLR ▶Dial the prefix for camp on

The camp on is activated, and the activation tone sounds.

2 ☎

When the busy party ends the call, the ring tone sounds indicating that the call is over, and the Ringing screen appears.

3 ☎ or ●

Another call is made to the party.
When the other party answers the call, start talking.

Calling the busy party

<Call waiting>

When you make an extension call and the other party is busy, you can break in the conversation.

- This feature may not be available depending on the main device (SIP server).

1 While hearing the busy tone, press CLR ▶Dial the prefix for call waiting

You can call the other party and break in the conversation. When the other party answers the call, start talking.

NOTE

◆If you dial as follows on the standby screen, you can call the busy party and break in the conversation:
Call waiting prefix − The other party's extension

● If you are called during a call

1 When you hear the repeated double beep during a call, press CLR

The original call is put on hold, and you answer the new extension call.

Receiving a VoIP Call

The VoIP ringing display varies depending on the calling party as follows:

Display*1	The party calls
Internal line	From an in-house phone
Public line	From an off-site phone
Tie line	From a dedicated phone
Calling VoIP	From a VoIP phone (if "Public distinction-STD" is set to "OFF"*2)

*1: The display may vary depending on the settings for the main device (SIP server).
*2: Depending on the settings for the main device (SIP server), "Internal line", "Public line" or "Tie line" appears regardless of the "Public distinction-STD" setting.

- When you receive a call from a caller stored in the phonebook, the name and phone number or SIP address appear.

1 When a VoIP call arrives, press ☎ or ●

When a call arrives, the ring tone sounds, the incoming call lamp flashes, and the "Ringing" screen appears. Unless "VoIPphone", "VoIPphone(Public)" and "VoIPphone(Tie line)" under "Vibrator" are set to "OFF", the phone also vibrates to notify you of the call.



Ringing
(From an in-house phone)
Function menu➡p.457

2 To end the call, press ☎

NOTE

◆You can set to answer a call by pressing any of 0 to 9, *, CLR, ●, ✉ or ▲ (Home) in addition to ☎ and ● (Any key answer). However, if ▲ (Home) is pressed with the FOMA terminal folded, the call is put on hold. The hold tone sounds when "Setting when folded" is set to "Tone on", but does not sound when the setting is set to "No tone" or "End the call". You can also set to stop only the ring tone when a key is pressed (Quick silent).
◆If you press # or ▼ (Memo/Check) while a call is incoming, "Record message" is activated and you can record the other party's message. (If # is pressed, the manner mode is also activated.) →p.84
◆Up to 30 received calls are stored in the "Received calls" record. If the other party shows the caller ID or SIP address, the caller ID and SIP address appear. If the party is stored in the phonebook, the name also appears. If the party does not show the caller ID and SIP address, you will see the reason why the caller ID is hidden.

◆Calls that cannot be received due to line congestion, etc. are recorded as “Missed calls” under “Received calls”, and an icon such as “VoIP” appears. The “Missed calls” desktop icon also appears on the standby screen.
◆FOMA voice calls received during a VoIP call are recorded as “Missed calls” under “Received calls”, and the “Missed calls” desktop icon appears on the standby screen after the call ends.

Function menu (Ringing screen)

Call Rejection	Ends the call without answering it.

Linking to Another Extension

Answering a call ringing another extension <Call pickup>

- This feature may not be available depending on the main device (SIP server).

1 When another extension is ringing, dial a call pickup prefix

2 ☎

Forwarding a call <Extension forwarding>

1 During a call▶Enter a forwarding number (extension)▶☎

The forwarding phone rings. The original caller hears the hold tone during the forwarding process.

■ **To search for a forwarding number from the phonebook**
▶●▶Select a search method on the search phonebook screen

■ **To search for a forwarding number from the Received calls or Redial record**
▶○▶Search from the Received calls or Redial record

2 When the forwarding party answers the call, press ☎

The original caller and forwarding party can start talking when ☎ is pressed.
You can continue talking until you press ☎. You can tell the original caller's name to the forwarding party.

NOTE

◆You can press CLR during a call to perform Step 1 while the call is on hold. In this case, even if you do not press ☎ immediately after dialing, the forwarding operation automatically starts in 5 seconds.

Allowing another extension to answer a call <Park hold>

With the park hold, you can answer a held call on any of the extension phones.

- This feature may not be available depending on the main device (SIP server).

1 During a call▶CLR▶Enter a park hold prefix

The tone sounds, and the call is put on hold. The held call will not end even if ☎ is pressed.

■ **To answer the park-held call on the FOMA terminal that put the call on hold**
Enter a park hold answer prefix▶☎

■ **To answer the park-held call on another FOMA terminal**
Enter
Park hold prefix − Held extension number
▶☎

Having a conversation among three parties <Conference call>

You can put the current call on hold and call another extension to start talking with the called and held parties.

- This feature may not be available depending on the main device (SIP server).

1 During a call▶CLR▶Enter the phone number (extension) of the party to call

2 When the party answers the call, press CLR

Start talking with the other parties.

NOTE

◆When you make an extension call and the called party is busy, press CLR and enter a break-in prefix, and you can break in the conversation and start talking with the other parties.

Adjusting the Volume of VoIP

Adjusting the earpiece volume <Volume>

You can adjust the earpiece volume between “Level 1” (minimum) and “Level 6” (maximum) during a VoIP call. Adjust the volume in the same way as you do for a FOMA voice call.→p.76

Adjusting the ring volume

<Select ring tone>

You can adjust the ring volume between 6 levels. You can also mute the ring tone or set it to gradually increase the volume (step tone). Adjust the volume in the same way as you do for a FOMA voice call.→p.77

<Public distinction-STD>

Setting to Distinguish Between Extension and Outside Call

Default setting: OFF

You can set to distinguish between extension and outside VoIP calls, depending on the main device (SIP server).

- If “Public distinction-STD” is set to “ON”, “VoIP” in the Received calls record is displayed as “VoIP” for extension, and “VoIP” for outside.
- A received VoIP call may be distinguished between extension, outside and dedicated lines regardless of this setting, depending on the main device (SIP server).

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**“Incoming call”▶“Public distinction-STD”▶“ON”**

■ **To cancel distinguishing between extension and outside**
▶“OFF”

<HOST Effective set>

Setting the SIP Address HOST Display

Default setting: OFF

You can set to display the HOST field (Domain) of a SIP address when the SIP address is displayed on the “Received calls” screen, “Dialed calls” screen, “Redial” screen, Ringing screen, Messenger screen, etc.

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**“Other settings”▶“HOST Effective set”▶“ON”**

■ **To hide the HOST field of a SIP address**
▶“OFF”

<WLAN Browser>

What is WLAN Browser?

In the WLAN area, the WLAN Browser is available to view an Internet or Intranet site. Useful functions such as Bookmark and Screen memo are also available.

- The network settings must be made beforehand by the network administrator.

Home URL, Bookmark and other data registered on the WLAN Browser cannot be used on i-mode.
The settings made on the WLAN Browser are invalid on i-mode.

Viewing a Web Page on the WLAN Browser

1 (MENU)▶

The “WLAN Browser menu” screen appears.



WLAN Browser menu

■ **If “ ” is displayed**
You are out of the WLAN range or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move until the signal strength indicator e.g. “ ” appears.

■ **If “ ” is flashing**
The WLAN communication is ongoing. If you attempt to access an Intranet or Internet site or send an instant message (p.463) while you are in the WLAN area but not using the WLAN service, “ ” flashes and it may take time to start the WLAN communication.

■ **If “ ” is flashing**
When you are receiving a WLAN service (during the WLAN connection), “ ” flashes.

2 **Select any item**

Display home	Displays the web page with the URL registered as the home URL.
Bookmark[*1]	Displays a web page registered as a bookmark. Up to 100 bookmarks can be stored for the WLAN Browser.
Screen memo[*2]	Saves the displayed page as a screen memo. Up to 100 memos can be stored for the WLAN Browser.
Last URL	Displays the last viewed page.
Enter URL[*3]	Enters a URL to display a web page.

WLAN Browser settings	Configures or checks the WLAN Browser settings.→p.459

*1: For how to use bookmarks, see the pages on the i-mode bookmark.→p.230
*2: For how to use screen memos, see the pages on the i-mode screen memo.→p.232
*3: For how to enter a URL, see the pages on the i-mode URL entry.→p.229

Notes on the WLAN Browser

The display mode and operations of the WLAN Browser are basically the same as those of i-mode. The following are the differences:

Differences between i-mode and WLAN Browser

- The WLAN Browser is not available in Single mode (FOMA).
- The function menu available while viewing web pages is the same as that of the “site” screen (p.224). The following options are different:
  - “iMenu” and “i-mode menu” do not appear.
  - If “WLAN Browser menu” is selected, the “WLAN Browser menu” screen (p.458) appears.
  - “i-motion type” does not appear under “Site settings”.
- The displayed page is saved as a WLAN Browser URL when the following operations are performed:
  - Add desktop icon→p.158
  - Add to phonebook→p.119
- The displayed page is saved as a WLAN Browser bookmark when the following operations are performed:
  - Send all Ir data→p.378
  - Send Ir data→p.377
  - Copy all to miniSD→p.366
  - Copy to miniSD→p.366
  - Keep in secret→p.175
- The home URL for the WLAN Browser is saved separately from that for i-mode.
- The following data for the WLAN Browser are saved separately from those for i-mode:
  - Bookmark
  - Bookmarks stored in the Secret folder
  - Screen memo
- User certificates cannot be downloaded. To use certificates, use i-mode beforehand to download them from the FirstPass center.→p.246
- i-αppli and dictionaries cannot be downloaded.
- ToruCa and ToruCa (detail) cannot be downloaded.
- You can select “Connection timeout” under “Common setting” and set the delay to automatically cancel connection if there is no response when you attempt to access a website.→p.475

<WLAN Browser settings>

Setting the WLAN Browser

1 WLAN Browser menu (p.458)▶“WLAN Browser settings”▶Select any item

Scroll (default: 1 line)	“Making i-mode Settings”→p.240
Font size (default: Standard)	
Set image disp. (default: ON)	
Movie Auto replay (default: ON)	Sets the movie automatic playback. If “ON” is set, a movie will be automatically played after it is downloaded. If “OFF” is set, the movie will not be automatically played, and the Data acquisition screen appears.
Use phone information (default: YES)	Sets whether to use data stored on the FOMA terminal when you run Flash movies.
Home URL (default: Invalid)	“Making i-mode Settings”→p.240
Sound effect (default: ON)	
Check settings	Checks the WLAN Browser settings.
Reset last URL	Resets the stored last URL.
Reset	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Resets the “WLAN Browser settings” to default.

What is Presence?

The FOMA terminal's display shows the presence information on members registered to the WLAN network.

- You can immediately check the status such as Online (present), Leave, Busy and Meeting.
- The presence information can be updated anytime, so that the latest information is displayed. You can set to display the report screen when the presence information on a member turns to Online (Set notify status).
- Only a few simple steps are required to send an instant message or make an extension call to registered members.
- Presence is available only if the presence server is introduced, and the network settings must be made beforehand by the network administrator.

Registering the Presence Information

Register your presence information. The following are the status types for Presence:

Status	Icon	Description
On-L		The FOMA terminal is turned on in the WLAN range
Leave		You are away from the desk*
Busy		The FOMA terminal is turned on but you are busy
Meet		You are having a meeting*
Break		You are on a break*
Meal		You are having a meal*
Home		You are already back home*
Out		You are off-site*
B-trip		You are on a business trip*
Secret		You do not want to show your current status*
Off-L		The FOMA terminal is turned off or out of the WLAN range
Phone		You are talking on the phone (making a call, receiving a call)
Incomp		The status cannot be obtained, etc.

*: "Off-L" is displayed if the "On-L", "Busy" or "Phone" (turned from "On-L" or "Busy") member is in the following situation:

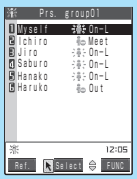
- The FOMA terminal is turned off
- The FOMA terminal is in Single mode (FOMA) or Self mode
- Out of WLAN range

If the "Leave", "Meet", "Break", "Meal", "Home", "Out", "B-trip" or "Secret" member turns the FOMA terminal off or moves out of the WLAN range, the "Off-L" icon appears but the status string is only grayed out and the "Off-L" string does not appear.

- "On-L", "Off-L", "Phone" and "Incomp" are automatically updated. "Off-L", "Phone" and "Incomp" cannot be registered by yourself.

1 MENU ▶ i-αppli WLAN Tools ▶ **"Presence"**

The "Buddy list" screen appears.



Buddy list

Function menu➡p.461

2 **"Myself"▶Select a status**

The "Change status" screen appears.



NOTE

◆The "Myself" display on the buddy list screen can be changed under "Set profile" from the function menu.

Function menu (Buddy list screen)

Refresh	Updates the presence information.
Change group	▶**Select a group** Changes groups to display in the buddy list.
Edit group	“Registering to the Buddy List”→p.461
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Set profile*	Changes your profile. The profile can contain up to 5 double-byte or 10 single-byte characters.
Set on sts. report	Sets whether to preferably display the report screen when you receive a presence report while you are operating the FOMA terminal.
• **Alarm preferred** (default)	Displays the report screen.
• **Operation preferred**	Does not display the report screen, so that the current screen remains displayed.

*: The option is not available for members other than “Myself”.

Registering to the Buddy List

Register members to the buddy list to display the presence information. The members can be grouped into the department, post, etc.

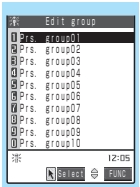
- 10 groups are prepared. Each group can contain up to 24 members.
- Select members from the phonebook. If the SIP address is not stored, the member cannot be registered to the buddy list.

Registering a group name

Default setting	Prs. group01 - 10

1 (MENU)▶(WLAN Tools)▶**“Presence”**▶(FUNC)▶**“Edit group”**

The “Edit group” screen appears.



Edit group

Function menu➡p.461

2 Highlight a group▶(FUNC)▶“Edit group name”

3 Enter a group name

A group name can contain up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters.

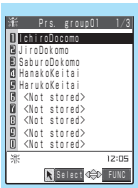
Function menu (Edit group screen)

Edit group name	Enters or edits a group name.
Reset group name	Resets the highlighted group name to the default.

Adding a member to the group

1 (MENU)▶(WLAN Tools)▶**“Presence”**▶(FUNC)▶**“Edit group”**▶**Select a group to add a member to**

The “Prs. group” screen appears.



Prs. group

Function menu➡p.461

2 Highlight “<Not stored>” and press (Add)

■ **To change the member information**

▶Highlight a member to change the information▶(FUNC)▶“Add member”▶“YES”

3 Search for a member from the phonebook

Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125

NOTE

- To check the phonebook entry of a registered member, select the member on the Prs. group screen.
- If multiple members with the same SIP address are stored in a single group, “⊗” appears at the beginning of the members regarded as duplicated (on the Prs. group screen). The members are not displayed on the buddy list screen.
- The phonebook entries stored as secret data are not available. A member cannot be registered or edited in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

Function menu (Prs. group screen)

Add member	▶**Search for a member from the phonebook** Adds a member.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted member.
Delete all	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Deletes all the members in the group.

Checking the Presence Information

Check if a registered member is present, etc. After checking, only a few simple steps are required to send an instant message or make an extension call.

1 (MENU)▶(WLAN Tools)▶"Presence"

The "Buddy list" screen appears, and you can check the presence information.



Buddy list

Function menu➡p.461

■ **To change the group display**
▶(FUNC)▶"Change group"▶Select a group

■ **To check members in a group**
▶(FUNC)▶"Change group"▶Highlight a group ▶(Look)

■ **To update the presence information**
▶(Ref.)

Sending an instant message or making an extension call from the buddy list

1 Buddy list screen (p.462)▶Select a member

The "Cooperate set menu" screen appears.



2 Select any item

VoIPphone dial	"Making a VoIP Call"→p.453
Compose IM	"Composing and Sending an Instant Message"→p.463
Look phonebook	Displays the phonebook entry of the highlighted member.
Set notify status	"Activating/Deactivating the presence report"→p.462

NOTE

◆Under "Look address" on the "Cooperate set menu" screen, you can select a mail address, phone number or SIP address to send i-mode mail or make a call.

Activating/Deactivating the presence report

Set to display the report screen or play the ring tone when the presence information (status) on a member turns to "Online".

1 (MENU)▶(WLAN Tools)▶"Presence"▶Select a member to activate the status report

The "Cooperate set menu" screen appears.

2 "Set notify status"

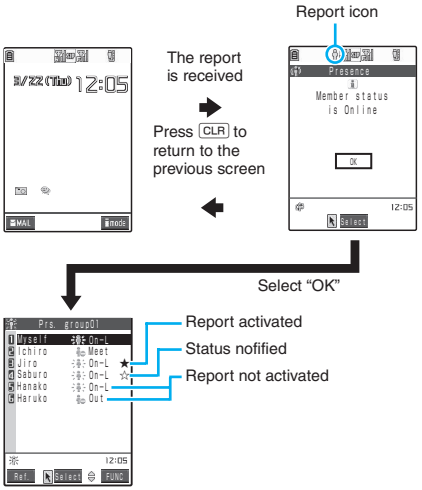
"★" appears at the right end of "Set notify status".

■ **If an active member (with "★" displayed) is selected**
The setting is deactivated and "★" disappears.

■ **If an already reported member (with "☆" displayed) is selected**
The status report is activated again and "★" appears.

When the presence information status report is received

If the status of a member with the report activated turns to "On-L", the ring tone sounds, and it is reported as follows:



NOTE

◆You can set to display " " at the top of the screen without displaying the report screen when the status report is received and the screen is not in standby mode. "Set on sts. report" under "Buddy list function menu"→p.461

◆You can change the report ring tone. "Changing the Ring Tone"→p.138

What is Messenger?

Simple (instant) messages can be exchanged between members registered to the WLAN network.
To use the messenger, the network settings must be made beforehand by the network administrator.

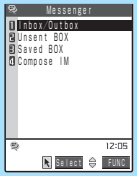
- Instant message is displayed as “IM” on the FOMA display.

<Messenger menu>

Displaying the Messenger Menu

1 (MENU)▶(WLAN Tools)▶**“Messenger”**

The “Messenger menu” screen appears.



Messenger menu

Function menu➡p.463

2 **Select any item**

Inbox/Outbox	Checks sent and received instant messages.→p.464
Unsent BOX	Checks unsent instant messages.→p.464
Saved BOX	Saves sent and received instant messages.→p.466
Compose IM	Composes an instant message.→p.463

Function menu (Messenger menu screen)

IM security	▶**Enter your security code**▶**“YES”** Prevents others from viewing instant messages. “ ” appears for the protected boxes.
Add desktop icon	“Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Sent IM add.	Displays instant message recipient addresses. Up to 10 latest addresses are stored.
Received IM add.	Displays instant message sender addresses. Up to 10 latest addresses are stored.

<Compose/Send instant message>

Composing and Sending an Instant Message

Compose and send an instant message.

- Enter a phone number (extension) or SIP address for the instant message recipient.

1 (MENU)▶(WLAN Tools)▶**“Messenger”**▶**“Compose IM”**

The “New IM” screen appears.



New IM

Function menu➡p.464

2 **“To 1”▶Select the address entry method**

Phonebook	Searches for an address from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125
Sent IM add.	Enters an address from the Sent IM address.
Received IM add.	Enters an address from the Received IM address.
Enter address	Enters an address directly.

■ **To add a recipient**

▶“To 2”▶Select the address entry method

3 **“ ”▶Enter the message body**

The “Message/IM” screen appears.
The message body can contain up to 150 double-byte characters or 300 single-byte alphanumeric characters. However, only up to 300-byte characters can be sent. The new line mark “↵” is counted as one double-byte character. A space is also counted as one character.

4 **Confirm the message▶(Send)**

The IM Sending animation appears, and the instant message is sent. Press ● to return to the Messenger menu screen.

Function menu (New IM screen)

Send	Sends the instant message.
Save	Saves the instant message being edited to the Unsent BOX.→p.464
Delete receiver	Deletes an added address. If other addresses are entered after the deleted address, the addresses close up the spaces.
Erase message	Deletes the body of the instant message being edited.
Delete	Deletes the instant message being edited.

<Save instant message>

Saving an Instant Message to Send Later

You can temporarily save an instant message being composed to the Unsent BOX. You can also edit and send a stored instant message.

Saving an instant message

- Up to 100 messages can be stored in the Unsent BOX.

1 New IM screen (p.463) ▶ (FUNC) ▶"Save"

The message cannot be saved if no character is entered in the address and message body.

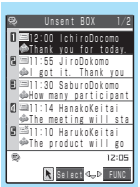
NOTE

◆An instant message that could not be sent is also saved to the Unsent BOX.

Sending a stored instant message

1 (MENU) ▶ (WLAN Tools) ▶"Messenger"▶"Unsent BOX"

The "Unsent IM list" screen appears.



Unsent IM list

Function menu➡p.464

2 Select an instant message▶Edit the address and message body, and send the message

Function menu (Unsent IM list screen)

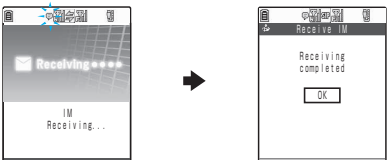
Number of IM	Displays the number of instant messages in the Unsent BOX.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted instant message.
Delete selected	**▶Use to select a checkbox (□) ▶ (Finish)▶"YES"** Deletes multiple instant messages.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶"YES"** Deletes all the instant messages in the Unsent BOX.

<Receive instant message automatically>

When You Receive an Instant Message

1 When you receive an instant message, the " " icon blinks and "IM Receiving…" is displayed

The message "Receiving completed" appears. Select "OK" to display the "Inbox/Outbox IM list" screen.



- The receiving screen appears only when the screen is in standby mode then a message is received. Even if the screen is in standby mode, the receiving screen does not appear when the phone is operated or in Public mode (Driving mode).

NOTE

◆You can change the instant message ring tone. "Changing the Ring Tone"→p.138

Viewing a received instant message

When a message is received, " " appears at the top of the screen.

- The beginning of the body of the received instant message appears on the "Inbox/Outbox IM list" screen.
- Up to 500 sent and received instant messages altogether are saved to the Inbox/Outbox.
- If the number of messages exceeds 500, the oldest message is automatically to be deleted, regardless of sent, received, unread or read.

1 (MENU)▶(WLAN Tools)▶“Messenger”▶“Inbox/Outbox”

The “Inbox/Outbox IM list” screen appears.



Inbox/Outbox IM list

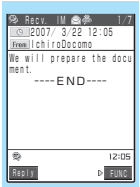
Function menu➡p.465

2 Select an instant message

■ **To view the previous or next instant message**

To view the next one, press (Scroll down)

To view the previous one, press (Scroll up)



IM detail

Function menu➡p.465

Function menu (Inbox/Outbox IM list screen)

Send/Recv. disp.	Displays sent and received instant messages on the Inbox/Outbox IM list screen.
Receive disp.	Displays received instant messages on the Inbox/Outbox IM list screen.
Send disp.	Displays sent instant messages on the Inbox/Outbox IM list screen.
Number of IM	Displays the number of instant messages in the Inbox/Outbox.
Delete this	Deletes the highlighted instant message.
Delete selected	**▶Use (Navigation) to select a checkbox (☐) ▶(Finish)▶“YES”** Deletes multiple instant messages.
Delete all	**▶Enter your security code▶“YES”** Deletes all the instant messages in the Inbox/Outbox.

Function menu (IM detail screen)

Re-edit[*1]	**▶Edit the address and message body ▶(Send)** Re-edits the instant message.
Reply[*2]	“Replying to or forwarding an instant message”→p.465
Forward[*2]	
VoIPphone dial	Makes an extension call to the sender or recipient. “Making a VoIP Call”→p.453
Search phonebook	Searches for the sender’s or recipient’s SIP address from the phonebook. Searching the phonebook (Specifying the search method)→p.125
Save	Saves the instant message to the Saved BOX.
Copy message	Copies the instant message body.
Delete	Deletes the displayed instant message.
Store address	Adds the sender’s or recipient’s SIP address to the phonebook. “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook”→p.119
Add to phonebook	Adds a phone number, SIP address, e-mail address or URL displayed on the instant message body to the phonebook. “Adding Information to the FOMA Terminal (Phone) Phonebook”→p.119 “Adding Information to the UIM Phonebook”→p.121
Add desktop icon	Pastes the sender’s or recipient’s SIP address as a desktop icon. “Using Desktop Icons”→p.158
Refer dictionary	Activates the dictionary. “Using Dictionaries”→p.410

*1: The option only appears for sent instant messages.
*2: The option only appears for received instant messages.

Replying to or forwarding an instant message

You can reply to or forward a received instant message.

1 IM detail screen (p.465)▶(Menu) (FUNC)▶“Reply” or “Forward”

2 Edit the address and message body, and send the message

NOTE

◆“Reply” and “Forward” are not available if 100 instant messages are still unsent.

<Saved BOX>

Saving an Instant Message

You can save sent and received instant messages to the Saved BOX.

- Up to 100 sent and received instant messages altogether can be saved to the Saved BOX.

1 IM detail screen (p.465)▶ (FUNC)▶"Save"

A message appears indicating that the instant message was saved.

Viewing a stored instant message

1 (MENU)▶ (WLAN Tools)▶"Messenger"▶"Saved BOX"

The "Saved IM list" screen appears.



Saved IM list

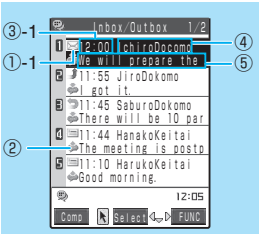
Function menu➡p.466

2 Select an instant message

Function menu (Saved IM list screen)

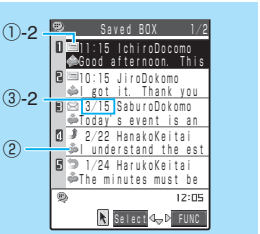
The function menu is the same as that of the "Inbox/Outbox IM list" screen. →p.465

Guide to the IM list screen



Inbox/Outbox IM

Function menu➡p.465



Saved IM

Function menu➡p.466

①The instant message status.

①-1 Received

: Unread

: Read

: Forwarded

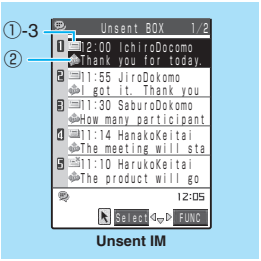
: Replied

①-2 Sent

: Successfully sent

: Multiple recipients specified, all sent successfully

: Multiple recipients specified, some sent successfully



Unsent IM

Function menu➡p.464

①-3 Unsent

: Unsuccessfully sent

: Multiple recipients specified, all sent unsuccessfully

: Being edited

: Multiple recipients specified, being edited

② The instant message transmission type.

: Sent

: Received

③ The time and date of transmission or save.

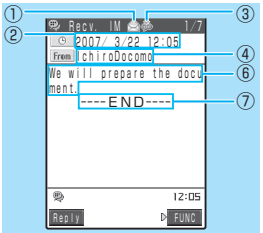
③-1 The time is shown for instant messages transmitted or saved today.

③-2 The date is shown for instant messages transmitted or saved yesterday or before.

④ The sender's or recipient's phone number (extension) or SIP address. If the phone number (extension) or SIP address is stored in the phonebook, the name appears.

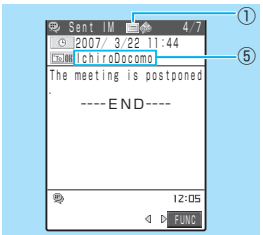
⑤ The instant message body.

Guide to the IM detail screen



Received IM

Function menu➡p.465



Sent IM

Function menu➡p.465

① The instant message status (p.466).

② The date and time of transmission.

③ The instant message transmission type.

: Sent

: Received

④ The phone number (extension) or SIP address of the sender of the received instant message. If the extension or SIP address is stored in the phonebook, the name appears.

⑤ The phone number (extension) or SIP address of the recipient of the sent instant message. If the extension or SIP address is stored in the phonebook, the name appears. If the instant message was sent to multiple recipients, all the recipients are shown.

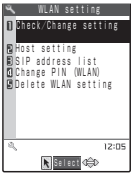
⑥ The instant message body.

⑦ The end of the message body.

WLAN Settings

You can change or check the settings for the WLAN connection.

- The WLAN settings can be controlled by the network administrator.



Item	Description
Check/ Change setting	Checks or changes the settings (Profile) for connecting to an access point. →p.468
Host setting	Sets how to select an access point. →p.470
SIP address list	Displays the list of registered SIP addresses. →p.470
Change PIN (WLAN)	Changes the WLAN security code. →p.470
Delete WLAN setting	Reset the "WLAN setting" including the "WLAN security code" to default. →p.470

<Check/Change setting>

Checking and Changing the WLAN Settings

Under "Check/Change setting", you can set the settings for each profile or common settings for all profiles.

- 20 profiles are prestored.

■ Setting change flow

The "Profile setting" and "Common setting" are not applied immediately but saved temporarily. To apply the settings, return to the "Check/Change setting" screen and press (Finish). The WLAN connection is temporarily disconnected while the settings are applied. After the settings are applied, select an access point to restore the connection.

Change the "Profile setting" and "Common setting"

↓

*: The settings do not apply at this point.

Display the "Check/Change setting" screen (p.469)

(Finish) ↓

*: The settings apply at this point. The WLAN connection is disconnected.

Display the "WLAN setting" screen (p.468)

↓

Reconnect to an access point

- For details on the setting change, see p.469 and 469.
- In Single mode (FOMA), you can change or check the settings but cannot detect access points. To detect access points and restore the connection, the mode must be changed to Single mode (WLAN) or DUAL mode.

■ Access point settings

For the best condition, the following environment (access point setting) is recommended:

- DTIM* reception interval: 1 second
  (Example: Beacon interval = 100ms, DTIM value = 10)
  N902iL is designed to receive a beacon that contains a DTIM at 1 second interval. Talk (or communications) and standby times may be less if the interval is shorter.
  *: DTIM stands for Delivery Traffic Indication Message.
- QoS (WMM)* parameter: See the following table

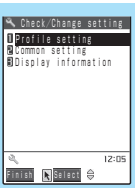
Used for	Parameter		
	AIFS	CWmin	CWmax
AC_VO (Priority: High)	2	31	63
AC_BE (Priority: Low)	4	63	127

*: QoS stands for Quality of Service, and WMM for Wi-Fi Multimedia.

Configuring the settings for each profile <Profile setting>

<Example: To change the profile name>

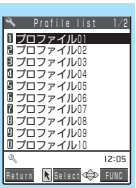
1 (MENU)▶Settings▶**"WLAN setting"▶"Check/ Change setting"▶ Enter your WLAN security code**



Check/Change setting

2 **"Profile setting"**

The "Profile list" screen appears.



Profile list

Function menu➡p.469

3 **Select a profile**

"Settings that can be configured for each profile" →p.472



Profile

4 **"Set profile name"▶Enter a profile name**

5 (Return)▶✉ (Return)▶✉ (Finish)

The setting applies. After the setting is applied, a connection is made to the access point.

■ **If the Host setting is set to "Any scan"**

▶Select an access point▶"YES"

A connection is made to the selected access point.

"Setting How to Select an Access Point" →p.470

■ **If the Host setting is set to "Select scan"**

A connection is automatically remade to the access point specified beforehand.

■ **If the "Profile setting" is not changed**

Press ✉ (Finish) to return to the "WLAN setting" screen.

NOTE

◆If you select an access point with "🔒" displayed, you need to enter the WEP key.

Function menu (Profile list screen)

Reset Profile	**▶Enter your WLAN security code▶"YES"** Resets the settings for the highlighted profile to default.
Copy	**▶Enter your WLAN security code▶Select the destination profile▶"YES"** Copies the settings for the highlighted profile to another profile.

Configuring common settings for all profiles <Common setting>

<Example: To set the Connection timeout to "60 seconds">

1 **Check/Change setting screen (p.469)▶"Common setting"▶"Connection timeout"▶"60 seconds"**

"Common settings that can be configured for all profiles" →p.475



Common setting

2 (Return)▶✉ (Finish)

Checking the connection status and MAC address

<Display information>

1 **Check/Change setting screen (p.469)▶"Display information"▶Select any item**



Display information

Connection status	Displays the following items: **AP name**: Profile name **ESSID**: ESSID of the access point being connected **Electric field***: Signal strength of the WLAN **Wireless mode**: Wireless mode **Connection speed**: Current connection speed **Connection channel**: Channel being connected
MAC address	Refers to a specific hardware address specified to recognize the host on the WLAN.

*: "0dBm" may appear depending on the timing. Press ● (Ref.) to redisplay the "Connection status" screen, and the correct electric field strength will appear.

<Host setting>

Setting How to Select an Access Point

Set how to select a host (access point) for the WLAN connection.

- If you select an access point with "🔒" displayed, you need to enter the WEP key.

Connecting to the specified access point <Select scan>

You can set the priority when specifying multiple access points.

- Up to 20 access points can be specified.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "WLAN setting"

2 "Host setting" ▶ "Select scan"

The "Set prior host" screen appears.



Set prior host

Function menu➡p.470

3 Select the priority ▶ Select a profile ▶ ✉ (Set)

After the setting is applied, a connection is automatically remade to the access point.
If no profile is selected, a message appears asking whether to connect automatically ("Any scan").

Function menu (Set prior host screen)

Add	▶**Select a profile** Adds the selected profile to the end.
Overwrite	▶**Select a profile** Overwrites the highlighted profile with the selected one.
Insert	▶**Select a profile** Inserts the selected profile into the highlighted priority position.
Delete	Deletes the highlighted profile.
Change priority	▶**Select a profile** Changes the highlighted priority to the selected one.

Connecting to the nearest access point <Any scan>

Search for connectable access points.

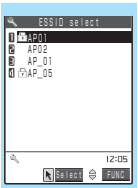
1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "WLAN setting"

2 "Host setting" ▶ "Any scan"

Access points are scanned and the result is displayed.

■ **If no access point is detected**

▶"Detect" or "Cancel"



ESSID select

Function menu➡p.470

3 Select an access point ▶ "YES"

4 "YES"

The profile of the currently connected access point is added to the Profile list screen (p.469).
The profile cannot be added if 20 prior hosts are already set.

Function menu (ESSID select screen)

Refresh	Searches for access points again.

<SIP address list>

Displaying Stored SIP Addresses

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "WLAN setting" ▶ "SIP address list"

■ **To check details of a SIP address**

▶Select a SIP address

<Change PIN (WLAN)>

Changing the WLAN Security Code

Default setting
0000 (4 zeros)

You can change the security code used to check or change the WLAN settings.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "WLAN setting" ▶ "Change PIN (WLAN)" ▶ Enter your WLAN security code ▶ Enter a new 4 to 8 digit WLAN security code ▶ "YES"

<Delete WLAN settings>

Resetting the WLAN Settings to Default

Reset the "WLAN setting" including the "WLAN security code" to default.

- If "Delete WLAN settings" is performed, the following functions and data will be reset to default:
  - Set profile name
  - WLAN settings
  - IP settings
  - HTTP Proxy setting
  - Settings under Set security method
  - SIP settings
  - VoIP settings

- QoS setting
- UPnP setting
- Auto assist setting
- Connection timeout
- Scan type
- Valid/Invalid under SSL cert. manager
- Prefix setting
- Scan interval
- Host setting
- WLAN security code
- WLAN CA cert.
- WLAN your cert.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ "WLAN setting" ▶ "Delete WLAN setting" ▶ Enter your WLAN security code ▶ "YES"

NOTE

◆If "Delete WLAN settings" is performed, the WLAN connection will be unavailable.

Configuring Simple Profile Settings

Download a WLAN profile simple setting file from an Internet or Intranet site to set a profile.

● Follow the network administrator's instructions when downloading a WLAN profile simple setting file to set a profile.

1 Sites screen (p.224) ▶ Select a WLAN profile simple setting file

2 "Set" ▶ "YES"

■ **If a certificate is included**
▶"Certificate"
"Set" does not appear until the certificate is confirmed (viewed).

3 Enter your WLAN security code

■ **If a message appears asking whether to overwrite an existing profile**
▶"YES"

■ **To save the certificate only**
The save is completed.

4 Select No. for the profile ▶ "YES" ▶ "YES"

The "Set prior host" screen (p.470) appears.

■ **To edit the profile name**
▶Select No. for the profile ▶"NO" ▶Enter a profile name ▶"YES"

5 Select the priority ▶ Select a profile ▶ (Set)

Profile Setting Item List

● Settings that can be configured for each profile

● For the setting methods, see “Configuring the settings for each profile” (p.469).

Item	Setting range (Underlined: Default setting)	Operation
Set profile name Change a profile name.	プロファイル01 - プロファイル20 * A profile name can contain up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters.	▶**Enter a profile name**
WLAN setting		
ESSID setting ID to prevent cross connections. Specify the same ID as that of the access point.	ESSID01 - ESSID20 * The ID can contain up to 32 single-byte alphanumeric characters (including some single-byte symbols).	▶**Enter an ESSID**
Radio mode setting Select the radio mode (IEEE802.11g/IEEE802.11b).	AUTO (11g/11b)/11b	▶**Select a mode**
Set channel Select a channel to prevent interference between multiple WLANs.	AUTO (1,6,11,14)/AUTO (1,5,9,13)/AUTO (1-14)/1ch - 14ch	▶**Select a channel**
Power save setting Turn on or off the power saving mode for the WLAN connection.	ON/OFF	▶**“ON” or “OFF”**
Tx PowerLevel Set the transmission power for the WLAN connection.	1 (Min)/2/3/4/5 (Max)	▶**Select the power level**
IP setting		
IP address setting Set an IP address.	Auto/Manual IP address/Subnet mask/Default gateway: 0.0.0.0 (Not set) - 255.255.255.255 * You cannot enter the following values. In addition, you need to enter a value other than 0.0.0.0 for the IP address and Subnet mask: <IP address>/<Default gateway> • Loopback address (127.0.0.1) • Class D/E address (224.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255) • All bits OFF (Example: 192.168.0.0/24) • All bits ON (Example: 192.168.0.255/24) <Subnet mask> • 255.255.255.255 * If 0.0.0.0 is entered, the current setting is reset to the unset status.	■**To set the address automatically** ▶**“Auto”** ■**To set the address manually** ▶**“Manual”**▶**“IP address”, “Subnet mask” or “Default gateway”**▶**Enter an address**▶✉**(Set)**
DNS setting Set a DNS address.	Auto/Manual Primary DNS/Secondary DNS: 0.0.0.0 (Not set) - 255.255.255.255 * You cannot enter the following values: • Loopback address (127.0.0.1) • Class D/E address (224.0.0.0 - 255.255.255.255) * If 0.0.0.0 is entered, the current setting is reset to the unset status.	■**To set the address automatically** ▶**“Auto”** ■**To set the address manually** ▶**“Manual”**▶**“Primary DNS” or “Secondary DNS”**▶**Enter an address**▶✉**(Set)**

Item	Setting range (Underlined: Default setting)	Operation
HTTP Proxy setting Set whether to use the proxy server.	None/ON Server address: 0.0.0.0 (Not set) - 255.255.255.255 Port number: (Not set) (1 - 65535) Unused address: (Not set) (Example) 192.168.1.1.www.XXX.jp.192.168.1.254 * You can enter a comma "," as a separation to specify multiple unused addresses. You can add a slash "/" to an IP address to specify the subnet mask (1 - 32). You can specify a wild card using a suffix match. (E.g.: If "co.jp" is entered, any "co.jp" domain may be specified as the server.)	**■To use no address** **▶"None"** **■To use an address** **▶"ON"▶"Server address"▶Enter an address▶"Port number(HTTP)"▶Enter a number▶"Port number(SSL)"▶Enter a number▶"Unused address"▶Enter an address▶✉ (Set)**
Set security method Set the security to prevent wireless packet analysis.		
Select security method	None, WEP, 802.1x, WPA/WPA2, WPA2, WPA/WPA2-PSK, WPA2-PSK	**■To not set the security** **▶"None"** **■To set "WEP"** **▶"WEP"▶Select a KeyID▶Select a character encoding▶Enter the WEP key** **■To set "802.1x", "WPA/WPA2" or "WPA2"** **▶Select Phase1▶Select Phase2** * If "EAP-TLS" is selected for Phase1, there is no need to select Phase2. **■To set "WPA/WPA2-PSK" or "WPA2-PSK"** **▶Select a character encoding▶Enter the WPA2-PSK key**
Certificate If you select "802.1x", "WPA/WPA2" or "WPA2" under Set security method, set a certificate for the authentication server. * Your certificate can be set only if "EAP-TLS" is selected for Phase1.	Select root cert.: (Not set) Select your cert.: (Not set)	**■To check a certificate** **▶"Select root cert." or "Select your cert."▶Select the certificate** **■To select a certificate** **▶"Select root cert." or "Select your cert."▶Highlight the certificate▶ⓘ (FUNC)▶"Select"** * "▣" is displayed for the currently selected certificate.
Set on CN inspect Set the CN inspection to prevent improper connection to the authentication server when the CN of the certificate does not match the entered one. * The CN inspection can be set if you select "802.1x", "WPA/WPA2" or "WPA2" under Set security method.	ON/OFF * The CN can contain up to 64 single-byte alphanumeric characters.	**■To set the CN inspection** **▶"ON"▶Enter the CN** **■To release the CN inspection** **▶"OFF"**
Set EAP ID Set the ID for 802.1x and WPA (EAP).	(Not set) * The ID can contain up to 64 single-byte alphanumeric characters.	**▶Enter an ID**
Set EAP Phase2 ID	ID: (Not set) Password: (Not set) * The ID and Password can contain up to 64 single-byte alphanumeric characters, respectively.	**▶"ID"▶Enter an ID▶"Password"▶Enter a password**

Continued on next page

Item	Setting range (Underlined: Default setting)	Operation
SIP setting Set the information on the main device (SIP server) for VoIP phone, Presence and Messenger.		
Set phone SIP address Set the SIP address of the FOMA terminal.	(Not set) * The address can contain up to 50 single-byte alphanumeric characters.	**▶Enter an address for the FOMA terminal**
SIP server setting	Auto/Manual IP-PBX server IP address: 0.0.0.0 (Not set) - 255.255.255.255 Port number: 5060 (1 - 65535) Register server IP address: 0.0.0.0 (Not set) - 255.255.255.255	**■To set the address automatically ▶"Auto"** **■To set "IP-PBX server" manually ▶"Manual"▶"IP-PBX server"▶"IP address"▶Enter an address▶"Port number"▶Enter a number▶✉ (Set)** **■To set "Register server" manually ▶"Manual"▶"Register server"▶"IP address"▶Enter an address▶✉ (Set)**
Presence server set	IP address: 0.0.0.0 (Not set) - 255.255.255.255 Port number: 5060 (1 - 65535)	**▶"IP address"▶Enter an address▶"Port number"▶Enter a number▶✉ (Set)**
SIP sequence setting Set the sequence for the main device (SIP server).	Auto (Prefer standard)/Auto (Prefer extended)/Fix standard mode/Fix extended mode	**▶Select any item**
Digest authentication	ID: (Not set) Password: (Not set) * The ID and Password can contain up to 64 single-byte alphanumeric characters, respectively.	**▶"ID"▶Enter an ID▶"Password"▶Enter a password**
Presence report set Set whether to report the presence status during a FOMA voice call or VoIP call.	Connect to FOMA: ON/OFF Connect to VoIP: ON/OFF	**■To set the report for a FOMA voice call ▶"Connect to FOMA"▶"ON" or "OFF"** **■To set the report for a VoIP call ▶"Connect to VoIP"▶"ON" or "OFF"**
VoIP setting	Jitter buffer setting: Dynamic/Static Jitter buffer size: 40 - 240 RTP port number: 5006 (1 - 65535)	**▶"Jitter buffer setting", "Jitter buffer size" or "RTP port number"▶Select an item or enter a number▶✉ (Set)**
QoS setting	ON/OFF	**▶"ON" or "OFF"**
UPnP setting	ON/OFF	**▶"ON" or "OFF"**
Auto assist setting	ON/OFF Public prefix: (Not set) Auto assist setting: 0 - 9 * The public prefix can contain up to 10 digits.	**■To use a prefix ▶"ON"▶Enter a public prefix▶Select a number for the prefix to be added▶✉ (Finish)** **■To not use a prefix ▶"OFF"**

■ Key entry for WEP and WPA-PSK

Select "64bit/ASCII", "64bit/HEX", "128bit/ASCII" or "128bit/HEX" for the WEP key character encoding. Select "ASCII" or "HEX" for the WPA-PSK key character encoding. If you select "64bit/HEX", "128bit/HEX" or "HEX", enter a hexadecimal key.

To enter a hexadecimal number, use numbers "0" - "9" and alphabets "a" - "f" and "A" - "F". Repeatedly press ✳ to enter "a" - "f", and # to enter "A" - "F". After pressing ✳ or #, you can press ▲ (Home) repeatedly to change characters from "f", "e", ... to "a".

● Common settings that can be configured for all profiles

● For the setting methods, see “Configuring common settings for all profiles” (p.469).

Item	Setting range (Underlined: Default setting)	Operation
Connection timeout Set the delay to automatically cancel connection if there is no response when you attempt to access a website on the WLAN Browser.	60 seconds/90 seconds/Unlimited	**▶Select the delay**
Scan type Set the access point scan type. * This option is available only if the “Host setting” is set to “Select scan”. The type will be “Passive” regardless of this option setting if the “Host setting” is set to “Any scan”.	Active/Passive/Auto	**▶Select the scan type** * If the option is set to “Auto”, the type will be either “Active” or “Passive”.
SSL cert. manager Check, validate or invalidate certificates.	(Not set)	**■To check a certificate** **▶Select a certificate** **■To validate or invalidate a certificate** **▶Highlight a certificate▶ⓘ (FUNC)▶“Valid/Invalid”** * “” appears when it is valid, and “” when invalid.
Prefix setting Set a prefix.	(Not recorded) * A name can contain up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters. A prefix can contain up to 10 digits.	**■To register or change a prefix** **▶Highlight an item▶✉ (Edit)▶Enter a name▶Enter a prefix**
Scan interval Set the scan interval to automatically search for access points when out of the WLAN range.	5min (1 - 10min)	**▶Set the time (minutes)**

NOTE

<Scan type>

◆Available scan types depend on the connected access point. If the access point is in stealth mode, you need to set the option to “Active”.

Appendix/ External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Menu Function List 478
Data Stored at the Time of Purchase 484
Key Assignment (5-touch input) 488
Key Assignment (2-touch input) 489
Key Assignment (T9 input) 490
Symbols and Special Characters 491
Pictographs 492
Smiley Face Symbols 493
Common Phrases 493
Multi Access Combination Patterns 494
Multitask Combination Patterns 496
Services Available for the FOMA Terminal 498
Options and Accessories 498
Data Transfer Software 499
NEC Mobile PDF 500
Movie Playing Software 500

Troubleshooting

Malfunction Checklist 501
If Any Error Message Appears 505
Warranty and After-Sales Service 512
i-mode Check Site 513
Updating Software ..... Software Update 514
Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data ..... Scanning function 519
Specifications 521
Number of Items that can be Stored, Registered and Protected on the FOMA Terminal 522
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones 523
What is Wi-Fi? 524

Menu Function List

Settings with are restored to default by “Reset settings” (p.414).

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
WLAN Tools	Messenger		—			p.463
	Presence		—			p.460
Full Browser			—			p.326
WLAN Browser			—			p.458
Mail			(MAIL)			p.256
i-mode			(i-mode)			p.222
i-αppli			—			p.304
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume	MENU50		All Level 4	p.77
		Select ring tone	MENU13	FOMAphone	Pattern1	p.138
				VoIPphone	Pattern3	
				VoIPphone(Public)	Pattern1	
				VoIPphone(Tie line)	Pattern1	
				Videophone	Pattern4	
				PushTalk	Pattern1	
				Mail	Pattern2	
				Chat mail	Pattern2	
				MessageR	Pattern3	
				MessageF	Pattern3	
				Messenger	Pattern2	
				Presence	Pattern2	
		SRS_WOW	MENU64	—	OFF	p.140
		Vibrator	MENU54		All OFF	p.140
		Illumination	MENU89	Set color	FOMAphone: Color 5 VoIPphone: Color 5 VoIPphone(Public): Color 5 VoIPphone(Tie line): Color 5 Videophone: Color 5 PushTalk: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Chat mail: Color 3 MessageR: Color 1 MessageF: Color 1 Messenger: Color 7 Presence: Color 7	p.156
				Set pattern	Standard	
				Adjust color	Edit color name: Color 1 to 12 Adjust color tone: Default	
		Public distinction-STD	—		OFF	p.458
		Manner mode set	MENU20		Manner mode (Original settings: Default→p.144)	p.144
		Disp. phonebook image	—		ON	p.149
		Answer setting	MENU58		Any key answer	p.72
		Receive ringing time	MENU68		All ON (Ring time: 5 seconds)	p.142
		Ring time(sec.)	MENU90	Set mute seconds	All OFF Mute seconds: 1 second (When Set mute seconds is set to “ON”)	p.188
				Missed calls display	All Display	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Incoming call	Info notice setting	MENU65		Japanese display: ボイス(名前通知: OFF) English display: ON	p.81
		Record message	MENU55		OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 (When Record message is set to “ON”) Ringing time: 8 seconds (When Record message is set to “ON”)	p.82
	Talk	Setting connect mode	MENU (1 second or longer)		DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA)	p.51
		Noise reduction	MENU76		ON	p.70
		Quality alarm	MENU75	FOMA Quality alarm	High tone	p.142
				VoIP Quality alarm	High tone	
				VoIP Level Down	No tone	
		Reconnect signal	MENU77		High tone	p.69
		Illumination in talk	—		OFF	p.156
		Set hold tone	—	On hold tone	Tone 1	p.78
				Holding tone	Melody 1	
		Setting when folded	MENU18		End the call	p.73
	Dialing	Pause dial	MENU84		—	p.67
		Sub-address setting	—		ON	p.69
		Prefix setting	—		“WORLD CALL” (009130010), “184” (184), “186” (186) User setting: Not recorded	p.68
		Auto dial setting	—		OFF	p.413
		Int’l dial settings	—	Auto assist setting	Auto	p.60
				IDD Prefix setting	“WORLD CALL” (009130010) User setting: Not recorded	
				Country Code setting	“アメリカ” (Country Code: +1) User setting: Not recorded	
	Videophone	Visual preference	—		Normal	p.97
		Select image	—	On hold	Pre-installed	p.97
				Holding	Pre-installed	
				Substitute image	Chara-den(Dimo)	
				Record message	Pre-installed	
				Preparing	Pre-installed	
				Voice memo	Pre-installed	
		Auto redial as voice	—		OFF	p.97
		Remote monitoring	—	Other ID	Not recorded	p.102
				Ringing time	5 seconds	
				Set	OFF	
		Display setting	—	Main display	Other side	p.99
				Front camera Reverse	ON	
		Indicate V.phone	—		Indication ON	p.100
		Hands-free switch	—		ON	p.99
		V-phone while packet	—		V-phone priority	p.101
	Display	Display setting	MENU56	Stand-by display	Blue technology	p.146
				Wake-up display	Welcome Message: Not entered	
				FOMAphone dialing	Blue technology	
				FOMAphone calling		

Continued on next page

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Display	Display setting	MENU56	VoIPphone dialing	Blue technology	p.146
				VoIPphone calling		
				VoIPphone(Public)		
				VoIPphone(Tie line)		
				V.phone dialing		
				V.phone calling		
				Mail sending		
				Mail receiving		
				Check new messages		
		Backlight	MENU70	Lighting	ON (lighting) + Saver (Light time: 5 minutes)	p.150
				Charging	Standard	
				Area	LCD+Keys	
				Brightness	Level 2	
		Display design	MENU86	Color pattern	Pattern 1	p.151
				Background 1	OFF	
				Background 2	Pattern 1	
		Indicator display	MENU93		Display information Clock type: Clock1 (size big) Phone number: ON Mail: OFF Connection: ON	p.150
		Font	MENU66	Type	Font 1	p.157
				Thickness	Medium	
		Desktop icon	MENU63		Photo mode, Messenger	p.158
		3D display setting	—		ON	p.161
		Select language	MENU15		Japanese	p.49
		Original menu	MENU52		Own number Check new messages Ring volume Vibrator Alarm clock Change security code	p.154
		Menu display set	MENU57	Menu display	List	p.152
				Theme	Blue technology	
				Memory focus	ON	
		Viewer settings	—		Picture	p.337
		Automatic display	MENU47		OFF	p.134
		Icons	MENU36		—	p.30
		Icons setting	—		ON	p.162
	Call time/ Charge	Call data	MENU61		—	p.407
		Notice designate calls	—	Cost limit setting	Not set	p.408
				Notify cost limit	OFF	
				Alarm tone	Clock Alarm Tone	
				Volume	Level 4	
		Reset total	MENU60		—	p.407
		Auto reset total cost	—		OFF	p.407
		Call time display	MENU48		ON	p.157
	Clock	Set time	MENU31		Auto time set ON	p.50
		Clock display	MENU39	Display	Japanese display: 日本語 English display: ON	p.157
				Size	Big	
				Display type	World watch OFF	

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Clock	World watch	—	Time zone	GMT+00 (City: London)	p.50
				Summer time	OFF	
		Alarm setting	—		Alarm preferred	p.395
	Lock/ Security	Lock Dial lock	—		Reset	p.171
		Lock Original lock	—		OFF	p.177
					Group and item settings Data disp. edit del.: All selected Dial/sending mail, Incoming/ Mail disp.: All deselected	
		SimpleLock	—		OFF	p.323
		Keypad lock	—		After folded: OFF Timer: OFF	p.182
		IC card lock	—		OFF	p.323
		Face authentication	—		OFF	p.183
					New image: Not stored	
					Function to reset: Only IC card lock selected	
		Self mode	—		OFF	p.189
		Reject unknown	—		Accept	p.189
		Call setting w/o ID	MENU10		All Accept Select ring tone: Same as ring tone Select calling disp.: Same as display	p.187
		Record display set	—	Received calls	ON	p.184
				Redial/Dialed calls	ON	
		Change security code	MENU29		0000 (4 zeros)	p.169
		PIN setting	—		—	p.169
		Secret mode	MENU40		OFF	p.173
		Secret data only mode	MENU41		OFF	p.174
		Scanning function	—	Set scan	ON	p.519
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	—		60 seconds	p.241
		Set check new messages	—		All checked	p.291
		Host selection	MENU81		i-mode User defined host: Not recorded	p.241
		SMS center selection	—		DoCoMo User setting: Not set	p.302
		Certificate	—		All Valid	p.245
		Certificate host	—		DoCoMo User defined host: Not recorded	p.247
	i-αppli settings	Disp. Software info	—		Not display	p.306
		End stand-by display	—		—	p.315
		i-αppli vol.	—		Level 4	p.308
	MyDocument settings	MyDocument comm	—		Auto	p.236
	ToruCa settings	Receive from R/W	—		Accept	p.323
		Scroll	—		1 line	p.323
	External connection	USB mode setting	—		Communication mode	p.371
		Earphone	MENU51		Earphone(only)	p.143
		Select microphone	—		External microphone	p.414
		Automatic answer	MENU94		OFF Ring time: 6 seconds (When Automatic answer is set to “ON”)	p.413

Continued on next page

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
Settings	Network setting	NW search mode	—		Manual	p.414
	WLAN setting	Check/Change setting	—			p.468
		Host setting	—			p.470
		SIP address list	—			p.470
		Change PIN (WLAN)	—			p.470
		Delete WLAN setting	—			p.470
	Other settings	Style mode	—		—	p.164
		Keypad sound	MENU30		ON	p.141
		HOST Effective set	—		OFF	p.458
		Charge sound	—		ON	p.141
		Battery level	MENU71		—	p.47
		Sidekeys guard	MENU ✗ (1 second or longer)		OFF	p.183
		Character input set	MENU35	Input mode	Mode 1(5-touch)	p.439
				Prediction	ON	p.441
				Guidance	ON	p.442
				T9 change mode	T9 Kanji change mode	p.441
				Clear learned	—	p.449
				CHG input size	Standard	p.439
		Neuropointer	—	Pointer	ON	p.155
				Speed	Simple: Normal	
				Pointer icon setting	Blue technology	
		Reset settings	MENU23		—	p.414
		Initialize	—		—	p.416
		Software Update	—		—	p.514
Data box	My picture		MENU46		—	p.335
	i-motion		—		—	p.347
	Melody		MENU16		—	p.359
	Chara-den		—		—	p.355
	My document		—		—	p.379
	Music		—		—	p.388
LifeKit	Bar code reader		—		—	p.212
	Receive Ir data		MENU79		—	pp.377, 378
	ToruCa		—		—	p.319
	IC card content		—		—	p.319
	SD-PIM		—		—	p.367
	Camera		—		—	pp.201, 206
	Data Sec. Service		—	PH-book img. Sending	OFF	p.190
	Schedule		MENU45		—	p.398
	Alarm clock		MENU44		All OFF	p.397
	To Do list		MENU95		—	p.402
	Text memo		MENU42		—	p.409
	Calculator		MENU85		—	p.409
	Play/Erase msg.		(Memo/Check)		—	p.85
	Play/Erase VP msg.		—		—	p.86
	Voice memo		MENU43		—	p.406
	Voice announce		MENU91		—	p.406
	UIM operation		—		—	p.129
	Forwarding image		—		ON	p.373

Main item	Sub item	Branch item	Menu No. (Key operation)	Default setting		Refer to
LifeKit	Access reader		—		—	p.214
	Dictionary		—		—	p.410
Service	Chaku-moji		—	Create message	5 messages pre-installed	p.62
				MSG display settings	Calls with Caller ID	
				3D message display	ON	
	Caller ID Notification		MENU17		—	p.53
	Voice Mail		—		—	p.420
	Call Waiting		—		—	p.421
	Call Forwarding		—		—	p.423
	Nuisance Call Blk		—		—	p.424
	Caller ID Request		—		—	p.424
	In-call arrival act		—		Answer	p.426
	Set in-call arrival		—		—	p.426
	Remote Control		—		—	p.427
	Dual Network		—		—	p.425
	English Guidance		—		—	p.425
	Additional service		—		—	p.429
	Service Numbers		—		—	p.426
	Multi Number		—	Select ring tone	Same as ring tone	p.427
Phonebook	Phonebook		—		—	pp.119, 124
	PushTalk		—		—	pp.110, 112
Own data	Own number		MENU0		—	pp.53, 404
	Received calls		MENU24		—	p.74
	Dialed calls		—		—	p.64
	Mail member		MENU97		—	p.268
	Chat group		—		—	p.297
	Common phrases		MENU38		Default common phrases (Folder name: Folder 1, 2)	p.447
	Own dictionary		MENU82		—	p.449
	DL dictionary		—		—	p.449

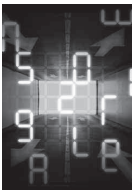
Data Stored at the Time of Purchase

Stand-by display



Welcome


Blue technology

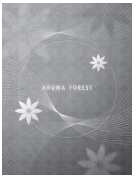

Black reflection


Color blocks


SMART NAVIGATION



FLYING DIAGRAM



AROMA FOREST


DOT AND LINE


GLOW


DQ Yangus

Frame


ARTISTIC


ZIPPER

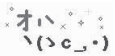


TOP NEWS


LOVELY STRING


Team Yangus

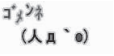
Deco-mail picture


Good Morning


Hello

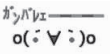

Good Night


Good Bye

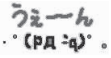

Sorry 1


Thank You


Congratulations


Fight


Angry 1


Cry


Glad

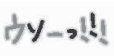

Worry


Love


Hate


Shock


Tired


Surprise 1


Meal


Party


Shopping


Drive

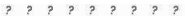

Let's Play

Bacterium

Sound



Clock



Question Mark



Chick



Smile



Sorry 2



Angry 2



Sleep



Surprise 2



DOKI-DOKI



Shock!



Bye-bye!



No



Good Idea



Slime



HoimiSlime



Draky



悲しい*



ラブラブ*



ムンクの叫び*



おどろき*



おひるね*



花火*



海水浴*



ライン　星空*



ライン　お誕生日*



ライン　サッカー*



Note



Snow



Balloon 1

Balloon 2



Gee!



What!?



So embarrassing!



Oh, great!



Ichiban!



Bull's-Eye!

*: © Disney

NOTE

◆ The Deco-mail pictures shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

Pointer



Blue technology

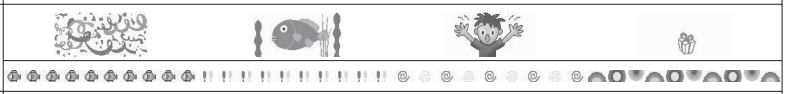


Black reflection



Color blocks

Auto Deco-mail picture

Emotion	Image
Hurry	
Love	
Dislike	
Happy	
Angry	
Sad	
Fun	
Surprise	
Question	
Advice	
Cheer up	
Join	
Remark	
Please	
Information	
OK	
Reply/Notice	

NOTE

◆ The Deco-mail pictures shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

Template



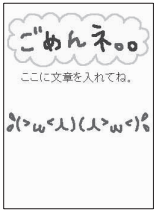
Good Morning



Good Night



Thank You



Sorry



Glad



Love



Love Love



Shock



Meal



Party



Bored



Let's Play



Urgent



Cheer Up!



Mm-hm



Come On



DQ Greeting



Dimo カフェ*



Dimo おひるね*



Dimo フラワー*

*: © Disney

NOTE

◆ The templates shown here may look different from what actually appear on screens.

Marker stamp

Cross		Heart1		Heart2		Kiss		Tear		Flame		
Lightning		Sorry		Note		Flower		Love	LOVE LOVE	Anger		
Right		Below		Left		Above		Here	ココ	No. 1		
No. 2		No. 3		Party		OK		NG		Person		
Car		Asleep		Question		Surprise		Shine		Whirlpool		
Punch		Nose										

Key Assignment (5-touch input)

Key	Kanji/Hiragana input mode	Kana input mode
1	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオァィゥェォ
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ
8	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨャュョ
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ
0	わをんーゎ	ワヲンーヮ*1
＊	―――*2	―――
#	゛゜、。？！・*3	゛゜、。？！・*3

Key	Alphabetic input mode	Numeric input mode
1	?!-/¥&＊()＃’’ 💗☎*4	1
2	ABCabc	2
3	DEFdef	3
4	GHIghi	4
5	JKLjkl	5
6	MNOmno	6
7	PQRSpqrs	7
8	TUVtuv	8
9	WXYZwxyz	9
0	―――	0＋*5
＊	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp*6	＊ .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @docomo.ne.jp*6
#	.@/?!()，−_:’~*7&¥	＃.@/?!()，−_:’~*7&¥

*1: Lower case “ワ” can be entered in double-byte input mode.
*2: Pressing ＊ switches “Kanji/Hiragana input mode” to “Kuten code”.
*3: In “Kanji/Hiragana input mode” and double-byte “Kana input mode”, “゛” and “゜” appear only when they can be attached to the previous character. “、”, “。”, “？”, “！” and “・” cannot be entered when you enter a reading into the own dictionary or UIM phonebook.
*4: Valid only when composing SMS and instant messages. You cannot enter “Pictograph” but “💗” and “☎” when composing SMS and instant messages. Although symbols appear as single-byte characters, “💗” and “☎” always appear as double-byte characters.
*5: “＋” can be entered when you enter an SMS address by holding down the key for 1 second or longer.
*6: These characters do not appear in double-byte mode (except “＊” in numeric input mode).
*7: This symbol appears as “ ” in double-byte input mode.
: Lower case characters can be entered in the following two methods:
- Enter an upper case character then press ↩ to convert it to lower case.
- Select “Lower case” from the function menu then enter a character.

Key Assignment (2-touch input)

■ Double-byte input mode

Key		2nd key									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key	1	あ ぁ	い ぃ	う ぅ	え ぇ	お ぉ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	た	ち	つ っ	て	と	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z z	?	!	—	／
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&		*2	
	8	や ゃ	（	ゆ ゅ	）	よ ょ	＊	＃		*2	*1
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ ゎ	を	ん	゛*3 、	゜*3 。	6	7	8	9	0

■ Single-byte input mode

Key		2nd key									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1st key	1	ｱ ｧ	ｲ ｨ	ｳ ｩ	ｴ ｪ	ｵ ｫ	A a	B b	C c	D d	E e
	2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F f	G g	H h	I i	J j
	3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K k	L l	M m	N n	O o
	4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ ｯ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P p	Q q	R r	S s	T t
	5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U u	V v	W w	X x	Y y
	6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z z	?	!	-	/
	7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&		*2	
	8	ﾔ ｬ	（	ﾕ ｭ	）	ﾖ ｮ	＊	＃		*2	*1
	9	ﾗ @	ﾘ /	ﾙ .	ﾚ _	ﾛ :	1 .ne.jp	2 .co.jp	3 .ac.jp	4 @docomo.ne.jp	5
	0	ﾜ -	ﾝ '	ﾝ	ﾞ ,	ﾟ .	6 www.	7 .com	8 .html	9 http://	0 https://

• A reading entered for a UIM phonebook entry is katakana even in double-byte input mode.

*1: Upper case input mode (upper) and lower case input mode (lower) are switched each time 8 0 are pressed. You can enter an upper case character then press ☎ to convert it to lower case.

*2: Valid only when “Pictograph” is available, e.g. when you enter “Text memo” or “Common phrases”. These are always double-byte characters. You cannot enter “Pictograph” but “💔” and “☎” when composing SMS and instant messages.

*3: In double-byte input mode, “゛” and “゜” appear only when they can be attached to the previous character. In other cases, “゛” and “゜” are replaced with spaces.

: A space is entered.

Key Assignment (T9 input)

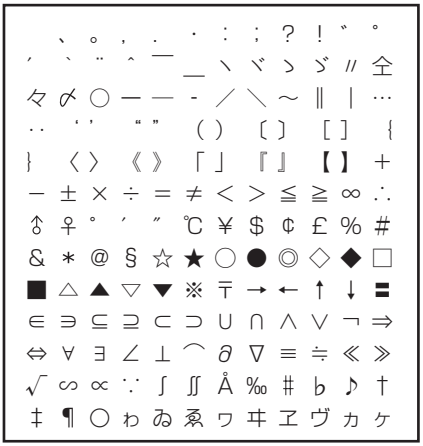
Key	Kanji/Hiragana input mode	Kana input mode	Alphabetic input mode
1	あ column, 1	ア column, 1	1
2	か column, 2	カ column, 2	ABCabc2
3	さ column, 3	サ column, 3	DEFdef3
4	た column, 4	タ column, 4	GHIghi4
5	な column, 5	ナ column, 5	JKLjkl5
6	は column, 6	ハ column, 6	MNOmno6
7	ま column, 7	マ column, 7	PQRSpqrs7
8	や column, 8	ヤ column, 8	TUVtuv8
9	ら column, 9	ラ column, 9	WXYZwxyz9
0	わをんゎー, 0	ワヲンヮ*3ー, 0	0
#	*1, *2	*1, *2	*4

- For “Numeric input mode”, see “5-touch input (Mode 1)” key assignments.
- Number candidates do not appear when you enter a reading into a UIM phonebook entry or “Own dictionary”.
- Immediately after “Alphabetic (double-byte)” or “Alphabetic (single-byte)” is set, CapsLock mode is activated. The mode changes in “CapsLock” → “Mode released” → “Shift” each time you press [☎].
- Entered characters are always upper case in “CapsLock mode”. In “Shift mode”, only the first character is entered in upper case, and subsequent characters will be in lower case. Entered characters are always lower case when neither mode is selected.
- After a character is confirmed in “Shift mode”, the mode is released.

*1: Candidates are switched between “゛” (dakuten) and “゜” (han-dakuten) when a reading is entered.
*2: After confirming a reading and characters, “、”, “。”, “？”, “！”, “・”, “゛” and “゜” appear as well as in 5-touch input (Mode 1). “゛” (dakuten) and “゜” (han-dakuten) appear only in single-byte kana input mode or when they can be attached to the previous character.
*3: Lower case “ワ” can be entered in double-byte input mode.
*4: After confirming characters, “.”, “@”, “/”, “？”, “！”, “(”, “)”, “,”, “－”, “＿”, “:”, “”, “~”, “￣”, “&” and “￥” appear as well as in 5-touch input (Mode 1).

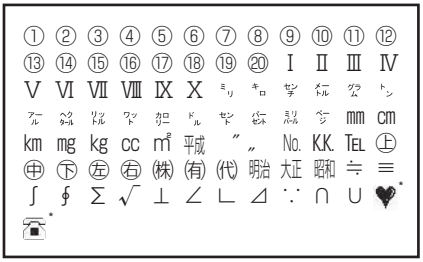
Symbols and Special Characters

Full pitch 1

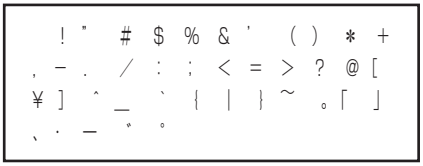




Full pitch 2



Half pitch



*: Appears when entering SMS message body.

Symbols in Japanese conversion

You can enter symbols by entering and converting “きごう” to display the symbol candidates then selecting from the symbol candidates. You can also enter the following characters then convert the text into the desired symbol.

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
あっと、あっとまーく	@
いこーる	=
えん	¥
おす	⇳
おなじ	々
おなじく	〃
おんぷ	♪
かける	×
かっこ	() 〔〕 [] {} 〈〉 《》 「」 『』 【】 “” “” () 〈〉 [] {} []

Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
から	～
こめ	※
ころん	:
こんま	,
さんかく	△▲▽▼
しゃせん	／＼
しかく	□■◇◆
しめ	〆
たす	+
どう	ヽヾゝゞ〃々
ぱーせんと	%

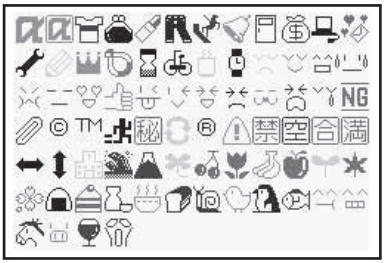
Name (characters to enter)	Symbol
ひく	−
ひしがた	◇◆
ほし	☆★
まる	○●◎
むげん	∞
めす	♀
やじるし	→←↑↓
ゆうびん	〒
るーと	√
わる	÷

Pictographs

■ Pictograph 1



■ Pictograph 2



NOTE

◆ Some pictographs in a message may not appear correctly on the receiving device if it does not support them. Even if the receiving phone is an i-mode terminal, Pictograph 2 may not be displayed properly if it is not compatible with Pictograph 2.

Smiley Face Symbols

■ Smiley Face

Reading	Face symbol
ありがとありがとう (Thanks)	m(_)m
ばんざい (Hurrah!)	＼(^o^)／
わーい (Wow!)	(^o^)
わーい (Wow!)	(^∀^)
わーい (Wow!)	(*^□^*)
わーい (Wow!)	o(^∀^o)(o^∀^)o
わーい (Wow!)	(≧▼≦)
おーい (Hey!)	(^o^)／
ぶい (Vvvv!)	(^^)v
ぎゃはは (Ha-ha!)	(^Q^)／^
あは (Ah ha!)	(o^o^o)
あは (Ah ha!)	^□^；
にこ (Smile!)	(^-^)
にこ (Smile! smile)	(*^^*)
にこ (Smile!)	(o‘∀‘o)
にこ (Smile!)	(o^∀^o)
にこ (Smile!)	(’∀’●)
にこ (Smile!)	(●^-^●)
にこ (Smile!)	(o^∀^o)
ちゅ (Kiss!)	(^3^)／
ちゅ (Kiss! Kiss!)	(^ε^)-☆Chu!!
わくわく (I'm excited!)	o(^-^)o
ういんく (Wink)	(^_-)
さよなら (Good-bye!)	(^^)／^
さよなら (Good-bye!)	(_Д_)／~~
がんば (Cheer up!)	p(^^)q
ね (Isn't it?)	(^^)b
ぼりぼり (Scratch, scratch!)	(^^)ゞ
ひやあせ (Cold Sweats!)	(^o^；
あせあせ (Sweat! Sweat!)	(;^_^A
びくっ (Twitch!)	(*_*)
どき (Shocked!)	(◎)-(◎;)
え (What?)	(@_@;)
めがてん (W'H'A'T?)	(・・；)

Reading	Face symbol
はてな (Wait a minute!)	(・・?)
きらーん (Twinkle, twinkle)	(☆。☆)
しくしく (Sob, sob)	(T_T)
さよなら (Good-bye!)	(T_T)/~
いたた (Ouch!)	(>_<)
いたた (Ouch!)	(>＜)
えーん (Crying)	(;_;)
えーん (Crying)	(ToT)
えーん (Crying)	Ω Å Ω;
えーん (Crying)	(ノД<。)°
えーん (Crying)	。(p>Λ<q)。
えーん (Crying)	(T ω T)
なぜ (Why?)	(?_?)
がーん (Shocked!)	(￣□￣;)!!
がーん (Shocked!)	(___;)
がーん (Shocked!)	Σ(￣□￣;)
えへん (Ahem!)	(￣^^)
む (Sullen)	(－＿－メ)
む (Sullen)	o(￣^^￣o)
いかり (Angry)	(^^)
むか (Offended)	(;-_-+
むか (Offended)	(^へ^)
むか (Offended)	(^へ^;)
こそこそ (Whisper)	(・_・|
じーっ (Gaze)	(-_-)
きこえない (Can't hear)	|(-_-)|
こまったもんだ (My goodness)	(￣～￣)ξ
ぶたー (Pig)	)^o^(
こあら (Koala)	(－Q－)
いっぷく (Taka a break)	(^|^)y^
いっぷく (Taka a break)	(^_^)y-~~~
ほし (Star)	☆彡
ねてる (Zzzz…)	(-_-)zz
ねむい (I'm sleepy)	＼(^o^)／

Reading	Face symbol
ねむい (I'm sleepy)	(ρ_-)ノ
めも (Memo)	φ(..)
うん (Yeah)	(^_^)(。_。)
かんばい (Cheer up!)	(^^)／▽☆▽＼(^^)
ども (Well, well)	＼(^^)(^^)／
がまん (Patient)	(;´∩`)
こんにちは (Hello!)	ゞ(=^▽^=)ノ
こんにちは (Hello!)	(・∀・)ノ
こんにちは (Hello!)	(●´∀`●)ノ
いいな (You lucky!)	(o>ω<o)
いいな (You lucky!)	(@°▽°@)
いいな (You lucky!)	(m’□’m)
うーん (Hmm)	(￣～￣;)
てれる (Embarrassed)	(／_＼;)
てれる (Embarrassed)	(*/ω＼*)
てれる (Embarrassed)	(//∀//)
てれる (Embarrassed)	(≧ω≦)
しあわせ (Happy!)	°+。(*´∀`)。+°
しあわせ (Happy!)	ヽ(´▽`)/
しあわせ (Happy!)	(*´∀`*)
なかよし (Pal)	^￣^)人(^￣^
ごめん (Sorry)	(*C*)
いじいじ (Mopey)	φ(.. ;)
いじわる (Wicked)	Ψ(´∀`#)
よろしく (Thank you)	☆ヽ(▽￣*)
こまった (Good god!)	>＜
やだ (No!)	(◯>_<)
へこむ (Feel down)	(´^`)
へこむ (Feel down)	(´ω`)
びっくり (Ack!)	(o д O;)
びっくり (Ack!)	w(°@°)w
だっしゅ (Dash)	ε=┏(・_・)┛

NOTE

◆ Face symbols can be entered from “Face Mark” under the Text entry (edit) function menu.→p.444

Common Phrases

■ Folder 1 (fixed common phrases)

No.	Message
1	Sorry
2	Thank you
3	Congratulations!
4	It's time
5	Wait a minute
6	Just arrived
7	Schedule change
8	Where are you?
9	Do your best
0	What are you doing?

■ Folder 2 (fixed common phrases)

No.	Message
1	All right
2	I hope you are well
3	Well done
4	Emergency
5	How do you think?
6	Please call
7	I will be late
8	Leave a message on voice mail
9	E-mail me via i-mode
0	Thank you for your help

Multi Access Combination Patterns

Current communication \ Newly established FOMA communication		FOMA voice call		Videophone call		i-mode*7	i-αppli	i-mode mail	
		Making	Receiving	Making	Receiving			Sending	Receiving
FOMA communication	During a FOMA voice call	△*1	△*2	×	△*3	○	×	○	○
	During a videophone call	×	△*3	–	△*3	×	×	×	×*4
	During i-mode*7	○	○	△*5	△*11	–	○	○	○
	During packet communication with a PC	○	○	×	×	×	△*6	×	×*4
	During 64K data communication	×	△*3	×	△*3	×	×	×	×*4
	During a PushTalk call	×	△*10	×	×	×	×	×	×*4
WLAN communication	During a VoIP call	×	×*12	×	×	○	×	×	○
	During instant message transmission	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○
	During presence report reception	○	○	○	○	×	×	×	○
	While using the WLAN Browser	△*13	△*13	△*13	△*13	×	△*14	△*15	○

Current communication \ Newly established FOMA communication		SMS		Packet communication		64K data communication		PushTalk	
		Sending	Receiving	Outgoing	Incoming	Outgoing	Incoming	Making	Receiving
FOMA communication	During a FOMA voice call	○	○	○	○	×	△*3	×	×*12
	During a videophone call	×	○	×	×*12	×	△*3	×	×
	During i-mode*7	○	○	×	×	×	×	△*8	△*9
	During packet communication with a PC	○	○	–	–	×	×	×	×
	During 64K data communication	○	○	×	×	×	△*3	×	×
	During a PushTalk call	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
WLAN communication	During a VoIP call	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	×
	During instant message transmission	×	○	×	×	×	△*21	○	○
	During presence report reception	×	○	×	×	×	△*21	○	○
	While using the WLAN Browser	△*15	○	△*13	×	△*13	△*13 *22	△*16	△*16

Current communication \ Newly established FOMA communication		VoIP call		Instant message		Presence report reception	WLAN Browser
		Making	Receiving	Sending	Receiving		
FOMA communication		△*17	△*17*23	△*18	○	○	△*19
WLAN communication	During a VoIP call	△*20	△*20	○	○	○	○
	During instant message transmission	○	○	–	–	○	○
	During presence report reception	○	○	○	○	–	○
	While using the WLAN Browser	○	○	○	○	○	–

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated. △: Can be activated depending on situation. –: Functionally incompatible.

*1: If you have subscribed to “Call Waiting”, you can hold the current voice call to make another call.
*2: If you have subscribed to “Call Waiting”, you can hold the current voice call to answer an incoming call. If you have subscribed to “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding”, you can end the current voice call and then answer a new incoming call. →p.426
*3: If you have subscribed to “Call Waiting”, “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding”, you can end the current communication and then answer a new incoming communication. →p.426
*4: An i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF is not received, but is stored in the i-mode center. You can receive the i-mode message, MessageR or MessageF stored in the i-mode center by performing “Check new messages” after the current communication ends.
*5: Make a videophone call after disconnecting the i-mode.
*6: You cannot communicate via i-αppli.
*7: Includes i-channel site view and communication via Full Browser or ToruCa.
*8: Make a PushTalk call after disconnecting the i-mode.
*9: When “Set i-mode arrival act” under “PushTalk setting” (p.115) is set to “PushTalk preferred”, receiving a PushTalk call disconnects i-mode communication.
*10: When “PushTalk arrival act” is set to “Answer”, answering an incoming voice call ends PushTalk communication.
*11: When “V-phone while packet” is set to “V-phone priority”, answering an incoming videophone call disconnects i-mode communication.
*12: It is logged as a missed call.
*13: The WLAN Browser is not available.
*14: Communicate via i-αppli after disconnecting from the WLAN.
*15: Send a message after disconnecting from the WLAN.
*16: The WLAN connection is disconnected.
*17: You can make a VoIP call while using i-mode (no packet communication) or during SMS transmission.
*18: You can send an instant message while using i-mode (no packet communication).
*19: It is available during a FOMA voice call.
*20: A VoIP call may be available depending on the used main device (SIP server).
*21: You can communicate when a videophone call is received from an external device.
*22: If a videophone call is received from an external device, you can communicate after disconnecting from the WLAN.
*23: If a VoIP call is received during a FOMA voice call, it is recorded as a missed call.

Multitask Combination Patterns

Function / Currently	Messenger	Presence	WLAN Browser	Mail	i-mode menu/ i-channel list	i-αppli	Settings
Launching Messenger	×	○	○	○	○	○	○*3
Launching Presence	○	×	○	○	○	○	○*3
Launching Mail group	○	○	○	○*1	○	○	○*3
Launching i-mode group	○	○	×	○	×	○	○*3
Launching i-αppli group	○	○	○	○	○	×	○*3
Launching Settings group	○	○	○	○	○	○	×
Launching Tools group*15	○	○	○	○	○	○*14	○*3
During a FOMA voice call	○	○	○	○*2	○*2	×	×*4
During a videophone call	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
During a PushTalk call	○	○	○	○	○	×	○*4
During packet communication with a PC	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*3
During 64K data communication	○	○	○	○	○	×	×*4*12
During a VoIP call	○	○	○	○	○	×	×*4
During WLAN communication	○	○	×	○	×	○	○*3

Function / Currently	Data box	LifeKit	Service	Phonebook	Own data	Original menu
Launching Messenger	○	○*5	○*16	○*10	○	○
Launching Presence	○	○*5	○*16	○*10	○	○
Launching Mail group	○	○*5	○*16	○*10	○	○
Launching i-mode group	○*19	○*5*20	○*16	○*10	○	○
Launching i-αppli group	○	○*5*21	○*16	○*10	○	○
Launching Settings group	○	○*5	×	○*10	○	○
Launching Tools group*15	×	×	○*16	×	×	○
During a FOMA voice call	×	×*7	○*2*9*16*17	○*2*10	○*2*11	○*2
During a videophone call	×	×*6	×	×	×	×
During a PushTalk call	×	○*8	○*9*16*17	○*10	○*11	○
During packet communication with a PC	○*13	○*5	○*16	○*10	○	○
During 64K data communication	×	×*8	○*9*16*17	○*10	○*11	○
During a VoIP call	×	×*18	○*16	○*10	○*11	○
During WLAN communication	○	○*5	○*16	○	○	○

○: Can be activated. ×: Cannot be activated.

*1: “Compose message” and “Compose SMS” cannot be used simultaneously.
*2: It is unavailable while switching between a voice call and a videophone call.
*3: Some functions are unavailable.
*4: Only “Pause dial” and “Keypad sound” are available.
*5: “Send Ir data”, “SD-PIM”, “Voice announce” and “UIM operation” are unavailable.
*6: “Voice memo(in-call)” is available only when you press and hold ▼ (Memo/Check) for 1 second or longer. However, it is unavailable while switching between a voice call and a videophone call.
*7: Only “Bar code reader”, “ToruCa”, “Camera”, “Data Sec. Service”, “Schedule”, “To Do list”, “Text memo”, “Calculator”, “Voice memo(in-call)”, “Access reader” and “Dictionary” are available. However, although the lists and details of data scanned by the “Access reader” or “Bar code reader” can be displayed, new scans cannot be performed. In addition, only “Photo mode” and “Continuous mode” are available in “Camera”.
*8: Only “Bar code reader”, “ToruCa”, “Camera”, “Data Sec. Service”, “Schedule”, “To Do list”, “Text memo”, “Calculator”, “Access reader” and “Dictionary” are available. However, although the lists and details of data scanned by the “Access reader” or “Bar code reader” can be displayed, new scans cannot be performed. In addition, only “Photo mode” and “Continuous mode” are available in “Camera”.
*9: “Voice Mail” messages cannot be played. The Enter number (p.429) cannot be dialed (but can be dialed using USSD).
*10: “Restrictions” is unavailable.
*11: “Common phrases”, “Own dictionary” and “Download dictionary” are unavailable.
*12: Only “Indicate V.phone” is available.
*13: “Music player” is unavailable.
*14: i-αppli cannot be used while a track is played on the “music player”.
*15: The function is unavailable when “Receive Ir data”, “SD-PIM” or “UIM operation” is selected.
*16: “Chaku-moji” is unavailable.
*17: “Caller ID Notification” is unavailable.
*18: Only “Bar code reader”, “ToruCa”, “Data Sec. Service”, “Schedule”, “To Do list”, “Text memo”, “Calculator”, “Voice memo(in-call)”, “Access reader” and “Dictionary” are available. However, although the lists and details of data scanned by the “Access reader” or “Bar code reader” can be displayed, new scans cannot be performed.
*19: “My document” may not be available depending on the active function.
*20: “ToruCa” may not be available depending on the active function.
*21: “IC card content” is not available while an i-αppli is activated.

Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Available service		Phone number
Collect call (the receiving party is asked to pay for)		(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay) (A phone number that is not listed in the directory cannot be provided)		(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay)	8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (pay)		(No area code) 117
Weather (pay)		Area code for weather forecast you want + 177
Police emergency		(No area code) 110
Fire brigade/ambulance emergency		(No area code) 119
Maritime distress call		(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System (pay)		(No area code) 171

NOTE

- When you use the Collect Call Service (106), the receiver will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge for each call (90 yen (94.5 yen tax included)). (As of January, 2007)
- When you use the Directory Assistance Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge of 100 yen (105 yen tax included). A free service is available for persons with impaired vision or disability or the arms or hands. For further details call NTT inquiries on 116 from general subscriber phones. (As of January, 2007)
- When calling 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal, the location from which the call is sent cannot be established. Therefore, first say you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number, and state your location clearly so that the police or fire department can call you back. Also, do not move around when making the call, so that you are not disconnected. Do not turn off the FOMA terminal immediately after ending the call, but leave it turned on for more ten minutes or so, so that you can receive a call.
- Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.
- If you are using a “Call Forwarding” service from a general phone and if a mobile phone is set as the forwarding number, depending on the settings of a general phone or a mobile phone, the caller may simply hear the ring tone even when the mobile phone is busy with another call, out of range or turned off.
- Other services such as 116 (NTT inquiries), Dial Q2, message (Dengon) Dial, and Credit Call Service are unavailable (However, Credit Call Service calls can be made from public or general subscriber phones to the FOMA terminals).

Options and Accessories

By combining various options and accessories sold separately, the FOMA terminal can support a wide range of applications to meet your personal and professional needs. Note that some products may not be available in some areas. For more information, contact the DoCoMo service counter. For details on options and accessories, see each User Guide.

- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001*1/P002*1
- Stereo Earphone Set P001*1
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver
- FOMA USB Cable
- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Desktop Holder N07
- Battery Pack N11
- Back Cover N19
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01*2
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- Data Communications Adapter N01
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)
- In-Car Holder 01
- FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01*3
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Carrying Case S 01
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

*1: To connect to the FOMA N902iL, the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is required.
*2: To connect via USB or charge the battery, the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required.
*3: For overseas use, the conversion adapter must be available in the area.

Data Transfer Software

Download the Data Link Software and Music Player Data Transfer Software for the FOMA N902iL from the NEC Internet website:
http://www.n-keitai.com/

Visit the website above or see the help of the Data Link Software and Music Player Data Transfer Software for more details on downloading method, transferable data, operating environment, operating method and restrictions.

The software cannot be downloaded by the site access function of the FOMA terminal. Use a PC to download. You can use the software free of charge. A communication charge is made for downloading.

■ **Before using the product**

- NEC Corporation (hereinafter referred to as “our company”) does not guarantee performance on licensed programs, compatibility, accuracy or reliability for the result of use, or is not liable for defects whatsoever. You will be responsible for any problems or difficulties arising on the licensed programs and will bear any costs arising.
- Our company shall not take any responsibility for your lost profits, any damages arising in special situations (including ones that our company could forecast), or damages you are liable for, claimed by a third party. Moreover, you shall not make any claim against our company.

Inquiries about Data Link Software and Music Player Data Transfer Software
NEC (NEC NTT DoCoMo Terminals Marketing and Sales Division)
0120-102-001 (only in Japanese)
Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm
(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)
* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Data Link Software

The “FOMA N902iL Data Link Software” allows you to transfer data such as phonebook entries, schedules, messages, melodies, still images, movies and i-motion.

■ **Operating environment and notes**

The “FOMA USB Cable (optional)” is required to connect to a PC. It is unavailable for Infrared data exchange. For other environments, see “ソフトウェアのご紹介” on the download page.
Since the Data Link Software uses OBEX (Object Exchange) for data transfer, also see “Transferring Data via Infrared Data Exchange/Cable Connection” (p.374).
Information downloaded using i-mode/i-αppli is not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal even if you use the Data Link Software, according to the copyright law. In addition, you cannot transfer data that are not allowed to be output from the FOMA terminal.

■ **Operating System**

Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese edition)
* PC/AT compatible model on which one of the Operating Systems above runs

Music Player Data Transfer Software

The “FOMA N902iL N902i N702iD Music Player Data Transfer Software” allows you to save AAC-formatted music data to a miniSD memory card. The stored music data can be played on the music player. →p.387

■ **Setting environment and note**

The “FOMA USB Cable (optional)” or miniSD memory card reader/writer is required to connect to a PC. It is unavailable for Infrared data exchange. For other environments, see “ソフトウェアのご紹介” on the download page.

■ **Operating System**

Windows 2000, Windows XP (Japanese edition)
* PC/AT compatible model on which one of the Operating Systems above runs

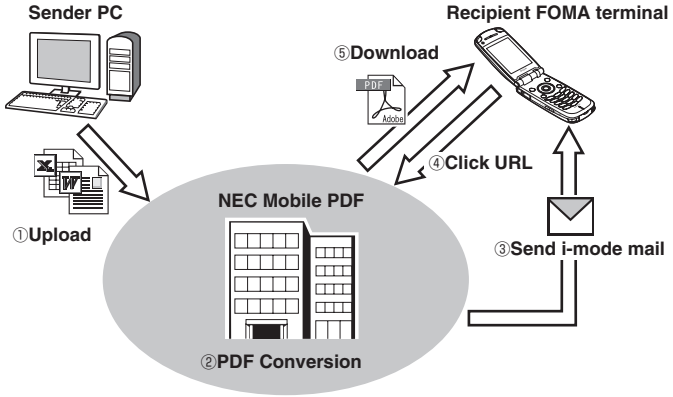
NEC Mobile PDF

NEC Mobile PDF automatically converts uploaded Microsoft Word or Microsoft Excel documents to PDF data, and notifies the specified FOMA terminal of the URL for viewing the PDF.

* Compatible handsets: N901iS, N902i, N902iS, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N902iL, N903i (As of January, 2007)

- Some files cannot be converted to PDF data, depending on the format or content.
- This service may terminate without notice.

NEC Mobile PDF flow



Visit the following site for the service details:
http://www.n-keitai.com/

Inquiries about NEC Mobile PDF
NEC (NEC NTT DoCoMo Terminals Marketing and Sales Division)
0120-102-001 (in Japanese only)
Business hours: Weekdays 9:00 am to 12 noon and 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm
(Excludes weekends, public holidays and NEC holidays)
* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Movie Playing Software

- To play a movie (MP4-formatted file) on a PC, install QuickTime Player (free) ver. 6.4 or above (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP) by Apple Computer, Inc.
- Download QuickTime from the following webpage:
  http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/
  - To download, you need a PC to access the Internet. A communication charge is made for downloading.
  - See the webpage above for more details on the environment, how to download or how to operate.

Malfunction Checklist

● Check first whether the software update is required. If it is required, update the software.
"Updating Software"→p.514

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
The FOMA terminal does not turn on (The FOMA terminal cannot be used)	● Is the battery pack properly inserted? ● Has the battery run out?	p.43 p.47
The animation shown on the right appears and an alarm tone sounds	● The battery has run out. Charge the battery. 	p.45 p.47
The "圏外" icon appears and I hear a busy tone	● Are you out of range or is the reception poor? 	p.48
The "圏外" icon appears and I hear a busy tone	● Is the WLAN reception poor? Move to the area where the WLAN reception is good (near access point). ● Is the WLAN setting correct? ● When the Host setting under the WLAN setting is set to "Any scan", connect to the access point. ● If the access point is in stealth mode, set the Scan type to Active.	p.48 p.468 p.52 p.475
"圏外" does not appear	● Scan the access point.	p.52
"SIP" does not appear	● Scan the access point. ● Is the WLAN setting correct?	p.52 p.468
"SIP" appears, but cannot make a call	● Scan the access point.	p.52
Cannot connect to the WLAN access point	● Is "Setting connect mode" set to "Single mode(FOMA)"? ● Is the WLAN setting correct?	p.51 p.468
Cannot make a call by pressing the dial keys	● Is Keypad lock set? ● Is Restrict dialing set?	p.182 p.185
Dialed a number, but all I hear is a busy tone (FOMA voice call)	● Did you start dialing before hearing the dial tone? ● Did you forget to dial the area code? ● Is "圏外" displayed? ● Is "Please wait" displayed?	p.56 p.56 p.48 —
Dialed a number, but all I hear is a busy tone (VoIP call)	● Is "圏外" displayed? ● Is "Cannot connect with server" or "Call refused because of congested line" is displayed?	p.48 —
Cannot receive calls or Cannot hear the ring tone	● Is any of the following functions set? Restrictions · Call rejection · Call acceptation · Call forwarding · Voice Mail Ring time(sec.) · Set mute seconds Reject unknown Call setting w/o ID · Unknown: Reject · Payphone: Reject · User unset: Reject · VoIP(Unknown): Reject ● Is the FOMA terminal in Manner mode? ● Is the FOMA terminal in Public mode (Driving mode)? ● Is the FOMA terminal in Self mode? ● Is the start time of Voice Mail or Call Forwarding service set to "0 second"? ● Is Caller ID Request set to Activate? ● Is mova valid with the Dual Network service? ● Is the ring volume set to "Silent"?	p.185 p.188 p.189 p.187 p.143 p.79 p.189 p.421 p.423 p.424 p.425 p.77

Continued on next page

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
Mail ring tones and alarm tones sound but no ring tone sounds when receiving a call	● Is “Set mute seconds” under “Ring time(sec.)” set to longer time (e.g. 99 seconds)? Set “Set mute seconds” to shorter time.	p.188
The records of Dialed calls/ Redial, Sent address disappear automatically	● Is “Restrict dialing” under “Restrictions” set?	p.185
The Neuropointer does not move quickly	● Adjust the slide setting.	p.155
The ring tone sounding when receive a voice call or videophone call is different from what you set	● When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority applies.	p.140
The image appearing when receive a voice call or videophone call is different from what you set	● When the image settings are duplicated, the priority applies.	p.149
When receiving a voice call or videophone call, the color or flashing pattern of the incoming call lamp is different from what you set	● When the illumination settings are duplicated, the priority applies.	p.156
A PDF document is not properly displayed	● A document may not be properly displayed if it contain formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.	—
It takes long to display a PDF document	● It may take long to display a large-sized PDF document.	—
Cannot copy a PDF document to the FOMA terminal	● Does the file size exceed 2M bytes?	p.380
Cannot copy a PDF document to the miniSD memory card	● Was the document downloaded by page?	p.380
The screen or ring tone for an incoming call or message is the default setting	● Depending on the combination of receiving screen and ring tone or the priority sequence, either the receiving screen or ring tone may be restored to default.	—
The ring tone sounding when receive a message is different from what you set	● When the ring tone settings are duplicated, the priority applies. ● If you have received two or more messages, the tone set for the last received mail address sounds. ● If you have received two or more messages including a chat message, the FOMA terminal emits the ring tone set for the chat message. ● If the format of the sender’s mail address is “(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp”, save only that phone number as a mail address and set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.). ● Is the sender’s mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail detail screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set a distinctive ring tone for that mail address in Select ring tone under Mail (recv.)? ● If you receive an SMS, a distinctive ring tone set in Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook sounds.	p.140 p.133 p.133 p.133 p.132 p.133
A string appears instead of image or i-motion	● The following indicate that the image or i-motion cannot be selected for the function. Select an image or i-motion that will not display the following: “Not available”, “Expired file”, “No preview data”	p.335 p.347
The color of the illumination flashing when receive a message is different from what you set	● When the incoming lamp settings are duplicated, the priority applies. ● If you receive two or more messages, the incoming call lamp flashes following the settings of the illumination under Mail (recv.) that is set to the last received mail address. ● If the format of the sender’s mail address is “(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp”, save only that phone number as a mail address and set distinctive illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.). ● Is the sender’s mail address (a mail address shown on the received mail detail screen) stored in the phonebook correctly and did you set illumination for that mail address in Illumination under Mail (recv.)? ● If you receive an SMS, distinctive illumination set in Illumination under Mail (recv.) for the phone number in the phonebook flashes.	p.156 p.133 p.133 p.132 p.133

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
Cannot charge the FOMA terminal (the charge lamp of the FOMA terminal does not light)	● Is the battery pack properly inserted? ● Is the adapter firmly plugged into the electrical socket or cigarette lighter socket? ● Are the adapter and the FOMA terminal correctly connected (is the AC adapter firmly connected to the FOMA terminal or the desktop holder)?	p.43 p.45 p.46
The key does not sound	● Is “Keypad sound” set to “OFF”? ● Is the FOMA terminal in Manner mode?	p.141 p.143
Cannot use Any key answer to answer a voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call	● Is “Answer setting” set to “Quick silent” or “OFF”? ● You cannot use Any key answer to answer a videophone call.	p.72 —
The other party’s voice is difficult to hear during a call	● Is the earpiece speaker properly placed against your ear? ● Is anything e.g. a sticker obstructing the earpiece speaker? ● Is anything obstructing the speaker in hands-free mode? ● Did you change the “Volume” setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly.	p.26 — — p.76
The other party’s voice is too loud during a call	● Did you change the “Volume” setting? Change the setting so that you can hear the other party clearly.	p.76
Pressing the side keys does not operate the folded FOMA terminal	● Is Keypad lock set? ● Is “Sidekeys guard” set to “ON”?	p.182 p.183
Pressing (Memo/Check) does not check missed calls, etc. when the FOMA terminal is folded	● Is “Info notice setting” set to “OFF”? ● Is Keypad lock set? ● Is “Sidekeys guard” set to “ON”?	p.81 p.182 p.183
The date is displayed in Japanese	● Is “Japanese” selected as the language?	p.157
The display is dim	● Is the brightness of the backlight set to “Level 1”?	p.150
The display light of the display or keypad does not turn on	● Is Lighting of the backlight set to “OFF”? ● Press and hold 5 for 1 second or longer to turn the display light on or off. Note that pressing and holding 5 for 1 second or longer will turn off the display light e.g. while composing a message.	p.150 —
Receiving an incoming call immediately after turning on the power displays the phone number but does not display the name stored in the phonebook	● The FOMA terminal may be reading the FOMA card (UIM) immediately after turning on the power. The phonebook function may not be available then.	—
It takes some time for the power to turn on after pressing and holding ☎ for 1 second or longer	● Data checking may take time e.g. if the phonebook is full of data.	p.131
Nothing appears on the display	● The FOMA terminal is in power saver mode. Press any key to release the power saver mode.	p.150
Nothing appears on the indicator display	● Is “Indicator display” set to “OFF”?	p.150
The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a call	● The FOMA terminal does not perform incoming call operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) until the set time is reached, when receiving a call from a phone number or SIP address not stored in the phonebook or from a caller who does not notify his/her caller ID and if “Set mute seconds” under “Ring time(sec.)” is set to “ON”.	p.188
The figure of the accumulated charge does not increase	● The figure does not increase if it has already reached the limit. Perform “Reset total”.	p.407
Receiving an SMS does not display the sender’s name stored in the phonebook	● Did you correctly store the sender’s phone number on the phone number line ( ) of the phonebook?	p.119
A message is not automatically filtered	● If the sender’s mail address is “(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp”, save only the phone number in the Auto-sort settings. ● If the sender’s mail address is not “(Phone number)@docomo.ne.jp”, save the entire address including the domain in the Auto-sort settings.	p.282 p.282
A message is not automatically received	● If you have set “Receive option setting” to “ON”, set it to “OFF”.	p.270 p.290

Continued on next page

Problem	Points to check	Refer to
Cannot install the N902iL communication setting file (driver) or make data communication	● If you have set USB mode setting to “miniSD mode” or “Print mode”, set it to “Communication mode”.	p.371
i-mode, i-mode mail, i-αppli and i-channel cannot be connected	● Is “Setting connect mode” set to “Single mode(WLAN)”? ● Is “Host selection” set to “i-mode”? ● If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	p.51 p.241 –
The FOMA terminal does not perform receiving message operations (ring tone sounding, vibrator, incoming call lamp flashing) when receiving a message	● Is “Receive ringing time” set to “OFF”? ● Is “Receiving display” set to “Operation preferred”?	p.142 p.290
A sent message is not saved to the Outbox	● Is “Sort all” set to the folder of mail-linked i-αppli? Highlight the folder of mail-linked i-αppli then select “Open folder” from the function menu to confirm the setting.	p.275 p.282
A received message is not saved to the Inbox, and “ (white)” does not disappear	● Does “ ” appear on the folder of mail-linked i-αppli in the Inbox? Or is “Sort all” set to the folder of mail-linked i-αppli? Highlight the folder of mail-linked i-αppli then select “Open folder” from the function menu to confirm the setting.	p.275 p.282 p.305
The message “添付ファイル削除” (attached file deleted) appears on a mail message	● You cannot receive attached files that are not supported by i-mode mail. Such attached files are automatically deleted in the i-mode center and you receive only the message.	p.256
I was disconnected while sending a message, then received an SMS A message appears when I retry	● SMS interrupts communication and notifies you that a large amount of data is being transferred within a given time. Follow the contents of SMS and the displayed message.	–
A file attached to a message sent from a PC was deleted	● If the image file is GIF-formatted and was attached to a message sent from a device other than the FOMA terminal, only up to 10,000 bytes can be received.	–
Images taken with the rear camera are flickered	● When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the “Image tuning” setting may suppress flickering.	p.209
Still images or movies shot with the rear camera look too bright	● You may shoot them outside or in a bright place with “Image tuning” set to “Mode 1(50Hz)” or “Mode 2(60Hz)”. Restore the tuning to “Auto” if it is not.	p.209
Still images or movies look blurred	● Set a mode suited to the scene being shot. ● Set the rear camera lens to “● (normal lens)” when shooting normally and to “ (macro lens)” when shooting close-up.	p.208 p.195
“ ” appears when attempting to display an image or Attempting to play for demonstration or see a preview displays “ ”	● “ ” may appear when the image data is corrupted.	–
The terminal operates slowly when any keypads are pressed	● It may occur if a large amount of data is stored on the FOMA terminal or if you exchange large data by using the miniSD reader/writer function.	–
Chance capture shooting shortens the shooting time	● Chance capture shooting saves control data together with movie data, which may shorten the shooting time.	–
Pressing (Home) does not display the home URL page	● If the current “Setting connect mode” is set to DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA) or Single mode (FOMA), is “Home URL” of i-mode set to “Invalid”? ● If the current “Setting connect mode” is set to DUAL mode (Prefer WLAN) or Single mode (WLAN), is “Home URL” of the WLAN Browser set to “Invalid”?	p.240 p.459
Cannot authenticate a user when using the WLAN Browser	● Is the selected User Certificate same as the one required from the server?	p.459

If Any Error Message Appears

● Numbers enclosed in parentheses contained in i-mode error messages are codes used to distinguish errors sent from the i-mode center.

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“Activating mail security Cannot download”	● You cannot download or upgrade the mail-linked i-αppli because the Inbox/Outbox or a folder used for the mail-linked i-αppli is protected. To download or upgrade the mail-linked i-αppli, release the mail security.	p.185
“Activating mail security Unable to delete”	● You cannot delete mail-linked i-αppli or its folder because the Inbox/Outbox or a folder used for the mail-linked i-αppli is protected. To delete both the mail-linked i-αppli and its folder, release the mail security. To delete a mail-linked i-αppli only, select “NO” when you receive a message asking whether to delete a folder used for the mail-linked i-αppli.	p.185
“Activating Original lock”	● This message appears when you perform a prohibited operation when the Original lock is set.	p.177
“Activating record display OFF”	● You cannot use “Received calls”, “Redial/Dialed calls”, “Received address” or “Sent address” because “Record display set” is set to “OFF”. Set “Record display set” to “ON” to use them.	p.184
“Activating restrict dialing”	● This message appears when you perform a prohibited operation when the restrict dialing is set.	p.185
“Attached file is deleted”	● This message appears when an i-mode message received that you quote to send a reply has any file attached. It also appears if it is prohibited to attach the file to a message or output the file from the FOMA terminal when you forward an i-mode message. Press ● to delete the attached file.	—
“Authentication canceled (401)”	● This message appears when you press “Cancel” on the authentication screen.	—
“Authentication type is not supported (401)”	● This message appears when the authentication did not go through. Press ● to return to the previous page.	—
“Call refused because of congested line”	● This message appears when you make a VoIP call while the line is busy. Retry after a while.	—
“Cannot connect with server”	● This message appears when you make a VoIP call before registering to the main device (SIP server). Register to the main device (SIP server).	p.474
“Cannot dial (XXX)”	● A VoIP call cannot be made for some reason. Retry later. Numbers in parentheses contained in error messages are codes used to distinguish errors sent from the main device (SIP server).	—
“Cannot edit message”	● The text cannot be edited because the size of the attached file is 10,000 bytes or more.	p.265
“Cannot save attached file”	● This message appears when you receive a mail with an attached file that cannot be saved via Infrared data exchange, cable connection or copied from a miniSD memory card.	—
“Cannot set this schedule”	● This message appears when you execute “Copy & add this” for a schedule with the same data and time as an existing schedule entry or when you receive it via Infrared data exchange or cable connection.	—
“Certificate is rejected (tampered)”	● This message appears when an altered SSL certificate has been received. An SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—
“Certificate is rejected (tampered)”	● This message appears when an altered TLS/SSL certificate has been received. A TLS/SSL communication cannot be established with this site.	—
“Check new messages is set all OFF”	● New messages cannot be checked because none of the items is selected in “Set check new messages”. Select items to check in “Set check new messages”.	p.291

Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“Connected packet Cannot dial”	● This message appears when you make a VoIP call during using i-mode (during sending or receiving a message or packet communication with i-mode browser). End the i-mode communication.	p.494
“Connection failed”	● This message appears when the host setting is not correct. Set the host correctly in “Host selection” under Connection setting. ● The attempt to connect to i-mode has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	p.241 —
“Connection failed”	● Set “Caller ID Notification” to “ON” and retry.	p.53
“Connection failed (403)”	● The attempt to access a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
“Connection interrupted”	● i-mode connection was interrupted due to poor reception. Move to a location where the reception is good before using the i-mode service. ● If this message appears even when the reception is good and “圏外” appears, the site you are accessing is busy. Retry later.	p.222 —
“Continue using i-αppli and transmit data?”	● This message appears when you select “NO” or “Terminate i-αppli” in response to the message “Data transmission is frequent Continue transmission?”. Select “YES” to continue i-αppli communication. To quit using an i-αppli, select “Terminate i-αppli”.	—
“Could not read”	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new miniSD memory card then retry to copy.	—
“Data in IC card is full Replace?”	● This message appears when you attempt to download Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli but the space is not enough on the IC card. Select “YES” to display already registered Osaifu-Keitai services and the space (bytes) on the IC card. Check the size required, select services to remove, and activate i-αppli to remove them.	—
“Data is too long A part is deleted”	● The size of address, subject or text or more than one data exceeds the maximum, and the Compose message screen appears with the excess part deleted.	—
“Data is too long Please delete message”	● The total length of the message text and quotation mark characters in the i-mode message to be quoted in a reply exceeds 5,000 double-byte characters. Delete some of the text to reduce the character count to 5,000 double-byte characters or fewer.	—
“Data transmission is frequent Continue transmission?”	● This message appears when the number of communications that are using i-αppli and have been established in a given time is extremely large. Select “YES” to continue to make i-αppli communication, or “NO” to quit the communication. To quit using an i-αppli, select “Terminate i-αppli”.	—
“Data transmission is frequent Press CLR and confirm data transmission”	● This message appears when the number of communications established from the i-αppli standby screen in a given time is extremely large. Press CLR to select whether to permit communication from the i-αppli standby screen or whether to exit the i-αppli standby screen.	p.314
“Download failed”	● This message appears if a communication error occurs or a data contains an error when you attempt to download data such as a melody, Chara-den character or download dictionary.	—
“Editing now Cannot delete”	● This message appears when you delete a mail message that is stored in the Draft and being edited.	—
“Enter correct Network Security Code”	● This message appears when you need to enter the network security code for a function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct network security code.	p.168
“Error in image Does not work correctly”	● This message appears when a Flash movie cannot be played due to an error found in the data.	—
“Error Register forwarding number”	● This message appears when you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding service and attempt to forward an incoming call by selecting “Call Forwarding” from the function menu without setting the forwarding number.	p.423

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls”	● This message appears when you make a PushTalk call selecting more than five members. Make a PushTalk call again after selecting less than four members.	—
“Failed to Copy all”	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new miniSD memory card then retry to copy.	—
“Failed to Copy this”	● The data cannot be copied due to some error. Exchange with a new miniSD memory card then retry to copy.	—
“Format miniSD for your phone”	● There is an error e.g. the miniSD memory card is not formatted. Reformat the miniSD memory card.	p.370
“Frame number of this page is not supported”	● The webpage cannot be displayed because the frame count exceeds the maximum that can be displayed on Full Browser.	—
“Function cannot operate any more”	● Exit another function before operating.	—
“Hold failed”	● A VoIP call cannot be put on hold for some reason.	p.455
“i-αppli stand-by display terminated due to security error” “Software terminated due to security error”	● This message appears when the i-αppli or the i-αppli standby screen (including the i-αppli DX) terminated because you performed an unauthorized operation.	p.308 p.315
““i-αppli To” function is not set”	● This message appears when it does not activate because the specified software is not permitted to be linked when you activate software from a site, message, the Infrared data exchange function, the Bar code reader or the IC card.	p.313
“Input error (205)”	● This message appears after you enter data on a website and send the data. Press ● to reset the entered text. (The set or entered contents are sent. This operation does not cancel sending.)	—
“Insert miniSD”	● This message appears when the miniSD memory card is not inserted correctly or may be damaged. Check that the miniSD memory card is properly inserted into the FOMA terminal.	p.363
“Insert UIM”	● This message appears when the FOMA card (UIM) is not correctly inserted or may be damaged. Make sure that the FOMA card (UIM) is correctly inserted.	p.40
“Invalid address”	● The address contains a “,” and is invalid. Delete any “,”. ● The address of the received message contains more than 50 single-byte characters, and you cannot reply to it. ● SMS cannot be sent because the address contains a space or character other than numbers, “#” and “✗”. Delete any characters or spaces other than numbers, “#” and “✗”.	— — —
“Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay”	● This message appears when you obtain a streaming-type i-motion while “i-motion type” is set to “Standard type”.	p.249
“Invalid UIM Auto start not possible”	● This message appears when you attempt to automatically activate i-αppli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.41
“Invalid UIM Requested service not available”	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon of the data protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function. ● This message appears when you select a screen memo, MessageR or MessageF protected by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.41 p.41
“Invalid UIM Requested software failed to start”	● This message appears when you attempt to select and activate i-αppli restricted by the FOMA card operational restriction function.	p.41
“Invalid URL”	● This message appears when you select “OK” without entering a URL or you enter a URL that does not start with “http://” or “https://” when entering the Home URL on the “Enter URL” or “Home URL” screen. Reenter a URL correctly.	p.229 p.240 p.327 p.458
“Memory full Cannot move”	● This message appears when you transfer data to or from the Secret folder and the destination folder is full of data. Delete unnecessary data stored in the destination folder and retry transfer.	p.175

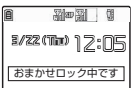
Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“Memory No. XXX Cannot overwrite”	● This message appears when you add an entry to the same number as a memory number for the entry added as secret data while the mode is not secret mode or secret data only mode. ● This message appears when you add an entry to the same number as a memory number for the entry set to Automatic display. Press ● to return to the Edit phonebook screen. Select “No.”, and enter an available memory number or use ↕ to select Auto to add it.	p.173 p.128
“Memory shortage”	● This message appears when the software cannot be activated due to memory shortage.	–
“Memory shortage Quit”	● The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. When composing an i-mode message, you may be unable to enter up to 5,000 double-byte characters depending on the condition such as the number of tasks running or the combination of character types.	–
“Memory shortage Return and edit again”	● You can insert up to 10 images to a Deco-mail message. However, in some operations, this message may appear even when less than 10 images are inserted. Select “YES” to exit the Compose message screen.	–
“Memory shortage Return to Full Browser menu”	● The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press ● to return to the Full Browser menu.	–
“Memory shortage Return to i-mode menu”	● The process was interrupted due to memory shortage. Press ● to return to the i-mode menu.	–
“Message too long to add header”	● This message appears when the character count of the text and header in total exceeds 5,000 double-byte and the header cannot be added.	–
“Message too long to add header & signature”	● This message appears if the header/signature cannot be automatically added when you forward an i-mode message because the character count exceeds 5,000 double-byte with the header/ signature added.	–
“Message too long to add signature”	● This message appears when the character count of the text and signature in total exceeds 5,000 double-byte and the signature cannot be added.	–
“No content is available (204)”	● This message appears when there is no data to display on the site.	–
“No data”	● This message appears when there is no phonebook entry that matches the search conditions when you perform Phonebook search.	p.124
“No requested software”	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon for already deleted i-αppli. ● This message appears if there is no corresponding software when the i-αppli is activated from a mail message, the Infrared data exchange function, the Bar code reader or the IC card.	– –
“No response (408)”	● No response has been received from the site and the communication is interrupted. Retry connection.	–
(During Infrared data exchange) “No response Retry?”	● The receiving terminal cannot be found/detected. Place the terminals so that their Infrared data ports face each other. Select “YES” and press ● to try again.	p.374
“No Switch”	● This message appears when you cannot switch to a videophone call during a FOMA voice call because the other party is establishing a packet communication (including i-mode). Check the other party’s status and retry.	p.58
“Not correspond contents”	● Information read by the Bar code reader cannot be recognized because there are some contents unsupported by the FOMA terminal.	–
“Other function active Cannot start” “Other function active Cannot operate”	● This message appears when you attempt to perform an unavailable operation but another function is running.	–

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“Out of service area”	● This message appears when you use an i-mode service out of range or in a location where FOMA radio waves do not reach. Move until “  ” appears, then use the i-mode service. ● This message appears when you use the WLAN service out of range or in a location where FOMA radio waves do not reach. Move until “  ” appears, then use the WLAN service.	p.222 p.51
“Page is not found (404)”	● The site is not found. It may not exist.	—
“Password is not correct (401)”	● This message appears when the authentication did not go through on the “Authentication” or “Re-authentication” screen. To re-authenticate, select “YES”.	—
“PIN1 code blocked”	● This message appears when the power is turned on during PIN1 code lock. Press ● to display the PUK code entry screen, then enter the PUK code correctly to release the lock.	p.170
“Please wait”	● The FOMA voice line or packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the FOMA voice line network or packet communication network may be congested. Retry the FOMA voice call, videophone call or i-mode after a while. You can still make an emergency call (110, 119 and 118). However, you may not be connected depending on the condition.	—
“Please wait for a while (packet)”	● The packet communication device may be malfunctioning. Otherwise, the packet communication network may be congested. Retry later.	—
“PUK blocked”	● This message appears when you power on or perform operations related to the FOMA card (UIM) when the PUK code is blocked. Contact the DoCoMo service counter.	p.169
“Reading UIM Cannot start”	● This message appears when you perform an operation related to the FOMA card (UIM) while the FOMA card (UIM) is being read. Retry later.	—
“Receiving failed Channel information cannot display”	● This message appears when you display the channel list screen for the first time after purchase or when you display the channel list screen after changing the i-channel host URL, initializing the FOMA terminal or exchanging the FOMA card (UIM), and then if i-channel information cannot be obtained. Move until “  ” appears, then retry to display the channel list screen.	p.251
“Replace with a new one or check the disk”	● Check the miniSD memory card.	p.367
“Replay period has expired”	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon of i-motion whose playback period has expired.	—
“Replay period has expired Delete?”	● This message appears when you play i-motion whose playback period has expired. Select “YES” to delete the i-motion.	—
“Root certificate has expired Do you connect?”	● This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise, select “NO”. ● This message appears when you are asked to send a client certificate while accessing an SSL website.	p.245 p.225
“Root certificate is not valid”	● This message appears when you receive a TLS/SSL certificate with the “Certificate” set to “Invalid”. Check the contents of the certificate, set the certificate to valid and reconnect.	p.245
“Service is not registered”	● The i-mode service is not available because you have not subscribed to the service. A separate subscription is required to use the service. ● If you had started using the FOMA terminal before you subscribed to i-mode, turn the FOMA terminal off and then turn it back on.	— —
“Setting on WLAN single mode Cannot connect” “Setting on WLAN single mode Cannot dial”	● This message appears when you attempt the FOMA communication in Single mode (WLAN) (making a FOMA voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call or sending an i-mode mail). Set “Setting connect mode” to “Single mode(FOMA)” or “DUAL mode(Prefer FOMA/Prefer WLAN)”	p.51

Continued on next page

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“Size of this page is not supported”	● The size of the data downloaded from a website (via i-mode or full browser) or Internet webpage exceeds the maximum of one page. The download is interrupted, and only the downloaded data is displayed. ● This message appears when the limit is exceeded while downloading a melody, download dictionary or Chara-den character.	— —
“Software for this folder deleted Refer to Open folder”	● The software cannot be activated because the mail-linked i-αppli corresponding to the selected mail folder is deleted. Select a message contained in the folder from the function menu.	p.275 p.281
“Software is stopped because of error”	● This message appears when you are running an application and an error occurs preventing further operation.	—
“Some addresses is invalid”	● This message appears when you attempt to reply to two or more addresses but not all addresses are valid.	—
“Some attached file will be deleted”	● It is prohibited to attach to a message or output from the FOMA terminal the file attached to an i-mode message that you attempt to forward. Press ● to delete the file that cannot be attached to a message or output from the FOMA terminal.	—
“SSL session cannot be established”	● This message appears when a connection to an SSL site or website was not established. Retry connection.	—
“SSL session failed”	● This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error occurring during authentication for an SSL connection.	—
“Syntax error” “Syntax error (XXX)”	● The received data contains an error and cannot be displayed. The data is discarded. A number indicating the contents of an error may appear in “XXX”.	—
“Talking now Cannot start” “Talking now Cannot operate”	● This message appears when you perform an operation that cannot be performed during a call.	p.394 p.494 p.496
“Terminal and UIM ID will be sent”	● This message may appear while you are viewing a site or website. Select “YES” to send your mobile phone manufacturer number. Otherwise, select “NO”.	p.226
“The data may not be replayed”	● This message appears when the format of the acquired i-motion is not MP4 (Mobile MP4).	—
“This certificate has expired Do you connect?”	● This message appears when an SSL server certificate out of the validity period has been received. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise, select “NO”. ● This message appears when you access an SSL website but the “Set time” setting is not made. Make the “Set time” setting.	p.245 p.50
“This certificate is not valid for this URL Do you connect?”	● This message appears when the CN (name) of an SSL certificate does not match. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise, select “NO”.	p.245
“This data can no longer be replayed”	● This message appears when you select a desktop icon of i-motion with no playback count remaining.	—
“This data can no longer be replayed Delete?”	● This message appears when you play i-motion with no playback count remaining. Select “YES” to delete the i-motion.	—
“This data is not supported by this phone”	● This message appears when you acquire unsupported i-motion or data other than i-motion.	—
“This site is not certified Do you connect?”	● This message appears when you receive an unsupported SSL certificate. To connect, select “YES”. Otherwise, select “NO”.	p.245
“This software contains an error” “This software contains an error Unable to download”	● This message appears when the software data contains an error and you cannot download or upgrade the software.	—
“This software is not supported by this phone”	● This message appears when the software you download is incompatible with the FOMA terminal and cannot be downloaded.	—
“This UIM cannot be recognized”	● This message appears when the inserted FOMA card cannot be used on the FOMA terminal. Make sure that the correct FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.	p.40

Error Message	Explanation and Solution	Refer to
“Time out”	● Accessing a site or sending a message was interrupted because the time, which is set in “Set connection timeout”, has elapsed. Retry later.	p.241
“TLS/SSL session failed”	● This message appears when an SSL communication is interrupted due to an error occurring during authentication for a TLS/SSL connection.	—
“Too much data was entered”	● Too many characters are entered, and the data cannot be sent. Reduce the number of characters then retry.	p.227
“Unable to download Data exceeds maximum size (452)”	● This message appears when the size of the data to be downloaded exceeds the maximum and cannot be downloaded.	—
“Unable to receive”	● This message appears when you obtain data and a data error or communication error occurs.	—
“Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)”	● The attempt to access a site has failed for some reason. Retry connection.	—
“Unable to support this card”	● The FOMA terminal does not support this miniSD memory card. Use a compatible miniSD memory card.	p.362
“URL address changed (301)”	● The site has been moved and the URL has been changed. Reregister if it is bookmarked or registered as a desktop icon or Home URL.	p.158 p.230 p.240 p.327
“URL is too long to register”	● The URL exceeds 256 single-byte characters and cannot be bookmarked or stored as the Home URL.	—
“Usage is currently restricted Try again later”	● This message appears when you have subscribed to i-mode Pake-Houdai flat-rate service and then a large amount of data is exchanged in a given time. You may not be able to access for a while. Use i-mode later.	—
“WLAN connected Cannot operate”	● This message appears when you attempt the FOMA communication (making a FOMA voice call, videophone call or PushTalk call, sending an i-mode mail, etc.) during the WLAN communication (during a VoIP call, sending an instant message or browsing contents with the WLAN browser). End the WLAN communication.	p.494
“Wrong password”	● This message appears when you enter a wrong password on the password entry screen in viewing or downloading a PDF document.	p.235 p.379
“Wrong security code” “Security code is 4 to 8 digits”	● This message appears when you need to enter the security code for a function but a wrong number was entered. Enter the correct security code.	p.169
“You have no certificate Do you connect?”	● The user certificate has not been downloaded. Select “YES” to view the site. Some sites cannot be viewed without the certificate.	p.246
“Your certificate is requested Send your certificate?”	● The site requests the user certificate. Select “YES” to send the certificate, otherwise “NO”.	—
“おまかせロック中です”	● Omakase Lock is set. While Omakase Lock is set, all key operations are locked except receiving a voice call/videophone call and turning the power on/off. 	p.172

NOTE

◆ Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are used by the IP (information service provider) to identify you and provide you with customized services and to confirm that you can use content provided by the IP.

◆ Your Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet and may be disclosed to a third party. However, your phone number, address, age and sex are not disclosed to the IP (information service provider), etc.

Warranty and After-Sales Service

Warranty

- Make sure that a warranty is included when you purchase a mobile phone. Check the contents, the information about “the shop or date of purchase”, etc. and keep the card in a safe place. If the card does not contain necessary information, immediately contact the shop and request them to fill in the card. The warranty is valid for one year from the date of purchase written on the warranty.
- The whole or part of the product, including its accessories, is subject to improvement without notice.
- Stored data such as phonebook entries may be altered or lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to take notes of the stored data just in case. In the course of repairs on your FOMA terminal, data downloaded via i-mode or i-αppli are not transferred to a repaired mobile phone due to copyright law.
  * You can store data such as phonebook on the miniSD memory card on your FOMA terminal.
  * Using the Data Security Service (a pay service requiring subscription) allows you to store data such as phonebook on your FOMA terminal in the Data Security Center.
  * If you have a PC (Windows 2000, Windows XP), you can transfer the data to your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.435) or dedicated Data Link Software (p.499) and the FOMA USB Cable (optional), then back up the data on the PC.

After-sales service

If you have problems with your FOMA terminal

Before requesting repairs, see the “Malfunction Checklist” in this manual.
If you still have problems, call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

If, after contacting DoCoMo, you are informed that your FOMA terminal is in need of repairs

Take your FOMA terminal to a designated repair shop. The repair shop is only open during business hours. Take your warranty card with you.

During the warranty period

- Repairs will be made free of charge based on the provisions of the warranty.
- Take the warranty card with you when requesting repairs. Charges will apply even when the mobile phone is still under warranty if the warranty card is not submitted, or if malfunction or damage is the result of mishandling by the subscriber.
- Charges will apply even within the warranty period for repairs resulting from use of devices and accessories not specified by DoCoMo.

The FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired

Mobile phones cannot be repaired in the following cases: the water exposure detection sticker shows water exposure; tests determine that corrosion has occurred due to water exposure, condensation, or perspiration; or the circuit board has been damaged or altered. These cases are not covered by the warranty, and any repairs that may be possible will be carried out at the subscriber’s expense.

After the warranty period has expired

Repairs can be carried out upon request but at the subscriber’s expense.

Stock period of parts

Replacement parts (required for maintaining the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock for a minimum of six years following the termination of production. However, note that depending on the failure part repairs may not be able to perform owing to lack of repair parts. Repairs may still be able to be performed even after the stock period has expired. Call at the technical inquiries number described on the back of the manual.

Important

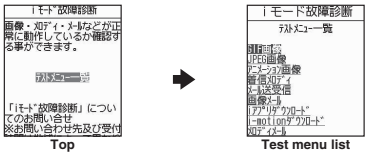
- Do not attempt to modify phones or accessories.
  - Modification may result in fire, injury, or malfunction.
  - Technical standards have been established by law in order to prevent radio wave interference and network disruption. Mobile phones or cards that do not meet these technical standards cannot be used.
  - Repairs to mobile phones that have been modified (disassembled, altered, painted, etc.) will only be carried out if the user agrees to have the mobile phone restored to its original state in line with DoCoMo standards. Requests for repair of modified mobile phones may be rejected.
  - If malfunction or damage occurs as a result of modification, charges will apply even if the mobile phone is still under warranty.
- Do not peel off the manufacturer's specification sticker put on the FOMA terminal.
  The manufacturer's specification sticker certifies that the mobile phone meets technical standards. It may not be possible to carry out repairs if the specifications cannot be confirmed because the sticker has been removed, altered, etc.
- The function settings or information about total call time may be cleared (reset) due to malfunction or repair of the FOMA terminal. In this case, make the settings again.
- Magnetic components are used for the following parts of the FOMA terminal. A cash card (ATM card, bank card), etc, which is easily affected by magnetism, may become unusable if it is kept close to the components:
  Neuropointer key, speaker, earpiece speaker
- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or moist, immediately turn it off, remove the battery pack, and take the FOMA terminal to a repair shop as soon as possible. However, the FOMA terminal may not be able to be repaired depending on the condition.

Memory dial (phonebook function) and downloaded information

- It is your responsibility to back up all data stored on your FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any deletion, alteration, or loss of data.
- Upgrading the model or repairing your FOMA terminal may alter or erase data that you have created, copied or downloaded. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any deletion, alteration, or loss of data. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may replace your FOMA terminal with the substitute instead of repairing, when most of the data cannot be transferred to the substitute. As for your FOMA terminal, images or melodies downloaded from the official i-mode site will be transferred only in the course of repairs. (Some contents cannot be transferred. Data may be unable to be transferred depending on the malfunction.)

i-mode Check Site

You can check if mail transmission, image/melody download, etc. work properly on the FOMA terminal. The i-mode check site is written in Japanese only.



Top　　Test menu list

- Accessing the "ｉモード故障診断" (i-mode check) site
  - URL: http://113113.jp/

Access QR code

- Packet communications charges do not apply.
- Test items vary depending on the handset model. The items are subject to change.
- Carefully read the precautions before testing.
- When you access the i-mode check site or test mail transmission, your FOMA information such as the model name and mail address will automatically sent to the i-mode check server. The information sent to NTT DoCoMo is only used for the i-mode check.
- If there may be a failure, contact the number listed in "For technical inquiries" on the back cover of this manual.

<Software Update>

Updating Software

Check if your phone needs an update, and if necessary, download and update the required software via packet communications.
The latest information regarding software updates can be viewed on the DoCoMo website or in “お知らせ” (News) under iMenu.

- Packet communications charges do not apply to perform software updates.
- Software may be updated in the following two methods: Immediate update and Timer update
  Immediate update: The software update is performed at once.
  Timer update: A time and date can be designated to perform the software update automatically.
- This function is not available in Single mode (WLAN). Set “Setting connect mode” to Single mode (FOMA) or DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA or Prefer WLAN) beforehand. In DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA or Prefer WLAN), the mode will automatically be changed to Single mode (FOMA) then the update will be performed. The setting will be reset after the update.
- You can update software if the i-mode host is set to the user defined host.
- Software updates (downloading and rewriting) may take time.
- Software updates are performed via SSL communications with the server at NTT DoCoMo. It is therefore necessary to have a valid certificate. (Default setting: Valid. Setting procedure→p.245).
- Make sure that the mobile phone battery is fully charged when performing software updates.
- It is recommended that you perform software updates when the handset is stationary and in a location with good signal quality (three bars for the antenna icon).
  * If the reception becomes poor and then the download is interrupted, attempt to update again in a location with good signal quality.
- Updating software with the “PIN1 code entry set” set to “ON” displays the PIN1 code entry screen in the automatic restart after installing the software. You cannot make/receive calls or perform communication until you enter the correct PIN1 code.
- You cannot update software:
  - When the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted
  - When the FOMA card (UIM) is used incorrectly
  - While PIN lock is set
  - When the PUK code is locked
  - When the date and time are not set
  - When you receive a call
  - When you receive a message or SMS
  - During a voice call
  - During a videophone call
  - During a PushTalk call
  - During i-mode communication
  - During 64K data communication
  - During packet communication
  - While Dial lock is set
  - While Omakase Lock is set
  - While Keypad lock is set
  - While Self mode is set
  - While Original lock is set
  - When you are out of FOMA range
  - When packet dialing is restricted
  - When you are using mova terminal for the Dual Network service
  - When you are using a miniSD reader/writer
  - While another function is running
- Calls, communications and other functions are not available while software is being updated, though voice calls can be answered while downloading.
- If the software has already been updated, the message “No update is needed Please continue to use as before” appears when you check for new software updates.
- After updating software, the i-mode center storage status icon disappears. In addition, if the receive option is set to “ON” and a message is received while updating software, the message notification screen may not appear after the software has been updated.
- When you update software, the FOMA terminal-specific information (model, product number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for software updates managed by NTT DoCoMo). The information sent to NTT DoCoMo is used only for updating software.
- It is possible to perform software updates while keeping your Phonebook entries, camera images, downloaded data and other data saved on the phone intact. However, note that in some cases data cannot be protected depending on the condition of your mobile phone (malfunction, damage, water exposure, etc.).
- It is recommended that you back up necessary data. (Note that it may not be possible to back up some data such as downloaded data.)
- If the update fails, the message “Rewrite failed” will appear and all operations will become unavailable. In this case, please seek advice at a repair counter designated by DoCoMo.

NOTE

- Do not remove the battery pack while updating software. Doing so may cause the update to fail.
- When the software update is completed but you do not confirm it, the desktop icon “ ” (Update complete) appears on the standby screen. Select “ ” and enter the security code to see the detailed results of the update.

Checking whether software update is required

1 MENU▶Settings▶“Other settings”▶“Software Update”▶Enter your security code

2 **Check the notes▶Check whether software update is required**

Now it is required to send mobile phone-specific information to the server.



3 **The check result appears**

■ **When “Update is needed” appears**

▶Select “Now update” or “Reserve”

Select “Now update” to update the software immediately. →p.515

Select “Reserve” to update on the set time. →p.516



Check result

■ **When “No update is needed” appears**

▶●

Continue using the FOMA terminal as there is no need to update the software.

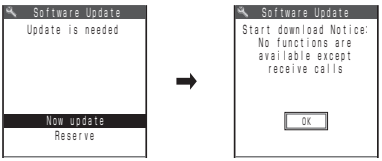


Updating software immediately <Now update>

1 **Check result screen (p.515)▶“Now update”▶Press ● when “Start download” appears**

Download will start immediately.

Download will start after a while even if you do not press ●.



Continued on next page

2 After download is finished and the message “Download is complete Rewrite software” appears, press ●

Software update will start.

Rewrite will start after a while even if you do not press ●. It may take long to start rewriting.



All keys are disabled during software rewriting. You cannot stop rewriting.

Completing the rewrite will automatically restart the FOMA terminal.

After reloading, the terminal will automatically connect to the server to check that the update has been completed. When the message “Software update is complete” appears, press ●. Now software update is completed.



NOTE

- If you interrupt the download, data that has been downloaded until then is deleted.
- Once you start downloading, the update starts automatically hereafter without having to select any menus.
- The screen on the right may appear if the server is busy.
  In this case, select “Reserve” to perform the reserved update.



Selecting the date and time to update software <Reserved update>

If it takes a long time to download or when the server is busy, you can beforehand select the time to start software update by communicating with the server.

<Example: To reserve 7:30 on March 23rd (Friday)>

1 Check result screen (p.515)▶“Reserve”▶Select date and time

■ **If you do not want to reserve any of the times shown**

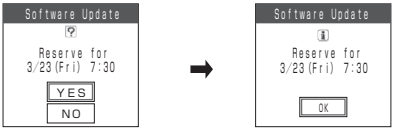
▶“Others”→p.517



2 Check the selected date and time▶“YES”

Software update is reserved.

■ **If you want to change the date and/or time**
▶“NO”



The screen on the right appears at the reserved time and the FOMA terminal starts updating software automatically. Charge the battery fully, put the FOMA terminal in a place where the reception is good, and set the FOMA terminal to standby before the reserved time. Hereafter, operate in the same steps as “Updating software immediately <Now update>” (p.515).



NOTE

- The reserved time for software update will be based on the server's time.
- When the reserved time for software update is the same as the alarm time, the software update is given priority.
- Software update may not activate at the scheduled time if another function is running.
- If the scheduled time is reached while you are on the phone or receiving a call or message, software update activates after you finish talking or receiving a message.
- If you perform “Initialize” (p.416) after the reservation procedure is completed, software update does not activate at the scheduled time. Reschedule the time for update.

● If you select “Others”

You can select the desired date and time if you select “Others” in Step 1 on p.516.

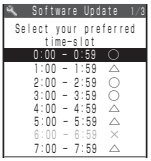
1 Select a desired date

On the selection screen, it is shown as below how the hours are reserved for each day:
○: Available
△: Almost full
None: Full



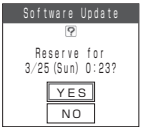
2 Select an hour

On the selection screen, it is shown as below if each hour is available:
○: Available
△: Almost full
×: Full
Selecting an hour communicates with the server again to display the candidates.



3 Confirm the software update time

Checking the selected time and selecting “YES” will communicate with the server again.
Software update is reserved.



● Checking the reservation

<Example: To cancel the reservation after checking it>

1 (MENU)▶Settings▶“Other settings”▶“Software Update”▶Enter your security code

Continued on next page

2 “Cancel”

■ **To accept the reserved date and time**

▶“OK”

■ **To change the date and time**

▶“Change”

After sending mobile phone-specific information to the server, follow the steps taken in selecting “Others”.→p.517



3 When the message “Cancel this reservation?” appears, select “YES”

Now send mobile phone-specific information to the server.

NTT DoCoMo will never disclose or forward your mobile phone-specific information (model and product number) to a third party.

When the message “The reservation is canceled” appears, press ●. The reservation is canceled.



<Scanning function>

Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data

Firstly update the pattern data.

When the FOMA terminal is downloading external files or programs from sites or i-mode messages, this function scans the data and deletes any data or cancels program activation where the data or program could cause a fault.

- Pattern data is used for the check. Update the pattern data when it is upgraded because a problem has been detected. →p.519
- The scanning function prevents data that causes some problems from invading your FOMA terminal when viewing a site or receiving a message. If the pattern data that fixes the error is not installed on your FOMA terminal or if the pattern data does not exist, the scanning function cannot prevent the error from occurring.
- The pattern data varies depending on the model of the FOMA terminal. As a matter of convenience, NTT DoCoMo may discontinue to distribute pattern data for the model if three years have passed since it was first released.
- Ensure that the correct date (year, month and day) is set on the FOMA terminal.
- When you set the auto-update or update the pattern data, the FOMA terminal-specific information (model, manufacturer number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for pattern data updates managed by NTT DoCoMo). The information sent to NTT DoCoMo is used only for the scanning function.
- The pattern data update will be suspended if a voice call is received or if the terminal moves out of FOMA range.

Setting the scanning function <Set scan>

Default setting: ON

Setting the scanning function to “ON” will check data and programs automatically when they are executed.

1 MENU ▶ Settings ▶ **“Lock/Security”▶“Scanning function”**

The “Scanning function” screen appears.

2 **“Set scan”▶“ON”**

■ **If a message appears asking whether to change the settings**
▶“YES”

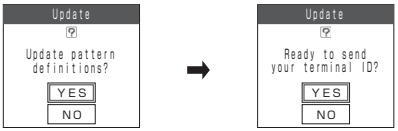
* If you enable the scanning function and it detects potentially harmful data, the event is displayed at one of the five warning levels. →p.520



Scanning function

Updating pattern data <Update>

1 **Scanning function screen (p.519)▶“Update”▶“YES”▶“YES”**



* If no pattern data update is required, the message “Pattern definitions are up-to-date” appears. Continue using the current pattern data.

NOTE

- Even if the update is informed via the network, the pattern data cannot be automatically updated during i-mode or packet communication or while another function is running.
- This function is not available in Single mode (WLAN). Set “Setting connect mode” to Single mode (FOMA) or DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA or Prefer WLAN) beforehand. In DUAL mode (Prefer FOMA or Prefer WLAN), the mode will automatically be changed to Single mode (FOMA) then the update will be performed. The setting will be reset after the update.

Automatically updating pattern data <Set auto-update>

1 **Scanning function screen (p.519)▶“Set auto-update”▶“ON”▶“YES”▶“YES”**

Viewing the scan results

■ Viewing scanned problems



The scanning function detects up to five problems and displays a list of them, starting with the highest-level problem. If six or more problems were detected, the names of sixth and subsequent problems are omitted.
The rest of the problem elements (sixth and subsequent), whose names are omitted, appear as follows:
1 - 9998: The remaining count appears as it is.
9999 or more: “Other:9999” appears regardless of the count.

■ Viewing the scan results

Warning level 0	Warning level 1	Warning level 2	Warning level 3	Warning level 4
				
OK · · · Continues operation.	YES · · Cancels and ends operation. NO · · · Continues operation.	OK · · · Cancels and ends operation.	YES · · Deletes data and ends operation. NO · · · Cancels and ends operation.	OK · · · Deletes data and ends operation.

Checking the Pattern Definitions Version <Version>

1 **Scanning function screen (p.519)▶“Version”**

Specifications

Items		FOMA N902iL	
Size		Height 106mm × Width 51mm × Thickness 25mm (When folded)	
Weight		Approx. 123g (Battery pack inserted)	
Continuous Standby Time		Single mode (FOMA)	Stationary: Approx. 500 hrs. In transit: Approx. 380 hrs.
		Single mode (WLAN)	Approx. 400 hrs.
		DUAL mode	Approx. 270 hrs.
Continuous Talk Time		FOMA call	Voice communications: Approx. 160 min. Videophone: Approx. 100 min.
		VoIP call	Approx. 250 min.
Charging Time		AC adapter: Approx. 120 min. DC adapter: Approx. 120 min.	
Color LCD	Type	Display: TFT 262,144 colors Indicator display: STN monochrome	
	Size	Display: Approx. 2.5 inches Indicator display: Approx. 1.0 inches	
	Pixels	Display: 82,800 pixels (240 × 345 dots)	
		Indicator display: 3,600 pixels (120 × 30 dots)	
Image Sensor	Type	Front camera: CMOS Rear camera: νMaicovicon	
	Size	Front camera: 1/7 inches Rear camera: 1/4 inches	
	Effective Pixels	Front camera: Approx. 0.11 mill. pixels Rear camera: Approx. 1.25 mill. pixels	
Camera	Recorded Pixels (max.)	Front camera: Approx. 0.1 mill. pixels Rear camera: Approx. 1.23 mill. pixels	
	Digital Zoom	Front camera: Up to approx. 2× Rear camera: Up to approx. 10×	
Record	Record Count	Approx. 360*1	
	Continuous Shooting Count	5 to 20*2	
	Still Image File Format	JPEG	
	Movie Recording Time	Phone: Approx. 146 sec.*3 miniSD memory card (32M bytes): Approx. 60 min.*3	
	Movie File Format	MP4	
Music Playback	Continuous Playback Time	i-motion: Approx. 460 min.	
WLAN*4	Type	Compliant with IEEE802.11b, IEEE802.11g	

*1: Image size: 128 × 96 (SubQCIF) Storage setting: Fine File size: 10K bytes
*2: The figure varies depending on the image size.
*3: Recording time per movie under the following conditions:
<Phone>
Image size: 128 × 96 (SubQCIF) File size: Local playback Storage setting: Normal
<miniSD memory card (32M bytes)>
Image size: 128 × 96 (SubQCIF) File size: Long time Storage setting: Normal
*4: This product's WLAN feature is Wi-Fi certified.

Number of Items that can be Stored, Registered and Protected on the FOMA Terminal

Item		Store/Register	Protect
Phonebook		700 max.*2	—
Schedule	Schedule	100	—
	Holiday	100	—
	Anniversary	100	—
To Do list		100	—
Mail (SMS + i-mode)	Inbox	1,000 max.*1*3*4	500 max.*1
	Outbox	400 max.*1*3*4	200 max.*1
	Draft	20	—
Deco-mail template		45*5	—
Message	MessageR	100 max.*1	50 max.*1
	MessageF	100 max.*1	50 max.*1
Bookmark	i-mode	100*6	—
	WLAN Browser	100*6	—
	Full browser	100*6	—
Screen memo	i-mode	100 max.*1	50 max.*1
	WLAN Browser	100 max.*1	50 max.*1
i-αppli		200 max.*1	—
	Mail-linked i-αppli	5	—
ToruCa		100 max.*1	—
Still Image		480 max.*1*4	—
Movie/i-motion		100 max.*1*6	—
Chara-den		10*5	—
Melody		400 max.*1	—
PDF data		400 max.*1	—
Instant message	Sent and received instant message	500	—
	Unsent instant message	100	—
	Saved instant message	100	—

*1: Actual storable or registrable counts may be decreased depending on the data size.
*2: Up to 50 phonebook entries can be stored on the FOMA card (UIM).
*3: Up to 20 more received or sent SMS messages can be additionally stored on the FOMA card (UIM). →p.302
*4: Up to 100 items can be additionally stored on the secret folder.
*5: Pre-installed data is included.
*6: Up to 10 items can be additionally stored or registered on the secret folder.

Important

- It is recommended to back up the stored data by taking notes or saving onto a miniSD memory card. You can also save the data to your PC by using the DoCoMo keitai datalink (p.435) or Data Link Software (p.499) and FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- Stored data may be lost through damage or repair on the FOMA terminal. NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any data loss. Take notes, save data to a miniSD memory card or use the DoCoMo keitai datalink or Data Link Software to save data to your PC just in case.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones

This model phone FOMA N902iL meets the MIC's* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves. The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)** averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP***.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The SAR value for this model phone, FOMA N902iL is 0.975W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please visit the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO): http://www.who.int/peh-emf/
ICNIRP: http://www.icnirp.de/
MIC: http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm
TELEC: http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm
NTT DoCoMo: http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/
NEC: http://www.n-keitai.com/lineup/ (in Japanese only)
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses: http://www.arib-emf.org/index.html (in Japanese only)

* : Ministry of Internet Affairs and Communications
** : The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.
*** : International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

What is Wi-Fi?

The Wi-Fi Alliance® certifies WLAN devices for interoperability based on the IEEE802.11 family of WLAN standards. Only a device that has passed testing and complies with Wi-Fi Alliance® requirements can be designated as "Wi-Fi Certified™", and the interoperability with Wi-Fi logo-certified products will be guaranteed.

Certification content

IEEE Standard*1

- IEEE 802.11b
- IEEE 802.11g

Security*2

- WPA™ - Enterprise, Personal
- WPA2™ - Enterprise, Personal

Vendor EAP Types*3

- EAP-TLS
- PEAPv0/EAP-MSCHAPv2
- PEAPv1/EAP-GTC

Multimedia

- WMM™*4

Special Features

- CWG-RF*5

*1: Wi-Fi certification standard based on the WLAN standard IEEE802.11a/b/g.

*2: WLAN encryption standard promoted by Wi-Fi Alliance® based on IEEE 802.11i.

- WPA™
  Wi-Fi Protected Access, a standards-based, interoperable security enhancement. Uses the Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) for data encryption.
- WPA2™
  An enhanced version of WPA™, based on the IEEE 802.11i standard, and backward compatible with WPA™.
  Uses the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) for data encryption, and is now mandatory for Wi-Fi certification.

Both WPA™ and WPA2™ offer Enterprise and Personal modes of operation. In the Enterprise mode of operation, authentication is achieved via 802.1X and the EAP, while in the Personal mode of operation, a pre-shared key (WPA/WPA2-PSK) is used for authentication.

*3: Extensible Authentication Protocol used to identify a network device for WPA™/WPA2™ – Enterprise authentication.

- EAP-TLS
  Extensible Authentication Protocol Transport Layer Security that uses a digital certificate between the authentication server and client to authenticate the WLAN client.
- PEAPv0/EAP-MSCHAPv2
  PEAP stands for Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol, creates an encrypted SSL/TLS tunnel between the authentication server and client to transfer authentication data such as password over the 802.11 wireless network, and uses only the server's certificate to authenticate the WLAN client. In this method, EAP-MSCHAPv2 is performed via the encrypted SSL/TLS tunnel.
- PEAPv1/EAP-GTC
  A form of PEAP. EAP-GTC is performed via the encrypted SSL/TLS tunnel.

*4: Wi-Fi Multimedia, a QoS standard promoted by Wi-Fi Alliance® based on IEEE 802.11e. Assigns priorities to any traffic in the WLAN.

*5: Converged Wireless Group RF, a standard promoted by Wi-Fi and CTIA (Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association). Specialized for WLAN-featured mobile terminals (such as GSM and W-CDMA) among Wi-Fi products. Tests WLAN RF performances and interoperation between WLAN and cellular.

【MEMO】

【MEMO】

Index/Quick Manual

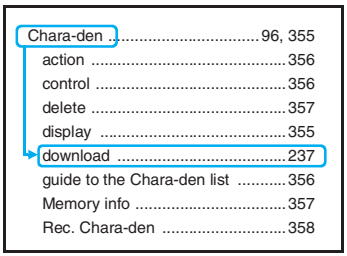
Index 528
Quick Manual 538

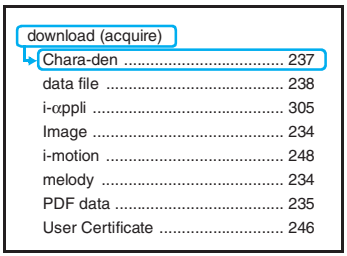
Index

Index search

- This index functions as an alphabetical content list as well. This provides words and terms not only described in this manual, but also summarized for description. If you cannot fine the item you are looking for, use another keyword to search.

(Example: To download Chara-den)





- "Function" index is included following "Alphabet and Numeric" section. This helps you to learn the function menu (p.38).

Alphabet and Numeric

A

AC adapter 45
access point 52
Access reader 214
access site (program)
  viewing site 224
accessories 498
add
  Bookmark 230
  Original menu 154
  PushTalk phonebook 110
  Schedule 398
  To Do list 402
adding items to the original menu 154
Additional service 429
Address list 288
add, edit and delete folder
  Bookmark 231
  Data box 372
  mail 281
  miniSD 372
  ToruCa 321
adjust volume
  i-αppli vol. 308
  Music player 389
  Ring volume 77
  Volume 76
after-sales service 512
alarm 395
  actions 395
  check 397
  stop 396
Alarm clock 397
Alarm setting 395
Answer hold 78
Answer setting 72
AT Commands 434
Attached file 290
auto assist 454
Auto Deco-mail 263
Auto dial setting 413
Auto redial as voice (videophone) 97
Auto reset total cost 407
Auto start set (i-αppli) 312
Auto start time (i-αppli) 312
auto timer 211
Automatic answer 413
Automatic display 134
Available Services 498

B

Background playback 387, 521
Backlight 150
Bar code reader 212
battery 43
  charging 45
  Getting the best out of battery pack 44
  life 44
battery level 47
battery pack 43
Bookmark 230
  add 230
  delete 231, 232
  Edit title 231
  folder 231
  No. of bookmarks 231
  view 230
buddy list 461
  Add member 461
  Change group 461
  Edit group name 461
  Refresh 462
  Set on sts. report 461
  Set profile 461

C

cable connection (data transfer) 374
Calculator 409
Calendar 148
Call acceptation 185
Call data 407
Call forwarding 185
Call Forwarding Service 423
Call pickup 457
Call rejection 185
Call setting w/o ID 187
Call time display 157
Call waiting 456
Call Waiting Service 421
Caller ID Notification 53
Caller ID Request Service 424
camera 194
  Access reader 214
  auto timer 211
  Bar code reader 212
  Brightness 201
  Color mode set 208
  front camera 194

guide to the shooting screen 198
image size 195
Image tuning 209
light 211
movie shooting 206
number of images 195
number of movies 196
Photo mode 201, 208
rear camera 194
shooting menu 199
White balance 208
zoom 211
Camp on 455
cancel
Mail security 185
Manner mode 143
Public mode (Driving mode) 79
Public mode (power off) 80
Secret data only mode 174
Secret mode 173
Certificate 245
Certificate host 247
Chaku-moji 62
Chance capture 209
Change CHR code 225
Change i-mode Password 229
Change PIN (WLAN) 470
change voice call/videophone call 93
change window 450
changing voice call/videophone call ...58
Character input set 439
Mode 1(5-touch) 439
Mode 2(2-touch) 440
Mode 3(T9 input) 440
Character stamp 346
Chara-den 96, 355
action 356
control 356
delete 357
display 355
download 237
guide to the Chara-den list 356
Memory info 357
Rec. Chara-den 358
Set image disp. 357
Charge sound 141
charging 45
Chat group 297
Chat mail 294
Chat group 297
Chat member 294
creating chat mail 295
receiving chat mail 296
Send Chat mail 295
Settings 298
Check messages (Voice Mail) 421
check missed calls 81
Check new messages 243, 271
Check new SMS 301
Check settings 240
checkbox 37, 227
CHG input size 439
Clear learned 449
Clock display 157
code number
i-mode password 168, 229
Network security code 168
PIN1 code and PIN2 code 168
Security code 168
WLAN code number 169
Color mode set (camera) 208
Common phrases 446, 447, 493
Communication mode 51
component names and functions 26
components 24
Conference call 457
Continuous mode 203
continuous standby time 44
continuous talk time 44
Copy
Copy to miniSD 366
Copy to phone 369
phonebook entry 129
SMS 302
text 448
copyright 22
copy/cut text 448

D

Data box 334
Data Communication 431
Data Link Software 499
Data Security Center 190
Data Security Service 135, 190
Image 339
Mail 286
Phonebook 135
Sent/rec'd DataList 136
Data Transfer Software 499
DC adapter 45
Deactivate i-αppli standby screen 315
Decoration 100
Deco-mail 261
Delete
Bookmark 231, 232
Chara-den 357
Delete data 129
desktop icon 159
Dialed calls 66
Draft mail 267
i-αppli 315
Image 338, 340
Melody 361
member 461
MessageR/F 244, 245
movie 349
PDF data 384
PushTalk 113
Received calls 76
Received mail 284, 287
Redial 66
Screen memo 233
sent and received instant message 465
Sent mail 285, 288
SMS 300
text 445
ToruCa 322
Unsent instant message 464
URL 230
Using the Phonebook 129
Delete WLAN settings 470
description of icon 30
desktop 158
desktop holder 46
desktop icon 158
access data or function 159
add 158
check 159
notice 159
Dial lock 171
Release 172
Set 172
Dialed calls 64
Dictionary 410
Discern connect 132
Discern group 132
display
Backlight 150
changing the menu display 152
color, background 151
Display setting 146
Font 157
guide 30
Style mode 164
Display design 151
Display home 224
Display information 469
Connection status 469
MAC address 469
Display setting 99, 146
Display software info 306
Displaying
Call time 157
channel list 251
clock 157
Display setting 146
image (My picture) 335
Indicator display 150
Own number 53
phonebook image 149
Disp. phonebook image 149
DoCoMo keitai datalink 435
Domain 452
Download dictionary 449
download (acquire)
Chara-den 237
data file 238

i-αppli 305
Image 234
i-motion 248
melody 234
PDF data 235
User Certificate 246
DPOF setting 387
Draft(mail) 257, 267
DUAL mode 51
Dual Network service 425

E

Earphone 143
earphone/microphone 412
Earphone/microphone with switch ...412
Edit
Draft mail 267
image 344
movie 353
phonebook 128
Edit image 344
Brightness 345
Change size 345
Character stamp 346
Clipping area 342
Composite image 342
Correct backlight 345
Frame 346
Marker stamp 346
Positioning 342
Refresh skin tone 345
Retouch 345
Rotate 345
Size for mail 341
Trim away 347
Edit movie 353
Edit ticker 354
Rerecord sound 354
Trim for image 353
Trim for mail 355
Trim i-motion 353
Edit ticker 354
Emotion-expressing mail 270
English Guidance 425
enter PIN1 code 170
Erase
i-αppli vol. 308
Record message 85
Ring volume 77
Voice announce 406
Voice memo 85
VP message 86
error messages 505
exit standby screen (i-αppli) 315
extension 453
Extension forwarding 457

F

Face authentication 183
Face Mark 444
FeliCa 318
FirstPass 246
Flash movies 228
flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) 412
Making a Call 412
Receiving a Call 412
folder tree (list)
Data box 334
mail 276
miniSD memory card 364
FOMA card (UIM) 40
Add to UIM phonebook 121
exchange 42
functional differences 42
insert 40
manufacturer number 226
PIN codes 40
remove 40
restriction 41
types 42
FOMA N902iL CD-ROM 434
FOMA voice call
make 56
receiving 71
Font 157
Font size 157, 240, 289
Forwarding image 373
frame (Edit image) 346
frame (full browser) 329
frame (image shooting) 205
full browser 326, 327
changing display mode 328
Cookie 331
frame 329
multi window 329
Referer 332
scrolling 328
set 331
Switching from i-mode to full browser 330
TLS/SSL 326
uploading images 330
Full Browser comm 327
function menu 38

G

Group setting 123
guide to the screen 30
Chara-den list 356
folder list screen (mail) 276
full browser screen 328
Mail detail screen 278
IM detail screen 467
IM list screen 466
mail list screen 277
MessageR/MessageF screen 243
PDF list 380
PushTalk talking screen 106
shooting screen (camera) 198
text entry (edit) screen 438
videophone screen 88

H

handling with care 19
hands-free 70
Hands-free switch (videophone) 99
Header/Signature 291
Holding 455
holding 58
holding (while ringing) 78
Home URL 240
HOST Effective set 458
Host selection 241
Host setting 470
Any scan 470
Select scan 470

I

i-αppli 304
activate 306
activate (from another function) 313
auto start 312
Auto start info 313
Auto start set 312
Auto start time 312
Change mld./img. 307
Delete 315
download 305
exit 306
Icon info 307
mail-linked i-αppli 305
Network set 307
pre-installed i-αppli 309
security error history 308
See P.book/hist 307
Software info 308
Stand-by net 307
stored data 304
trace information 306
Upgrade 315
i-αppli DX 304
i-αppli standby screen 314
i-αppli standby screen exit information 315
i-αppli To function 313
i-αppli To setting 313
i-αppli vol. 308
IC card 318
IC card content 319
IC card lock 323
Face authentication 183
set/release 323
SimpleLock 323
i-channel 250
set 252
View 251
icon 30
desktop icon 158
Discern connect 133
display 30

Emotion-expressing mail 270
full browser 328
i-αppli 308
icons on the standby screen 162
image type 336
Indicator display 30
Instant message 466, 467
Mail 277, 278
Melody 360
MessageR/MessageF 243
PDF data 380
Presence 460
Received calls 75
Rec. Chara-den screen 358
Redial/Dialed calls 66
shooting screen 198
videophone call 88
Icons setting 162
Illumination 156
Illumination in talk 156
IM To function 240
image
Add folder 372
Delete 338
Delete folder 372
Display 226, 335
Edit image→see “Edit image”
Guide to the Picture list 336
Guide to the Title list 336
Memory info 338
Move 338
Original animation 343
select multiple data 372
Store at DSC 339
view 335
Viewer settings 337
Image tuning 209
i-melody 234
iMenu 223
i-mode 222
Add to phonebook 228
handle Flash movies 228
Host selection 241
Quit 223
Start 222
i-mode check site 513
i-mode FeliCa 318
i-mode menu 222
i-mode password 168
i-mode settings 240
i-mode mail→refer to “mail”
i-motion 248, 347
Automatic replay 249
details 249
guide to preview and title list 348
i-motion type 249
Play 347, 248
Save 249
Standard type 248
Streaming type 248
i-motion mail 265, 274
Inbox(mail) 256, 274
Inbox/Outbox (instant message) 463
In-call arrival act 426
in-car hands-free 70
incoming call lamp setting (during a call) 156
incoming call lamp setting (receiving) 156
Indicate V.phone 100
Indicator display 33
icon 30
sample images 33
set 150
Info notice setting 81
Infrared data exchange 374
data to be transferred 375
Infrared data port 374, 379
infrared remote control 379
Receive all 378
receive one 377
send all 378
send one 377
Initial setting 49
Initialization→see “reset”
Initialize 416
Insert mode 443
Instant message 463
auto receive 464
compose 463
Forward 465
Reply 465
Save 464, 466
Send 463
intellectual property right 22
international calls 59
Internet 229
Internet connection 229
Int’l dial settings 60
ISP connection 241

J

JAN code 212
jumping forward/back to a page (site) 227

K

key
key names and functions 26
operation by long press 28
Keypad lock 182
Keypad sound 141
Kuten code 448

L

Last URL 226
launcher 37

M

mail 253
Add folder 281
adding addresses 259
Attach image 265
Attach i-motion 265
Attach melody 265
Attach movie 265
Attach ToruCa 265
auto receive 268
Auto-sort 282
broadcast mail 259
Change rcv. type 258
changing the display mode on the list screen 280
changing the font size in the message body 280
compose 257
Copy 287
Deco-mail picture 484
Delete folder 281
Delete receiver 258
Delete the received mail 284, 287
Delete the sent mail 288
Draft 257, 267
Edit 285, 287
Edit folder name 281
Emotion-expressing mail 270
Emotion/Keyword notice 294
Filter 283, 285
Forward 272
guide to the folder list screens 276, 277, 278
guide to the mail detail screen 278
guide to the mail list screen 277
header 291
Inbox 256, 274
Large image 266
Mail menu 256
Mail security 185
Check settings 290
Mail settings 289
Move trash box 284, 287
No. of messages for draft mail 267
No. of messages for received mail 284
No. of messages for sent mail 285
Open folder 281
Outbox 256, 274
Preview 258
Protect ON/OFF on received mail 284, 287
Protect ON/OFF on sent mail 285, 287
quotation marks 291
Reading a message body 275
Read out message 275
Receiving 268
Receive image mail 274

Receive option 270
Receiving ToruCa 274
Reply 272
Reply with quote 272
Resend 287
rules used for reading out 291
Save 267
Save at DSC 286
Save image 274
Save ToruCa 274
saving address, adding phonebook entry 273
Saving i-motion 274
Saving melodies 273
Search mail 283, 285
Secret code 128
Secret folder 175
sending 257
signature 291
Sort 283, 285
Sort folder 281
Speed photo mail 260
Template list 487
Mail list disp. 289
Mail list screen setting 289
Mail member 268
Mail menu 256
Mail security 185
Mail settings 289
Mail To function 239
main menu 34
malfunction checklist 501
Manner mode 143
Manner mode set 144
manufacturer number 226
Marker stamp 346
melody 359
Add folder 372
delete 361
Delete folder 372
download 234
Guide to the melody list 360
Memory info 361
Move 361
operations during playback 360
play melody 359
playlist playback 362
Memory info
Chara-den list 357
i-αppli list 307
Image list 338
image shooting, continuous shooting 202
melody list 361
movie list 349
movie shooting 207
PDF list 384
Menu display set 152
Menu Function List 478
Message auto-display 240
Message display 289
Message list display 240
Message service
Checks new messages. 243
Delete 244, 245
Display 244
Filter 244
guide to the screen 243
No. of messages 244
Protect ON/OFF 244, 245
Receive 242
Sort 244
View 242
Messenger 463
IM security 463
Inbox/Outbox 463
Messenger menu 463
Saved BOX 463, 466
Unsent BOX 463
Messenger menu 463
miniSD memory card 362
Check miniSD 367
Copy 366, 369
Copy image 344
copy movie 352, 353
data preview 367
Delete image 340
delete image 338
delete movie 349
display images 336
DPOF setting 387
folder tree 364
Format 370
insert 363
miniSD info 367, 368, 369
number of files 365
number of movies 196
number of still images 195
Playing movies 347
remove 363
miniSD reader/writer 370
Missed calls display 189
mobile phone manufacturer number 226
move
SMS(to FOMA card (UIM)) 302
SMS(to FOMA terminal (Phone)) 302
movie 347
Add folder 372
delete 349
Delete folder 372
guide to the title list 348
Memory info 349
Move 348
operations during playback 350
Playing movies 347
playlist playback 352
preview guide 348
select multiple data 372
Movie mode 206
auto timer 211
Chance capture 209
image size 195
light 211
number of movies 195
Picture voice 210
shooting settings 207, 211
Voice mode 210
zoom 211
movie playing software 500
Multi access 392
combination patterns 494
Multi Number 427
Multitask 394
activate 394
combination patterns 496
end 395
switch 394
Music 388
Music player 387
Data Transfer Software 499
Play 388
save music data 387
My document 379
My Document communications 236
My Menu 228
My picture 335
Guide to the Picture list and Title list 336

N

NEC Mobile PDF 500
Network security code 168
Network service 420
Neuropointer 29, 155
Noise reduction 70
notes 19
notice call 421
Notice designate calls 408
Alarm 408
Check the details 408
No. of memos
Screen memo 232
No. of messages
mail 267, 281, 284, 285
MessageR/MessageF 244
Template 265
No. of ToruCa
ToruCa 321
Nuisance Call Blocking Service 424
NW search mode 414

O

OBEX 374
Omakase Lock 171
options 24, 498
Original animation 343
Original lock 177
Original manner 144
Original menu 38, 154

Osaifu-Keitai 318
IC card lock 323
Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli 318
read/write data 318
use Osaifu-Keitai 319
Outbox(mail) 256, 274
Overwrite 443
Own dictionary 449
Own number 53, 404

P

Packet communication 432
Park hold 457
password→see “code number”
paste text 448
Pause dial 67
PDF data 235, 379
clip page 383
delete 384
download 235
Guide to the PDF list 380
i-mode bookmark 383
operation 381
view 379
Petit message 100
Phone To function 238
Phonebook 118
Add to phonebook (from another screen) 122
Add to phonebook (Phone) 119
Add to phonebook (UIM) 121
Delete data 129
Edit phonebook 128
Group setting 123
Making a Call 124
PushTalk phonebook 110
Save at DSC 135
Search phonebook 124
Secret code 128
storage status 131
Photo mode 201, 208
auto timer 211
Continuous mode 203
framed photography 205
image size 195
light 211
number of images 195
shooting settings 211
zoom 211
PictBridge print 385
Pictograph 444
Pictographs 492
Picture voice 210
PIN lock 170
PIN setting 169
PIN unlock 170
PIN1/PIN2 codes 168
change 170
PI · SB input mode 444
Play
i-motion 347
Melody 359
Music data 388
Record message 85
Voice announce 406
Voice memo 85
VP message 86
Play/Erase msg. 85
portrait right 22
Power saver mode 150
Prediction 441
Prefix 454
Prefix setting 68
Pre-installed data
Auto Deco-mail picture 486
Common phrases 493
Decomail-picture 484
Frame 484
i-αppli 309
Marker stamp 487
PDF data 381
ring tone, melody, Chaku-motion 139
Stand-by display 484
Template 487
Presence 460
buddy list 461
check 462
icon 460
status 460
status report 462
presence information 462
presence report 462
print 385
print image 385
priority
Alarm 396
Auto-sort 282
Chara-den 121
Connection speed 133
incoming call lamp 156, 269, 301
Nuisance Call Blocking 191
receiving image 149
ring tone 140, 269, 301
screen 148
vibrator 141
profile 468
Copy 469
Reset 469
Protect
mail 284, 285, 287
MessageR/F 244, 245
Screen memo 232
Public distinction-STD 458
Public mode (Driving mode) 79
Public mode (power off) 80
Public prefix 454
pull-down menu 227
push signals 67
PushTalk 106
delete 114
end 110
guide to the talking screen 106
make 107
PushTalkPlus 106
receive (participate) 108
setting 115
PushTalk phonebook 110
add 110
delete 113
making 112

Q

QR code 212
Quality alarm 142
Quick Manual 538
Quick message 84

R

radio button 227
Random melody 138
Read out setting 290
rear panel display 33
Receive from R/W 323
Receive option 270
Receive option setting 290
Receive ringing time 142
Received address list 288
Received calls 74
Received IM add. 463
Receiving display 290
Reconnect signal 69
Record display set 184
Record message 82, 85
erase 85
play 85
set 83
Redial 64
registered trademark 22
Reject unknown 189
release
Call acceptation 185
Call Forwarding 185
Call rejection 185
Dial lock 172
Discern connect/Discern group 132
i-αppli stand-by screen 314
IC card lock 323
Key Operation lock 182
Mail security 185
Manner mode 143
Original lock 177
PIN lock 170
protect MessageR/MessageF 245
protect received mail 284, 287
protect screen memo 232
protect sent mail 285, 287
Public mode (Driving mode) 79
Public mode (power off) 80

Restrict dialing 185
Restrictions 185
secret data 175
Secret data only mode 174
Secret mode 173
Self mode 189
Reload 228
Remote Control 427
Remote monitoring 102
Rerecord sound 354
Reset 240, 294
reset
Auto reset total cost 407
Clear learned 449
Delete WLAN settings 468
Discern connect/Discern group 132
Initialize 416
Reset 240, 294, 331, 404
Reset desktop 159
Reset last URL 240
Reset org. menu 154
Reset settings 414
Reset total 407
resetting mail address 255
Reset last URL 240
Reset settings 414
Reset total 407
Restrict dialing 185
Restrictions 185
Ring time(sec.) 188
Ring volume 77

S

safety precautions 12
SAR 523
save
content (Screen memo) 232
image (site, MessageR/MessageF) 234
image (mail) 274
i-motion (mail) 274
mail 258, 267
melody (mail) 273
Template 264
ToruCa (mail) 274
Save image 234
Saved BOX (instant message) 463
Scanning function 519
Schedule 149, 398
changing the display mode 399
User icon settg. 400
Screen memo 232
Add to Phonebook 233
Delete 233
Display 232
Edit title 232
No. of memos 232
Protect ON/OFF 232
Save 232
Save image 233
Scroll
i-mode 240
mail 289
ToruCa 323
Scroll function
full browser 328
i-mode 226
PDF data 382
SD-PIM 367
Secret data only mode 173, 174
Secret folder 175
Secret mode 173
Security code 168
Change 169
Enter 36
i-mode password 168
Network security code 168
PIN1 code and PIN2 code 168
WLAN security code 169, 470
Security scan (Scanning function) ...519
Select image (videophone) 97
Select language 49
Select microphone 414
Select ring tone 138
Self mode 189
Send DTMF tone 91
Sending mode 56, 453
Sent address list 288
Sent IM add. 463
Service Numbers 426
session number 378
Set as home URL 224
Set auto-update (Scanning function) 520
Set check new messages 291
Set connection timeout 241
Set hold tone 78
Set i-αppli stand-by 314
Set image disp. 240, 330
Set in-call arrival 426
Set mute seconds 188
Set time 50
Setting connect mode 51
Setting SMS Center 302
Setting when folded 73
shoot
Chance capture 209
Chara-den 358
Continuous mode 203
framed photography 205
movie 206
Picture voice 210
Still Image 201
showing your phone number 53
Sidekeys guard 183
Silent
i-αppli vol. 308
Ring volume 77
simple profile setting 471
SimpleLock 323
Single mode (FOMA) 51
Single mode (WLAN) 52
SIP address 452
SIP address list 470
SIP To function 239
Sliding Menu 38
Smiley Face Symbols 493
SMS center selection 302
SMS input char. 300
SMS report request 300
SMS validity period 300
SMS (Short Message) 299
compose 299
Copy/Move to UIM 302
Delete 300
Forward 301
Preview 300
Receiving 300
Reply 301
Save 300
sending 299
SMS report 299
UIM operation 129, 302
software key 28
Software Update 514
Sound effect (i-mode) 240
Speed photo auto disp. 290
Speed photo mail 260
SRS_WOW 140
SSL certificate 245
Stand-by display 148
Start attachment (auto) 240, 289
Status 460
Step call 455
store
Common phrases 447
Home 225
Mail member 268
Music data 387
Own data (Own number) 404
Own dictionary 449
Phonebook (Phone) 119
Phonebook (UIM) 121
storing and showing personal data ...404
Style mode 164
Sub-address setting 69
Super silent 144
Symbols 444
Symbols and Special Characters 491

T

Template 264
text box 227
text entry 438, 442
change window 450
Common phrases 446
Copy 448
Cut 448
delete 445

Guidance 442
Insert 443
Insert/Overwrite mode 443
Kuten code 448
Line feed 444
Overwrite 443
Paste 448
Pictograph 444
PI · SB input mode 444
Quote data 447
single-byte/double-byte 439, 440
Smiley Face Symbols 444
Space (blank) 443
symbols 444
Undo 446
upper case and lower case 443
Text memo 409
To Do list 402
ToruCa 319
acquire 320
setting 323
view 321
trademark 22
Trim away 347
turning on the light 211
turning the power on/off 48
Two-touch dialing 134

U

UIM operation 129
Unsent BOX (instant message) 463
Update 519
URL 229
delete 230
Enter URL 229
URL 225
URL history 230
USB mode setting 371
Use phone information 240, 241
User Certificate 246
using menus 35

V

Vibration (vibrator) 140
Vibrator (vibration) 140
videophone call 88
Auto redial as voice 97
Chara-den 96
connect to external device 102
Decoration 100
hands-free 70
Hands-free switch 99
make 89
Petit message 100
receive 94
Remote monitoring 102
Select image 97
videophone screen 88
Visual check 98
Visual preference 91
zoom 99
videophone messages 86
View types
ToruCa 274
view an SSL page 225
Viewer settings 337
viewing
Mail 274
MessageR/MessageF 244
PDF data 379
site 224
ToruCa 274, 321
Website 229, 326
Visual check 98
Visual preference (videophone) 97
Voice announce 406
voice clock 82
Voice Mail 185
Voice Mail service 420
Voice memo 85, 405
Voice memo (in-call) 405
Voice mode 210
VoIP 452
VoIP phone 452
make 453
receive 456
Volume 76
VP message 86
Delete 86
play 86
V-phone while packet 101

W

Wake-up display 146
warranty 512
Web To function 239
Website 229
White balance 208
WLAN 452
WLAN Browser 458
WLAN Browser settings 459
WLAN security code 169
WLAN setting 468
Change PIN (WLAN) 470
Check/Change setting 468
Common setting 469
Delete 470
Profile setting 469
SIP address list 470
WORLD CALL 59
World watch 50
WORLD WING 42

Y

your phone number 53

Z

zoom 211

Numerals, etc.

186(show)/184(hide) 67
3D animation
Chaku-moji 62
desktop icon 161
Emotion-expressing mail 270
3D display setting 161
64K data communication 432
みんなNランド 224

Function

This section shows the Function index corresponding to the following screens by indexes on the cover page.

Making/Receiving FOMA Voice Calls
Country Code setting 61
Create message 63
Dialed calls (list or detail) 65
FOMA voice in-call 57
IDD Prefix setting 61
Message playback (Record message) 85
Pause dial 68
Phone number entry 57
Play/Erase msg. (Record message) 85
Play/Erase VP msg. 86
Prefix setting 69
Received calls (list or detail) 75
Redial (list or detail) 65
Ringing 71
VP message playback 86
Making/Receiving Videophone Calls
Other ID (Remote monitoring) 103
Videophone in-call 90
Videophone number entry 90
Videophone ringing 95
PushTalk
PushTalk phonebook 113
Using the Phonebook
Group setting 123
Phonebook detail 127
Phonebook list 126
Sent/rec'd DataList (Data Security Service) 136
UIM operation (copy) 130
UIM operation (delete) 131
Tone/Display/Lighting Settings
Contents checking (Style mode) 165
Desktop icon 159
Original menu (Menu display set) 154
Original theme (Menu display set) 153
Style mode list 165
Security Settings
Category list/Group list (Original lock) 181
Face authentication 184
Function list (Original lock) 181

Restrictions 187
Camera
Access reader scanning 217
Continuous mode 201
Continuous shooting checking 204
Detail checking (Continuous mode) 205
Image checking 202
Movie checking 209
Movie mode 207
Photo mode 201
Reading data detail (Access reader) 218
Reading data detail (Bar code reader) 213
Reading data list (Access reader) 217
Reading data list (Bar code reader) 213
Recording start (Picture voice) 210
i-mode/i-motion/i-channel
Bookmark 231
Bookmark folder list 231
Channel list 251
Enter URL (Internet connection) 230
Message detail 245
Message list 244
Screen memo detail 233
Screen memo list 232
Sites 224
Mail
Address/Subject 259
Chat 295
Chat group list 297
Chat member 294
Draft mail list 267
Emotion/Keyword 294
Group member list 297
Inbox folder list 281
Mail member detail 268
Mail member list 268
Message 259
New mail 258
New SMS 300
Outbox folder list 281
Received address list 289
Received mail detail 287
Received mail list 283
Sent address list 289
Sent mail detail 287
Sent mail list 285
Speed photo mail image 261
Template 265
Template preview 265
i-αppli
End stand-by info 315
Security error history 308
Software list 307
Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa
IC card content 319
ToruCa display 322
ToruCa folder list 321
ToruCa list 322
Full Browser
Full Browser 330
Display/Edit/Organization/ Music Playback
Categories (SD-PIM) 367
Chara-den list 357
Chara-den player 357
Data detail (SD-PIM) 368
Data list (SD-PIM) 368
Edit image 345
Edit movie 353
File list (SD-PIM) 368
Folder list (i-motion) 372
Folder list (Melody) 372
Folder list (My document) 372
Folder list (My picture) 372
Image list 338
i-motion stopped (pause) 351
Melody 361
Melody list 360
miniSD folder list 372
Movie list 348
Multi-selection (Data box) 373
Music player 390
My picture 340
Original animation list 343
Original animation playback 343
PDF data 384
PDF list 383
Playlist folder (i-motion) 352
Playlist folder (melody) 362
Rec. Chara-den (image/movie) 358
Track list (Music player) 389
Other Useful Functions
Alarm clock 398
Dictionary 411
Own number 404
Reference history (dictionary) 411
Reference result (list/detail) (dictionary) 411
Schedule 398
Schedule list 401
Text memo 410
To Do list 402
To Do list detail 402
Voice announce 406
Network Services
Additional service and Additional guidance 429
Check setting 421
Multi Number setting 428
Entering Text
Common phrase list 448
Common phrases folder list 447
Download dictionary 450
Own dictionary 449
Text entry (edit) 446
WLAN
Auto assist setting 455
Buddy list 461
Edit group 461
ESSID select 470
IM detail 465
Inbox/Outbox IM list 465
Messenger menu 463
New IM 464
Phone number entry 453
Profile list 469
Prs. group 461
Ringing 457
Saved IM list 466
Set prior host 470
Unsent IM list 464
VoIP call on hold 455
VoIP in-call 453

【MEMO】

Quick Manual

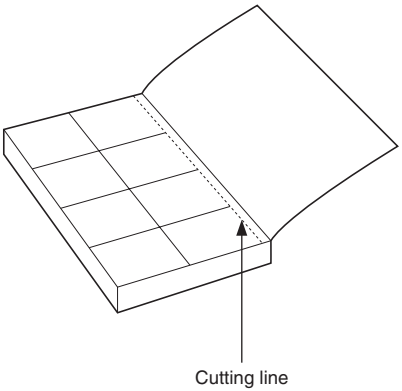
How to use the Quick Manual

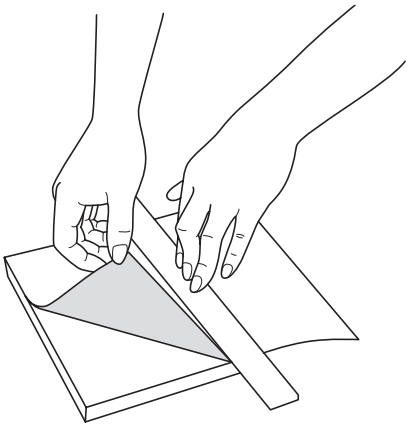
The Quick Manual describes basic operations and displays of the FOMA terminal.
To use the Quick Manual bound in this manual, cut the pages along the cutting line and fold them as shown below. Take Quick Manual (WLAN) with you to use the WLAN function.

■ How to cut

Cut the Quick Manual pages along the cutting line.
Use a ruler to cut along the cutting line as shown below.
Detach one page at a time so that you do not tear other pages.

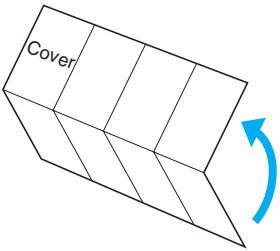
* Take care not to hurt yourself when cutting with scissors, etc.

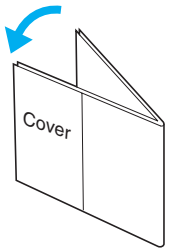




■ How to fold

Fold along the fold line to see the cover page as shown below.







NTT DoCoMo

FOMA® N902iL
Quick Manual

○**For Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>**

For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) **151** (toll free) (only in Japanese)

* You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

○**For malfunctions**

For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) **113** (toll free) (only in Japanese)

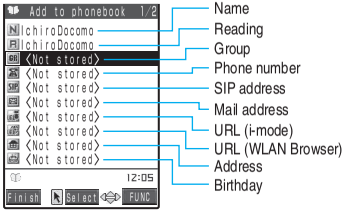
* You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-800-000 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Add to phonebook



1. Standby screen appears➡ (Clear) ➡ (FUNC)➡"Add to phonebook"

●To add data from the received call record
Standby screen appears➡ (Recall) ➡Highlight the received call record➡ (FUNC)➡"Add to phonebook"

●To add data from the redial
Standby screen appears➡ (Redial) ➡Highlight the redial record➡ (FUNC)➡"Add to phonebook"

2. Select "Phone" or "UIM"➡Enter name➡Check the reading
3. Select items and enter them

■ Group (00 to 19)
<Not stored>➡Select group

■ Phone number (up to 4)
<Not stored>➡Enter phone number➡Select icon

■ SIP address (up to 3)
<Not stored>➡Enter SIP address➡Select icon

■ Mail address (up to 3)
<Not stored>➡Enter mail address➡Select icon

■ URL (i-mode) (up to 2)
<Not stored>➡Enter URL

■ URL (WLAN Browser) (up to 2)
<Not stored>➡Enter URL

■ Address
<Not stored>➡Enter zip code➡Enter address

■ Birthday
<Not stored>➡Enter birthday

■ Memorandums
<Not stored>➡Enter memorandums

■ Image
<Not stored>➡Select photo mode or image

■ Chara-den
<Not stored>➡Select Chara-den

■ Memory No. (000 to 699)
➡Enter memory No.

4. (Finish)

Only name, reading, group, phone number, and mail address can be stored to the FOMA card (UIM).

Edit/Delete phonebook data

■Edit the phonebook data

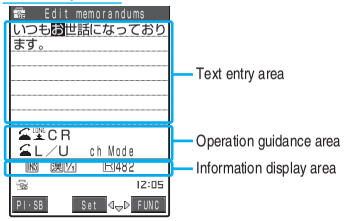
Open the phonebook detail screen➡ (FUNC)➡"Edit phonebook"➡Edit the items if necessary➡ (Finish) ➡"YES" ((for UIM phonebook) (Finish) ➡"Overwrite" ➡"YES")

■Delete phonebook data

Open the phonebook list screen➡ (FUNC)➡"Delete data"➡"Delete this"➡"YES" (Select another "YES" depending on the phonebook)

Input method and mode

■Text entry screen



■Input mode

漢 ... Kanji/Hiragana
123 ... Number
カナ ... Katakana
区 ... Kuten input mode
A ... Alphabet

■ Select input method

(Menu)➡ (Settings)➡"Other settings"➡"Character input set"➡"Input mode"➡Select any item

■ Switching the text entry method

(PI·SB) (press and hold) (several times)

■ Switching input mode

(ch) (Several times)

■ Enter dakuten, hen-dakuten, comma, dot

(#) (Several times)

■ Switching between upper and lower cases

Before entering, (FUNC)➡"Upper case" or "Lower case"
Move the cursor to the entered text➡ (Clear)

■ Enter space (blank)

(FUNC)➡"Space"

■ Text line feed

Move the cursor to the end of the sentence followed by no letters➡ (Key 0)

(Clear) (press and hold)

(FUNC)➡"Line feed"

■ Enter face symbol, symbol or pictograph

(PI·SB) (several times)➡Select symbol or pictograph➡Press (CLR) to end operation

(FUNC)➡"Face Mark", "Symbols" or "Pictograph"➡Select symbols or text

■ Delete text

Use (Navigation Key) to move the cursor to the text to be deleted➡(CLR)

Cutting line

Enter text

Enter “携帯” on Text memo

■ Text entry (edit) screen

(MENU)➔ (LifeKit)➔“Text memo”➔ (Edit)➔ (ch) (Several times)➔“Kanji/Hiragana input mode”➔

け ➔ 2 four times, い ➔ 1 two times
た ➔ 4 one time, い ➔ 1 two times

■ Conversion

(CHG)➔ ➔ ➔Select “携帯” from the conversion candidates

Camera

■ Shoot still image

(MENU)➔ (LifeKit)➔“Camera”➔“Photo mode”➔ or ( ) ➔

■ Shoot continuously

(MENU)➔ (LifeKit)➔“Camera”➔“Photo mode”➔ (FUNC)➔“CHG camera-mode”➔“Continuous mode”➔“Auto” or “Manual”➔ or ( ) ➔ (FUNC)➔Select saving method

■ Shoot movie

(MENU)➔ (LifeKit)➔“Camera”➔“Movie mode”➔ or ( ) ➔ or ( ) ➔

Display image/Play movie, melody

■ Display image

(MENU)➔ (Data box)➔“My picture”➔Select folder➔Select image

■ Play movie

(MENU)➔ (Data box)➔“i-motion”➔Select folder➔Select movie

■ Play melody

(MENU)➔ (Data box)➔“Melody”➔Select folder➔Select melody

Using music player

■ Play music with music player

(MENU)➔ (Data box)➔“Music”➔Select playlist➔Select track

Make/Receive videophone call

■ Make a videophone call

Enter phone number➔ (V. phone) ➔Press after talking

■ Receive a videophone call

The phone rings and the incoming call lamp flashes.
(V. phone), or ➔Press after talking

(V. phone) or : Send your shot to the caller
(Subst.): Send your substitute image to the caller

■ During a call

: Switch (ON/OFF) hands-free
: Switch camera (Front camera/Rear camera)

i-mode mail

Compose/Send message



■ New mail screen

(MENU)➔ (Mail) ➔“Compose message”

■ Address

“ To ” ➔Select how to enter mail address

■ Subject

“ Subject ” ➔Enter subject

■ Message

“ ” ➔Enter message

■ Send mail

(Send)➔Press after sending

Attach file

■ Attach image

New mail screen➔ (FUNC)➔“Attach file”➔“Attach image”➔Select folder➔Select image

■ Attach i-motion

New mail screen➔ (FUNC)➔“Attach file”➔“Attach i-motion”➔Select folder➔Select i-motion

■ Attach melody

New mail screen➔ (FUNC)➔“Attach file”➔“Attach melody”➔Select folder➔Select melody

■ Attach ToruCa

New mail screen➔ (FUNC)➔“Attach file”➔“Attach ToruCa”➔Select folder➔Select ToruCa

Receive mail

“ (White) ” flashes➔“Received results” screen appears ➔Select “ New ”

Other functions

■ Reply

Display mail to reply➔ (Reply)➔“ ”➔Enter message➔ (Send)➔Press after sending

■ Forward

Display mail to forward➔ (FUNC)➔“Forward” ➔ “ To ”➔Select how to enter mail address➔ (Send)➔Press after sending

Check new messages

(MENU)➔ (Mail)➔“Check new messages”

Cutting line

Menu list

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
WLAN Tools	Messenger	
	Presence	
Full Browser	Home	
	Bookmark	
	Last URL	
	Enter URL	
	Full Browser settings	
WLAN Browser	Display home	
	Bookmark	
	Screen memo	
	Last URL	
	Enter URL	
	WLAN Browser settings	
Mail	Inbox	
	Outbox	
	Draft	
	Compose message	
	Chat mail	
	Compose SMS	
	Check new messages	
	Receive option	
	Check new SMS	
	Template	
	Mail settings	
i-mode	iMenu	
	Bookmark	

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
i-mode	Screen memo	
	Last URL	
	Go to location	
	i-Channel	
	Message	
	Check new messages	
	Client certificate	
	i-mode settings	
i-αppli	Software list	
	Auto start set	
	i-αppli action info	

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
Settings	Incoming call	Ring volume (**MENU 5 0**)
		Select ring tone (**MENU 1 3**)
		SRS_WOW (**MENU 6 4**)
		Vibrator (**MENU 5 4**)
		Illumination (**MENU 8 9**)
		Public distinction-STD
		Manner mode set (**MENU 2 0**)
		Disp. phonebook image
		Answer setting (**MENU 5 8**)
		Receive ringing time (**MENU 6 8**)
		Ring time(sec.) (**MENU 9 0**)
		Info notice setting (**MENU 6 5**)
		Record message (**MENU 5 5**)
	Talk	Setting connect mode (**MENU** (Press and hold))
		Noise reduction (**MENU 7 6**)
		Quality alarm (**MENU 7 5**)
		Reconnect signal (**MENU 7 7**)
		Illumination in talk
		Set hold tone
		Setting when folded (**MENU 1 8**)
	Dialing	Pause dial (**MENU 8 4**)
		Sub-address setting
		Prefix setting
		Auto dial setting
		Int'l dial settings
	Videophone	Visual preference

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
Settings	Videophone	Select image
		Auto redial as voice
		Remote monitoring
		Display setting
		Indicate V.phone
		Hands-free switch
		V-phone while packet
	Display	Display setting (**MENU 5 6**)
		Backlight (**MENU 7 0**)
		Display design (**MENU 8 6**)
		Indicator display (**MENU 9 3**)
		Font (**MENU 6 6**)
		Desktop icon (**MENU 6 3**)
		3D display setting
		Select language (**MENU 1 5**)
		Original menu (**MENU 5 2**)
		Menu display set (**MENU 5 7**)
		Viewer settings
		Automatic display (**MENU 4 7**)
		Icons (**MENU 3 6**)
		Icons setting
	Call time/ Charge	Call data (**MENU 6 1**)
		Notice designate calls
		Reset total (**MENU 6 0**)
		Auto reset total cost
		Call time display (**MENU 4 8**)

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item	
Settings	Clock	Set time (**MENU 3 1**)	
		Clock display (**MENU 3 9**)	
		World watch	
		Alarm setting	
	Lock/Security	Lock	Dial lock
			Original lock
		SimpleLock	
		Keypad lock	
		IC card lock	
		Face authentication	
		Self mode	
		Reject unknown	
		Call setting w/o ID (**MENU 1 0**)	
		Record display set	
		Change security code (**MENU 2 9**)	
		PIN setting	
		Secret mode (**MENU 4 0**)	
		Secret data only mode (**MENU 4 1**)	
		Scanning function	
	Connection setting	Set connection timeout	
		Set check new messages	
		Host selection (**MENU 8 1**)	
		SMS center selection	
		Certificate	
		Certificate host	
	i-αppli settings	Disp. Software info	
		End stand-by display	
		i-αppli vol.	

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
Settings	MyDocument settings	MyDocument comm
	ToruCa settings	Receive from R/W
		Scroll
	External connection	USB mode setting
		Earphone (**MENU 5 1**)
		Select microphone
		Automatic answer (**MENU 9 4**)
	Network setting	NW search mode
	WLAN setting	Check/Change setting
		Host setting
		SIP address list
		Change PIN (WLAN)
		Delete WLAN setting
	Other settings	Style mode
		Keypad sound (**MENU 3 0**)
		HOST Effective set
		Charge sound
		Battery level (**MENU 7 1**)
		Sidekeys guard (**MENU** ✗ (Press and hold))
		Character input set (**MENU 3 5**)
		Neuropointer
		Reset settings (**MENU 2 3**)
		Initialize
		Software Update

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
Data box	My picture (**MENU 4 6**)	
	i-motion	
	Melody (**MENU 1 6**)	
	Chara-den	
	My document	
	Music	
LifeKit	Bar code reader	
	Receive Ir data (**MENU 7 9**)	
	ToruCa	
	IC card content	
	SD-PIM	
	Camera	
	Data Sec. Service	
	Schedule (**MENU 4 5**)	
	Alarm clock (**MENU 4 4**)	
	To Do list (**MENU 9 5**)	
	Text memo (**MENU 4 2**)	
	Calculator (**MENU 8 5**)	
	Play/Erase msg. (* (Memo/Check))	
	Play/Erase VP msg.	
	Voice memo (**MENU 4 3**)	
	Voice announce (**MENU 9 1**)	
	UIM operation	
	Forwarding image	
	Access reader	
	Dictionary	
Network service	Chaku-moji	
	Caller ID Notification (**MENU 1 7**)	
	Voice Mail	

Menu

Main item	Sub menu	Branch item
Network service	Call Waiting	
	Call Forwarding	
	Nuisance Call Blk	
	Caller ID Request	
	In-call arrival act	
	Set in-call arrival	
	Remote Control	
	Dual Network	
	English Guidance	
	Additional service	
	Service Numbers	
	Multi Number	
Phonebook	Phonebook	
	PushTalk	
Own data	Own number (**MENU 0**)	
	Received calls (**MENU 2 4**)	
	Dialed calls	
	Mail member (**MENU 9 7**)	
	Chat group	
	Common phrases (**MENU 3 8**)	
	Own dictionary (**MENU 8 2**)	
	DL dictionary	

＜Other features＞

- Manner mode # (Press and hold) (Set/Release with each press)
- Public mode (Driving mode) * (Press and hold) (Set/Release with each press)

Cutting line

Network services

Voice Mail service

■ Activate

(MENU)➔ (Service)➔“Voice Mail”➔“Activate”➔“YES”➔“YES”➔Enter Ring time (seconds)

■ Deactivate

(MENU)➔ (Service)➔“Voice Mail”➔“Deactivate”➔“YES”

■ Play messages

(MENU)➔ (Service)➔“Voice Mail”➔“Play messages”➔“YES”➔Follow the voice prompts

Call Waiting

■ Activate

(MENU)➔ (Service)➔“Call Waiting”➔“Activate”➔“YES”

■ Deactivate

(MENU)➔ (Service)➔“Call Waiting”➔“Deactivate”➔“YES”

■ Receive another incoming call

Press (TALK) or (●) to switch to incoming call.

To switch the calls, press (TALK).

Call Forwarding service

■ Activate

(MENU)➔ (Service)➔“Call Forwarding”➔“Activate”➔Set a forwarding number or the ring time, and then select “Activate”➔“YES”

■ Deactivate

(MENU)➔ (Service)➔“Call Forwarding”➔“Deactivate”➔“YES”

Caller ID Request service

■ Activate Caller ID Request service

(MENU)➔ (Service)➔“Caller ID Request”➔“Activate”➔“YES”➔“OK”

■ Deactivate Caller ID Request service

(MENU)➔ (Service)➔“Caller ID Request”➔“Deactivate”➔“YES”➔“OK”

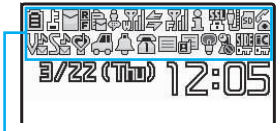
Service available on FOMA terminal

Collect call (the receiving party is asked to pay for)	(No area code) 106
Directory assistance for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (pay)*1	(No area code) 104
Telegram (pay) 8:00 am to 10:00 pm	(No area code) 115
Time (pay)	(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (pay)	Area code + 117
Police emergency*2	(No area code) 110
Fire brigade/ambulance emergency*2	(No area code) 119
Maritime distress call	(No area code) 118
Emergency Message Recording System	(No area code) 171

*1: The phone number cannot be provided if the number is not listed in the directory.

*2: Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected with the nearest police or fire department. If you cannot reach the police or fire department from your mobile phone, dial from a public or general subscriber phone.

Icon



Icon display area

: Battery level

: Dial lock set

(White): Unread message

(White): Unread MessageR, Unread MessageF

(White): i-mode mail stored in i-mode center

: Presence report/Unread Instant message

: WLAN signal strength

: WLAN communication in progress

: FOMA signal strength

: Using i-mode

: SSL page

: During Communication mode, USB cable unconnected, hands-free device unconnected

: miniSD memory card inserted

: During voice call

: Vibrator set

: Ring volume set to “Silent”

: Manner mode set

: Public mode (Driving mode) set

: Alarm function set

to : Voice Mail message

to : Record message set

to : Record VP message set

: Backlight set to “OFF”

: Keypad lock set

: Sidekeys guard set to “ON”

: IC card lock set

<Contact for lost, etc>

Omakase Lock

Set/Release Omakase Lock

0120-524-360

24 hours available (in Japanese only)

* Omakase Lock can be set/released from the My DoCoMo site on a PC, etc.

Other contacts

<Contact: >

<Contact: >

<Contact: >

* Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Cutting line

NTT DoCoMo

FOMA® N902iL
Quick Manual (WLAN)

○**For Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>**

For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) 151 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

* You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

○**For malfunctions**

For a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone:

(No prefix) 113 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

* You cannot call this number from an ordinary (landline) phone.

From an ordinary (landline) phone:

0120-800-000 (toll free) (only in Japanese)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
●Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

Connecting to WLAN

If you cannot connect to a WLAN access point, attempt the following:

Scanning WLAN access points

On the standby screen➔● (1 second or longer)

Changing the communication mode

On the standby screen➔MENU (1 second or longer)➔"DUAL mode(Prefer FOMA)", "DUAL mode(Prefer WLAN)" or "Single mode(WLAN)"

Making a VoIP call

Entering a phone number (extension)

Enter a phone number➔☎

Entering a SIP address

On the standby screen➔☎ (1 second or longer)➔"Inp. SIP address"➔Enter the other party's SIP address ➔☎

Entering a prefix

On the standby screen➔☎ (1 second or longer)➔"Prefix"➔"Add prefix"➔Enter the prefix➔☎

Adding a prefix to a phone number (extension)

Enter a phone number➔i (FUNC)➔"Prefix"➔"Add prefix"➔Enter the prefix➔☎

Making an outside call

Enter a prefix – phone number➔☎

If "FOMA" is displayed

Press ● during number entry to change "FOMA" to "WLAN".



Receiving a VoIP call

Receiving a call

When a call arrives, press ☎ or ●➔Press ☎ to end the call

Putting a call on hold

Press CLR during a call➔Press CLR or ● to resume the call

Using the extension feature

Step call

Call another party with simple steps when the called party is busy.

<Example: To call "1235" when the extension "1234" is busy>

While hearing the busy tone, press 5 (the last digit of the extension)

Camp on

A tone sounds when the other party hangs up the call.

While hearing the busy tone, press CLR➔Dial the prefix for camp on➔☎➔When the tone sounds, press ☎ or ●

Call waiting

Call the other party and break in the conversation. If the other party puts the current call on hold, you can start talking.

To break in the other party's current call

While hearing the busy tone, press CLR➔Dial the prefix for call waiting

If you are called during a call

When you hear the repeated double beep during a call, press CLR

Call pickup

Answer a call ringing another extension.

When another extension is ringing, dial a call pickup prefix➔☎

Extension forwarding

Forward a received call to another extension.

Dial a forwarding extension during a call➔☎➔When the party answers the call, press ☎

Park hold

Pick up a held call on another extension.

Press CLR during a call➔Enter a park hold prefix

To pick up a park-held call

Enter a park hold prefix – the held extension on park hold ➔☎

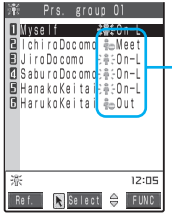
Conference call

Put the current call on hold and call another extension to start talking with the called and held parties.

Press CLR during a call➔Enter an extension of the party to call➔When the party answers, press CLR

Cutting line

Presence



Presence information (Status)

■ Displaying the buddy list screen

(MENU)➜ (WLAN Tools)➜"Presence"

: Online

: Leave, Busy, Meeting, Out, etc.

: Offline (the power is turned off, etc.)

: Phone (during a call, making a call, receiving a call)

: Incomp (the status cannot be obtained, etc.)

■ Updating the presence information

(Ref.)

■ Registering (or changing) your status

"Myself"➜Select a status

■ Changing the group display mode

(FUNC)➜"Change group"➜Select a group➜"YES"

■ Calling a displayed member

Select a member➜"VoIPphone dial"

■ Sending an instant message to a displayed member

Select a member➜"Compose IM"➜" "➜Enter the message body➜ (Send)

Messenger

Composing and sending an instant message



Recipient

Message body

■ Displaying the New IM screen

(MENU)➜ (WLAN Tools)➜"Messenger"➜"Compose IM"

■ Entering an address

"To"➜Select the address entry method

■ Entering the message body

" "➜Enter the message body

■ Sending the instant message

(Send)➜Press after the transmission is completed

Receiving an instant message

" " blinks➜The reception result screen appears➜"OK"

Replying to or forwarding an instant message

■ Reply

Display an instant message to reply to➜ (FUNC)➜"Reply"➜" "➜Edit the message body➜ (Send)➜Press after the transmission is completed

■ Forward

Display an instant message to forward➜ (FUNC)➜"Forward"➜"To"➜Select the address entry method➜ (Send)➜Press after the transmission is completed

Icon display



: Presence report

: Unread IM

: WLAN signal strength

: Out of WLAN range

: SIP communication available

: Connected to WLAN

: WLAN communication in progress

Prefix list

Service	Prefix
Camp on	
Call waiting	
Call pickup	
Extension forwarding	
Park hold	

* Write down the prefixes, and use the above table.

Cutting line

Mobile phone manners are important!

Remember to be courteous to others when you use a mobile phone.

Turn the power off when you are:

■ In a location where it is prohibited to use mobile phones

Use is prohibited in some places. Be sure to switch the power off in:

• An airplane • A hospital

* Turn off your mobile phone even in hospital lobbies, waiting rooms, and corridors if electronic medical devices may be in use near you.

■ Driving

Using the FOMA terminal prevents you from driving safely.

* Stop the car in a safe place before using the phone, or set the Public mode (Driving mode).

■ In crowded places such as peak-hour trains if implanted electronic medical devices may be in use near you

Radio waves emitted by mobile phones may adversely affect implanted pacemakers and ICDs when used in close proximity.

■ In places such as theaters, cinemas, and art galleries

Using the FOMA terminal in a public place, where you need to be quiet, annoys people around you.

Mind where you use your FOMA terminal and how loud your voice or the ring tone is

■ Keep your voice down in quiet places like restaurants and hotel lobbies.

■ If you are in an outdoor public place, make sure you do not disturb others.

Respect privacy

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

These functions enable you to be well-mannered

Your FOMA terminal is equipped with useful functions not to answer an incoming call or to mute all the sounds of the FOMA terminal.

[Manner mode/Original manner mode]→pp.143, 144

Manner mode mutes sounds emitting from the FOMA terminal such as keypad sounds and ring tones. You can customize Manner mode by changing the settings of the Record message function, vibrator or ring tone (Original manner mode). However, neither Manner mode nor Original manner mode can mute the shutter sound of the camera.

[Public mode (Driving mode/Power off)]→pp.79, 80

The caller hears an announcement that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in a place where you need to refrain from talking or turn the power off.

[Vibrator]→p.140

The FOMA terminal vibrates to notify you of an incoming call.

[Record message function]→p.82

When you cannot answer a call, the caller leaves a message.

You can also use optional services such as the Voice Mail service (p.420) and Call Forwarding service (p.423).

Printed versions of this document were reproduced on recycled paper. Please recycle this document when you are done with it.

Access DoCoMo e-site for procedures to change your address or billing plan and for request of information materials.

From i-mode iMenu ⇒ 料金&お申込・設定(Charges & Applications/Setting) ⇒ ドコモeサイト(DoCoMo e-site) Packet communication charges free

From PC My DoCoMo(http://www.mydocomo.com/) ⇒ 各種手続き(ドコモeサイト) (Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))

- You will need your "network ID" to access e-site from i-mode.
- No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges.
- You will need your "DoCoMo ID/password" to access e-site from PC.
- If you do not have or you have forgotten your "network ID" or "DoCoMo ID/password", contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed below.
- DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- You may not be able to access some e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.

General Inquires
< DoCoMo Information Center >

(In English)

0120-005-250 (toll free)

*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 151 (toll free)

*Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 113 (toll free)

*Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

0120-800-000 (toll free)

*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.
*Please confirm the phone number before you dial.



Do not forget your cellular phone
... or your manners!
When using your portable phone in a public place, do not forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation

Li-ion

To prevent damage to the environment, being used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.

Made from 100% recycled paper.

PRINTED WITH SOY INK

This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.

'07.1 (1st Edition)
MDT-000071-EAA0

FOMA® N902iL

Manual for Data Communication

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal 1
Before Using 3
Checking the Procedure 4
Setting the PC 7
About the FOMA PC Setting Software 12
How to Set Various Settings 18
Executing Set Data Communication 24
W-TCP Settings 27
Access Point Name (APN) Settings 29
Setting up Dial-up Network 30
Setting up Dial-up 37
AT Command List 45

About Manual for Data Communication

This manual describes necessary information for data communication using the FOMA N902iL and how to install "N902iL communication setting file (drivers)" and "FOMA PC setting software" provided in the CD-ROM.

Operations on Windows XP

The contents of this manual are based on Windows XP with Service Pack 2. The procedures or screens may vary depending on your environment.

About Data Communication Available for the FOMA Terminal

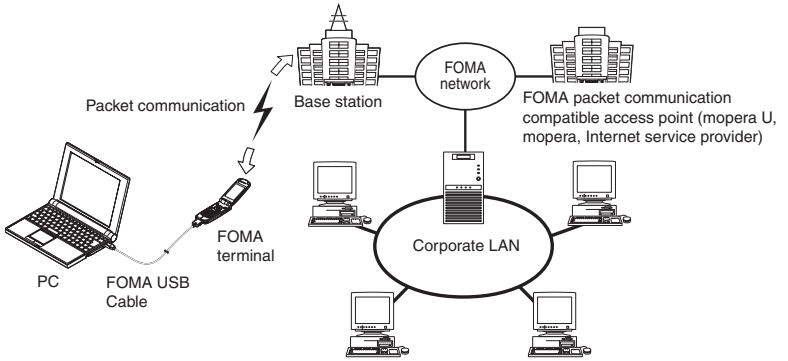
Packet communication and 64K data communication

Data communication that can be used between the FOMA terminal and PCs is classified in 2 categories: packet communication and 64K data communication.

- Packet communication
  The data is received at the maximum speed of 384kbps and sent at the maximum speed of 64kbps. Packet communication is charged according to the amount of data sent and received, regardless of the time it takes or the distance. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when large files are sent and received. It is also possible to access a corporate LAN connected to a FOMA network and exchange data.
- 64K data communication
  Data can be sent or received at the stable speed of 64kbps. This type of communication is charged according to the length of time the line is connected regardless of the amount of data. Note that the communication charge can become expensive when the line is connected for a long time.

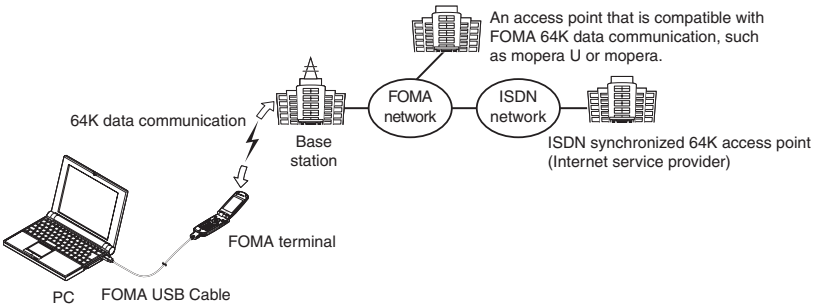
■ For packet communication

Packet communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.
Use an access point that supports FOMA packet communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



■ For 64K data communication

64K data communication is performed via the FOMA USB Cable (optional) connected to a PC or via a dedicated cable connected to a PDA.
Use an access point that supports FOMA 64K data communication, such as DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera”.



NOTE

- This FOMA terminal does not support IP connection.

Notice before using

● Data communication is not supported for using the WLAN function of the FOMA terminal.

Internet service provider fees

In addition to FOMA service charges, you may need to pay user fees to an Internet service provider to use the Internet. These fees must be paid directly to the Internet service provider in addition to service fees of FOMA service. Contact your Internet service provider for details.
DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” is available. “mopera U” is a pay service for which you need to apply. “mopera” is a free service for which you do not need to apply.

Setting an access point (e.g. Internet service provider)

Packet communication and 64K data communication use different access points. If you are using packet communication, use an applicable access point for it; if 64K data communication, use an access point for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

- You cannot use DoPa access points.
- You cannot use access points for PHS64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS.

User authorization when accessing network

Some access points may require your user authorization (ID and password) when connecting. Use communication software (Dial-up network) to enter your ID and password. ID and password will be provided by your Internet service provider or the network administrator. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for details.

Access authorization when using the browser

To view FirstPass compliant sites on your PC’s browser, FirstPass (user certification) for access authorization is needed. Install the FirstPass PC software from the provided CD-ROM and conduct the setting. For details, refer to “FirstPassManual” (PDF format) under the “FirstPassPCSoft” folder provided in the CD-ROM. (The “FirstPassManual” is only in Japanese.) To view the “FirstPassManual” (PDF format), Adobe Reader (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. Unless you install it on your PC, install the Adobe Reader from the CD-ROM to read the document. For how to use it, refer to the Adobe Reader help.

Required conditions for performing packet and 64K data communication

The following conditions are required to perform communication using the FOMA terminal:

- Your PC is compatible with the FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- You are in the FOMA service area.
- For packet communication, the access point supports FOMA packet communication.
- For 64K data communication, the access point supports FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K.

However, depending on congestion of the base station or weaker signal strength, you cannot perform communication even when the above conditions are satisfied.

Before Using

Operational environment

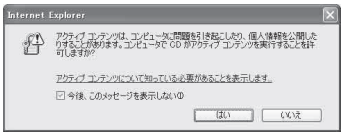
The PC operation environment to use data communication is as shown below:

PC unit	• PC/AT compatible model with CD-ROM drive • USB port (compliant to Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev1.1) • Display resolution of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high, High Color (65,536 colors) is recommended
OS*1	• Windows 2000 (Japanese version) • Windows XP (Japanese version)
Required memory	• Windows 2000: 64M bytes or more*2 • Windows XP: 128M bytes or more*2
Hard disk space	• 5M bytes or more*2

*1： The proper operations on the upgraded OS are not guaranteed.
*2： The required memory and necessary hard disk space may differ depending on the PC's system configuration.

When the CD-ROM is inserted to the PC, the warning screen as shown right may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of the Internet Explorer. There is no matter with using the software. Click "はい" (Yes).

* This screen is an example when using Windows XP. The warning screen may differ depending on the environments of your PC.



NOTE

- You can perform data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to the DoCoMo PDA "musea", "sigmarion Ⅱ" or "sigmarion Ⅲ". "musea" or "sigmarion Ⅱ" needs to be updated when performing data communication by connecting to the FOMA terminal. For how to update it and other details, visit the DoCoMo website.
- This FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup function.
- This FOMA terminal is not compatible with the FAX communication.

Required devices

The following hardware and software, in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC, are required.

- "FOMA USB Cable" (optional) or "FOMA USB Cable with charging function 01" (optional)
- Provided CD-ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA N902iL"

NOTE

- Purchase the specified "FOMA USB Cable" or "FOMA USB Cable with charging function 01". The USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector is different.
- FOMA USB Cable is regarded to be used in this manual.

Checking the Procedure

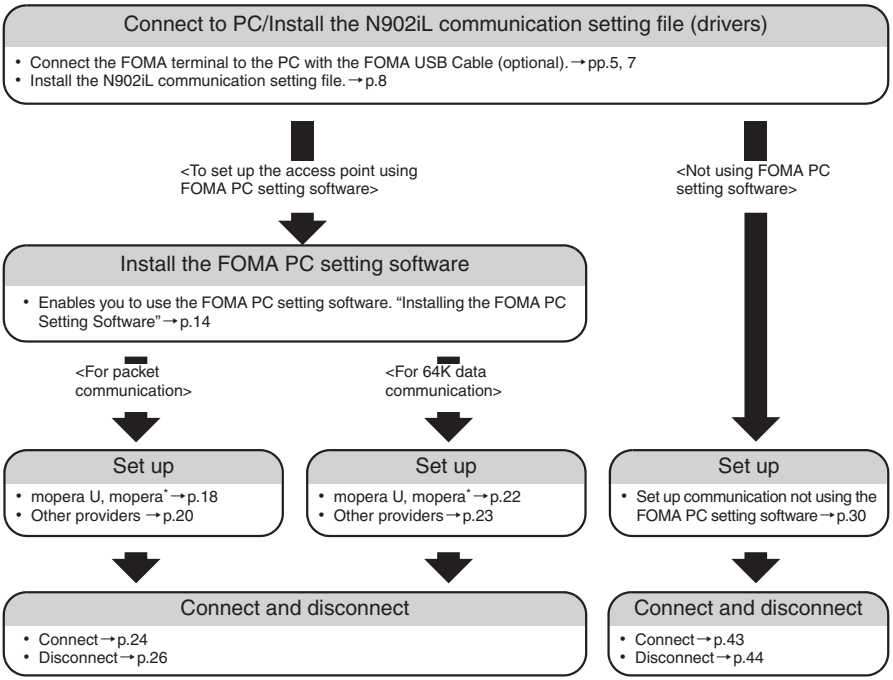
In data communication, the connection is made through a dial-up connection with Internet service providers or LANs that support FOMA data communication.

■ **About the "CD-ROM for FOMA N902iL"**

- The CD-ROM contains the N902iL communication setting file (drivers), FOMA PC setting software and FirstPass PC software.
- The N902iL communication setting file is software (driver) needed for connecting the FOMA terminal with a PC via a FOMA USB Cable (optional) to carry out packet communication, 64K data communication and data transfer (OBEX). Installing the N902iL communication setting file embeds each driver into Windows.
  Using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up packet communication and 64K data communication and create a dial-up connection.

Flow chart for completing the data communication setup

This section describes preparation to use packet communication and 64K data communication.



* : To use Internet with the FOMA terminal and PC connected, "mopera U" (you need to apply for) is useful, which supports broadband connection, etc. Consider the plan in which you are charged only in a month when you use the service. If you use "mopera" for which you do not need to apply, you can access Internet immediately.
For more information, visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the USB mode setting to “Communication mode”

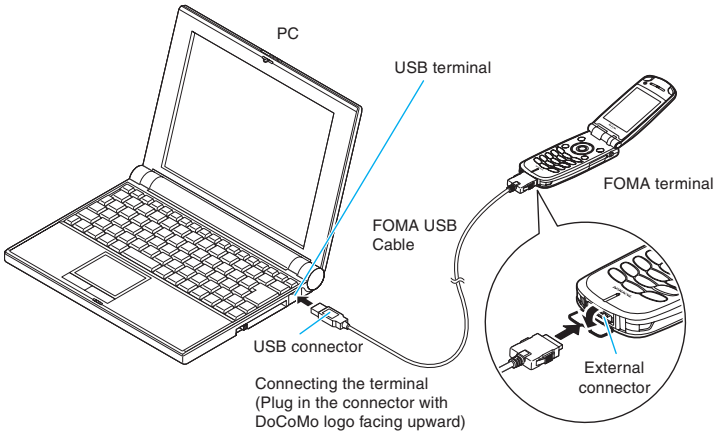
Set the external connector to be used for the packet communication and 64K data communication.

● Before connecting to PC, set “USB mode setting” to “Communication mode”.

1 MENU ▶“Settings”▶“External connection”▶“USB mode setting”▶“Communication mode”

Connecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



1 Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

2 Check the orientation of the external connector of the FOMA terminal, then insert the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable horizontally until you hear a click

3 Connect the USB connector of the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of your PC

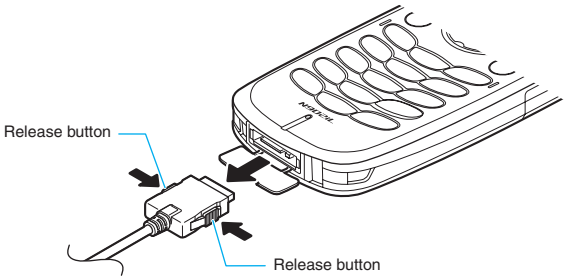
“ ” changes to “ ” on the FOMA terminal when the FOMA USB Cable is connected.

NOTE

● “ ” appears on the FOMA terminal display when the N902iL communication setting file is installed and the connection with a PC is recognized. Before the N902iL communication setting file is installed, the connection is not recognized and “ ” appears.

Disconnecting the devices

The following procedure explains how to disconnect the FOMA USB Cable (optional).



1 Remove the FOMA USB Cable from the USB terminal of the PC

2 Pull the FOMA USB Cable out horizontally while pressing the release buttons of the external connector of FOMA USB Cable

3 Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal

NOTE

- When you connect and disconnect the FOMA USB Cable repeatedly, wait for a while in each step because the FOMA terminal may not recognize the PC correctly.
- Do not disconnect the FOMA USB Cable during data communication because this may cause the disconnection of communication, malfunction or loss of data.
- Keep pressing the release buttons of the external connector of the FOMA USB Cable when pulling it out of the external connector of the FOMA terminal. Using excessive force to pull the cable may cause malfunction.

Setting the PC

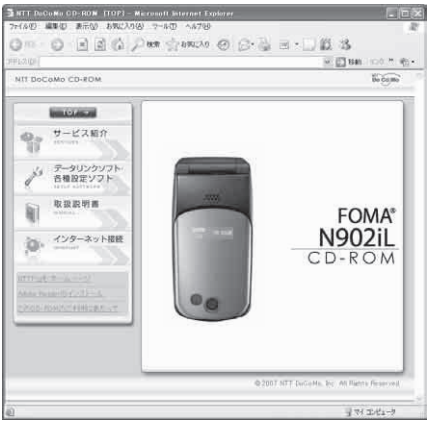
The following procedure explains how to connect the FOMA terminal to PC and how to install the N902iL communication setting file (drivers).

Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC

1 Start up Windows and insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N902iL” in the CD-ROM drive of your PC

2 Click “ ” to close the screen

This screen usually appears automatically when the “CD-ROM for FOMA N902iL” is inserted in the drive. If it does not appear, simply proceed to Step 3.
If this screen appears while you are installing the N902iL communication setting file, click “ ” as well.



3 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to your FOMA terminal

4 Connect the FOMA USB Cable to the USB terminal of the PC

“新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen appears.

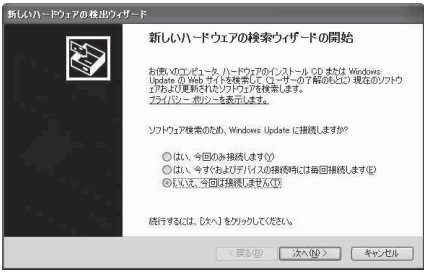
Installing the N902iL communication setting file (drivers)

- When installing N902iL communication setting file, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC's manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.
- The installation procedure for the N902iL communication setting file differs depending on the OS. Refer to the description for the OS on your PC.
  For Windows XP refer to the following.
  For Windows 2000, proceed to p.9.

For Windows XP

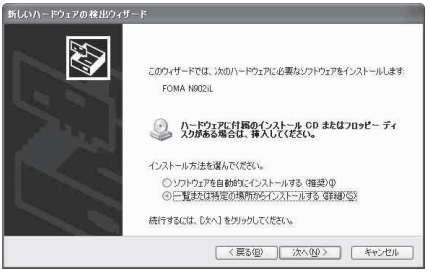
1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 4 of "Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC" (p.7), this screen is automatically displayed.

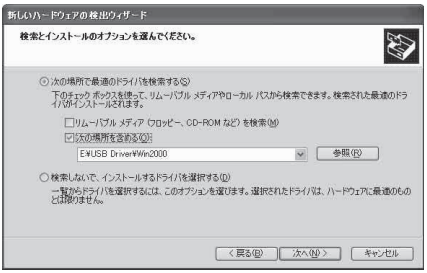


2 Select "いいえ、今回は接続しません" (No, I will access Windows Update later on) and click "次へ" (Next)

3 Select "一覧または特定の場所からインストールする（詳細）" (Install from the list or a certain location (Advanced)) and click "次へ" (Next)



4 Select "次の場所で最適のドライバを検索する" (Search for the optimal driver in the next location), uncheck the "リムーバブルメディア（フロッピー、CD-ROMなど）を検索" (Search a removable media such as floppy disk or CD-ROM) box, check the "次の場所を含める" (include the next location) box to specify a folder to search, then click "次へ"(Next)



The folder name is "<CD-ROM drive>:¥USB Driver¥Win2000".
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC. In this example, the CD-ROM drive name is "E".
The driver is common with Windows 2000.

5 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

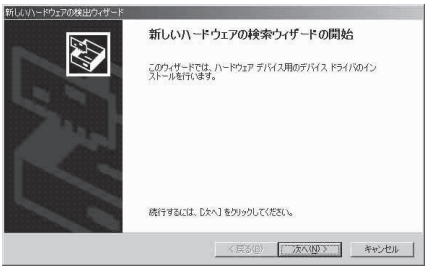
6 Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 5 and install all other 3 drivers (p.10). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 5, installation of the drivers is completed.
When all the drivers have been installed, the task bar indicator displays the message “新しいハードウェアがインストールされ、使用準備ができました。” (New hardware is installed and ready for use) for several seconds. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (p.10).

● For Windows 2000

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

When the FOMA USB Cable has been connected to the PC in Step 4 of “Connecting the FOMA terminal to PC” (p.7), this screen is automatically displayed.



2 Click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “デバイスに最適なドライバを検索する（推奨）” (Search for the optimal driver for the device (Recommended)) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Check the “場所を指定” (Specify the search location) box and click “次へ” (Next)

5 Specify the folder to search and click “OK”

The folder name is “<CD-ROM drive>:¥USB Driver¥Win2000”.
The CD-ROM drive name differs depending on the PC.

6 Confirm the driver name and click “次へ” (Next)

In this case, the driver’s name appears as “FOMA N902iL”.

7 When the message “新しいハードウェアの検索ウィザードの完了” (Complete the find new hardware wizard) appears, click “完了” (Finish)

8 Install other drivers

See Step 1 to 7 and install all other 3 drivers (p.10). If the “新しいハードウェアの検出ウィザード” (Find new hardware wizard) screen does not appear after the completion of Step 7, installation of the drivers is completed. Proceed to “Checking the installed driver” (p.10).

Checking the installed driver

Check that the N902iL communication setting file (drivers) has been correctly installed.

1 Open the Control Panel of Windows

For Windows XP

Select “スタート” (Start) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

For Windows 2000

Select “スタート” (Start) →“設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

2 Click the “システム” (System) icon in “パフォーマンスとメンテナンス” (Performance and maintenance)

For Windows 2000

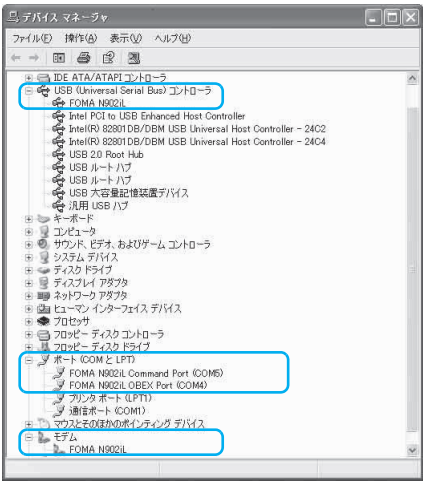
Open “システム” (System) in the “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)

3 Open the device manager

Click the “ハードウェア” (Hardware) tab and click “デバイスマネージャ ” (Device manager)

4 Click each device to check the installed driver name

Check that all the driver names are displayed under “USB（Universal Serial Bus）コントローラ” (USB (Universal Serial Bus) controller), “ポート（COMとLPT）” (Ports (COM& LPT)) and “モデム” (Modems).
Check the driver name and proceed to “About the FOMA PC Setting Software” (p.12).



Device name	Driver name
USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ	• FOMA N902iL
ポート(COMとLPT)	• FOMA N902iL Command Port • FOMA N902iL OBEX Port
モデム	• FOMA N902iL

NOTE

● When you check the above, if not all the driver names appear, follow the uninstall instructions (p.11) to delete the N902iL communication setting file and install the proper file.

Uninstalling the N902iL communication setting file (drivers)

If necessary (when updating the drivers, etc.), uninstall the drivers as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

- If you attempt to execute “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) while connecting to the FOMA terminal, the uninstall program does not run.
- When uninstalling N902iL communication setting file, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the file with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 If the FOMA terminal and the PC are connected by the FOMA USB Cable (optional), remove the FOMA USB Cable

2 Start “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) on the Windows

Click “スタート” (Start)→“コントロールパネル” (Control panel)→“プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications)

3 Select “FOMA N902iL USB” and click “変更と削除” (Change and delete)

4 Click “OK” to uninstall

To cancel uninstallation, click “キャンセル” (Cancel).

5 Click “はい” (Yes) to restart Windows

Now the uninstallation is completed.
If you click “いいえ” (No), restart Windows manually.

NOTE

- When “FOMA N902iL USB” is not displayed in the “プログラムの追加と削除” (Add and remove applications) on the Windows, perform the following procedure:
  ①Insert the “CD-ROM for FOMA N902iL” in the CD-ROM drive of your PC
  ②Open “スタート” (Start) → “マイコンピュータ” (My Computer)
  ③Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select “開く” (Open)
  ④Open “USB Driver” in the CD-ROM → “Win2000” folder
  ⑤Double-click “n902ilun.exe” *
  *：It is displayed as “n902ilun” depending on the setting of your PC.

About the FOMA PC Setting Software

By using the FOMA PC setting software, you can easily set up the followings:

- You can also set up packet communication and 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. →p.30



See p.5 for the connection between the FOMA terminal and PC.

かんたん設定 (Easy settings)

The guide walks you through the procedures for “FOMAデータ通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Making a new dial-up connection for FOMA data communication) and “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) together.

W-TCP設定 (W-TCP settings)

This settings optimize the communication settings of a PC before using “FOMA packet communication”. To get the most out of communication performance, it is necessary to optimize communication settings by making W-TCP settings.

接続先（APN）の設定 (Access Point Name (APN) settings)

Sets the access point name (APN) required for packet communication.
Unlike 64K data communication, a normal phone number is not used for FOMA packet communication access point. Before you connect, register the APN (Access Point Name) of each access point in the FOMA terminal and assign its registration number (cid) to the connection point phone number field.
As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.
cid [Context Identifier] ··· a number used to manage the Access Point Name (APN) for the packet communication registered in the FOMA terminal. It is set when registering the APN in the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

- When the old version of FOMA PC setting software (version 3.0.0 or older, hereafter referred to Previous FOMA PC setting software) is installed, uninstall it in advance.

Procedures ranging from installation of the FOMA PC setting software to connection to the Internet

STEP 1
Installing software

Install the “FOMA PC setting software”

See p.14 for installation details.
When the “Previous FOMA PC setting software” is installed, uninstall it before installing the “FOMA PC setting software Ver3.0.1”.
When the “Previous FOMA PC setting software” is installed, you cannot install the “FOMA PC setting software Ver3.0.1”.
If a screen appears indicating that “Previous W-TCP setting software” or “Previous APN setting software” is installed, see p.15.

STEP 2
Setting preparation

Make preparations for making various settings

Before making various settings, ensure that the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and has been properly recognized by the PC.
See p.5 for “How to connect the FOMA terminal to the PC”.
See “Setting the PC” (p.7) for “How to make the PC recognize the FOMA terminal properly”.
If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, you cannot make various settings nor perform communication.
In this case, see p.8 and install the communication setting file.

STEP 3
Various settings

Set according the communication method you use

Easy settings: “Settings for Packet communication using mopera U or mopera” →p.18
Easy settings: “Settings for Packet communication using other providers” →p.20
Easy settings: “Settings for 64K data communication using mopera U or mopera” →p.22
Easy settings: “Settings for 64K data communication using other providers” →p.23
For other settings, see p.27 or the following pages.

STEP 4
Connecting

Connect to the Internet

See p.24 for the executing communication.

Installing the FOMA PC Setting Software

- Check the operating environment prior to the installation of the FOMA PC setting software. →p.3
- When installing the “FOMA PC setting software”, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to install the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Insert the CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive of the PC

This screen will automatically appear.
Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later is recommended to run the menu. If your PC does not meet the recommended operational environment, or the menu screen does not appear even when you insert the CD-ROM, use the following procedure:

① Open “スタート” (Start) → “マイコンピュータ” (My Computer)
② Right-click the CD-ROM icon and select “開く” (Open)
③ Double-click “index.html”



2 Click “データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト” (Data Link Software/ Various Settings Software)

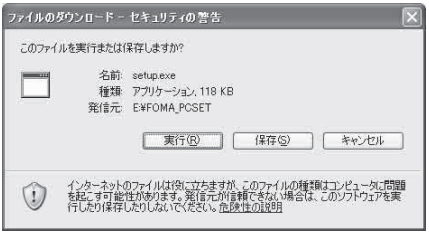
3 Click “インストール” (Install) of “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

When clicking “インストール” (Install), the warning screen as shown below may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of the Internet Explorer. There is no matter with using the software.

* This screen is an example when using Windows XP. The warning screen may differ depending on the environments of your PC.

When “ファイルのダウンロードーセキュリティの警告” (Download file－Security warning) screen appears

Click “実行” (Execute).



When “Internet Explorerーセキュリティの警告” (Internet Explorer－Security warning) screen appears

Click “実行する” (Execute).



4 Click “次へ” (Next)

Before starting the setup process, make sure that no other program is currently running or resident. If there is any program running, click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to exit the program and resume installation. If a screen appears indicating that Previous W-TCP setting software or Previous APN setting software is installed, proceed to p.15.

5 Upon confirming the user agreement of “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), click “はい” (Yes) to agree to it

If you click “いいえ” (No) and then click “はい” (Yes), the installation is canceled.

6 Click “次へ” (Next)

Select whether or not you want “W-TCP settings” to reside in the task-tray.
This is a function to set up / cancel the optimization of “W-TCP communication”, and we recommend you to let it reside in the task-tray.
If there is no problem in particular, click “次へ” (Next) with “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) checked ☑ to continue with the installation. Even if you do not check “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) here, you can change the settings by selecting “メニュー” (Menu), “W-TCP設定をタスクトレイに常駐させる” (Let W-TCP settings reside in the task-tray) on the FOMA PC setting software.
(Note): This option is disabled when the “タスクトレイに常駐する” (Let it reside in the task-tray) setting is in effect.



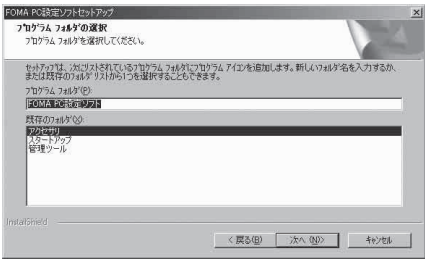
The W-TCP settings icon appears in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop.

7 Select the installation location and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change the location, click “参照” (Reference), specify the location and click “次へ” (Next).

8 Check the name of program folder and click “次へ” (Next)

If you want to change it, enter a new folder name and click “次へ” (Next).



9 Click “完了” (Finish)

When the setup process is completed, the “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) operation screen appears. You can specify various settings at this point.

Notes on installation of the FOMA PC setting software

<If the Previous W-TCP setting software is installed>



- Open “アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs) and delete the old W-TCP setting software.

<If the Previous APN setting software is installed>



- When you click “OK”, the previous APN setting software is automatically uninstalled, and the FOMA PC setting software will be installed.

<If the FOMA PC setting software is already installed>



- Click “OK”, and the install is interrupted. Open “アプリケーション（プログラム）の追加と削除” (Add/Remove programs), uninstall the already installed “FOMA PC認定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), and then reinstall the software.
- Perform the same procedure when an old version of “FOMA PC setting software” is installed.

<If the “キャンセル” (Cancel) button is clicked during installation>



- When you want to continue the installation, click “いいえ” (No). When you want to stop the procedure, click “はい” (Yes).

Confirming the version information of the FOMA PC setting software

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

For Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Program) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

2 Open “メニュー” (Menu) → “バージョン情報” (Version information) of the toolbar

The version information of the FOMA PC setting software is displayed.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setting Software

If necessary (when upgrading the FOMA PC setting software, etc.), uninstall the software as follows. The procedure for uninstalling from a Windows XP machine is described as an example.

- When uninstalling the “FOMA PC setting software”, be sure to log on as Administrator. If you attempt to uninstall the software with another account, an error occurs. Contact your PC’s manufacturer or Microsoft for information on how to set Administrator privileges on your PC.

1 Before uninstalling

Before starting the uninstallation process of the “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software), the various changes made for FOMA must be returned to their default settings.

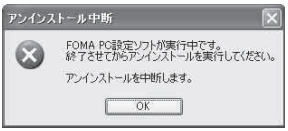
(1) Disable the “W-TCP settings” in the task-tray

Right-click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop and select “常駐させない” (Disable resident).



(2) Exit any running program

If you try to begin uninstallation while the "FOMA PC setting software" or "W-TCP settings" is in operation, this screen appears. Cancel the uninstallation program and exit the respective programs.





2 Start uninstallation

For Windows XP

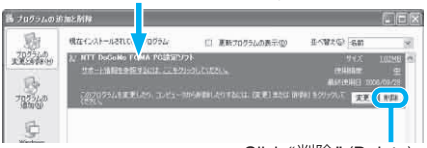
Open "スタート" (Start) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "プログラムの追加と削除" (Add and remove programs)

For Windows 2000

Open "スタート" (Start) → "設定" (Settings) → "コントロールパネル" (Control Panel) → "アプリケーションの追加と削除" (Add and remove applications)

3 Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト" (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software) and click "削除" (Delete)

Select "NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC設定ソフト" (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC setting software)



Click "削除" (Delete)

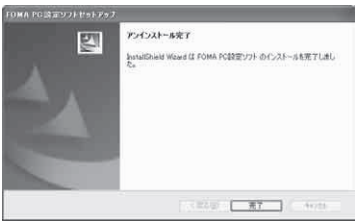
4 Check the program name to be deleted and click "はい" (Yes)

Uninstallation starts.



5 Click "完了" (Finish)

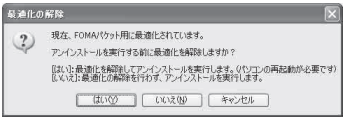
Uninstallation of the "FOMA PC setting software" is completed.



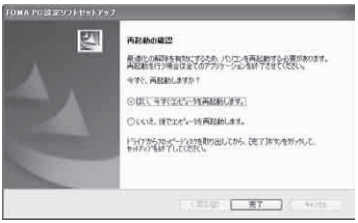
NOTE

● Cancelling "W-TCP最適化" (Optimize W-TCP).

This screen appears when "W-TCP最適化" (Optimize W-TCP) is performed. Usually, click "はい" (Yes) to uninstall and cancel the optimization.



The cancellation of W-TCP optimization is valid after the restart.



How to Set Various Settings

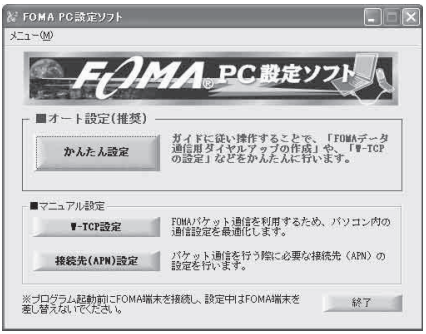
The FOMA terminal needs to be connected to your PC via FOMA USB Cable (optional), and the N902iL communication setting file (drivers) needs to be properly recognized on the device of your PC to specify various settings.

1 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)

This operation screen appears when the FOMA PC setting software is started.

For Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Program) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software) → “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)



Easy settings: “Settings for Packet communication using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to make settings for a packet communication of 384kbps maximum. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider. Packet communication: Enables high-speed packet communication of up to 384kbps for receiving and up to 64kbps for sending (some models excluded). Since you will be charged according to the amount of data transferred, you can enjoy data communication without worrying about time.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if packet communication is used to communicate large volumes of data such as to view sites and websites containing images or to download files.

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “パケット通信” (Packet communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

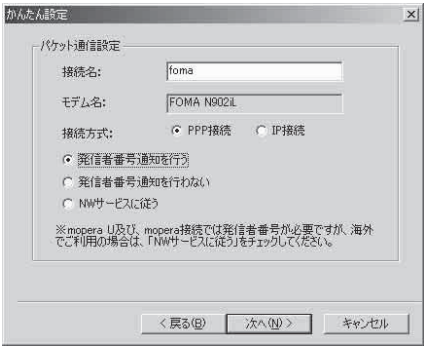
3 Select “『mopera U』への接続” (mopera U access) or “『mopera』への接続” (mopera access) and click “次へ” (Next)

See p.20 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

4 Click “OK”

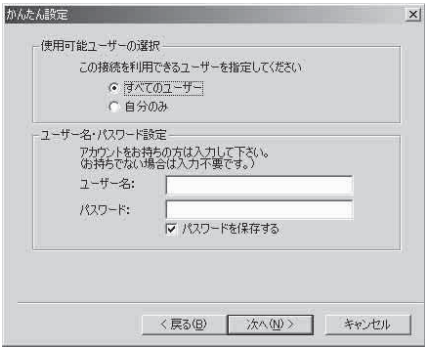
The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC. Wait for a while.

5 Enter the connection name, select the connection method (“PPP接続” (PPP connection)) and click “次へ” (Next)



You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection name) column.
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | ” (half-pitch only).
Select the connection method in the “接続方式” (Connection method) column.
mopera U supports both “PPP接続” (PPP connection) and “IP接続” (IP connection).
mopera supports “PPP接続” (PPP connection) only. Note that this FOMA terminal does not support IP connection.
Select “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify caller ID) for the caller ID settings.

6 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

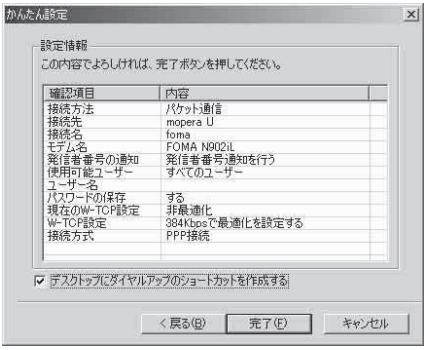


You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.
When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

7 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next)

Optimize “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) required for “Packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear.

8 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)



The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).

9 Click “OK”

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click “はい” (Yes).
Execute communication.→p.24

Easy settings: “Settings for Packet communication using other providers”

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “パケット通信” (Packet communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Click “OK”

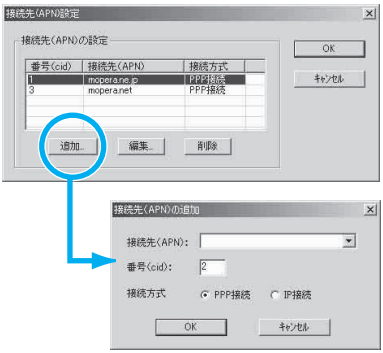
The access point (APN) settings will be obtained from the FOMA terminal which is connected to the PC.
Wait for a while.

5 Specify the packet communication settings



After the terminal setting is completely acquired, the screen “パケット通信設定” (Packet communication setting) appears.
Enter any name in “接続名” (Connection name).
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | ” (half-pitch only).
Select whether to notify the caller ID for dial-up connection.
APN:mopera.net is specified for the mopera U connection and APN:mopera.ne.jp for the mopera connection by default in “接続先（APN）の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).
For the caller ID settings, follow the instructions from the provider.

6 Click “接続先（APN）設定” (Specify the access point (APN))



As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.
Open the “接続先（APN）の追加” (Add the access point (APN)) screen by clicking the “追加” (Add) button, select the connection method, specify an access point name that supports FOMA packet communication and click “OK”.
The “接続先（APN）設定” (Specify the access point (APN)) screen reappears.
Half-pitch alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) and dots (.) can only be entered for the access point.

7 Select the Access point (APN) and click “OK”

The screen of Step 5 reappears.
The access point (APN) entered in Step 6 is displayed on “接続先（APN）の選択” (Select the access point (APN)).

8 Confirm the Access point (APN) on “接続先（APN）の選択” (Select the access point (APN)) and click “次へ” (Next)

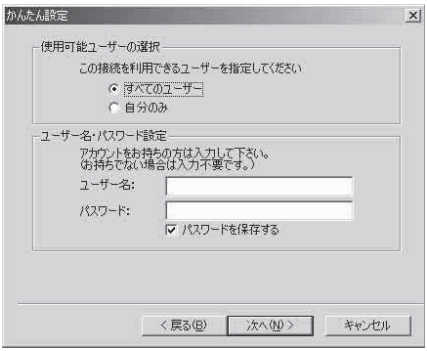
To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for “IP address” and “Name server”. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

9 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.

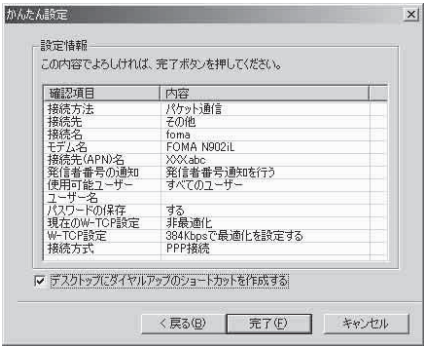


10 Check “最適化を行う” (Optimize the setting) and click “次へ” (Next)

Optimize “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) required for “Packet communication”. If they are already optimized, this screen does not appear. Proceed to Step 11.

11 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



12 Click “OK”

You need to restart the PC to enable the changes in the settings. If the restart selection screen appears, click “はい” (Yes).
Execute communication.→p.24

Easy settings: “Settings for 64K data communication using mopera U or mopera”

- This section explains how to specify settings for 64K data communication at 64kbps. The DoCoMo Internet connection service “mopera U” or “mopera” will be used as a provider.
- 64K Data Communication: The charges are based on the amount of time you connected. With stable 64kbps communication speed, comfortable Internet access can be realized.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if 64K data communication is used for a long time.

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

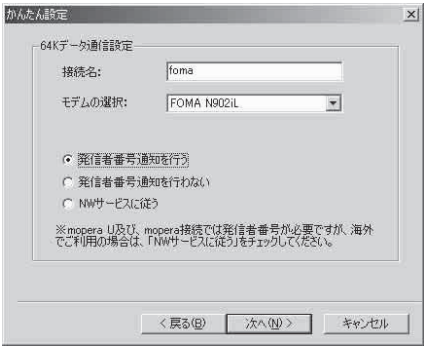
2 Select “64Kデータ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “『mopera U』への接続” (mopera U access) or “『mopera』への接続” (mopera access) and click “次へ” (Next)

See p.23 if you use a provider other than mopera U or mopera.

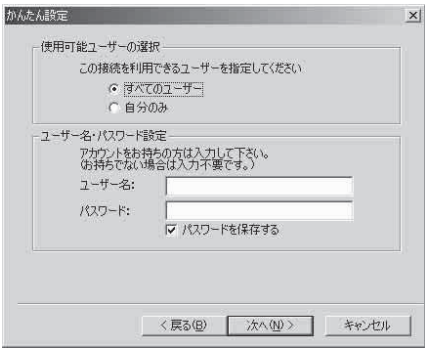
4 Enter the access point name and select the modem, and click “次へ” (Next)

The “64Kデータ通信設定” (64K data communication setting) screen appears. You can specify the name of the connection. Enter a name easy to recognize in the “接続名” (Connection name) column.
You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | ” (half-pitch only).
When using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), confirm that modem name is set to “FOMA N902iL”.
Select “発信者番号通知を行う” (Notify caller ID) for the caller ID settings.



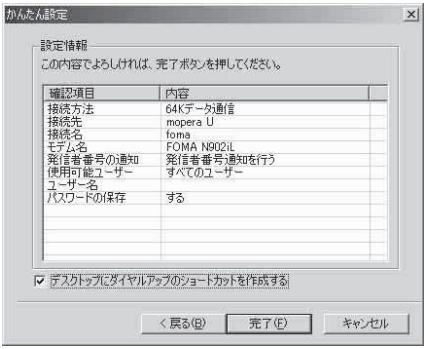
5 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection.
When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.



6 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”

Execute communication. →p.24

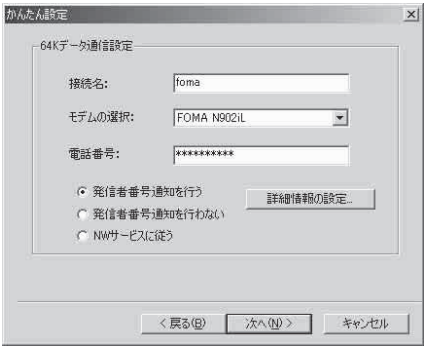
Easy settings: “Settings for 64K data communication using other providers”

1 Click “かんたん設定” (Easy settings)

2 Select “64Kデータ通信” (64K data communication) and click “次へ” (Next)

3 Select “その他” (Other) and click “次へ” (Next)

4 Enter the dial-up information and click “次へ” (Next)



Register the following items in order to connect to a service provider with ISDN synchronous 64K access points other than mopera U or mopera when creating a dial-up;

- “接続名” (Connection name) (optional)
- “モデムの選択” (Modem Selection) (FOMA N902iL)
- “電話番号” (Phone number)
- Notifying or not notifying the caller ID for dial-up connection

You cannot use the following reserved characters: ¥/: * ?!<> | ” (half-pitch only).

Enter the correct information according to the provider information. Enter the correct, case-sensitive phone number in half-pitch.
For the caller ID settings, follow the instructions from the provider.

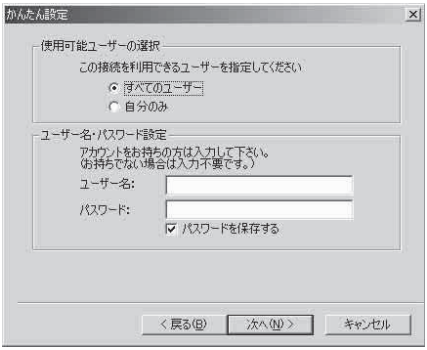
To specify advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

Clicking “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) displays the setup screen for “IP address” and “Name server”. If they must be input as the provider or corporate LAN information, follow the input information directions and enter the addresses.

5 Specify a user name and password, select the accessible user and click “次へ” (Next)

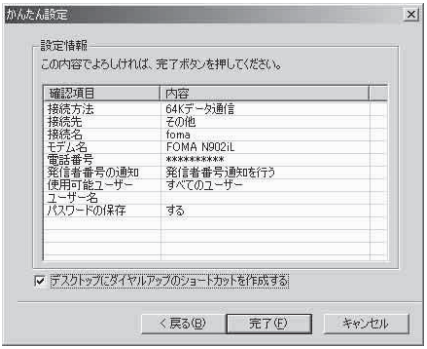
When “すべてのユーザー” (All users) is selected in the “使用可能ユーザーの選択” (Selecting accessible user) column, the connection setting is applied to all the users registered in Windows.

When setting the user name and password, input the correct, case-sensitive data provided by the service provider.



6 Check the setting information and click “完了” (Finish)

The contents of the settings are listed. Make sure that all settings are correct.
Checking “デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する” (Add dial-up shortcut on desktop) automatically creates a shortcut icon.
To change any setting, click “戻る” (Back).



7 Click “OK”

Execute communication. →p.24

Executing Set Data Communication

1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



If the connection icon does not appear on the desktop, use the following procedure:

Windows XP

Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connection) → Open the access point

Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and dialup connection) → Open the access point

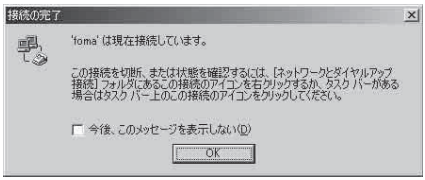
2 Click “ダイヤル” (Dial) and execute access operation

You can leave user name and password blank for the mopera U or mopera connection. If you select an Internet service provider other than mopera U, mopera or you use dial-up connection, enter the “ユーザー名” (User name) and “パスワード” (Password) and click “ダイヤル” (Dial).
Check “パスワードを保存する” (Save the password) to skip entry of the password at subsequent connections.



3 Check that the line is connected properly, and click “OK”

Normally, this screen appears when the dial-up connection is made.
This “接続” (Connection) message does not appear if it has been set to be disabled.



- During packet communication, a different icon appears on the FOMA terminal depending on the communication conditions.



(Communicating, sending data)
(Communicating, receiving data)
(Communicating, no data transfer)
(Sending, or disconnecting)
(Receiving, or disconnecting)

- “ ” appears on the FOMA terminal during 64K data communication.



NOTE

- When executing data communication by using the FOMA USB Cable (optional), dialing from the dial-up icon is only valid for the FOMA terminal used when the icon is created.
  Therefore, to connect to another FOMA terminal, the communication setting file (drivers) must be installed again.

How to disconnect

Since just closing the browser on your PC may not disconnect, be sure to disconnect by the following procedure:

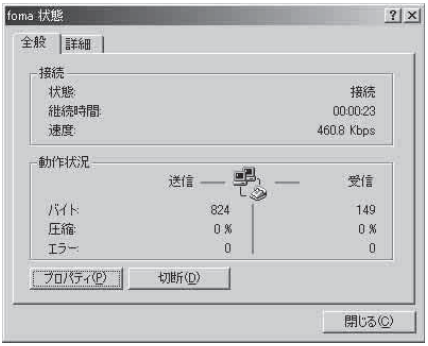
1 Double-click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connecting screen appears.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)



NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

When this happens

- Check the followings if you cannot connect to the network or dial-up successfully.

Problem	Points to check
“FOMA N902iL” is not recognized by the PC.	· Check if your PC satisfies the required operational environment (p.3). · Check if the N902iL communication setting file (drivers) is installed. · Check if the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC and the power is turned on. · Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected. · Check if the USB mode setting (p.5) is set to “Communication mode”.
Unable to connect with the access point.	· Check if the settings for the ID (user name) and password are correct. · Check if the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is firmly connected. · If the access point requires the Caller ID, make sure that “184” is not added to the phone number. · Check if the box of “フロー制御を使う” (Use the flow control) of the modem property is checked. · Check if the APN is set correctly. · If you still cannot connect to the other end after checking the above, consult with the Internet service provider or network administrator about the setting method.

W-TCP Settings

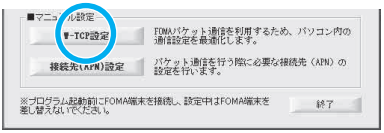
“W-TCP settings” is a “TCP parameter setup tool” to optimize the transmission capability of TCP/IP when “Packet communication” is carried out on the FOMA network. The communication settings by this software are required to make the most of communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

Setting up and canceling optimization

<For Windows XP>
Optimization settings for each dial-up are possible for Windows XP.

1 Start the program

(1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC設定ソフト” (FOMA PC setting software)
Click “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



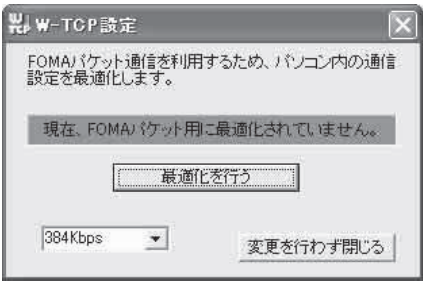
(2) If you are operating from the task-tray
Click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located at the bottom-right of the desktop to start the program.



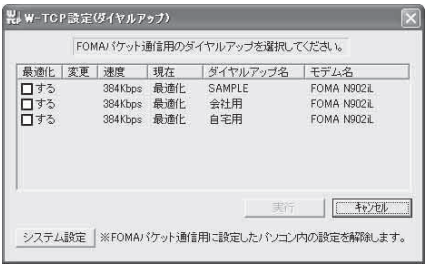
2 Proceed with the following

Close all the programs open and follow the screen instructions to restart the PC. The optimized system settings become valid after the restart.

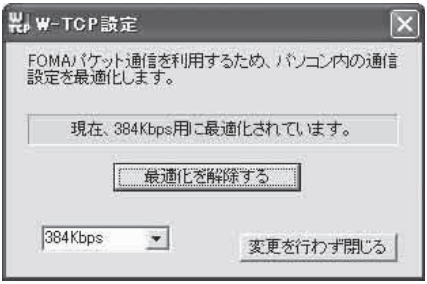
(1) If the system settings have not been optimized
Select “384Kbps” and click “最適化を行う” (Optimize).
“W-TCP設定（ダイヤルアップ）” (W-TCP settings (dial-up)) screen appears. If you select the dial-up to be optimized and click “実行” (Execute), system and dial-up settings will each be optimized.



(2) If the system settings have been optimized
“W-TCP 設定（ダイヤルアップ）” (W-TCP settings (dial-up)) screen appears.
Change the settings if necessary.



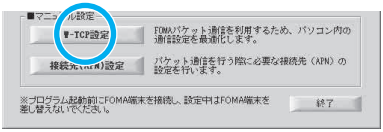
(3) To cancel optimization
Uncheck the dial-up which you want to cancel optimization, and click “システム設定” (System settings).
Click “はい” (Yes) on the confirmation screen and click “OK”. “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen appears.
Click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization).



<For Windows 2000>

1 Start the program

(1) If you are operating from “FOMA PC設定ソフト”(FOMA PC setting software)
Click “W-TCP設定” (W-TCP settings) of “マニュアル設定” (Manual setup) after starting the program.



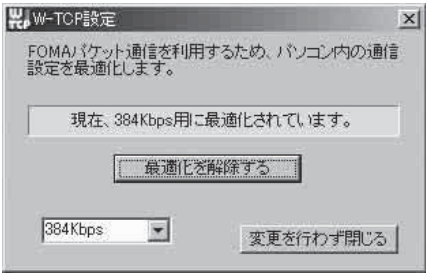
(2) If you are operating from the task-tray
Click the “W-TCP icon” in the task-tray located on the bottom-right of the desktop to start the program.

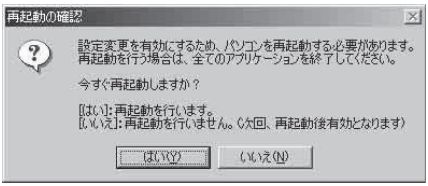


2 Proceed with the following

(1) If the system settings have not been optimized
Select “384Kbps” and click “最適化を行う” (Optimize) on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen.
Close all the programs open and restart the PC to enable the optimized settings.

(2) If the system settings have been optimized
A message saying “現在、384Kbps用に最適化されています。” (Already optimized for 384Kbps) appears on the “W-TCP 設定” (W-TCP settings) screen.
When canceling the optimization settings to execute communication via a device other than a FOMA terminal, click “最適化を解除する” (Cancel optimization). Close all the programs open and restart the PC to enable the cancellation of the optimization.



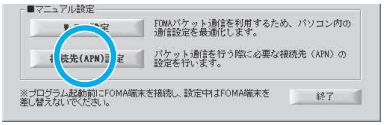


Access Point Name (APN) Settings

Set up the access point (APN) for packet communication. You can set up to 10 destinations and administer them by registering them into cid (Registration Numbers) 1 through 10.

- As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.

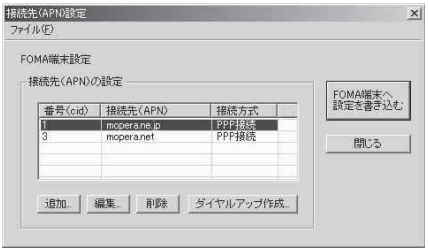
1 After starting “FOMA PC setting software”, click “接続先（APN）設定” (Set up Access point (APN))



2 Click “OK” on the FOMA terminal settings acquisition screen

Automatically accesses the connected FOMA terminal and reads the registered Access point (APN) information.
It does not start if no FOMA terminal is connected.

3 Set up the access point (APN)



Adding/Editing/Deleting the Access point (APN)

- **To add an access point (APN)**
  Click “追加” (Add) on the “接続先（APN）設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
- **To edit a registered access point (APN)**
  Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “編集” (Edit) on the “接続先（APN）設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
- **To delete a registered access point (APN)**
  Select the applicable access point (APN) from the list and click “削除” (Delete) on the “接続先（APN）設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen.
  You cannot delete the access point assigned to cid1 and cid3 (Even if you select cid3 and click “削除” (Delete), the access point is not deleted and remains “mopera.net”).

Saving in File

If you want to back up the access point (APN) settings registered on the FOMA terminal and/or save the access point (APN) settings being edited, you can save the access point (APN) settings by setting from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Reading from File

If you want to edit the saved access point (APN) settings and/or write into the FOMA terminal, you can read the access point (APN) settings saved on the PC by operating from the “ファイル” (File) menu of the toolbar.

Writing Access point (APN) information into FOMA terminal

Clicking “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write settings into FOMA terminal) on the “接続先（APN）設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen allows you to write the displayed access point (APN) settings into the FOMA terminal.

Dial-up creating function

Select the added/edited access point (APN) on the “接続先（APN）設定” (Set up Access point (APN)) screen and click “ダイヤルアップ作成” (Create dial-up).

When the screen for writing into the FOMA terminal appears, click “はい” (Yes). After finishing writing into the FOMA terminal, the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) appears.

Enter any connection name you want and click “アカウント･パスワードの設定” (Set up Account/Password). Enter the user name and password, select an accessible user, then click “OK”. You can leave the user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera.

If your provider has given you instructions for setting IP and DNS information, click “詳細情報の設定” (Detailed settings) on the “パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成” (Create dial-up for packet communication) screen, register necessary information and click “OK”.

After entering the settings, click “FOMA端末へ設定を書き込む” (Write settings into FOMA terminal), confirm overwriting and start writing.

NOTE

- The APN settings (the access point for FOMA packet communication) are stored in the FOMA terminal. Therefore, the APN must be registered again if you connect to another FOMA terminal.
- When continuously using the dial-up setting created on the PC, register the same APN setting (cid setting) number with the FOMA terminal.

Setting up Dial-up Network

This section describes how to set up a dial-up connection for packet communication / 64K data communication without using the FOMA PC setting software. The flow of operation is described below.

- It is unnecessary to set up the dial-up network for 64K data communication. Go on to “Setting up Dial-up” (p.37).

About AT commands

- AT commands are commands for modem control. The FOMA terminal complies AT commands and supports some enhanced commands and its own AT commands.
- Entering an AT command allows you to set or confirm (display) the detail settings and the contents of the settings for the “Data communication” and FOMA terminal.

Checking the COM port

- To set up the access point (APN), you need to specify the COM port number assigned to “FOMA N902iL” (Modem) built in after installing the N902iL communication setting file (drivers). This section describes how to confirm the COM port number. The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.33).

Preparation

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

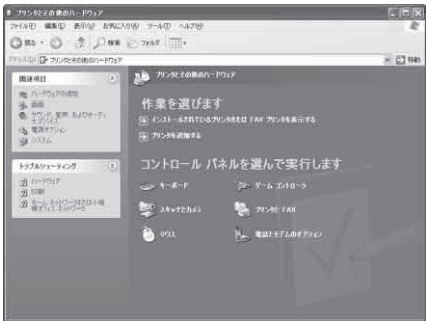
2 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to your PC

● To check the COM port on Windows XP

1 **Open “スタート”(Start)→“コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)**



2 **Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) from “プリンタとその他のハードウェア” (Printers and other hardware) in Control Panel**



3 **If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen is displayed, enter “市外局番／エリアコード” (Area code) and click “OK”**

4 **Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N902iL” and click “OK”**

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.33).

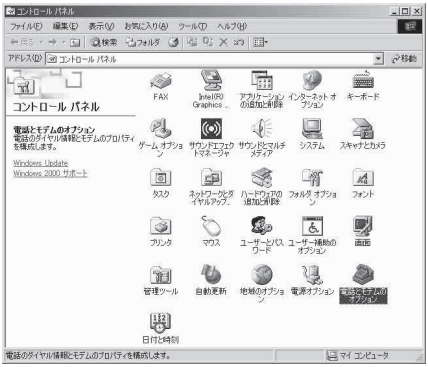
The contents displayed on the screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



● To check the COM port on Windows 2000

1 **Open “スタート” (Start) → “設定” (Settings) → “コントロールパネル” (Control Panel)**

2 **Open “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and modem options) in Control Panel**



3 **If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”**

4 **Click the “モデム” (Modem) tab to confirm the COM port of the “接続先” (Access point) column of “FOMA N902iL” and click “OK”**

The COM port confirmed here will be used in the access point (APN) set up (p.33).

The contents displayed on the screen and the COM port number differ depending on the PC.



Setting up the access point (APN)

Default setting	cid1：mopera.ne.jp　cid3：mopera.net　cid2, 4 to 10：not set

Communication software to enter AT commands is required for the settings. This section describes how to set it up using “Hyper terminal” that comes with Windows.

Access points <APN/cid>

- Normal telephone numbers are not used for access points for packet communication unlike 64K data communication. Set up APN instead of a telephone number for connection.
- The APN setting is just like registering a Phonebook for packet communication from a PC. Assign registration number (cid) 1 through 10 to register, which is used as a part of the access point number. As the APN of mopera “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to cid1 and APN of mopera U “mopera.net” to cid3 by default, assign the APN to cid2 or between cid4 to cid10.*1
- APN is administered by “cid (administration numbers 1 through 10)”. Specifying “＊99＊＊＊<cid number>＃” as the access point number enables the connection to the access point with the cid number.
- Specifying “＊99＊＊＊1＃” as the access point number for the mopera connection or “＊99＊＊＊3＃” for the mopera U connection enables you to use mopera or mopera U easily.*2
- The APN setting registers the access point to the FOMA terminal just like registering other parties’ information (telephone number, etc.) on a mobile phone. The following are comparisons with the Phonebook of the mobile phone:

		APN setting	Phonebook of mobile phone
Data to be registered		APN	Phone number
		cid	Memory number of Phonebook
		—	Other party’s name
How to register	Register using PC	○ (FOMA PC setting software, etc.)	○ (Dedicated software required)
	Register using Mobile phone	× (Cannot even confirm)	○
How to use		Specify cid to connect	Look up Phonebook to call
		—	Enter the telephone number directly from the dial key on the FOMA terminal to call.

- Registered cid will be connection numbers in the dialup connection settings.
- Contact your Internet service provider or network administrator for an access point (APN) other than mopera U or mopera.

*1： Set up the APN setting for the access point (Internet service provider) on the FOMA terminal in advance instead of entering APN in the Telephone Number column of “ダイヤルアップネットワーク” (Dial-up Network) for connection.

*2： To connect to other Internet service providers, set the APN and assign it to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

<Example: For Windows XP>

1 Connect the FOMA USB Cable (optional) to the FOMA terminal

2 Turn on the FOMA terminal, then connect the FOMA USB Cable connected to the FOMA terminal to the PC

3 Click “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal) to start Hyper terminal

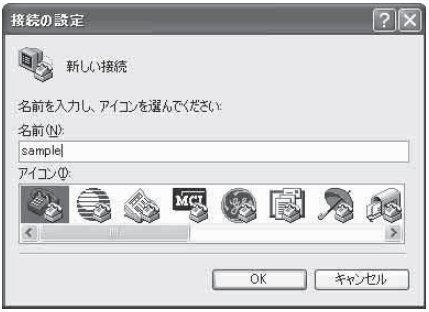
For Windows 2000

Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ハイパーターミナル” (Hyper terminal).

4 Select the “今後、このメッセージを表示しない” (Do not display this message again) checkbox and then click “はい” (Yes)

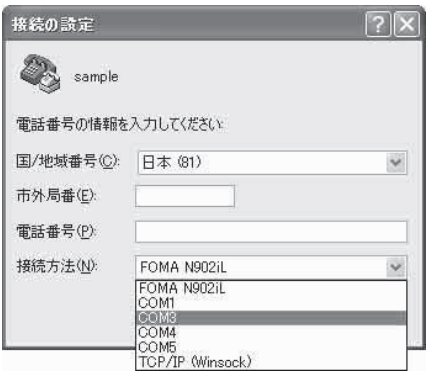
5 Enter any name in the “名前” (Name) column and click “OK”

“sample” is entered here as an example.



6 Select “FOMA N902iL” from “接続方法” (Connection method), and click “OK”

Click “キャンセル” (Cancel) after the connection screen appears.



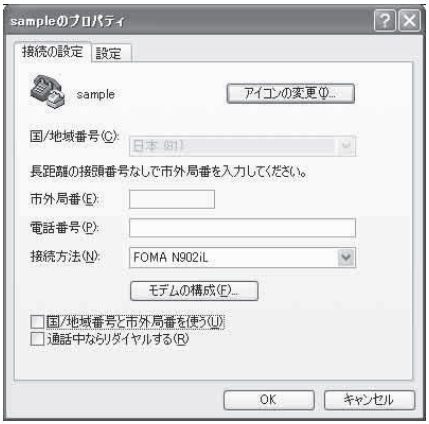
If a COM port of “FOMA N902iL” can be selected

When Properties of the COM port is displayed, click “OK”.
In this example, “COM3” is selected. See “Checking the COM port” (p.30) to confirm the actual COM port number of “FOMA N902iL” to be selected in “接続方法” (Connection method).

If a COM port of “FOMA N902iL” cannot be selected

Click “キャンセル” (Cancel) to close the “接続の設定” (Connection Settings) screen and then follow the steps below:

(1) Select “ファイル” (File) menu → “プロパティ” (Properties)
(2) Select “FOMA N902iL” in the “接続方法” (Connection method) column of the “接続の設定” (Connection Settings) tab on the “sampleのプロパティ” (sample Properties) screen
(3) Uncheck “国/地域番号と市外局番を使う” (Use the Country/Region Code and Area Code)
(4) Click “OK”



7 Enter the access point (APN) and press ↵



Enter in the format of AT+CGDCONT=<cid>, “PPP”, “APN”

<cid>： Enter any number from 2 or between 4 and 10.

Please be cautious because if cid has been already set, the setting will be overwritten.

“PPP”： Enter “PPP” as it is.

“APN”： Put “ ” around the access point (APN) to enter.

If “OK” is displayed, the settings for the access point (APN) are completed.

Example: To enter APN named XXX.abc in cid Number2

Enter AT+CGDCONT=2,“PPP”,“XXX.abc” ↵.

8 Confirm that “OK” appears and click “ハイパーターミナルの終了” (Close Hyper terminal) in the “ファイル” (File) menu

““sample”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか？” (Are you going to save the connection “sample”?) appears, but it is not necessary to save.

NOTE

- The AT commands entered in “Hyper terminal” may not be displayed after Step 7 on p.35. In this case, if you enter ATE1 ↵, AT commands you enter from then on are displayed.
- To reset the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
  - If reset, the access point (APN) setting with cid=1 will return to “mopera.ne.jp” (Default value) and cid=3 to “mopera.net” (Default value), and cid=2, 4 through 10 will be unregistered.

  <How to enter>

  AT+CGDCONT= ↵ (to reset all cid)

  AT+CGDCONT=〈cid〉 ↵ (to reset a certain cid only)
- To confirm the access point (APN) settings using the AT command
  - Display the current settings.

  <How to enter>

  AT+CGDCONT? ↵

Notifying or Not notifying the Caller ID

- You can set whether to notify the other person of your caller ID when packet communication is carried out. Since the caller ID is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.
- You can set up the Notify or not notify Caller ID setting using the AT command prior to a dial-up connection.
- Use the ＊DGPIR command (p.46) to notify or not notify the caller ID or change back to “Not set” (Default value).

1 Start “Hyper terminal”

2 Set up Notify (186) or Not notify (184) Caller ID for packet communication



Enter in the format of “AT ＊DGPIR=*n*”.

To automatically attach 184 (Not notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT ＊DGPIR=1 ↵

To automatically attach 186 (Notify) for dialing an outgoing call/answering an incoming call

Enter the following:

AT ＊DGPIR=2 ↵

❸ Confirm that “OK” appears and click “ハイパーターミナルの終了” (Close Hyper terminal) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



NOTE

● The Caller ID needs to be set to “Notify” to use DoCoMo’s internet connection service mopera U or mopera.

About 186 (Notify)/184 (Not notify) in Dial-up Network

You can attach 186/184 to the access point number in the Dial-up network settings as well.
The following table shows what happens if you set 186/184 both for the ＊DGPIR command and the Dial-up network setting.

Dial-up network setting (for cid=1)	Notify/Not notify setting by ＊DGPIR command	Notify/Not notify Caller ID
＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Notify
	Not notify	Not notify
	Notify	Notify
184＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Not notify (Dial-up network notification 184 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	
186＊99＊＊＊1#	Not set	Notify (Dial-up network notification 186 has the priority)
	Not notify	
	Notify	

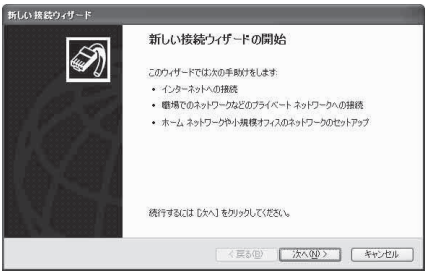
Setting up Dial-up

- This section takes accessing mopera U by packet communication for example.
- To connect using packet communication, enter “＊99＊＊＊3#” as the number of access point for mopera U or “＊99＊＊＊1#” for mopera. To connect using 64K data communication, enter “＊8701” as the number of access point for mopera U or “＊9601” for mopera.

Setting up dial-up on Windows XP

1 **Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “新しい接続ウィザード” (New connection wizard)**

2 **When the “新しい接続ウィザード” (New Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)**



3 **Select “インターネットに接続する” (Connect to the Internet) and click “次へ” (Next)**

4 **Select “接続を手動でセットアップする” (Set up the connection manually) and click “次へ” (Next)**

5 **Select “ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する” (Connect using a dial-up modem) and click “次へ” (Next)**

6 **If the “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears, select only “モデム－FOMA N902iL (COMx)” (Modem－FOMA N902iL (COMx)), and click “次へ” (Next)**

The “デバイスの選択” (Select the device) screen appears only if there are multiple modems.
(COMx) is a number of COM port displayed in “Checking the COM port” (p.30).



7 Enter any name you want in the “ISP名” (ISP Name) and click “次へ” (Next)



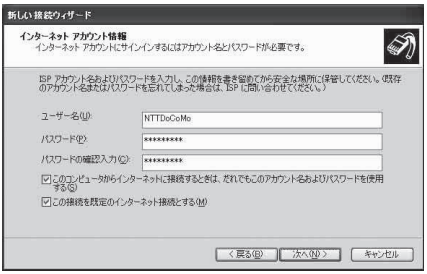
8 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone Number) column and click “次へ” (Next)

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



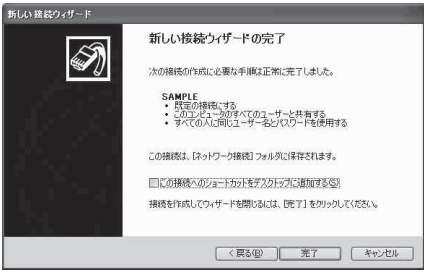
9 Click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the provider or network administrator in the “ユーザー名” (User Name), “パスワード” (Password) and “パスワードの確認入力” (Confirm Password) columns as this screen.



10 Click “完了” (Finish)

The newly created connection wizard appears.



11 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

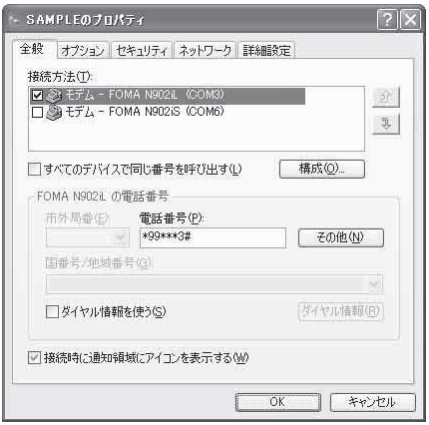
12 Select the icon created for the dial-up and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu



13 Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only “モデム－FOMA N902iL” (Modem - FOMA N902iL) is checked in the “接続方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.
Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If it is checked, uncheck it.

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



14 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Select “インターネットプロトコル（TCP/IP）” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) in the “この接続は次の項目を使用します” (Use the following items for this connection). Since the setting of “QoSパケットスケジューラ” (QoS Packet Scheduler) cannot be changed, leave it as it is.



15 Click “設定” (Settings)

16 Clear all the boxes and click “OK”



17 When the Step 14 screen reappears, click “OK”

Setting up dial-up on Windows 2000

1 **Open “スタート” (Start) → “プログラム” (Programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続” (Network and Dial-up connections)**

2 **Double-click “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) in Network and Dial-up Connections**



3 **If the “所在地情報” (Address information) screen appears, enter “市外局番” (Area Code) and click “OK”**

The “所在地情報” (Address Information) screen appears only when “新しい接続の作成” (Create a new connection) is started for the first time in Step 2.
This screen does not appear from the second time on, but the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen does instead, proceed to Step 5.

4 **When the “電話とモデムのオプション” (Telephone and Modem options) screen appears, click “OK”**

5 **When the “ネットワークの接続ウィザード” (Network Connection Wizard) screen appears, click “次へ” (Next)**

6 **Select “インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する” (Connect to the Internet via dial-up) and click “次へ” (Next)**

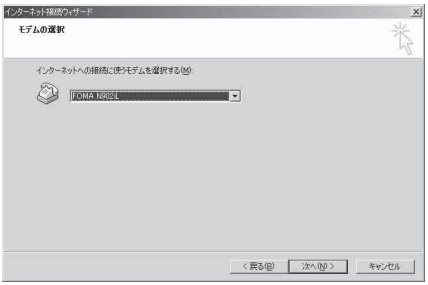
7 **Select “インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク(LAN)を使って接続します” (Set up an internet connection manually or connect using Local Area Network (LAN)) and click “次へ” (Next)**

8 **Select “電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します” (Connect to the internet using a telephone line and a modem) and click “次へ” (Next)**

9 **Confirm that the “インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する” (Select the modem used to connect to the internet) has “FOMA N902iL” and click “次へ” (Next)**

If “FOMA N902iL” is not selected, select “FOMA N902iL”.

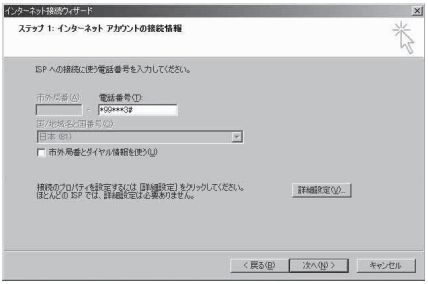
If no other modem than “FOMA N902iL” has been installed, this screen does not appear.



10 Enter the number of the access point in the “電話番号” (Telephone number) column and click “詳細設定” (Advanced settings)

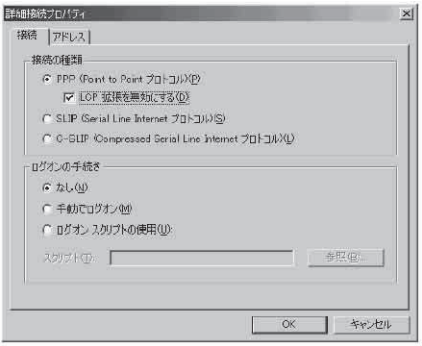
Uncheck “市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Area Code and Dial information).

This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



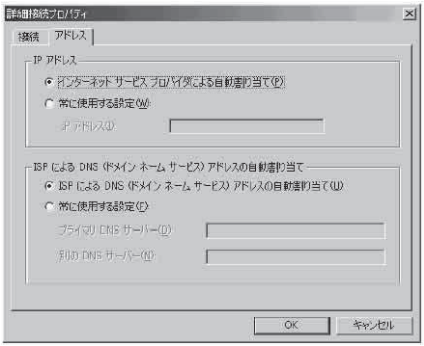
11 Set up the “接続” (Connection) tab as shown on the right and click the “アドレス” (Address) tab

To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “接続の種類” (Connection Type) and “ログオンの手続き” (Logon Procedure).



12 Set up the IP address and DNS (Domain Name Service) address on the “アドレス” (Address) tab as shown on the right and click “OK”

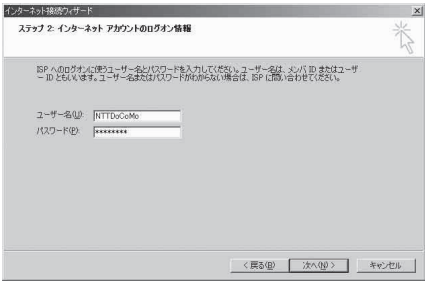
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “IPアドレス” (IP address) and “ISPによるDNS（ドメインネームサービス）アドレスの自動割り当て” (Automatically assign DNS (Domain Name Service) by ISP).



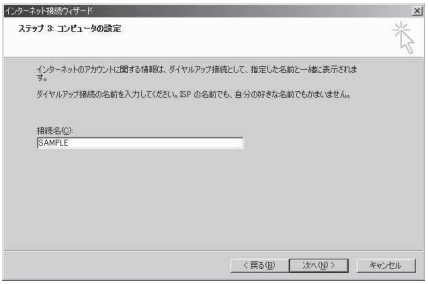
13 When the screen returns to Step 10, click “次へ” (Next)

14 Click “次へ” (Next)

You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.
To connect to any other provider than mopera U or mopera, enter exact information specified by the Internet service provider or network administrator in “ユーザー名” (User Name) and “パスワード” (Password) columns as this screen.



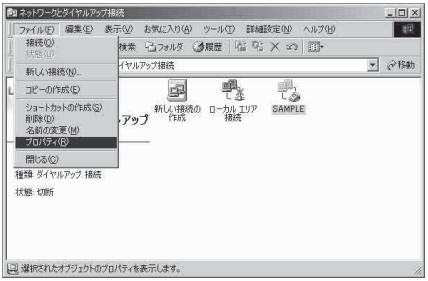
15 Enter any name you want in the “接続名” (Connection name) and click “次へ” (Next)



16 Select “いいえ” (No) and click “次へ” (Next)

17 Click “完了” (Finish)

18 Select the icon created for the dial-up and open “プロパティ” (Properties) in the “ファイル” (File) menu

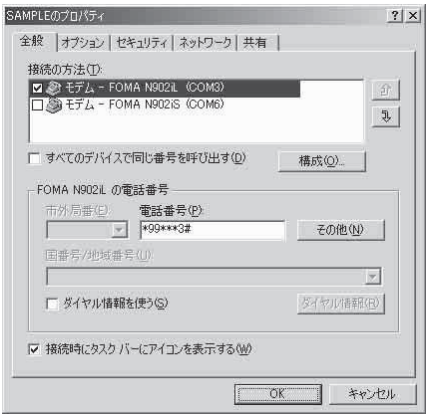


19 Confirm the settings on the “全般” (General) tab

If two or more modems are connected to the PC, confirm that only “モデム－FOMA N902iL” (Modem - FOMA N902iL) is checked in the “接続の方法” (Connection method) column. If not, check it.

Confirm that “ダイヤル情報を使う” (Use Dial Information) is unchecked. If not, uncheck it.

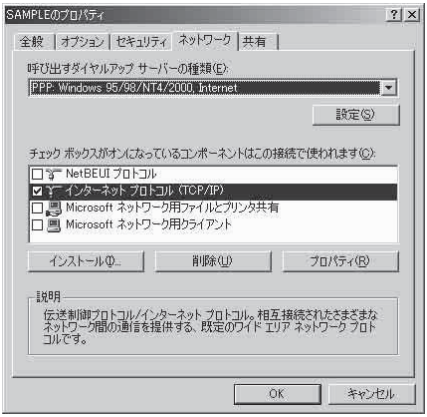
This screen is an example of accessing mopera U by packet communication.



20 Click the “ネットワーク” (Network) tab and set up each setting

Select “PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet” in the “呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類” (Type of the dial-up server to call).

Check only “インターネットプロトコル（TCP/IP）” (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) for components.



21 Click “設定” (Settings)

22 Clear all the boxes and click “OK”



23 When the Step 20 screen reappears, click “OK”

Running dial-up connection

This section describes how to make a dial-up connection for packet communication by using the dial-up setting.

<Example: For Windows XP>

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC with the FOMA USB Cable (optional)

“Connecting the devices”→p.5

2 Open “スタート” (Start) → “すべてのプログラム” (All programs) → “アクセサリ” (Accessories) → “通信” (Communication) → “ネットワーク接続” (Network connections)

3 Open Access point

Select the dial-up access point icon with the ISP name set in Step 7 on p.38 to select “ネットワークタスク” (Network task) → “この接続を開始する” (Start this connection) or double-click the icon of the access point.



4 Confirm the settings and click “ダイヤル” (Dial)

This screen is an example for mopera U connection. You can leave user name and password blank for mopera U or mopera connection.



<The Connecting screen appears>

While this screen appears, the log-on process such as confirmation of the user name and password is performed.



<Completion of the connection>

When the connection is complete, a message appears from the indicator of the taskbar located on the bottom-right of the desktop for a few seconds.
You can start browser software to view sites and websites or to use e-mail.
If this message does not appear, check “Setting up Dial-up Network” (p.30) and “Setting up Dial-up” (p.37).
See p.25 for communication conditions.



How to disconnect

Just closing the Internet browser may not disconnect the communication line. Follow the instructions below to disconnect for sure. This section describes an example using Windows XP.

1 Click the dial-up icon in the task-tray

The connection condition screen for Internet will be displayed.



Dial-up icon

2 Click “切断” (Disconnect)

NOTE

- The communication speed displayed on the PC may be different from the actual communication speed.

AT Command List

AT commands available on FOMA terminal

● The following abbreviations are used in the AT command list;
[&F] : Command of which setting is initialized by AT&F command.
[&W] : Command of which setting is saved by AT&W command. The setting can be retrieved by ATZ command.

Modem port command list

The followings are the usable commands for “FOMA N902iL (モデム)” (modem):

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
A/	Executes the last executed command again. No carriage return is necessary.	—	A/ OK
AT	—	The modem function of a FOMA terminal is controllable by adding the command of this table after this command. * OK is answered even when only AT is entered.	AT OK
AT%V	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT%V Ver1.00 OK
AT&C*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects the operating condition of the circuit CD signal to DTE.	*n*=0 : CD is always ON. *n*=1 : CD changes according to the carrier of the other party's modem (initial value).	AT&C1 OK
AT&D*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects the operation to take place when the circuit ER signal received from DTE transits between ON and OFF.	*n*=0 : Ignores ER status (always assumed to be ON). *n*=1 : When ER changes from ON to OFF, it becomes an on-line command status. *n*=2 : If ER changes from ON to OFF, a connection is disconnected and it will be in an off-line command status (initial value).	AT&D1 OK
AT&E*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects how to display the connection speed.	*n*=0 : Displays the wireless network transmission speed. *n*=1 : Displays the DTE serial transmission speed (initial value).	AT&E0 OK
AT&F*n*	Restores all of registers to their defaults. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	Only *n*=0 can be specified (can be omitted).	(At the time of off-line mode) AT&F OK AT&F? ERROR AT&F=? ERROR (At the time of on-line command mode) AT&F NO CARRIER (Change to off-line mode)
AT&S*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets the Data Set Ready signal to be output to DTE.	*n*=0 : DR is always ON (initial value). *n*=1 : DR signal is ON when the line is connected (when the communication call is established).	AT&S0 OK
AT&W*n*	Stores the current settings.	Only *n*=0 can be specified (can be omitted).	AT&W0 OK AT&W OK AT&W? ERROR AT&W=? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT ＊ DANTE	Displays the FOMA terminal signal reception level.	0 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is displayed as out of area. 1 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 0 or 1 bar. 2 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 2 bars. 3 : FOMA terminal signal reception level is 3 bars.	AT ＊ DANTE ＊ DANTE:3 OK AT ＊ DANTE ＝ ? ＊ DANTE:(0-3) OK
AT ＊ DGANSM=*n*	Sets the reject/permit mode setting for the packet incoming call. This command is effective for those incoming packet calls after the setting command is input.	*n*= 0 : Disables the incoming call reject (AT ＊ DGARL)/permit setting (AT ＊ DGAPL) (initial value). *n*= 1 : Enables the incoming call reject setting. *n*= 2 : Enables the incoming call permit setting. AT ＊ DGANSM? : Displays the current setting.	AT ＊ DGANSM=0 OK AT ＊ DGANSM? ＊ DGANSM:0 OK
AT ＊ DGAPL=*n* [,cid]	Sets APN, which permits incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT	*n*= 0 : Adds the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call permission list. *n*= 1 : Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call permission list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT ＊ DGAPL? : Displays incoming call permission list.	AT ＊ DGAPL =0,1 OK AT ＊ DGAPL? ＊ DGAPL:1 OK AT ＊ DGAPL =1 OK AT ＊ DGAPL? OK
AT ＊ DGARL=*n* [,cid]	Sets APN, which rejects incoming packet calls, by using <cid> parameter defined by +CGDCONT	*n*= 0 : Adds the APN defined by <cid> to incoming call rejection list. *n*= 1 : Deletes the APN defined by <cid> from incoming call rejection list. If <cid> is omitted, this will apply to all cid. AT ＊ DGARL? : Displays incoming call rejection list.	AT ＊ DGARL =0,1 OK AT ＊ DGARL? ＊ DGARL:1 OK AT ＊ DGARL =1 OK AT ＊ DGARL? OK
AT ＊ DGPIR=*n*	This command validates the setting for notifying Caller ID when sending/ receiving packet communication. Even in the dial up network setting, you can also add 186 (notify) or 184 (not notify) to the access point number. (p.35)	*n*= 0 : Uses APN as it is (initial value). *n*= 1 : Uses APN by adding “184”. (Caller ID is always not sent.) *n*= 2 : Uses APN by adding “186”. (Caller ID is always sent.) AT ＊ DGPIR? : Displays the current setting.	AT ＊ DGPIR =0 OK AT ＊ DGPIR? ＊ DGPIR:0 OK
AT ＊ DRPW	Displays the indicator value of the receiving power of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT ＊ DRPW ＊ DRPW:0 OK AT ＊ DRPW=? ＊ DRPW:(0-75) OK
AT+CAOC	Inquires for the current charge.	—	AT+CAOC +CAOC:“000014” OK
AT+CBC	Displays the battery status of the FOMA terminal.	Result: +CBC:<bcs>,<bcl> bcs: 0 : FOMA terminal is powered by the battery. 1 : FOMA terminal is not powered by the battery. 2 : FOMA terminal is not connected to the battery. 3 : FOMA terminal is out of transmission due to the power-supply error. bcl: 0 : Battery has run out, or battery is not connected. 1-100 : Battery remained	AT+CBC +CBC:0,70 OK AT+CBC? ERROR AT+CBC=? +CBC:(0-3),(0-100) OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CBST [&F] [&W]	Changes the bearer service type.	Format: AT+CBST=<*n*>,1,0 *n*=116 : 64,000bps (bit transparent) (initial value) *n*=131 : 32,000bps (multimedia) *n*=134 : 64,000bps (multimedia)	AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK AT+CBST? +CBST:134,1,0 OK AT+CBST=? +CBST:(116,131,134),(1),(0) OK
AT+CEER	Displays the reason for disconnection of the previous call.	Result: +CEER:<report> report: List of disconnection reasons (p.58).	AT+CEER +CEER:36 OK
AT+CGDCONT	Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.	p.54	p.54
AT+CGEQMIN	Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.	p.54	p.54
AT+CGEQREQ	Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.	p.55	p.55
AT+CGMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGMR 12345xxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CGREG=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether to notify the network registration condition. The returned notification displays whether you are inside or out of service.	*n*=0 : Not informed (initial value). *n*=1 : Informed. Informed when switching between “Inside the service area” and “Outside the service area” is completed. AT+CGREG? : Displays the current setting. +CGREG: <*n*>, <stat> *n*: Set value stat : 0: Out of packet area 1: Within packet area 4: Unknown 5: Within packet area	AT+CGREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CGREG? +CGREG: 1,0 OK AT+CGREG=? +CGREG: (0,1) OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from “outside the service area” to “inside the service area”.) +CGREG:1
AT+CGSN	Displays the product number of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+CGSN 12345xxxxxxxxxx OK
AT+CLIP=*n* [&F] [&W]	Displays the other party’s Caller ID on a PC when a 64K data communication call is received.	*n*=0 : Not display the result (initial value) *n*=1 : Display the result AT+CLIP? : Displays the current setting. +CLIP:*n*,*m* *m*=0 : NW setting not notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. *m*=1 : NW setting notifying the other party of the Caller ID in outgoing call. *m*=2 : Unknown	AT+CLIP=0 OK AT+CLIP=? +CLIP:(0,1) OK (A call is received when +CLIP=1 is set) RING +CLIP: “090XXXXXXXX”,177, “123”,136

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CLIR=*n*	Sets whether or not to notify the other party of the phone number when originating a 64K data communication call.	*n*=0 : Complies to the CLIR service contract. *n*=1 : Not notify the other party of the caller's phone number. *n*=2 : Notify the other party of the caller's phone number (initial value). AT+CLIR? : Displays the current setting. +CLIR:*n*,*m* *m*=0 : CLIR is not started (Caller ID is always sent) *m*=1 : CLIR is started (Caller ID is always not sent) *m*=2 : Unknown *m*=3 : CLIR temporary mode (default is not notify) *m*=4 : CLIR temporary mode (default is notify)	AT+CLIR=0 OK AT+CLIR? +CLIR:0,1 OK AT+CLIR=? +CLIR:(0-2) OK
AT+CMEE=*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets whether the error report of the FOMA terminal is present.	*n*=0 : Use the ERROR result (initial value). *n*=1 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and a numeral value is used for <err>. *n*=2 : +CME ERROR:<err> result code is used, and characters are used for <err>. AT+CMEE? : Displays the current setting. The command displayed on the right is the execution example for cases when there is a FOMA terminal problem or a connection error. +CME ERROR result code is as follows. 1 : no connection to phone 10 : SIM not inserted 15 : SIM wrong 16 : incorrect password 100 : unknown	AT+CMEE=0 OK AT+CNUM ERROR AT+CMEE=1 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:10 AT+CMEE=2 OK AT+CNUM +CME ERROR:SIM not inserted
AT+CNUM	Displays the own number of the FOMA terminal.	Result: +CNUM:,<number>,<type> number: phone number type : 129 or 145 129 : International access code (+) is not included. 145 : International access code (+) is included.	AT+CNUM +CNUM:,"+8190XXXX XXXX",145 OK
AT+COPS	Selects the network operator to connect.	Format : AT+COPS=<mode>,2,<oper> mode=0 : automatic (searches the network and switches the network operator automatically) mode=1 : manual (connects to the network operator specified in <oper>) mode=2 : Disconnects the connection to the network operator mode=3 : Mapping is not performed. mode=4 : manual/automatic (if the connection to the network operator specified in <oper> fails, works as automatic mode.) <oper> is a hexadecimal value which consists of Country code (MCC) and Network code (MNC). The format is as follows: Digit 1 of MCC · · · octet 1 bits 1 to 4 Digit 2 of MCC · · · octet 1 bits 5 to 8 Digit 3 of MCC · · · octet 2 bits 1 to 4 Digit 3 of MNC · · · octet 2 bits 5 to 8 Digit 2 of MNC · · · octet 3 bits 5 to 8	AT+COPS=0 OK AT+COPS? +COPS:0 OK AT+COPS=? +COPS:(2,,,"44F001") ,,(0,1),(2) OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CPAS	Displays whether the control signal to the FOMA terminal is available or not.	Result: +CPAS: <pas> pas: 0 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal. 1 : FOMA terminal can not send/receive control signal. 2 : Unknown (control signal sending/ receiving is not assured). 3 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently receiving. 4 : FOMA terminal can send/receive control signal and it is currently communicating.	AT+CPAS +CPAS:0 OK AT+CPAS? ERROR AT+CPAS=? +CPAS:(0-4)
AT+CPIN	Enters the PIN code in the FOMA terminal.	Format: AT+CPIN="<pin>","<newpin>" This command is to enter the PIN1, PIN2, or PUK code - depending on the state of the result code returned when AT+CPIN? is entered - of the FOMA terminal. Even if PIN code entry or the PUK code is requested on the screen, depending on the state of the result code when AT+CPIN? is entered, you may not be able to use this command to enter the PIN. Do not use this command to change PIN code. Put <pin> and <newpin> in " ". AT+CPIN? result +CPIN：READY：PIN1 code, PIN2 code Cannot enter the PUK1 or PUK2 code +CPIN：SIM PIN：PIN1 entry standby +CPIN：SIM PIN2：PIN2 entry standby +CPIN：SIM PUK：PIN1 blocked (Can enter PUK1 code) +CPIN：SIM PUK2 : PIN2 blocked (Can enter PUK2 code) The command displayed on the right is an entry sample of PIN code "1234" and PUK code "12345678".	(The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: READY is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" ERROR (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PIN is answered when +CPIN? is entered) AT+CPIN="1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN1 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK (The status in which +CPIN: SIM PUK2 is answered when +CPIN? is entered: PIN2 lock status) AT+CPIN="12345678", "1234" OK AT+CPIN? +CPIN:READY OK AT+CPIN=? OK
AT+CR=*n* [&F] [&W]	When the line is connected, displays the bearer service type before the CONNECT result code is displayed.	*n*=0 : Not display (initial value). *n*=1 : Display. <serv> : Displays only "GPRS", which means packet communication. (Displaying "SYNC", "AV32K" or "AV64K" depending on the line type.) AT+CR?: ：Displays the current setting.	AT+CR =1 OK ATD＊99＊＊＊1# +CR : GPRS CONNECT

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+CRC=*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets whether to use the extended result code for the incoming call.	*n*=0 : Not use +CRING (initial value). *n*=1 : Use +CRING.<type>. Format of +CRING: +CRING：SYNC +CRING：AV64K ：GPRS “PPP” ,,, “<APN>” AT+CRC? ：Displays the current setting.	AT+CRC=0 OK AT+CRC? +CRC ：0 OK (PPPoverUD received) +CRING：SYNC (AV64K received) +CRING：AV64K (PPP packet received) +CRING：GPRS “PPP” ,,,” 〈APN〉”
AT+CREG=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result screen is present regarding the inside/outside the service area information display. ● This setting may not be available depending on the Operating System.	*n*=0 : Not informed (initial value). *n*=1 : Informed. Informed when switching between “Inside the service area” and “Outside the service area” is complete. AT+CREG? ：Displays the current setting. +CREG ：<*n*>,<stat> *n*: Set value stat: 0: Outside voice call area 1: Inside voice call area 4: Unknown 5: Inside voice call area	AT+CREG=1 OK (Set to informed) AT+CREG? +CREG ：1,0 OK (Outside the service area) (When you move from outside the service area to inside the service area.) +CREG ：1
AT+CUSD [&F] [&W]	Specifies or inquires for the network setting regarding the additional services.	Format: AT+CUSD=<*n*>,"<str>"[,0] *n*=0 : Does not send mid result <m>[<str>,<dcs>] (initial value) *n*=1 : Sends mid result <m>[<str>,<dcs>] Mid result: *m*=0 : The settings completed *m*=1 : The network requires the information. str : Only 0-9, #, ∗ can be entered. Enclose <str> with "" (double quotation mark).	AT+CUSD=0, "xxxxxxxxx" OK AT+CUSD=1," ∗ 148 ∗ 1 ∗ 0000#",0 +CUSD:0,"148 ∗ 7#",0 OK AT+CUSD? +CUSD:0 OK AT+CUSD =? +CUSD:(0,1) OK
AT+FCLASS=*n* [&F] [&W]	Sets the communication class supported by the FOMA terminal.	*n*=0 : data is only supported. (initial value)	AT+FCLASS=0 OK
AT+GCAP	Displays the supported area for the AT commands available for the FOMA terminal.	Result: +GCAP:<area>,<area>,<area> area： +CGSM : Some or all GSM commands are supported. +FCLASS : +FCLASS command is supported. +W : +W command is supported.	AT+GCAP +GCAP:+CGSM,+FCLASS,+W OK
AT+GMI	Displays the manufacturer name (NEC).	—	AT+GMI NEC OK
AT+GMM	Displays the FOMA terminal product name (FOMA N902iL).	—	AT+GMM FOMA N902iL OK
AT+GMR	Displays the version of the FOMA terminal.	—	AT+GMR Ver1.00 OK

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
AT+IFC=*n*,*m* [&F] [&W]	Selects the flow control method.	*n* : DCE by DTE *m* : DTE by DCE 0 : No flow control 1 : XON/XOFF flow control. 2 : RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. initial value: *n*,*m* =2, 2 AT+IFC?: Displays the current setting.	AT+IFC=2,2 OK AT+IFC? +IFC : 2,2 OK AT+IFC=? +IFC : (0,1,2) ,(0,1,2) OK
AT+WS46=*n* [&F] [&W]	Displays the wireless communication network of the FOMA terminal.	*n*= 22 : Only W-CDMA (Wideband CDMA) can be specified (initial value).	AT+WS46=22 OK
AT¥S	Displays the contents of commands and S registers currently set.	—	AT¥S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 ¥V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001 OK
AT¥V*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects the response code specification for connecting the line.	*n*= 0 : Not use extended result code (initial value). *n*= 1 : Use extended result code.	AT¥V0 OK
ATA	Handles the incoming call process according to the mode received by the FOMA terminal.	—	RING ATA CONNECT
ATD	Handles the automatic calling process for the FOMA terminal according to the specified parameters and dial parameters.	ATD＊99＊＊＊<cid># : Packet communication <cid> 1 to 10: displays APN with +CGDCONT setting. AT+CBST=116,1,0 ATD<phone number> : 64K communication AT+CBST=131,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV32K communication AT+CBST=134,1,0 ATD<phone number> : AV64K communication	<Packet communication> ATD＊99＊＊＊1# CONNECT <64K communication> AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV32K communication> AT+CBST=131,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT <AV64K communication> AT+CBST=134,1,0 OK ATD090xxxxxxxx CONNECT
ATE*n* [&F] [&W]	Selects whether the echo back is present for DTE in the command mode.	*n*= 0 : Echo back absent. *n*= 1 : Echo back present (initial value).	ATE1 OK
ATH*n*	Performs on-hook operation for the FOMA terminal.	*n*= 0 : Disconnect the line (can be omitted).	(During packet communication) +++ OK ATH NO CARRIER

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATI*n*	Displays the ID code.	*n*=0 : Displays “NTT DoCoMo”. *n*=1 : Displays the product name (same with +GMM). *n*=2 : Displays the version of the FOMA terminal (same with +GMR). *n* =3 : Displays the each element of ACMP signal. *n* =4 : Displays the details of communication functions of the FOMA terminal.	ATI0 NTT DoCoMo OK ATI1 FOMAN902iL OK
ATO*n*	Returns from the online command mode to the online data mode during communication.	*n*=0 : Returns from online command mode to online data mode (can be omitted).	ATO CONNECT
ATQ*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether or not to display the result code for DTE.	*n*=0 : Displays the result code (initial value). *n*=1 : Not display the result code.	ATQ0 OK ATQ1 (At that time, OK is not returned.)
ATS0=*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies how many times the FOMA terminal rings before it automatically receives a call.	*n*=0 : No automatic answer (initial value). *n*=1- 255: A call is automatically answered after the specified number of rings. ATS0?: Displays the current setting.	ATS0=0 OK ATS0? 000 OK
ATS2=*n* [&F]	Sets an escape character.	*n*=43 : Initial value. *n*=127 : Escapes processing is invalid. ATS2? : Displays the current setting.	ATS2=43 OK ATS2? 043 OK
ATS3=*n* [&F]	Sets a carriage return (CR) character.	*n*=13 : Initial value (Only *n*=13 can be specified). ATS3? : Displays the current setting.	ATS3=13 OK ATS3? 013 OK
ATS4=*n* [&F]	Sets a line feed (LF) character.	*n*=10 : Initial value (Only *n*=10 can be specified). ATS4? : Displays the current setting.	ATS4=10 OK ATS4? 010 OK
ATS5=*n* [&F]	Sets a backspace (BS) character.	*n*=8 : Initial value (Only *n*=8 can be specified). ATS5? : Displays the current setting.	ATS5=8 OK ATS5? 008 OK
ATS6=*n* [&F]	Sets the pause time (second) until a dial starting.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS6=5 OK ATS6? 005 OK ATS6=? ERROR
ATS8=*n* [&F]	Sets the pause time (second) by using the comma dial.	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS8=3 OK ATS8? 003 OK ATS8=? ERROR

AT command	Outline	Parameter/description	Command execution example
ATS10=*n* [&F][&W]	Automatic disconnection delay time setting. (1/10 second)	This command can be set but cannot be operated.	ATS10=1 OK ATS10? 001 OK ATS10=? ERROR
ATS30=*n* [&F]	Disconnects the line when there is no user data exchange for the time set in this command.	*n*= 0 : Inactive timer off (initial value) *n*= 0 - 255 Where *n* is the number of minutes.	ATS30=0 OK ATS30? 000 OK ATS30=? ERROR
ATS103=*n* [&F]	Sets the called subaddress character.	*n*= 0 : * *n*= 1 : / (initial value) *n*= 2 : ¥ (¥ mark or back slash)	ATS103=0 OK ATS103? 000 OK ATS103=? ERROR
ATS104=*n* [&F]	Sets the calling subaddress character.	*n*= 0 : # *n*= 1 : % (initial value) *n*= 2 : &	ATS104=0 OK ATS104? 000 OK ATS104=? ERROR
ATV*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the result code is returned in numerals or alphabets.	*n*= 0 : Returns the result code in numeral value. *n*= 1 : Returns the result code in characters (initial value).	ATV1 OK
ATX*n* [&F] [&W]	Specifies whether the speed indication is present in the CONNECT display when connecting the line. Also detects a busy tone or a dial tone.	*n*= 0 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; without speed display. *n*= 1 : Without dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*= 2 : With dial tone detection; without busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*= 3 : Without dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. *n*= 4 : With dial tone detection; with busy tone detection; with speed display. (initial value)	ATX1 OK
ATZ	Resets the current setting to the contents of the non-volatile memory. If this command is input during communication, the line will be disconnected.	—	(Online command mode) ATZ NO CARRIER (Offline command mode) ATZ OK
+++	In response to the escape sequence, the online data mode changes to the online command mode while maintaining the line connection.	—	(Online data mode) +++ (No display) OK

● Supplementary explanation of AT command

■ Commands which do not function

The following commands do not generate errors but will not function as a command:

· ATT (Tone setting)
· ATP (Pulse setting)

■ Command name: +CGDCONT

- **Outline**

  Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination.

  Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- **Format**

  +CGDCONT=[<cid>[,“PPP”[,“<APN>”]]]

- **Explanation of the parameters**

  Sets the access point name (APN) for packet origination. See the following command execution example:

  <cid>* : 1 ~ 10

  <APN>* : Any value

  * : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to <cid>=1 and “mopera.net” is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.
  <APN> is an arbitrary character string indicating each access point name.

- **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

  +CGDCONT= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

  +CGDCONT=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

  +CGDCONT=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

  +CGDCONT? : Displays the current setting.

- **Command execution example**

  Command for registering an APN name of abc (when cid is 2).

  AT+CGDCONT=2,“PPP”,“abc”

  OK

■ Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

- **Outline**

  Registers a criterion to be used to decide whether or not to allow the QoS (quality of service) that is informed from the network side when PPP packet communication is established.

  There are 4 setting patterns as described in the following command execution example.

  Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

- **Format**

  +CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

- **Explanation of the parameters**

  <cid>* : 1～10

  <Maximum bitrate UL>* : None (initial value) or 64

  <Maximum bitrate DL>* : None (initial value) or 384

  * : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to <cid>=1 and “mopera.net” is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10. <Maximum bitrate UL> and <Maximum bitrate DL> set the minimum communication speed (kbps) of uplink and downlink between the FOMA terminal and base station. When it is set to “None” (initial value), all speeds will be permitted, but when set to 64 or 384, a connection at a speed of other values will not be permitted, and a packet communication may not be connected.

- **Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

  +CGEQMIN= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

  +CGEQMIN=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

  +CGEQMIN=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

  +CGEQMIN? : Displays the current setting.

・**Command execution example**

Only the following 4 patterns can be set. (1) is set as an initial value to each cid.

(1) Command for permitting all speeds of both uplink and downlink (when cid is 2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
OK

(2) Command for permitting only the speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64,384
OK

(3) Command for permitting uplink 64kbps and all speeds of downlink (when cid is 5).
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64
OK

(4) Command for permitting all speeds of uplink and only 384kbps of downlink (when cid is 6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384
OK

■ **Command name: +CGEQREQ=[parameter]**

・**Outline**

Sets the QoS (quality of service) to be requested to network when originating a PPP packet communication.
For setting, only the following pattern in the command execution example can be set, which is also set as an initial value.
Though this command is a setting command, it will not be recorded in non-volatile memory written by [&W], nor reset by [&F] or [Z].

・**Format**

+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]

・**Explanation of the parameters**

<cid>* : 1 to 10

* : <cid> is a number for managing the access point name (APN) registered in the FOMA terminal for a packet communication. For the FOMA terminal, you can register from number 1 to 10. As “mopera.ne.jp” is assigned to <cid>=1 and “mopera.net” is assigned to <cid>=3 by default, assign to cid2 or cid4 to cid10.

・**Operation performed when the parameter is omitted**

+CGEQREQ= : Sets the initial value to all <cid>.

+CGEQREQ=<cid> : Sets the specified <cid> to the initial value.

+CGEQREQ=? : Displays a list of values that can be set.

+CGEQREQ? : Displays the current setting.

・**Command execution example**

Only the following 1 pattern can be set. This is set to each cid as an initial value.
Command for requesting a connection at a speed of uplink 64kbps and downlink 384kbps (when cid is 2).
AT+CGEQREQ=2
OK

Saving modem port command setting value

The values set by AT commands are initialized every time the power of FOMA terminal is turned on or off, except the access point name (APN) set by AT+CGDCONT command (p.33), QoS setting by AT+CGEQMIN/AT+CGEQREQ command, permit or reject incoming call setting by AT＊DGAPL/AT＊DGARL/AT＊DGANSM command and the setting for specifying sending/not sending caller ID of packet communication set by AT＊DGPIR command. However, you can save the values set by commands with [&W] if you enter

AT&W ↵

after the setting. In this case, other set values with [&W] will also be saved. These values can be retrieved by entering

ATZ ↵

even after the power is turned on or off.

Result codes

■ **Result codes related with data communication**

Number indication	Character indication	Description
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected.
2	RING	Incoming call.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not acceptable.
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dialing tone.
7	BUSY	Busy tone detected.
8	NO ANSWER	Time out in connection completing.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted.

■ **Extended result codes**

• &E0

Number indication	Character indication	Description
121	CONNECT 32000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 32,000bps.
122	CONNECT 64000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 64,000bps.
125	CONNECT 384000	Connected between the FOMA terminal and base station at 384,000bps.

• &E1

Number indication	Character indication	Description
5	CONNECT 1200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 1,200bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 2,400bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 4,800bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 7,200bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 9,600bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 14,400bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 19,200bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 38,400bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 57,600bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 115,200bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 230,400bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	Connected between the FOMA terminal and PC at 460,800bps.

■ **Communication protocol result codes**

Number indication	Character indication	Description
1	PPPoverUD	Connected by PPPoverUD (BC=UDI, +CBST=116,1,0)
2	AV32K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [32K]
3	AV64K	Connected by AV (Videophone) [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected by Packet

NOTE

- The result code appears as character indication (default value) when ATV*n* command (p.53) is set to *n*=1, and as number indication when the command is set to *n*=0.
- Though the communication speed appears in order to maintain a compatibility with the modem connected by traditional RS-232C, it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal and PC are connected via FOMA USB Cable (optional).
- "RESTRICTION" (Number indication: 100) indicates that the network is congested. If this is displayed, wait for a while and then try again.

Result code display example

■ **When ATX0 is set**

Regardless of the AT¥V*n* command (p.51) setting, only CONNECT appears when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT

Number indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
1

■ **When ATX1 is set**

・ATX1, AT¥V0 are set (default)

Displayed in CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> format when the connection is completed.

Character indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT 460800

Number indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
1 21

・ATX1, AT¥V1 are set *

The following format appears when the connection is completed:

CONNECT <rate between the FOMA terminal and the PC> PACKET <Connecting party's APN>/ <Upstream (the FOMA terminal→ Wireless base station) maximum rate>/<Downstream (the FOMA terminal ← Wireless base station) maximum rate >

The following sample indicates that a connection is made to mopera.ne.jp at maximum 64kbps for sending, and maximum 384kbps for receiving.

Character indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.ne.jp /64/384

Number indication example: ATD＊99＊＊＊1#
1 21 5

＊：If both ATX1 and AT¥V1 are set simultaneously, a dial-up connection may not be correctly made. The single setting of AT¥V0 is recommended.

List of disconnection reasons

■ **Packet communication**

Value	Reason
26 27	Missing or incorrect APN.
30	Activation rejected by the network.
33	Requested service option not subscribed.
36	Disconnected successfully.

■ **64K data communication**

Value	Reason
1	The specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected successfully.
17	Cannot communicate because the other party's line is busy.
18	Dialed, but no response within the specified time.
19	Cannot communicate because the other party is ringing.
21	The other party has rejected the communication.
63	The service or option of the network is not valid.
65	A transmission capacity not provided has been specified.
88	Sent to a terminal with different terminal attributes or received call.

FOMA® N902iL

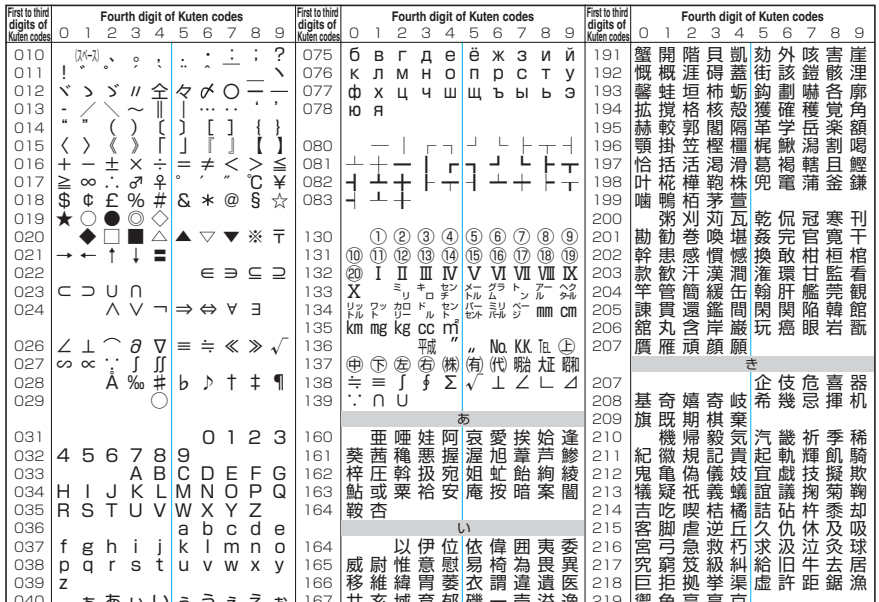
Kuten Code List

Kuten Code List

<Guide to the kuten code table>

First enter “digits 1-3 of the kuten code” then “digit 4”.

● Some kuten codes in the table here may look different from what actually appear on screens.



First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
245	糊	顧	御	乞	効	巧	拘	江	紅	紅
246	胡	股	悟	鯉	勾	后	巷	控	鋼	荒
247	互	五	艦	匂	厚	幌	幸	攻	浩	絞
248	伍	梧	交	厚	吸	行	間	鋳	紘	行
249	瑚	悟	鯉	匂	后	巷	控	洪	広	鋼
250	侯	酷	勾	后	巷	控	洪	広	昂	港
251	向	袴	后	巷	控	洪	広	昂	港	綱
252	坑	鼓	巷	控	洪	広	昂	港	綱	衡
253	口	伎	控	洪	広	昂	港	綱	衡	降
254	坑	功	洪	広	昂	港	綱	衡	降	拷
255	口	刻	広	昂	港	綱	衡	降	拷	酷
256	坑	甑	昂	港	綱	衡	降	拷	酷	狛
257	口	盃	港	綱	衡	降	拷	酷	狛	今
258	坑	梱	綱	衡	降	拷	酷	狛	今	梱
259	口	根	衡	降	拷	酷	狛	今	梱	込
260	坑	魂	降	拷	酷	狛	今	梱	込	困
261	口	昏	拷	酷	狛	今	梱	込	困	混
262	左	砂	座	彩	砕	才	崎	冊	刷	擦
263	座	最	彩	砕	才	祭	崎	冊	刷	擦
264	砕	済	才	祭	罪	埼	冊	刷	擦	皿
265	才	裁	祭	罪	埼	窄	刷	擦	皿	燦
266	祭	版	罪	埼	窄	札	擦	皿	燦	斬
267	埼	削	窄	札	晒	皿	燦	斬	暫	し
268	冊	桜	札	晒	珊	燦	斬	暫	し	仕
269	皐	山	晒	珊	暫	し	仕	始	支	祉
270	阜	蚕	珊	暫	し	仕	始	支	祉	詩
271	雑	参	暫	し	仕	始	支	祉	詩	似
272	鯖	纂	し	仕	始	支	祉	詩	似	事
273	惨	讃	仕	始	支	祉	詩	似	事	痔
273	傘	算	始	支	祉	詩	似	事	痔	式
274	残	産	支	祉	詩	似	事	痔	式	失
275	殺	債	祉	詩	似	事	痔	式	失	篠
276	三	採	詩	似	事	痔	式	失	篠	捨
277	座	斎	似	事	痔	式	失	篠	捨	蛇
278	才	財	事	痔	式	失	篠	捨	蛇	錫
279	祭	倚	痔	式	失	篠	捨	蛇	錫	珠
280	罪	策	式	失	篠	捨	蛇	錫	珠	呪
281	埼	索	失	篠	捨	蛇	錫	珠	呪	拾
282	窄	鷲	篠	捨	蛇	錫	珠	呪	拾	衆
283	札	作	捨	蛇	錫	珠	呪	拾	衆	什
284	晒	錯	蛇	錫	珠	呪	拾	衆	什	縦
285	珊	削	錫	珠	呪	拾	衆	什	縦	塾
286	暫	擦	珠	呪	拾	衆	什	縦	塾	舜
287	し	皿	呪	拾	衆	什	縦	塾	舜	盾
288	仕	燦	拾	衆	什	縦	塾	舜	盾	曙
289	始	斬	衆	什	縦	塾	舜	盾	曙	叙
290	支	暫	什	縦	塾	舜	盾	曙	叙	商
291	祉	し	縦	塾	舜	盾	曙	叙	商	尚
292	詩	仕	塾	舜	盾	曙	叙	商	尚	昇
293	似	始	舜	盾	曙	叙	商	尚	昇	渉
294	事	支	盾	曙	叙	商	尚	昇	渉	称
295	痔	祉	曙	叙	商	尚	昇	渉	称	裳
296	式	詩	叙	商	尚	昇	渉	称	裳	鐘
297	失	似	商	尚	昇	渉	称	裳	鐘	場
298	篠	事	尚	昇	渉	称	裳	鐘	場	畳
299	捨	痔	昇	渉	称	裳	鐘	場	畳	職
300	蛇	式	渉	称	裳	鐘	場	畳	職	唇
301	錫	失	称	裳	鐘	場	畳	職	唇	榛
302	珠	篠	裳	鐘	場	畳	職	唇	榛	芯
303	呪	捨	鐘	場	畳	職	唇	榛	芯	仁
304	拾	蛇	場	畳	職	唇	榛	芯	仁	陣
305	衆	錫	畳	職	唇	榛	芯	仁	陣	尽
306	什	珠	職	唇	榛	芯	仁	陣	尽	迅
307	縦	呪	唇	榛	芯	仁	陣	尽	迅	人
308	塾	拾	榛	芯	仁	陣	尽	迅	人	臣
309	舜	衆	芯	仁	陣	尽	迅	人	臣	仁
310	盾	什	仁	陣	尽	迅	人	臣	仁	尋
311	曙	縦	陣	尽	迅	人	臣	仁	尋	身
312	叙	塾	尽	迅	人	臣	仁	尋	身	尋
313	商	舜	迅	人	臣	仁	尋	身	尋	
314	尚	盾	人	臣	仁	尋	身	尋		
315	昇	曙	臣	仁	尋	身	尋			

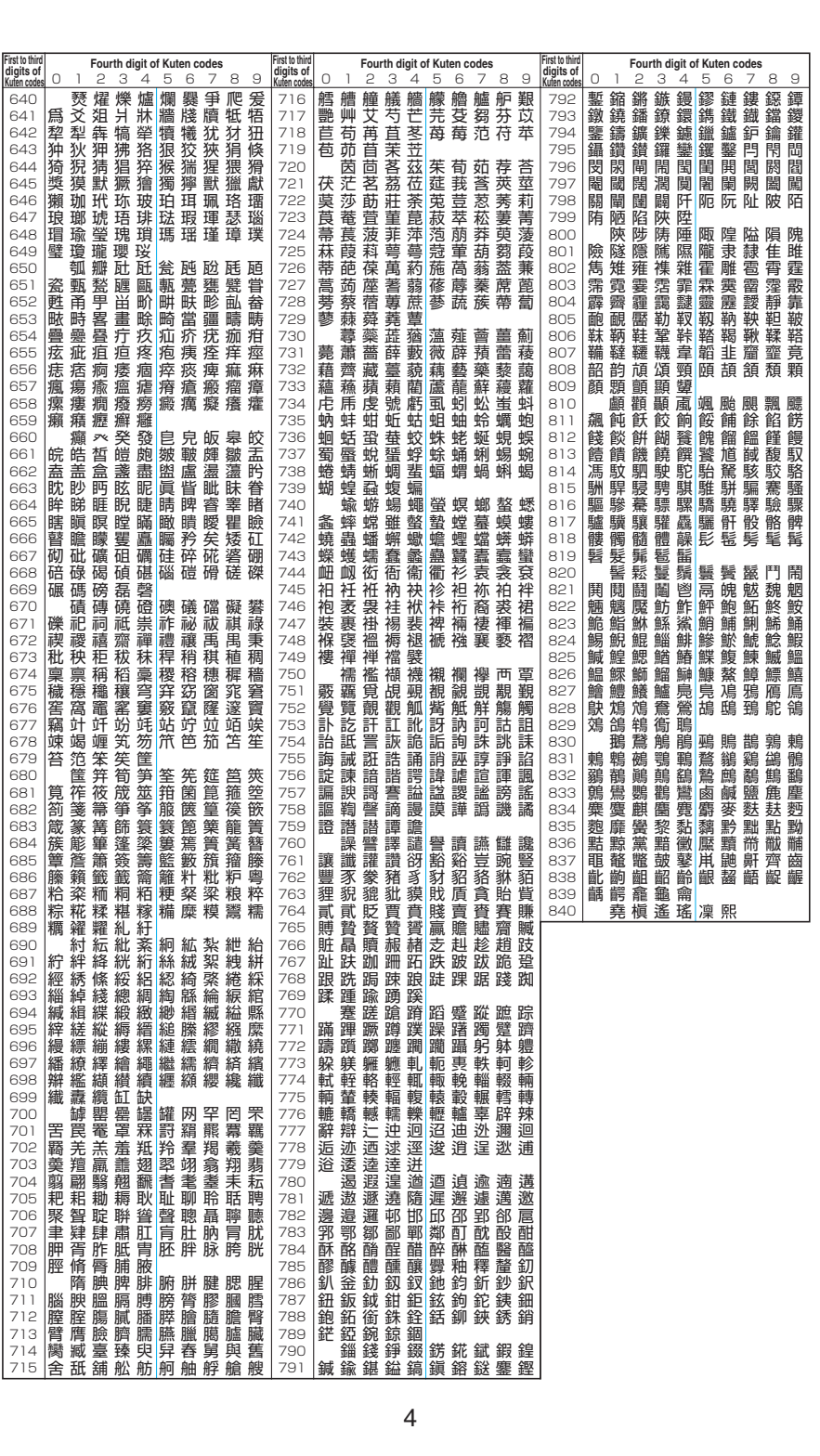
First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
315										す
316									筒	推
317								垂	帥	錐
318								酔	超	錐
319								垂	酔	超
320								吹	遂	枢
320										せ
321								世	瀬	政
322								性	成	盛
323								性	生	醒
324								請	逝	斥
325								惜	威	跡
326								貴	赤	節
327								設	窃	宣
328								千	占	浅
329								柄	泉	専
330								箭	線	洗
331								腺	舛	薦
332								銑	閃	前
332								膳	粍	鮮
333										そ
334									疎	塑
335									阻	祖
336									奏	僧
337									掻	層
338									痩	曹
339									倉	糟
340									増	走
341									贈	側
342									造	属
342									速	尊
343									存	た
344									詑	堕
345									駄	体
346									態	替
347									退	隊
348									題	滝
349									沢	鷹
350									只	濯
351									辰	琢
352									樽	啄
353									淡	琢
354									誕	託
354									題	ち
355									沢	値
356									只	致
357									辰	秩
358									樽	昼
359									淡	漸
360									誕	寵
361									題	弔
362									沢	町
363									只	銚
363									辰	つ
364									樽	椎
365									淡	槻
366									誕	塚
366									題	て
367									沢	亭
368									只	低
369									辰	帝
370									樽	と
371									淡	兎
372									誕	屠
373									題	妬
373									沢	塗
374									只	途
375									辰	徒
376									樽	斗
376									淡	砺

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
377	投	搭	東	当	桃	痘	桃	祖	椅	棟
378	灯	燈			痘	桃	祖	椅	棟	等
379	到									
380	討									
381	闘									
382	童									
383	流									
384	凸									
385	屯									
386	悼									
386	涛	島	崎	湯	糖	蕩	頭	洞	得	栃
387	統	筒	董	陶	撞	匿	読	酉	呑	
388	藤	踏	同	道	禿	届	沌			
389	騰	働	胴	特	突	惇				
390	豆	動	萄	督	椴	噸	鈍			
391	働	胴	特	突	惇					
392	胴	特	突	惇						
393	特	突	惇							
394	突	惇								
395	惇									
396										
397										
398										
399										
400										
401										
402										
403										
404										
405										
405										匿
406										斐
407										被
408										微
409										菱
410										紐
411										表
412										蛭
413										頻
414										
415										
415										ふ
416										布
417										腐
418										撫
419										踏
420										
421										仏
422										奮
422										へ
423										塀
424										頁
425										変
426										弁
426										ほ
427										輔
428										菩
429										崩
430										蓬
431										乏
432										暴
433										貿
434										朴
435										奔
436										幌

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
	ま										
436			摩			磨	魔	麻	埋	妹	柾
437			槙	又		幕	膜	枕	鮪	迄	厓
438	昧	枚	毎	万	蔓	抹	末	沫			
439	鱒	繭	麿	漫							
440											
	み										
440				味	未	魅	巳	箕	岬	密	
441	蜜		湊	蓑	脈	妙	粍	民	眠		
	む										
441										務	
442	夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘		
	め										
442										冥	滅
443	名	命	明	盟	迷	銘	鳴	姪	牝		
444	免		棉	綿	面	麺					
	も										
444							摸	模	茂	妄	黙	問
445							蒙	儲	木	黙		
446	孟	毛	茣	猛	耗	戻	籾	蕨	問			
447	目	門		勿								
448	紋											
	や										
447										弥	薬	
448	矢		厄	役		夜	爺	耶	野			
449	鑓					訳	躍	靖	柳			
	ゆ										
449										幽	由	
450										宥	猷	夕
451										友	猶	融
452										勇	涌	雄
453										優	湧	郵
454												
455												
456												
	よ										
456											羅	
457										落	酪	
458												
	ら										
458										利	吏	
459												
460												
461												
462												
463												
464												
465												
	り										
466										励	麗	隣
467										冷	霊	恋
468												
469												
470												
	る										
470										路	漏	禄
471										賂	浪	麓
472												
473												
	わ										
473										惑	湾	
474										脇	椀	
475												
476												
477												
478												
479												
480												
481												
482												
483												
484												
485												
486												
487												

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
488	偃				傷	傲	僊	僞	僧	儉	
489	儁				僵	僵	僂	儉	僧	儉	
490					僵	僂	僊	僞	僧	儉	
491					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
492					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
493					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
494					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
495					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
496					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
497					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
498					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
499					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
500					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
501					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
502					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
503					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
504					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
505					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
506					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
507					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
508					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
509					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
510					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
511					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
512					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
513					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
514					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
515					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
516					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
517					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
518					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
519					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
520					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
521					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
522					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
523					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
524					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
525					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
526					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
527					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
528					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
529					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
530					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
531					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
532					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
533					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
534					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
535					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
536					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
537					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
538					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
539					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
540					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
541					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
542					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
543					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
544					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
545					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
546					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
547					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
548					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
549					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
550					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
551					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
552					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
553					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
554					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
555					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
556					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
557					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
558					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
559					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
560					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
561					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
562					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	
563					儉	儉	儼	儉	僧	儉	

First to third digits of Kuten codes	Fourth digit of Kuten codes										
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
564											
565											
566											
567											
568											
569											
570											
571											
572											
573											
574											
575											
576											
577											
578											
579											
580											
581											
582											
583											
584											
585											
586											
587											
588											
589											
590											
591											
592											
593											
594											
595											
596											
597											
598											
599											
600											
601											
602											
603											
604											
605											
606											
607											
608											
609											
610											
611											
612											
613											
614											
615											
616											
617											
618											
619											
620											
621											
622											
623											
624											
625											
626											
627											
628											
629											
630											
631											
632											
633											
634											
635											
636											
637											
638											
639											


First to third digits of Kuten codes
Fourth digit of Kuten codes
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
640 爨 爐 爛 爍 爿 牆 犒 犖 犠 犧
641 爲 犂 爼 犇 犲 犴 犳 犹 狻 猊
642 猗 猝 猥 猯 猾 獏 獗 獪 獷 玃
643 玆 珎 珞 珙 琥 瑰 瑣 瑤 瑾 璋
644 璢 璉 璟 甕 甦 甯 畸 畷 畾 疉
645 疋 疔 疫 疳 疵 疸 疹 疼 疽 痂
646 痃 痊 痍 痒 痙 痞 痾 瘁 瘉 瘋
647 瘍 瘓 瘕 瘟 瘠 瘡 瘢 瘤 瘴 瘻
648 癇 癈 癘 癜 癤 癨 皁 皃 皈 皋
649 皎 皖 皓 皙 皚 皰 皴 盍 盞 盡
650 盥 眦 睚 睛 睥 睾 瞋 瞎 瞠 瞰
651 瞶 瞼 瞿 矍 矗 矚 矜 矢 矧 矩
652 砦 砧 砲 硎 硅 硫 硲 碆 碚 碣
653 碵 磈 磑 磔 磚 磧 磴 礇 礑 礒
654 礙 礫 礬 示 社 祀 祁 祇 祈 祉
655 祓 祕 祗 祟 祠 祢 祥 票 禁 禄
656 禊 禍 禎 福 禦 禧 禮 禳 禹 禺
657 秉 秕 秡 秣 稈 稍 稘 稙 稠 稟
658 禀 稱 稻 稾 稷 穃 穉 穡 穢 穩
659 龝 穰 穹 穽 窈 窗 窕 窘 窖 窩
660 竈 窰 窶 竅 竓 竕 竚 竝 竡 竢
661 竦 竭 竰 笂 笏 笊 笆 笳 笘 笙
662 笵 笶 笹 笳 笥 笴 笠 笨 笶 筐
663 筑 筒 筴 筵 筥 筧 筰 筱 筬 筮
664 箝 箘 箟 箍 箜 箚 箋 箒 箏 筧
665 箸 箴 箇 箙 箠 箭 箱 箴 箸 節
666 篁 篆 篋 篌 篏 篝 篠 篥 篦 篩
667 篭 篳 篷 簀 簔 簍 簗 簟 簣 簧
668 簪 簫 簷 簸 簽 簾 簿 籃 籌 籐
669 籔 籖 籘 籟 籠 籤 籥 籬 籵 粃
670 粐 粤 粭 粮 粱 粲 粳 粹 糀 糅
671 糘 糠 糲 糶 糸 糺 紆 紊 紐 紕
672 紖 紘 紮 紲 紿 絁 絅 絋 経 絖
673 絣 絨 絮 絽 綉 綏 綛 綟 綣 綧
674 綯 綵 綸 綺 綽 綾 綿 緇 緋 緒
675 緘 緙 緝 緞 緡 緤 緦 緩 緬 緯
676 緲 緶 緻 縁 縅 縉 縋 縒 縟 縢
677 縦 縩 縮 縲 縵 縹 縻 縷 縹 縺
678 繃 繆 繋 繍 繒 繖 繙 繚 繝 繞
679 繧 繻 繿 纃 纈 纉 續 纒 纛 纜
680 缸 缺 罅 罌 罍 罎 罐 网 罕 罘
681 罟 罠 罧 罨 罩 罫 罰 罵 罷 罸
682 羂 羃 羅 羆 羇 羈 羌 羔 羚 羝
683 羞 羠 羣 群 羶 羸 羹 羽 羿 翁
684 翅 翆 翊 翌 翔 翕 翠 翡 翦 翩
685 翫 翰 翳 翹 翼 耀 老 考 耄 者
686 耆 耋 而 耒 耘 耙 耜 耡 耨 耳
687 耶 耻 耽 耿 聆 聊 聒 聘 聚 聟
688 聡 聢 聨 聳 聴 聶 職 聿 肄 肅
689 肆 肇 肉 肋 肌 肖 肘 肚 肛 肝
690 肢 肬 肭 肱 肴 肺 胃 胄 胆 胎
691 胙 胝 胤 胥 胯 胱 胴 胸 胼 能
692 脂 脆 脇 脈 脉 脊 脚 脛 脣 脩
693 脱 脳 腋 腎 腐 腑 腓 腔 腕 腟
694 腠 腡 腥 腦 腫 腮 腰 腱 腴 腸
695 腹 腺 腿 膀 膂 膃 膈 膊 膏 膓
696 膕 膚 膜 膝 膠 膣 膤 膨 膩 膰
697 膵 膸 膽 膾 膿 臀 臂 臆 臈 臉
698 臍 臑 臓 臙 臚 臠 臣 臥 臧 臨
699 自 臭 至 致 臺 臻 臼 舁 舂 舅
700 與 興 舌 舎 舐 舒 舘 舛 舜 舞
701 舟 舩 舫 舮 舳 舵 舶 舷 舸 船
702 艀 艇 艘 艙 艚 艝 艟 艢 艤 艦
703 艪 艫 艮 良 艱 色 艶 艸 艾 芋
704 芍 芒 芙 芝 芟 芦 芬 芭 芯 芳
705 芸 芹 芻 芽 苅 苑 苒 苓 苔 苗
706 苙 苛 苜 苞 苟 苡 苣 苧 苫 苴
707 苹 苺 苻 苽 茅 茆 茉 茎 茖 茗
708 茘 茜 茣 茨 茫 茯 茱 茲 茴 茵
709 茶 茸 茹 荀 荅 荊 荏 荐 荒 荘
710 荳 荵 荷 荻 荼 莅 莇 莊 莎 莓
711 莖 莘 莚 莟 莠 莢 莨 莪 莫 莱
712 莵 莽 菁 菅 菇 菊 菌 菎 菓 菖
713 菘 菜 菟 菠 菰 菱 菲 菴 菷 萃
714 萄 萇 萋 萌 萍 萎 萓 萠 萢 萩
715 萪 萬 萱 萵 萸 萼 落 葆 葉 著
716 葛 葡 董 葦 葩 葭 葱 葵 葷 葺
717 蒂 蒄 蒋 蒐 蒔 蒙 蒜 蒟 蒡 蒭
718 蒲 蒴 蒸 蒹 蒻 蒼 蒿 蓁 蓄 蓆
719 蓊 蓋 蓍 蓑 蓖 蓙 蓚 蓜 蓬 蓮
720 蓼 蔀 蔆 蔇 蔈 蔊 蔑 蔓 蔔 蔕
721 蔗 蔘 蔚 蔟 蔡 蔣 蔦 蔬 蔵 蔽
722 蕁 蕃 蕈 蕉 蕊 蕋 蕎 蕏 蕐 蕓
723 蕕 蕗 蕘 蕚 蕛 蕣 蕤 蕨 蕩 蕪
724 蕷 蕺 蕻 蕾 薀 薄 薇 薈 薊 薏
725 薑 薔 薗 薙 薛 薜 薤 薦 薨 薩
726 薪 薫 薬 薮 薯 薹 薺 藁 藉 藍
727 藏 藐 藕 藜 藝 藤 藥 藪 藷 藹
728 藺 蘂 蘆 蘇 蘊 蘋 蘓 蘖 蘗 蘚
729 蘢 蘭 蘰 蘿 虎 虐 虔 虚 虜 虞
730 虢 虧 虫 虱 虹 虻 虼 虻 蚊 蚋
731 蚌 蚓 蚕 蚣 蚤 蚩 蚪 蚫 蚯 蚰
732 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
733 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
734 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
735 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
736 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
737 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
738 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
739 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
740 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
741 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
742 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
743 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
744 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
745 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
746 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
747 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
748 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
749 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
750 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
751 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
752 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
753 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
754 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
755 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
756 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
757 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
758 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
759 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
760 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
761 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
762 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
763 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
764 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
765 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
766 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
767 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
768 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
769 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
770 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
771 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
772 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
773 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
774 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
775 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
776 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
777 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
778 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
779 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
780 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
781 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
782 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
783 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
784 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
785 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
786 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
787 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
788 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
789 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
790 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
791 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
792 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
793 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
794 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
795 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
796 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
797 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
798 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
799 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
800 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
801 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
802 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
803 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
804 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
805 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
806 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
807 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
808 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
809 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
810 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
811 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
812 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
813 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
814 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
815 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
816 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
817 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
818 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
819 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
820 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
821 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
822 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
823 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
824 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
825 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
826 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
827 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
828 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
829 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
830 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
831 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
832 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
833 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
834 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
835 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
836 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
837 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
838 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
839 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶
840 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶 蚶